



This edition of the *South Africa Yearbook 2014/15* bears testimony to some of the notable achievements of our democratic country.

Not only does it highlight the progress made over the past year by the various government departments and entities, but it also chronicles some of the tangible milestones.

Government continues to deal decisively with the triple challenge of poverty, inequality and unemployment. It has implemented far-reaching measures to improve the lives of the people.

At the same time, we are resolute in our endeavour to foster nation-building and social cohesion, which serve as the foundations of building a united, non-sexist and non-racial society.

South Africa celebrated 20 Years of Freedom with pomp and ceremony in 2014, which coincided with the celebration of the 60th anniversary of the Women's Charter. This historic occasion preceded the celebration of the 60th anniversary of the Freedom Charter in 2015.

Another milestone was the successful national elections in May 2014, which ushered in the fifth administration.

After South Africa attained freedom in 1994, the democratic government identified infrastructure development as one of its key job drivers.

This involved multibillion-rand projects to refurbish and build schools, clinics, hospitals and power stations, as well as improve rail, roads and broadband infrastructure, which all form part of the country's developmental agenda.

Other job-intensive projects that contribute to boosting economic growth include tourism, manufacturing, mining and beneficiation.

Our health system continues to respond favourably to the medical needs of the people of our country, especially the poor, with life

expectancy increasing and HIV-infection rates being reduced considerably.

Our meaningful contribution to peaceful coexistence and mutual cooperation in Africa and the rest of the world has distinguished our country as a key role player in promoting socio-economic and political stability as a catalyst for development.

As a peace-loving nation, we have for many years been living together in peace and harmony with foreign nationals, hence government fosters an inclusive society.

Government has also given prominence to the rights of the most vulnerable – the elderly, women and children. The total emancipation of women, who were previously discriminated against by both the apartheid government and a patriarchal society, is fast gaining momentum.

Meanwhile, as the country prepares to hold the local government elections in 2016, our democracy is being taken another step forward towards strengthening the mandate and capacity of our municipalities to provide better services to our people.

This edition of the *South Africa Yearbook* will undoubtedly serve as a formal source of reference to the progress that government has achieved in the past year.

It tells a good story of the individual and collective effort being made to move South Africa forward.

His Excellency Jacob G. Zuma
President of the Republic of South Africa
October 2015





South Africa Yearbook 2014/15

Twenty-second (22nd) edition

(Originally published as *South Africa Official Yearbook*)

Editors: Elias Tibane and Malphia Honwane

Editorial support: Antonia Vermeulen, Boitumelo Phalatse and Phakamani Dadlana

Support services: Carel Mojela

Picture coordinator: Elizabeth Mpila

Images supplied by: GCIS.

Design and layout: Rachel Sekhu

Compiled, edited and published by Government Communications (GCIS)

Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001

Telephone: 012 473 0000

Website: www.gcis.gov.za

Printed and bound in the Republic of South Africa by CTP

ISBN: 978-0-9922078-6-1

The *South Africa Yearbook* is compiled and edited by the GCIS. The editorial staff has taken all reasonable care to ensure correctness of facts and statistics. However, any person requiring formal confirmation of any data in the *South Africa Yearbook*, or more detailed specific information, should consult the sources as indicated. The information is also available on *Government Online* (www.gov.za).

Unless otherwise specified, the information contained in this book was the latest available in October 2015.



Land and its people

South Africa occupies the southern tip of Africa, its long coastline stretching more than 3 000 km from the desert border with Namibia on the Atlantic coast southwards around the tip of Africa and then north to the border of subtropical Mozambique on the Indian Ocean.

The country has more than 290 conservation parks. It is home to almost 300 mammal species, about 860 bird species and 8 000 plant species. The annual sardine run is the biggest migration on the planet.

There are eight world heritage sites and seven different biomes. It is considered the cradle of humankind and boasts 40% of all hominid finds on Earth.

The land

Stretching latitudinally from 22°S to 35°S and longitudinally from 17°E to 33°E, South Africa's surface area covers 1 219 602 km².

Physical features range from bushveld, grasslands, forests, deserts and majestic mountain peaks, to wide unspoilt beaches and coastal wetlands.

The country shares common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Swaziland, while the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho is landlocked by South African territory in the south-east.

The Prince Edward and Marion islands, annexed by South Africa in 1947, lie some 1 920 km south-east of Cape Town.

The oceans and coastline

The warm Mozambique-Agulhas Current skirts the east and south coasts as far as Cape Agulhas, while the cold Benguela Current flows northwards along the west coast as far as southern Angola.

The contrast in temperature between these two currents partly accounts for significant differences in climate and vegetation, as well as differences in marine life.

Owing to the cold waters of the west coast being much richer in oxygen, nitrates, phosphates and plankton than those of the east coast, the South African fishing industry is centred on the west coast.

Saldanha Bay on the west coast is the only ideal natural harbour.

Rivers and lakes

None of the country's rivers are commercially navigable and most river mouths are unsuitable as harbours because large sandbanks block entry for most of the year.

South Africa has no significant natural lakes. Artificial lakes are used mostly for crop irrigation.

The Orange River is South Africa's largest river. Rising in the Drakensberg Mountains, it traverses through the Lesotho Highlands and joins the Caledon River between the Eastern Cape and the Free State before it empties into the Atlantic Ocean forming the border with Namibia.

Other major rivers include the Vaal, Breede, Komati, Lepelle (previously Olifants), Tugela, Umzimvubu, Limpopo and Molopo.

Relief features

South Africa's surface area falls into two major physiographic categories: the interior plateau and the land between the plateau and the coast.

Forming the boundary between these two areas is the Great Escarpment, the most prominent and continuous relief feature of the country. Its height above sea level varies from about 1 500 m in the dolerite-capped Roggeveld scarp in the south-west, to 3 482 m in the KwaZulu-Natal Drakensberg.

Inland from the escarpment lies the interior plateau, which is the southern continuation of the great African plateau stretching north to the Sahara Desert. The plateau is characterised by wide plains with an average height of 1 200 m above sea level. The dissected Lesotho plateau, which is more than 3 000 m above sea level, is the most prominent.

Between the Great Escarpment and the coast lies an area which varies in width from 80 km to 240 km in the east and south, and 60 km to 80 km in the west. At least three major subdivisions are recognised – the eastern plateau slopes, the Cape folded belt and adjacent regions, and the western plateau slopes.

Climate

A subtropical location, moderated by ocean on three sides of the country and the altitude of the interior plateau, account for the warm temperate conditions. South Africa is a relatively dry country, with an average annual rainfall of about 464 mm.

While the Western Cape gets most of its rainfall in winter, the rest of the country is generally a summer-rainfall region.

Temperatures in South Africa tend to be lower than in other countries at similar latitudes owing mainly to greater elevation above sea level.

On the interior plateau, the altitude – Johannesburg lies at 1 694 m – keeps the average summer temperatures below 30°C. In winter, for the same reason, night-time temperatures can drop to freezing point or lower in some places. South Africa's coastal regions are therefore relatively warm in winter.

The people

For 2014, Statistics South Africa estimates the mid-year population as 54 million. Approximately 27,64 million (51%) of the population is female. Gauteng comprises the largest share of the South African population. Approximately 12,91 million people (23,9%) live in this province.

KwaZulu-Natal is the province with the second largest population, with 10,69 million people (19,8%) living in this province.

With a population of approximately 1,17 million people (2,2%), Northern Cape remains the province with the smallest share of the South African population.

About 30% of the population is aged younger than 15 years and approximately 4,54 million (8,4%) is 60 years or older. Of those younger than 15 years, approximately 3,66 million (22,7%) live in KwaZulu-Natal and 3,05 million (18,8%) live in Gauteng.

Migration is an important demographic process in shaping the age structure and distribution of the provincial population. For the period 2011–2016 it is estimated that approximately 241 758 people will migrate from the Eastern Cape; Limpopo is estimated to experience an out-migration of nearly 303 101 people. During the same period, Gauteng and Western Cape are estimated to experience an inflow of migrants of approximately 1 106 375 and 344 830 respectively. Life expectancy at birth for 2014 is estimated at 59,1 years for males and 63,1 years for females.

Average temperatures (°C) in South Africa

City	Summer		Winter	
	Max	Min	Max	Min
Bloemfontein	31	15	17	-2
Cape Town	26	16	18	7
Durban	28	21	23	11
East London	26	18	21	10
George	25	15	19	7
Johannesburg	26	15	17	4
Kimberley	33	18	19	3
Mthatha	27	16	21	4
Musina	34	21	25	7
Nelspruit	29	19	23	6
Pietermaritzburg	28	18	23	3
Polokwane	28	17	20	4
Port Elizabeth	25	18	20	9
Pretoria	29	18	20	5
Richards Bay	29	21	23	12
Skukuza	33	21	26	6
Thohoyandou	31	20	24	10
Upington	36	20	21	4

Source: South African Weather Service

The infant mortality rate for 2014 is estimated at 34,4 per 1 000 live births. The estimated overall HIV prevalence rate is approximately 10,2% of the total South African population. The total number of people living with HIV is estimated at approximately 5,51 million in 2014. For adults aged 15–49 years, an estimated 16,8% of the population is HIV positive.

Languages

Besides the official languages, scores of others – African, European, Asian and more – are spoken in South Africa, as the country lies at the crossroads of southern Africa. Other languages spoken here and mentioned in the Constitution are the Khoi, Nama and San languages, sign language, Arabic, German, Greek, Gujarati, Hebrew, Hindi, Portuguese, Sanskrit, Tamil, Telegu and Urdu. There are also a few indigenous creoles and pidgins.

English is generally understood across the country, being the language of business, politics and the media, and the country's lingua franca. But it only ranks fourth out of 11 as a home language.

South Africa's linguistic diversity means that all 11 languages have had a profound effect on one another. South African English, for example, is littered with words and phrases from Afrikaans, isiZulu, Nama and other African languages.

isiZulu is the mother tongue of 23,8% of South Africa's population, followed by Xhosa at 17,6%, Afrikaans at 13,5%, Sepedi at 9,4%, English at 8,2%, Setswana at 8,2%, Sotho is the mother tongue of 7,9% of South Africans, while the remaining four official languages are spoken at home by less than 5% of the population each.

Additionally, 0,5% of the population indicated that they use sign language to communicate in the home.

Predominant languages by province (census 2011 figures) are:

- Eastern Cape – isiXhosa (78,8%), Afrikaans (10,6%)
- Free State – Sesotho (64,2%), Afrikaans (12,7%)
- Gauteng – Zulu (19,8%), English (13,3%)
- KwaZulu-Natal – isiZulu (77,8%), English

Eastern Cape	
Capital: Bhisho	
Principal languages:	
isiXhosa	78,8%
Afrikaans	10,6%
English	5,6%
Population: 6 786 900	
Percentage share of the total population: 12,6%	
Area: 168 966 km ²	
Mid-year population estimates, 2014	



Languages according to mother tongue

Language	Percentage	Language	Percentage
isiZulu	23,8%	isiNdebele	1,6%
isiXhosa	17,6%	Siswati	2,7%
Afrikaans	13,5%	Tshivenda	2,4%
Sepedi	9,4%	Xitsonga	4,5%
English	8,2%	Sesotho	7,9%
Setswana	8,2%	Sign Language	0,5%

Census 2011

(13,2%)

- Limpopo – Sesotho (52,9%), Venda (16,7%)
- Mpumalanga – Siswati (27,7%), isiZulu (24,1%)
- Northern Cape – Afrikaans (68%), Setswana (33,1%)
- North West – Setswana (63,4%), Afrikaans (9%)
- Western Cape – Afrikaans (55,3%), isiXhosa (24,7%), English (19,3%).

In August 2014, the Department of Basic Education gave approval to allow hearing-impaired learners to choose sign language as a first language.

Religion

South Africa is a secular democracy with freedom of religion. Many religions are represented in the ethnic and regional diversity of the population.

The majority of South Africans, or 79,8%, are Christian. The independent African Zion Christian churches predominate, being the faith of 15,3% of the total population, and 19,2% of all Christians.

Roughly 15% of the population have no religion, and 1,4% are undetermined about their faith. Islam is the religion of 1,5% of South Africans, Hinduism that of 1,2%, African traditional belief 0,3%, Judaism 0,2% and other beliefs 0,6%.

The provinces

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, at 169 966 km², is South Africa's second-largest province after the Northern Cape, taking up 13,9% of the total land area.

The province has a population of more than 6,7 million people, the majority of whom speak isiXhosa, followed by Afrikaans and English.

It is a region of great natural beauty, particularly the rugged cliffs, rough seas and dense green bush of the Wild Coast.

The region has remarkable natural diversity, ranging from the dry, desolate Great Karoo to the lush forests of the Wild Coast and the Keiskamma Valley; the fertile Langkloof Valley,

renowned for its rich apple harvests; and the mountainous southern Drakensberg region at Elliot.

Various floral habitats meet in the province, ranging from tropical forests in the north to the more temperate woods of the south.

The province is home to a number of higher education institutions, including Rhodes University, the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, the University of Fort Hare and the Walter Sisulu University of Technology.

It has airports in Bhisho, East London, Mthatha and Port Elizabeth. It also has two major harbours in East London and Port Elizabeth respectively.

Agriculture, fisheries and forestry

The fertile Langkloof Valley in the south-west has enormous deciduous fruit orchards, while sheep farming predominates in the Karoo.

The Alexandria-Grahamstown area produces pineapples, chicory and dairy products, while coffee and tea are cultivated at Magwa.

An olive nursery has been developed in collaboration with the University of Fort Hare to form a nucleus of olive production in the Eastern Cape.

The coastal areas receive good summer rainfall and have a moderate climate, becoming more subtropical to the north-west, which makes it particularly suitable for forestry.

The basis of the province's fishing industry is squid, some recreational and commercial fishing for line fish, the collection of marine resources, and access to line-catches of hake.

Industry

There are two industrial development zones: the West Bank in East London and Coega, near Port Elizabeth, which includes the deepwater Port of Ngqura.

The metropolitan economies of Port Elizabeth and East London are based primarily on manufacturing, the most important being automotive manufacturing. The province is the hub of South Africa's motor industry. With its ability to link throughout the economy, the government has identified the automotive industry as a key growth sector. It already exhibited significant growth under the Motor Industry Development Programme.

Other important sectors include renewables and green industries, forestry and timber processing, pharmaceuticals, plastics and chemicals, capital goods and tourism.

Free State

According to the *Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2014*, there were over 2,7 million people in the

Free State

Capital: Bloemfontein

Principal languages:

Sesotho 64,2%

Afrikaans 12,7%

IsiXhosa 7,5%

Population: 2 786 800

Percentage share of the total population: 5,2%

Area: 129 825 km²

Mid-year population estimates, 2014



Free State on about 129 480 km² of land. The main languages spoken are Sesotho, Afrikaans and isiXhosa.

The Free State has wide horizons and blue skies, farmland, mountains, goldfields and widely dispersed towns.

It lies in the heart of South Africa, with Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape. Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

Mangaung, comprising Bloemfontein, Botshabelo and Thaba Nchu, has an established institutional, educational and administrative infrastructure. With Bloemfontein being South Africa's judicial capital, the province houses the Supreme Court of Appeal. Important towns include Welkom, Sasolburg, Odendaalsrus, Kroonstad, Parys, Phuthaditjhaba, Bethlehem and the charming village of Clarens situated in the rolling foothills of the Maluti Mountains.

Some of South Africa's most valued San rock art can be found in the Free State. Other tourist attractions include the Golden Gate National Park, the annual air show in Bethlehem, the Cherry Festival in Ficksburg and the Fauresmith International Endurance Ride equestrian event.

The annual Mangaung African Cultural Festival, known as *Macufe*, is hosted in partnership with the Tourism Authority and the Performing Arts Centre of the Free State.

The Vredefort Dome, 10 km in diameter, is South Africa's seventh World Heritage Site.

Agriculture

Agriculture dominates the Free State landscape, with cultivated land covering 32 000 km² and natural veld and grazing 87 000 km² of the province. Field crops yield almost two thirds of the gross agricultural income of the province. Animal products contribute a further 30%, with the balance generated by horticulture.

Mining

The National Development Plan has intensified the mining potential that still exists in the goldfields region of Matjhabeng in the Lejweputswa District as a job intervention zone.

The De Bron-Merriespruit Gold Project and the Bloemhoek Gold Project are included as potential development projects in the scope of work of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission.

The province has 12 gold mines, producing 30% of South Africa's output and making it the fifth-largest producer of gold in the world. Gold mines in the Free State also supply a substantial portion of the total silver produced in the country. Uranium occurring in the gold-bearing conglomerates of the goldfields is extracted as a by-product.

The Free State's gold reef of more than 400 km stretches across the province from Gauteng. South Africa's largest gold-mining complex is Free State Consolidated Goldfields, with an area of 330 km².

Bituminous coal is mined and converted to petrochemicals at Sasolburg.

The province also produces high-quality diamonds from its kimberlite pipes and fissures, and the country's largest deposit of bentonite is found in the Koppies district.

Manufacturing and industry

The Maluti-a-Phofung Special Economic Zone is the Free State's share of the logistics and industrial corridor. The Vehicle Distribution Centre was established in partnership with the German Bremen Logistics Group, which committed R60 million towards this project. The Harrismith Food Processing Park forms part of the broader development initiative.

The green economic solar zone in the Xhariep district was expected to result in the establishment of the Xhariep Solar Park, harnessing the solar radiation in the southern part of the Free State.

The Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme forms part of Eskom's capital expansion programme. This energy infrastructure project, located on the border of the Phumelela and Maluti-a-Phofung Local Municipalities in the Free State and eMnambithi Local Municipality and the uThukela District Municipality in KwaZulu-Natal, received a R3,5 billion capital injection.

Sasol South Africa, the largest producer of synthetic fuels on the sub-continent, remains a key role-player in the Free State economy. Its investment in its Sasolburg operations is evident from the Wax Expansion project, the Ethylene Purification Unit 5, the Gas Engine Power Plant and Clean Fuels 2.

The Omnia Nitric Acid complex, located within the Sasol Industrial Complex, includes a nitric acid plant, an ammonium nitrate plant, a porous ammonium nitrate plant, a fleet of 145 specialised ammonia rail tankers and other

ancillary facilities.

Gauteng

The *2014 Mid-year Population Estimates* show that Gauteng remains the most populous province. Gauteng contributes 34,5% to South Africa's gross domestic product (GDP) and is also one of the biggest contributors to the economy of the continent.

Over four million (29%) of people with jobs in South Africa are living in Gauteng. Financial and business services, logistics, manufacturing, property, telecommunications and trade are some of the province's most important economic sectors.

The population of more than 12 million people has the highest per-capita income level in the country. The province blends cultures, colours and first- and third-world traditions in a spirited mix, flavoured by a number of foreign influences.

Most overseas visitors enter South Africa via OR Tambo International Airport.

Johannesburg, is the capital of the province. South of Johannesburg lies Soweto, the most populous urban residential area in the country, with a population of more than a million.

The Gauteng Enterprise Propeller (GEP), an entity that falls under the province's Economic Development Department, signed a partnership with the United Nations Development Programme that is expected to boost small businesses and create jobs.

The GEP's new partnership would, through supplier links between small enterprises and bigger firms, assist in transforming the province's and South Africa's economy.

Some 50 km north of Johannesburg lies South Africa's administrative capital, Pretoria. The magnificent Union Buildings, which overlook the city from Meintjieskop, represent the official seat of the South African Government and house the offices of the country's President.

The industrial area of Rosslyn and the townships of Soshanguve and Ga-Rankuwa are situated north of Pretoria. Cullinan, which is well known for its diamonds, and Mamelodi lie

Gauteng

Capital: Johannesburg

Principal languages:

IsiZulu 19,8%

Afrikaans 12,4%

English 13,3%

Population: 12 914 800

Percentage share of the total population: 23,9%

Area: 18 178 km²

Mid-year population estimates, 2014



to the east. To the west lies Atteridgeville.

Other important Gauteng towns include Krugersdorp and Roodepoort on the West Rand; and Germiston, Springs, Boksburg, Benoni, Brakpan and Kempton Park on the East Rand. Vanderbijlpark and Vereeniging in the south of the province are major industrial centres, while Heidelberg, Nigel and Bronkhorstspuit, to the east, are of agricultural importance.

The University of Pretoria is the largest residential university in South Africa, while the University of South Africa (Unisa) is believed to be the largest correspondence university in the world. Other universities include the University of the Witwatersrand and the University of Johannesburg.

The province also has several other tertiary education institutions such as universities of technology and further education and training colleges. Gauteng is also home to leading research institutions such as the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), the Agricultural Research Council, the Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute and the Human Sciences Research Council.

The “Building the Legacy” exhibition opened in Pretoria on 31 January 2014. The exhibition, which charted a journey of injustice, despair leading to freedom and hope, was unique in that it offered the public an interactive view of the last 100 years of South African history. The exhibition was on a nationwide tour as part of the 20 Years of Freedom campaign.

In April 2014, the “Relive the memory of President Nelson Mandela” project was launched. Mandela’s final route through Pretoria will be mapped and marked as part of the city’s mission to preserve history. The memorial route runs from One Military Hospital on Old Pretoria Road, proceeding to Kgosi Mampuru Street until the intersection of Madiba Street, proceeding to the Union Buildings and then to Waterkloof Air Force Base.

Mining and manufacturing

Manufacturing includes basic iron and steel, fabricated and metal products, food, machinery, electrical machinery, appliances and electrical supplies, vehicle parts and accessories, and chemical products.

All major gold and diamond mining houses have their headquarters in Johannesburg, the biggest being Anglo American and De Beers.

Although gold-mining and ancillary industries provide thousands of jobs, the importance of mining is declining compared to the manufacturing and financial sectors. Mining produces only 6% of Gauteng’s total income and 31% of

export earnings.

Technology

More than 60% of South Africa’s research and development takes place in Gauteng.

The CSIR is one of South Africa’s leading science and technology research, development and implementation centres. Located in Pretoria, the CSIR’s research and development areas include biosciences; the built environment; information and communication; materials science and manufacturing; natural resources and the environment; mineral resources; space technology; nanotechnology and synthetic biology.

The Innovation Hub in Pretoria is Africa’s first internationally accredited science park and a full member of the International Association of Science Parks. Its community has become a regional centre of innovation and knowledge creation, linked to the fast-moving world of global interconnectivity, and made up of small, medium and micro-enterprises and multinational companies, employing over 1 000 people.

Industry and agriculture

A large area of Gauteng falls within the so-called “Maize Triangle.” The province is an integrated industrial complex with major areas of economic activity in three subregional areas, namely the Vaal Triangle; the East, West and Central Rand; and Pretoria. Johannesburg houses the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Limited, the largest securities exchange in Africa.

KwaZulu-Natal

KwaZulu-Natal is one of the country’s most popular holiday destinations. It includes South Africa’s lush subtropical east coast, stretching from Port Edward in the south to Mozambique in the north.

The Drakensberg mountain range stretches the entire length of KwaZulu-Natal’s western boundary.

I Nat Nakasa was a journalist from Chesterville, Durban, who began his work and career as a writer at *Ilanga lase Natal* in the late 1950s. He moved to Johannesburg, where he wrote for *Golden City Post*, *Rand Daily Mail* and *DRUM* magazine, covering many of the challenging stories and events of the time. In 1964, he was awarded a Nieman Fellowship to study in America, but was not issued with a passport. He thus reluctantly went into exile. Nakasa, who died in New York in 1965, was initially buried at Ferncliff Cemetery. His remains were returned to South Africa in August 2014 where they were reburied in Heroes Acre in Chesterville, Durban, on

KwaZulu-Natal**Capital:** Pietermaritzburg**Principal languages:**

IsiZulu 77,8%

Afrikaans 1,5%

English 13,2%

Population: 10 694 400**Percentage share of the total population:** 19,8%**Area:** 94 361 km²*Mid-year population estimates, 2014*

The Drakensberg forms the boundary between South Africa and the mountain kingdom of Lesotho, and offers some of the country's most awe-inspiring landscapes.

It provided the backdrop for the films *Zulu* (1964) and *Yesterday* (2004) and the setting for Alan Paton's novel *Cry, the Beloved Country*, and is the inspiration for a million picture postcards.

Within the area is a vast 243 000-hectare sweep of basalt summits and buttresses; this section was formally granted World Heritage status in November 2000, and was renamed uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park.

The summer-rainfall coastal regions are hot and humid, with a subtropical climate. The Midlands area is drier, with extremely cold conditions in winter and snow on the high-lying ground. In the north, the subtropical strip extends around Swaziland to the edge of the escarpment.

Visitors can enter the province through the King Shaka International Airport at La Mercy, north of Durban, or use the extensive national road network. There are also two major harbours – the port of Durban, which is one the busiest in Africa, and Richards Bay, which is an important coal-export harbour.

There are several nature reserves including the Royal Natal National Park, Giant's Castle and the Kamberg Nature Reserve.

Tertiary institutions of learning in the province include the University of KwaZulu-Natal and the Durban Institute of Technology.

KwaZulu-Natal is the only province with a monarchy specifically provided for in the Constitution.

Industry and agriculture

KwaZulu-Natal has a diverse industrial sector, with major industries having developed around the port of Durban.

Major industries in the province are agriculture, forestry, aluminium, petro-chemicals, automotive manufacturing, steel production, plastics and packaging, paper and board manufacturing, and a range of industries associated with imports and exports though the major ports of Durban and Richards Bay.

The coastal belt is also a large producer of

subtropical fruit and sugar, while the farmers in the hinterland concentrate on vegetables, dairy and stock farming.

Another major source of income is forestry in the areas around Vryheid, Eshowe, Richmond, Harding and Ngome, which is also known for its tea plantations.

Limpopo

South Africa's northernmost province shares borders with Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Botswana, making it the ideal gateway to Africa. Named after the Limpopo River that flows along its northern border, the province is rich in wildlife, natural beauty and historical and cultural treasures.

The province is linked to the Maputo Development Corridor through the Phalaborwa Spatial Development Initiative, which is a network of rail and road corridors connected to the major seaports, opening up Limpopo for trade and investment. This is complemented by the presence of smaller airports in centres such as Phalaborwa and Musina, as well as the Gateway International Airport in Polokwane, the capital city, which lies strategically in the centre of the province.

The Great North Road, running through the centre of the province, strings together a series of towns such as Bela-Bela, with its popular mineral spa; Modimolle, with its beautiful Waterberg mountain range; Mokopane; Polokwane; Makhado, at the foot of the Soutpansberg mountain range; and Musina, which is well-known for its majestic baobab trees. The crossing into Zimbabwe is at Beit Bridge.

Phalaborwa and Thabazimbi are Limpopo's major mining centres, while the town of Tzaneen in the picturesque Magoebaskloof is known for its tea plantations, forestry products and tropical fruit.

The province is in the Savanna Biome, an area of mixed grassland and trees, generally known as bushveld. Natural resources include more than 50 provincial nature reserves and several private game reserves. The largest section of the Kruger National Park is along Limpopo's eastern boundary, which borders on Mozambique.

Limpopo**Capital:** Polokwane**Principal languages:**

Sepedi 52,9%

Tshivenda 16,7%

Xitsonga 16,9%

Population: 5 630 500**Percentage share of the total population:** 10,4%**Area:** 125 754 km²*Mid-year population estimates, 2014*

Several museums and national monuments bear testimony to the ancient people and fearless pioneers who braved the unknown.

Living museums include the Bakone Malapa Museum near Polokwane and the Tsonga Open-Air Museum near Tzaneen. Mapungubwe (“Place of the Jackal”) Hill, some 75 km from Musina, is a world heritage site. It served as a natural fortress for its inhabitants from about 950 AD to 1200 AD.

Agriculture

Limpopo produces a wide range of agricultural products. The area is a potato belt and known for its superior quality potatoes for high-end markets. It also produces 75% of the country’s mangoes; 65% of its papayas; 36% of its tea; 25% of its citrus, bananas and litchis; 60% of its avocados and two thirds of its tomatoes.

Other products include coffee, nuts, guavas, sisal, cotton, tobacco, sunflower, maize, wheat and grapes. In addition, more than 170 plantations produce timber.

Most of the higher-lying areas are devoted to cattle and game ranching, earning a reputation for quality biltong (salted, dried meat), which is a popular South African delicacy.

Industry and mining

Limpopo also has abundant mineral resources, making mining the critical sector of the province’s economy by contributing 22% of the gross geographic product. Metals include platinum, chromium, nickel, cobalt, vanadium, tin, limestone and uranium clay.

Other reserves include antimony, phosphates, fluorspar, gold, diamonds, copper, emeralds, scheelites, magnetite, vermiculite, silicon, mica, black granite, corundum, feldspar and salt.

The Medupi power station, a new dry-cooled, coal-fired power station, is under construction near Lephalale. It is expected to create around 40 000 job opportunities.

Mpumalanga

Spectacular scenic beauty and an abundance of wildlife make the province one of South Africa’s major tourist destinations.

Mpumalanga, which means “Place Where the Sun Rises”, is home to just more than four million people. The principle languages are Siswati and isiZulu.

With a surface area of only 79 490 km², it is the second-smallest province after Gauteng, yet has the fourth-largest economy in South Africa.

Bordered by Mozambique and Swaziland in the east, and Gauteng in the west, the province is situated mainly on the high plateau

Mpumalanga

Capital: Nelspruit

Principal languages:

SiSwati 27,7%

IsiZulu 24,1%

IsiNdebele 10%

Population: 4 229 300

Percentage share of the total population: 7,8%

Area: 76 495 km²

Mid-year population estimates, 2014



grasslands of the Middleveld. In the north-east, it rises towards mountain peaks terminating in an immense escarpment. In some places, this escarpment plunges hundreds of metres down to the low-lying area known as the Lowveld.

The province has a network of excellent roads and railway connections, making it highly accessible. Owing to its popularity as a tourist destination, Mpumalanga is also served by a number of small airports, including the Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport.

Mbombela is the capital of the province and the administrative and business centre of the Lowveld. Other important towns are eMalahleni, Standerton, Piet Retief, Malalane, Ermelo, Barberton and Sabie, which lies in the centre of one of the largest man-made forests in the world. Mpumalanga lies mainly within the Grassland Biome.

The escarpment and the Lowveld form a transitional zone between this grassland area and the Savanna Biome.

The Maputo Corridor, which links the province with Gauteng, and Maputo in Mozambique, facilitates economic development and growth for the region.

Agriculture and forestry

Mpumalanga is a summer-rainfall area divided by the escarpment into the Highveld region with cold frosty winters and the Lowveld region with mild winters and a subtropical climate. The escarpment area sometimes experiences snow on the high ground. Thick mist is common during the hot, humid summers.

Agriculture, as the backbone of the province’s economy, employs 8,1% of its total workforce. An abundance of citrus fruit and many other subtropical fruit – mangoes, avocados, litchis, bananas, papayas, granadillas, guavas – as well as nuts and a variety of vegetables are produced here.

Mbombela is the second-largest citrus-producing area in South Africa and is responsible for one third of the country’s orange exports. The Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops is situated in the city.

Groblersdal is an important irrigation area,

which yields a wide variety of products such as citrus, cotton, tobacco, wheat and vegetables. Carolina-Bethal-Ermelo is mainly a sheep-farming area, but potatoes, sunflowers, maize and peanuts are also grown there.

Industry and manufacturing

Most of the manufacturing production in Mpumalanga occurs in the southern Highveld region; especially in Highveld Ridge, where large petrochemical plants such as Sasol 2 and Sasol 3 are located.

Large-scale manufacturing occurs especially in the northern Highveld area, particularly chrome-alloy and steel manufacturing. In the Lowveld subregion, industries concentrate on manufacturing products from agricultural and raw forestry material. The growth in demand for goods and services for export via Maputo will stimulate manufacturing in the province.

Mpumalanga is rich in coal reserves with eMalahleni being the biggest coal producer in Africa. South Africa's major power stations are situated in this province.

Kendal power station's cooling towers are the largest structures of their type in the world. When Kusile power station near Delmas is completed in 2016, it will be the country's biggest, contributing a massive 4 800 MW of electricity to the national grid.

One of the country's largest paper mills is situated at Ngodwana, close to its timber source. Middelburg, which produces steel and vanadium, is home to Columbus Stainless, South Africa's only producer of stainless steel flat products.

Northern Cape

The Northern Cape is South Africa's largest province, taking up almost a third of the country's total land area. However, the province is sparsely populated with only about 1,2 million people on 361 830 km² of land.

About 68% of the people speak Afrikaans while Setswana, isiXhosa and English are also widely spoken.

The last remaining true San people live in the Kalahari area, mainly along the Orange and Vaal rivers. Many fossils and San rock

engravings have been found here, some of which are displayed at the McGregor Museum in Kimberley.

The province lies to the south of its most important asset, the mighty Orange River, which provides the basis for a healthy agricultural industry.

The Northern Cape borders the Atlantic Ocean in the west with Namibia and Botswana to the north and north-west, respectively. It is fringed by the Swartberg mountain range on its southern border.

With two major airports at Kimberley and Upington, and an excellent road network, the province's interior is easily accessible from South Africa's major cities, harbours and airports.

Sutherland hosts the southern hemisphere's largest astronomical observatory, the multinational-sponsored Southern African Large Telescope.

The Northern Cape is one of two sites to host the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) radio-telescope. Developed by scientists from 17 countries, it will be the largest and most advanced radio telescope in the world.

Among many other benefits, the province's tourism and hospitality industry is profiting from the project, as scientists and other interested parties are flooding into the town of Carnarvon.

The province has several national parks and conservation areas, including the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier Conservation Park and Augrabies Falls National Park.

The largest part of the province lies in the dry Nama-Karoo Biome, which contains a number of fascinating plants, including the elephant's trunk ("halfmens" or half-man) tree, aloe ("kokerboom" or quiver tree) and a variety of succulents. The area is well known for its spectacular annual spring flowers, which attract thousands of tourists.

Agriculture and industry

The economy of the province's Karoo region depends on sheep farming, while the karakul-pelt industry is one of the most important in the Gordonia district.

The province has fertile agricultural land, especially in the Orange River Valley. A variety of fruit is cultivated at Upington, Kakamas and Keimoes. The Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme near Warrenton facilitates the production of wheat, fruit, peanuts, maize and cotton.

Wine is also produced in the Northern Cape's Orange River wine region, which accounts for 25,6% of South Africa's Colombard vines and 10% of its Chenin Blanc. The Niewoudtville Rooibos Tea processing initiative centres on

Northern Cape

Capital: Kimberley

Principal languages:

Afrikaans 68%

Setswana 33,1%

Population: 1 166 700

Percentage share of the total population: 2,2%

Area: 372 889 km²

Mid-year population estimates, 2013



the development and economic empowerment of smallholder farmers. It is aimed at unlocking economic potential, creating sustainable jobs and increasing the skills base. The installation of pasteurisation equipment has been completed and tea has been exported to countries such as Germany, Spain and Japan.

Mining

Mining contributes 27,6% to the gross regional domestic product. Iron-ore mining in the north-eastern corner of the province has been expanding despite the global recession, driven largely by China's demand for steel.

Sishen is the biggest iron-ore mine in the country and its owner, Kumba Iron Ore, is engaging in a new project at Kolomela. New manganese projects are also underway.

Diamond mining, in contrast, has seen declining volumes and job losses. Diamond mining is increasingly moving away from the older mines to alluvial mining along the Orange River and its tributaries and in the Atlantic Ocean.

The province also has copper, asbestos, fluorspar, semi-precious stones and marble.

North West

North West is bordered by Botswana in the north and fringed by the Kalahari desert in the west, Gauteng to the east, and the Free State to the south. It is known as the "Platinum Province", owing to its wealth of this precious metal.

The province has a population of more than 3,6 million people who mainly speak Setswana.

Mahikeng is the capital city and well known for the *Mafikeng Siege*, which took place in October 1899 during the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

Most of the province's economic activity is concentrated between Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp, as well as in Rustenburg and the eastern region, where more than 83,3% of the province's economic activity takes place.

The province has various tourist attractions including Sun City, the Pilanesberg National Park, Madikwe Game Reserve, and the De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Trust.

A portion of one of South Africa's seven

Unesco world heritage sites also falls within the borders of North West namely the Taung hominid fossil site, which has been incorporated into South Africa's Cradle of Humankind.

Mining and manufacturing

Mining contributes 23,3% to North West's economy, and makes up 22,5% of the South African mining industry. The Rustenburg and Brits districts produce 94% of the country's platinum, which is more than any other single area in the world. In addition to granite, marble, fluorspar and diamonds, the province also produces a quarter of South Africa's gold. Employment along the Platinum Corridor, from Pretoria to eastern Botswana, accounts for over a third of the province's total employment.

North West's manufacturing sector centres on the municipalities of Brits, Rustenburg, Potchefstroom, Klerksdorp and Mahikeng, which together account for more than 50% of the province's total manufacturing production.

The industries in Brits concentrate on manufacturing and construction, while those in Klerksdorp are geared towards the mining industry. In the manufacturing arena, automotive parts, machinery, electronic, audio, and medical equipment are manufactured using local materials and resources.

Agriculture

Some of the largest cattle herds in the world are found at Stellaland near Vryburg, which explains why this area is often referred to as the Texas of South Africa. Marico is also cattle country.

North West is South Africa's major producer of white maize. The areas around Rustenburg and Brits are fertile, mixed-crop farming land, with maize and sunflowers being the most important crops.

Western Cape

Situated on the south-western tip of the African continent, the Western Cape with its wide beaches and breathtaking scenery, complemented by a rich variety of cultures, historical landmarks, world-class restaurants and entertainment, is a world-famous tourist

North West

Capital: Mahikeng

Principal languages:

Setswana 63,4%

Afrikaans 9%

IsiXhosa 5,5%

Population: 3 676 300

Percentage share of the total population: 6,8%

Area: 140 882 km²

Mid-year population estimates, 2014



Western Cape

Capital: Cape Town

Principal languages:

Afrikaans 55,3%

IsiXhosa 24,7%

English 19,3%

Population: 6 116 300

Percentage share of the total population: 11,3%

Area: 129 462 km²

Mid-year population estimates 2014



destination.

Cape Town, often referred to as the “Mother City”, houses Parliament and is South Africa’s legislative capital. The province has a strong network of higher education institutions including the universities of Cape Town, Stellenbosch and the Western Cape, and has the highest adult education level in the country.

Visitors to the province can disembark at one of the province’s two main airports, Cape Town International or George Airport or at the seaports of Cape Town, Mossel Bay and Saldanha.

Table Mountain, the Cape winelands, Robben Island and the Kirstenbosch Botanical Gardens are among the province’s most popular tourist attractions.

The Western Cape is also known for its floral diversity. The Cape Floristic Region World Heritage Site, comprising eight separate protected areas, covers an area of more than 553 000 ha stretching from the Cape Peninsula to the Eastern Cape.

The Knysna-Tsitsikamma region has the country’s biggest indigenous forests.

The cold Atlantic Ocean along the West Coast is a rich fishing area, while the warmer Indian Ocean skirts the province’s southern beaches.

Agriculture and fisheries

The Western Cape’s sheltered valleys between mountains are ideal for the cultivation of export-grade fruit such as apples, table grapes, olives, peaches and oranges.

A variety of vegetables is cultivated in the eastern part of the Western Cape, while the Swartland and Overberg districts are well-known as the country’s prime wheat-growing areas.

The agricultural sector is critical to the Western Cape economy, accounting for 60% of regional exports.

South Africa’s 300-year-old wine industry is based in the south of the province. The region produces 3,1% of the world’s wine and is ranked ninth in overall volume production, with 100 200 ha under vines for wine production.

Some 75% of all South African fishing takes place along the Western Cape coastline. The rich fishing grounds on the west coast are protected from exploitation by a 200 km commercial fishing zone and a strict quota system. Snoek, Cape lobster, abalone, calamari, octopus, oysters and mussels are among the delicacies found in these waters.

Other exports are fruit, wine, wool and ostrich. The high quality of exports, combined with the relative weakness of the local currency, makes the products some of the most affordable high-quality exports in the world.

Industry

The Saldanha Bay IDZ, launched late in 2013, is drawing strong international interest.

The Saldanha Bay IDZ Licencing Company signed six lease agreements with international and South African oil and gas companies. These include firms specialising in oilfield services, oil rig operations, logistics operators, ship repair, engineering and market support.

The Licensing Company is in talks with an international consortium to develop a rig module building facility.

A feasibility study conducted by the Department of Trade and Industry found that Saldanha Bay is strategically located to serve as a service, maintenance, fabrication and supply hub for the booming African oil and gas sector, due to the increasing number of oil rigs requiring maintenance, and their traffic flow passing from the west to the east coast of Africa.

The Western Cape government has invested R25 million over five years in setting up the IDZ.





History

The early inhabitants

The discovery of the skull of a Taung child in 1924; discoveries of hominid fossils at Sterkfontein caves, a world heritage site; and the ground-breaking work done at Blombos Cave in the southern Cape, have all put South Africa at the forefront of palaeontological research into the origins of humanity. Modern humans have lived in the region for over 100 000 years.

The small, mobile bands of Stone Age hunter-gatherers, who created a wealth of rock art, were the ancestors of the Khoikhoi and San of historical times. The Khoikhoi and San, although collectively known as the Khoisan, are often thought of as distinct peoples. The former were those who, some 2 000 years ago, adopted a pastoralist lifestyle herding sheep and later, cattle. Whereas the hunter-gatherers adapted to local environments and were scattered across the subcontinent, the herders sought out the pasturelands between modern-day Namibia and the Eastern Cape, which generally are near the coast. At around the same time, Bantu-speaking agropastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, bringing with them an Iron Age culture and domesticated crops. After establishing themselves in the well-watered eastern coastal region of southern Africa, these farmers spread out across the interior plateau, or "Highveld," where they adopted a more extensive cattle-farming culture.

Chiefdoms arose, based on control over cattle, which gave rise to systems of patronage and hence hierarchies of authority within communities. Metallurgical skills, developed in the mining and processing of iron, copper, tin and gold, promoted regional trade and craft specialisation.

At several archaeological sites, such as Mapungubwe and Thulamela in the Limpopo Valley, there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures, based in part on contact with the East African trading economy. These cultures, which were part of a broader African civilisation, predate European encroachment by several centuries. Settlement patterns varied from the dispersed homesteads of the fertile coastal regions in the east, to the concentrated towns of the desert fringes in the west.

The farmers did not, however, extend their settlement into the western desert or the winter-rainfall region in the south-west. These regions remained the preserve of the Khoisan until Europeans put down roots at the Cape of Good Hope. Aided by modern science in uncovering the continent's history, which forms part of the African Renaissance, South Africa is gaining a greater understanding of its rich precolonial past.

The early colonial period

Portuguese seafarers, who pioneered the sea route to India in the late 15th century, were regular visitors to the South African coast during the early 1500s. Other Europeans followed from the late 16th century onwards.

In 1652, the Dutch East India Company (VOC) set up a station in Table Bay (Cape Town) to provision passing ships. Trade with the Khoikhoi for slaughter stock soon degenerated into raiding and warfare. Beginning in 1657, European settlers were allotted farms by the colonial authorities in the arable regions around Cape Town, where wine and wheat became the major products. In response to the colonists' demand for labour, the VOC imported slaves from East Africa, Madagascar, and its possessions in the East Indies.

By the early 1700s, the colonists had begun to spread into the hinterland beyond the nearest mountain ranges. These relatively independent and mobile farmers (trekboers), who lived as pastoralists and hunters, were largely free from supervision by the Dutch authorities. As they intruded further upon the land and water sources, and stepped up their demands for livestock and labour, more and more of the indigenous inhabitants were dispossessed and incorporated into the colonial economy as servants.

Diseases such as smallpox, which was introduced by the Europeans in 1713, decimated the Khoisan, contributing to the decline of their cultures. Unions across the colour line took place and a new multiracial social order evolved, based on the supremacy of European colonists. The slave population steadily increased since more labour was needed. By the mid-1700s, there were more slaves in the Cape than there were "free burghers" (European colonists). The Asian slaves were concentrated in the towns, where they formed an artisan class. They brought with them the Islamic religion, which gained adherents and significantly shaped the working-class culture of the Western Cape. Slaves of African descent were found more often on the farms of outlying districts.

In the late 1700s, the Khoisan offered far more determined resistance to colonial encroachment across the length of the colonial frontier. From the 1770s, colonists also came into contact and conflict with Bantu-speaking chiefdoms. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy, first over the Khoisan and then over the isiXhosa-speaking chiefdoms to the east. It was only in the late 1800s that the subjugation of these settled African societies became feasible. For some time, their relatively sophisticated social

structure and economic systems fended off decisive disruption by incoming colonists, who lacked the necessary military superiority.

At the same time, a process of cultural change was set in motion, not least by commercial and missionary activity. In contrast to the Khoisan, the black farmers were, by and large, immune to European diseases. For this and other reasons, they were to greatly outnumber the white people in the population of white-ruled South Africa, and were able to preserve important features of their culture.

Perhaps because of population pressures, combined with the actions of slave traders in Portuguese territory on the east coast, the Zulu kingdom emerged as a highly centralised state. In the 1820s, the innovative leader Shaka established sway over a considerable area of south-east Africa and brought many chiefdoms under his dominion. As splinter groups conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the disruption was felt as far north as central Africa. Substantial states, such as Moshoeshoe's Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana chiefdoms, were established, partly for reasons of defence. The Mfecane or Difaqane, as this period of disruption and state formation became known, remains the subject of much speculative debate.

The British colonial era

In 1795, the British occupied the Cape as a strategic base against the French, thus controlling the sea route to the East.

After a brief reversion to the Dutch in the course of the Napoleonic wars, it was retaken in 1806 and kept by Britain in the post-war settlement of territorial claims.

The closed and regulated economic system of the Dutch period was swept away as the Cape Colony was integrated into the dynamic international trading empire of industrialising Britain.

A crucial new element was evangelicalism, brought to the Cape by Protestant missionaries. The evangelicals believed in the liberating effect of "free" labour and in the "civilising mission" of British imperialism. They were convinced that indigenous peoples could be fully assimilated into European Christian culture once the shackles of oppression had been removed.

The most important representative of the mission movement in South Africa was Dr John Philip, who arrived as superintendent of the London Missionary Society in 1819. His campaign on behalf of the oppressed Khoisan coincided with a high point in official sympathy for philanthropic concerns. One result was Ordinance 50 of 1828, which guaranteed

equal civil rights for “people of colour” within the colony and freed them from legal discrimination. At the same time, a powerful anti-slavery movement in Britain promoted a series of ameliorative measures imposed on the colonies in the 1820s, and the proclamation of emancipation, which came into force in 1834. The slaves were subject to a four-year period of “apprenticeship” with their former owners, on the grounds that they must be prepared for freedom, which came on 1 December 1838.

Although slavery had become less profitable because of a depression in the wine industry, Cape slave-owners rallied to oppose emancipation. The compensation money, which the British treasury paid out to sweeten the pill, injected unprecedented liquidity into the stagnant local economy. This brought a spurt of company formation, such as banks and insurance companies, as well as a surge of investment in land and wool sheep in the drier regions of the colony in the late 1830s.

Wool became a staple export on which the Cape economy depended for its further development in the middle decades of the century.

For the ex-slaves, as for the Khoisan servants, the reality of freedom was very different from the promise. As a wage-based economy developed, they remained dispossessed and exploited, with little opportunity to escape their servile lot. Increasingly, they were lumped together as the “coloured” people, a group which included the descendants of unions between indigenous and European peoples, and a substantial Muslim minority who became known as the “Cape Malays” (misleadingly, as they mostly came from the Indonesian archipelago).

The coloured people were discriminated against on account of their working-class status as well as their racial identity. Among the poor, especially in and around Cape Town, there continued to be a great deal of racial mixing and intermarriage throughout the 1800s.

In 1820, several thousand British settlers, who were swept up by a scheme to relieve Britain of its unemployed, were placed in the eastern Cape frontier zone as a buffer against the Xhosa chiefdoms. The vision of a dense settlement of small farmers was, however, ill-conceived and many of the settlers became artisans and traders. The more successful became an entrepreneurial class of merchants, large-scale sheep farmers and speculators with an insatiable demand for land. Some became fierce warmongers who pressed for the military dispossession of the chiefdoms. They coveted Xhosa land and welcomed the prospect of war

involving large-scale military expenditure by the imperial authorities. The Xhosa engaged in raiding as a means of asserting their prior claims to the land. Racial paranoia became integral to white frontier politics. The result was that frontier warfare became endemic through much of the 19th century, during which Xhosa war leaders such as Chief Maqoma became heroic figures to their people.

By the mid-1800s, British settlers of similar persuasion were to be found in Natal. They, too, called for imperial expansion in support of their land claims and trading enterprises.

Meanwhile, large numbers of the original colonists, the Boers, were greatly extending white occupation beyond the Cape’s borders to the north, in the movement that became known as the Great Trek, in the mid-1830s. Alienated by British liberalism, and with their economic enterprise usurped by British settlers, several thousand Boers from the interior districts, accompanied by a number of Khoisan servants, began a series of migrations northwards.

They moved to the Highveld and Natal, skirting the great concentrations of black farmers on the way by taking advantage of the areas disrupted during the Mfecane.

When the British, who were concerned about controlling the traffic through Port Natal (Durban), annexed the territory of Natal in 1843, those emigrant Boers who had hoped to settle there returned inland. These Voortrekkers (as they were later called) coalesced in two land-locked republics, the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State.

With limited coercive power, the Boer communities had to establish relations and develop alliances with some black chiefdoms, neutralising those who obstructed their intrusion or who posed a threat to their security.

Only after the mineral discoveries of the late 1800s did the balance of power swing decisively towards the colonists. The Boer republics then took on the trappings of real statehood and imposed their authority within the territorial borders that they had notionally claimed for themselves.

The Colony of Natal, situated to the south of the mighty Zulu State, developed along very different lines from the original colony of settlement, the Cape. The size of the black population left no room for the assimilationist vision of race domination embraced in the Cape. Chiefdoms consisting mainly of refugee groups in the aftermath of the Mfecane were persuaded to accept colonial protection in return for reserved land and the freedom to govern themselves in accordance with their own

customs. These chiefdoms were established in the heart of an expanding colonial territory.

Natal developed a system of political and legal dualism, whereby chiefly rule was entrenched and customary law was codified. Although exemptions from customary law could be granted to the educated products of the missions, in practice they were rare. Urban residence was strictly controlled and political rights outside the reserves were effectively limited to white people. This system is widely regarded as having provided a model for the segregationism that would prevail in the 20th century.

Natal's economy was boosted by the development of sugar plantations in the subtropical coastal lowlands. Indentured Indian labourers were imported from 1860 to work the plantations, and many Indian traders and market gardeners followed.

These Indians, who were segregated and discriminated against from the start, became a further important element in South Africa's population. It was in South Africa that Indian activist and leader Mohandas Gandhi refined, from the mid-1890s, the techniques of passive resistance, which he later effectively practised in India. Although Indians gradually moved into the Transvaal and elsewhere, they remain concentrated in Natal.

In 1853, the Cape Colony was granted a representative legislature in keeping with British policy, followed in 1872 by self-government. The franchise was formally non-racial, but also based on income and property qualifications. The result was that black and coloured people formed a minority of voters – although in certain places a substantial one.

What became known as the “liberal tradition” in the Cape depended on the fact that the great mass of Bantu-speaking farmers remained outside its colonial borders until late in the 19th century. Non-racialism could thus be embraced without posing a threat to white supremacy.

Numbers of black people within the Cape Colony had sufficient formal education or owned enough property to qualify for the franchise. Political alliances across racial lines were common in the eastern Cape constituencies. It is therefore not surprising that the eastern Cape became a seedbed of African nationalism, once the ideal and promise of inclusion in the common society had been so starkly violated by later racial policies.

The mineral revolution

By the late 19th century, the limitations of the Cape's liberal tradition were becoming apparent. The hardening of racial attitudes

that accompanied the rise of a more militant imperialist spirit coincided with the watershed discovery of mineral riches in the interior of southern Africa.

In a developing economy, cheap labour was at a premium, and the claims of educated blacks indentured for equality met with increasingly fierce resistance. At the same time, the large numbers of Africans in the chiefdoms beyond the Kei River and north of the Gariep (Orange River), then being incorporated into the Cape Colony, posed new threats to racial supremacy and white security, increasing segregationist pressures.

Alluvial diamonds were discovered on the Vaal River in the late 1860s. The subsequent discovery of dry deposits at what became the city of Kimberley drew tens of thousands of people, black and white, to the first great industrial hub in Africa, and the largest diamond deposit in the world. In 1871, the British, who ousted several rival claimants, annexed the diamond fields.

The Colony of Griqualand West thus created was incorporated into the Cape Colony in 1880. By 1888, the consolidation of diamond claims had led to the creation of the huge De Beers monopoly under the control of Cecil John Rhodes. He used his power and wealth to become Prime Minister of the Cape Colony (from 1890 to 1896) and, through his chartered British South Africa Company, conqueror and ruler of modern-day Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The mineral discoveries had a major impact on the subcontinent as a whole. A railway network linking the interior to the coastal ports revolutionised transportation and energised agriculture. Coastal cities such as modern-day Cape Town, Port Elizabeth, East London and Durban experienced an economic boom as port facilities were upgraded.

The fact that the mineral discoveries coincided with a new era of imperialism and the scramble for Africa, brought imperial power and influence to bear in southern Africa as never before. Independent African chiefdoms were systematically subjugated and incorporated by their white-ruled neighbours. In 1897, Zululand was incorporated into Natal.

The Transvaal was annexed by Britain in 1877. Boer resistance led to British withdrawal in 1881, but not before the Pedi (northern Sotho) State, which fell within the Republic's borders, had been subjugated. The indications were that, having once been asserted, British hegemony was likely to be reasserted.

The southern Sotho and Swazi territories were also brought under British rule but maintained their status as imperial dependencies, so that

both the current Lesotho and Swaziland escaped the rule of local white regimes.

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in the history of South Africa. It presaged the emergence of the modern South African industrial state.

Once the extent of the reefs had been established, and deep-level mining had proved to be a viable investment, it was only a matter of time before Britain and its local representatives again found a pretext for war against the Boer republics of Transvaal and the Orange Free State.

The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants on the goldfields (known as uitlanders) provided a lever for applying pressure on the government of President Paul Kruger. Egged on by the deep-level mining magnates, to whom the Boer government seemed obstructive and inefficient, and by the expectation of an uitlander uprising, Rhodes launched a raid into the Transvaal in late December 1895.

The raid's failure saw the end of Rhodes' political career, but Sir Alfred Milner, British high commissioner in South Africa from 1897, was determined to overthrow Kruger's government and establish British rule throughout the subcontinent. The Boer Government was eventually forced into a declaration of war in October 1899.

The mineral discoveries had a radical impact on every sphere of society. Labour was required on a massive scale and could only be provided by Africans, who had to be drawn away from the land.

Many Africans responded with alacrity to the opportunities presented by wage labour, travelling long distances to earn money to supplement rural enterprise in the homestead economy.

In response to the expansion of internal markets, blacks exploited their farming skills and family labour to good effect to increase production for sale. A substantial black peasantry arose, often by means of share-cropping or labour tenantry on white-owned farms.

For the white authorities, however, the chief consideration was ensuring a labour supply and undermining black competition on the land. Conquest, land dispossession, taxation and pass laws were designed to force black people off the land and channel them into labour markets, especially to meet the needs of the mines.

Gradually, the alternatives available to blacks were closed, and the decline of the homestead economy made wage labour increasingly essential for survival. The integration of blacks into the emerging urban and industrial society of South Africa should have followed these

developments, but short-term, recurrent labour migrancy suited employers and the authorities, which sought to entrench the system.

The closed compounds pioneered on the diamond fields, as a means of migrant labour control, were replicated at the gold mines. The preservation of communal areas from which migrants could be drawn had the effect of lowering wages, by denying blacks rights within the urban areas and keeping their families and dependants on subsistence plots in the reserves.

Blacks could be denied basic rights if the fiction could be maintained that they did not belong in "white South Africa," but to "tribal societies" from which they came to service the "white man's needs." Where black families secured a toehold in the urban areas, local authorities confined them to segregated "locations." This set of assumptions and policies informed the development of segregationist ideology and, later (from 1948), apartheid.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War (October 1899 to May 1902) and its aftermath

The war that followed the mineral revolution was mainly a white man's war. In its first phase, the Boer forces took the initiative, besieging the frontier towns of Mafeking (Mahikeng) and Kimberley in the northern Cape, and Ladysmith in northern Natal.

Some colonial Boers rebelled, however, in sympathy with the republics. But, after a large expeditionary force under lords Roberts and Kitchener arrived, the British advance was rapid. Kruger fled the Transvaal shortly before Pretoria fell in June 1900. The formal conquest of the two Boer republics was followed by a prolonged guerrilla campaign. Small, mobile groups of Boers denied the imperial forces their victory by disrupting rail links and supply lines.

Commandos swept deep into colonial territory, rousing rebellion wherever they went. The British were at a disadvantage, owing to their lack of familiarity with the terrain and the Boers' superior skills as horsemen and sharpshooters. The British responded with a scorched-earth policy, which included farm burnings, looting and the setting-up of concentration camps for non-combatants, in which some 26 000 Boer women and children died from disease. The incarceration of black (including coloured) people in the path of the war in racially segregated camps has been absent in conventional accounts of the war and has only recently been acknowledged.

They, too, suffered appalling conditions and some 14 000 (perhaps many more) are estimated to have died. At the same time, many black farmers were in a position to meet the demand for produce created by the military, or to avail themselves of employment opportunities at good wages. Some 10 000 black servants accompanied the Boer commandos, and the British used blacks as labourers, scouts, dispatch riders, drivers and guards.

The war also taught many Africans that the forces of dispossession could be rolled back if the circumstances were right. It gave black communities the opportunity to recolonise land lost in conquest, which enabled them to withhold their labour after the war.

Most blacks supported the British in the belief that Britain was committed to extending civil and political rights to black people. In this they were to be disappointed. In the Treaty of Vereeniging that ended the war, the British agreed to leave the issue of rights for blacks to be decided by a future self-governing (white) authority. All in all, the Anglo-Boer/South African War was a radicalising experience for blacks.

Britain's reconstruction regime set about creating a white-ruled dominion by uniting the former Boer republics (both by then British colonies) with Natal and the Cape.

The priority was to re-establish white control over the land and force the black people back to wage labour. The labour-recruiting system was improved, both internally and externally. Recruiting agreements were reached with the Portuguese authorities in Mozambique, from where much mine labour came.

When, by 1904, black resources still proved inadequate to get the mines working at pre-war levels, over 60 000 indentured Chinese were brought in. This precipitated a vociferous outcry from proponents of white supremacy in South Africa and liberals in Britain.

By 1910, all had been repatriated, a step made easier when a surge of blacks came forward from areas such as the Transkeian territories and the northern Transvaal, which had not previously been large-scale suppliers of migrants.

This was the heyday of the private recruiters, who exploited families' indebtedness to procure young men to labour in the mines. The blacks' post-war ability to withhold their labour was undercut by government action, abetted by drought and stock disease.

The impact of the Anglo-Boer/South African War as a seminal influence on the development of Afrikaner nationalist politics became apparent in subsequent years.

The Boer leaders – most notably Louis

Botha, Jan Smuts and JBM Hertzog – played a dominant role in the country's politics for the next half century. After initial plans for anglicisation of the defeated Afrikaners were abandoned as impractical, the British looked to the Afrikaners as collaborators in securing imperial political and economic interests.

During 1907 and 1908, the two former Boer republics were granted self-government but, crucially, with a whites-only franchise. Despite promises to the contrary, black interests were sacrificed in the interest of white nation-building across the white language divide.

The National Convention drew up a Constitution and the four colonies became an independent dominion called the Union of South Africa on 31 May 1910.

The 19th century's formally non-racial franchise was retained in the Cape but was not extended elsewhere, where rights of citizenship were confined to whites alone. It was clear from the start that segregation was the conventional wisdom of the new rulers. Black people were defined as outsiders, without rights or claims on the common society that their labour had helped to create.

Segregation

Government policy in the Union of South Africa did not develop in isolation, but against the backdrop of black political initiatives. Segregation and apartheid assumed their shape, in part, as a white response to blacks' increasing participation in the country's economic life and their assertion of political rights.

Despite the government's efforts to shore up traditionalism and retribalise them, black people became more fully integrated into the urban and industrial society of 20th-century South Africa than elsewhere on the continent. An educated élite of clerics, teachers, businesspeople, journalists and professionals grew to be a major force in black politics. Mission Christianity and its associated educational institutions exerted a profound influence on black political life, and separatist churches were early vehicles for African political assertion.

The experiences of studying abroad, and in particular interaction with black people struggling for their rights elsewhere in Africa, the United States of America and the Caribbean, played an important part.

A vigorous black press arose, associated in its early years with such pioneer editors as JT Jabavu, Pixley kaSeme, Dr Abdullah Abdurahman, Sol Plaatje and John Dube serving the black reading public.

At the same time, African communal struggles to maintain access to the land in rural

areas posed a powerful challenge to the white state. Traditional authorities often led popular struggles against intrusive and manipulative policies. Government attempts to control and co-opt the chiefs often failed.

Steps towards the formation of a national political organisation of coloured people began around the turn of the century, with the formation of the African Political Organisation in 1902 by Dr Abdurahman, mainly in the Cape Province.

The African National Congress (ANC), founded in 1912, became the most important black organisation, drawing together traditional authorities and the educated African élite in common causes.

In its early years, the ANC was concerned mainly with constitutional protest. Worker militancy emerged in the wake of the First World War and continued through the 1920s. It included strikes and an anti-pass campaign, given impetus by women, particularly in the Free State, resisting the extension of the pass laws to them. The Industrial and Commercial Workers' Union, under the leadership of Clements Kadalie, was (despite its name) the first populist, nationwide organisation representing black people in rural as well as urban areas. But it was short-lived.

The Communist Party, formed in 1921 and since then a force for both non-racialism and worker organisations, was to prove far longer-lasting. In other sections of the black population too, the turn of the century saw organised opposition emerging. Gandhi's leadership of protest against discriminatory laws gave impetus to the formation of provincial Indian congresses, including the Natal Indian Congress formed by him in 1894.

The principles of segregationist thinking were laid down in a 1905 report by the South African Native Affairs Commission and continued to evolve in response to these economic, social and political pressures. In keeping with its recommendations, the first union government enacted the seminal Natives Land Act in 1913.

This defined the remnants of their ancestral lands after conquest for African occupation, and declared illegal all land purchases or rent tenancy outside these reserves. The centenary of this Act was commemorated in 2013.

The reserves ("homelands" as they were subsequently called) eventually comprised about 13% of South Africa's land surface. Administrative and legal dualism reinforced the division between white citizens and black non-citizens, a dispensation personified by the governor-general who, as "supreme chief" over the country's African majority, was empowered to rule them by administrative fiat and decree.

The government also reserved skilled work for white people and denying black workers the right to organise. Legislation, which was consolidated in the Natives (Urban Areas) Act of 1923, entrenched urban segregation and controlled black mobility by means of pass laws. The pass laws were designed to force blacks into labour and to keep them there under conditions and at wage levels that suited white employers, and to deny them any bargaining power. In these and other ways, the foundations of apartheid were laid by successive governments representing the compromises hammered out by the National Convention of 1908 to 1909 to effect the union of English- and Afrikaans-speaking white people. However, divisions within the white community remained significant. Afrikaner nationalism grew as a factor in the years after union.

It was given impetus in 1914, both by the formation of the National Party (NP), in a breakaway from the ruling South African Party, and by a rebellion of Afrikaners who could not reconcile themselves with the decision to join the First World War against Germany.

In part, the NP spoke for Afrikaners impoverished by the Anglo-Boer/South African War and dislodged from the land by the development of capitalist farming.

An Afrikaner underclass was emerging in the towns, which found itself uncompetitive in the labour market, as white workers demanded higher wages than those paid to black people.

Soon, labour issues came to the fore. In 1920, some 71 000 black mineworkers went on strike in protest against the spiralling cost of living, but the strike was quickly put down by isolating the compounds where the migrant workers were housed. Another threat to government came from white workers. Immigrant white workers with mining experience abroad performed much of the skilled and semi-skilled work on the mines.

As mine owners tried to cut costs by using lower-wage black labour in semi-skilled jobs, white labour became increasingly militant. These tensions culminated in a bloody and dramatic rebellion on the goldfields in 1922, which the Smuts government put down with military force.

In 1924, a pact government under Hertzog, comprising Afrikaner nationalists and representatives of immigrant labour, ousted the Smuts regime.

The pact was based on a common suspicion of the dominance of mining capital, and a determination to protect the interests of white labour by intensifying discrimination against black people. The commitment to white labour policies in government employment, such as the railways and postal service, was intensified,

and the job colour bar was reinforced, with a key objective being to address what was known as the “poor-white problem”.

In 1934, the main white parties fused to combat the local effects of a worldwide depression.

This was followed by a new Afrikaner nationalist breakaway under Dr DF Malan. In 1936, white supremacy was further entrenched by the United Party with the removal of the qualifying Africans of the Cape Province from the common voters’ roll. Meanwhile, Malan’s breakaway NP was greatly augmented by an Afrikaner cultural revival spearheaded by the secret white male Afrikaner Broederbond and other cultural organisations during the year of the Voortrekker centenary celebrations (1938), as well as by anti-war sentiment from 1939.

Apartheid

After the Second World War, in 1948, the NP, with its ideology of apartheid that brought an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the segregationist policies of previous governments, won the general election. It did so against the background of a revival of mass militancy during the 1940s, after a period of relative quiescence in the 1930s when black groups attempted to foster unity among themselves. The change was marked by the formation of the ANC Youth League in 1943, fostering the leadership of figures such as Anton Lembede, AP Mda, Nelson Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu, who were to inspire the struggle for decades to come.

In the 1940s, squatter movements in peri-urban areas brought mass politics back to the urban centres. The 1946 Mineworkers’ Strike was a turning point in the emergence of politics of mass mobilisation.

As was the case with the First World War, the experience of the Second World War and post-war economic difficulties enhanced discontent.

For those who supported the NP, its primary appeal lay in its determination to maintain white domination in the face of rising mass resistance; uplift poor Afrikaners; challenge the pre-eminence of English-speaking white people in public life, the professions and business; and abolish the remaining imperial ties.

The State became an engine of patronage for Afrikaner employment. The Afrikaner Broederbond coordinated the party’s programme, ensuring that Afrikaner nationalist interests and policies attained ascendancy throughout civil society.

In 1961, the NP government under Prime Minister HF Verwoerd declared South Africa a republic, after winning a whites-only referendum

on the issue. A new currency, the Rand, and a new flag, anthem and coat of arms were formally introduced.

South Africa, having become a republic, had to apply for continued membership of the Commonwealth. In the face of demands for an end to apartheid, South Africa withdrew its application and a figurehead president replaced the British queen (represented locally by the governor-general) as head of state.

In most respects, apartheid was a continuation, in more systematic and brutal form, of the segregationist policies of previous governments. A new concern with racial purity was apparent in laws prohibiting interracial sexual activities and provisions for population registration requiring that every South African be assigned to one discrete racial category or another.

For the first time, the coloured people, who had always been subjected to informal discrimination, were brought within the ambit of discriminatory laws. In the mid-1950s, government took the drastic step of overriding an entrenched clause in the 1910 Constitution of the Union so as to be able to remove coloured voters from the common voters’ roll. It also enforced residential segregation, expropriating homes where necessary and policing massive forced removals into coloured “group areas.”

Until the 1940s, South Africa’s racial policies had not been entirely out of step with those to be found in the colonial world. But by the 1950s, which saw decolonisation and a global backlash against racism gathering pace, the country was dramatically opposed to world opinion on questions of human rights. The architects of apartheid, among whom Dr Verwoerd was pre-eminent, responded by elaborating a theory of multinationalism.

Their policy, which they termed “separate development,” divided the African population into artificial ethnic “nations,” each with its own “homeland” and the prospect of “independence,” supposedly in keeping with trends elsewhere on the continent.

This divide-and-rule strategy was designed to disguise the racial basis of official policy-making by the substitution of the language of ethnicity. This was accompanied by much ethnographic engineering, as efforts were made to resurrect tribal structures. In the process, the government sought to create a significant collaborating class.

The truth was that the rural reserves were by this time thoroughly degraded by overpopulation and soil erosion. This did not prevent four of the “homeland” structures (Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda and Ciskei) being declared “independent,” a status which the vast

majority of South Africans, and therefore also the international community, declined to recognise. In each case, the process involved the repression of opposition and the use by the government of the power to nominate and thereby pad elected assemblies with a quota of compliant figures.

Forced removals from “white” areas affected some 3,5 million people and vast rural slums were created in the homelands, which were used as dumping grounds. The pass laws and influx control were extended and harshly enforced, and labour bureaux were set up to channel labour to where it was needed.

Hundreds of thousands of people were arrested or prosecuted under the pass laws each year, reaching over half a million a year from the mid-1960s to the mid-1970s. Industrial decentralisation to growth points on the borders of (but not inside) the homelands was promoted as a means of keeping blacks out of “white” South Africa.

In virtually every sphere, from housing to education and healthcare, central government took control over black people’s lives with a view to reinforcing their allotted role as “temporary sojourners”, welcome in “white” South Africa solely to serve the needs of the employers of labour.

However, these same programmes of control became the focus of resistance. In particular, the campaign against the pass laws formed a cornerstone of the struggle.

The end of apartheid

The introduction of apartheid policies coincided with the adoption by the ANC in 1949 of its programme of action, expressing the renewed militancy of the 1940s. The programme embodied the rejection of white domination and a call for action in the form of protests, strikes and demonstrations. There followed a decade of turbulent mass action in resistance to the imposition of still harsher forms of segregation and oppression.

The Defiance Campaign of 1952 carried mass mobilisation to new heights under the banner of non-violent resistance to the pass laws. These actions were influenced in part by the philosophy of Mohandas Gandhi.

A critical step in the emergence of non-racialism was the formation of the Congress Alliance, including the ANC; South African Indian Congress; the Coloured People’s Congress; a small white congress organisation (the Congress of Democrats); and the South African Congress of Trade Unions.

The alliance gave formal expression to an emerging unity across racial and class lines

that was manifested in the Defiance Campaign and other mass protests, including against the Bantu education of this period, which also saw women’s resistance take a more organised character with the formation of the Federation of South African Women.

In 1955, the Freedom Charter was drawn up at the Congress of the People in Soweto. The charter enunciated the principles of the struggle, binding the movement to a culture of human rights and non-racialism. Over the next few decades, the Freedom Charter was elevated to an important symbol of the freedom struggle.

The Pan-Africanist Congress (PAC), founded by Robert Sobukwe and based on the philosophies of “Africanism” and anti-communism, broke away from the Congress Alliance in 1959.

The State’s initial response, harsh as it was, was not yet as draconian as it was to become. Its attempt to prosecute more than 150 anti-apartheid leaders for treason, in a trial that began in 1956, ended in acquittals in 1961. But by that time, mass organised opposition had been banned.

It was the 60th anniversary of the 1952 women’s march in 2012. You strike a woman – you strike a rock! *Wathint’ abafazi, wathint’ imbokodo!* In 1956, with these words thousands of women advanced the cause to liberate South Africa from apartheid rule. The phrase has come to symbolise women’s courage and strength in South Africa. During the early 1950s, Lilian Ngoyi, Helen Joseph, Albertina Sisulu, Sophia Williams-De Bruyn, and many others formed the Federation of South African Women (FSAW). With the Blacks (Abolition of Passes and Coordination of Documents) Act, 1952 (Act 67 of 1952), the South African Government amended the pass laws, requiring all black people over the age of 16 to carry a “reference book” at all times.

On 9 August 1956, more than 20 000 women of all races marched through the streets of Pretoria to the Union Buildings to hand over a petition to JG Strijdom, South Africa’s Prime Minister, protesting the introduction of the new pass laws and the Group Areas Act, 1950 (Act 41 of 1950). The latter enforced different residential areas for different races and led to forced removals of people living in “wrong” areas. On the day of the march, Strijdom had arranged to be elsewhere, and the petition was eventually accepted by his secretary.

However, the first attempt to make black women carry passes was in 1913 when the then Orange Free State introduced a new requirement that women, in addition to existing regulations for black men, had to carry reference documents.

The resulting protests, by a multiracial group of women, many of whom were professionals, took the form of passive resistance through refusing to carry the new passes. Matters came to a head at Sharpeville in March 1960, when 69 anti-pass demonstrators were killed when police fired on a demonstration called by the PAC. A state of emergency was imposed and detention without trial was introduced.

The black political organisations were banned and their leaders went into exile or were arrested. In this climate, the ANC and PAC abandoned their long-standing commitment to non-violent resistance and turned to armed struggle, combined with underground organisation and mobilisation as well as the mobilisation of international solidarity. Top leaders, including members of the newly formed military wing Umkhonto we Sizwe (MK) ("Spear of the Nation"), were arrested in 1963.

In the "Rivonia Trial", eight ANC leaders, including Nelson Mandela, were convicted of sabotage (instead of treason, the original charge) and sentenced to life imprisonment.

In this period, leaders of other organisations, including the PAC and the New Unity Movement, were also sentenced to long terms of imprisonment and/or banned. The 1960s was a decade of overwhelming repression and relative political disarray among black people in the country. Armed action was contained by the state.

State repression played a central role in containing internal resistance, and the leadership of the struggle shifted increasingly to the missions in exile. At the same time, the ANC leadership embarked on a campaign to infiltrate the country through what was then Rhodesia (now Zimbabwe).

In August 1967, a joint force of MK and the Zimbabwean People's Revolutionary Army (Zipra) of the Zimbabwe African People's Union entered Zimbabwe, and over a two-month period engaged the joint Rhodesian and South African security forces. Although the joint MK-Zipra force failed to reach South Africa, this was the first military confrontation between the military forces of the ANC-led alliance and white security forces.

The resurgence of resistance politics in the early 1970s was dramatic. The Black Consciousness Movement, led by Steve Biko (who was killed in detention in 1977), reawakened a sense of pride and self-esteem in black people.

News of the brutal death of Biko reverberated around the globe and led to unprecedented outrage.

White capitalist economies sputtered with the oil crisis of 1973 and black trade unions

were revived. A wave of strikes reflected a new militancy that involved better organisation and new sectors, in particular intellectuals and the student movement, being drawn into mass struggle and debate over the principles informing it. Rallies at black universities in support of Frelimo, the Mozambican liberation movement, also gave expression to the growing militancy.

The year 1976 marked the beginning of a sustained anti-apartheid revolt. In June, school pupils of Soweto rose up against apartheid education, followed by youth uprisings all around the country. Despite the harsh repression that followed, students continued to organise, with the formation in 1979 of organisations for school students (Congress of South African Students) and college and university students (Azanian Students Organisation).

By the 1980s, the different forms of struggle – armed struggle, mass mobilisation and international solidarity – were beginning to integrate and coalesce.

The United Democratic Front and the informal umbrella, the Mass Democratic Movement, emerged as legal vehicles of democratic forces struggling for liberation. Clerics played a prominent public role in these movements. The involvement of workers in resistance took on a new dimension with the formation of the Congress of South African Trade Unions and the National Council of Trade Unions.

Popular anger was directed against all those who were deemed to be collaborating with the government in the pursuit of its objectives, and the black townships became virtually ungovernable. From the mid-1980s, regional and national states of emergency were enforced.

Developments in neighbouring states, where mass resistance to white minority and colonial rule led to Portuguese decolonisation in the mid-1970s and the abdication of Zimbabwe's minority regime in 1980, left South Africa exposed as the last bastion of white supremacy.

Under growing pressure and increasingly isolated internationally, the government embarked on a dual strategy, introducing limited reform coupled with intensifying repression and militarisation of society, with the objective of containing the pressures and increasing its support base while crushing organised resistance. An early example of reform was the recognition of black trade unions to try to stabilise labour relations. In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of Parliament.

The vast majority of these groups demonstrated their rejection of the tricameral dispensation

through massive boycotts of elections, but it was kept in place by the apartheid regime despite its visible lack of legitimacy. Attempts to legitimise community councils as vehicles for the participation of blacks outside the Bantustans in local government met a similar fate.

Militarisation included the ascendancy of the State Security Council, which usurped the role of the executive in crucial respects, and a succession of states of emergency as part of the implementation of a comprehensive counter-insurgency strategy to combat what, by the mid-1980s, was an endemic insurrectionary spirit in the land.

However, by the late 1980s, popular resistance was taking the form of mass defiance campaigns, while struggles over more localised issues saw broad sections of communities mobilised in united action. Popular support for released political prisoners and for the armed struggle was being openly expressed.

In response to the rising tide of resistance, the international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid cause. Sanctions and boycotts were instituted, both unilaterally by countries across the world and through the United Nations (UN). These sanctions were called for in a coordinated strategy by the internal and external anti-apartheid movement in South Africa.

FW de Klerk, who replaced PW Botha as State President in 1989, announced at the opening of Parliament in February 1990 the unbanning of the liberation movements and release of political prisoners, among them Nelson Mandela. A number of factors led to this step. International financial, trade, sport and cultural sanctions were clearly biting. Above all, even if South Africa was nowhere near collapse, either militarily or economically, several years of emergency rule and ruthless repression had clearly neither destroyed the structures of organised resistance, nor helped establish legitimacy for the apartheid regime or its collaborators. Instead, popular resistance, including mass and armed action, was intensifying.

The ANC, enjoying popular recognition and legitimacy as the foremost liberation organisation, was increasingly regarded as a government-in-waiting.

International support for the liberation movement came from various countries around the globe, particularly from former socialist countries and Nordic countries as well as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM).

The other liberation organisations increasingly experienced various internal and external pressures and did not enjoy much popular support.

To outside observers, and also in the eyes of growing numbers of white South Africans, apartheid stood exposed as morally bankrupt, indefensible and impervious to reforms.

The collapse of global communism, the negotiated withdrawal of Cuban forces from Angola, and the culmination of the South-West African People's Organisation's liberation struggle in the negotiated independence of Namibia – formerly South-West Africa, administered by South Africa as a League of Nations mandate since 1919 – did much to change the mindset of white people. No longer could they demonise the ANC and PAC as fronts for international communism.

White South Africa had also changed in deeper ways. Afrikaner nationalism had lost much of its *raison d'être*. Many Afrikaners had become urban, middle class and relatively prosperous.

Their ethnic grievances and attachment to ethnic causes and symbols had diminished. A large part of the NP's core constituency was ready to explore larger national identities, even across racial divides, and yearned for international respectability.

In 1982, disenchanted hardliners split from the NP to form the Conservative Party, leaving the NP open to more flexible and modernising influences. After this split, factions within the Afrikaner elite openly started to pronounce in favour of a more inclusive society, causing more friction with the NP government, which became increasingly militaristic and authoritarian.

A number of business, student and academic Afrikaners held meetings publicly and privately with the ANC in exile. Secret talks were held between the imprisoned Mandela and government ministers about a new dispensation for South Africa, with black people forming a major part of it.

Inside the country, mass action became the order of the day. Petty apartheid laws and symbols were openly challenged and removed. Together with a sliding economy and increasing international pressure, these developments made historic changes inevitable.

The First Decade of Freedom

After a long negotiation process, sustained despite much opportunistic violence from the right wing and its surrogates, and in some instances sanctioned by elements of the State, South Africa's first democratic election was held in April 1994 under an interim Constitution.

The interim Constitution divided South Africa into nine new provinces in place of the previous four provinces and 10 "homelands", and provided for the Government of National Unity (GNU) to

be constituted by all parties with at least 20 seats in the National Assembly.

The NP and the Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP) formed part of the GNU until 1996, when the NP withdrew. The ANC-led government embarked on a programme to promote the reconstruction and development of the country and its institutions.

This called for the simultaneous pursuit of democratisation and socio-economic change, as well as reconciliation and the building of consensus founded on the commitment to improve the lives of all South Africans, in particular the poor. It required the integration of South Africa into a rapidly changing global environment.

Pursuit of these objectives was a consistent focus of government during the first decade of freedom, seeking the unity of a previously divided society in working together to overcome the legacy of a history of division, exclusion and neglect.

Converting democratic ideals into practice required, among other things, initiating a radical overhaul of the machinery of government at every level, working towards service delivery, openness and a culture of human rights. It has required a more integrated approach to planning and implementation to ensure that the many different aspects of transformation and socio-economic upliftment cohere with maximum impact.

A significant milestone in the democratisation of South Africa was the exemplary Constitution-making process, which in 1996 delivered a document that has evoked worldwide admiration. So, too, have been the national and local government elections subsequent to 1994 – all conducted peacefully, with high levels of participation compared with the norm in most democracies, and accepted by all as free and fair in their conduct and results.

Since 2001, participatory democracy and interactive governance have been strengthened through the practice of public participation, roving executive council and mayoral meetings, in which members of the Executive, in all three spheres of government, including The Presidency, regularly communicate directly with the public about the implementation of programmes of reconstruction and development.

The second democratic national election in 1999 saw the ANC majority increase to just short of two-thirds and the election of Thabo Mbeki as President and successor to Mandela. It saw a sharp decline in the popularity of the NP (then the New National Party [NNP]) and its replacement by the Democratic Party as the official opposition in Parliament. These two parties formed the Democratic Alliance (DA), which the NNP left in

2001.

The Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC), under the leadership of Archbishop Desmond Tutu, helped inculcate a commitment to accountability and transparency in South Africa's public life, at the same time helping to heal wounds inflicted by the inhumanities of the apartheid era.

During 2003, Parliament accepted government's response to the final report of the TRC. Out of 22 000 individuals or surviving families appearing before the commission, 19 000 were identified as needing urgent reparation assistance – virtually all, where the necessary information was available, received interim reparations.

As final reparations, government provided a once-off grant of R30 000 to individuals or survivors who appeared before and were designated by the TRC, over and above the programmes for material assistance. There are continuing programmes to project the symbolism of the struggle and the ideal of freedom. These include the Freedom Park and other symbols and monuments, and such matters as records of history, remaking of cultural and art forms and changing geographical and place names.

The ethos of partnership informed the establishment of the National Economic Development and Labour Council. It brings together government, business, organised labour and development organisations to confront the challenges of growth and development for South Africa in a turbulent and globalising international economy.

The Presidential Jobs Summit in 1998 and the Growth and Development Summit in June 2003 brought these sectors together to take advantage of the conditions in South Africa for faster growth and development.

At the summit, a comprehensive set of agreements was concluded to address urgent challenges in a practical way and to speed up job-creating growth and development.

Partnership between government and civil society was further strengthened by the creation of a number of working groups through which sectors of society – business, organised labour, higher education, religious leaders, youth and women – engage regularly with the President.

In the first decade of freedom, government placed emphasis on meeting basic needs through programmes for socio-economic development such as the provision of housing, piped water, electricity, education and healthcare, as well as social grants for those in need.

The integration of South Africa into the global political, economic and social system has been a

priority for democratic South Africa. As a country isolated during the apartheid period, an African country, a developing country, and a country whose liberation was achieved with the support of the international community, it remains of critical importance to build political and economic links with the countries and regions of the world, and to work with others for an international environment that is more favourable to development across the world, and in Africa and South Africa in particular.

The South African Government is committed to the African Renaissance, which is based on the consolidation of democracy, economic development and a cooperative approach to resolving the challenges the continent faces. South Africa hosted the launch in 2002 of the African Union (AU), a step towards further unification of Africa in pursuit of socio-economic development, the Organisation of African Unity having fulfilled its mandate to liberate Africa. President Mbeki chaired the AU for its founding year, handing over the chair to President Joaquim Chissano of Mozambique in July 2003. In 2004, the AU decided that South Africa should host the Pan-African Parliament and it met for its second session in South Africa, the first time on South African soil, in September that year. By participating in UN and AU initiatives to resolve conflict and promote peace and security on the continent – in countries such as the Democratic Republic of Congo, Burundi and Sudan – South Africa has contributed to the achievement of conditions conducive to the entrenchment of stability, democracy and faster development.

During the first decade of freedom, it acted at various times as chair of the Southern African Development Community, NAM, AU and the Commonwealth Heads of Government meetings. It hosted several international conferences, including the UN Conference on Trade and Development in 1996, the 2000 World AIDS Congress, the World Conference Against Racism in 2001, the World Summit on Sustainable Development in 2002 and the World Parks Congress in 2003. The country has also been represented in international forums such as the International Monetary Fund's Development Committee and Interpol.

The Second Decade of Freedom

When South Africa celebrated 10 years of freedom in 2004, there were celebrations across the world in countries whose peoples had helped to bring freedom to South Africa through their solidarity, and who today are partners in reconstruction and development. As government

took stock of the first decade of freedom in the *Towards a Ten Year Review*, it was able to document great progress by South Africans in pursuit of their goals, as well as the challenges that face the nation as it traverses the second decade of its freedom towards 2014.

In its third democratic elections, in April 2004, the country gave an increased mandate to the Government's programme for reconstruction and development and for the entrenchment of the rights in the Constitution. It mandated government specifically to create the conditions for halving unemployment and poverty by 2014. Following these elections, President Mbeki was appointed to a second term of office – a position he relinquished in September 2008, following the decision of the National Executive Committee of the ANC to recall him. Parliament elected Kgalema Motlanthe as President of South Africa on 25 September 2008.

Local government elections in 2006, following a long period of civic unrest as communities protested against a mixed record of service delivery, saw increased participation compared with the previous local elections, as well as increased support for the ruling party based on a manifesto for a concerted effort, in partnership with communities, to make local government work better.

South Africa held national and provincial elections to elect a new National Assembly as well as the provincial legislature in each province on 22 April 2009. Some 23 million people were registered for the 2009 general election, which was about 2,5 million more than in 2004. About 77% of registered voters took part in the election. The results for the top five parties were as follows: the ANC achieved 65,9%; the DA 16,6%; the newly-formed Congress of the People (Cope) 7,4%; the IFP 4,5%; and the Independent Democrats 0,9% of the votes cast.

Jacob Zuma was inaugurated as President of South Africa on 9 May 2009. Shortly thereafter, President Zuma announced several changes to existing government departments and the creation of new structures within The Presidency. The latter essentially comprise the Ministry for Performance Monitoring, Evaluation and Administration and the National Planning Ministry, in keeping with the new administration's approach to intensify government delivery through an outcomes-based approach, coupled with a government-wide monitoring and evaluation system.

Government adopted 14 outcomes as its focus areas. These include among other things: improving the quality of basic education and health services, strengthening the fight against crime, creating decent employment through

inclusive growth, and boosting skills development. It also included ensuring food security for all, building sustainable human settlements and an improved quality of household life, improving local government structures and an efficient and development-oriented public service.

A significant milestone for South Africa in the second decade of freedom was the successful hosting of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

The tournament, which was the first on African soil, demonstrated that South Africa has the infrastructure and capability to warrant serious investment consideration. It also showcased South Africa and its people to the world.

The local government elections held on 18 May 2011 were characterised by lively and respectful campaigning with all political parties free to engage with voters in all areas. The Independent Electoral Commission highlighted decreased voter apathy and achieved an impressive 57,6% registered voter turn-out – an improvement from the previous local government elections, which scored below the 50% mark. The ANC won the highest number of seats and councils – 198 councils and 5 633 seats, constituting 62% of the vote. The DA came second with 18 councils, 1 555 seats and 23,9% support. The ANC and DA were followed by the IFP and Cope.

As part of government's commitment to secure a better quality of life for all, the National Planning Commission (NPC) in The Presidency finalised the *National Development Plan (NDP): Vision for 2030* in 2011. The plan was a step in the process of charting a new path for South Africa.

By 2030, government seeks to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality. The plan was the product of not just the NPC but also tens of thousands of ordinary South Africans who shared their dreams, hopes and ideas for the future.

In August 2012, the Chairperson of the NPC, Minister Trevor Manuel, handed the revised NDP 2030 over to President Zuma during a Joint Sitting of both Houses in Parliament. The revised document, entitled *Our future – make it work*, is a policy blueprint for eliminating poverty and reducing inequality in South Africa by 2030.

Implementation of the plan will be broken up into five-year chunks, in line with the electoral cycle, with the 2014 to 2019 medium-term strategic framework forming the first five-year building block of the plan.

The Presidency will lead the formulation of the 2014 to 2019 medium-term strategic framework, which includes key targets from the NDP and other plans such as the New Growth Path, National Infrastructure Plan and Industry Policy Action Plan.

The Presidency and National Treasury will

work with government departments to clarify roles and responsibilities, ensure that plans and budgets are aligned, and develop clear performance indicators for each programme.

Government will focus on areas where implementation of existing policies needs to improve and will hold focused discussions to overcome obstacles to implementation. It will also engage with other sectors to understand how they are contributing to the NDP's implementation and to identify any obstacles they face.

The 2019 to 2024 and 2024 to 2029 planning cycles will be used to initiate the remaining activities and will be informed by a performance review of the previous cycle.

The objective of a better life for the people of South Africa, the continent of Africa and the world at large was at the heart of the country's successful hosting of the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change's 17th Conference of the Parties in Durban towards the end of 2011. Aware of the fact that Africa is the continent most affected by the impact of climate change, South Africa was committed to ensuring that Durban delivered a fair and balanced outcome that would help secure the future of our planet. The resulting Durban Platform outcome was a coup for South Africa and the African continent.

South Africa has continued to build on its international profile. On 1 January 2011, South Africa began its second term as a nonpermanent member of the UN Security Council (UNSC) for the period 2011 and 2012. South Africa serves alongside the five permanent members, China, France, the Russian Federation, the United Kingdom and the United States of America, and elected members Bosnia and Herzegovina, Brazil, Colombia, Gabon, Germany, India, Lebanon, Nigeria and Portugal. In January 2012, the UNSC President saw the adoption of Resolution 2033 that provides for closer cooperation between the UN and the AU.

In the conduct of its international relations, South Africa is committed to garnering support for its domestic priorities, promoting the interests of the African continent, enhancing democracy and human rights, upholding justice and international law in relations between nations, seeking the peaceful resolution of conflicts and promoting economic development through regional and international cooperation in an interdependent world.

On 8 January 2012, Africa's oldest liberation movement, the ANC, celebrated 100 years of existence. This was a historic achievement, not only for the movement, but also for South Africa, the continent and the world. Thousands

of ordinary South Africans, political and religious leaders attended the centenary celebrations which were held in Mangaung, Free State, the birthplace of the ANC.

On 25 May 2012 the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) Organisation announced that the SKA Project would be shared between South Africa and Australia, with a majority share coming to South Africa.

The full dish array and the dense aperture array will be built in Africa. The core, i.e. the region with the highest concentration of receivers, will be constructed in the Northern Cape, about 80 km from the town of Carnarvon (the same site where the MeerKAT is being constructed). The sparse aperture array (low-frequency array) will be built in Western Australia.

Over the next few years, teams of radio astronomy scientists and engineers from around the world will work together to scope and finalise the design of the SKA.

In July 2012, Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma, then Minister of Home Affairs, was elected as the first female head of the AU Commission and the first person from South Africa to hold this position. In September 2012, she received the UN South-South Award for Global Leadership.

In November 2012, South Africa was elected by the members of the UN General Assembly to the UN's 47-member Economic and Social Council (Ecosoc). It is one of the principal organs of the UN, alongside the Security Council and General Assembly. South Africa completed its two-year non-renewable, non-permanent membership of the Security Council on 31 December 2012, and immediately assumed the membership of Ecosoc on 1 January 2013. South Africa last served in Ecosoc from 2004 to 2006.

Released in September 2012, the World Economic Forum's *Global Competitiveness Report 2012/13* confirmed that South Africa remained the most competitive economy in sub-Saharan Africa.

On 30 October 2012, Statistics South Africa released the Census 2011 results. The census, which analysed the country's demographics, population distribution and access to services, average household size, income, migration, and mortality, was the third national population and housing count in post-apartheid South Africa. Results showed that the country's population grew to 51,8 million people from 44,8 million in 2001, representing a 15,5% increase over the last decade.

In December 2012, President Zuma was re-elected as the president of the ANC during the ruling party's congress in Mangaung. Cyril Ramaphosa was elected as the party's deputy president.

In July 2013, Ms Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka, was appointed executive director of the UN Women Entity for Gender Equality and Empowerment of Women, and Geraldine Fraser-Moleketi, was appointed director in the UN Development Programme's Bureau for Development Policy.

While receiving intensive medical care at home for a lung infection after spending three months in hospital, South Africa's first democratically elected President and anti-apartheid icon, Nelson Mandela, died at the age of 95, on 5 December 2013.

Mr Mandela led South Africa's transition from white-minority rule in the 1990s, after serving 27 years in prison for his political activities.

His body lay in state at the Union Buildings from 11 to 13 December. He was buried in his home town of Qunu in the Eastern Cape on 15 December 2013.

South Africa celebrated 20 Years of Freedom in 2014, which was a historic milestone for the country. The Twenty Year Review, which was released in 2013, and the National Planning Commission's 2011 Diagnostic Report, highlight that poverty, inequality and unemployment continue to negatively affect the lives of many people.

Despite progress in reducing rural poverty and increasing access to basic services in rural areas over the past 20 years, rural areas are still characterised by great poverty and inequality. As stated in the NDP, by 2030, South Africa's rural communities must have better opportunities to participate fully in the economic, social and political life of the country.

Government's programme of radical economic transformation is about placing the economy on a qualitatively different path that ensures more rapid, sustainable growth, higher investment, increased employment, reduced inequality and deracialisation of the economy. The NDP sets a growth target of at least 5% a year, and emphasises measures to ensure that the benefits of growth are equitably shared.

The 2014 South African general election was held on 7 May 2014, to elect a new National Assembly and new provincial legislatures in each province. It was the fifth election held in South Africa under conditions of universal adult suffrage since the end of the apartheid era in 1994, and the first held since the death of Nelson Mandela. It was also the first time that South African expatriates were allowed to vote in a South African national election.

The National Assembly election was won by the ANC (62,1%). The official opposition, Democratic Alliance (DA) won 22,2% of the votes, while the newly formed Economic Freedom Fighters (EFF) obtained 6,4% of the vote.

Eight of the nine provincial legislatures were won by the ANC. The EFF obtained over 10% of the votes in Gauteng, Limpopo and North West, and beat the DA to second place in Limpopo and North West.

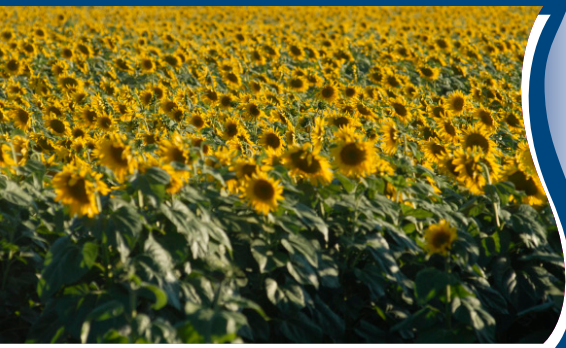
In the other six provinces won by the ANC, the DA obtained second place. In the Western Cape, the only province not won by the ANC, the DA increased its majority from 51,5% to 59,4%.

The September 2014 Quarterly Employment Statistics report, released on 11 December 2014, showed that despite job losses recorded in some of the sectors of the economy, there were quarter-on-quarter increases reported by the mining (8 000), finance (6 000) and trade (4 000) industries.

Year-on-year, an additional 83 000 formal jobs were created between September 2013 and September 2014. This reflects an annual increase of 1,0%. The largest increase was recorded by community services industry (73 000), followed by the trade and finance industries, with 21 000 and 20 000 jobs respectively.

Gross earnings paid to employees increased by R18,9 billion from R409 billion in June 2014 to R428 billion in September 2014. The mining industry recorded the largest quarterly percentage increase of 20,9% in earnings.





Agriculture

The mandate of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) is to address production and consumption in the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors. The department's strategic goals over the medium term, which are organised around the key priority areas of food security, job creation, and rural and economic development, are to:

- provide effective and efficient strategic leadership, governance and administration in the department
- increase production and productivity in the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors, to enhance employment and economic growth
- provide an enabling environment for food security and sector transformation
- ensure the sustainable use of natural resources in the forestry and fisheries sectors through the conservation, protection, rehabilitation and recovery of natural resources within ecosystems.

The agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors are crucial to South Africa's socio-economic development. However, the future of these sectors depends on critical issues such as climate change, population growth, skills shortages, changes in consumer needs and shifts in the global economy and related markets.

As one of the most employment-intensive sectors of the economy, agriculture's potential impact on empowerment and poverty relief is much larger than its actual weight in the economy suggests. While the primary agricultural sector contributes about 3% to the country's gross domestic product (GDP), it represents about 7% of formal employment. If the entire value chain of agriculture is taken into account, its contribution to GDP reaches about 12%.

Agricultural activities range from intensive crop production and mixed farming to cattle-ranching in the bushveld and sheep-farming in the more arid regions. About 12% of South Africa's surface area can be used for crop production. High-potential arable land comprises only 22% of total arable land. Some 1,3 million ha are under irrigation.

The forestry industry is one of the strategic economic sectors in South Africa, with a significant contribution towards economic growth and job creation. Therefore, the expansion of South Africa's forest resources remains one of the department's main objectives to ensure

in March 2015, the Scientific Commission for Animal Diseases concluded that the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) has made commendable progress to comply with the relevant requirements of the Terrestrial Animal Health Code for the maintenance of the country's foot and mouth disease-free status.

growth, transformation and sustainability of the sector.

As a natural resource, the fisheries sector is also recognised as a potential area for economic growth. The mandate for fisheries management includes fresh water and inland fisheries, as well as aquaculture.

Broadening the scope of aquaculture will provide the opportunity to increase the production of fish and other aquatic food species, thereby decreasing the pressure on natural fish resources. Through the National Aquaculture Strategic Framework, the department strives to ensure effective stakeholder engagement and management, as well as advancing the transformation agenda in the sector.

Legislation and frameworks

Subsequent to a tender process, the University of Pretoria was appointed as the service provider to assist the DAFF with the review of all its legislation in 2012.

Gross value of agricultural production, 2013 (R' million)	
Field crops	
Maize	25 050
Wheat	5 410
Hay	3 696
Grain sorghum	456
Sugar cane	7 865
Groundnuts	411
Tobacco	519
Sunflower seed	2 806
Soya beans	3 681
Other	2 644
Total	52 538
Horticulture	
Viticulture	4 821
Citrus fruit	9 696
Subtropical fruit	3 014
Deciduous and other summer fruit	13 151
Vegetables	9 717
Potatoes	6 165
Other	4 085
Total	50 649
Animal products	
Wool	2 750
Poultry and poultry products	39 324
Cattle slaughtered	20 114
Sheep and goats slaughtered	4 760
Pigs slaughtered	3 635
Milk	11 930
Other	6 317
Total	88 830
Grand total	192 017

Source: Directorate: Statistics and Economic Analysis, Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries

The following key legislation guides the actions and decision-making of the sector:

- The Veterinary and Para-Veterinary Act, 1962 (Act 71 of 1962) provides for the establishment, powers and functions of the South African Veterinary Council; the registration of people practising veterinary and para-veterinary professions and control of the practising of veterinary and para-veterinary professions, and was amended in 2012.
- The Fertiliser and Farm Feeds, Agricultural Remedies and Stock Remedies Act, 1947 (Act 36 of 1947) regulates the registration of fertilisers, stock feeds, agricultural remedies, stock remedies, sterilising plants and pest control operators, and provides for control over the acquisition, disposal, sale and use of fertilisers, farm feeds, agricultural remedies and stock remedies.
- Consultation regarding the Plant Breeders' Rights Amendment Bill was underway to replace the Plant Breeders' Rights Act, 1976 (Act 15 of 1976). The Bill aims to strengthen the protection of intellectual property rights relevant to new plant varieties, which in turn positively impacts on the competitiveness of South Africa's agricultural sector.
- The Genetically Modified Organisms (GMO) Act, 1997 (Act 15 of 1997) provides for the regulation of GMO activities in South Africa, and states that biosafety assessments should be conducted for every proposed GMO activity. The Act provides a framework to ensure that all activities involving the use of GMOs are carried out in such a way as to limit possible harmful consequences.
- The Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002) and the National Disaster Risk-Management Framework of 2005 address agricultural risk management and climate change, and are supplemented by climate change-related policies and programmes.
- The Meat Safety Act, 2000 (Act 40 of 2000) provides for measures to promote meat safety and the safety of animal products; establish and maintain essential national standards in respect of abattoirs; regulate the import and export of meat and establish meat safety schemes.
- The Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act 43 of 1983) provides for control over the use of natural agricultural resources to promote the conservation of soil, water sources and vegetation, and the combating of weeds and invader plants.
- The Control of Markets in Rural Areas Ordinance, 1965 (Ordinance 38 of 1965).
- The Problem Animals Control Ordinance, 1978 (Ordinance 14 of 1978).

- The Livestock Brands Act, 1962 (Act 87 of 1962) regulates the registration of a brand in the name of an owner of livestock for the purpose of identifying the livestock.
- The Agricultural Credit Act, 1966 (Act 28 of 1966) provides for a system of assistance to people or undertaking to farming operations, and for control in respect of assistance rendered.
- The Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act, 1970 (Act 70 of 1970) regulates the subdivision of agricultural land and its use for purposes other than agriculture. Investigations are conducted by the provincial department in support of the execution of the Act.
- The Plant Improvement Act, 1976 (Act 53 of 1976) provides for the registration of establishments where plants and propagation material are sold and packed, for the introduction of schemes for the certification of certain propagation material, for the requirements to which plants and propagation material sold for the purposes of cultivation must conform and for quality control over plants and propagation material imported or exported.
- The Livestock Improvement Act, 1977 (Act 25 of 1977) regulates the collection and sale of semen and ova and the artificial insemination and in-ovulation of certain animals, the establishment of a system for the evaluation and certification of the performance of certain animals quality control regarding the importation and exportation of certain animals, semen, ova and eggs the incorporation of livestock breeders' societies and the maintenance of the legal personality of livestock breeders' societies and the granting of certain exclusive powers relating to the registration of pedigrees of certain livestock.
- The Cooperatives Act, 1981 (Act 91 of 1981) regulates the formation, registration, management and functioning of various types of co-operative and the winding up and dissolution of cooperatives.
- The Perishable Products Export Control Act, 1983 (Act 9 of 1983) provides for the control of perishable products intended for export from South Africa and for the continued existence of a statutory board to bring about the orderly and efficient export of perishable products from the country.
- The Agricultural Pests Act, 1983 (Act 36 of 1983) introduces measures for the prevention and combating of agricultural pests.
- The Agricultural Research Act, 1990 (Act 86 of 1990) establishes a juristic person, the Agricultural Research Council (ARC), to undertake agricultural research and regulate matters regarding the ARC's proceedings, powers, duties, management, control, employees, financing and related matters.
- The Agricultural Product Standards Act, 1990 (Act 119 of 1990) provides for control over the sale and export of certain agricultural products and other related products, with a view to the maintenance of certain standards regarding the quality of products and packing, marking and labelling.
- The Agricultural Produce Agents Act, 1992 (Act 12 of 1992) provides for the establishment of an Agricultural Produce Agents Council and fidelity funds.
- The Onderstepoort Biological Products (OBP) Incorporation Act, 1999 (Act 19 of 1999) provides for the establishment of a company to manage the institution, the appointment of directors and the holding and disposal of shares in the company.
- The Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998) provides for the conservation of the marine ecosystem, the long-term sustainable use of marine living resources and the orderly access to exploitation, use and protection of certain marine living resources; and for the exercising of control over marine living resources in a fair and equitable manner for the benefit of all the citizens of South Africa.
- The National Forest Act, 1998 (Act 84 of 1998) allows for an exemption for the use and handling of protected trees and their products; and authorises the Minister to establish a trust, in respect of state forests under certain circumstances.
- The National Veld and Forest Fire Act, 1998 (Act 101 of 1998) reforms the law on veld and forest fires and repeals certain provisions of the Forest Act, 1984 (Act 122 of 1984).
- The Sea Fishery Act, 1988 (Act 12 of 1988) provides for the conservation of the marine ecosystem and the orderly exploitation, use and protection of certain marine resources; and provides for the exercise of control over sea fisheries.

i In July 2014, geographical name protection was given to South African wines from a number of regions, including Robertson. The volume of local wine that can be exported to Europe tariff-free every year has been increased from 47 Ml to 110 Ml in terms of a trade deal reached in July 2014. The European Union also agreed that South Africa can ship a total of 150 000 tons of sugar to Europe tariff-free every year.

Budget and funding Agricultural economy

The spending focus is on increasing food production by providing agricultural support to smallholder farmers through the comprehensive

agricultural support programme; and implementing the Landcare, Ilima/Letsema food production and Fetsa Tlala food security programmes.

The DAFF plans to spend over R7 billion on conditional grants to provinces to support approximately 435 000 subsistence and 54 500 smallholder producers, and improve extension services. The department also plans to provide flood disaster relief in Limpopo, Mpumalanga and Western Cape, to which additional allocations of R209 million have been made.

The spending focus will also be on making additional transfers of R50 million in 2014/15 and R50 million in 2016/17 to the Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa to support the implementation of the retail emerging markets model.

Expenditure is expected to decrease due to Cabinet approved budget reductions of R90 million, R100 million and R145 million, and the shifting of R22 million per year to the DAFF in line with the shift of the Knysna indigenous forest management function. The reductions are in spending on compensation of employees and goods and services expenditure across all programmes. These reductions are not expected to have an impact on service delivery.

Prices and income

The gross value of agricultural production (total production during the production season valued at the average basic prices received by producers) for 2013 was estimated at R187 678 million, compared to R172 974 million the previous year – representing an increase of 8,5%.

This increase can be attributed mainly to an increase in the value of field crops.

The gross value of animal products, field crops and horticultural products contributed 46,6%, 27,5% and 25,9%, respectively, to the total gross value of agricultural production.

The poultry-meat industry made the largest contribution (17%), followed by maize (13,2%) and cattle and calves slaughtered (9,7%). Producer prices of agricultural products increased on average by 4% from 2012 to 2013.

The weighted average price of field crops increased by 1,1%. The prices of winter grains increased by 19,1%, dry beans by 15,4%, tobacco by 13,8%, hay by 11% and oil seeds by 5,2%, while the prices of summer grains decreased by 5,6%, cotton by 1,6% and sugar cane by 0,4%.

Producer prices of horticultural products rose by 7,7%. Prices of vegetables, viticultural products and fruit increased by 6,5%, 6,2% and 8,9%, respectively.

The weighted average price of animal products increased by 4,4% from 2012. Prices

received for dairy products, poultry meat and pastoral products increased by 13,8%, 8,6%, 6,6% respectively, while the average price of slaughtered stock decreased by 1,8%.

Farm income

The gross income of producers (the value of sales and production for other uses, plus the value of changes in inventories) for the year that ended 31 December 2013 amounted to R182 987 million, compared to R168 506 million in 2012 – an increase of 8,6%. The increase can be ascribed mainly to increases in the production of oilseeds, sugar cane, fruit, mutton and poultry meat. Prices received by farmers for other horticultural and animal products showed moderate increases.

Gross income from field crops increased by 6,1%, to R47 744 million in 2013. Income from maize R23 928 million or 0,1% more than in the previous 12 months. Income from wheat also decreased by 0,1% to R5 318 million. Income from soya beans and sunflower seed showed increases of 53,7% and 17,6 respectively.

Income from sugar cane at R7 005 million was 14,5% higher than in the previous year. Income from tobacco increased by 8,4% to R457 million. Income from dry beans improved by 44,5%. Gross income from horticultural products increased by 13,5%, from R42 126 million in 2012 to R47 806 million in 2013. Income from deciduous fruit at R12 815 million was 23,7% up on 2012.

Income from vegetables increased by 8,2% to R15 923 million, and that from viticulture by 5,2% to R4 346 million. Income from citrus increased by 21,0% and amounted to R9 565 million. Income from subtropical fruit, however, decreased by 2,0% to R2 562 million.

Gross income from animal products was 7,4% higher in 2013 than in 2012 and amounted to R87 437 million, compared to R81 379 million. Red-meat producers earned R18 517 million from slaughtered cattle and calves, against the previous R18 150 million – an increase of 2,0%. Income from slaughtered sheep rose by 4,7%, from R4 208,1 million to R4 404,7 million. Income from poultry-meat production increased by 11,3% to R32 916 million. Income from egg production, at R8 590 million, was 6,8% higher

World Food Day was celebrated on 16 October 2014. The day is about recognising the worldwide problem of hunger. In 2014, the theme for the day was: "Sustainable Food Systems for Food Security and Nutrition". The theme was chosen to highlight and raise awareness of the problems worldwide and the solutions to food security and ridding the world of hunger. The day is also about raising awareness and calling for changes in agriculture and food supply systems.

than in the previous year. Producers earned R12 433 million from milk production, which was 9,9% more than in the previous year. Income from wool, however, decreased by 9,0% to R2 322 million

Net farm income amounted to R56 245 million for the year ending 31 December 2013, which is 7,3% higher than in the previous 12 months.

Salaries and wages, which represented 10,6% of total farming costs, amounted to R14 017 million. Interest paid by farmers to banks and other financiers was estimated at R6 174 million, or 4,7% of total farming cost.

Role players

Credit and assistance

The six major sources of credit for farmers are banks (56%), agricultural cooperatives and agribusinesses (9%), the Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa (the Land Bank) (30%), private creditors (3%) and other creditors and financial institutions (2%).

Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa

The Land Bank is a specialist agricultural bank guided by a government mandate to provide financial services to the commercial farming sector and agribusiness. It also makes available financial products to new entrants to agriculture from historically disadvantaged backgrounds.

According to its 2014 annual report, the Land Bank contributed R48,2 billion on the GDP, which resulted in more than 23 000 job opportunities and more than 37 000 maintained jobs.

Micro-Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa (Mafisa)

Mafisa is a scheme that provides production loans to smallholder operators within the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors. Mafisa loans were initially restricted to agricultural enterprises, but following the incorporation of the forestry and fisheries subsectors into the department of agriculture, the credit policy is under review so that it can also accommodate these two subsectors.

Loans are provided at 8% interest and accessed through a network of institutions accredited by the DAFF as retail intermediaries. Intermediaries submit monthly and quarterly reports to the department as part of its monitoring process. Regular workshops and inspection visits to intermediaries are also conducted.

The scheme offers production loans of up to R500 000 per person, with the repayment terms structured according to the income cycle of the enterprise. The loans are limited to South African citizens who meet the eligibility criteria. Loans of

up to R25 000 can be granted without security. Most of the loans disbursed are in respect of livestock, sugar cane and grain crops. Though the scheme caters for the entire value chain of the three subsectors, most of the loans disbursed by October 2013 were for primary agriculture.

Agri South Africa (AgriSA)

AgriSA was established in 1904 as the South African Agricultural Union. It serves approximately 32 000 large and small commercial farmers.

Its mission is to promote the development, profitability, stability and sustainability of agriculture in South Africa by means of its involvement and input on national and international policy and the implementation thereof.

Essentially AgriSA, through its affiliated membership, represents a diverse group of individual farmers regardless of gender, colour or creed. AgriSA's policy advocacy includes work on trade negotiations, industrial policy, taxation, financing, land reform, labour laws, training, farmer development, environmental affairs, water rights and water pricing, other input-related issues, farm safety, law and order, infrastructure, technology development and transfer, statistical information and local government.

Furthermore, the organisation maintains an extensive communication network with its members and other affected communities, organisations and individuals. AgriSA is a member of high-level business, trade and agricultural entities that includes Business Unity South Africa, the International Chamber of Commerce (ICC), the World Farmers' Organization (WFO), the Southern African Confederation of Agricultural Unions (SACAU) and the Cairns Group Farm Leaders. AgriSA communicates with its members via its two-monthly magazine, namely *Agri* (incorporating *Die Boer/The Farmer*) and an electronic newsletter. It is also responsible for programme content for an agricultural radio programme aired on Radio Sonder Grense (RSG).

Agriculture in South Africa remains an important sector despite its relatively small contribution to the GDP. The sector plays an important role in terms of job creation, especially in rural areas, but is also a foremost earner of foreign exchange.

Agriculture's prominent indirect role in the economy is a result of backward and forward linkages with other sectors. Purchases of intermediate goods and services form backward linkages with the manufacturing sector, while forward linkages are established through the supply of raw materials to industry.

Approximately 70% of agricultural output is

used as intermediate products. Agriculture is therefore a crucial sector and a key driver of growth for the rest of the economy – a fact also acknowledged in policy-related documents such as the National Development Plan (NDP) 2030.

Essentially, the NDP entails that agriculture—both emerging and commercial—should still be afforded the opportunity to contribute optimally to economic growth, job creation, foreign-exchange earnings and development of the industrial sector within a safe and non-discriminatory environment. AgriSA is preoccupied with ensuring a safe environment for all people involved in the agricultural sector. A sound working relationship has been established with the South African Police Service (SAPS) at both policy and operational level, with a view of addressing the relevant rural safety problems.

Agricultural Business Chamber

The Agricultural Business Chamber is a voluntary, dynamic and influential association of agribusinesses. Its mission is to negotiate and position for a favourable agribusiness environment where members can perform competitively and profitably, and prosper as a result. Other focus areas include:

- serving the broader and *mutual* business interests of agribusinesses in South Africa
- facilitating considerable networking opportunities, so that South African agribusinesses can play an active and creative role within the local and international organised business environment *and are* involved in the legislative and policy environment on many fronts.

Transvaal Agricultural Union South Africa (TAU SA)

TAU SA was established in 1897 as the Transvaal Agricultural Union. In 2002, the union reorganised to become a national agricultural union serving commercial farmers. It also renders services to its members in terms of property rights, economic issues, and safety and security. TAU SA conducts various projects to enhance the concept of successful agriculture.

National African Farmers' Union of South Africa (Nafu)

Nafu was established in 1991 with the aim of creating a “home” for thousands of black farmers who had previously been excluded from the mainstream of agriculture. At the time of its formation, there was no farmer organisation operating at national level in South Africa. Between 1979 and 1991, the only organisation which attempted to address the needs of black farmers at national level was National African

Federated Chamber of Commerce and Industry (Nafcoc). This organisation eventually facilitated the formation of the Nafu.

Nafu is a mouthpiece of predominantly black smallholder farmers in South Africa. It strives to promote the interests of primarily black farmers who are largely a disproportionately disadvantaged farming community. Nafu therefore represents the aspirations of those who have been disadvantaged, neglected and marginalised.

The focus of Nafu has been on advocacy, and it has and continues to lobby for access to critical resources such as land, credit, information, extension and other support services. However, Nafu also played and continues to play a role in building the capacity and strength of its membership through the use of effective communication systems, training, improving management skills and exposing farming to the latest and most up-to-date production techniques.

The broad aims of Nafu are to:

- lobby for policy reforms aimed at levelling the field in all agricultural matters with particular reference to land acquisition, agricultural funding, market access and public policy
- lobby for the provision of appropriate services, e.g. extension, marketing and credit to members
- identify, quantify and address the needs of members
- facilitate the provision of training
- empower women and young people so as to enable them to participate fully in farming activities.

Nafu has members all over South Africa who have constituted themselves into regional unions. The union draws its members from a very broad base which includes farmers, agribusinesses, farmers' organisations, corporations and individuals who support its objectives and goals. Farmers and agribusiness can join as individual members. Agribusiness includes companies, as well as close corporations and trusts. Individual membership is allowed only in cases where there is no local association or regional union.

The African Farmers' Association of South Africa (Afasa)

With the establishment of Afasa in Boksburg on 11 and 12 April 2011, developing farmers now have a new, powerful voice. The launch of Afasa is the culmination of a year-long consultation process with developing farmers country-wide to determine their need for an official structure that represents their interests. Afasa's aim is to have competent and successful commercial African farmers of South Africa and to ensure

meaningful participation of black individuals within the mainstream commercial agribusiness sector, therefore ensuring the long-term sustainability of the agricultural sector. Its values are to facilitate the development of African farmers to increase their meaningful participation in the agricultural sector.

Afasa's objectives are to create a sustainable united body of African farmers with capacity to influence policies through lobbying and advocacy. Afasa, like any other organisation, is a collection of individuals who come together for a common purpose. It is therefore crucial that Afasa advocates what it stands for to attract those similar values in favour of African farmers. In February 2013, Afasa welcomed the budget allocation of R6,2 billion to support the growth and development of smallholder farmers. The DAFF is expected to support smallholder farmers through conditional grants such as the Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme (Casp), LandCare Programme, Ilima/Letsema Programme, as well as the mobilisation of farmers, women and youth into agricultural cooperatives.

Veterinary services

Veterinary public health and food safety aspects, in relation to animal products, remain a priority and are receiving increasing attention. The department has set aside R100 million for the Primary Animal Health Care Programme. Special attention is being given to the major rehabilitation of existing infrastructure, as well as the building of new clinics, animal health centres and other animal-handling facilities. Mobile veterinary vehicles will also be considered for remote areas. These efforts support the creation of an enabling environment for the planned Compulsory Community Service Programme for newly qualified veterinarians.

Agricultural Research Council

The ARC renders innovative and smart solutions, which help farmers eliminate pests and eradicate diseases such as foot-and-mouth and rabies. Vaccines are a highly specialised animal health area. Therefore, the ARC conducts clinical trials ensuring the efficacy and effectiveness of such remedies for the livestock sector.

By May 2013, the ARC had successfully implemented the Animal Improvement Scheme, aimed at improving the performance, competitiveness and efficiencies of smallholder farmers, through the application of practical scientific approaches to breeding and management of livestock.

Through this scheme, the number of participating smallholder farmers increased from 920

in 2012, to 4 075 livestock producers by the end of March 2013.

During 2013/14, the ARC increased the number of farmers participating in the scheme by an additional 2 000. This included collaboration with other organisations such as the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) and the Independent Development Trust (IDT). The ARC will also continue providing services such as artificial insemination and embryo transfer to smallholder farmers.

Onderstepoort Biological Products state-owned company (SOC) Ltd

OBP SOC was corporatised in 2000 under the OBP Incorporation Act, 1999 (Act 19 of 1999).

The OBP's mandate is the prevention and control of animal diseases that impact on food security, human health and livelihood. This mandate is delivered through the continued development of innovative products and efficient manufacturing processes that ensure the affordability and accessibility of vaccines through diverse distribution channels.

The OBP possesses the capability, skills and scientific expertise to combat animal disease through the large-scale production of specialised animal vaccines. The company produces millions of doses a year to control as many as 50 different diseases and is an acknowledged world leader in the battle against animal disease.

Experiments at the OBP have seen encouraging progress in the development of new and improved vaccines against African horse sickness, which, despite the development of immunisation programmes, remains a constant threat to farmers, breeders and owners.

Grain SA

Grain SA was established on 10 June 1999 and was formed out of National Maize Producers' Organisation (Nampo) (maize), National Oilseed Processors Association (Nopa) (soybeans, sunflower and groundnuts), the Wheat Producers' Organisation (WPO) (wheat, barley and oats) and the SPO (grain and sorghum). The mission of Grain SA is to provide commodity strategic support and services to South African grain producers to support sustainability.

The purpose of Grain SA's strategic focus areas is not only to increase the profitability of producers and to establish sustainable food security in general; it is also aimed at establishing transformation within the parameters of constitutional rights. Thus far the members of the agricultural community have been sharing authentic success stories of transformation and integration among themselves.

Grain SA's unity with its producer members at grassroots level has proven to be invaluable for this process. It therefore remains critical that the organisation, through regional, information, farmer unions and branch meetings, maintains a visible and active presence. These meetings allow GrainSA to inform producer members of the latest developments in the grain industry, production prospects and well-researched economic facts. It also affords producer members the opportunity to share their concerns with the organisation. In a further effort to enable producers to make well-informed decisions about their farming activities, GrainSA also supplies them with market reports.

GrainSA is in a sector which has the potential to contribute to all the pillars of rural development. The development programme is one of the core business units of GrainSA that are well supported by other units within Grain SA. This assistance is in the form of personnel and financial management as well as the overall leadership and guidance of the programme.

Products

The field crop planted over the largest area of farmland is maize, followed by wheat and, to a lesser extent, sugar cane and sunflower seed. The grain industry is one of the largest industries in South Africa and is a very strategic one.

According to the Economic Review of South African Agriculture, the gross income from field crops increased by 6,1% to R47 743,8 million for 2013.

Grains

Maize is the largest locally produced field crop, and the most important source of carbohydrates in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region for animal and human consumption.

South Africa is the main maize producer in the SADC, with production averaging at about 10,6 million tons (Mt) a year over the past 10 years.

It is estimated that about 6 500 commercial maize producers are responsible for most of the South African crop, while thousands of small-scale producers are responsible for the rest. Maize is produced mainly in North West, the Free State and Mpumalanga. Some 14,3 Mt of maize were commercially produced in 2013/14 on 2,7 million ha of land.

Wheat is produced mainly in the winter rainfall areas of the Western Cape and the eastern parts of the Free State. In 2013, 1,9 Mt were produced on 505 00 ha of land.

Malting barley is produced mainly on the southern coastal plains of the Western Cape.

The area of barley planted totalled 81 320 ha in 2013, and production totalled 267 500 t.

Sorghum is cultivated mostly in the drier parts of the summer rainfall areas such as Mpumalanga, the Free State, Limpopo and North West.

Oilseeds

Groundnuts are grown mainly in the Free State, North West and Northern Cape. An area of 52 125 ha was planted in 2013/14, producing 78 090 t.

Sunflower seed is produced in the Free State, North West, the Mpumalanga Highveld and in Limpopo. South Africa is the world's 10th largest producer of sunflower seed. An area of 598 950 ha was planted in 2013/14, producing 853 325 t.

Soya beans are produced mainly in Mpumalanga, the Free State and KwaZulu-Natal. Small quantities are also produced in Limpopo, Gauteng and North West. For the 2013/14 production season, soya beans were planted on 502 900 ha, with production totalling 944 340 t.

Canola is an oilseed crop grown mainly in the Western Cape. Small quantities have been planted in North West and Limpopo. Canola competes on the local market with other oilseeds such as sunflower seeds and soya beans. For the 2013 production season, the canola crop was estimated at 112 000 t on an area of 72 165 ha.

Sugar

South Africa produces cost-competitive high-quality sugar. The sugar sector is a diverse industry, combining the agricultural activities of sugar-cane cultivation with the industrial factory production of raw and refined sugar, syrups and specialised sugars, as well as a range of by-products. The cane-growing sector comprises about 24 000 registered sugar-cane growers farming predominantly in KwaZulu-Natal, with a substantial investment in Mpumalanga and the Eastern Cape.

Sugar is manufactured by six milling companies with 14 sugar mills operating in these cane-growing regions.

About 430 000 ha are under sugarcane production, with 68% grown within 30 km of the coast and 16% in the high rainfall areas of KwaZulu-Natal. The remainder is grown in the northern irrigated areas that comprise Pongola and Mpumalanga lowveld. The industry produces an estimated average of 18,8 Mt of sugarcane (2,2 Mt of sugar) per season. About 60% of this sugar is marketed in the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu).

Deciduous fruit

The deciduous fruit industry in South Africa, including fresh, dried and canned fruit for local consumption and export, is a multimillion rand industry. It is based on scientific research and development, resulting in optimum harvests and quality, a large variety of cultivars, and finely controlled storage methods. Deciduous fruits grown in South Africa include apples, pears, apricots, nectarines, peaches, plums, grapes, olives, figs and cherries.

Deciduous fruit is grown mainly in the Western Cape and in the Langkloof Valley of the Eastern Cape. Smaller production areas are found along the Orange River and in the Free State, Mpumalanga and Gauteng.

In 2013, South Africa produced 1 813 717 t of deciduous fruit, 1 813 717 t more than in 2012.

Cotton

Cotton is cultivated in the Northern Cape, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal and North West. It constitutes 74% of natural fibre and 42% of all fibre processed in South Africa. It is grown under irrigation, as well as in dry-land conditions. Some 7 458 ha are dedicated to cotton production, with 61% under irrigation.

It is estimated that about 160 commercial farmers and about 600 small-scale farmers planted cotton in the 2013/14 production season, the average yield for South Africa was 3,1t seed cotton per ha.

A total of 9 397 ha of cotton were planted in 2012/13, of which 77% was under irrigation and 23% under dry land.

In August 2014, the DAFF Female Entrepreneur of the Year Awards were held in Mahikeng, North West, to recognise the role of women and their contribution to Africa's agriculture and food security. The 2014/15 overall winner was Ivy Nokwanele Mzamo from the Eastern Cape. Among those who clinched awards were Hawukile Makhanya from KwaZulu-Natal who won best female worker in the sector, Thandeka Moseki from North West for best subsistence producer in the sector, Sandra Kroutz from Gauteng for top entrepreneur in the sector: smallholder and Anne Ruthford from the Western Cape for top entrepreneur in the sector: processing. Mponeng Lentoro from the Free State scooped the top award for top female entrepreneur in the sector: commercial, while Nokwanele Mzamo from the Eastern Cape received one for top entrepreneur in the sector: export markets. The Minister's special award went to Linah Mahlangu from Mpumalanga, as a way of acknowledging the contribution of young women and women living with disabilities entrepreneurs. The Minister's special award for the youth went to Leah Skosana from Mpumalanga, recognising upcoming youth entrepreneurs.

Tobacco

Virginia tobacco is produced mainly in Mpumalanga, Limpopo, Eastern Cape, Western Cape and North West.

Flue-cured leaf tobacco contributes more than 79% to total production, with the number of ha cultivated for flue-cured tobacco being about six times the land cultivated for air-cured leaf tobacco. The industry produces 11 million kg of flue-cured tobacco and three million kg of air-cured leaf tobacco a year.

There are 170 tobacco growers in South Africa operating on some 5 000 ha of land. Tobacco farmers employ about 8 000 farmworkers and support about 40 000 dependants in total.

Honeybush and Rooibos tea

Honeybush production is a young, growing industry that is unique to South Africa. Honeybush is part of the fynbos that grows wild in the Cederberg area of the Western Cape and is not produced anywhere else in the world. The plant grows naturally on the wetter and cooler southern slopes of mountains. Some species are mostly harvested in the wild, while others are cultivated commercially.

Some 230 ha of honeybush tea are under cultivation. It is harvested from the natural mountainous veld in the Langeberg and Swartberg in the Eastern and Western Cape and processed at farm-processing facilities.

The honeybush industry has the potential to grow from an annual average of 150 t of processed tea to 1 500 t by 2021 and to increase turnover from R10 million to R100 million. South Africa produces about 200 t of honeybush tea a year. Local and international demand exceeds supply.

Fewer than 10 farmers cultivate only 30% of honeybush tea and the rest (70%) is harvested in the wild.

Owing to the growing interest in the health properties of natural products and specifically, herbal teas, many biochemists round the world are investigating rooibos. The rooibos plant grows well in the Cederberg area, where temperatures drop to 0°C during the winter months and rise to 48°C at the height of summer. On average, South Africa produces about 15 000 t of rooibos tea a year. South Africans consume 4 500 to 5 000 t and the rest is exported.

Stress, ageing, cancer and obesity are some of the lifestyle challenges that featured prominently in the South African Rooibos Council's research budget of R2 million in 2012. In addition to these health-focused projects, researchers also received funding to explore the chemistry, composition and flavour profile of this

unique African herbal tea, or to advance organic and environmentally friendly rooibos farming. Prominent, independent researchers at South African universities and science councils lead the research projects.

Since July 2014, South Africa has won the right to secure geographical indicator status for Rooibos tea. This enables Rooibos tea growers to look for new markets in Asia and increase those that already exist.

ARC Infruitec-Nietvoorbij is responsible for managing nine genebanks. The genebanks include field collections of various deciduous tree fruit crops, grapevines, olives, indigenous flowers of the Proteaceae and honeybush, in vitro collections of yeasts, fungi and bacteria as well as some tree fruit and berry crops in medium-term cold storage.

The main purpose of the field genebanks is to conserve genetic diversity of fruits, grapes and indigenous crops, particularly in support of breeding programmes; the yeast collection contributes to oenological research; and the fungal and bacterial collections provide for research and diagnostics.

Wine

South Africa is described as the most exciting New World wine-producing country, because of a combination of old vines, new regions and wine-making talent. Record harvests, a weaker rand and poor European crops benefit South African wine-makers.

Nietvoorbij, the internationally-acclaimed research farm of the ARC, is synonymous with quality research in enology and viticulture. Annually, 1 000 different wines (10 – 20l) are made for research purposes in the modern experimental cellar. Next door, in the old, thatched roof cellar, traditional and modern winemaking methods are combined to create unique wines for enjoyment.

Citrus and subtropical fruit

South Africa ranks 13th in world citrus production and despite increased competition, its citrus exports are growing. The country is also the world's third largest exporter of fresh citrus fruit by volume, after Spain and Turkey.

Citrus production is largely limited to irrigation areas and occurs in Limpopo (23 970 ha), Eastern Cape (14 770 ha), Western Cape (9 232 ha), Mpumalanga (9 375 ha), KwaZulu-Natal (3 192 ha), and Northern Cape (1 451 ha). Pineapples are grown mainly in the Eastern Cape and northern KwaZulu-Natal.

Other subtropical crops such as avocados, mangoes, bananas, litchis, guavas, papayas, granadillas and macadamia and pecan nuts are

produced mainly in Mpumalanga and Limpopo, as well as in the subtropical coastal areas of KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

Vegetables

Potatoes are grown in 16 distinct potato production regions throughout the country.

About 34% of South Africa's potato crop is produced in the Free State, 20% in Limpopo and 15% in the Sandveld area of the Western Cape.

About 87% of the country's total potato crop is produced under irrigation. Of the total crop, 48% is delivered to fresh produce markets and 18% is processed. Frozen French fries contributed 43% processed potato products.

In terms of gross income to the grower, potatoes are by far the most important vegetable crop, contributing about 39% to total income from vegetables.

Overall vegetable production, excluding potatoes, in the 2013 season reached 2,675 Mt, down 2,0% from the previous season, when 2,730 Mt were harvested.

Vegetable consumption increased in 2012 to 45,7 kg per capita (+4,2%).

Tomatoes are produced countrywide, but on the largest scale in Limpopo, the Mpumalanga Lowveld and Middleveld, the Pongola area of KwaZulu-Natal, the southern parts of the Eastern Cape and the Western Cape. In 2013, 545 842 t of tomatoes were produced, with a gross value of R1 872 million. In Limpopo, South Africa's main tomato-growing area, most of the crops are found in Letaba (3 260 ha), Mooketsi and Musina (860 ha). Limpopo's total annual production is about 230 000 t.

Onions are grown mainly in Mpumalanga, certain areas of the Western Cape and the southern Free State and in all areas of Limpopo with the main production areas being Polokwane and Mokopane. Onions have an estimated planting area of 6 500 ha to 9 000 ha and a retail value of R200 million a year. In 2013, the gross value of onions was R1 656,2 million. In 2013, 584 971 t of onions were produced.

Cabbages are grown countrywide, but the largest crops are in Mpumalanga and the Camperdown and Greytown districts of KwaZulu-Natal. South African cabbage production decreased in 2013 by 4 863 t or 3,6%, to 141 230 t. During 2013, the gross value of cabbage and red cabbage production totalled R250 million.

Dry beans are produced mainly in Mpumalanga, the Free State, Gauteng and North West. KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, the Western Cape and Northern Cape produce small quantities of this crop. Local demand is substantially higher than local production and, therefore, large quantities

of dry beans are imported each year. In 2014, some 82 130 t of dry beans were produced on 55 820 ha of land.

Livestock

Animal production contributes approximately 48% to the country's agricultural output in terms of value. The industry employs about 500 000 people.

The ARC, in partnership with all the provinces, will roll out the implementation of the Livestock Development Programme. In this initiative, the ARC will introduce and expand on the dissemination of technologies, such as artificial insemination and embryo transfer.

The National Agriculture Marketing Council (NAMC) is also actively engaged in a programme to introduce farmers to the structure, operation and requirements of the formal red meat market. This is the National Red Meat Development Programme (NRMDP). It works with emerging and communal farmers to increase the income earned from raising cattle through greater and more beneficial participation in formal red meat markets.

The National Livestock Development Strategy aims to enhance the sustainability of animal agriculture in South Africa across the entire production, processing and supply chain.

Dairy farming

Milk production in South Africa contributes about 0,5% to the world's milk production. South Africa has four major dairy breeds, namely Holstein, Jersey, Guernsey and Ayrshire. The industry comprises various economic activities with, significant differences in farming methods and the processing of dairy products, including the production and marketing of raw milk, pasteurised milk and cream, fermented milk, long-life milk and cream, yoghurt, and cheese and its by-products.

The South African dairy industry is important to the job market, with some 2 700 milk producers employing 60 000 farmworkers and providing 40 000 people with indirect jobs within the value chain, such as milk processing.

Beef cattle farming

Beef is produced throughout South Africa. The quantity of beef produced depends on infrastructure such as feedlots and abattoirs, and not necessarily on the number of cattle available in those areas. South Africa has a highly developed transport infrastructure that allows for movement of cattle from one area to another, even to and from neighbouring countries, for example, Namibia. Commercial

farmers own 59% of the 14 million head of cattle available in South Africa. There are 27 popular breeds in South Africa including the Brahman, indigenous Afrikaner and Nguni, Tuli, Boron, Bonsmara, Drakensberger, Simbra, Beefmaster, Angus and Braford.

Small stock (sheep and goat) farming

South Africa has about 8 000 commercial sheep farms and about 5 800 communal farmers. Most of the estimated 24,4 million sheep in South Africa is found in the Eastern Cape, followed by the Northern Cape, Free State, Western Cape and Mpumalanga.

The sheep breed with the highest wool production per head is the South African Merino, followed by other dual-purpose Merino breeds, such as the Dohne Merino, South African Mutton Merino, Afrino and Letelle breeds. Dual-purpose breeds are bred with the specific aim of maximising wool and mutton produce.

Mutton sheep are found mostly in the semidesert areas of the Northern and Western Cape, with the most popular mutton breed being the locally developed Dorper. Limited numbers of indigenous fat-tailed and Karakul sheep are still found. Karakul sheep are found in the more arid areas.

The Eastern Cape has the largest number of goats (38%), followed by Limpopo (19%). The indigenous meat-producing Boer goat accounts for about 40% of all goats in South Africa. Almost all of South Africa's Angora goat (mohair) farmers are located in the Eastern Cape, where they farm with about one million goats. The South African mohair clip of four million kilograms, accounts for 60% of the world's mohair production. About 63% of all goats in South Africa are so-called indigenous goats.

Pig and poultry farming

The South African pork industry is relatively large, in terms of the overall South African agricultural sector. It contributes 1,9% to the primary agricultural sector. The gross value of pork production is dependent on the quantity produced and the price farmers received. Some 2,6 million pigs were slaughtered during 2013.

The trend in gross value follows a pattern of prices, because the industry is characterised by volatile prices.

Pork is produced throughout South Africa with Limpopo and North West being the largest producers, contributing to 44% of total production. There are about 4 000 commercial, 19 stud and about 110 smallholder pig farmers; they own about 125 000 sows (100 000 commercial and 25 000, smallholder farmers);

they employ about 10 000 workers, comprising about 4 000 farm workers and 6 000 workers in the processing and abattoir sectors. The 46 registered pig abattoirs use modern technology to ensure a streamlined slaughtering process. The predominant pig breeds are the South African Land Race, the Large White, Duroc and the Pietrain.

The poultry industry (including meat and eggs) continues to dominate the agricultural sector in South Africa, and is the main supplier of protein in kilogramme terms to the South African consumer, as more poultry products are consumed per annum than all other animal protein sources combined.

The poultry industry is an essential component of South Africa's food value chain. It is the single largest component of the agricultural sector in the country by turnover.

In 2013, broiler production, especially broiler meat production, was the largest segment of South African agriculture at 1,6% of the total value of agricultural, while all animal products in South Africa contributed 46,3%. The farm income from broiler meat for 2013 was R30,6 billion.

Although poultry producers remain the largest segment of South African agriculture, they have been facing challenges regarding input prices, which put profit margins in broiler production under pressure.

The volatility in price and profitability is inherent to the broiler industry, because biological factors, such as poultry diseases and prolonged turnaround times in the production chain, combined with hikes in feed costs, electricity and fuel have a direct impact on production costs.

Chicken imports contributed 91% to total poultry imports, turkey imports amounted to 8% and ducks, geese or guineafowl totalled 0,1%.

The per capita consumption of poultry meat was 38,3 kg a year, compared to 39,93 kg in 2012.

The gross value of primary agricultural production from poultry meat, inclusive of all types of poultry, for the period 2012 was R29,845 billion, reflecting an annual increase of 16,8%.

Along with being the primary source of protein, the poultry industry remains an important contributor to job creation and employment opportunities. Some 10% of all agricultural sector workers are employed in the poultry sector.

Considering the dominance of the poultry industry in South Africa, it also has the largest influence on the feed industry as its main customer. The South African Poultry Association estimates that a total of 107 857 people (48 118 direct and 59 739 indirect) are employed in the

broiler, hatchery, rearing, processing and distribution industries.

At a gross turnover of R8,6 billion at producer level, eggs take their place as the fourth largest animal product sector in agriculture in South Africa.

The South African Poultry Association reported that the total value of chicken eggs at retail level was R8,2 billion for 2013. About 643 million dozen eggs were sold in 2013 through various channels.

Total imports of eggs, including shell eggs and egg products (liquid and dried), amounted to 267 t in 2012 and egg exports totalled 3 254 t. Shell eggs contributed 43% of total egg exports. Egg products contributed 57% or 1 843 t, with liquid egg products amounting to 1 670 t or 51% of total exports.

Annual per capita egg consumption increased steadily over the past four years, from 159 eggs in 2010 to 165 eggs in 2013. Considerable scope exists for increased per capita consumption, particularly taking into account the price competitiveness of eggs as a protein source, compared to other animal proteins.

The industry remains an important employer with an estimated 8 000 workers.

Hunting and wildlife sector

South Africa has a proud tradition of consumptive hunting that has made a major positive impact on conservation and sound game management practices. Consumptive use includes venison production (game meat and biltong), and trophy and recreational hunting; while non-consumptive use includes eco-tourism activities and accommodation.

Hunters are the backbone of the private wildlife industry and the main source of income for the 11 500 private game farms of which many are located on marginal agricultural land in South Africa. According to a 2013 survey by Tourism Research in Economic Environs and Society (TREES) at Northwest University, there are about 200 000 consumptive hunters (hunting for their own use) in South Africa that contributed R6,3 billion rand to the country's economy in 2013. This represents an increase of 13% (R80 million) since 2010.

South Africa is a popular destination for trophy hunters and receives approximately 9 000 international hunters a year whose combined expenditure on hunting and related industries contribute R1,24 billion to the economy. In 2013, the combined annual contribution by local and international hunters to the South African economy was R7,5 billion.

The five most popular hunting provinces

in South Africa are Limpopo, Northern Cape, Eastern Cape, North-West and Free State. The top five game species among international trophy hunters during 2013 were, among others, springbok, impala, kudu, blesbok and black wildebeest. This is very similar to the five most popular species among biltong/consumptive hunters: springbok, impala, blesbok, warthog and kudu. It is kudu in particular, that is a popular and profitable species for game farmers.

The hunting sector in South Africa is represented by various voluntary associations and organisations that serve the interest of both consumptive and professional hunters. The SA Hunters and Game Conservation Association (SAHGCA) with over 38 000 members is the biggest single representative body for hunters in South Africa.

SAHGCA and other hunting associations in South Africa have taken the lead in wildlife conservation by advocating and practising responsible, sustainable hunting as the most effective wildlife management mechanisms that support the game ranching sector in the country.

Programmes and projects

Regulatory services

The department's regulatory activities include: the inspection of plants, animals and their products to prevent the introduction and distribution of quarantine pests and diseases; to also ensure that exported animals/plants and their products are free from quarantine pests and diseases.

South Africa is an active member of the World Organization for Animal Health.

Disease reports are received from the Organisation for Animal Health and through direct contact with veterinary administrations in exporting countries.

Trade in animals and animal products are regulated to prevent the entry of diseases.

The department also ensure compliance with agricultural legislation by conducting inspections at designated ports of entry. Preborder inspections are aimed at exports for compliance with international requirements among trading partners. Post-border inspections are intended for those regulated articles that were given extended detentions at borders or escaped the border control inspections.

Plants and plant products are inspected for compliance with plant health, genetic resources and food and quality-assurance legislation. The department conducts surveillance for regulated pests and/or national pests of concern throughout the country.

The Pest Risk Analysis Division conducts

scientific analysis of risks posed based on scientific data. Risks associated with the importation of plant propagation material are managed by prescribing a compulsory predetermined quarantine detention period for specific high-risk categories.

To prevent the introduction of harmful exotic plant pests, all imported plant material is tested and audited. The department renders diagnostic services to ensure that all imported and exported products comply with international standards.

Closely linked to early detection is the implementation of proper pest-awareness programmes to keep the agricultural sector and the general public informed.

Through its Import/Export Protocols Division, the department ensures and maintains market access for South African plants and plant products. This includes exchanging plant health information and expertise in terms of bilateral engagements, and maintaining bilateral export/import programmes.

Despite having maintained the country's lucrative fruit export markets, production and exports are still under threat. Accordingly, imports of host fruit from countries where pests have been established must be appropriately managed. This emphasises the importance of border control and risk management responsibilities.

To further strengthen contingency planning regarding pests and diseases, the Emergency Plant Pest Response Plan was developed for implementation in 2013/14.

Food import and export standards

Internationally, standards for food imports and exports are harmonised through various international standard-setting bodies subscribed to under the World Trade Organisation (WTO) and to which South Africa is a signatory, including the Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measurements Agreement, World Organisation for Animal Health, Codex Alimentarius Commission and the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. These requirements aim to protect consumer rights, the environment, animal life and public health.

Through its Directorate: Food Import and Export Standards, the department collates information regarding the standards for sanitary and phytosanitary measures applicable to trade in animal and plant products. The DAFF also coordinates promotion and awareness programmes addressing cross-cutting standards and legislative requirements for food safety, quality, and plant and animal health.

The department and the Perishable Products

Export Control Board (PPECB) work closely to assist South Africans – within the ambit of the law – to export their products successfully in a highly competitive global arena.

National analytical services

The DAFF has laboratories in Pretoria and Stellenbosch that conduct analytical services. They support the units within the department responsible for formulating and updating regulations regarding agricultural foods of plant origin and liquor products.

Disaster and risk management

The National Agricultural Disaster Risk Management Committee provides strategic guidance on policy and advises the Ministry of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries on issues relating to agricultural disaster risk management. The committee comprises members from provincial departments of agriculture, organised agriculture such as Nafu, Agri SA, TAU SA and ARC and relevant directorates within the department.

The established National Drought Task Team, chaired by the DAFF, advises the National Disaster Management Advisory Forum on drought management. The task team comprises provincial disaster management centres, organised agriculture such as Nafu, Agri SA, TAU SA and ARC, and relevant directorates within the department. The department frequently responds to hazards such as droughts, veld fires, floods and outbreaks of pests and disease, which includes the control of migratory pests such as locusts and quelea. It is also responsible for the control of the blackfly pest.

Weather and climate Climate change

The agricultural sector in South Africa faces considerable impact from climate change, which affects the livelihoods of most people, especially those who are vulnerable to food insecurity.

South Africa responds to international obligations regarding climate mainly through the DEA, but the DAFF, as well as other departments such as those of mineral resources, energy, science and technology, and water affairs are also involved.

The Climate Change Programme implemented by the DAFF includes programmes on raising awareness, policy development, the development of sector mitigation and adaptation plans, conducting vulnerability assessments countrywide, and identifying and coordinating climate-related research projects.

South Africa is a full member of the Global Research Alliance which, among other

objectives, aims to enhance collaborative research into reducing agricultural emissions and increasing support and resourcing for agricultural emissions research.

Early warning unit

The increasing risk of disaster is reduced by strengthening early warning systems and disseminating early warnings, as well as raising awareness through campaigns. This helps to build resilient farming communities.

The DAFF has, therefore, developed and implemented an Early Warning System (EWS) that disseminates extreme weather warnings to farming communities. The EWS communicates monthly advisories and daily extreme weather warnings, in support of reducing disaster risk. The implementation of the EWS is continuously monitored and evaluated to identify and address gaps in the system. National *Agro-meteorological* Committee meetings are held quarterly.

Floods and droughts

Climate variability has induced drought interspersed with flooding, resulting in lower-than-average agricultural production yields. The DAFF has completed two policy documents: the Agricultural Disaster Risk-Management Plan and the Agricultural Drought-Management Plan. An amount of more than R990 million has been made available through the Medium-Term Expenditure Framework period until 2014/15 as part of the flood-assistance scheme.

Sustainable resource management and use

The DAFF and the ARC's Institute for Soil, Climate and Water have developed an inventory of soils, terrain forms and climate (land types). The National Land Type Survey, available for use at a 1:250 000 scale, aims to assist and guide land-use planning and decision making at national level. All available natural-resource spatial information and other required data sets, including the latest Spot 5 satellite imagery and agricultural information, are found on the internet-based Agricultural Geo-Referenced Information System (Agis). Using interactive web-based applications, Agis provides access to spatial information, industry-specific information and decision-support tools.

The Advanced Fire Information System (Afis) tracks all fire outbreaks in the SADC region through the use of Moderate-Resolution Imaging Spectroradiometer satellite imagery. The information may be viewed at afis.meraka.org.za.

Soil degradation

Soil degradation is largely related to the decline in organic soil matter. Monoculture cereal production, intensive tillage, short-term fallow periods and limited crop rotation have contributed to this in the commercial sector.

Excessive fuel-wood collection, inappropriate land use, population density and overgrazing are the main causes of soil degradation in communal areas. In addition, it is estimated that about 60% of the cropland area is moderately to severely acidic, and probably at least 15% is affected by subsoil acidity.

It is calculated that 1,5 million ha (around 1% of the land surface) have a high to extremely high erosion risk. More than 11 million ha (9%) are classified as having a moderate erosion risk, and 17% as very low to very low risk.

It is estimated that 25% of South Africa is covered by soils that are also potentially highly susceptible to wind erosion. These include the sandy soils in the western half of the “maize quadrangle” in the North West and the north-western Free State – the areas that produce 75% of the country’s maize.

South African soils are also extremely prone to serious soil compaction, particularly under intensive mechanised cultivated agriculture, in both dry land and irrigated land. It is a problem throughout the country and much more widespread and serious than the global norm.

Large areas of South Africa are covered with soils prone to serious crusting (surface sealing). The extent resulting and awareness of it have increased sharply over the last two decades.

Human-induced soil acidification is a major problem. Its effect is severe since it impacts on the country’s scarce, arable land, especially the limited high-potential agricultural land. Soil-fertility degradation is a concern.

In commercial agriculture, there has been nutrient capital-building of some nutrients, especially phosphorus and zinc. In some cases, phosphorus has built up to excessive levels, where it starts to reduce crop yields.

Genetically modified organisms

Genetic modification (GM) provides a way to meet the growing demand for food without placing greater pressure on scarce resources.

South Africa has commercialised three different GM crops, namely maize, cotton and soya beans. The latest approval of GM crops for commercial use was in 2012, for GM maize that is resistant to certain insect species and herbicide-tolerant. In 2012, the area under GM crop production was estimated to be 2,9 million ha. Of the total (2,73 million ha) maize

produced, 86% (2,428 million ha) is estimated to be genetically modified. The adoption rate for herbicide-tolerant soya bean is 90%, and for cotton, 100%.

LandCare Programme

The National LandCare Programme is a government-supported community-based initiative, which is active throughout the country. Driven by both the public and private sectors through partnerships and cooperation, it seeks to:

- conserve natural resources
- use them in a sustainable way
- create a conservation ethic through education and awareness
- create jobs and address poverty by launching various natural resource rehabilitation, improvement and conservation projects.

Serious concerns about land and water degradation are identified in each province and specific projects address these issues. Projects have been implemented in all nine provinces through the LandCare Conditional Grant, whereby ring-fenced funding is transferred to provinces, in terms of the Yearly Division of Revenue.

Four subprogrammes, namely WaterCare, VeldCare, SoilCare and JuniorCare, are all part of the LandCare Programme.

Over the years, the DAFF, through the Directorate Land Use and Soil Management, has hosted Six Biennial National LandCare Conferences (2002 – Gauteng, 2004 – Western Cape, 2006 – Mpumalanga, 2009 – Limpopo and 2012 – North West provinces and 2014 – KwaZulu-Natal)

LandCare conference objectives are to:

- engage stakeholders for awareness and policy feedback on LandCare programme
- recognise communities, partners and land users advancing LandCare philosophy
- share best practices and technologies in protecting and rehabilitating degraded natural agricultural resources and sustainable land management
- demonstrate the sustainable use of natural resources as one of the adaptation and mitigation measures for addressing the socioeconomic impacts of climate change.
- showcase the potential of LandCare as one of the main vehicles for job creation, food security and sustainable livelihoods
- advocate international and African agendas on sustainable land management.

WaterCare

WaterCare promotes the development of techniques for water-resource management and encourages opportunities for training in this field.

The rehabilitation of irrigation schemes increases water supply and household food security. Irrigated agriculture is by far the biggest single user of run-off water in South Africa and has substantial potential to make a significant socio-economic and social impact on rural society. It contributes more than 30% of the gross value of the country's crop production. The DAFF has embarked on a process to rehabilitate irrigation schemes that have the potential to increase food production, eradicate poverty, create jobs and contribute to economic growth.

About 90% of the country's fruit, vegetables and wine are produced under irrigation.

VeldCare

This programme promotes best grazing systems and erosion-prevention practices to improve production.

It develops and maintains agricultural activities in accordance with the principles of ecologically sustainable development.

Economic and social development opportunities are realised by improving grazing areas and maintaining viable grazing areas throughout rural communities.

SoilCare

The Conservation Agriculture (CA) approach has encouraged the proactive and sustainable use of agricultural natural resources. CA aims to ensure the effective and sustainable use and management of natural resources through minimum disturbance of the soil. CA integrates the management of soil, water and biological resources, to maintain and enhance land productivity and reduce the level of risk. It further aims to protect the potential of natural resources, prevent soil and water degradation and ensure economic viability with a reduction in vulnerability to the effects of climate change. The result of these practices will ensure continued household and national food security through crop production, while conserving the environment. CA is characterised by three principles:

- minimum mechanical soil disturbance (minimum tillage)
- permanent organic soil cover, particularly through available crop *residue*
- diversified crop-rotation practices.

Junior LandCare

The objectives of Junior LandCare are to empower previously disadvantaged youth by providing training in facilitation and leadership skills. This includes promoting food security at home and in schools, enhancing awareness

of sustainable agriculture and stimulating the formation of youth clubs and projects that promote other components of LandCare. Junior LandCare addresses the needs of young people in an integrated way and involves interdisciplinary approaches. This is done for youth both in and out of school.

Smallholder development

In support of food security, the DAFF has persistently strengthened its support for smallholder producers and continues to do so with the involvement of both internal and external partners.

Support to smallholder producers is being synchronised through the department's co-ordinated Programme Management Unit, which comprises all DAFF technical support units.

The Programme Management Unit has been established to reinforce smallholder support activities of the already existing Smallholder Development Working Group, which is constituted by other national government departments, the ARC and the provincial departments of agriculture. Smallholder access to markets is pursued and engagements with institutions such as the World Food Programme and the Food and Agriculture Organisation for such market opportunities are at an advanced stage.

A web-based platform of the supported smallholder producers is being developed to ensure proper data and updates on all smallholder activities. The implementation of the approved Strategic Plan for Smallholder Support is on track with support funding received from the Department of Trade and Industry's Employment Creation Fund.

Small-scale sugar cane farmers in the Nkomazi area of Mpumalanga are to benefit significantly from government's Jobs Fund and are expected to double their production and create 1 544 new and sustainable jobs.

The farms should, over a five-year period, increase production from 450 000 tons of cane to 850 000 tons per year.

The fund is targeted at established companies with a good track record and which plan to expand existing programmes or pilot innovative approaches to employment creation, with a special focus on opportunities for young people.

Akwandze Agricultural Finance Ltd, through funding provided by the Jobs Fund, is addressing this need by ensuring these farmers can get adequate, cost-effective and appropriate financing with favourable terms.

Akwandze is also providing a package of associated farmer support initiatives such as

on-site service back-up, training and capacity building.

According to the South Africa Sugar Association, the number of small-scale sugar growers has declined by 33% – from 50 000 in 2005 to around 33 700 in 2011. The productivity of small-scale farmers has also been declining. The tonnage in sugar produced by small-scale farmers has dropped from 850 000 at its peak to 450 000 tons per annum.

Akwandze is also supporting a cooperative of 216 small-scale farmers called Siboshwa to expand their growing area of 83 ha by 20 ha, developing their irrigation infrastructure and ensuring everything is in place to maintain it according to manufacturer specifications. This should allow them to produce another 2 000 t of cane.

Akwandze has matched a grant of R50 million from the Jobs Fund with a further R70 million and will recapitalise irrigation infrastructure for 1 281 small-scale growers, which will help to rehabilitate 10 000 ha of sugar cane land.

Akwandze will also extend its lending capacity to the growers for replanting, fertiliser, weeding and irrigation costs. The result should be to double the total annual tonnage of sugar cane produced by small-scale growers in Nkomazi.

It is anticipated that the Akwandze Project will create 1 544 new full-time jobs and increase turnover for these small-scale growers.

Extension and advisory services

Over the past five years the DAFF has implemented an extension and advisory revitalisation programme worth R1,1 billion. To improve the ratio of extension officers to farmers, more than 1 200 extension and advisory officers had been recruited by the end of 2012/13.

To ensure that these officers are visible and accountable on the ground, the Digital Pen technology has been rolled out nationally. This technology is used by extension personnel to record their interaction with clients and allows the taking of pictures on site for evidence purposes.

To ensure access to appropriate information, the Extension Suite Online system has been adopted nationally.

This computerised system enables extension officers to access relevant information during their interaction with the farmers in the field.

For them to render an effective service, extension officers have been equipped with working tools. A total of 15 515 information and communications technology equipment items have been allocated and put to use.

These include cell phones, Global Positioning System devices, laptops, printers and vehicles.

Training

The agricultural sector boasts state-of-the-art training and research facilities.

At grassroots level, South Africa has a number of regular schools offering a range of agricultural subjects and specialised agricultural high schools such as Bekker High School in North West, Harry Oppenheimer Agricultural High School in Limpopo and Boland Agricultural High School in the Western Cape.

Prospective farmers and technicians are trained at the country's colleges of agriculture such as Grootfontein Agricultural Development Institute in the Eastern Cape, Cedara College of Agriculture in KwaZulu-Natal and Madzivhandila College of Agriculture in Limpopo.

Universities (including those with and without designated faculties of agriculture) offer advanced degree courses and Bachelor of Technology degrees. Veterinary surgeons are trained at the University of Pretoria's Faculty of Veterinary Sciences at Onderstepoort.

This training potential is coupled with productive and robust research capacity in terms of scientists and researchers based at various organisations who are world leaders in their respective fields of agricultural research.

The ARC, several universities and various private-sector organisations, as well as some provincial departments of agriculture, which are responsible for technological development and transfer aimed at improving managerial efficiency on farms, conduct agricultural research.

Research and innovation

The ARC, several universities and various private-sector organisations, as well as some provincial departments of agriculture, which are responsible for technological development and transfer aimed at improving managerial efficiency on farms, conduct agricultural research.

Through the Agricultural Science, Technology and Innovation Activities Coordination Committee, the department engages the Department of Science and Technology on joint issues of national importance within the National System of Innovation.

The research unit is also involved in the development and implementation of national research policies and strategies, such as the National Agricultural Research and Development Strategy. This encompasses the national priority-setting process, developing guidelines, administering a national research and technology fund and overall monitoring and evaluation.

The National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF) provides a platform for stakeholder consultations on research and development

while the Government Agricultural Research and Development Action Group provide a platform for government and state-Owned Entities to plan research and technology development within the national agricultural research system.

The NARF facilitates consensus and makes recommendations to government on the coordination of research, development and transfer of technology to enhance national economic growth, social welfare and environmental sustainability.

Policy

The Directorate: Policy Research Support in the DAFF coordinates all agricultural research and development activities. The mandate of the Policy Research Support on policies extends beyond policies and strategies in research but covers the entire sector related policies.

The Policy Research Support Unit is responsible for ensuring that available sector policies are aligned to Government protocols, which is conducted by subjecting available policies to the objectives of the main government policies, such as the NDP, to ensure that sector policies address government priorities.

The unit is also responsible for conducting the review of sector policies for alignment with the NDP.

Animal identification

Under the Animal Identification Act, 2002 (Act 6 of 2002) the Minister declares animals for compulsory identification. The national register is available to the SAPS through the State Information Technology Agency to help it trace individual animals to their owners.

However, this can only be implemented successfully if all cattle, goats, pigs and sheep are marked in accordance with the Act.

Regulation services

Pest control

The South African Pest Control Association (Sapca) is the official representative of the pest, termite and woodborer-control industries. All Sapca-qualified inspectors have to register with the DAFF.

South Africa regularly liaises with other countries and international organisations to ensure the transfer of pest-control technology.

To respond comprehensively to the management of regulated plant pests and diseases, the department, in close collaboration with the South African fruit industries, has developed an early warning surveillance programme for the quarantine of fruit flies. The technical forum continues to identify, prioritise and manage quarantine pest risks such as the African invader fruit fly.

In the global trade of food and food products,

veterinary public health and food safety aspects in relation to animal products received increasing attention.

Food security

The Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme aims to achieve physical, social and economic access to safe and nutritious food for all South Africans. Its goal is to eradicate hunger, malnutrition and food insecurity by 2015.

The Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme recognises the broad regional food-security framework that the Regional Indicative Sustainable Development Programme highlighted, and which prompted South Africa to respond to the humanitarian appeal by the UN World Food Programme for emergency food relief in the SADC region.

Regional and international cooperation and trade

Regional cooperation

South Africa has strong and mutually dependent economic links with countries in the southern African region through the SADC and the *Sacu*.

The department continues to expand its relations with other countries in Africa and other countries in the world through bilateral cooperation agreements.

South Africa participates in the Regional Advisory Committee of the Regional Food Security Training Programme.

The Regional Food Security Training Programme was developed over a five-year period as endorsed by the Regional Advisory Committee. Its activities focus on strengthening the supply of food-security training services; strengthening the effective demand for training and development; and sustaining regional markets for food-security-related training services.

The SADC has instituted the Subcommittee for Plant Protection, which is tasked with harmonising phytosanitary requirements in southern Africa. South Africa is also a member of the Inter-African Phytosanitary Council, which was established in 1954.

Regional plant protection organisations such as these are able to provide valuable regional coordination of the activities and objectives of the International Plant Protection Convention. The Inter-Africa Phytosanitary Council is officially recognised as the Regional Plant Protection Organisation for Africa. The council is the African Union's phytosanitary coordinating body.

The SADC has produced the MoU on the Harmonisation of Seed Regulations in the SADC Region, which is based on three technical

documents, namely the Regional Variety Release System Seed Certification and Quality Assurance; and Quarantine and Phytosanitary Measures.

Lower costs and more basic administration will encourage local small-scale seed producers and suppliers to expand their activities.

Regional trade

South Africa, as a member of Sacu and a signatory of the SADC Treaty, is committed to sharing its objectives with other nations in the region. Sacu opened its markets to the countries of the SADC region by implementing its tariff reduction commitments under the SADC Trade Protocol. The signatories to the SADC Trade Protocol are: Botswana, Lesotho, Madagascar, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, the Seychelles, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe. Angola and the Democratic Republic of the Congo are still in the process of acceding to the protocol.

The first objective of the trade protocol is to remove both tariff and non-tariff barriers to trade between SADC countries.

The SADC has set up an electronic reporting system for non-tariff barriers, in which the DAFF is involved as a contact point to receive traders' complaints.

South Africa, as part of the Sacu and SADC, is in the process with negotiating with the Common Market for Southern and Eastern Africa (Comesa) and the East African Community (EAC) for the Tripartite Free Trade Area Agreement.

International trade

The Directorate: International Trade of the DAFF is responsible for implementing, monitoring and reporting on South Africa's commitments and rights under the WTO Agreement on Agriculture, as well as the Agreement on the Implementation of Sanitary and Phytosanitary measures. The directorate is also responsible for the monitoring, implementation and negotiating in collaboration with the Department of Trade and Industry of bilateral and regional trade agreements.

South Africa maintained its status as a net exporter of agriculture, forestry and fisheries (AFF) products during 2013. Total AFF exports amounted to R98 billion against imports of R79 billion during 2013. Although South Africa is a net exporter of primary agricultural products, the country has become a net importer of processed agricultural products.

Primary AFF products exports during 2013 totalled R52,6 billion against the imports of R18,9 billion.

Secondary or processed AFF products exports

during 2013 were R45,8 billion against imports of R60,9 billion.

South Africa was a net exporter of fisheries products and a net importer of forestry products during 2013.

Exports of forestry products amounted to R16,6 billion against imports of R17,2 billion during 2013. Exports of fisheries products came to R4,7 billion against imports of R3,5 billion during 2013.

Exports of fruit and nuts constituted the largest export category by value (R25,0 billion) of South Africa's total AFF exports during 2013.

Imports of cereals to the value of R10,7 billion constituted the largest category, in terms of imports during the same period. The Netherlands (8%), the United Kingdom (7%) and Zimbabwe (7%), respectively, ranked as South Africa's top three export destinations for AFF products by value during 2013. With regard to imports, China (9%), Argentina (8%) and Brazil (6%) ranked as the top three markets of origin for South Africa's AFF products, respectively, during 2013.

Japan, Italy and Mozambique were the fastest growing export destinations for South Africa's AFF products by value with growth rates of 73%, 52% and 48% respectively during 2013. Exports of wood pulp to Japan, sheep/lamb skins to Italy and malt beer to Mozambique registered the highest growth during 2013 among the top five AFF exports by value to these markets. Mexico, Malaysia and Indonesia showed the most negative growth during the same period, with maize to Mexico, soya bean seeds to Malaysia and paper and paperboards to Indonesia declining the most.

On the import markets' side, India, Italy and Ukraine ranked the highest, in terms of import growth, during 2013. Imports of rice from India, cocoa preparations from Italy, as well as wheat from Ukraine, registered the highest growth.

Malaysia, Argentina and Belgium declined significantly during the same period with imports of palm oil, sunflower seed or safflower oil and paper and paperboards declining the most.

Forestry

The DAFF is the custodian of South Africa's forest resources, which cover over 40 million ha of the country's land surface area. An amount of R1,4 billion from the department's budget has been allocated to forestry and natural resource management.

The forest sector employs around 165 300 workers and provides about 62 100 direct jobs and 30 000 indirect jobs. Forestry provides livelihood support to 716 000 people of the country's rural population. The pulp and paper

industry provides about 13 200 direct and 10 800 indirect employment opportunities.

Some 20 000 workers are employed in sawmilling, and 6 000 in the timber-board and 2 200 in the mining timber industries, while a further 11 000 workers are employed in miscellaneous jobs in forestry.

In terms of land use, the afforested area is about 1,27 million ha or about 1,1% of the total South African land area of 122,3 million ha.

The forest sector (forestry and forest products) contributes about 1% to the GDP. In terms of regional GDP, forestry in KwaZulu-Natal contributes 3,9%; in Mpumalanga 3,4%; in the Eastern Cape 0,6%; and in Limpopo about 0,6%.

The DAFF contributes to eradicating poverty through the Forestry Livelihoods Programme. Firewood, construction poles, medicinal plants and edible fruit are all critical to the livelihoods of the rural poor.

The department develops human resources through forestry-sector skills development initiatives and promotes employment through commercial forestry activities such as forestation and downstream activities. The integration of forestry programmes into provincial and municipal development plans will assist the Plant a Million Trees Campaign.

The DAFF is pursuing a target of 10 000 ha of net new afforestation a year. However, their target has not been met due to various reasons that include challenges with acquisition of water use licences for afforestation and the need to conduct environmental impact assessments since forestry classifies as a stream flow reduction activity in terms of environmental law. There are new efforts to review the target.

The focus will remain on encouraging cooperatives, simplifying and streamlining the regulatory environment, training and extension, supporting the implementation of rural credit and offering incentives for new entrants.

In terms of the economic growth and development that forestry offers, the DAFF is working closely with other government structures in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal to fast-track the afforestation licensing process.

In the Eastern Cape, funds have been secured to assist communities with the processes of environmental impact assessments – a prerequisite preceding any afforestation activity.

Afforestation is taking place in rural areas where there are few other viable opportunities for job creation and economic activity.

The development of these additional raw material resources will attract greater processing capacity in the form of sawmills, board mills,

chipping plants and treatment plants, which will lead to broad economic growth. An additional R500 million a year could be generated from such plantations.

The forestry programme also includes greening and tree-planting projects. The programme prioritises work on fire-fighting programmes such as the Working on Fire Programme and encourages the establishment of fire-protection associations (FPAs).

Legislation

The National Forests Act, 1998 (Act 84 of 1998), and the Forestry Laws Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 35 of 2005), reflect the vision for the future of forestry in South Africa. They emphasise sustainable forest management, and explain how people and communities can use forests without destroying them. The Acts set out rules for protecting indigenous forests, and ensure that the public has reasonable access to state-forest land for recreational, cultural, spiritual and educational purposes.

South Africa is richly endowed with more than 1 700 tree and shrub species. Some are threatened, and 47 species are protected under the Act.

Protected trees may not be cut down; damaged; destroyed or possessed; collected; removed; transported; exported; purchased; sold; donated or in any other way acquired or disposed of except under a licence granted by the Minister or in terms of an exemption. In terms of the National Forests Act of 1998, all natural forests are protected. In 2014, the National Forest Act of 1998 was amended to ensure ease of implementation.

The National Veld and Forest Fire Act (NVFFA), 1998 (Act 101 of 1998), and the National Veld and Forest Fire Laws Amendment, 2001 (Act 12 of 2001), are the primary legislation regulating veldfire management in the country.

The purpose of these Acts is to prevent and combat veld, forest and mountain fires. The legislation provides a variety of institutions, methods and practices for achieving the purpose. The Acts place an individual duty on every landowner where there is a risk of fire to take certain minimum precautions to prevent and combat fires. It also introduces the concept of voluntary FPAs, which may be formed by

In February 2015, the DAFF announced the implementation of inspections for fresh fruit and vegetables, feed products, grains and grain products including ornamental foliage and flowers, sourced from, national fresh produce markets, packhouses, silos, distribution centres and farms intended for export to African countries.

landowners for purposes of veldfire management in a specific area.

Industry and exports

The forestry industry was a nett exporter of over R4,2 billion worth of goods in 2013, of which more than 99% took the form of converted value-added products.

The forest products industry ranks among the top exporting industries in the country, having contributed 1,92% to total exports and 1,4% to total imports in 2012. Capital investment in the industry amounted to an estimated R28,8 billion in 2012. The value of forest product exports grew by 70,5% over the past decade, from R11,2 billion in 2002 to R19,1 billion in 2013. In real terms, however (taking inflation into account), this growth was -57% over the period in question. Consequently, the nett trade balance in foreign trade in forest products decreased from 2002 by -62% in nominal terms (-78% in real terms) to R4,2 billion in 2013.

In 2013, paper products were the most important exports (36,9% of the total), followed by pulp (36,1%), solid wood products (22,7%) and other products (4,2%). Woodchip exports, mainly to Japan, accounted for 52% (R1 407 billion) of total solid-wood product exports.

As with other export-based industries, the continuing unfavourable economic environment has had a negative impact on demand, particularly in Japan, which is still recovering from the damage caused to some of its pulp and paper mills by the tsunami that occurred in March 2012.

As a result of this, exports of forest products from South Africa decreased in value by R1,2 billion or 7,7% from R15 billion in 2011 to R13,8 billion in 2012.

Role-players

National Forest Advisory Council (NFAC)

The NFAC advises the Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries on all aspects of forestry in the country.

The NFAC is actively involved in developing local criteria, indicators and standards for sustainable forest management, and makes recommendations on how public access to state-owned forests may be improved.

South African Forestry Company Limited (Safcol)

Safcol is government's forestry company, conducting timber harvesting, timber processing and related activities, both domestically and internationally. In 2013, the group had 18 plantations covering 187 320 ha with one sawmill

and renting capacity at two others.

It subscribes to the Forest Sector Charter and plays a leading role in transformation within the industry. With the focus on communities adjacent to its plantations and specifically the youth in those communities, it makes a difference in the physical circumstances and networking in the communities.

The structured approach of community partnerships was strengthened, with the focus on implementing needs-driven development and making a positive impact in community members' lives.

Of special note is the launch of the Safcol-sponsored Forestry Chair at the University of Pretoria, which is an opportunity for students who wish to further their studies in forestry-related fields.

Despite a difficult operating environment, the Safcol group's financial performance for the 2012/13 financial year was better than it had been in the previous two financial years, resulting in an operating profit of R51 million (excluding the effect of the adjustment of plantation valuation). The profit to date has been attributed to the group's efforts to implement its turnaround strategy.

The group's share in the lumber market has increased from 4% to 12%, following the introduction of its new marketing and sales approach.

Research and training

South Africa has world-class forestry research infrastructure and personnel, with almost 2% of the forestry industry's turnover (private and public sectors) devoted to research. The forest research function within the department has been coordinating a number of research projects focusing on sustainable management of forest resources. These include:

- the monitoring and evaluation of bark-harvesting techniques used for two indigenous tree species in the Letaba State Forest
- sustainable harvesting of plants used for medicinal purposes
- the sustainable use of monkey rope (*Secamone alpinii*) by local subsistence farmers
- ex situ and in situ conservation of the critically endangered *Protea roupelliae* sbsp. *hamiltonii*
- conservation of the co-occurring endangered *Leucospermum gerrardii* within the Dr Hamilton Nature Reserve.

The major institutes servicing the research needs of the industry are the Institute of Commercial Forestry Research in Pietermaritzburg, the Forestry and Agriculture Biotechnology Institute, and the Council for Scientific

and Industrial Research in Pretoria. The South African National Biodiversity Institute also plays an important role, in terms of species protection.

The faculties of agricultural and forestry sciences at the universities of Stellenbosch, KwaZulu-Natal and Venda offer forestry degrees. The Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (George Saaeveld Campus) offers diplomas and limited degree courses in forestry disciplines.

The Natal University of Technology offers a diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology, and the Fort Cox College of Agriculture and Forestry offers a diploma in Social Forestry.

Skills training are provided by a number of industry-sponsored and in-house training centres. Industry-sponsored bursaries are available, as are company-sponsored bursaries for study at these institutions.

The Fibre Processing and Manufacturing (FPM) Sector Education and Training Authority (Seta), is responsible for ensuring that the training undertaken by the industry meets certain quality standards.

The department, together with the FPM Seta, offers study bursaries in forestry-related fields.

Programmes and initiatives

Participative forestry

The department supports the establishment of community projects through regional forestry staff. An estimated R2 million has already been spent from the Community Facilitation Fund to support the establishment of projects on the ground. Projects include the establishment of medicinal plant nurseries, in partnership with various stakeholders, and beekeeping, in partnership with the ARC.

In addition to producing honey, beekeepers play a critical role in agriculture, contributing to crop pollination and the development of products worth billions of rand.

The honey industry in South Africa has an average annual turnover of R3,2 billion and produces some 2 000 t a year. Government investment in KwaZulu-Natal aims to increase national production to 100 000 t and employ over 100 000 people.

National Arbor Week

The National Arbor Week campaign is a greening campaign that is nationally recognised and listed as one of the environmental campaigns in South Africa. The lead department and the official custodian of the campaign is the DAFF with Total South Africa as the main sponsor of the campaign. The primary purpose of the campaign is to spread and herald the importance of protection, conservation and preservation of

the country's green heritage, namely forests, indigenous trees and related green resources. The annual National Arbor Week campaign takes place under a specific theme. The theme is determined by a consultative process with the various stakeholders and is approved for use by the Minister of DAFF.

The secondary aim is to educate, change attitudes and modify the general behaviour of the South African public in a way and a manner they perceive and relate to our green heritage. The campaign is designed to reach as many people as possible through various means of media. During 2014's Arbor Week, the key message of value of trees and forests on livelihoods and enterprise development was highlighted. The launch of the event serves as a platform for the Minister to deliver a key note address and to request South Africans to observe the campaign and get involved in various activities of tree planting.

The 2014 campaign was launched in Mofolo Park in the area of the Johannesburg Metropolitan Municipality by the Minister of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries. An estimated number of 2 500 people were present at the event and a total of 1400 trees were distributed on the day. During the 2014 campaign, 56 538 trees were planted by both DAFF and stakeholders.

The 2014 campaign took place under the theme: 'Forests and People': Investing in a Sustainable Future." The theme was influenced by the need to promote the 14th WFC that will be held in Durban, South Africa in September 2015. The theme for National Arbor Week was therefore adopted from the FAO, and is the theme under which the 14th World Forestry Congress will take place.

During the Arbor Week campaign, trees were planted with communities country-wide, especially at schools, in homesteads, at various community centres and on streets. Both fruit and indigenous trees were planted. The small and emerging nursery owners continue to benefit from the procurement of trees from their nurseries. In addition to the planting of trees, emphasis was made to highlight the need for the conservation of forests and in particular indigenous trees that are threatened by natural and anthropogenic factors. To this end, the campaign promoted the planting of three indigenous species that have been identified and named as trees of the year. The following two trees were promoted:

- *Heteropyxis natalensis* Harvey: Common names: Lavender Tree (E), Laventelboom (A), iNkusi (Z)
- *Vepris lanceolata*: Common names: White Ironwood (E), Witysterhout (A), Muruvula (T), Muhondwa (V), uMzane (X), umOzana (Z).

Besides being one of the major greening campaigns in the country, Arbor Week provides the DAFF and its greening partners an opportunity to make people aware of the importance of planting trees, the role of trees in our daily lives and how they benefit the environment in general.

Champion Tree Project

The purpose of the Champion Tree Project is to identify and protect trees that are of national importance and worthy of special protection, due to their remarkable size, age, aesthetic, cultural, historic or tourism value. Similar projects have been established in several other countries, but this is the first of its kind in Africa.

Nomination forms with guidelines for the nomination process are available from the DAFF.

Every nomination cycle starts on 1 August each year, and ends on 31 July the following year.

Seventy five trees and groups of trees have been declared by the department as Champion Trees, based on criteria such as size, age and historical value. More trees have been shortlisted, and will be declared during 2015. These trees are all protected under the National Forests Act of 1998. They include the Tsitsikamma Big Tree along the Garden Route, the Post Office milkwood tree of Mossel Bay, the Sagole baobab in Limpopo and camphor trees planted at Vergelegen Estate in the Western Cape three centuries ago.

The oldest planted tree in South Africa is a saffron pear, brought from the Netherlands and planted in the Dutch East India Company's gardens in Cape Town more than three centuries ago, supposedly by Jan van Riebeeck. Historic trees include a poplar tree, which served as a landmark for refugees during the apartheid regime who found a safe haven in the Johannesburg house of Ruth Fischer, the daughter of Bram Fischer, who was a founding member of the South African Communist Party.

A group of international and local tree climbers has visited and climbed the champion trees around the country, contributing to more accurate height measurements, and installing nesting boxes for the rare Cape parrot in some of the large champion trees that occur in natural forests. All the trees were also visited by a professional photographer, to create a proper photographic record of the trees, which will also be used for the publication of a book on the champion trees within a year.

Million Trees Programme

The Million Trees Programme was launched

in 2007 as part of a UN greening initiative to encourage countries worldwide to plant more trees. Its purpose is to ensure that at least one million trees, including fruit trees and indigenous ornamental shade trees, are planted every year.

In South Africa, the Million Trees Programme is a partnership between the three spheres of government, non-governmental and community-based organisations, schools and the corporate sector.

In an effort to ensure the programme is implemented widely, government is calling on the corporate sector to make a contribution, and for citizens and organisations to become involved.

A million trees had been planted across the country by the end of 2013. This will bring to 13 million the number of trees planted nationwide since the project began in 2000.

Resources

Sustainable forest management

Broadly speaking, there are three categories of forests in South Africa, namely indigenous forests, woodlands and plantation forests. Forestry activities in indigenous forests and woodlands are not limited to the protection of the resource as a natural heritage, but include its development, use and management, as well as the management and processing of non-timber forest products.

Plantation forestry practices include, among other things, the establishment of vast areas of land with exotic tree species that are harvested and processed into pulp for the paper and packaging industries; sawn timber for the production of structural and industrial timber used in the construction industry; poles for telephone and electricity supply; mining timber for use as underground support structures in primarily the gold and platinum mining sectors. The balance of other timber produced is used for a variety of other products such as charcoal and match manufacture.

By the end of October 2014, 1 507 710 ha of plantation forestry land (planted and conservation areas combined) in South Africa were certified by the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC), the second largest area in the southern hemisphere after Brazil.

Although large forestry companies do not own all the certified forests, having their own specialist environmental departments has helped the rapid expansion of certification, as they ensure that land is managed according to their own stringent environmental codes of practice.

To promote transparency, members of the public are invited to join company staff when regular audits are conducted.

There has been an increase in the number of non-corporate growers who have become certified. This may be attributed to factors such as the FSC's acceptance of group-certification schemes and the availability of local FSC auditors, both of which have reduced the cost of certification considerably.

The introduction of small, low-intensity managed forest audits enables small and community forestry schemes to be FSC-certified.

Indigenous forests

Only about 0,5% of South Africa's total land area is covered by natural forests. About half of the more than 1 700 indigenous tree and shrub species, representing some 530 000 ha of dense growth, grow along the south and east coasts and on the southern and south-eastern slopes of inland mountains. The other half is spread over the interior plateaux in isolated valleys and ravines.

A number of these natural forest regions, such as the Tsitsikamma National Park, are important tourist attractions.

The large Afro-temperate forests of the southern Cape, although distributed close to the coast, are aligned with the inland forest types of the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. This is because the southerly temperate latitudes compensate for the altitude of inland forests.

Almost half of all natural forests in South Africa are found on private property or land under communal tenure. A detailed inventory of natural forests helps government to monitor changes in forest areas.

Although the country's low natural forest coverage has led to the development of the commercial forestry sector over the last 100 years, natural forests have continued playing a major role in the livelihoods and well-being of many rural communities. The use of natural forests as sources of building material, fuel wood, food and medicine is increasing, with an estimated 80% of South Africa's population still using medicinal plants, most of which are sourced from natural forests.

The forest-type classification for natural forests represents 24 broad forest types. The Natural Forests Protected Areas System guides the setting aside and demarcation of natural forests as protected areas.

Systematic timber harvesting occurs in certain areas of southern Cape forests and on a smaller scale, in the Amathole forests in the Eastern Cape. This sustainable harvesting system concentrates on the removal of small quantities of senile trees dying off within the forest. On

average, 3 750 m³ of round logs are harvested annually (150 m³ of stinkwood, 750 m³ of yellowwood, 2 500 m³ of Australian *Blackwood* and 350 m³ of other species).

The seven-week fern (*Rumohra adiantiformis*), harvested in the Knysna and Tsitsikamma forests, is another valuable product of indigenous forests. The South African market for this fern is considerable and reaches its peak in September, when sales have been known to exceed 420 000 bunches.

Woodlands

The woodlands, also known as savannahs, constitute a forest resource of major importance in South Africa. It is the most accessible forest resource for poor communities and contributes in the region of R2 000 to R5 000 to poor households annually. Natural forests cover less than one million ha of land in total, plantation forestry covers less than 1,3 million ha and the woodlands collectively cover about 29 million ha to 46 million ha.

The cover includes extensive areas in the low-lying, drier areas of Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga. Rich biodiversity is found in savannah woodland comprising 5 900 plants, 540 bird species and 175 mammals. These include iconic species such as the Big Five group of mammals that are important to the tourism industry. Several protected tree species of the savannah, such as camel thorn and Leadwood, contribute substantially to the lucrative braai wood market, and guidelines have been set for licensing processes to assist with the control of their use.

Kathu Forest in the Northern Cape is the first woodland area to be declared protected woodland under the National Forests Act of 1998.

In the past, this resource was not really recognised as a forestry responsibility, except where some woodland occurred on State-forest land in conservation areas. However, the National Forestry Action Programme of 1997 identified woodland management as a key area of operation for forestry. The New Forests Act of 1998 also includes woodland in its definition of forests and mandates monitoring and reporting on the state of the woodlands. This legislation protects woodlands on private and communal land, as well as in state forests, while promoting sustainable use.

Savannah woodlands are the most extensive vegetation type in southern Africa and dominate Africa as a whole. Globally, woodlands cover between an eighth and a sixth of the Earth's land surface.

The woodlands are a valuable source of fuel,

building material, craft timber and a variety of non-timber products. These include fruit, fodder, medicinal compounds, honey, meat and mushrooms. They form the backbone of the livelihoods of millions of people. The annual marula-fruit (*Sclerocarya birrea*) harvest, for example, is worth some R1,1 billion a year to rural communities.

There are 87 savannah woodland types, and although the biome as a whole is fairly well protected in formal and private reserves, many under-protected savannah types have been identified.

Another woodland type is the Albany thicket biome, characterised by dense growth of woody and succulent plant species. There are 13 thicket types, which together cover about three million ha. Extensive Spekboom plantings are underway in the Eastern Cape to restore the carrying capacity of degraded thicket areas, and to capitalise on the high carbon sequestration rates of this species as a climate change offset.

Commercial forests

Commercial forest plantations predominantly meet South Africa's demand for wood. During the 1930s, government started extensive commercial plantations to make South Africa self-sufficient in its timber requirements, and to provide more job opportunities.

Commercial plantations of exotic species proved to be a sound investment and the private sector established large plantations of pine, eucalyptus and wattle. South Africa's plantation forests cover about 1% of the combined cultivated (arable) and grazing land.

The commercial forestry industry in South Africa is committed to practising sustainable forest management and is a world leader in forest certification. Stringent environmental codes of practice are implemented in all plantation and processing activities.

The Institute for Commercial Forestry Research (ICFR) completed its role in developing the National Forest Protection Strategy for the DAFF, a project funded by the FAO of the UN.

Another development which will assist in enhancing forest protection is the MoU, formalising FSA's support and funding for these activities at the Forestry and Agriculture Biotechnical Institute (Fabi), which has been entered into with the University of Pretoria.

The FAO and DAFF approved the National Forest Protection Strategy, which includes forest-fire related matters. Once fully implemented, the strategy is expected to provide the industry with additional resources and enhance the coordination of responses to combat forest fires.

Plantation yields

Sappi Forests supplies over 70% of the wood requirements of Sappi South Africa from both their own and commercial timber plantations of 561 000 ha. This equates to more than 35 Mt of standing timber.

All wood grown on Sappi-owned land and a large proportion grown on plantations managed by Sappi is Forest Stewardship Council certified. Approximately 150,000 ha in Sappi plantations is set aside and maintained to conserve the natural habitat and biodiversity, including indigenous forests, grasslands and wetlands.

The timber is used in wood products such as roof trusses. It is also pulped, so that the wood fibre may be used for newspapers, boxes, paper bags and paper.

South Africa's intensively managed commercial forestry plantations are recognised as some of the most productive in the world – not only weather and soil conditions but also advanced management techniques. Consequently, from a limited geographic footprint of 1,27 million ha, the industry can produce, on a sustainable and annual basis, between 16 and 18 Mt of timber a year.

Production from the country's plantation forests amounted to 15,8 Mt (18,2m3) in 2012.

In terms of production by product, pulpwood production at 9,9 Mt was the highest, representing 60,4% of total production. Sawlog production was 4,5 Mt (28% of total).

Mining-timber production of 557 000 tons and the production of other products such as poles and charcoal of 711 600 tons made up the balance.

Socio-economic reform and growth

The forestry vision states that forests are managed for people and that there is a need to create an enabling environment for economic and social development through sustainable forestry, especially at local level.

Forestry strategies to achieve this vision include forestry enterprise development, aimed at creating opportunities for people to use forests including indigenous forests, woodlands and plantations, and forest-based resources for economic growth, income-generation and job creation.

The forestry enterprise development concept is central to government's pro-poor agenda and also a key component of Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) in the forestry sector.

BBBEE Charter

The BBBEE Charter process is one of many government strategies aimed at transforming the economy. The formulation and implementation of BEE programmes at different levels and in different sectors of the economy include partnerships between government and the private sector, including trade unions and community-based organisations.

The BBBEE Charter for the forestry sector will be instrumental in achieving objectives such as increasing the number of black people, particularly women, who own, manage and control enterprises and productive assets; and facilitating ownership and management of enterprise and productive assets by communities, workers, cooperatives and other collective enterprises.

Under the charter, government aims to process about 15 000 ha of water-use licence applications a year for the next 10 years to obtain a nett increase in afforested land of about 10 000 ha a year or 100 000 ha over the entire period.

Community forestry

Community forestry is designed and applied to meet local social, household and environmental needs and to benefit local economic development.

Community forestry is implemented by communities or with the participation of communities, and includes tree-centred projects in urban and rural areas, woodlots, and woodland being managed by communities and individuals.

Community forestry has gained impetus through more focused core functions, particularly in urban greening and forest enterprise development.

Participatory forest management of the DAFF is an integrated approach that contributes to achieving the sustainable management of South African forests.

Elements of participatory forest management were initially developed for indigenous state forests.

However, the aim is to use participatory forest management as an approach to managing all forest types, where feasible (indigenous forests, plantations, woodlots and woodlands and where different types of ownership and management (State, provincial, communal, private and community) exist.

Ninety-six community-stream flow-reduction activity applications, totalling about 13 000 ha, were supported by the departments of agriculture, forestry and fisheries and trade and industry through assistance provided in the undertaking of environmental impact assessments in the Eastern Cape.

Food and Trees for Africa (FTFA)

The FTFA is the sub-Saharan African partner of Global ReLeaf, an international greening organisation.

The FTFA's mission is to contribute to healthier living, especially in disadvantaged communities, through environmental awareness and greening programmes.

The FTFA was started in 1990 to address sustainable development through greening, climate change action, sustainable natural resource management and food-security programmes.

The FTFA works in partnership with government, the private and public sectors and civil society. Its goal is to provide trees to as many underserved communities as possible, with the help of sponsors and certificate programmes.

The FTFA; the departments of water affairs and of agriculture, forestry and fisheries; and the Institute of Environment and Recreation Management, manage the Urban Greening Fund.

It is a collective fund that supports partnerships aimed at sustainable development through tree planting, parks, food-gardening projects and environmental education.

Organisations, companies and individuals can contribute to the fund to help disadvantaged South Africans create a greener, healthier and more secure life.

Fisheries

The DAFF is tasked with managing the development and sustainable use of marine and coastal resources; maximising the economic potential of the fisheries sector; and protecting the integrity and quality of the country's marine and coastal ecosystems.

The South African coastline covers more than 3 000 km, linking the east and west coasts of Africa.

These shores are particularly rich in biodiversity, with some 10 000 species of marine plants and animals recorded.

The productive waters of the West Coast support a variety of commercially exploited marine life, including hake, anchovy, sardine, horse mackerel, tuna, snoek, rock lobster and abalone.

The 2015 World Forestry Congress was hosted in KwaZulu-Natal at the Inkosi Albert Luthuli International Convention Centre in Durban.

More than 7 000 delegates, including scientists, policy-makers, community-based organisations, non-governmental organisations, civil society organisations and government officials from around the world attended the event to discuss issues affecting forests.

The key discussion points of the 2015 conference were the role of forests in food security, climate change, agro-forestry and the economic value of trees.

On the east coast, squid, linefish and a wide range of intertidal resources provide an important source of food and livelihood for coastal communities.

Marine life that is not harvested, such as whales, dolphins and seabirds, is increasingly recognised as a valuable resource for nature-based tourism.

The main challenge in fisheries is to create a balance between maximising the social and economic potential of the fisheries industry; protecting the integrity and quality of the country's marine and coastal ecosystems and addressing transformation in the sector.

In line with international trends, the department recognises fisheries as an economic activity rather than a purely environmental or biodiversity matter.

Government has expanded the mandate for fisheries management by adding fresh water and inland fisheries, as well as aquaculture, to the department's existing responsibilities.

The department will gradually establish offices of the fisheries branch in coastal, as well as inland provinces.

These are economic decisions, which contribute to employment creation and poverty alleviation.

Industry and products

South Africa is among the global fishing nations that have identified the challenges within their fishing industry. With 22 commercial fisheries sectors and new fisheries being explored and experimented with, South Africa has two fisheries sector components.

Wild capture fisheries include three distinct components, namely commercial, recreational and subsistence fisheries, each of which requires specific research and management interventions.

The aquaculture (fish farming) sector is considered underdeveloped and as a result, has been prioritised, owing to declining wild stocks.

Legislation and policies

- The Small-scale Fisheries Policy seeks to address imbalances of the past and ensure that small-scale fishers are accommodated and properly managed. For the first time, fishing rights will be allocated on a group, rather than an individual basis. The policy further aims to support investment in community entities to take joint responsibility for sustainably managing the fisheries resources and to address the depletion of critical fisheries stocks.
- The department has entered into a service level agreement with the South African Navy to manage its fleet of four patrol vessels

and three research vessels for a year, while the department considers its various options regarding the long-term management of these vessels.

Resource management

The department increased its capacity to combat illegal, unregulated and unreported fishing, and launched an anti-poaching project in the Western Cape, funded through the Working for Fisheries Programme.

This enabled the department to deploy 60 military veterans in the Overberg region to serve as the "eyes and ears" of government.

The fishing sector comprises large-scale operators and small-scale and recreational fishermen and women.

According to a recent UN report, more than two-thirds of the world's fisheries have been overfished or are fully harvested, and more than one third is in a state of decline, owing to the loss of fish habitats, soaring pollution levels in oceans and rivers and climate change.

According to the report, abalone stocks remain in a depleted to heavily depleted state as the resources continue to decline, due to increasing levels of poaching and ecological factors.

Meanwhile, line fish resources range from heavily depleted to optimal states, depending on species.

There are, however, signs of a positive response by some species to the emergency management measures implemented in 2000.

Given the low population sizes of many line fish species, however, present management measures are expected to assist in allowing stock to increase.

Under the operational management procedure, the West Coast rock lobster is showing signs of recovery.

Deep-water hake remains depleted, however, its status is improving, whereas shallow-water hake is considered optimal to abundant.

The implementation of precautionary management approaches to hake fisheries in recent years has resulted in a faster than anticipated recovery of deep-water hake.

Harders, which are the main target of the beach-seine and gillnet fisheries, remain in a depleted to heavily depleted state.

Environmental anomalies and illegal netting have affected the recruitment of the species in recent years.

The abundance of Agulhas sole has remained relatively constant over the past 15 years, while Cape horse mackerel has increased in abundance in recent years, due to good recruitment, and the stock is considered to be in an optimal state.

The anchovy stock is at the lowest level observed in the past 15 years, but sardine and round herring stocks continue to increase.

In South Africa, the fisheries sector is worth around R6 billion per annum and directly employs some 27 000 people in the commercial sector. Thousands more and their families depend on these resources for food and the basic needs of life.

The total allowable catch for the West Coast rock lobster 2013/14 fishing season has been set at 2 167,06 tons. The total allowable catch apportioned to the commercial offshore subsector is set at 1 356,56 tons and for the commercial near-shore subsector, it is set at 451 tons.

The total allowable catch apportioned for the subsistence (small-scale/interim relief) subsector, is set at 276 tons (138 kg per fisher).

The apportionment for the recreational fishing subsector remains unchanged at four West Coast rock lobsters per person per day for the duration of the fishing season.

The size restriction remains at 80 mm carapace length and recreational fishing permits will only be issued to persons above the age of 12 years. Any west coast rock lobster caught, collected or transported shall be kept in a whole state.

West coast rock lobster caught with a recreational permit may not be sold by any person.

Recreational west coast rock lobster permits are obtainable at the Post Office, at a cost of R92 per permit and are valid for the entire recreational fishing season.

The department's decision to pursue the recovery target has been welcomed by WWF and carries the unanimous support of all the WCRL user sectors.

The International Commission for the Conservation of Atlantic Tunas (ICCAT) is a Regional Fisheries Management Organisation (RFMO) that is responsible for the management of tuna and tuna-like species in the Atlantic Ocean and Mediterranean Sea.

South Africa's strategic intent with participating in the ICCAT is to ensure long-term fishing access in the Atlantic Ocean for South African fishing companies in the tuna pole fisheries and the developing large pelagic fisheries.

Access to the Atlantic Ocean is essential for encouraging future investment in the tuna/swordfish fisheries, to create the enabling environment for these fisheries to develop.

The ICCAT will benefit South Africa with management activities, including collating fisheries data, guiding research, conducting stock assessments, establishing management and conservation measures and issuing country quotas.

Aquaculture

Aquaculture incorporates the breeding, trading or rearing of aquatic organisms in a controlled or selected aquatic environment for recreational, commercial or subsistence purposes.

Fisheries and aquaculture support the livelihoods of an estimated 540 million people. Aquaculture, is the farming of aquatic organisms and is divided into fresh-water culture and mariculture.

Species farmed in the latter include dusky kob, abalone, Pacific oysters, Mediterranean mussels and black mussels, among others. According to the National Aquaculture Strategic Framework, the sector is relatively small and government wants to create a climate in which it can grow.

Special attention will be paid to freshwater aquaculture, as it has shown growth potential.

Government will also boost investments in research, development technology, transfer and extension, as well as education and training programmes in aquaculture.

The Agriculture Development Enhancement Programme, which offers cost-sharing grants of R40-million per company aims to create more jobs in the sector. The grants will be made available for machinery, equipment, infrastructure, commercial vehicles and work boats, in pursuit of boosting competition in the industry.

Abalone fishing is severely restricted in South African waters, however, poaching is rife, as it is a lucrative trade.

Poaching has caused the decline in abalone numbers over the years. The species is highly coveted and fetches high prices, especially in the Far East.

The National Aquaculture Policy Framework (NAPF) was developed against the backdrop of a global aquaculture sector that has seen an increased demand for fishery products.

The policy provides a unified framework for the establishment and development of an industry that contributes towards sustainable job creation and increased investment.

In South Africa, marine and freshwater aquaculture presents a good opportunity to diversify fish production to satisfy local demand; contribute to food security, job creation, economic development and rural development; and improve export opportunities.

Subsistence fisheries

Participation in subsistence fisheries is comprehensive – coastal communities have traditionally made use of intertidal and shallow-water resources as a source of food. Only surplus not consumed by fishers is sold locally.

Some 147 fishing communities, 28 338 fisher households and about 29 233 people are considered true subsistence fishers.

A draft policy for the recognition, allocation and management of small-scale fishing rights is being developed for small-scale fishing.

Recreational fishing

Following extensive consultations with key players in the abalone sector and after careful consideration of the scientific stock assessment reports, the DAFF has decided to keep the total allowable catch for the 2014/15 fishing season unchanged.

The zonal allocations that were in place during the 2013/14 fishing season will also apply for this season and are as follows: Zone A: 25-tons; Zone B: 25-tons; Zone C: 0-tons; Zone D: 0-tons; Zone E: 12-tons; Zone F: 16-tons, and Zone G: 18-tons.

This recommendation is in line with DAFF's objectives of preventing the abalone spawning biomass in each zone to drop below 20% of its pre-exploitation level and to ensure that it recovers to 40% of that level within 15-years. While the illegal harvesting of abalone poses the greatest threat to management objectives, DAFF will continue to work with all stakeholders in the abalone sector and continue to strengthen partnerships with other law-enforcement agencies and communities to ensure that we grow and protect our resources.

With South Africa's extensive coastline spanning two oceans and its numerous dams, lakes, rivers and streams, the country is a recreational fisher's paradise. However, recreational fishing may only be undertaken with a valid permit, and recreational fishing is limited to certain times of the fishing season.

To reduce user conflicts between commercial and recreational fishing, and to, protect stocks during breeding periods, certain areas have been declared closed areas.

Recreational fishers are also subject to bag limits of fish on a per-day basis.

The department's fisheries division has published a recreational fishing pamphlet to guide recreational fishers regarding the number and species of fish they may catch and where they may catch fish. Annual recreational fishing licences in all industries total about 300 000, with income generated from these licences amounting to R18 million. The actual annual catch is about 17 000 t of high-value species.





Arts and Culture

The aim of the Department of Arts and Culture (DAC) is to contribute to sustainable economic development and enhance job creation by preserving, protecting and developing South African arts, culture and heritage to sustain a socially cohesive and democratic nation. Together with the cultural and creative industries sectors, the DAC is committed to ensure that the arts sector contributes to inclusive economic growth and social cohesion.

The department's spending focus over the medium term will be on implementing the Mzansi golden economy and the national social cohesion strategies through the Institutional Governance and Arts and Culture Promotion and Development programmes. Access to community library services will be broadened through the Heritage Promotion and Preservation programme's funding of a recapitalisation programme that provides and enhances community library infrastructure, facilities and services.

Over the medium term, spending in the Heritage Promotion and Preservation programme in particular is expected to use a significant proportion of the department's allocation and is projected to grow significantly. This is due to the transfers of the community library services' conditional grant to provinces, which received additional allocations in the 2013 budget, and transfers to heritage institutions, particularly for new capital works projects. The transfers for capital works projects are mainly for legacy projects under construction, including the Sarah Baartman Centre for Remembrance, the memorial site for J.L. Dube and the memorial site for OR Tambo.

Measures to promote the arts include:

- providing financial, as well as information and communication technology support to artists to enable the creation of works expressing national creativity, while opening space for vibrant debate
- strengthening the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa's mandate for nation-building and value inculcation
- incentivising commercial distribution networks to distribute and/or host art
- developing and implementing plans for a more effective arts and culture curriculum in schools with appropriate educator support
- supporting income-smoothing for artists in a special unemployment insurance scheme and evaluating funding models for such initiatives
- developing sectoral determination legislation frameworks to protect arts-sector employees.

The DAC's strategic goals over the medium term are to:

- create 150 000 decent jobs in arts, culture and heritage by March 2016
- implement targeted programmes that are geared towards human-capital development in the arts, culture and heritage sector by 2014
- enhance access by citizens and public institutions to accurate, reliable and timely information in their language of choice through the provision of archives, libraries and language services
- entrench linguistic diversity in a manner that facilitates equitable cultural expression by citizens and communities
- enhance the capacity of the sector through equitable and sustainable development, and the protection and preservation of arts, culture and heritage through policy development, legislative promulgation and implementation
- align public-sector art, culture and heritage institutions around a shared vision, a common mandate, and strong governance and accountability.

Legislation and policies

The DAC derives its mandate from the following legislation:

- Heraldry Act, 1962 (Act 18 of 1962)
- Culture Promotion Act, 1983 (Act 35 of 1983)
- National Archives and Record Service of South Africa Act, 1996 (Act 43 of 1996)
- Legal Deposit Act, 1997 (Act 54 of 1997)
- South African Geographical Names Council Act, 1998 (Act 118 of 1998)
- Cultural Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 119 of 1998)
- National Council for Library and Information Act, 2001 (Act 6 of 2001)
- National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act 25 of 1999)
- Use of Official Languages Act, 2012 (Act 12 of 2012).

Broadly, this legislation mandates the DAC to:

- develop and promote arts and culture in South Africa and mainstream its role in social development
- develop and promote the official languages of South Africa and enhance the linguistic diversity of the country
- improve economic and other development opportunities for South African arts and culture nationally and globally through mutually beneficial partnerships, thereby ensuring the sustainability of the sector
- develop and monitor the implementation of policy, legislation and strategic direction for

the identification, conservation and promotion of cultural heritage.

Funding

For the 2014/15 financial year, the total budget allocation is R3,5 billion. Relative to the 2013/14 financial year, during which the budget was R2,9 billion, this translates into an increase of 20,9%. The actual increase, after the projected inflation rate of 6,2% is taken into consideration, is 13,9% (or R404,1 million). Approximately R2,8 billion of the total budget allocation is spent by the entities of the department, namely on transfer payments to entities and provinces while R698 million is spent by the department. Transfer allocations for 2014/15:

- Heritage Institutions: R594,7 million
- National Library Services: R104,7 million
- National Arts Council (NAC): R91,6 million
- National Film and Video Foundation (NFVF): R111,5 million
- National Heritage Council (NHC): R55,9 million
- National Language Services (NLS): R49,1 million
- Arts and Cultural Development: R335,4 million
- Performing Arts Institutions: R319,1 million
- Capital Works of Performing Arts Institutions: R42,1 million
- Heritage promotion: R74 million
- National Archive Services: R46,2 million
- Capital Works: R192,3 million
- South African Heritage Resource Agency: R47,4 million
- Public Library Services: R1 billion
- South African Geographical Names Council (SAGNC): R8,5 million
- Pan South African Language Board (PanSALB): R83,4 million.

National symbols

Animal: Springbok (*Antidorcas marsupialis*)

The springbok's common name is derived from its characteristic jumping display. It is the only southern African gazelle and is fairly widespread in open, dry bush, grasslands or riverbeds near water. It is also the emblem of South Africa's national rugby team, which bears its name.

Bird: Blue crane (*Anthropoides paradisea*)

This elegant crane with its silvery blue plumage is endemic to southern Africa, with more than 99% of the population within South Africa's borders.

Fish: Galjoen (*Coracinus capensis*)

The galjoen is found only along the South African

coast and is a familiar sight to every angler. It keeps to mostly shallow water and is often found in rough surf and sometimes right next to the shore.

Flower: King protea (*Protea cynaroides*)

This striking protea is found in the south-western and southern areas of the Western Cape. It derives its scientific name *cynaroides*, which means “like cynara” (artichoke), from the artichoke-like appearance of its flower head.

Tree: Real yellowwood (*Podocarpus latifolius*)

The yellowwood family is primeval and has been present in South Africa for more than 100 million years. The species is widespread, from Table Mountain, along the southern and eastern Cape coast, in the ravines of the Drakensberg up to the Soutpansberg and the Blouberg in Limpopo.

National flag

South Africa's flag is one of the most recognised in the world. It was launched and used for the first time on Freedom Day, 27 April 1994. The design and colours are a synopsis of the principal elements of the country's flag history.



It is the only six-coloured national flag in the world. The central design of the flag, beginning at the flag-pole in a “V” form and flowing into a single horizontal band to the outer edge of the fly, can be interpreted as the convergence of diverse elements within South African society, taking the road ahead in unity.

When the flag is displayed vertically against a wall, the red band should be to the left of the viewer, with the hoist or the cord seam at the top.

When displayed horizontally, the hoist should be to the left of the viewer and the red band at the top. When the flag is displayed next to or behind the speaker at a meeting, it must be placed to the speaker's right. When it is placed elsewhere in the meeting place, it should be to the right of the audience.

National anthem

South Africa's national anthem is a combined version of *Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika* and *The Call of South Africa* (*Die Stem van Suid-Afrika*).

Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika was composed by Methodist mission schoolteacher, Enoch Sontonga, in 1897. The words of *The Call of South Africa* were written by CJ Langenhoven in May 1918, and the music was composed by Reverend ML de Villiers in 1921.

The National Anthem

Nkosi sikelel' i Afrika
Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo,
Yizwa imithandazo yethu,
Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo.

Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso,
O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho,
O se boloke,
O se boloke setjhaba
sa heso,
Setjhaba sa South Afrika –
South Afrika.

Uit die blou van onse hemel,
Uit die diepte van ons see,
Oor ons ewige gebergtes,
Waar die kranse antwoord gee.

Sounds the call to come together,
And united we shall stand,
Let us live and strive for freedom,
In South Africa our land.

National Coat of Arms

South Africa's Coat of Arms, the highest visual symbol of the State, was launched on Freedom Day, 27 April 2000.

Its central image is a secretary bird with uplifted wings and a sun rising above it.

Below the bird is the protea, an indigenous South African flower, representing the aesthetic harmony of all cultures and the country flowering as a nation. The ears of wheat are emblems of the fertility of the land, while the tusks of the African elephant symbolise wisdom, steadfastness and strength.

At the centre, stands a shield signifying the protection of South Africans, above which are a spear and knobkierie. These assert the defence of peace rather than a posture of war.

Within the shield are images of the Khoisan people, the first inhabitants of the land. The figures are derived from images on the Linton Stone, a world-famous example of South African rock art.

The motto of the coat of arms – !ke e:/xarra//ke – is in the Khoisan language of the /Xam people, and means “diverse people unite” or “people who are different joining together.”

National Orders

National Orders are the highest awards that the country, through its President, can bestow on individual South Africans and eminent foreign leaders and personalities.

They are presented annually on 27 April, Freedom Day:

- The Order of Mapungubwe is awarded to

South African citizens for excellence and exceptional achievement.

- The Order of the Baobab is awarded to South African citizens for distinguished service in the fields of business and the economy; science, medicine and technological innovation; and community service.
- The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo is awarded to heads of state and other dignitaries for promoting peace, cooperation and friendship towards South Africa.
- The Order of Luthuli is awarded to South Africans who have made a meaningful contribution to the Struggle for democracy, human rights, nation-building, justice and peace, and conflict resolution.
- The Order of Ikhamanga is awarded to South African citizens who have excelled in the fields of arts, culture, literature, music, journalism and sport.
- The Order of Mendi for Bravery is awarded to South African citizens who have performed extraordinary acts of bravery.

In April 2014, President Jacob Zuma awarded National Orders to 54 South Africans and foreign nationals who have contributed towards the advancement of democracy.

The ceremony was held under the theme: "South Africa – A Better Place to live in."

The recipients of the 2014 National Orders were:

- The Order of Mendi: Reggie Vandeyar, Shirish Nanabhai, Indres Naidoo, Russell Maphanga and Elizabeth Barrett.
- The Order of Ikhamanga: Jomo Sono, Lucas Sithole, Sandra Prinsloo, Victor Ntoni, Zakes Mda, Fanie van der Merwe, Lindiwe Mabuza, Rashid Lombard, Cameron van der Burgh and Caster Semenya.
- The Order of the Baobab: Frederick Van Zyl Slabbert, Dawid Kruiper, Katrina Esau, Alex Boraine, Chris Ball, Raymond Ackerman, Abraham September and Tshepo Khumbane.
- The Order of Luthuli: Florence Matomela, Sir Bob Hepple, Abdullah Haron, Ruth First, David Bopape, Frances Baard, Zola Skweyiya, Jeanette Schoon, Agnes Msimang, Zephania Mothopeng, Popo Molefe, Father Smangalis Mkhathswa, Wolfie Kodesh, Abdulhay Jassat and Mittah Seperepere.
- The Order of Mapungubwe: William Soga, Barry Schoub, Hendrik Schaaf, Ismail Mohamed and Namrita Lall.
- The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo: Alfre Woodard, Ruth Neto, Alexander Moumbaris, Lord Neil Kinnock, Thomas Karis, Quincy Jones, Danny Glover, Jerry Dammers, Jean Cissé, Gwendolen Carter and Lord Richard Attenborough.

Languages

South Africa is a multilingual country. The country's Constitution guarantees equal status to 11 official languages to cater for its diverse people and their cultures. These are: English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Afrikaans, Sepedi, Sesotho, Setswana, Siswati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Other languages used in South Africa include the Khoi, Nama and San languages, Sign Language, Arabic, German, Greek, Gujarati, Hebrew, Hindi, Portuguese, Sanskrit, Tamil, Telegu and Urdu. South Africa has various structures and institutions that support the preservation and development of languages.

Role players

National Heritage Council

The NHC of South Africa is a statutory body that is responsible for the preservation of the country's heritage. Since its inception in February 2004, it has managed to place heritage as a priority for nation-building and national identity.

The NHC focuses on policy development for the sector to meet its transformation goals, enhance public awareness and education, and increase knowledge production in heritage subjects that were previously neglected.

It also makes funding available to projects that present heritage as a socio-economic resource.

South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA)

SAHRA is a statutory organisation established under the National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act 25 of 1999), as the national administrative body responsible for the protection of South Africa's cultural heritage.

SAHRA provides for the identification, protection, conservation and promotion of South Africa's heritage for present and future generations. It established the National Heritage Resources Fund to provide financial assistance to approved bodies or individuals, for any project that contributes to the conservation and protection of South Africa's national heritage resources.

Conservation categories include:

- national heritage sites, registers, areas and objects
- protected areas
- structures of more than 60 years old
- burial grounds and graves
- fossils (palaeontology) and archaeology
- rock art
- underwater cultural heritage, including historical shipwrecks.

SAHRA conserves buildings of historical or architectural value.

National Orders and Symbols



The Order of the Baobab



The Order of Luthuli



The Order of Mendi



The Order of
Mapungubwe



The Order of the Companions of
OR Tambo



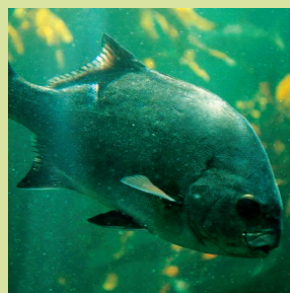
The Order of Ikhamanga



The Coat of Arms



National flower: King protea



National fish: Galjoen



National tree: Real
yellowwood



National bird: Blue crane



National animal: Springbok

More than 4 000 buildings, sites and other objects (including trees) have been declared national monuments.

Heritage South Africa is a non-profit organisation that conserves South Africa's variety of architectural gems.

South African Geographical Names Council

The SAGNC advises the Minister of Arts and Culture on the transformation and standardisation of official geographical names in South Africa. The council has jurisdiction over all names of geographical features and entities falling within the territories over which the South African Government has sovereignty.

The renaming of geographical features is regarded as a form of symbolic reparation to address South Africa's past.

The following principles are adhered to:

- each individual feature or entity should have only one official name
- the following types of geographical names would generally be avoided:
 - approved names of places elsewhere in South Africa
 - names of places in other countries and names of countries
 - names that are blasphemous, indecent, offensive, vulgar, unaesthetic or embarrassing
 - names that are discriminatory or derogatory
 - names that may be regarded as an advertisement for a particular product, service or firm
 - names of living people.

Geographical names committees have been established in all nine provinces.

National Arts Council of South Africa

The NAC was established in 1997 as a funding institution for the arts, to provide, and encourage the provision; of opportunities for people to practise the arts and to promote the appreciation, understanding and enjoyment of the arts.

It awards grants to individuals and organisations in the arts.

Funding is also available for individual bursaries for postgraduate studies in the arts.

Individuals and registered organisations active in theatre, dance, crafts, literature, music, multidiscipline and visual arts may apply for project funding.

Arts institutions

The following arts institutions contribute to a sustainable performing arts industry based on access, excellence, diversity and redress, and encourage the development of the full range of

performing arts:

- State Theatre, Pretoria
- Playhouse Company, Durban
- ArtsCape, Cape Town
- Market Theatre, Johannesburg
- Performing Arts Centre of the Free State, Bloemfontein
- Windybrow Theatre, Johannesburg.

The institutions receive annual transfers from the DAC, but also generate revenue through entrance fees, donor assistance, sponsorships and rental income.

Business and Arts South Africa (Basa)

Basa promotes mutually beneficial, equitable and sustainable business-arts partnerships for the benefit of the whole of society. It does this through research and seminars that examine the arts-business relationships. Basa provides a bespoke service to businesses, and celebrates successful business-arts partnerships – all with the aim of ensuring the relevance and sustainability of the arts in South Africa.

It has peer agencies in the United Kingdom (UK) and Australia, and has over 160 corporate members.

Arts and Culture Trust (ACT)

ACT is the oldest arts funding agency in democratic South Africa. Since 1994 it has advanced its position towards becoming a self-sustaining perpetual fund for the continued development of arts and culture.

It was established to develop and promote arts, culture and heritage, in general, by securing financial and other resources; and to promote the needs and the role of the sector in the public domain.

Due regard is given to ensuring a spread of projects across all the cultural and artistic disciplines, including arts administration, arts education, community art, festivals, heritage, craft, fine art, dance, music, theatre, literature, multidisciplinary and new media.

Community art centres and other cultural organisations

More than 160 community art centres are in operation, varying from community-initiated to government-managed centres.

At the 2014 Africa Movie Academy Awards held in Bayelsa, Nigeria in May 2014, South African entries received well-deserved accolades. The South African award winners were: Best Animation – Tigerfish (Khumba); Achievement In Make-up – Once Upon A Road Trip; Best Screenplay – Of Good Report; Best Director– Jamil Quebeka (Of Good Report); Most Promising Actor: Petronella Tshuma (Of Good Report); Best Actor in Leading Role: Mothusi Magano (Of Good Report); Best Film: Of Good Report.

The centres operate at different levels, ranging from general socio-cultural promotion to advanced programmes and vocational training.

These centres are located in, for example, craft centres, community halls and theatres.

Many art centres are functioning well and have made impressive contributions to local socio-economic development.

The DAC endorses and supports programmes in needy centres that are community-initiated or non-governmental.

Bureau of Heraldry

The Bureau of Heraldry is responsible for registering:

- coats of arms
- badges and other emblems such as flags, seals, medals and insignia of rank and offices of order
- names and uniforms (colours) of associations and organisations, such as universities
- promoting national symbols.

National Language Service

The NLS is tasked with meeting the constitutional obligations of multilingualism by managing language diversity through language planning, human-language technologies and terminology projects. It also provides a translation and editing service in the official and foreign languages.

Through its bursary scheme, the department offers language-learning opportunities, as well as training in language practice.

Pan South African Language Board

Parliament established PanSALB to develop South Africa's 11 official languages, as well as the Khoi and the San languages and South African Sign Language, and to promote multilingualism by:

- creating the conditions for the development of and the equal use of all official languages
- fostering respect for and encouraging the use of other languages in the country
- encouraging the best use of the country's linguistic resources to enable South Africans to free themselves from all forms of linguistic discrimination, domination and division and to enable them to exercise appropriate, linguistic choices for their own well-being, and for national development.

To achieve this, the board has three structures:

- provincial language committees

- national language bodies
- national lexicographic units.

PanSALB is mandated by law to investigate complaints about language-rights violations from any individual, organisation or institution.

It conducts hearings at which complainants and respondents are present, and depending on its findings may recommend steps to be taken by the department or institution concerned.

Programmes, projects and initiatives

Public Art Programme

The Public Art Programme, which focuses on beautification and story telling through art in communities and showcasing artistic talent, is one of three projects aimed at stimulating demand in the sector.

The programme is projected to create 5 000 work opportunities by 2014/15.

The heritage legacy projects include the liberation heritage route and a marine heritage project.

The latter is a recreational underwater museum in Kosi Bay in KwaZulu-Natal, which will interpret aspects of the history of slavery, indentured labour and the South African Native Labour Corps.

It has the potential to create 1 517 work opportunities, with annual growth of between 200 and 968 work opportunities between 2013 and 2015.

Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy

As part of the national target of creating five million jobs within the next 10 years, the DAC launched the Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy in 2011, which was expected to create more than 150 000 work opportunities between 2012 and 2017.

The strategy involves a number of arts and culture job-creation programmes. These include the Public Art Programme, where youth will receive art classes, after which the department will employ them in their respective communities to beautify the environment through art.

About 3 000 full-time art facilitators will be deployed in schools throughout the country to facilitate the initiative. Along with the establishment of an Art Bank, this is expected to create 10 000 new work opportunities over the next three years.

More than R1,5 million was set aside for the Bokgabo Dikolong visual arts and photography competition, which targeted learners from all provinces and was implemented jointly with the Department of Basic Education (DBE). A further R600 000 was set aside for the South

Heritage Day is celebrated on 24 September. The 2014 event was celebrated at James Mollatsi Stadium in North West. The theme was: "Celebrating 20 Years of Democracy: Tell your story that moves South Africa forward!"

African School Choral Eisteddfod, involving all provinces.

Other cultural events that received support include the Mangaung African Cultural Festival (Macufe), the North West Cultural Calabash in Taung, the Diamonds and Dorings in Kimberley, the Joy of Jazz in Johannesburg, the Cape Town International Jazz Festival and the National Arts Festival in Grahamstown.

The DAC committed to support at least one major signature event per province, targeting a baseline of 2 000 work opportunities per event.

Other programmes include:

- five cultural precincts and information centres, which are being piloted in five major cities and are expected to create more than 2 000 new work opportunities
- supporting 26 major cultural events annually to generate a baseline target of more than 2 000 work opportunities per event and include big events such as the Joy of Jazz
- setting up a National Skills Academy for the arts to train youth, particularly those in rural areas
- the Indoni, “My Heritage My Pride” Programme, aimed at providing youth with life-skills training, education and appreciation for their heritage
- the Trendsetter Initiative, which will encourage youth to participate in the arts and contribute to the development of their communities
- developing a recreational underwater museum in Kosi Bay, which is expected to boost adventure and cultural tourism on the East Coast
- working with the United Nations (UN) Conference on Trade and Development towards establishing a cultural observancy to collect and analyse data within the sector.

Investing in Culture Programme

The programme promotes job creation, skills development and economic empowerment, supporting business start-ups and poverty-alleviation projects.

Funds are transferred to participants in the programme’s projects and are disbursed on the basis of annual business plans and service-level agreements between the department and the individual or group contractors.

Festivals

Arts and cultural festivals abound in South Africa, offering something for every taste – from prickly pears, peaches, “witblits”, asparagus and cherries, to various music forms, dance, arts, science, books and whales.

Many of these have become annual events, growing in popularity and attendance numbers.

- Aardklop, held annually in Potchefstroom, North West, is inherently Afrikaans, but universal in character. The festival provides a platform for the creativity and talent of local artists.
- Arts Alive International Festival is held in the Johannesburg inner city, with over 600 artists performing during the four-day festival at various venues in Newtown.
- The Cape Town International Jazz Festival is a two-day festival featuring some 40 international and African acts, and performing on five stages. It also features photographic and art exhibitions. The 15th Cape Town Jazz Festival in 2014 drew 37 000 jazz lovers.
- The FNB Dance Umbrella is a festival of contemporary choreography and dance, presenting work ranging from community-based dance troupes to international companies.
- The Ficksburg Cherry Festival in the eastern Free State attracts about 20 000 visitors.
- The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees, known as the KKNK, a vibrant festival for the performing arts, is held annually in Oudtshoorn and presentations include drama, cabaret, and contemporary and classical music.
- The Mangaung African Cultural Festival in Bloemfontein is gaining status as one of the biggest cultural tourism events in southern Africa. This 10-day festival showcases the cream of African and international talent and attracts up to 140 000 people.
- The National Arts Festival, held annually in July in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape, is one of the largest and most diverse arts gatherings in Africa.
- Oppikoppi Easter Festival and Oppikoppi Bushveld Bash near Northam in North West offer live performances by rock, alternative and blues bands, both local and from abroad.
- The Splashy Fen Music Festival near Underberg in KwaZulu-Natal offers a variety of mainstream and alternative rock and pop music.
- Standard Bank Joy of Jazz is Johannesburg’s biggest annual jazz festival, with more than 200 local and international artists performing at different venues across the city.
- Up the Creek is a popular music festival on the banks of the Breede River near Swellendam in the Western Cape.

Other festivals that attract visitors at both national and international level are: Innibos in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga; North West’s Cultural Calabash; the One City Festival in Taung, North West; the Awesome Africa Music Festival in Durban; the Spier Summer Festival at Spier

Estate in the Western Cape; the Windybrow Theatre Festival in Johannesburg; and the annual Witness Hilton Arts Festival.

In July 2014, Durban Wild Talk Africa showcased a selection of both local and international natural history films at the 35th Durban International Film. Films included *Unearthed*, *Black Mamba: Kiss of Death*, *Birdman Chronicles*, *DamNation*, and *Expedition to the End of the World*. The partnership between Durban Wild Talk Africa and Durban International Film Festival is part of the City of Durban's vision to position the city as Africa's primary destination for film markets and festivals.

The Mandela International Film Festival set to take place in the Nelson Mandela Bay area in December 2015 will focus the world's film industry in South Africa and attract global interest, not just for the film industry, but also as a major tourism destination.

The Nelson Mandela Bay area of the Eastern Cape offers not only an exceptional venue for the film industry but is also part of a massive investment promotion strategy that includes a range of initiatives from infrastructure to manufacturing, tourism and agriculture.

Theatre

The theatre scene is buzzing in South Africa, with over 100 active spaces across the country offering everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, cabaret and satire to West End and Broadway hits, classical opera and ballet.

Venues range from the monolithic homes of the former state-supported performing arts councils to purpose-built theatres, a converted fruit market, country barns, casinos, and urban holes-in-the-wall.

In the early 20th century, missionaries made an important contribution to a tradition of theatre when they used drama in education. Their themes were not only staged versions of biblical teachings but also didactic plays located in South Africa. At Marianhill in the 1920s Father Bernard Hess also encouraged the production of comedies and the dramatisation of Zulu narratives.

Theatre began to flourish in black townships where performance arts became increasingly popular in the 1920s and 1930s as a form

of working class entertainment. In 1929 the Methethwe Lucky Stars was formed, basing its productions on themes of rural life and customs. In 1932, came the Bantu Dramatic Society, which aimed to encourage 'Bantu Playwrights' and to develop African dramatic and operatic art.

The 1930s and 1940s saw the blooming of the work of Herbert Dhlomo – teacher, journalist, and musician – the first South African playwright to make a significant attempt through drama to challenge colonial domination. His work *The Girl Who Killed to Save* was the first play by a black writer in English to be published.

Indigenous theatre continued to develop in the 1940s and 1950s with the formation of organisations like the Orlando Boy's Club Dramatic Society.

In the townships, particularly in Johannesburg's vital, violent, vibrant Sophiatown, with its mix of colours and cultures, of musicians and writers and gangsters, in the 1940s an eclectic performance culture was developing which drew upon American, English and African cultural traditions and involved comic sketches and acting as well as jazz, singing and dancing.

Apart from early productions, notably the groundbreaking musical, *King Kong*, in the 1960s, theatre created in South Africa by South Africans only started making an impact with the advent of Johannesburg's innovative Market Theatre in the mid-1970s, just as the cultural, sporting and academic boycott was taking hold.

The Market Theatre was formally opened on 21 June 1976. It was here that Johannesburg theatre-goers were introduced to the work of most of South Africa's leading playwrights and directors, including Welcome Msomi, Zanemvula (Zakes) Mda, Pieter-Dirk Uys, Gibson Kente, Paul Slabolepszy, Mbongeni Ngema, Adam Small, PG du Plessis, Kessie Govender, Bartho Smit, Maishe Maponya, Percy Mtwa, Deon Opperman, Reza de Wet, Matsemela Manaka and many others.

It was to the Market Theatre that Athol Fugard brought his *A Lesson from Aloes*, *Master Harold and the Boys*, *The Road to Mecca*, *A Place with the Pigs*, *My Children! My Africa!* and *Playland*. At the Market Theatre, Barney Simon and his actors developed in workshop *Cincinnati* – *Scenes from City Life*, *Call Me Woman*, *Black Dog Inj'emnyana*, *Outers*, *Born in the RSA* and *Woza Albert!*

The performing arts marketed South Africa most effectively to overseas audiences during the 1980s, specifically through theatre and musical productions.

In recent years, South African theatre has taken the entertainment world by storm with

In 2014/15, the Department of Arts and Culture supported 22 national and regional flagship events, including the National Arts Festival and the Cape Town International Jazz Festival, and a range of regional festivals as such the Kalahari Desert Festival in the Northern Cape, Mpumalanga Comes Alive in Mpumalanga, Macufe in the Free State and the Marula Festival in Limpopo. These events are catalysts for economic development, given that artists are reliant on events for income and economic sustainability.

commendable reviews for *Umoja*, *The Lion King* and *Kat and The Kings*. The reception these productions enjoy in capitals of the world testifies to the high quality of indigenous South African theatre.

In nurseries such as the Market Theatre Laboratory, the Liberty Theatre on the Square, Saturday Children's Theatre Workshops, the Cape Town Theatre Lab and the National Children's Theatre, new shoots of talent are burgeoning and blooming, nurtured by events such as the Market's Community and Young Writers' festivals. Many new names are being added to the list of South African playwrights such as Lesego Rampolokeng, Xoli Norman, Mondli Mayepu, Heinrich Reisenhofer, Oscar Petersen, Mark Lottering, Nazli George, Craig Freimond and Rajesh Gopie.

Music

According to the *Fourth South African Edition of PwC's South African Entertainment and Media Outlook: 2013 – 2017*, published in September, digital music sales will account for just 14% of South African recorded music retail sales by 2017.

South Africa is the 25th largest market for recorded music, with the industry employing more than 20 000 people.

Local music accounts for a third of all the music bought by South Africans.

Township jazz and blues, especially the *kwêla* music of the forties and fifties, are being redefined; the country also has a rich choral tradition, and pop and rock musicians have made their mark internationally.

Even techno-rave and house music have found their own variations in local culture. Kwaito and hip-hop are very popular, combining elements of rap, reggae and other musical styles into a distinctly South African style. Kwaai Jazz is also gaining momentum.

Music is one of the key cultural industries identified in the *Cultural Industrial Growth Strategy Report*, and government has committed itself to harnessing its potential. In addition to its cultural value, music plays an important economic role in the country, generating significant copyright revenue. In this industry, the department has solid foundations on which to build. These include the annual South African Music Week, the in-school education programme run in conjunction with the DBE, and the Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition.

The Taking South African Music to the World Programme is aimed at improving export opportunities for South African music.

The DAC funds a number of musical ensembles directly and indirectly, through the NAC.

Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition

The DAC hosts the annual Moshito Conference and Exhibition, a key music event on the African continent that promotes collaboration among interested parties from both the private and public sectors.

The event is designed to provide opportunities for business networking; information exchange; music-business education; promotion and product development for national music producers, performers, individuals and entities providing support services; as well as to strengthen business opportunities for the music industry and related media.

Macufe Festival

The DAC, in partnership with the Free State Department of Sports, Arts, Culture and Recreation, hosted the Macufe Festival from 3 to 12 October 2014 in Bloemfontein. Macufe 2014 was staged against the backdrop of the celebration of 20 Years of Freedom under the theme: "Ya Lla Melodi Ya Tokoloho" (The Sounds of Freedom).

The department has financially supported the Macufe Festival for several years and currently does so through the Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy, which promotes job creation and seeks to increase the contribution of arts and culture to sustainable economic development.

Macufe provided a line-up of top and international musicians such as Zahara, Thandiswa Mazwai, Mafikizolo, Rebecca Malope, Ringo Madlingozi, Sibongile Khumalo, Jimmy Dlodlu, Don Laka, Jonas Gwangwa, Oliver Mtukudzi, Savage and Earl Klugh.

In 2014, the DAC introduced the Public Art through Painting Democracy project. This project included paintings of key moments in the 20 years of democracy, murals of prominent South Africans, including politicians, artists, scientists and other outstanding achievers in various sectors.

As part of celebrating 20 Years of Freedom and democracy, a permanent exhibition was mounted at the Macufe Arts and Crafts Market for artists to draw portraits using charcoal and pencil throughout the festival.

South African Music Awards (Samas)

The 20th annual MTN Samas ceremony was held at Sun City, North West, in April 2014. The winners were:

At the end of April 2014, the musical production *Anthem of Democracy* graced the stage in Johannesburg featuring artists such as Joan Armatrading, Bright Blue, Yvonne Chaka Chaka, Jennifer Ferguson, Sipho "Hotstix" Mabuse, Mzwakhe Mbuli, Vicky Sampson, the Soweto Gospel Choir, Victor Msondo, Themba Mkhize and Gcina Mhlope.

- KIA Record of the Year: Mafikizolo – *Khona*.
- Album of the Year: Mafikizolo – Reunited.
- Duo or Group of the Year: Mafikizolo – Reunited.
- Female Artist of the Year: Zahara – *Phendula*.
- Male Artist of the Year: Kabomo – Memory Remains.
- Newcomer of the Year: Naima Kay – *Umsebenzi*.
- Best Rock Album: Van Coke Kartel – *Bloed, Sweet & Trane*.
- Best Pop Album: Mafikizolo – Reunited.
- Best Pop Album (Afrikaans): Karlien van Jaarsveld – *Uitklophou*.
- Best Adult Contemporary Album: Shaun Jacobs – Love Can
- Best Contemporary Music Album: Elvis Blue – Afrikaans
- Best African Adult Album: Zonke – Give and Take Live.
- Best Rap Album: iFani – I Believes in Me (1st Quadrant).
- Best Kwaito Album: Big Nuz – Made in Africa.
- Best Dance Album: Mi Casa – *Su Casa*.
- Best Traditional Faith Music Album: Rebecca – *Bayos'Khomba*.
- Best Collaboration: Mafikizolo Ft May D – Happiness.
- Best Selling Album: Zahara – *Phendula*.
- Best Maskandi Album: Thokozani Langa – *Inyakanyaka*.
- Best Jazz Album: Shane Cooper – Oscillations.
- Lifetime Achievement Awards: Ladysmith Black Mambazo and Phuzekhemisi.
- International Achievement Award: Ladysmith Black Mambazo.
- Best Contemporary Faith Music Album: Nqubeko Mbatha – Sentiments of a Worshiper.
- Best Traditional Album: Dr Thomas Chauke Na Shinyori Sisters – *Shimatsatsa No 32*.
- Best Alternative Album: Nakhane Touré – Brave Confusion.
- Best R&B/Soul/Reggae Album: The Soil – Reflections Live in Joburg.
- Best Classical and/or Instrumental Album: Guy Buttery – Live in KwaZulu.
- Best Live DVD: Zonke – Give and Take Live.
- Best Music Video of the Year: Kyle Lewis – Sleepwalker by The Parlotones, Khuli Chana and Jon Savage.
- Best Producer of the Year: Darryl Torr – Yes/No/Grey by Gangs of Ballet.
- Best Engineer of the Year: Peter Auret – Pimp My Piano by Charl du Plessis.
- Remix of the Year: Oskido – *Tsa Ma Ndebele*.
- Best Selling DVD: Joyous Celebration – Grateful Vol.17.
- Best Selling Ring-back Tone: Mafikizolo – *Khona*.
- Best Selling Full-track Download: Mafikizolo – *Khona*.
- Best Selling Total Downloads: Mafikizolo – *Khona*.
- Highest Airplay of the Year 2013: DJ Kent, featuring The Arrows – Spin My World Around.

Dance

Dancing is part of the African way of life and has become a prime means of artistic expression, with dance companies expanding and exploring new territory.

Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre to the completely unconventional.

Added to this is the African experience, which includes traditional dance inspired by wedding ceremonies, battles, rituals and the trifles of everyday life.

An informal but highly versatile performance venue in Johannesburg, The Dance Factory, provides a permanent platform for a variety of dance and movement groups.

The University of the Witwatersrand (Wits) Theatre is another popular dance venue.

Dance Umbrella

The Dance Umbrella is an annual platform for South African contemporary dance at which new choreographic creations are presented. It is an open platform encompassing performances by youth and community groups, the efforts of young choreographers and commissioned works from professionals. The Dance Umbrella 2015 ran from 26 February to 15 March and offered a once-in-a-lifetime opportunity to discover, experience and enjoy contemporary dance on all levels.

New local and international works took over the city with dance.

A highlight of the 2015 festival was the strong focus on female choreographers. Since Dance Umbrella's inception, male choreographers have dominated the contemporary dance scene but this has shifted over the past years. Dance Umbrella 2015 focused on, and celebrated both the established and the young up-and-coming female choreographers who will share the programme with their male counterparts.

Visual arts

South Africa has a rich variety of visual art, with influences ranging from pre-historic, ancient and indigenous art to western, Asian and contemporary art.

Art galleries, ranging from small privately owned commercial galleries, to major regional galleries such as the South African National Gallery in Cape Town, the Durban Art Gallery in KwaZulu-Natal, the Johannesburg Art Gallery in Gauteng and King George VI Gallery in Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape, showcase collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary works.

Educational institutions also play an important role in acquiring works of national interest. Substantial collections are housed at the Gertrude Posel Gallery at Wits and at the University of South Africa. Collections at the University of Pretoria include the Mapungubwe, Van Tilburg and Edoardo Villa collections. The University of Stellenbosch art collection dates back to 1919. A collection of contemporary Indian art is housed at the University of KwaZulu-Natal.

The DAC commissioned a team of researchers to do an assessment of the visual arts sector in South Africa, to assess the current position of visual arts in South Africa, and to identify opportunities for growing the artistic, social and economic contribution of the visual arts in the society and the economy. The report noted that:

- the sector contributes over R1 billion to the economy
- the sector provides employment to almost 18 000 people
- over 50% of these are women and 53,4% are under 35.

Rock art

There are many traces of ancient cultures that existed in southern Africa in the distant past. Experts estimate that there are 250 000 rock-art sites south of the Zambezi.

The San people left a priceless and unique collection of Stone Age paintings and engravings in the region, which also represents the largest collection of its kind in the world.

Rock engravings are scattered on flat rock surfaces and boulders throughout the interior. The artworks depict mainly hunter-gatherers and their relationship with the animal world and historical events, as well as their interaction with and observation of newcomers encroaching upon their living space.

Indigenous people with spears and Nguni cattle, Khoikhoi fat-tailed sheep, European settlers on horseback with rifles and wagons, and ships and soldiers in uniform were captured in surprising detail.

Immortalised visions of the artists' spiritual world can also be found on the sandstone canvases.

These depict complex symbols and metaphors to illustrate the supernatural powers and potency they received from nature.

The oldest dated rock art in South Africa, an engraved stone, some 10 200 years, was discovered in a living floor at the Wonderwerk Cave near Kuruman in the Northern Cape.

The oldest painted stones (around 6 400 years) were recovered at Boomplaas Cave in the Congo Valley near Oudtshoorn.

Three painted stones were also found at the Klasies River caves, which yielded the second-oldest painted stone, dating back some 3 900 years.

The DAC supports a number of projects, including a rock-heritage project in Clanwilliam in the Western Cape.

In July 2014, millions of pieces of tools made by humankind's ancestors (possibly the *Homo heidelbergensis* species) were uncovered at Kathu in the Northern Cape. The site is between 700 000 and a million years old and used to be a huge workshop to produce tools. The findings were published in the technical magazine, *PLoS One*, by the universities of Cape Town and Toronto (Canada) and the McGregor Museum in Kimberley. The hominid species produced tools and equipment at the site for 20 000 to 30 000 years generation after generation.

Photography

With its scenic beauty, abundant wildlife, diversity of cultures and rich historical heritage, South Africa is a photographer's paradise.

Many South African photographers have been acclaimed for their work, which features in coffee-table books, documentaries, local and overseas exhibitions, magazines and newspapers.

In July 2014, the University of Witwatersrand's (Wits) Rock Art Research Institute received funding to restore a collection of rock art copies and materials by South African abstract painter Walter Battiss. The funding was given by the Bank of America Merrill Lynch 2014 global Art Conservation Project. Since the programme's inception in 2010, the company has provided grants to museums in 27 countries supporting 71 conservation projects. The project is committed to supporting and preserving South Africa's rich arts heritage and have recently funded the preservation of 10 paintings by South African icon Gerard Sekoto, and provided funding to conserve 25 Ndebele beaded aprons created between the 1950s and 1980s. The grant will pay for the appointment of expert paper conservators to clean, sort and restore the collection. It will also make hands-on internship opportunities available to students. In addition, two academics will work through Battiss's correspondence, diaries and newspaper cuttings to provide a better appreciation of the artist's contribution to Southern African rock art research and history. The items will go on public display at the Origins Centre Museum in Johannesburg, once they are completed.

Famous South African photographers include Kevin Carter, Ernest Cole, David Goldblatt, Bob Gosani, Alf Kumalo, Peter Magubane, Jürgen Schadeberg, Austin Stevens and Jodi Bieber.

Many universities of technology in South Africa offer diploma and degree-courses in photography, including the universities of technology of Tshwane, Cape Peninsula, and Durban, the Central University of Technology, Free State and the Vaal University of Technology in Vanderbijlpark.

There are also several private educational institutions that offer photography courses, including the Stellenbosch Academy of Design and Photography, the Open Window School of Visual Arts in Pretoria and the Cape Town School of Photography.

Architecture

South Africa has a rich architectural heritage, reflecting contributions from all the cultural groups in the country. Through the centuries, a unique trend has developed in South Africa's architectural style, which has been referred to as an innovative marriage of traditions.

This is evident in the variety of architectural structures found all over the country, ranging from humble dwellings, historical homesteads and public buildings, to modern, commercial buildings reflecting state-of-the-art technology and designs that match the best in the world.

A prime example of local excellence and innovation is the Mapungubwe Interpretation Centre in the Mapungubwe National Park, Limpopo. Designed by Peter Rich Architects of Johannesburg, the building was awarded the World Building of the Year Award 2009 at the World Architecture Festival in Barcelona, as well as the David Alsop Sustainability Award.

Schools of architecture exist within various South African universities, including the universities of Pretoria, Cape Town, the Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, the Witwatersrand and the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University.

Crafts

A high level of skill is brought to the production of work that has long been a part of African society, and has found new commercial outlets.

South African beadwork, once the insignia of tribal royalty alone, has found a huge range of applications, from the creation of coverings for everything from bottles to matchboxes, to the reproduction of the red AIDS ribbon using Zulu beadwork known, as Zulu love letters.

With workplaces ranging from the pavements and markets of the big cities to dwellings in deep rural areas, South Africans produce a remarkable

range of arts and crafts, including various forms of traditional artwork and innovative new products.

There is a lot of new work in traditional media, with artists constantly developing the African crafts repertoire.

There are also several important collections of African art in South Africa, such as the Standard Bank collection at the Gertrude Posel Gallery at Wits University, in Johannesburg. The Durban Art Gallery houses works of historical and anthropological significance.

These range from jewellery, tableware, home decorations, embroidery and key rings to skilfully crafted wooden engravings and wirework sculptures. In addition to the standard materials such as beads, grass, leather, fabric and clay, many other mediums are also used, including telephone wire, plastic bags, empty cans, bottle tops and even food tin labels, to create brightly coloured paper mâché bowls.

Shops, markets and collectors dealing in African crafts provide much-needed employment and income to communities.

Fugitive's Drift in KwaZulu-Natal, offers a large variety of skilfully crafted basketry; the Northern Cape Schmidtsdrift community of displaced San people produces paintings influenced by ancient rock art; and the Madi A Thavha Art Gallery in the Soutpansberg region of the Limpopo produces and sells a range of arts and crafts created by the local Venda and Tsonga communities, including beautiful beadwork, sculptures, ceramics and jewellery.

South African folk art is also making inroads into Western-style "high art".

The Ndebele tradition of house-painting, part of the widespread African practice of painting or decorating the exteriors of homes, burgeoned amazingly with the advent of commercial paints.

It also gave rise to artists such as Esther Mahlangu, who has put her adaptations of the distinctive, highly coloured geometric Ndebele designs on everything from cars to aeroplanes.

Design

The Design Indaba Conference 2015 took place from 25 to 27 February at the Cape Town International Convention Centre. A live simulcast was hosted at the same time at various venues around southern Africa.

Since 1995, the Design Indaba Conference has invited the world's top creative minds to address professionals from the creative, corporate and education sectors alike.

Design Indaba recognises graphic design, advertising, film, music, fashion design, industrial design, architecture, craft, visual art, new media,

publishing, broadcasting and performing arts shoulder-to-shoulder.

Every year the programme features a sterling line-up of international speakers from all corners of the world, coming together on the Design Indaba stage to present an up-to-the-minute survey on design and innovation from across the creative sectors. Surprise elements of dialogue, performance and music intersperse the speaker programme for an experience that makes Design Indaba what has been said by many to be the best creative conference in the world.

Literature

South Africa has a rich and diverse literary history, with realism, until relatively recently, dominating works of fiction.

Fiction has been written in all of South Africa's 11 official languages – with a large body of work in Afrikaans and English. This overview focuses primarily on English fiction, though it also touches on major poetic developments.

The local literature sector has become globally competitive and the country's writers continue to command respect throughout the world.

Well-known South African writers include Nobel Prize winners JM Coetzee and Nadine Gordimer, Gcina Mhlope, Phaswane Mpe, Es'kia Mphahlele, Wally Serote, Athol Fugard, Herman Charles Bosman, Sir Percy Fitzpatrick, Breyten Breytenbach, Dalene Matthee, Alan Paton, Olive Schreiner, Andre P Brink and Njabulo Ndebele.

The current generation of writers are also making their mark on the world stage, with writers such as Zakes Mda, Niq Mhlongo and the late K Sello Duiker, who have had their novels translated into languages such as Dutch, German and Spanish; and Deon Meyer, whose work has attracted worldwide critical acclaim and a growing international fan base. Originally written in Afrikaans, Meyer's books have been translated into 25 languages, including English, French, German, Dutch, Italian, Spanish, Danish, Norwegian, Swedish, Russian, Finnish, Czech, Romanian, Slovakian, Bulgarian, Japanese and Polish.

Well-known poets include Keorapetse William Kgotsitsile, Joseph Mbuyiseni Mtshali, Roy Campbell, Sheila Cussons, Jakob Daniël du Toit (better known as Totius), Elisabeth Eybers, Ingrid Jonker, Antjie Krog, Thomas Pringle, NP van Wyk Louw and Eugène Marais.

The new pop culture in poetry, often referred to as "spoken-word poetry", is one of the most celebrated art forms in the country and beyond. Poets such as Lesego Rampolokeng, Lebogang Mashile, Kgafela oa Magogodi, Blaq

Pearl, Jessica Mbangeni and Mark Manaka are household names in the genre. Regular platforms have been created to give these poets opportunities to hone their skills.

The Publishing Association of South Africa (PASA) is committed to creativity, literacy, the free flow of ideas and encouraging a culture of reading. According to their 2013 survey, the publishing industry recorded a turnover of between R5 and R50 million.

The direct suppliers of imported print books to trade booksellers' combined market share as indicated by the Nielsen BookScan South Africa 2013 52-week Standard Executive Report determined. This showed an increase in direct supply market share from 8,6% in 2012 to 9,4% in 2013. The general trade sub-sector recorded a year-on-year turnover decrease of 2,6% and the academic sub-sector a decrease of 5,1%, compensated for by an increase in the education sub-sector of 26%. Book exports earned 23,6% less revenue in 2013 compared to 2012.

Locally published eBooks recorded an increased turnover of R14 million (up 50% on 2012), generated mainly by the general trade and education sub-sectors. This increase was driven by a significant conversion of formerly published print book content to ebook formats.

The DAC, in collaboration with the National Library of South Africa (NLSA), is reprinting some out-of-print books that are considered classics in indigenous African languages.

The department is continuing with the Indigenous Languages Publishing Programme, a partnership with the South African Book Development Council (SABDC), to produce new material in the nine previously marginalised indigenous languages.

The programme offers publishing opportunities to emerging writers and support to independent small publishers.

National Book Week was celebrated from 1 to 7 September 2014. The initiative promotes literacy, celebrates reading and is the result of a partnership between the South African Book Development Council, the DAC and the Department of Correctional Services. The theme for National Book Week 2014 was: "Going Places" and was aimed at showing how books can figuratively and literally take readers anywhere. Events that were planned around the country included reading in indigenous languages, storytelling and motivational talks, word-a-thons, poetry sessions and book debates.

The DAC supports the *Baobab Literary Journal* with the purpose of providing a regular publishing platform for budding writers to appear alongside seasoned ones. This publication

includes contributors from various countries across the African continent and the Diaspora.

The department continues to support the Time of the Writer and the Poetry Africa festivals, held annually in Durban. These festivals also deliver developmental workshops for young emerging writers, a schools programme and an initiative with the Department of Correctional Services to promote writing among inmates. WordFest, a literary component of the Grahamstown Arts Festival, focuses on promoting literature in indigenous languages. Also popular are the Johannesburg and Franschhoek literary festivals.

There is an English Literary Museum in Grahamstown and an Afrikaans Museum in Bloemfontein. The Centre for African Literary Studies at the University of KwaZulu-Natal is home to the Bernth Lindfors Collection of African literature.

The centre's mission is to promote a culture of reading, writing and publishing in all local languages, and easy access to books for all South Africans.

South African Literary Awards

The 2014 South African Literary Awards were awarded as follows:

- The 2014 *Sunday Times* Fiction Prize: Claire Robertson, *The Spiral House*.
- Lifetime Achievement Award: Nuruddin Farah and Njabulo Ndebele.
- First-time Published Author Award: Claire Robertson, *The Spiral House*.
- Nadine Gordimer Short Story Award: Makhosazana Xaba, *Running and Other Stories* and Reneilwe Malatji, *Love Interrupted*.
- Literary Translators Award: Nhlanhla Maake, *Malefane*.
- Poetry Award: Thandi Sliepen, *The Turtle Dove Told Me* and Themba Patrick Magaisa, *Mihloti ya Tingana*.
- Creative Non-Fiction Award: Sihle Khumalo, *Almost Sleeping My Way to Timbuktu*.
- Posthumous Literary Award: Mbulelo Vizikhungo.
- K Sello Duiker Memorial Literary Award: Jamala Safari, *The Great Agony and Pure laughter of the Gods*.

Film

The first-ever newsreel was shot in South Africa during the Anglo-Boer/South African War, which ended in 1902. The weekly newsreel ran for more than 60 years. Film production began in 1916, when IW Schlesinger set up Killarney Studios in Johannesburg.

The studio produced 42 movies between 1916 and 1922. Access to international markets

became limited in the 1920s, and it was only in the 1950s that the market picked up again, when Afrikaans filmmakers developed an interest in the industry.

In the 1980s, South Africa gave foreign companies the opportunity to film movies in the country by giving them tax breaks.

The South African film industry contributes R3,5 billion annually to the country's GDP, while providing employment for more than 25 000 people.

The South African government offers a package of incentives to promote its film production industry.

The incentives comprise the Foreign Film and Television Production incentive to attract foreign-based film productions to shoot on location in South Africa, and the South African Film and Television Production and Co-production incentive, which aims to assist local film producers in producing local content.

South Africa's first co-production treaty was signed with Canada in 1997, followed by Germany, Italy, the UK, France, Australia and New Zealand.

The three largest film distributors in South Africa are Ster-Kinekor, United International Pictures and Nu-Metro. Ster-Kinekor has a specialised art circuit, called Cinema Nouveau, with theatres in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

Film festivals include the Durban International Film Festival; the North West Film Festival; the Apollo Film Festival in Victoria West; the Three Continents Film Festival (specialising in African, South American and Asian films); the Soweto Film Festival; and the Encounters Documentary Festival, which alternates between Cape Town and Johannesburg.

In July 2014, the Cape Film Commission hosted the semi-final judging of the International Emmy TV awards category for TV movie and mini-series in the English language.

In August 2014, the dti announced incentives to attract international investment and production as well as to assist South African filmmakers in developing local content. The Foreign Film and Television Production and Post-Production Incentive is geared towards increasing skills, creativity and employment opportunities within the local film industry by promoting the country as a valuable production destination to international filmmakers.

National Film and Video Foundation

The NFVF is an agency of the DAC that was created to ensure the equitable growth of South Africa's film and video industry. The NFVF provides funding for the development,

production, marketing and distribution of films and also the training and development of filmmakers. In addition, the NFVF commissions research and produces industry statistics that provide both the public and stakeholders with valuable insights into the South African film industry.

In March 2015, the Eco Kids Film Initiative screened many short films that were entered, and sourced locally and abroad over the course of seven days for children in Cape Town between the ages of three and 17.

South African Film and Television Awards (Saftas)

In celebrating 20 Years of Freedom at the Cannes film festival to coincide with the national celebrations, the NFVF's key message was "Attracting New Markets and Investment." The message stood out including in co-production forums with Brazil, Canada and the United Kingdom, screening of films such as *iNumber Number*, Nelson Mandela: *The Myth and Me*, *Miners Shot Down* and *One Humanity*.

In 2014, the NFVF placed additional focus on emerging filmmakers, a new generation of creative talent eager to conquer the world through their story-telling and collaborations with other countries. Among the filmmakers were five of them who were identified to be part of the Creative Minds programme, which took them through intensive producers programmes and networking opportunities.

Association for Transformation in Film and TV also had a delegation of young filmmakers funded by the dti to participate at the Cannes Film Festival.

Notable successes include the distribution deal that comedian/filmmaker David Kau signed with Archstone pictures to produce and distribute his film *Sekwankwetla*, and *Pad na jou Hart* will soon be released in Australia.

There were numerous successful meetings which resulted in potential deals which will soon be concluded with various South African production companies. Wandile Molebatsi of the first Africa dance film, *Hear me Move* confirmed that UK and USA distribution companies are also keen to distribute the film. Another SA Producer with notable success is Greig Buckle of Enigma Pictures, who co-produced *One* featuring Djimon Hounsou, with international partners Main Street Films, MK Create and Kent Smith for the Kojo Group.

The NFVF facilitates South Africa's participation at the Cannes International Film Festival by providing a home-away-from-home environment for local filmmakers. The South

African Pavilion serves as a business hub for filmmakers to conduct business meetings, interact with various stakeholders, financiers, distributors, festival directors to achieve their goals.

In July 2014, the NFVF announced a new fund to support black filmmakers. The Emerging Black Filmmakers Fund will provide funding and other assistance to black filmmakers. The financing amount per film is R4,5 million for the development and production and R500 000 for the marketing of the film.

Made with the support of the NFVF, *The Shore Break*, *Unearthed* and *The Dream of Shahrazad* were selected to appear in the International Documentary Film Festival Amsterdam (IDFA) 2014 Competition. IDFA, the world's largest and most prestigious international documentary film festival took place in November 2014 in Amsterdam, in The Kingdom of the Netherlands.

The NFVF provides funding to students in financial need to pursue film and television related studies at all accredited tertiary institutions in South Africa.

For the past years the NFVF has been awarding on average, 60 bursaries a year to qualifying students who are academic achievers and passionate about the film and television industry yet lack adequate financial resources to further their university studies.

The South African Film and Television Awards (Saftas) honour individuals and productions in the following categories: TV Non-Fiction, TV Fiction, Feature Films, Short Films, Student Films and Animation.

The awards also honour lifetime achievers with the Special Lifetime Achievement Awards given to esteemed individuals who have long served the industry in various categories.

In April 2014, the Safta awards were held in Johannesburg. The big winner for the evening was the feature film; *Of Good Report* directed by Jahmil X.T. Qubeka, which took six awards including best feature film director. The winners were:

- Best Actress in a TV Comedy – Tsholo Monedi (Tiny) – Skwizas: Season 2
- Best Actor in a TV Comedy – Obed Baloyi (Tsutsuma) – Ga Re Dumele
- Best Ensemble in a TV Comedy – Late Nite News (Diprente Films)
- Best Writing Team of a TV Comedy – ZA NEWS – Andrew Donaldson, Anne Hirsch, Marianne Thamm, Thierry Cassuto
- Best Director of a TV Comedy – ZA NEWS – Aaron Naidoo and Thierry Cassuto
- Best TV Comedy – ZA News – Both Worlds
- Best Animation – Khumba – Triggerfish Animation Studios

In August 2014, the remains of Nat Nakasa were exhumed from the Ferncliff Cemetery in New York and brought to South Africa as the country celebrated 20 years of democracy — a democracy that he craved for throughout his short life. Nakasa was a journalist and short-story writer who mainly wrote about South Africa's apartheid government and the injustices faced by South Africans at the time. He died in America after the apartheid government granted him an exit permit that did not allow him to return to the country. His remains were reburied on 13 September 2014 at the Heroes Acre cemetery in Chesterville, KwaZulu-Natal.

- Best Supporting Actor in a TV Drama – Akhumzi Jezile (Ngulube) – Tempy Pushas
- Best Supporting Actress in a TV Drama – Harriet Manamela (Meike Maputla) – Skeem Saam
- Best Actor in a TV Drama – Siyabonga Thwala (Musa) – Intersexions: Season 2
- Best Actress in a TV Drama – Tina Jaxa (Nokuthula) – Intersexions: Season 2
- Best Writing Team of a TV Drama – Room 9 – Athos Kyriakides and Thuso Sibisi
- Best Director of a TV Drama – Tempy Pushas – Libby Dougherty and Tebogo Malope
- Best TV Drama – Intersexions: Season 2 – Quizzical Pictures
- Best Writing Team of a TV Soap – Writing Team Isibaya
- Best Director of a TV Soap – Adze Ugah and Denny Miller – Isibaya
- Best Ensemble TV Soap – Scandal – Ochre Media
- Best Actor TV Soap – Siyabonga Thwala (Mpiyakhe Zungu) – Isibaya
- Best Actress TV Soap – Thembi Nyandeni (Mkabayi Zungu) – Isibaya
- Best Writer in a Made for TV Movie – Writing Team Inside Story
- Best Director of a Made for TV Movie – Rolisizwe Nikiwe – Inside Story
- Best Supporting Actor in a Feature Film – Tshamano Sebe (Vuyani) – Of Good Report
- Best Supporting Actress in a Feature Film – Tina Jaxa (Head Mistress) – Of Good Report
- Best Actor in a Feature Film – Mothusi Magano (Parker Sithole) – Of Good Report
- Best Actress in a Feature Film – Antoinette Louw (Elle Winter) – Die Laaste Tango
- Best Writing Team of a Feature Film – Jahmil X.T. Qubeka – Of Good Report
- Best Director of a Feature Film – Jahmil Qubeka – Of Good Report
- Best Feature Film – Of Good Report – Spier Films and New Brighton Pictures
- Best TV Soapie – 7de Laan.

Museums

Museums are the windows to the natural and cultural heritage of a country. South Africa can

justifiably be called the “museum country of Africa”, with the earliest of its museums dating back to the first half of the 19th century.

There are more than 300 museums in South Africa. They range from museums of geology, history, the biological sciences and the arts, to mining, agriculture, forestry and many other disciplines.

Visitors can find exhibits, both conventional and eccentric, on every conceivable topic – from beer to beadwork, from fashion to food.

New additions are those reflecting the apartheid era, and commemorating those who fought and died for the cause of establishing a democratic country.

Most of the country's national museums are declared cultural institutions and fall under the overall jurisdiction of the DAC.

They receive an annual subsidy from the department, but function autonomously.

The following officially declared heritage institutions depend on annual transfers from the DAC:

- Northern Flagship Institutions, Pretoria
- Freedom Park, Pretoria
- Iziko Museum, Cape Town
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- Bloemfontein National Museum
- Afrikaans Language Museum, Paarl
- The National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown
- Msunduzi/Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley
- Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha.

The following museums report to the Minister of Arts and Culture:

- Ditsong museums of South Africa
- Iziko museums, Cape Town
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- National Museum, Bloemfontein
- Language Museum, Paarl
- National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown
- Msunduzi/Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley
- Engelenburg House Art Collection, Pretoria
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha
- Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza.

The Ditsong museums of South Africa comprise the National Cultural History Museum, Kruger House, Tswaing Meteorite Crater, Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum, Pioneer Museum, Sammy Marks Museum, the Coert Steynberg Museum, the Transvaal Museum and the South African National Museum of Military History in Johannesburg.

The Iziko museums of Cape Town comprise the South African Museum, the South African Cultural History Museum and its satellite museums, the South African National Gallery, the William Fehr Collection and the Michaelis Collection.

The Robben Island Museum was established as a national monument and museum, and declared South Africa's first world heritage site in 1999. Guided tours are offered to historical sites on the island, including the cell in which former President Mandela was imprisoned.

In April 2009, the DAC declared Freedom Park, Pretoria, a cultural institution under the Cultural Institutions Act of 1998.

The *//hapo* museum at the historic Freedom Park was officially unveiled in April 2013.

The museum, which is situated at the top of Salvokop in Pretoria, will also serve as a monument to the mighty legacy of South Africa's first democratically elected President, Nelson Mandela.

//hapo is a Khoi word which means "a dream." The museum will help the country define the history, in holistic terms, from the early wars of dispossession such as the Khoikhoi-Dutch war in the 1500s; the arrival of Jan van Riebeeck in the Cape in 1652; the Third War of Dispossession between the Khoisan and colonial authorities in the 1800s; and the South African War, previously known as the Anglo-Boer War, to the anti-apartheid struggle – all of which form part of the freedom history and define the freedom South Africans enjoy today. The museum is the result of nationwide consultative processes that solicited advice from youth, intellectuals, academics, artistic communities, women's groups, traditional leaders and healers and faith-based organisations.

It is a product of South Africans from all walks of life and is in every shape and form a community's dream.

Other elements include a vast wall commemorating those who paid the ultimate price for freedom, an eternal flame paying tribute to the unknown and unsung heroes and heroines, a gallery dedicated to the legends of humanity, a symbolic resting place for those who have died and the story of southern Africa's 3,6 billion years of history.

Other museums administered by central government departments or research councils are the:

- Museum of the Council for Geoscience (Pretoria)
- Theiler Veterinary Science Museum at Onderstepoort (Pretoria)
- South African Air Force Museum at Swartkop Air Force Base (Pretoria) with its satellites in Cape Town, Port Elizabeth and Durban
- museum of the Department of Correctional Services (Pretoria).

The best-known natural history collections in South Africa are housed in the Iziko museums, the Ditsong museums of South Africa, the National Museum and the KwaZulu-Natal Museum.

The following natural history museums do not fall under the DAC, but work closely with the national heritage institutions:

- McGregor Museum, Kimberley
- East London Museum
- South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity, Grahamstown
- Port Elizabeth Museum
- Durban Museum of Natural History.

The best-known cultural history collections are housed in the Iziko and the Ditsong museums, as well as the Durban Local History Museum and Museum Africa in Johannesburg.

The South African National Gallery in Cape Town and the William Humphreys Art Gallery in Kimberley report to the DAC.

The South African Cultural History Museum (Slave Lodge) in Cape Town houses the oldest cultural history collection in the country.

The South African Museum (Cape Town) showcases the natural history of South Africa, and relics of the early human inhabitants of the subcontinent.

The huge Whale Hall houses possibly the most impressive of all its exhibitions. This is the only collection in South Africa with a planetarium attached to it.

In May 2014, South Africa participated in the 11th International Film Festival in Western Sahara (FiSahara) in the Wilaya of Dakhla, Sahrawi refugee camps. The festival, held under the theme: "Cinema for Human Rights in Western Sahara," was attended by 300 international participants from different countries including filmmakers, directors, human rights activists and people in solidarity with the Saharawi people. The festival aims to raise awareness of the plight of the refugees displaced from their native Western Sahara for nearly four decades and to empower them to tell their own story through film by leaving a lasting legacy of film-making skills and equipment in the camps. South Africa held a special tribute to the late former President Nelson Mandela with specially chosen films, workshops and a performance by legendary South African musician Jonas Mosa Gwangwa.

The Transvaal Museum in Pretoria houses the skull of Mrs Ples, a 2,5-million-year-old hominid fossil, and depicts the origin and development of life in South Africa, from the most primitive unicellular form of life to the emergence of mammals and the first human beings.

It has an impressive collection of early human fossils and houses some of the largest herpetological and ornithological collections in southern Africa.

The Tswaing Meteorite Crater, situated to the north-west of Pretoria, combines a museum with a cultural-development initiative.

The National Cultural History Museum in Pretoria is a centre for the preservation and promotion of the culture and heritage of all South Africans.

It explores cultural diversity and commonalities, links the present and the past to offer a better understanding of both, and nurtures the living cultures of all South Africans.

Mining is best represented by the De Beers Museum at the Big Hole in Kimberley, where visitors can view the biggest hole ever made by man with pick and shovel.

It includes an open-air museum, which houses many buildings dating back to the era of the diamond diggings.

Another important mining museum is at Pilgrim's Rest, Mpumalanga, where the first economically viable gold field was discovered. The entire village has been conserved and restored.

Agriculture in South Africa is depicted mainly in two museums. These are Kleinplaspie in Worcester, Western Cape, which showcases the wine culture and characteristic architecture of the winelands; and the Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum between Pretoria and Bronkhorstspuit, in Gauteng.

This museum comprises two "house" museums and runs educational programmes based on its extensive collection of early farming implements, vehicles of yesteryear and indigenous farm animals.

The Absa Museum and archives in Johannesburg preserve the banking group's more than 110 years of history. The museum also houses a unique and very valuable coin and banknote collection.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg offers a realistic view of the political situation in South Africa during the apartheid years.

Exhibitions in the museum include audiovisual footage recorded during the apartheid era.

The Red Location Museum in Port Elizabeth highlights the struggle against apartheid and has won several international awards.

A common type of museum in South Africa is the "house" museum. Examples include an entire

village nucleus in Stellenbosch; the mansion of the millionaire industrialist Sammy Marks; the Kruger House Museum, the residence of Paul Kruger, former President of the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek; and Melrose House, where the Peace Treaty of Vereeniging that ended the Second Anglo-Boer/South African War (1899 to 1902) was signed, around the massive dining table, on 31 May 1902, in Pretoria.

Simpler variations include the Pioneer Museum and 1848 house in Silverton, Pretoria; and the Diepkloof Farm Museum featuring a farmhouse dating back to the 1850s, at Suikerbosrand near Heidelberg, in Gauteng.

There are several open-air museums that showcase the black cultures of the country, for example, Tsonga Kraal near Letsitele, Limpopo; the Ndebele Museum in Middelburg, Mpumalanga; the Bakone Malapa Museum in Polokwane, Limpopo; and the South Sotho Museum in Witsieshoek, Free State.

The South African Museum for Military History in Johannesburg reflects the military history of the country, while the War Museum in Bloemfontein depicts the Anglo-Boer/South African War, in particular.

The famous battlefields of KwaZulu-Natal, the Northern Cape and North West are also worth a visit.

The work of the War Graves Division of Sahra includes the upkeep of graves of victims of the Struggle for South Africa's liberation.

Archives

The archives of governmental bodies are transferred to archive repositories after 20 years, and are accessible to the public and to the office of origin.

The National Archives in Pretoria includes the National Film, Video and Sound Archives (NFVSA).

Its primary functions are to obtain and preserve films, videotapes and sound recordings of archival value, and to make these available for research and reference purposes.

The archives of central government are preserved in the National Archives' repository in Pretoria.

The nine provinces run their archiving services independently from the National Archives.

The retrieval of information from archives is facilitated by the National Automated Archival Information System, which can be found at www.national.archives.gov.za.

It includes national registers of manuscripts, photographs and audiovisual material.

The National Archives is responsible for collecting non-public records with enduring value of national significance.

The National Archives also renders a regulatory records-management service with regard to current records in governmental bodies, aimed at promoting efficient, transparent and accountable administration.

In so doing, it is obliged to pay special attention to aspects of the nation's experience neglected by archives of the past.

The Oral History Programme seeks to build the National Archives' capacity to document the spoken word, and fill the gaps in the archives of previously disadvantaged communities.

The automated National Register of Oral Sources is an important element of the programme.

The National Oral History Association, which was established in 2006, hosts annual oral history conferences.

The National Archives' outreach programme promotes the use of its facilities and functions. Archives are taken to the people of South Africa through coordinated national and provincial archive services.

The National Archives is also responsible for ensuring effective, transparent and accountable management of all public records.

The Convention for a Democratic South Africa and the multiparty South African collections have been nominated and provisionally registered for the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco) Memory of the World International Register.

This is part of South Africa's contribution to the documented collective memory of the peoples of the world.

Library and information services (LIS)

South Africa's growing LIS sector includes the NLSA, a statutory body; the South African Library for the Blind (SALB); Blind South Africa (Blind SA); public/community libraries; special libraries; government libraries; and higher education libraries.

National Library of South Africa

The NLSA was established after the merger of the former State Library in Pretoria and the former South African Library in Cape Town, and includes a specialist unit, the Centre for the Book in Cape Town.

The NLSA in Pretoria has seating capacity for 1 300 library users.

The NLSA offers free Internet access to users in Cape Town and Pretoria.

The Centre for the Book promotes the culture of reading, writing and publishing in all official languages of South Africa.

The NLSA is a custodian and provider of the nation's knowledge resources. It is mandated to collect and preserve intellectual documentary heritage material and make it accessible worldwide.

Its collections contain a wealth of information sources, including rare manuscripts, books, periodicals, government publications, foreign official publications, maps, technical reports, and special interest material, including Africana and newspapers.

The functions of the NLSA are to:

- build a complete collection of published documents emanating from or relating to South Africa
- maintain and preserve these collections
- provide access to them through bibliographic, reference, information and interlending services
- promote information awareness and literacy.

In terms of the Legal Deposit Act, 1997 (Act 54 of 1997), the NLSA receives two copies of each book, periodical, newspaper, map, manuscript material or other publication that is published in South Africa in any medium, whether print or electronic.

The Bookkeeper Mass De-Acidification has been installed at the NLSA in Pretoria to treat books and archival non-book material to extend the useful life of paper collections.

The NLSA is also able to offer moderate services to local libraries, archives and museums.

The NLSA is a link between the LIS sector and heritage sector. It will influence a social cohesive nation by providing free and equitable access to knowledge and information resources, with a theme: "A reading nation is a thriving nation."

Library and Information Association of South Africa (Liasa)

Libraries have always played a role in education, whether school, academic, public or special libraries.

Where there are not enough school libraries, public libraries are largely bridging the gap.

The concept of lifelong learning is one embodied in all libraries, especially public and community libraries.

That any person, young or old, rich or poor, employed or unemployed, can walk into a library and find information (in both electronic and traditional formats) to educate and enrich themselves, is one of the major benefits of libraries.

National Library Week was celebrated in March 2014 under the theme "Celebrating libraries in 20 years of democracy; check in @ your library."

National Council for Library and Information Services (NCLIS)

The NCLIS is an advisory council that advises the ministers of arts and culture, of basic education and of higher education and training on matters relating to LIS to support and stimulate the socio-economic, educational, cultural, re-creational, scientific research, technological and information development of all communities in the country.

The council is broadly representative and councillors are appointed for their expertise and experience in the field of LIS.

Members serve on the council for a renewable term of three years.

Some important policy matters include the development of the Library and Information Services Transformation Charter, which aligns the role of libraries with the vision and strategic framework of government; the training of librarians; and the funding of the sector.

Legal Deposit Committee

The Legal Deposit Committee was appointed in terms of the Legal Deposit Act of 1997, which is administered by the DAC.

The committee members serve on the committee for a renewable term of three years.

The mandate of the Act includes:

- providing for the preservation of the national documentary heritage through the legal deposit of published documents
- ensuring the preservation and cataloguing of, and access to, published documents emanating from, or adapted for, South Africa
- providing for access to government information. The core functions of the Legal Deposit Committee include:
- advising the Minister on any matter dealt with in this Act
- making recommendations to the Minister concerning any regulations which the Minister may make under this Act
- coordinating the tasks carried out by the places of legal deposit
- advising any place of legal deposit regarding any matter dealt with in this Act.

The places of legal deposit are: the NLSA; the Library of Parliament in Cape Town; the Mangaung Public Library in Bloemfontein; the Msunduzi/Voortrekker Municipal Library in Pietermaritzburg; and the NFVSA in Pretoria.

The Act also provides for the establishment of official publications depositories (OPDs), namely the Constitutional Court Library in Johannesburg; Phuthadijhaba Public Library in the Free State; the North West Provincial Library, Information and Archives Service; and the Mpumalanga Library Services.

South African Library for the Blind

The SALB is a statutory organisation located in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape. Its purpose is to provide, free of charge as far as is reasonably possible, a national LIS to serve blind and print-handicapped readers in South Africa.

It is partly state-funded and depends for the remainder of its financial needs on funds from the private sector and the general public.

The SALB also produces documents in special media such as Braille, audio and tactile formats. It develops standards for the production of such documents and researches production methods and technology in the appropriate fields.

It also acquires, manufactures and disseminates the technology people with visual disabilities use to read. The SALB has five broad objectives, namely to significantly contribute towards:

- helping to build a nation of readers
- assisting the organised blind community
- improving the lives of individuals with print disabilities by meeting their information needs
- helping the state to discharge its cultural mandate, and its obligations to blind and visually impaired people
- assisting Africa's development by providing advice, expertise and documents in accessible formats for blind people and the institutions that serve their information needs.

The SALB has a membership of about 3 655 people, an audio and Braille collection of more than 25 600 books, and an annual circulation of 133 222 books in Braille or audio format.

To make library services more accessible, the SALB partners 82 public libraries providing accessible reading material and assistive devices.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation of the blind, governed by the blind, and is located in Johannesburg.

It provides services for blind and partially sighted individuals to uplift and empower them by publishing books, magazines and other documents in Braille. Blind SA provides:

- study bursaries for blind and partially sighted students
- interest-free loans (for adaptive equipment)
- information (including free Braille magazines)
- assistance in finding sustainable employment
- advocacy (to act as a pressure group for disability rights)
- Braille publications at affordable prices in all the official languages
- free Braille training (newly blind people or previously disadvantaged blind people)

- free orientation and mobility training (newly blind people or previously disadvantaged blind people).

International relations

The DAC's participation in various activities in the international cultural arena helps to identify, promote and exploit mutually beneficial partnerships for social and economic development in South Africa.

Together with the African Union (AU) and the New Partnership for Africa's Development, South Africa has embarked on the road to restoring, preserving and protecting its African heritage.

The department ensures that South African talent takes its rightful place on the global stage, and uses arts and culture as a tool for economic self-liberation.

Bilateral agreements have been signed with France, the UK, China, Cuba, India, New Zealand and many more.

South Africa ratified the Convention on the Promotion and Protection of Cultural Diversity in 2006, becoming the 35th member country to do so.

In the area of international cooperation on cultural development, the DAC is committed to promoting the African Agenda.

The DAC continues to encourage and support initiatives to promote South African artists on the world stage.

A priority in 2014 is the finalisation of the policy on cultural diplomacy, in partnership with the Department of International Relations and Cooperation. Among others, the policy will result in the deployment of cultural attachés in South Africa's diplomatic missions.

Indigenous music and oral history

The International Library of African Music (ILAM), attached to the Music Department at Rhodes University, is the largest repository of African music in the world. Founded in 1954 by ethnomusicologist Hugh Tracy, ILAM is devoted to the study of music and oral arts in Africa. It preserves thousands of historical recordings, going back to 1929, and supports contemporary fieldwork.

The DAC has entered into partnerships with the universities of Venda, Fort Hare and Zululand to conduct research into indigenous music and instruments, as well as identifying and collecting all aspects of intangible cultural heritage in their provinces.

The department and the African Cultural Heritage Fund promote indigenous music by hosting regional, provincial and national indigenous dance and music competitions.

African World Heritage Fund (AWHF)

The AWHF provides financial and technical support for the conservation and protection of Africa's natural and cultural heritage of outstanding universal value.

The fund was established as a result of work undertaken by African member states of Unesco, with the objective of developing an ongoing strategy to deal with the challenges that most African countries have in implementing the World Heritage Convention. The AWHF is the first regional funding initiative within the framework of the Unesco World Heritage Convention.

The AWHF strives towards the effective conservation and protection of Africa's natural and cultural heritage. AWHF is aimed at AU member states that signed the 1972 Unesco World Heritage Convention in support of these goals.



The new Ministries of Communications and Telecommunications and Postal Services were established following the general elections in May 2014.

Department of Communications (DoC)

President Jacob Zuma issued Proclamation 43 of 2014, which gave effect to the establishment of the new Department of Communications (DoC). The new DoC was to be established or formed out of the Government Communication and Information System (GCIS), certain functions of the old DoC; Brand South Africa (Brand SA); Film and Publication Board (FPB); Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA), Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA) and the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC) with effect from the 1 April 2015.

However, in November 2014, The Presidency issued a directive for the GCIS to be re-established as a schedule 1 national department from 1 April 2015, reporting to the Minister of Communications.

The vision of the DoC of providing vibrant and sustainable communication services for an informed citizenry and a positive image of South Africa supports its mission of creating an enabling environment for the provision of inclusive communication services to all South Africans in a manner that promotes socio-economic development and investment through broadcasting, new media, print media and new technologies, and brand the country locally and internationally.

Broadcasting digital migration

The digital broadcasting network reaches more than 80% of the population.

The DoC is spearheading the process of migrating broadcasting signals from analogue to digital. Government will provide about five million poor TV-owning households with free set-top boxes.

DoC entities Brand South Africa

Charged with marketing South Africa at home and abroad, Brand SA's focus internationally is to positively influence and shape perceptions about South Africa among target audiences.

The new slogan, "South Africa: Inspiring New Ways," is set to represent the next phase of the country's development, where South Africa has moved from possibility to delivery, and is now an important regional power.

Internationally, Brand SA lobbies and networks extensively among global opinion leaders to shift

Communications

perceptions about the country and the continent.

Being a member of the Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa trade bloc (BRICS), for example, provides a platform to engage and influence perceptions.

Brand SA also regularly brings groups of international journalists to the country to interact with the South African Government and business representatives, experience local life and culture, and learn about the country's latest technological developments.

Film and Publication Board

The FPB assists the public to make informed choices about whether a particular film is appropriate by displaying guidelines that identify classifiable elements such as strong language, violence, sex, nudity, drug abuse, blasphemy and religious prejudice.

The Film and Publications Act, 1996 (Act 3 of 1996) recognises the right of adults to freedom of expression, except with respect to child pornography, and requires the board to intervene where there is a risk of harm to children.

The board spearheads a national anti-child-pornography campaign to educate learners about ways to avoid victimisation. Child-pornography websites can be reported by calling the board's toll-free number 0800 148 148.

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

ICASA was established in July 2000 as a merger of the telecommunications regulator, the South African Telecommunications Regulatory Authority and the Independent Broadcasting Authority.

The ICASA Amendment Act of 2005 also provided for the incorporation of the Postal Regulator into ICASA. It also increased ICASA's council complement from seven to nine councillors.

ICASA is responsible for regulating the telecommunications, broadcasting and postal industries in the public interest and ensure affordable services of a high quality for all South Africans. ICASA also issues licences to telecommunications and broadcasting service providers, enforces compliance with rules and regulations, protects consumers from unfair business practices and poor quality services, hears and decides on disputes and complaints brought against licensees and controls and manages the effective use of radio frequency spectrum.

ICASA is a Chapter 9 institution in terms of the South African Constitution and is an entity of the DoC.

ICASA's functions include:

- licensing broadcasters, signal distributors and providers of telecommunications and postal services
- making regulations
- imposing licence conditions
- planning, assigning, controlling, enforcing and managing the frequency spectrum
- ensuring international and regional cooperation
- ensuring the efficient allocation of numbers
- ensuring interoperability of networks
- receiving and resolving complaints.

In 2014, ICASA released a notice of publication of the quarterly Quality of Service Monitoring Test Report pertaining to services provided by Vodacom, MTN and Cell C networks in Limpopo. The purpose of the report was to assess the standard and quality of services offered by the three major mobile operators, and also to promote redress in the public interest where the services do not meet the requisite standard.

The monitoring was conducted in Mokopane, Mutale, Polokwane, Sekhukhune and Thohoyandou.

Media Development and Diversity Agency

The MDDA is a statutory development agency for promoting and ensuring media development and diversity, established as a partnership between the South African Government and major print and broadcasting companies to assist in, among others things, developing community and small commercial media in South Africa. It was established in terms of the MDDA Act, 2002 (Act 14 of 2002).

The agency functions independently from and at arm's length of its funders, and political-party and commercial interests. This arrangement enables government, the media industry and donors to work together to address the legacy of imbalances in media access.

South African Broadcasting Corporation

The SABC is the country's only public service broadcaster. An Act of Parliament established the SABC in August 1936. At its inception, the SABC only had one English radio station. In 1976, it launched the country's then first and only television channel.

The SABC is made up of 18 radio stations, which cater for the country's 11 official languages, as well as the iXun and Khwe language, and four

In May 2014, the South African National Editors Forum joined the world in celebrating International Press Freedom Day. The celebration coincided with the national 20th anniversary of the demise of apartheid and the rise of freedom in South Africa.

television channels, which include the 24-hour news channel that was launched in August 2013.

The SABC, which is governed by the Broadcasting Act of 1999 (as amended), has developed editorial policies which guide and give direction to the corporation's public broadcasting mandate and licence conditions, as set by the ICASA and the Provisions of the Broadcasting Act.

The organisation's vision, "Broadcast for Total Citizen Empowerment," propels it in fulfilling its public-service mandate as a broadcaster. The SABC's television platforms continually perform well, with audience ratings seeing its programming belong to the top 19 of 20 programmes across all broadcasters. The SABC's radio stable was no different, with eight out of the top 10 radio stations in the country belonging to it.

As part of its Corporate Plan, the SABC has set itself three key strategic pillars for the next three years and they are:

- stabilising the corporation as a going concern in compliance with the Government Guarantee
- rebuilding the corporation by re-aligning its operating model with the imperatives of the digital broadcasting environment
- creating a sustainable public-service broadcaster for the future.

The SABC has invested heavily towards the local production industry, with the release of the ninth Request for Proposals (RFP) book in November 2014. This was a major milestone for the organisation as the value of the ninth RFP book is more than R600 million, surpassing the previous RFP book which was over R100 million, thus making it the largest RFP book issued by the SABC for local content to date.

With the new RFP Book, the public-service broadcaster is committed to providing the public with a wide range of high quality local programmes, which reflect the diverse cultures, languages, life experiences, interests and needs of the audience. The SABC is committed to ring-fence briefs specifically aimed at promoting regional diversity, contributing towards job creation and empowerment of youth and black women.

Through this substantial investment, the SABC will continue to be the leading consumer of local content in South Africa, and most importantly the foremost generator of employment and development of the independent production industry.

The policy review process will deal with critical policy and regulatory issues facing the SABC such as its funding model, public mandate, governance and other related statutory issues.

Major changes in the sector such as the digitisation of broadcasting and rapid convergence of the telecommunications; internet and broadcasting platforms have made the broadcaster to continuously review its business operating model.

Infrastructure and system upgrades have been carried out in preparation of the Digital Terrestrial Television (DTT) migration, to ensure the broadcasting of existing and future TV channels and radio stations. DTT will enable the SABC to deliver on its mandate, as the functionality of DTT will provide various technological options, which will impact positively on our content offering as a broadcaster. Because a digital signal can be compressed, this will allow for more channels to be broadcast in the same bandwidth, as one analogue channel uses. The SABC estimates that up to eight new channels can be provided in the same bandwidth, as one analogue channel.

It is envisaged that DTT will provide a wide range of opportunities for radio such as new revenue generating streams. Through its capabilities, the DTT can provide value-added services such as interactive services to existing radio service offerings.

The SABC has won several awards in 2014 through the performance of its journalists, presenters, producers and programmes. These are some of the events, at which the SABC was nominated and/or won awards:

- Eighth South African Film & Television Awards
- Pomax/BDA Africa 2014
- 34th annual SAB Sports Media Awards
- fourth MTN Radio Awards
- Vodacom Journalists of the Year awards
- Webber Wentzel Legal Journalist of the Year Award
- National Press Club Journalist of the Year Award
- SAB Environmental Awards
- World Radio Summit
- Sunday Times Generation Next Survey
- South African Traditional Music Awards

The SABC continues to be a leading public service broadcaster on the African continent and serves the public with pride.

Government Communication and Information System

The GCIS mandate is to serve as the central communications agency of government leading the reconstruction and development of post-apartheid South Africa. The GCIS mobilises the nation behind the NDP, showcases progress and invites South Africans to work together to address challenges is critical to the achievement of Vision 2030.

The GCIS is responsible for informing all citizens of South Africa about government's work and how they can participate in governance and consolidating the country's democracy.

The GCIS has a responsibility to act in the interest of all South Africans, without discrimination and to communicate effectively in all official languages and reach all communities in urban, peri-urban and rural areas.

The GCIS reaches millions of South Africans through different platforms, which include publications, the news media, radio, television and *izimbizo*.

Cabinet directed the department to reposition the Thusong Service Centres programme to widen government access.

Repositioning means the department, working with partner departments, will have to look at the possibility of identifying the suitable structure, platforms and partnerships to effectively fulfil the mandate of the programme, which is not only limited to information.

The GCIS continues to enhance existing communication platforms and products, and initiate new ones to ensure that targeted audiences and communities receive relevant information through various means.

It is also establishing partnerships with strategic stakeholders within the three spheres of government, and within broader society, to achieve more.

The GCIS supports municipalities in their communication, with preference given to municipalities that are part of the LGTAS, to close the gap between municipalities and communities, which sometimes contributes to the factors behind protests in some communities.

The department has a mandate to ensure that government's vision and policies are clearly understood in the public service. The GCIS coordinates the Internal Communicators' Forum, to ensure messages disseminated across the various channels and outlets managed by departments are coherent.

Communicating government information is not the primary business of the public media. *Vuk'uzenzele*, a free national government newspaper, continues to gain traction among its target audience.

Vuk'uzenzele is the only newspaper in the country available in Braille and all official languages. The online version of the newspaper is due for further enhancement and improved usability.

SAnews.gov.za produces hard news and human-interest features, and carries many exciting pictures, video content on *YouTube*. It is also available on *Facebook* and *Twitter*.

The government news agency has become more popular with the public and it will continue to be marketed to the broader public as a complement to South Africa's rapidly diversifying news and information mix. It has also entered into mutual-cooperation agreements with various foreign news agencies.

The GCIS, through its media-buying operation, continues to support the financial viability of a diverse community media sector, by placing over R38 million in advertising in the community press, radio and television.

The milestones of 20 Years of Freedom, the fifth democratic general election and the millennium development goals are among the important topics covered in 2014.

Department of Telecommunications and Postal Services (DTPS)

The mandate of the DTPS is to create a vibrant ICT sector that ensures that all South Africans have access to robust, reliable, affordable and secure ICT services in order to advance socio-economic development goals and support the Africa agenda and contribute to building a better world.

The core functions of the DTPS include, among other things, developing ICT policies and legislation; and ensuring the development of robust, reliable, secure and affordable ICT infrastructure that supports and enables the provision of a multiplicity of applications and services to meet the needs of the country and its people.

The six state-owned enterprises under the DTPS are the South African Post Office (SAPO), Sentech; National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (Nemisa); Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa (Usaasa); .za.Domain Name Authority (ZADNA); Telkom; Broadband Infraco and State Information Technology Agency (SITA).

The department's objectives are in line with the country's National Development Plan (NDP), which recommends developing a coordinated and enabling ICT strategy and a plan that cuts across government departments and sectors to improve e-literacy, and provide clarity on the roles and functions of the state to prevent unintended policy outcomes.

The plan also calls for a full policy review on the ICT sector, which has not been done since 1995.

The department has therefore prioritised certain key policy initiatives namely:

- ICT Policy Review – a comprehensive review of policies for telecommunications, postal services, broadcasting and information technology.

- the Electronic Communications Amendment Bill – is important for ensuring the sector's continued dynamism.
- National Broadband Policy: the broadband master plan that will ensure that the roles and responsibilities of key stakeholders in the sector are clearly defined.

The department has the following key priorities:

- Broadcasting Digital Migration Policy
- Schools Connectivity
- Community Radio
- Rural Development.

South African Post Office

SAPO is a Schedule 2 Public Entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999. It is a government business enterprise established to provide postal and related services to the public, and derives its mandate from the SAPO SOC Ltd Act of 2011 and the South African Postbank Limited Act of 2010.

The Postal Services Act of 1998 grants it an exclusive mandate to conduct postal services. This Act makes provision for the regulation of postal services and operational functions of the postal company, including universal service obligations and the financial services activities of Postbank.

The entity's strategic goals are to:

- maintain good corporate governance principles
- remain customer centric by providing quality services
- invest in employees by building capacity and implementing transformation programmes
- attain financial sustainability while delivering on government's social mandate
- provide affordable postal and related services that meet the needs of customers
- remain environmentally conscious by promoting green practices
- provide a secure, efficient and integrated infrastructure for better responses to its stakeholders
- continue the corporatisation of Postbank and the upgrading of its banking systems.

Post offices have become important service-delivery centres, offering South Africans a convenient place to accept and deliver cash-on-delivery items, which is a very important service in rural communities where some people shop from catalogues.

In addition, more than a million South Africans walk through the doors of post offices near where they live to access their social grants.

Post offices also offer services that include enabling South Africans to renew their vehicle registration, and pay their municipal accounts and television licences.

Sentech

Sentech Limited is a state-owned enterprise established in terms of the Sentech Act of 1996 and is listed as a schedule 3B public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999. The company is mandated to provide broadcasting signal distribution for broadcasting licensees, with a particular focus on accelerating the implementation of government ICT interventions within the framework of the NDP and the strategic integrated project for expanding access to communication technology.

The entity's strategic goals over the medium term were to:

- align its strategic roadmap with shareholder programmes to enable the development of open access government participation in the communications industry through infrastructure-based investment
- continue working to support and realise government's ICT vision and goals, including innovation in broadcasting and media services, and content management and distribution
- create solutions that enhance the customer experience and are in line with government's mandate of access to communication services for all citizens
- repackage social responsibility interventions and create community social investment ICT programmes that improve lives, create value and are sustainable.

Sentech derives commercial revenue from terrestrial television services, terrestrial FM and AM radio services, satellite linking, facility rentals and the sale of satellite decoders.

The entity also receives transfers from the department for DTT and to provide for the dual illumination period.

The spending focus over the medium term was on investing in capital assets to expand the network to new sites in areas that were previously not covered and preparing for the launch of the commercial DTT.

National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (Nemisa)

Nemisa is a non-profit institute of education formed as part of a government initiative in 1998, in response to the *White Paper on Broadcasting Policy*. The institute's main purpose is to train previously disadvantaged individuals, particularly women, to equip them with the necessary skills to play significant roles in the constantly; changing broadcasting environment.

The institute offers hands-on training in electronic media, namely national certificates in Radio Production L5; 2D and 3D Animation L5 and Further Education and Training (FET) Level

4 in Film and Television Production and Design Foundation.

The Media Information and Communication Technologies Sector and Training Authority Seta accredit all courses.

Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa (Usaasa)

The Usaasa is a statutory body established through the Electronic Communications Act. Its sole mandate is to promote universal service and access to the electronic communication services and electronic communication access through broadband role out in under serviced areas.

The agency is responsible for the management of the Universal Service Fund that receives contribution from licensed telecommunications operators. This fund is used to fulfil universal access obligations in underserved areas.

Usaasa's vision is "Universal Access and Services to ICT for All."

In line with this vision, the agency is working towards the 100% access by 2020, and 100% service by 2030.

The agency also focuses on promoting the uptake and usage of ICT services by all South Africans to improve their lives.

Usaasa supports the NDP by facilitating the deployment of broadband; connection of public buildings, schools, primary healthcare facilities and support of small businesses.

.za Domain Name Authority (ZADNA)

ZADNA is a not-for-profit company that manages and regulates the .za namespace. It is accountable to the South African Department of Telecommunications and Postal Services, but does not receive government funding, which means it is exempt from complying with the PFMA.

The ZA Central Registry, through ZADNA's guidance and the African Union (AU) Commission, has made significant progress in its application for the right to establish and operate an Africa Internet namespace for the benefit of Africa.

ZADNA has also ensured that Cape Town, Durban and Johannesburg are not left behind in the Internet revolution, which will bring about new website addresses such as hotels.capetown, tourism.durban and business.johannesburg.

The ZA Central Registry, formerly known as UniForum SA, was established as a non-profit organisation in 1988 by a group of end users, developers, and vendors. It was assigned the responsibility of administering the co.za domain name space in 1995, three years after the first co.za domain name was registered.

The World Wide Web started to take off globally, and the number of co.za domain name registrations rose rapidly. In 1995 the co.za zone contained in the region of 400 entries. Today there are over 926 000 domains, amounting to over 95% of the total registrations in the .za top level domain.

According to the ZA Central Registry, co.za ranks as a medium to large zone and within the top 30 registries worldwide in terms of size.

Telkom

Telkom is Africa's largest integrated communications company, providing integrated communications solutions to nine different countries across Africa. The organisational structure comprises three major business units: Telkom

South Africa, Telkom International and Telkom Data Centre Operations.

It is listed on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Ltd and majority-owned by the DoC. Telkom was the country's only fixed-line operator until 2006, when the country's second fixed-line operator, Neotel, began its operations.

The organisational structure comprises three major business units: Telkom South Africa, Telkom International and Telkom Data Centre Operations.

According to PwC, Telkom will continue to dominate the fixed broadband market in South Africa, with DSL subscriptions forecast to reach 1,66 million by the end of 2018. Total fixed broadband subscriptions in South Africa are forecast to number 2,06 million by the end of 2018.

Broadband Infraco

Broadband Infraco sells high-capacity long-distance transmission services to licensed fixed and mobile network operators, internet service providers and other value-added network service providers. It has a 13 600-km network of long-distance fibre and five open-access points of presence in key metropolitan areas – with an additional seven openaccess points of presence expected over the next few years.

To enhance South Africa's international connectivity and the speed of broadband, Broadband Infraco has co-invested with the private sector in the deployment of the West African Cable System (WACS).

The WACS is the fifth submarine cable system linking South Africa to the world. Broadband Infraco's investment in the WACS entitled it to 11,4% of the system's total capacity, which would help South Africa meet its target of providing broadband connectivity to all who need it by 2020.

The cable system has 15 established terminal stations en route, and will reduce the cost to connect Africa's west coast with the high-speed global telecommunications network for years to come.

State Information Technology Agency

SITA consolidates and coordinates the State's information technology resources in order to achieve cost savings through scale, increase delivery capabilities and enhance interoperability.

SITA is committed to leveraging Information Technology (IT) as a strategic resource for government, managing the IT procurement and delivery process to ensure that the government gets value for money, and using IT to support the delivery of e-Government services to all citizens.

It serves as the IT business for the largest employer and consumer of IT products and services in South Africa – the Government.

South African Accreditation Authority

The South African Accreditation Authority was established in terms of Chapter VI, Part 1 of the Electronic Communications and Transactions Act 25 of 2002.

The authority is responsible for the accreditation of authentication and certification products and services used in support of electronic signatures.

It is also concerned with monitoring of the activities of authentication and certification service providers whose products or services have been accredited within the Republic of South Africa.

The Director-General of the Department of Telecommunications and Postal Services is appointed as the South African Accreditation Authority, and may appoint Deputy South African Accreditation Authorities and officers from employees of the department after consultation with the Minister.

Presidential National Commission (PNC) on Information Society and Development (ISAD)

The PNC on ISAD advises the President on matters related to the development of an inclusive information society; and facilitates the coordinated development of an inclusive information society, and the achievement of the country's information society vision.

The commission comprises leaders in government, industry and civil society. A corresponding body is the Presidential International Advisory Council on ISAD.

Programmes and initiatives

Broadband infrastructure development

Broadband is an essential digital resource for

accessing basic services, products, commerce and job creation. It has the potential to create job opportunities and open new markets that will allow businesses, particularly small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs), to grow.

Given the strategic importance of broadband, the department, together with the ICT industry, has committed to delivering 100% broadband penetration and creating a million jobs by 2020.

The department is aware of the inter-connectivity of broadband and the licensing of radio frequency spectrum, which is a scarce natural resource.

The Broadband Strategy and Implementation Plan, outlines fibre connectivity across the country to district level.

According to the Ministry of Telecommunications and Postal Services, government is planning a number of supply and demand-side broadband interventions in South Africa to address the gap between those who have access to digital services and those who do not.

An infrastructure gap-analysis study has indicated that there is a gap between the high-capacity backbone and access to network infrastructure. This gap is biggest in rural areas and in particular in former homeland states where the most marginalised communities live. There are also some urban areas with high population densities that remain unserved.

However, the real gap is in the last-mile or "local loop" infrastructure. There is considerable duplication and potential under-exploitation of infrastructure in metropolitan areas because these areas were commercially attractive to service providers.

To address this gap government had found it necessary to consider a range of interventions on both the demand and supply-side of broadband.

Supply side interventions to encourage investment and rollout of infrastructure include:

- support for public/private investment initiatives
- increased competition
- expansion of core and access networks
- enablement of infrastructure sharing
- promotion of coordinated build programmes
- allocation of prime spectrum to support universal access.

To complement the supply chain, government determined a number of demand-side interventions. These seek to stimulate the uptake and usage of broadband services and products:

- increased affordability of services and devices
- aggregation of government demand to enhance procurement
- alignment of regulatory framework
- development of ICT skills and e-literacy

- development of local content, applications
- stimulation of niche manufacturing.

Government's intention is to invest in broadband infrastructure through aggregation of public sector demand and smart procurement of high capacity networks.

Rural Development Strategy

ICTs play a significant role in speeding up the integration of services for the development of rural areas and ensuring that rural communities, including those in remote areas, are not left out of the knowledge economy.

The main goal of the department's Rural Development Strategy is, therefore, to address the vacuum in rural ICT and empower rural communities by promoting sustainable job creation and eradicating poverty in rural areas. The strategy includes programmes that will encourage civil society to promote the use of ICT services and provide the necessary infrastructure.

Job creation

In line with government's New Growth Path, the department, together with the ICT sector, aims to facilitate the creation of over 150 000 direct and indirect jobs by 2020.

An industry-wide committee will be established to identify opportunities, using a collective database to ensure effective monitoring and evaluation.

Jobs will be created across various subsectors of the industry through:

- providing broadband infrastructure
- establishing content hubs for radio and television
- animation
- e-co-operatives
- using ICTs in FET colleges
- tailor-made solutions for SMMEs
- digital broadcasting and distributing STBs
- rolling out PostBank.

Internet

Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey 2014 shows that almost half of South African households (48.7%) had at least one member who used the Internet.

Access to the Internet was highest in the Western Cape (62.1%), Gauteng (59.9%), and the Free State (48.7%). The lowest was in Limpopo (32.6%) and the Eastern Cape (37.4%).

One-tenth of South African households had access to the Internet at home. Access to the Internet in the home was highest in the Western Cape (23.8%) and Gauteng (17.3%).

In October 2014, Effective Measure, an analytics company which monitors the size of the South African internet, recorded a whopping 1 033 651 425 page views from South African browsers to South African websites. The most popular South African websites are classified ads.

Social media

The emergence of social media as a social and business communication tool in the last few years, has been dramatic.

In South Africa, a country where first and third-world conditions are often separated by just a few kilometres, social media has levelled the playing field and created a platform that is affordable for everyone, easy to use and highly effective as a communication tool.

The top social media sites in South Africa (by number of users) in 2014 include:

- Facebook – 11,8 million – 25% growth
- YouTube – 7,2 million – 53% growth
- Twitter – 6,6 million – 20% growth
- Mxit – 4,9 million
- LinkedIn – 3,8 million – 40% growth
- Instagram – 1,1 million – 65% growth
- Pinterest – 840 000

Cybercrime and cybersecurity

The National Cybersecurity Policy Framework focuses on building the institutional framework and capacity necessary for mitigating any threats to the ICT environment. South Africa is one of the few countries in Africa with such a policy document.

Cybercrime has become an inevitable reality that confronts all online communities across the world. Identity fraud, stalking, online child pornography and terrorism have become daily occurrences that threaten communities' ability to enjoy the benefits of new technologies.

Expanding access to the Internet must be accompanied by strong measures to ensure basic trust and security to the public as the users.

This requires collaboration between departments, civil society and business to build institutional mechanisms to investigate cybercrimes and anticipate threats.

The Cybersecurity Hub, pooling public and private sector threat information is responsible for processing and disseminating information to relevant stakeholders in the industry and civil society.

All computer users have a role in securing cyberspace and ensuring that the digital environment is secure and used reasonably to profit the socio-economic well-being of the nation.

Mobile communications

South Africa has one of the largest telecommunications markets on the continent: it has five mobile operators, namely Cell C, MTN, Vodacom, Telkom Mobile and virtual network operator Virgin Mobile.

Mobile phones are the dominant technology for voice and data communication among base of pyramid (BoP) users and for informal businesses. People in this group access the Internet mostly via their mobile phones and smartphones have taken over functions that used to be performed by computers.

Users are also finding innovative ways to bypass expensive cellphone SMS rates by using Facebook Zero or other instant message services such as WhatsApp.

Although half of the 50 million people in South Africa live below the poverty line, more than 75% among those in low-income groups who are 15 years or older own a mobile phone.

Mobile ownership at the BoP – households with an income of less than R432 per month, per household member – is relatively high, compared to other African countries. This is according to research commissioned by infoDev, a global partnership programme within the World Bank Group, about the use of mobile phones among BoP users.

Some of 98,5% low-income groups who own mobile phones in South Africa, have a prepaid SIM card, but there is a small percentage (1,5%) of BoP mobile owners who have post-paid contracts.

The number of mobile Internet subscriptions in South Africa is expected to grow to 35,2 million by the end of 2018, more than double the total of 15 million at the end of 2013. This is according to the South African entertainment and media outlook: 2014-2018, published by financial services company, PwC in September 2014. By 2018, as much as 72% of South Africa's mobile subscriptions will be for mobile Internet.

The number of LTE subscriptions in South Africa is forecast to grow at a fairly strong rate, albeit from a low base, to reach 12.6 million at the end of 2018. Mobile devices are also a significant contributor to the increasing popularity of mobile Internet access.

The number of active tablet devices is expected to rise to a projected 5,1 million at the end of 2018.

Postal sector

The cornerstone of national policy for the postal sector is the provision of a universal service at an affordable price and an acceptable standard for all citizens. To ensure this, a universal service obligation has been placed on SAPO.

To offset the cost of providing a basic service in low-density, rural or unviable areas, it has also been common practice to confer exclusive rights and privileges, i.e. a monopoly on the provision of the basic letter service.

Mail Business has 26 mail-sorting centres for domestic mail and parcels, and three international sorting centres for international mail and parcels. Between these centres, some six million mail items are handled daily and 50 tons of parcels are processed a year.

Mail is transported to and from these sorting centres domestically to 7 188 delivery offices (delivery depot centres, lobby boxes and 2 443 post office branches).

Specialised SAPO products include:

- Securemail
- Speed Services Couriers
- Parcelplus
- insurance and cash-on-delivery
- Postbank
- a courier freight group made up of XPS and PX
- Docex.

Philatelic Services

SAPO's Philatelic Services is responsible for producing South Africa's postage stamps and other stamp-related products.

SAPO prints more than 380 million postage stamps a year. They not only reach every corner of South Africa, but also the rest of the world. Although stamps are produced mainly to serve as prepayment for postage, their beauty and historical significance have inspired people to collect them since the first postage stamps were produced in England in 1840.

Over the years, many of them have become valuable collector's items. For example, the first triangular postage stamp was issued on 1 September 1853 in the Cape of Good Hope, which was a British colony at the time. The triangular-shaped stamp, which became known as the Cape Triangular, was the first stamp to be issued in Africa and has become a sought-after collector's item worldwide.

Stamp issues are divided into two main categories:

- Definitive stamps are issued every five to seven years and comprise a set of designs in a full range of face values to provide for the country's postal needs. They usually reflect a particular theme.
- Commemorative stamps are issued according to an annual commemorative stamp-issuing programme. Between 12 and 15 commemorative issues are produced per year. They often commemorate significant historical events or people, or coincide with important days.

Postbank

The Postbank Limited allows SAPO to prioritise the banking needs of the unbanked majority, thus facilitating their inclusion into the economic mainstream. The Postbank Limited Act of 2010 established the Postbank division of SAPO as a separate legal entity, with the principal aim of expanding the existing range of banking services to, among others:

- improve access to affordable services, including loans, especially in rural and lower-income communities
- promote a culture of saving.

In doing so, the Postbank will use the existing SAPO infrastructure, but it is not bound by the Act to do so exclusively.

PostNet

PostNet is South Africa's largest privately owned counter network in the document and parcel industry, trading across more than 250 owner-managed retail stores.

It serves in excess of 55 000 walk-in customers per day, countrywide.

There are five product types within PostNet, namely courier, copy and print, digital, stationery and mailboxes.

The media

South Africa is fortunate to have vibrant and independent media.

According to the Bill of Rights, as contained in the Constitution, everyone has the right to freedom of expression, which includes:

- freedom of the press and other media
- freedom to receive or impart information or ideas
- freedom of artistic creativity
- academic freedom and freedom of scientific research.

Several laws, policies and organisations act to protect and promote press freedom in South Africa.

Radio

Radio is a great communications medium and still enjoys the broadest reach of any media category in South Africa. The diversity of stations, formats, voices and offerings ensures that most of the public's needs are catered for.

It also fulfils a vital need for information and entertainment, with relatively low costs to the distributors and the listeners.

As a communication medium, radio has very few barriers to access. SABC Radio has more than 25 million listeners weekly in South Africa.

The fact that radio cuts across boundaries of illiteracy strengthens the importance of the medium to the consumer and the advertiser.

The SABC's national radio network comprises 18 radio stations, of which 15 are dedicated specifically to public-service broadcasting.

These include 11 full-spectrum stations, one in each of the official languages of South Africa; a cultural service for the Indian community broadcasting in English; a regional community station broadcasting in isiXhosa and English; and a community station broadcasting in the !Xu and Khwe languages of the Khoisan people of the Northern Cape.

The SABC has three stations in its commercial portfolio. These are 5FM, Metro FM and Good Hope FM. Channel Africa broadcasts live on three platforms: shortwave, satellite and the Internet. Its broadcasts are in Chinyanja, Silozi, Kiswahili, English, French and Portuguese.

Commercial radio stations

Commercial radio stations in South Africa include:

- Algoa FM
- Classic FM
- Kaya FM
- YFM
- 94.7 Highveld Stereo
- 702 Talk Radio
- Metro FM
- 5FM
- Channel Africa
- Good Hope FM
- Jacaranda 94.2
- OFM
- East Coast Radio
- 567 Cape Talk
- Radio 2000
- Radio KFM
- Power 98.7.

Stations such as Jacaranda 94.2, Highveld Stereo, Radio Oranje, Radio Algoa and East Coast Radio were initially SABC stations, but were sold to private owners to diversify radio ownership in South Africa as part of the transformation of the public broadcaster.

Many of South Africa's radio stations are also available online.

Community radio

Community broadcasting remains an important project for the DoC. In the midst of redefining the country's broadcasting landscape, 2014 marked the 21st anniversary of community broadcasting.

By August 2014, pay TV group Siyaya seemed ready to launch some of its offerings before the end of 2014, using direct-to-home (DTH) satellite broadcasting. Siyaya made headlines when the group secured the live broadcast rights to Bafana Bafana matches from May 2015. The deal

between Siyaya and the South African Football Association is reported to be worth R175 million per year, over six years. Siyaya was one of five new broadcasters, which received conditional licences to be pay TV broadcasters that had now submitted the necessary additional information required of them, to ICASA. This submission ensures compliance with ICASA's requirements, and allows Siyaya to continue with its expansion plans.

Siyaya said in its submission to ICASA for its license that it plans to charge a subscription fee of R70 per month.

Television

The SABC's television network comprises three television channels – all free-to-air. South African television is broadcast in all 11 official languages and in Sign Language.

Community television

In 2007, Soweto TV was the first community television station to obtain a seven-year broadcasting licence from ICASA.

Since then, five more seven-year licences have been issued to five stations operating in Soweto, Cape Town, Tshwane, Empangeni and Nelson Mandela Bay. The issuing of new community television licences is on hold until the migration from analogue to digital broadcasting is complete.

Free-to-air television

e.tv is South Africa's first private, free-to-air television channel, launched in 1998. It is the largest English-medium channel in the country and the third largest overall. e.tv also has a pan-African presence through e.tv Africa, which is distributed on the DSTv Africa bouquet and by local affiliates in African countries. eNews Prime Time continues to lead the English prime time news slot. This success led to the launch of the leading 24-hour news channel on the DSTv platform, eNCA (eNews Channel Africa) in 2008.

In October 2013, e.tv launched its multi-channel offering through its sister company, Platco. OpenView HD provided 15 channels at launch, including some in high definition, to consumers across South Africa for a once-off cost and no subscription fees. These channels included eKasi+, eMovies+, eAfrica+ and kiddies channel, eToonz+.

Satellite broadcasting

MultiChoice started as the subscriber management arm of M-Net. It isabcs the leading multichannel digital satellite television operator across the African continent. MultiChoice provides

its DSTv services to different market segments. The DSTv bouquets cater for different lifestyles and pockets, from entry level to premium.

Top-TV offers five bouquet options, arranged in seven package options.

e.sat tv supplies television, mobile and online news to various channels in South Africa and across the African continent under the brand name eNews Channel Africa (eNCA). Growing out of the success of eNews Prime Time, aired on e.tv, eNCA is South Africa's first and most watched independent 24-hour television news channel on the DSTv Platform (Channel 403).

By August 2014, pay TV group Siyaya seemed ready to launch some of its offerings before the end of 2014, using direct-to-home (DTH) satellite broadcasting. Siyaya made headlines when the group secured the live broadcast rights to Bafana Bafana matches from May 2015. The deal between Siyaya and the South African Football Association is reported to be worth R175 million per year, over six years. Siyaya was one of five new broadcasters, which received conditional licences to be pay TV broadcasters that had now submitted the necessary additional information required of them, to ICASA. This submission ensures compliance with ICASA's requirements, and allows Siyaya to continue with its expansion plans.

Siyaya said in its submission to ICASA for its license that it plans to charge a subscription fee of R70 per month.

Print

Technical handling of the print media in South Africa rates among the best in the world. This is one reason why newspapers and magazines have held their own in a volatile information era, characterised by the vast development of various new forms of media-delivery platforms via the Internet.

Most South African newspapers and magazines are organised into several major publishing houses: Media24 (part of Naspers, the largest media group in Africa), the Irish-based Independent News & Media (Pty) Ltd group, Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd and Avusa Ltd. Other important media players include M&G Media Ltd; the Natal Witness Printing & Publishing Company (Pty) Ltd; Primedia Publishing Ltd; Ramsay, Son and Parker (Pty) Ltd; and Kagiso Media.

Newspapers

The MarkLives Big Daily Newspaper List*

1. *Daily Sun*: 273 746
2. *The Times*: 143 955
3. *Issolezwe*: 107 139

4. *Sowetan*: 99 723
5. *The Star*: 93 014
6. *Son*: 81 458
7. *Die Burger*: 56 474 +1
8. *The Citizen*: 55 548 +1
9. *Beeld*: 52 276 –2
10. *The Cape Times*: 31 930

The Audit Bureau of Circulations (ABC) of South Africa has released newspaper circulation statistics for the period October–December 2014 (ABC Q4 2014). Extracts from the ABC Q4 2014 presentation released in February 2015, cautions publishers and marketers to watch the sharp growth in distribution below 50% of the cover price, particularly in the Daily Newspaper category.

ABC member circulation totals:

- Daily newspapers: down to 1 537 302, compared to 1 600 667 for the previous corresponding period
- Weekly papers: down to 594 431 from 632 934
- Weekend papers: down to 1 877 290 from 2 100 272
- Local papers: down to 401 734 from 421 344
- Free papers: down to 6 223 063 from 6 526 176

Daily newspaper circulation fell to 1 537 302 from 1 600 667 from the previous corresponding reporting period (Q4 2013). The ABC reports slight growth on the previous quarter (Q3 2014) but points out that distribution below 50% of cover price has increased by 36% during the same period.

Most of that 36% growth seems to be driven by two Independent Newspapers titles — *The Cape Times* and *The Cape Argus* — following a strategy already employed by its Johannesburg title, *The Star*. All three titles had shown declines in copy sales when compared to the previous quarter.

The Star fell, in terms of single copy sales (excluding pdf replicas), to 38 383 from 38 231, while *The Cape Argus* fell to 15 254 from 16 761 and *The Cape Times*, which has been wracked by firings and resignations, fell to 14 168 from 16 212.

According to the ABC statistics, 12 889 copies of *The Star*'s total circulation of 93 014 was for sales at under 50% of the cover price (up from 9 702 in the previous quarter); 3 056 for *The Cape Argus* out of a circulation of 30 129; and 2 537 for *The Cape Times* out of a total circulation of 31 930 (both up from 0 in the previous quarter). It allowed all three titles to 'maintain' circulation figures from the previous quarter.

Pretoria News saw a decline in the number of copies selling at under 50% of its price — dropping to 2 870 from 3 140. Caxton-owned *The Citizen* disposed of 5 110 copies at less

than 50% of its cover price, out of a circulation of 55 548.

In Gauteng, *Beeld* has fallen to 52 276 from 64 874 in the previous corresponding reporting period, and *Pretoria News* to 14 002 from 17 243. *The Star* has suffered a significant decline to 93 014 from 100 898. *Sowetan* is up to slightly to 99 723 from 99 236.

In the Cape, *Die Burger* (Eastern and Western Cape editions) has declined to 56 474 from 60 512. *The Cape Argus* has fallen to 30 129 from 30 204 and the *Cape Times* to 31 930 from 32 611 (the real decline is more dramatic — see above). *Son* has fallen to 81 458 from 86 837.

In the Eastern Cape, *Daily Dispatch* has grown to 25 894 from 25 521 but *The Herald* has fallen to 20 635 from 22 621.

In KwaZulu-Natal, the *Daily News* has fallen to 26 296 from 28 881 and *The Mercury* to 26 916 from 29 010. *The Witness* has grown to 17 893 from 17 549.

Business Day has declined to 30 883 from 33 667, *The Citizen* to 55 548 from 58 735, and *Daily Sun* to 273 746 from 297 614. *Isolezwe* is holding steady at 107 139 from 107 119 and *The Times* is up to 143 955 from 142 523.

Volksblad has declined to 18 410 from 20 456.

Saturday Beeld has fallen to 46 043 from 58 411, and *Pretoria News* Saturday to 7 839 from 10 126. The *Saturday Star* is down to 58 926 from 73 487. *Saturday Burger* has fallen to 70 666 from 75 853. The *Weekend Argus* Saturday edition has grown to 38 728 from 37 780 but the *Weekend Argus* Sunday edition has fallen to 16 627 from 17 341. *Saturday Dispatch* has climbed to 20 925 from 20 679.

City Press has declined to 108 927 from 124 418 and *Rapport* to 156 383 from 187 288. The *Sunday Times* falls to 385 080 from 411 186. *Sunday Tribune* is down to 63 622 from 68 277. *Sunday Sun* is down to 163 016 from 177 257 and *Sunday World* to 102 401 from 116 659. The *Sunday Independent* resigned.

Ilanga Langesonto has declined to 49 738 from 56 074, *Isolezwe ngeSonto* to 85 301 from 88 026 and *Isolezwe ngoMqibelo* to 76 837 from 82 339.

In terms of the weeklies: *Ilanga* has fallen to 90 008 from 95 994, but *The Post* grew to 46 960 from 43 975. The *Mail & Guardian* fell to 33 060 from 51 551. *Soccer Laduma* has grown to 309 721 from 307 275.

Magazines

The ABC of South Africa released consumer-magazine circulation statistics for the period October–December 2014. The ABC analysis noted that individual magazine subscriptions

account for 6,7 % of total circulation and compared to Q3 have “only declined by 6%” — this is in reference to the Post Office strike which brought postal deliveries to a virtual halt for several months.

- Total magazine circulation declined 8,6% in Q4 2014, compared to Q3 2014.
- Consumer magazines dropped 1,8% between Q3 and Q4, the Custom category dropped 13%. The Business to Business category crept up by 2%, or 25 000 copies.
- The Home category saw 5% growth compared to Q3 2014 and 13,9% growth compared to Q4 2013.
- Circulation in the motoring category continues to decline — dropping 9,2% compared to Q4 2013. *Car Magazine* remains the largest title in this category but dropped 6,9% year on year while *Auto Trader* recorded the highest % decline year on year at 47%. *Super Bike* magazine reported a 21% increase year on year.
- *Getaway* has declined 20% year on year while *Country Life* is up 13% year on year.
- The Women's General category has dropped 10,4% year on year. *Cosmopolitan* recorded a 23% drop, *Elle* 20%, *Glamour* 17% and *Fairlady* also at 17%. *True Love* is up 10% year on year and *Grazia* 6,8%.
- *Financial Mail* has declined to 19 901 from 23 140 (total free circulation = 2 085) in the corresponding previous reporting period. *Finweek* is down to 11 678 from 13 217 (total free = 2 503).
- *Entrepreneur* has fallen to 18 575 from 22 323.
- *Forbes Africa* has held fairly steady at 17 330 from 17 336 (total free = 8 070) and *Green Business Journal* has come in at 5 801 (total free = 5 341, giving it a total paid circulation of only 460 copies). *Nosweek* has declined to 16 974 from 17 776.
- *Personal Finance* has fallen to 11 702 from 13 334. *Your Business* Magazine has grown to 11 358 from 10 478. *Real Estate Investor* has come in at 21 957 (total free = 20 306).
- *Farmer's Weekly* has fallen to 14 223 from 14 329 and *Landbouweekblad* to 32 129 from 35 854.

The biggest-circulating business magazines in terms of paid-for (sales, bulk and subscriptions) circulation:

Entrepreneur: 18 201 +
Financial Mail: 17 816
Nosweek: 16 934
Personal Finance: 11 202
Your Business: 9 981 +
Forbes Africa: 9 260 +
Finweek: 9 175 –

The biggest-circulating business magazines in

terms of total circulation:

Real Estate Investor: 21 957 new
Financial Mail: 19 901
Entrepreneur: 18 575
Forbes Africa: 17 330 +
Nosweek: 16 974 –
Personal Finance: 11 702
Finweek: 11 678
Your Business: 11 358

Heat magazine has declined to 24 842 from 28 446. *People* has fallen to 70 723 from 81 782. *TV Plus* (Afrikaans) is up to 37 112 from 35 303 but the English edition falls to 34 454 from 39 411. *Bona* has fallen to 73 606 to 81 504 (and 104 234 in Q3 2013), *Drum* to 113 018 from 120 241, *Huisgenoot* to 259 031 from 261 224 and *YOU* to 142 981 from 153 055. *The Big Issue* sees an increase to 13 714 from 13 263. *Taalgenoot* falls to 66 259 from 67 300.

Conde Nast House & Garden has declined to 42 159 from 43 725 (total free = 8 238) and *Easy DIY* to 13 333 (same figure as Q3 2014) from 23 379. *Food & Home Entertaining* has grown to 30 722 from 30 332 (total free = 5 528) but *House & Leisure* has fallen to 34 872 from 40 320 (total free = 8 887). *Sarie Kos* has fallen to 48 505 from 52 503.

Elle Decoration has fallen to 24 323 from 25 552 (total free = 5 560). *SA Home Owner* has grown to 41 418 from 39 633 (total free = 10 007) and *SA Garden and Home* to 56 368 from 55 006 (total free = 4 733). *Tuis Home* has climbed to 91 845 from 80 970 and *Visi* to 15 038 from 13 349. *Taste* is listed as a custom magazine – circulation has fallen to 28 858 from 29 648 (single copy sales: 24 123). *Fresh Living* has declined to 61 269 from 71 187 (single copy sales: 48 960).

Blaque Magazine has grown to 15 563 from 14 638 while *Braintainment* has grown to 14 475, compared to 13 404 in the previous corresponding reporting period. *Destiny Man* is down to 17 582 from 20 922 (total free = 7 978). *GQ* has grown to 26 979 from 25 694 in spite of an increase in frequency (it now publishes 11 copies a year instead of 10). *Hype* has grown to 14 394 from 11 578. *Men's Health* has fallen to 42 522 from 50 507 and *Popular Mechanics* to 35 067 from 43 283. *Stuff* has fallen to 16 247 from 18 352 (total paid: 12 686).

Amakhosi has fallen to 25 195 from 29 079 but *Sowetan Magazine* grew to 21 433 from 16 689 (total free = 4 025). *Kick Off* has declined to 33 030 from 40 804 and *Runners World* to 14 498 from 17 139. *Golf Digest* has fallen to 7 667, down from 11 331 and *Compleat Golfer* is at 9 050, down from 9 783. *Magnum* has grown slightly to 15 432 from 15 277 but *Game & Hunt/Wild & Jag* has fallen to 12 962 from

13 720. *SA Hunter* has jumped to 44 551 from 40 985. *Modern Athlete* has jumped to 30 109 from 22 473 (total free = 29 528). *Wildland Magazine* has grown to 7 237 from 5 814.

CAR has fallen to 70 977 from 75 904 and *Leisure Wheels* to 16 177 from 19 627. *TopGear* has continued its dramatic decline to 18 356 from 26 205. *Drive Out/WegRy* has grown slightly to 30 699 from 30 269. *Topcar* has bucked the trend and grown to 17 030 from 15 495. *Auto Trader* is down to 8 353 from 12 343 and *Bike SA* to 18 466 from 24 257. *SA 4x4* has fallen to 18 840 from 21 604. *Speed and Sound* is down to 33 075 from 37 085. *Cars in Action* made no submission. *Getaway* has fallen to 34 688 from 41 791 and *Weg/Go* to 62 916 from 70 448. *SA Country Life* has grown to 39 119 from 33 776 (total free = 4 743). *Weg/Go Platteland* offered the exact same circulation number as in Q2 and Q3 2014 circulation: 35 219.

Cosmopolitan has declined to 60 272 from 74 242 (total free = 9 456), *Destiny Magazine* to 28 710 from 31 224 and *Glamour* to 59 507 from 69 737 (total free = 11 724). *Elle* has fallen to 38 106 from 45 942 (total free = 10 028) and *Fair Lady* to 47 079 from 55 343. *Finesse* has grown to 57 434 from 56 146.

Good Housekeeping/Goeie Huishouding is down to 52 336 from 55 357 (total free = 13 645) and *Ideas/Idees* to 69 280 from 75 970. *Leef* has increased to 36 895 from 34 883. *Move!* has fallen to 126 367 from 131 227. *True Love* is up — to 63 224 from 56 604. *Vroue Keur* is down to 67 513 from 72 998 but *Woman and Home* has grown to 91 235 from 89 195 (total free = 6 634).

Essentials is down to 31 603 from 33 230 and *Fitness Magazine* to 21 120 from 22 972. *Grazia* is up to 23 092 from 21 518 (total free = 3 474). *Kuier* has climbed to 112 536 from 109 481. *Marie Claire* has fallen to 32 658 from 33 837 (total free = 9 190). *Rooi Rose* has fallen to 85 575 from 96 844 (and 102 301 in Q3 2014) and *Sarie* has fallen to 84 408 from 92 768. *Your Family* is down to 45 659 from 53 626 (total free = 6 103), *Women's Health* to 49 791 from 55 453. *Longevity* has grown slightly to 19 307 from 19 153 (total free = 6 753).

Online media

In August 2014, IAB South Africa and Effective Media launched the South African Internet Map, which provides an overview of the largest websites in South Africa. The map makes use of Effective Measure statistics. Effective Measure is the official traffic measurement partner of the IAB South Africa, and provides accurate traffic statistics for South Africa's top websites.

In March 2014, Effective Measure recorded

27 million unique browsers to South Africa's top websites, up from 16 million two years ago. There was also an increase of 68% in page impressions — up from 486 million in March 2012 to 815 million in March 2014. The big story in South Africa is mobile. Mobile websites saw an increase of 274% in site impressions over the last two years.

In April 2014, the IAB South Africa, Effective Measure statistics revealed the largest websites in the country. News24 is the largest site in the country, followed by MSN and IOL. According to the latest Effective Measure statistics, News24 attracted 7,1 million unique visitors in March 2014. MSN was second with 3,7 million visitors and IOL third with 2,8 million.

When it comes to only South African traffic, News24 was also the top website with five million unique monthly readers.

Media organisations and role players

Print Media South Africa (PMSA), established in 1996, administers individual bodies, namely the Newspaper Association of South Africa (the oldest communication organisation in South Africa, established in 1882), the Magazine Publishers' Association of South Africa and the Association of Independent Publishers (AIP).

The purpose of the PMSA is to represent, promote, interact with and intervene in all matters concerning the collective industry and of common interest. It represents more than 700 newspaper and magazine titles in South Africa.

The PMSA is a member of a number of international bodies, such as the World Association of Newspapers and the Federation of Periodical Press. Allied to the PMSA, but not a constituent member, is the ABC, responsible for auditing and verifying print-media circulation figures.

The AIP represents the interests of more than 250 independent publishers in southern Africa.

The South African National Editors' Forum (Sanef) was formed at a meeting of the Black Editors' Forum, the Conference of Editors and senior journalism educators and trainers, in October 1996.

Sanef membership includes editors and senior journalists from the print, broadcast and online/Internet media, as well as journalism educators from all the major training institutions in South Africa.

The Forum of Black Journalists addresses issues that directly affect its members.

Members of the public who have complaints or concerns about reports in newspapers and magazines can submit their grievances to the Office of the Press Ombudsman. Should they not be satisfied with the resultant ruling, they

can lodge an appeal with an independent appeal panel. The Office of the Press Ombudsman was set up by the PMSA, Sanef, the Media Workers' Association of South Africa and the South African Union of Journalists.

The Freedom of Expression Institute was established in 1994 to protect and foster the rights to freedom of expression and access to information, and to oppose censorship.

The Freedom of Commercial Speech Trust protects freedom of speech. It is backed by the marketing communication industry and supported by organised business and consumer organisations. The trust focuses on transparent negotiations with legislators.

The Forum of Community Journalists is an independent body that represents, promotes and serves the interests of all community-newspaper journalists in southern Africa. The decision to become an independent body followed the restructuring of the Community Press Association into the AIP.

The Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa is an independent self-regulatory body that serves as a voluntary watchdog, to adjudicate complaints from the public about programmes flighted by members who subscribe to its code of conduct. Members include the SABC, M-Net, Radio 702 and the Trinity Broadcasting Network. However, the commission does not deal with X-rated material, the broadcast of which is prohibited under criminal law.

The Broadcasting Monitoring Complaints Committee (BMCC) was established under sections 21 and 22 of the Independent Broadcasting Authority Act, 1993 (Act 153 of 1993).

It monitors broadcasting licensees for their compliance with, or adherence to, the terms, conditions and obligations of:

- their broadcasting licences
- the Code of Conduct for Broadcasting Services
- the Code of Advertising Practice.

The BMCC receives and adjudicates complaints from the public regarding licence conditions, and is also entitled to initiate its own investigations into suspected non-compliance by a broadcaster.

The mission of the National Association of Broadcasters is to protect the interests of broadcasting as a whole, and to liaise with ICASA on matters such as freedom of speech.

The mission of the DMMA is to provide a forum in which South African online publishers can address issues of common interest, and which can represent these publishers to advertising agencies and the advertising community, the press, government and the public.

The National Community Radio Forum (NCRF) lobbies for the airwaves in South Africa to be diversified, and for a dynamic broadcasting environment through the establishment of community radio stations.

The NCRF is a national, member-driven association of community-owned and run radio stations and support-service organisations, courtesy of Adams & Adams.

Other important annual media awards are the Eagles, the Pendering and the AdReview Awards.

Radio-station members are independent, non-profit community-based organisations.

The Professional Journalists' Association's mission is to give a voice to working journalists and represent their interests in newsrooms across the country.

Other press organisations operating in the country are the:

- Foreign Correspondents' Association of South Africa
- Printing Industries Federation of South Africa, the South African Typographical Union
- Specialist Press Association
- South African Guild of Motoring Journalists
- Professional Photographers of South Africa
- Media Institute of Southern Africa
- Publishers' Association of South Africa
- press clubs in major centres.

News agencies

The main foreign news agencies operating in South Africa are:

- Reuters
- Agence France-Presse
- Associated Press
- Deutsche Presse Agentur
- United Press International.

Journalism awards

South Africa's most important awards include the:

- Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards
- Sappi Magazine Publishers' Association of South Africa Pica Awards
- Sanlam Community Press Awards
- Vodacom Awards for Journalism Across All Mediums
- South African Breweries Journalism Awards
- Sanlam's Financial Journalist of the Year Award
- CNN MultiChoice Africa Awards
- Discovery Health Journalism Awards
- Sanef's Nat Nakasa Award for media integrity.

Media awards

The MDDA and Sanlam announced the winners of the MDDA-Sanlam Local Media

Awards, which were presented on 23 May, at a gala event held at Birchwood Hotel and OR Tambo Conference Centre in Boksburg near Johannesburg. Top honours went to Zita Goldswain of Witbank News as Journalist of the Year; NFM won the Community Radio Station of the Year, while Bush Radio took the prestigious Rantho-Letsebe Community Media Award. Herman Steyn of Die Pos/The Post was again named Press Photographer of the Year and Laila Majijet of the People's Post was awarded the Alet Roux Medal for the best newcomer in print journalism.

Advertising

South Africa has a vibrant and dynamic advertising industry. Local advertising agencies are often recognised internationally for their excellence.

Advertising Standards Authority (ASA)

The ASA is the protector of the ethical standards of advertising in South Africa, and protects consumers against manipulative advertising and unfair claims.

It is an independent body established and funded by the marketing-communication industry to manage advertising in the public interest by means of self-regulation.

The ASA cooperates with government, statutory bodies, consumer organisations and industry to ensure that advertising content complies with the Code of Advertising Practice.

The code is the ASA's guiding document based on the International Code of Advertising Practice, prepared by the International Chamber of Commerce.

Drawn up by the ASA with the participation of representatives of the marketing-communication industry, the code is amended from time to time to meet the changing needs of the industry and of South African society.

Advertising awards

The 36th Annual Loerie Awards took place on 20 and 21 September 2014 at the Cape Town International Convention Centre. A total of 256 awards were handed out during the ceremonies, as well as four Grands Prix awarded to:

- Grid Worldwide Branding (Pty) Ltd for Anti Est "Anti Est #Unlearn", in Design Mixed-Media Campaign.
- One Kingdom Creative Studio for Mi-Fone "Oju Africa App", in Digital & Interactive - Mobile Applications & Sites
- FCB South Africa (PTY) LTD for Coca-Cola South Africa "A rainbow for the Rainbow Nation", in Outdoor Media.

- Ogilvy & Mather Johannesburg for Lucozade "Give me strength."

Special Awards included Keith Rose, director and founding partner of Velocity, who was inducted into the Loeries Hall of Fame for his outstanding contribution to the industry. The Adams & Adams Young Creatives Award went to Matthew Pullen and Freda Raubenheimer. They each received a Gold Loerie and a trip to the Cannes Lions International Festival of Creativity.

Public relations

Public Relations Institute of Southern Africa (Prisa)

Established in 1957, Prisa represents professionals in public relations and communication management throughout the southern African region and has registered practitioners in Botswana, Namibia, Lesotho, Swaziland and South Africa.

It is a founding member of the Global Alliance for Public Relations & Communication Management and initiated the formation of the Council for Communication Management (CCM) in South Africa. The Council is the coordinating body representing various groupings of professionals in South Africa.

Prisa plays a leading role in uniting professionals and driving transformation. As the recognised leader of the public relations and communication management profession in southern Africa and beyond, Prisa provides the southern African industry with the local professional advantage.

International relations

The international branch of the DoC continues to be the primary vehicle through which the department pursues government's priority of contributing to a better South Africa and contributing to a better and safer Africa in a better world.

South Africa chairs the Future Strategy Committee of the Universal Postal Union.

The department was re-elected to the Postal Operations Council that deals with the operational, economic and commercial aspects of the postal business.

South Africa has contributed significantly to the UPU's work in developing National Address Systems. The country's use of Global Positioning Systems to allocate addresses to people in rural and undeveloped areas has proved critical.





Economy

The World Bank expected South Africa to grow by a relatively modest 2,7% in 2014 – up from its forecast of 1,9% in 2013 – as the world economy strengthens on the back of a turnaround in high-income countries five years after the global financial crisis struck, as well as a steady rise in growth in developing countries.

The National Development Plan (NDP), South Africa's strategy for reducing unemployment, inequality and poverty by 2030, provides a strong platform for collaboration among business, government, labour and civil society.

The plan promotes enhanced competitiveness, expanded infrastructure, greater spatial efficiency in growing cities, and accelerated rural development. It prioritises measures to build a capable, effective state that delivers services to citizens while encouraging business investment and growth.

To boost growth several measures and investments were undertaken in 2014. These include:

- allocating R10,3 billion towards manufacturing development incentives in addition to tax relief offered through incentive programmes
- injecting R15,2 billion from the Economic Competitiveness and Support Programme to assist businesses upgrade their machinery and increase productivity over the next three years
- channelling R3,6 billion to special economic zones (SEZs) to promote value-added exports and create jobs in economically disadvantaged parts of the country
- allocating R620 million to the digital broadcast migration programme
- creating one million jobs in agriculture by 2030, government will spend R7 billion on conditional grants to 435 000 subsistence farmers and 54 500 smallholder farmers.

To counter unemployment levels, especially amongst young people, government aims to create six million work opportunities over the next five years.

Economic indicators

Domestic output

According to the South African Reserve Bank's (SARB) Quarterly Bulletin, released in September 2014, following a contraction in real domestic economic activity at an annualised rate of 0,6% in the first quarter of 2014, real economic growth turned positive in the second quarter, with output expanding at a rate of 0,6%.

The real value added by the goods-producing sectors of the economy declined further in the second quarter of 2014, whereas the real value

added by the services sector expanded at a pace broadly similar to that registered in the first quarter.

The decline in the real value added by the primary sector moderated substantially from an annualised 17,2% in the first quarter of 2014 to 5,1% in the second quarter. The real value added by the agricultural sector gained further momentum while the real output of the mining sector declined at a much slower pace in the second quarter.

Growth in the real value added by the agricultural sector accelerated from an annualised rate of 2,5% in the first quarter of 2014 to 4,9% in the second quarter. The expansion largely reflected firm growth in field crop production, particularly maize, following favourable weather conditions in the first quarter of 2014. Livestock production also improved over the period.

Mining production contracted further in the second quarter of 2014 although at a much slower pace than in the preceding quarter. Owing largely to the five-month labour strike in the platinum-mining sector, the real output of the mining sector shrank at an annualised rate of 9,4% in the second quarter of 2014 following a marked contraction of 24,7% in the first quarter. Apart from a pronounced decline in the real output of platinum group metals, the production of gold also receded in the second quarter of 2014. Gold-mining production was adversely affected by an increase in safety-related production stoppages, but these production losses were partly neutralised by a recovery in the production of iron ore following operational difficulties experienced at a prominent iron-ore mine in 2013 and early 2014. Overall, mining production subtracted 0,4 of a percentage point from total economic growth in the second quarter of 2014 after subtracting 1,3 percentage points in the first quarter of the year.

Industrial action in the platinum-mining sector, which lasted from 23 January 2014 to 24 June 2014, turned out to be the longest and most costly in the history of South Africa. Industry sources have estimated the loss in platinum production at 424 000 ounces; a further 16 000 ounces were lost during the start-up of operations due to medical and safety measures and procedures that the affected platinum mines had to adhere to.

Following a quarter-to-quarter annualised decline of 4,4% in the first quarter of 2014, real manufacturing output shrank at a rate of 2,1% in the second quarter, thereby subtracting 0,3 of a percentage point from the overall rate of growth over the period. With business confidence weak and demand sluggish in the second

quarter, real output declined in the subsectors producing petroleum and chemical products; glass and non-metallic mineral products; textiles and clothing; electrical machinery; and motor vehicles and parts. These decreases were partially countered by higher production of wood and wood products; basic iron and steel, non-ferrous metal products and machinery; and radio, television and communication apparatus and professional equipment.

Real economic activity in the construction sector sustained its relatively firm performance in the second quarter of 2014. The real value added by the construction sector advanced at an annualised rate of 5% in the second quarter of 2014 following an increase of 4,9% in the preceding quarter. Capital expenditure by public corporations was well supported by increased civil construction activity in the run-up to the national and provincial elections in the second quarter of 2014.

Growth in the real value added by the transport, storage and communication sector accelerated notably from 1,7% in the first quarter of 2014 to 4% in the second quarter. The higher growth was mainly evident in the land transport subsector following increases in freight and passenger transportation over the period. Freight transportation advanced from a relatively low base in the first quarter of 2014 following a decrease in mining production and subsequent transportation of these products. Growth in the telecommunications subsector continued to benefit from a steady increase in the number of subscribers and the higher demand for data, aided by price competition between service providers.

Growth in the real value added by the finance, insurance, real-estate and business services sector slowed to an annualised rate of 1,5% in the second quarter of 2014 following an increase of 2% in the first quarter. The somewhat slower growth could be explained by reduced activity in the domestic securities market as trading activity on the JSE Limited (JSE) lost some momentum. The real output of the banking sector, however, increased in the second quarter of 2014.

The real value added by general government increased at annualised rates of 1,7% and 2,9% in the first and second quarters of 2014 respectively. The increase in real value added in the second

According to data from the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) and International Comparison Programme (ICP), measuring global Gross Domestic Product (GDP) expressed in Purchasing Power Parities (PPPs) Emerging markets account for over 30% of the world's GDP, with South Africa contributing 0,7% of that number. The GDP in South Africa was worth US\$384,31 billion in 2012, according to data compiled by the World Bank..

quarters could largely be attributed to additional workers that were temporarily employed to assist with the national and provincial elections in May 2014.

Real gross domestic expenditure

Growth in real gross domestic expenditure slowed from an annualised rate of 2,7% in the first quarter of 2014 to 1,8% in the second quarter.

Real final consumption expenditure by households slowed for the fourth consecutive quarter in the second quarter of 2014. Real spending by households increased at an annualised rate of 1,5% in the second quarter of 2014, having advanced at a rate of 1,8% in the first quarter.

According to the First National Bank/Bureau for Economic Research (FNB/BER) Consumer Confidence Index, an increasing number of consumers continued to postpone the purchases of durable goods in anticipation of further increases in interest rates as well as escalating consumer price inflation.

Following an increase of 1,7% in the first quarter of 2014, growth in the real disposable income of households moderated to 1,3% in the second quarter. As growth in nominal disposable income outpaced growth in household debt, the ratio of household debt to disposable income edged lower from 74,4% in the first quarter of 2014 to 73,5% in the second quarter. The cost of servicing household debt remained fairly low at 7,9% of household disposable income in both the first and the second quarters of 2014.

Employment

Notwithstanding the marginal contraction in real output in the South African economy in the first quarter of 2014 and a severely strained labour relations environment, formal non-agricultural employment increased somewhat in 2014 entirely due to employment gains in the public sector. According to the Quarterly Employment Statistics (QES) survey published by Statistics South Africa (Stats SA), the number of people formally employed in the non-agricultural sector of the economy increased by 1,8% in the first quarter of 2014, representing 38 500 additional job opportunities.

This brought the level of formal non-agricultural employment to almost 8,52 million in the first quarter of 2014.

According to the Quarterly Labour Force Survey (QLFS) conducted by Stats SA, the number of people employed in South Africa increased by 39 000 from the first quarter of 2014 to the second quarter, raising the total

level of employment to 15,09 million people. Total employment increased by 403 000 by the second quarter of 2014. The majority of employment opportunities was created in the formal non-agricultural sector of the economy and by private households, recording increases of 381 000 and 75 000 respectively by the second quarter of 2014. Only 19 000 additional people were employed in the informal sector, while the agriculture, hunting, forestry and fishing sector shed a further 73 000 employment opportunities over the same period. Employment in this sector had decreased for five consecutive quarters up to the second quarter of 2014, with a cumulative 94 000 jobs lost, representing a reduction in employment of 12,3% over the period.

Price inflation

Despite fairly subdued increases in international commodity prices, producer price inflation for mining products quickened from -0,2% in October 2013 to 6,6% in April 2014, affected mainly by the depreciation in the exchange value of the rand. Producer price inflation for mining commodities slowed thereafter to 5,8% in June.

Likewise, producer price inflation for agriculture, forestry and fishing products accelerated to 11,7% in March 2014 before moderating to 3,9% in July. Over the same period, producer price inflation for electricity and water also moderated from 14,6% to 7,8% due to a slower pace of increase in both electricity and water prices.

Owing in part to the steady depreciation in the exchange value of the rand up to the end of January 2014, the 12-month rate of increase in the unit value index for imported commodities accelerated to 21,0% in January 2014 and roughly maintained the pace of increase in the ensuing five months. Price increases for imported commodities with the main contributors to the annual increase of 21,5% in June 2014

In August 2014, Statistics South Africa released the findings of the Survey of Employers and the Self-Employed 2013, which revealed that the number of people running informal businesses has increased from 1,1 million in 2009 to 1,5 million in 2013. The survey found that people who started informal business did so because they had no other alternative. Most businesses operated in the trade industry, while the proportion of the working age population running informal businesses was at 6,3% in Limpopo; 6,1% in Mpumalanga; 5% in Gauteng and 4,7% in KwaZulu-Natal. The majority who started businesses used their own money to do so. Those who did not use their own money mostly borrowed from friends and relatives. The informal sector contribution to gross domestic product has stayed at about 5% throughout from 2001 up to 2013. Non-VAT registered businesses in South Africa play an important role in job creation and income generation.

being textile products, coke oven and other refined petroleum products, pharmaceutical and other chemical products, machinery for mining, quarrying and construction as well as radio, television and communication equipment and apparatus.

Exchange rates

Investor sentiment towards emerging-market economies and in particular South Africa has improved somewhat towards the end of the first quarter of 2014 as some previously pressing issues changed nature and lowered the perceived risks associated with emerging-market assets.

A large part of the second quarter of 2014 was marked by a strengthening in the currencies of many emerging-market economies amid apparent more stable global financial markets and indications that the Chinese authorities are committed to boosting economic activity in China.

The ongoing efforts to boost the economic recovery in the euro area in the second quarter of 2014 furthermore buoyed the currencies of many emerging-market economies over the period.

The nominal effective exchange rate of the rand declined, on balance, by 0,4% in the second quarter of 2014, compared with a decline of 0,8% in the first quarter of 2014. Within the second quarter, the nominal effective exchange rate of the rand increased by 0,4% and 1,4% in April and May 2014 respectively before declining by 2,1% in June 2014 amid the downgrade of the country's sovereign rating to BBB- by Standard & Poor's. At the same time, Fitch revised the outlook for the country from stable to negative, based on the disappointing high and sustained unemployment rate, ongoing industrial action and the announcement that the country's gross domestic product (GDP) had contracted in the first quarter of 2014.

In July and August 2014, however, the rand regained some vigour against major currencies supported by a rise in the policy rate, the announcement of the end of the strike in the manufacturing sector and the weaker-than-expected economic data from the United States of America (USA).

Economic Development Department (EDD)

Government will be prioritising six components as part of its radical economic transformation agenda for the next five years including infrastructure, industrialisation, investment and innovation, inclusion and integration.

Over the previous five years, government had

lifted investment in public infrastructure from R610 billion to R1,1 trillion and that State and private investment in public infrastructure would rise to at least R1,5 trillion over the next five years.

The EDD will issue guidelines under the Infrastructure Development Act, (Act 23 of 2014) to ensure the build programme drives economic and social transformation, turning infrastructure sites into training spaces and opening the door to real participation by black- and women-owned enterprises and cooperatives.

Emphasis would also be given to using development finance from the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) to stimulate industrial diversification, job creation, localisation and mineral and agricultural beneficiation.

The capacity of the competition authorities would also be strengthened to impose remedies on dominant players and monopolies, to benefit consumers and industries.

Government will take steps to secure more competitively-priced steel as an input in infrastructure and industrialisation. To support inclusion, efforts would be made, again with the support of development finance institutions, to support the creation of "hands-on" black industrialists, as well as facilitate youth employment and entrepreneurship.

Regional integration was viewed by government as the best way to widen markets. Manufactured exports to the rest of Africa rose by about R21 billion during 2014. They now generate about 167 000 jobs in South Africa.

To further support this thrust, government would finalise the African Free Trade Agreement (PTA) over the next five years to create an integrated market of 26 countries with 600 million consumers.

Legislation and policies

- The Infrastructure Development Act, 2014 (Act 23 of 2014) was signed in June 2014.
- EDD completed a Socio-economic Impact Assessment of the earlier draft of the Infrastructure Development Bill in May 2013. The Bill was amended through internal government consultation processes and then refined through the Parliamentary process in January to March 2014.
- The National Council of Provinces approved the final mandate for the Infrastructure Development Bill in March 2014. EDD completed a Socio-economic Impact Assessment of the earlier draft of the Infrastructure Development Bill in May 2013. Subsequently, the Bill was amended through internal government consultation processes and then refined

through the Parliamentary process in January to March 2014.

- The EDD published the draft policy on the exportation of ferrous and non-ferrous waste and scrap metal in January 2013.

Budget and funding

The EDD's budget is a window across programmes in many different departments. The budget allocation for the 2014/15 financial year amounted to R696,9 million, of which:

- R243 million is for the IDC's subsidiary Small Enterprise Finance agency (Sefa)
- R206 million is for the competition authorities
- R85 million is for trade administration
- R163 million is for the department's operations and capital spending.

Programmes and projects

Competition Commission

In October 2014, the Competition Commission reopened its supermarkets investigation.

The commission, which is an entity of the EDD says it has received a fresh complaint from the South African Property Owners' Association (SAPOA).

SAPOA has requested the commission to relook at the issue of exclusive clauses in long-term lease agreements between owners of large retail shopping centres and retail anchor tenants across the country.

The property owners' association alleges that these give rise to considerable competition concerns and could amount to substantial prevention or lessening of competition in violation of the Competition Act 2009, (Act 1 of 2009).

The commission was already addressing the residual competition concerns arising from the conduct of the respondents through advocacy engagements with key industry stakeholders, including landlords and supermarkets.

The commission is advocating against the parties entering into long term exclusive agreements as by default for each new development and encourage their use only where justified by the investment made by the supermarket in a particular centre.

New Growth Path (NGP)

The IDC set up a localisation unit and increased its five-year plan for available industrial funding to R102 billion.

A sophisticated industrial strategy, as outlined in the Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP), requires the injection of foreign and local capital, know-how and innovation.

A few examples of success:

- Asia's largest commodities trading company, Noble Resources, is the main investor in one of two advanced soya-crushing plants under construction. In the past 12 months, the company invested about R2,2 billion in the local economy.

The NGP calls for greater economic inclusion, through small business development and youth employment.

Over the next five years, Sefa plans to provide R2,3 billion for women-owned enterprises so that women are more actively represented in the economy and may give it the benefit of their energy and enterprise.

The department financed a training programme for 100 young people, in partnership with the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants (Saica).

Green economy

The South African Green Economy Modelling Study, published in August 2013, showed that investing in a low-carbon, resource-efficient green economy was fundamental for South Africa's sustained economic growth and well-being.

The study assessed the impact of green investments in four of the country's key economic sectors: agriculture, energy, transport and natural resource management.

The report found that a green economy approach – such as investing in low-carbon technologies, green buildings, and renewable energy – could create more jobs while supporting the same level of economic growth, yet with lower emissions of greenhouse gases and less environmental damage.

In January 2014, the South African project "myHandsandHeart," an online and mobile platform for matching organisations and youth volunteers, was named as one of six winners of a global competition for local initiatives that are having a positive impact on their communities. The competition, dubbed the Shaping a Better Future challenge, was open to members of the World Economic Forum's Global Shapers Community, a worldwide network of more than 3 000 young, socially engaged leaders in over 300 city-based hubs worldwide.

Using the latest and most readily accessible online and mobile tools, myHandsandHeart matches organisations and youth volunteers to give young people the experience of civic engagement and to improve their employability.

The project is a partnership between the Global Shapers Cape Town Hub, South Africa's National Youth Development Agency, the Commonwealth Youth Programme and SponsorMe.

Through the opportunities provided, young people are equipped with important skills. They are also able to positively impact local communities and actively engage with key issues in their communities, becoming informed and involved citizens.

However, based on a green economy, and target-specific scenario, it also confirmed that additional investment might be needed to meet the country's growth target of a 4% to 7% rise in GDP per year, between 2013 and 2020, as stipulated in the NDP.

South Africa is committed to pursuing and exploring opportunities in its transition to an inclusive, low-carbon, resource-efficient green economy.

The report's findings will guide the country's future policies and investments as it works towards achieving its sustainable development and poverty eradication goals.

Some key findings in the report included:

- Investment in a green economy could contribute to 46% more restored land by 2030, and greater water availability, without reducing land required for the agriculture sector. In addition, it could create jobs for 737 000 people, compared to 568 000 under a business-as-usual scenario.
- In the agriculture sector, investment in ecological practices could increase crop yields by as much as 23,9% by 2030, while avoiding further CO₂ emissions. However, the report says additional land for agriculture would still be required to meet the needs of a population that is projected to grow.
- Green investment in the transport sector was insufficient to meet the country's 2005 energy efficiency goal of 9% by 2015. However, in a green economy scenario, improvements in efficiency could reach 5,5% by 2030, partially offsetting the projected growth of the population and GDP.
- Applying the green economy model in the energy sector could result in a reduced energy demand, while increasing the country's electricity diversification mix, but it still falls short of the NDP's goal to have 33% of the country's electricity demand by 2030.
- In August 2014, the fifth International Union of Pure and Applied Chemistry (IUPAC) conference on green chemistry was held in Durban. Green chemistry, also called sustainable chemistry, is a philosophy of chemical research and engineering that encourages the design of products and processes that minimise the use and generation of hazardous substances. The main objective of the conference was to emphasise the importance of green chemistry for sustainable development, and to promote research and collaborations, by bringing together experts and interested parties from all over the world and from diverse bodies – from the academia to the industry and to governments.
- Delegates at the conference paid special

attention to the roles of green chemistry in fast-growing economies and to the promotion of green chemistry in Africa.

- Government aims to use all opportunities in the green economy to create jobs and cut carbon emissions. High-tech innovations will help employment grow over the long term, as new technology spreads throughout the economy and transforms other, larger sectors. South Africa's chemical industry is of substantial economic significance, contributing around 5% to the GDP and approximately 25% of manufacturing sales.

Department of Trade and Industry (the dti)

The department continues to contribute towards the Government's priorities and outcomes through the implementation of the IPAP 2.

Its successful implementation in various sectors in South Africa over the past few years has started to bear fruit, with a number of key foreign investors in various sectors starting to choose South Africa as their preferred investment destination.

Central to South Africa's industrial policy is the localisation programme leveraging the huge purchasing power the Government has in the form of public procurement.

Large public procurements are used to promote industrial development, through the designation of products/sectors.

In September 2014, the new First Automobile Works (FAW) South Africa vehicle assembly plant opened in Port Elizabeth, in the Eastern Cape. The FAW was expected to boost the country's efforts to achieve a growth target of 5% by 2019.

Located in Zone 2 of the Coega industrial development zone (IDZ), the production plant is funded jointly by China FAW Group Corporation and the China-Africa Development Fund. It is one of the largest investments made by a Chinese company in the country.

FAW SA has been in the South African market for 20 years, providing passenger and commercial vehicles.

Government remained committed to developing and growing the automotive sector in the country.

Over the last 20 years, government employed the Motor Industry Development Programme, and more recently the Automotive Production Development Programme, as the focal industrial policy instruments to transform our automotive industry.

The aim was to migrate the industry from a small assembly base to a globally competitive one, producing vehicles for both domestic and international markets.

The country's Vision 2020 strategy for the industry refers to the doubling of local vehicle production and broadening and deepening of component manufacture by the year 2020.

The Investment Support Programme will assist government to position South Africa as a destination of choice for the assembly of medium and heavy commercial vehicles.

Products/sectors that have already been designated for local procurement include: set-top boxes; the bus sector; steel power pylons; the canned vegetables sector; textiles, clothing, leather and footwear; rail rolling stock.

Due to thinner export markets and other adverse conditions arising from the economic slowdown, the Manufacturing Competitiveness Enhancement Programme (MCEP) may take the form of:

- production support mechanisms
- loans
- equity injection
- working capital support
- restructuring assistance
- support for the acquisition of fixed assets
- investment initiatives to enable firms to accomplish improved sales, job preservation and expansion
- provide income support to employees and lay-offs support.

In November 2014, the dti was finalising the regulations of SEZs.

SEZs are key to the implementation of the IPAP.

In this regard the Dube Trade Port has been designated as an Industrial Development Zone (IDZ). This IDZ will focus on high-value, niche agricultural and horticultural products, as well as manufacturing and value-addition primarily for automotive, electronics and fashion garments sectors.

The department's specialised, regulatory and financial development agencies and institutions include the:

- Small Enterprise Development Agency (Seda)
- Companies and Intellectual Property Commission
- National Empowerment Fund (NEF)
- Estate Agency Affairs Board
- Export Credit Insurance Corporation
- South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)
- National Credit Regulator
- National Lotteries Board
- National Gambling Board
- South African National Accreditation System
- National Consumer Tribunal
- National Consumer Commission
- National Metrology Institute of South Africa
- National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications.

In October 2014, South Africa participated in the innovaBRICS conference, which was partly sponsored by the South African Government through BrandSA. Through the conference, South Africa publicised its NDP, which aims to end poverty and reduce inequality by 2030 and promote the country as a prime business destination.

South Africa wants to develop its research capacity to fuel innovation to drive economic growth. The country would also have a special focus on development programmes to support young, female and black researchers.

InnovaBRICS was a unique opportunity to promote closer cooperation between BRICS countries to support South Africa's growth, development and poverty reduction objectives.

BRICS countries account for 43% of the world's population and hold 40% of global currency reserves, estimated at around US\$4,4 trillion.

At the conference South Africa expressed its commitment to developing infrastructure that connects it to the rest of the continent, as part of the African Union's Presidential Infrastructure Championing Initiative.

Legislation, policies and strategies

The dti develops and reviews regulatory systems in the areas of competition, consumer protection, company and intellectual property, as well as public interest regulation.

It also oversees the work of national and provincial regulatory agencies mandated to assist the department in providing competitive and socially responsible business and consumer regulations, for easy access to redress and efficient markets.

The department's work is governed by a broad legislative framework. These include the:

- Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003)
- Consumer Protection Act, 2008 (Act 68 of 2008)
- Cooperatives Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 6 of 2013), which amended the Co-operatives Act, 2005 (Act 14 of 2005)
- Copyright Act, 1978 (Act 98 of 1978)
- Intellectual Property Laws Rationalisation Act, 1996 (Act 107 of 1996)
- Liquor Act, 2003 (Act 59 of 2003)
- Patents Act, 1978 (Act 57 of 1978)
- Small Business Development Act, 1981 (Act 112 of 1981)
- Trade Marks Act, 1993 (Act 194 of 1993).
- Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 (Act 5 of 2000) as amended
- The dti released the BBBEE Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 46 of 2013, which aims to strengthen the implementation of BBBEE and its reporting across the economy, as well as to put in place mechanisms to deal with non-compliance in October 2014.

The Act has several objectives, including aligning it with other legislation that deals with BBBEE and the Codes of Good

Practice. It also seeks to establish the BBBEE Commission to create an institutional environment for monitoring and evaluating BBBEE.

Some of the key material amendments in the Act refer to:

- aligning the Act and the codes, which comprises an interpretation clause extended to include a trumping provision that stipulates that the BBBEE Amendment Act will trump any law that was in force prior to the commencement date of the Act.
- establishing the BBBEE Commission as an entity within the administration of the dti, headed by a commissioner appointed by the Minister; the commission will be responsible for overseeing, supervising and promoting adherence to the act, as well as the monitoring and evaluation of BBBEE
- setting clear penalties, which include a minimum penalty of 10 years imprisonment (and/or a fine) or if the offender is not a natural person, a fine of 10% of its annual turnover.

Role players

National Small Business Advisory Council

The National Small Business Advisory Council advises on issues affecting owner-managed businesses.

The 15-member council comprises business owners, academics and international entrepreneurial experts.

There are three primary working groups in each of the following primary areas:

- access to finance
- demand and markets
- regulatory review.

International Trade Administration Commission of South Africa (Itac)

Itac was established through the International Trade Administration Act of 2002.

The commission is mandated to foster economic growth and development to raise incomes and promote investment and employment, in South Africa and within the Common Customs Union Area.

This is done by establishing an efficient and effective system for the administration of international trade, subject to this Act and the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) Agreement.

The core functions are customs tariff investigations, trade remedies, and import and export control.

Itac has processed numerous applications for increases, rebates and reduced duties, in line with IPAP priorities.

The SABS has developed an early warning system to identify technical barriers to trade for exporters. Outcomes are distributed to exporters monthly.

Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC)

The PICC has five geographically defined, strategic integrated projects (SIPs) to:

- develop and integrate rail, road and water infrastructure
- improve the movement of goods and economic integration through a Durban-Free State-Gauteng Logistics and Industrial Corridor
- develop a major new south-eastern node that will improve the industrial and agricultural development and export capacity of the Eastern Cape region and expand the province's economic and logistics linkages with the Northern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal
- expand the roll-out of water, roads, rail and electricity infrastructure in North West, where 10 priority roads will be upgraded
- expand the iron-ore rail line between Sishen in the Northern Cape and Saldanha Bay in the Western Cape, which will create large numbers of jobs in both provinces.

Small Enterprise Development Agency

Seda provides non-financial business-development and support services for small enterprises.

This is in partnership with other role players ensuring their growth, sustainability and enhancing their competitiveness and capabilities through coordinated services, programmes and projects.

Business Partners Limited

Business Partners Limited is a specialist risk-finance company that provides customised financial solutions, sectoral knowledge, mentorship, business premises and other added-value services for formal small and medium enterprises in South Africa and selected African countries. The company is passionate

The South African economy was set to benefit from the new Hyundai plant which opened in Benoni, Ekurhuleni in September 2014. Most of the trucks produced in the plant will be distributed in the South African market, but Hyundai Automotive SA is also investigating options to export to markets in the Sub-Saharan region of Africa.

Of the vehicles to be assembled at the Benoni plant, 20% will be exported to neighbouring Southern African countries such as Botswana and Namibia as part of the immediate plans.

The plant has already created about 3 200 job opportunities and hopes to increase the number as time goes.

The plant has already produced its first trucks which are ready to be distributed.

about funding, supporting and mentoring entrepreneurs.

Business Partners Limited is an unlisted public company whose major shareholders include Eikenlust (Pty) Ltd (Remgro Ltd), Small Enterprise Finance Agency Ltd, major South African banks and insurance companies. The company has 19 offices throughout South Africa.

National Empowerment Fund

The NEF was established by the NEF Act, 1998 (Act 105 of 1998), to promote and facilitate black economic equality and transformation.

It provides finance and financial solutions to black businesses across a range of sectors.

It also structures accessible retail savings products for previously disadvantaged people based on state-owned equity investments.

Its mandate and mission is to be government's funding agency in facilitating the implementation of BBBEE, in terms of the BEE codes of good practice.

South African Women Entrepreneurs' Network (Sawen)

Sawen is a women's networking forum, which focuses on the advancement of women-owned and managed businesses.

The network advocates policy changes, builds capacity and facilitates women's access to business resources and information.

To buttress government's intent of strategic intervention in women's economic empowerment, the dti has been using vehicles such as Sawen, the Isivande Women's Fund (IWF), Bavumile and Technology for Women in Business (TWIB).

The Ligugu Lami Awards acknowledge women entrepreneurs and encourages them to take pride in their achievements.

Isivande Women's Fund

The IWF accelerates women's economic empowerment by providing affordable, usable and responsive finance.

It renders financial support for deals requiring start-up funding, involving business expansion, rehabilitation, turnaround and franchising.

The IWF targets formally registered, 60% women-owned and/or managed enterprises that have been in existence and operating for two or more years, with a loan range of R30 000 to R2 million.

The Bavumile Programme provides training to women in the clothing sector, while TWIB with its awards programme, recognises women enterprises which use technology to grow and develop their businesses.

Industrial Development Corporation Small Business Finance Agency (Sefa)

In February 2014, the Sefa invested approved funding of over R1 billion.

The Godisa Fund, which is a R165-million partnership between Transnet, Sefa and Anglo American's Zimele, will provide funding to small black-owned businesses that are, or will become, suppliers to Transnet. Government is investing roughly R200 billion a year to expand infrastructure through new capacity in transport, water, energy, ICT and social infrastructure.

Sefa is a wholly-owned subsidiary of the IDC) and reports to the EDD which is mandated with the fostering of the establishment, survival and growth of small and medium enterprises.

Resources

Technology support

The dti implements skills development, economic infrastructure, and innovation and technology programmes to support priority sectoral and regional industrial development plans.

Some of the key programmes include the Technology and Human Resource for Industry Programme (Thrip), the Support Programme for Industrial Innovation (SPII) and the Centre for Entrepreneurship and Technology Programme.

Provision is also made for transfer payments and subsidies to:

- Seda's Technology Programme, which is managed by Seda, to finance and support early, seed and start-up technology-based ventures
- Thrip, which is managed by the National Research Foundation, to support research and technology development
- the SPII, which is managed by the IDC, to support a wide group of enterprises that promote technological development through financial assistance
- the Workplace Challenge Programme, which finances and supports world-class manufacturing and value-chain efficiency improvements in South African companies.

Black Economic Empowerment

BEE is not only a political and social necessity for redressing the wrongs of the past, but will also help broaden economic participation, which will contribute to economic growth.

Programmes and projects

Black Business Supplier Development Programme

The Black Business Supplier Development Programme is a cost-sharing grant offered to black-owned small enterprises to help them improve their competitiveness and sustainability,

to become part of the mainstream economy and create employment.

The programme provides grants to a maximum of R1 million: R800 000 for tools, machinery and equipment on a 50:50 cost-sharing basis; and R200 000 for business development and training interventions per eligible enterprise to improve their corporate governance, management, marketing, productivity and use of modern technology.

- The objectives of the incentive scheme are to:
- draw existing Small, medium and micro enterprises (SMMEs) exhibiting potential for growth into the mainstream economy
 - grow black-owned enterprises by fostering linkages between black SMMEs and corporate and public-sector enterprises
 - complement current affirmative procurement and outsourcing initiatives of corporate and public-sector enterprises
 - enhance the capacity of grant-recipient enterprises to successfully compete for corporate and public-sector tenders and outsourcing opportunities.

Industrial development

The dti had by October 2014 registered 18 qualifying black industrialists in a range of sectors to grow the South African economy.

The department would continue to accept applications from industrialists, as it has set a target of 100 black industrialists to up-scale.

This follows on the heels of the Black Industrialists Programme launched by the department in August 2014, through which government aims to create 100 black industrialists.

The qualifying black industrialists ranged from agriculture and agro-processing, manufacturing, beneficiation, and oil and gas sectors.

Government wants to create an enabling environment for industrialists to benefit from government's work, and to ensure that the dti mobilised local funding, so that they do not only depend on external funding.

An advisory panel, which was also announced in August, will look into some of the technicalities affecting the initiative.

The panel comprises members with diversified expertise from many sectors, including finance and legal.

The department would not stop at 100 black industrialists, but the number will be up-scaled with time as the department strives for job creation.

A summit was held regarding the programme in November 2014, where a strategic framework was presented.

Industrial Policy Action Plan II

The IPAP II has prioritised the designation of sectors to enhance manufacturing as one of the key driving levers of economic growth and job creation.

IPAP 2013/14 – 2015/16 is the fifth iteration. Public procurement forms part of the department's industrial levers in the IPAP.

Automotives

The automotive industry remained the largest and leading manufacturing sector in the domestic economy.

The new Medium and Heavy Commercial Vehicles-Automotive Investment Scheme (MHCV-AIS) guidelines to stimulate investment in the production of vehicles in the country were approved in November 2014. The MHCV-AIS is a sub-component of the Automotive Investment Scheme, an incentive designed to grow and develop the automotive sector in South Africa.

The MHCV-AIS provides a non-taxable cash grant of 20% of the value of qualifying investment in productive assets by medium and heavy commercial vehicles manufacturers and 25% of the value of qualifying investment in productive assets by component manufacturers and tooling companies for MHCVs as approved by the Department of Trade and Industry.

An additional non-taxable cash grant of 5% of the value of qualifying investment in productive assets may be available to projects that meet two of the following economic benefit criteria:

- tooling
- research and development in South African-related components of the project
- employment creation
- strengthening the automotive supply chain
- value-addition
- empowerment.

Government interaction with the industry contributed to the opening of the Toyota Ses'fikile Taxi Assembly Line.

Locally manufactured Toyota models are exported to 57 countries' and the Ses'fikile and

In 2014, a new small, medium-sized and microenterprises (SMME) incubator, was launched in Diepsloot, in Johannesburg, which was set to revitalise South Africa's township economies. The Gauteng Department of Economic Development was moving to build a new economy driven by SMMEs, township enterprises and community cooperatives over the next five years. The planned Diepsloot incubation hub would enable the sustainable development of SMME's as they were mentored, supported and incubated into large businesses, and be the model for several planned incubation centres and township hubs offering technical support, funding, offtake agreements and access to markets.

Hino ranges are exported to Botswana Lesotho Namibia and Swaziland.

Clothing and textiles

The Clothing Textile Competitive Programme and Production Incentive were implemented, benefiting 106 and 94 companies, respectively.

Business process services (BPS)

In October 2014, the revised BPS incentive was launched in London.

Over 9 000 jobs have been created. The BPS sector is a key sector for attracting investment and creating new jobs especially in the 18 to 35 age group, where job creation for young people is most needed.

The majority of foreign investment in the sector originates from the United Kingdom (UK) (75%), with voice services accounting for 80% of all Business Process Outsourcing work conducted in South Africa. The South African vertical split among sectors serviced is healthy and split over the following verticals: Telco and ICT (34%); retail (29%), and utilities (12%).

South Africa is increasingly being asked to provide more complex back office process services. Legal Process Outsourcing (LPO) and Shared Services sub-sectors are beginning to expand as South Africa proves its capability and capacity to provide such services.

The key difference with the updated BPS incentive is the splitting of the incentive into Tier 1 (non-complex) and Tier 2 (complex) work.

The purpose of this is to attract more complex work such as LPO by offering a higher incentive for utilising and employing a higher skilled work force.

Investors and South African companies running BPS operations had also requested the duration of the reviewed incentive should be looked at.

The previous incentive which ended 30 September 2014 was offered over three years to companies creating over 50 offshore jobs. Many of the industry's contracts ran for five years and therefore it would provide a level of comfort to investors if the incentive was to also run for five years, from October 2014 to March 2019.

South Africa's Value Proposition, which included a large skills pool of English language speakers, the depth of skills available, the cultural affinity with the UK and time zone compatibility, had continued to attract new investors and that existing investors were expanding.

The BPS incentive played a critical role in reducing the cost gap between South Africa and its competitors.

The South African Value Proposition is now even more compelling as it allows South African

companies bidding for UK contracts to offer a more cost competitive proposal when compared to other offshore destinations.

South Africa has the skills to be the best location for superior customer interaction and the scheme will enable them to compete from a value perspective by reducing operational expenditure by up to 12%.

Green industries

The revision of building standards that require higher levels of energy efficiency and mandatory installation of solar water heaters in new buildings was completed.

The SABS finalised enabling standards for solar water heaters; energy-efficient lighting; wind-energy turbines; appliances and products; electric batteries and alternative fuel vehicles; and co-generation of electricity and biofuels.

Significant progress in developing the renewable energy feed-in tariff rules was achieved.

The intra-departmental South African Re-newables Initiative will leverage international climate finance to supplement domestic funding sources for renewable energy production linked to domestic manufacturing.

Special Economic Zones

In October 2014, the Dube Trade Port in Durban officially became an IDZ, joining three other similar economic zones spread out across the country.

The Dube Trade Port IDZ was the latest in the nationwide rollout of SEZ aimed at growing the country's economy to meet the target of growth by 2019.

As the first IDZ for Durban, the Dube Trade Port IDZ joins a list of other similar projects, which have attracted a combined investment of over R5 billion in Port Elizabeth, East London and Richards Bay. More SEZs would be rolled out across the country as government intensifies its approach to industrialise South Africa's economy as demanded by the NDP.

Government has identified IDZs as the most effective way to grow the South African economy. The SEZs are also crucial in the job creating drive which remains high on government's agenda.

South Africa suffering with slow growth and government is going to reindustrialise this country. Government wanted to fast-track economic development and the SEZs are the way of fast racking development but also to decentralise development.

Investors want to relocate towards the big centres of the economy such as Johannesburg

because it's closer to the market. Through these IDZs we want to attract investors to the new areas such as the Dube Trade Port, Coega, Richards Bay and the East London IDZ.

The concept of SEZs has proven to have been useful tools to promote industrial development and diversification of the economy.

These industries largely support export markets and are located in ports and around airports.

Government was in the process of setting up a SEZs Board, which will advise the Minister on the implementation and proclamation of SEZs.

What makes the IDZs unique is that they offer a variety of incentives for investors, including a 15% corporate tax rate, employment tax as well as no import duty on imported equipment.

The main sectors that have been identified include electronics manufacturing and assembly, aerospace and aviation-linked manufacturing, agriculture and agro processing, medical and pharmaceutical production as well as clothing and textiles.

The Dube Trade Port is expected to create more than 150 000 jobs by 2016 the same year the development is envisaged to contribute R5,6 billion to the country's GDP.

Broadening participation

One of the key industrial policy goals is the promotion of a broader-based industrial path, where there is more participation by historically disadvantaged economic citizens and marginalised regions in the mainstream of the industrial economy.

To this end, the EDD promotes enterprise development, economic empowerment, the development of skills, the facilitation of economic infrastructure, and enhanced technology and innovation.

This is done by:

- improving productivity
- reducing the regulatory burden and cost of doing business
- improving access to finance for SMMEs and cooperatives
- improving innovation in the domestic economy
- promoting the development and sustainability of SMMEs and cooperatives
- encouraging entrepreneurship and self-employment.

Business-development support programmes will be strengthened and regulatory impact assessments will be addressed to create an environment that is conducive to enterprise growth.

The department works to increase and diversify economic opportunities for black people and for

black and women-owned enterprises, especially in priority industrial sectors.

Small, medium and micro-enterprises

Sefa lends between R500 and R5 million to SMMEs in three ways: directly to business owners; via retail finance intermediaries; and via banks through its credit guarantee scheme.

Among other things, the agency aims to:

- investigate the possibility of partnering with retail chain stores, as well as government feeding schemes, as a way to expand its reach into rural areas
- improve a pre-loan support programme, in partnership with the Seda
- partner with more provincial development finance agencies
- expand the pilot project it has with the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants (Saica) to train young graduates to assist small businesses, from Gauteng to KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga
- annually roll out a further nine branches or satellite offices co-located within Seda or IDC branch offices, to add to the 11 regional offices the agency already has.

The cost of Sefa lending finance to business owners was also expected to fall – from 44c for every rand disbursed in 2013/14 to 25c in 2017/18.

Sefa ran awareness road shows with financial intermediaries from April 2013 to February 2014.

The IDC committed over R987 million as a shareholder's loan to the agency until the end of the 2014/15 year, with the option of a further R400 million capital injection in two years' time.

Over the next five years, youth entrepreneurs will have R2,7 billion in funding made available to them by Sefa.

International cooperation: trade, investment and exports

In October 2014, 51 companies participated on the fourth leg of the South African Expos in China.

The expos focused on South Africa's top 10 value-added products and investment projects, and sought to promote engagements, enhance exports and to increase market penetration into China.

In January 2014, the dti launched a permanent showroom for South African lifestyle products, crafts, clothing and textiles in Atlanta in the United States of America (USA)

The showroom is a joint initiative of the dti and the Seda.

Located in one of the largest permanent wholesale trade centres in Atlanta, the

showroom will serve as a platform for marketing South African products, while addressing the significant market entry costs faced by smaller exporters.

In November 2014, a South African delegation of 15 South African exporters attended the 32nd Havana International Trade Fair in Cuba.

The objective of the trade fair is to get South African products and services into Cuba. It also aims to promote South Africa as a trade and investment destination.

Cuba is one of South Africa's most important political partners in Latin America and the Caribbean. The two countries have strong bilateral exchanges in the fields of socio-economic activity.

The participation by South African companies provided a platform for identifying trade and investment opportunities in the technology and innovation, metals and mining, electro-technical, chemicals, capital equipment capabilities, and engineering and allied services sectors.

Business process outsourcing and offshoring

Business process outsourcing and offshoring is a major global trend, with a significant positive impact on developing countries with the required skills, cost advantages and infrastructure. Under the Monyetla 2 Programme, 3 400 recruits were trained, of which 70% have been guaranteed employment by the business process outsourcing consortium.

Africa Growth and Opportunity Act (Agoa)

In September 2013, a high-level government and business delegation visited the USA to present South Africa's case for the extension of the Agoa beyond its 30 September 2015 expiry date, as well as the continued inclusion of Africa's largest economy as a beneficiary of the scheme.

South African Premier Business Awards

The winners of the second annual South African Premier Business Awards, which acknowledge excellence across all sectors of South African business, were announced at a gala ceremony at Johannesburg's Sandton Convention Centre on 19 March 2014.

The event is organised by the dti, in partnership with Brand South Africa and Proudly South African.

The awards cover a range of categories, including export, manufacturing, small business, rural development, technology, green economy, youth entrepreneurship, media, investment, and SME supplier development. There are also

awards for women-owned enterprises, Proudly South African enterprises, a Most Empowered Enterprise Award, and a special Play Your Part Award.

International cooperation

In February 2014, a 40-member business delegation went to India for the fifth annual Investment and Trade Initiative (ITI). The ITI forms part of the dti's export and investment promotion strategy to focus on India as a high growth export market, as well as a foreign direct investment source.

South Africa's trade with India has doubled over the last five years with gold, diamonds, base metals and chemical products making up the bulk of exports.

The objective of the ITI is to continue to create market access of South African value-added products and services in India, and to promote South Africa as a trade and investment destination.

India has been one of South Africa's top 10 trading partners for several years and is now South Africa's fifth largest export destination and sixth largest source of imports.

The ITI will promote South Africa's agro-processing, beneficiated metals and mining technology, automotive components and electro-technical sectors in India.

The dti also lead a delegation of companies on an Outward Investment Mission (OIM) to Pemba, Mozambique in February 2014.

The mission promoted South Africa as an attractive trade and investment destination in the servicing aspects of the oil and gas industry and also promoted the Saldanha Bay IDZ as an oil and gas servicing hub.

In November 2014, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation Minister Maite Nkoana-Mashabane, co-chaired the 12th Intergovernmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation (Itec) session, which is a structured mechanism aimed at improving trade and economic relations between South Africa and the Russian Federation, with Russian Minister of Natural Resources and Environment Sergey Donskoy, in Pretoria.

South Africa's Itec with Russia remains an effective instrument in contributing directly to improved two-way trade and investment between the two countries.

South Africa hosted the Itec Sub-Committees in the sectors of trade, investment and banking, energy, agriculture forestry and fisheries.

South African exports to Russia increased from R1,4 billion in 2009 to R3,8 billion in 2013, while total imports from Russia amounted to R3,6 billion in 2013.

Department of Public Enterprises

The Department of Public Enterprises provides effective shareholder management of State-owned enterprises (SOEs)/ state-owned companies (SOCs) that report to the department, and support and promote economic efficiency and competitiveness.

South Africa's infrastructure development programme will open up opportunities for the country's black industrial class to grow.

Focusing on the development of the Durban-Free State-Gauteng Logistics and Industrial Corridor also known as SIP2 the project, on which R205 billion would be invested over the next five years, would improve access to Durban's export and import facilities.

Industry in the Free State would also be integrated into the corridor, cargo nodes would be built in Harrismith, Cato Ridge, Tambo Springs and the Dube Trade Port, and existing cargo nodes like City Deep and Pyramid would be further upgraded.

At the same time, rail capacity between Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal would be expanded and rolling stock increased to meet forecast growth in demand from 67 million tonnes a year to 167 million tonnes by 2037.

The Government was committed to supporting black industrialists that were ready, able and willing to put in the hard work needed to create sustainable, job creating and skill developing inclusive wealth.

Budget and funding

The proposed budget for the 2014/2015 fiscal year was R259,8 million with the two outer Medium-Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) years being R279,3 million and R285,6 million respectively.

For the period between 2014/15 and 2018/19 financial years, the SOCs in the Department of Public Enterprises' stable will collectively enrol more than 30 000 new learners in various scarce and critical occupations.

Role players

State-owned enterprises

SOEs and public entities have a crucial role to play in advancing economic growth, since they are responsible for the development of key infrastructure and manufacturing capacity for South Africa.

The SOEs that fall under the jurisdiction of the Department of Public Enterprises are active in the following sectors:

- energy and mining: Alexkor and Eskom
- manufacturing: Denel, Safcol and Broadband Infraco

- transport: South African Airways (SAA), Trans-net and South African Express (SAX). In October 2014, government proposed a new framework for funding SOEs, which will include closer monitoring of such entities.

Government proposed a new framework for funding SOCs that will distinguish purely commercial activities from the costs of exercising their developmental mandate.

The new framework included closer monitoring of these companies to ensure efficient delivery on government priorities while simultaneously promoting improved commercial performance.

SOCs are a risk that government was watching closely.

Over the medium term, any funding of SOCs were contingent on the implementation of sound restructuring plans with strong government oversight.

According to the Medium Term Budget Policy Statement (MTBPS), given the fiscal constraints over the next two years, capitalisation would only be funded by the sale of non-strategic state assets and would not be drawn from tax revenue or added to the debt of national government.

Government policy remained that SOCs should operate on the strength of their balance sheet.

The MTBPS noted that reforms were undertaken at SAA, SA Express, the South African Post Office and the Land Bank. Steps to safeguard power parastatal Eskom had been taken to secure its financial stability. Eskom borrowed a total R250 billion over the next five years supported by existing guarantees from government. Government will provide at least R20 billion of funding, raised through the sale of non-strategic assets. This will be deficit neutral.

The capitalisation of Eskom would only occur once these funds were realised. If necessary, consideration would be given to a partial equity conversion of the R60-billion loan that had already been provided.

Financial assistance to municipalities for free basic services would continue, ensuring that the poorest households were protected against rising electricity tariffs.

Alexkor

Alexkor Limited's core business is the mining of diamonds on land, along rivers, on beaches and in the sea along the north-west coast of South Africa.

These activities are complemented by geology, exploration, ore-reserve planning, rehabilitation and environmental management.

The non-core business activities comprise residential services, community services,

outside engineering services, external transport services, guest houses, fuel stations and an airport.

The management of considerable investment funds, as well as traditional supporting services, such as information systems and human resources, constitute additional non-core business activities.

South African Forestry Company

Safcol is government's forestry company conducting timber harvesting, timber processing and related activities, both domestically and internationally.

It provides almost 2 200 permanent jobs and 2 000 contractual jobs in rural areas in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and KwaZulu-Natal.

As almost 61% of land under Safcol's operation is subject to land claims, the department plays a proactive role in facilitating the resolution of these claims through effective interdepartmental cooperation.

Broadband Infraco

Broadband Infraco is an SOC that operates within specific focus areas of the country's telecommunications sector.

It is intended to improve market efficiency in the long-distance connectivity segment by increasing available long-distance network infrastructure.

Broadband Infraco provides long-distance national and international connectivity to licensed private sector partners, licence-exempt projects of national importance and previously underserved areas.

Broadband Infraco also provides strategic international connectivity to operators in the South African Development Community (SADC) region and on the west coast of Africa.

The Broadband Infraco network has established 13 600 km of long-distance fibre, as well as five open-access points of presence in key metropolitan areas.

A further seven open-access points to roll out broadband access in remote rural areas and to facilities such as hospitals, clinics and schools have also been established.

Wholesale long-distance connectivity prices have come down by more than 75% over the past two years, partly as a consequence of the establishment of Broadband Infraco, thereby further unlocking economic value by reducing the cost of connectivity.

The Department of Science and Technology took up 70% of the capacity associated with Broadband Infraco's investment in the West Africa Cable System, in support of the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) project.

Denel

Denel is the largest manufacturer of defence equipment in South Africa and operates in the military aerospace and landward defence environment.

It is an important defence contractor and a key supplier to the South African National Defence Force (SANDF), both as a manufacturer of original equipment and service provider for the overhaul, maintenance, repair, refurbishment and upgrade of equipment in the SANDF's arsenal.

Denel supplies systems and consumables to end-users, as well as sub-systems and components to its industrial client base.

It also has a number of equity partnerships, joint ventures and cooperation agreements with international players in the defence industry.

Eskom

Over five years, Eskom is projected to spend over R200 billion for the supply of coal.

The aim is for the utility to procure more than 50% of its coal from emerging black coal miners by 2018.

South African Airways

SAA is South Africa's national airline and operates from OR Tambo International Airport in Johannesburg, Gauteng. Its principal activities include providing scheduled air services for the transportation of passengers, freight and mail to international, regional and domestic destinations. In fulfilling its mission to be an African airline with global reach, it operates to 25 destinations across the continent and provides a competitive, quality air transport service within South Africa and to major cities worldwide.

South African Express

SAX is a domestic and regional passenger and cargo carrier. It has a route network covering six African countries and acts as a strategic feeder, connecting secondary airports with each other, as well as with large hub airports.

Transnet

Over the MTEF Transnet expected to spend R107 billion on its capacity-expansion programme. It is projected that the jobs supported by Transnet in the economy will increase from 368 000 in 2011/12 to 570 000 in 2018/19.

Government Employees Pension Fund (GEPF)

The GEPF is Africa's largest pension fund, with 1,2 million active members, in excess of 300 000 pensioners and beneficiaries, and assets worth

more than R1 trillion. State workers and retirees, including departmental bureaucrats, teachers, nurses and members of the police force are among its members.

Department of Small Business Development

The Department of Small Business Development is working towards reversing the high failure rate of new small businesses. The department creates a conducive environment for the development and growth of small businesses and cooperatives through the provision of:

- enhanced financial and non-financial support services,
- competitiveness, market access,
- promotion of entrepreneurship, advancing localisation
- leveraging on public and private procurement.

According to research released by the department in October 2014, the failure rate for new businesses is almost 80% and only about half of those who survive remain in business for the next five years.

The department leads an integrated approach on the promotion and development of small businesses and cooperative, focusing on the economic and legislative drivers that would stimulate entrepreneurship to contribute to radical economic transformation.

Government and its partners will provide a market for these enterprises through public procurement.

In August 2014, the Department of Small Business Development launched its Enterprise Development Academy. The academy is based at the Gordon Institute of Business Science in Johannesburg. It focuses on scholarship-based education and support to micro and small business owners, helping them grow sustainably to create further employment in the long-term. The academy is part of the solution to address youth unemployment and build a nation of entrepreneurs.

Programmes and projects

The Department of Small Business Development developed a number of programmes that would assist small enterprises and cooperatives.

The programmes include:

- centres for entrepreneurship
- micro franchising
- incubation support
- looperatives supplier
- red tape reduction, which was aimed at addressing the regulatory burden and B'avumile skills
- enhancing the skills of women to produce quality and commercially viable cultural

products for participation in major local and international markets.

The standards and quality go hand-in-hand with the development and growth sustainable enterprises. Consumers would not buy goods that were not of good quality.

Local market, products and services need to comply with certain compulsory technical regulations either set by government or private specifications set by those who procure these products and services.

In June 2014, the Department of Small Business Development held a Youth Business Forum in Pretoria. The forum introduced the department's plans and projects to grow and develop young entrepreneurs. Growth in the SMME sector is the main driver of economic growth, poverty reduction and job creation.

Department of Public Works

The department's mandate is to be the custodian and manager of all government's fixed assets for which other departments or institutions are not responsible, according to legislation.

This includes the determination of accommodation requirements, rendering expert built-environment services to client departments, and the acquisition, maintenance and disposal of such assets.

Legislation and policies

The Department of Public Works is governed by:

- The State Land Disposal Act, 1961 (Act 48 of 1961)
- Occupational Health and Safety (OHS) Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993), compels the Department of Public Works to prepare health and safety specifications for any intended construction project and contractors making a bid, or appointed to perform construction work with the specifications.

Responsibility for OHS and workers' compensation in South Africa resides in three government departments:

- The Department of Labour is responsible for workers' compensation, in terms of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993), and for OHS, in terms of the OHS Act of 1993.
- The Department of Mineral Resources is responsible for OHS in mines and mining areas, in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996).
- The Department of Health is responsible for compensating mine workers, in terms of the Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1993 (Act 208 of 1993).

Role players

Construction Industry Development Board (CIDB)

The CIDB reports to the Minister of Public Works and comprises individuals appointed from the private and public sector. The CIDB:

- provides leadership to stakeholders
- stimulates sustainable growth
- reforms and encourages improvements in the construction sector
- improves its role in the economy.

Council for the Built Environment (CBE)

The CBE is an overarching body that coordinates the six built-environment professional councils – architecture, engineering, landscape architecture, project and construction management, property valuation and quantity surveying – to promote good conduct within the professions, transform them and advise government on built-environment related issues.

The CBE is also an appeal body to ensure protection of the public interest. As such, the CBE and the six councils for the professions maintain, and apply, standards for built-environment professionals' conduct and practice to effectively protect the interests of the public.

Programmes and projects

Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)

The EPWP is one of government's key programmes aimed at providing poverty and income relief through temporary work for the unemployed. The EPWP is a nationwide programme covering all spheres of government and SOEs.

The programme provides an important avenue for labour absorption and income transfers to poor households, in the short to medium-term.

It is also a deliberate attempt by the public sector bodies to use expenditure on goods and services to create work opportunities for the unemployed.

EPWP projects employ workers on a temporary or ongoing basis with government, contractors, or other non-governmental organisations under the Ministerial Conditions of Employment for the EPWP or learnership employment conditions.

The EPWP creates work opportunities in four sectors, namely infrastructure, non-State, environment and culture and social, through:

- increasing the labour intensity of government-funded infrastructure projects
- creating work opportunities through the Non-Profit Organisation programme (NPO) and Community Work Programme (CWP)
- creating work opportunities in public environment and culture programmes

- creating work opportunities in public social programmes.

The EPWP also provides training and enterprise development support, at a sub-programme level.

Green Buildings Framework

The deliberations of the Conference of Parties (COP17) in December 2011 added emphasis to the department's Green Buildings Framework and responsiveness to South Africa's newly unveiled *White Paper on Climate Change*.

Efforts to step up the greening of government buildings are underway as part of South Africa's strategies to mitigate the effects of global warming.

In these efforts, the department will realise the green jobs outlined in government's NGP through concerted collaboration with a range of stakeholders such as organised business, the public entities of the department and local communities, using the principles of the EPWP.

Department of Labour

The mandate of the Department of Labour is to regulate the labour market through policies and programmes developed in consultation with social partners, which are aimed at:

- improving economic efficiency and productivity
- creating decent employment
- promoting labour standards and fundamental rights at work
- providing adequate social safety nets to protect vulnerable workers
- sound labour relations
- eliminating inequality and discrimination in the workplace
- enhancing occupational health and safety awareness and compliance in the workplace
- giving value to social dialogue in the formulation of sound and responsive legislation and policies to attain labour market flexibility for competitiveness of enterprises that is balanced with the promotion of decent employment.

Legislation and policy

The department administers the following legislation:

- The Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995), applies to all workers and employers, and aims to advance economic development, social justice, labour peace and the democracy of the workplace.
- The Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998), applies to all employers and workers and protects workers and job seekers from unfair discrimination, and also provides a framework for implementing affirmative action.
- The Unemployment Insurance Act, 1996 (Act 30 of 1996), provides security to workers, when they become unemployed.

- The OHS Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993), provides and regulates health and safety at the workplace for all workers.
- National Economic Development and Labour Council (Nedlac) Act, 1994 (Act 35 of 1994).
- Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998 as amended), develops and improves the skills of the South African workforce.

Labour Policy and Industrial Relations

The Labour Policy and Industrial Relations Branch supervises policy research, labour market information and statistical services.

This includes regulation of labour and employer organisations and bargaining councils, dealing with all the department's responsibilities and obligations in relation to the International Labour Organisation and other international and regional bodies with which the South African Government has formal relations, as well as the effective functioning of the Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration (CCMA) and Nedlac.

The CCMA is an independent dispute-resolution body created in 1996, in terms of the Labour Relations Act, 1995.

It does not belong to, nor is it controlled by, any political party, trade union or business.

The CCMA was established to provide South Africans with an accessible, user-friendly and affordable labour dispute resolution system.

Workers who have allegedly been unfairly dismissed, or are the victims of various unfair labour practices, are able to approach the CCMA alone or with certain categories of recognised representatives to seek redress for workplace wrongs.

Role players

Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF)

The UIF is a public entity of the Department of Labour that contributes to alleviating poverty in South Africa by providing effective short-term unemployment insurance to all workers who qualify for unemployment and related benefits.

The Unemployment Insurance Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 32 of 2003) deals with the administration of the fund and the payment of benefits.

It also provides for the commissioner to maintain a database to pay benefits to beneficiaries.

The South African Revenue Service (Sars) continues to administer the Unemployment Insurance Contributions Act, 2002 (Act 4 of 2002).

Sars collects contributions from all employers whose workers pay employees' tax. The collection of contributions from all other

employers is delegated to the Unemployment Insurance Commissioner.

Compensation Fund (CF)

The department administers the CF, which compensates workers who are victims of occupational disability, occupational disease and fatal work incidents.

The services of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993) were extended and are rendered at provincial level.

Another element in the decentralisation process has been the move away from manual processing to the introduction of an electronic system.

The construction sector contributes 16% to South Africa's GDP, employing just under 1,8 million workers.

The CF allocated 5% of its total investment, amounting to R1,6 billion, to alleviate unemployment through socially responsible investments in the healthcare industry.

National Economic Development and Labour Council

Nedlac's mandate is to make economic decision-making more inclusive, thereby promoting the goals of economic growth and social equity.

Nedlac's purpose is to facilitate more inclusive economic decision-making, and to promote the goals of economic growth and social equity through discussions with organised business, organised labour and organised community groupings at national level.

The Department of Labour is the main government department from which Nedlac is funded, but the departments of trade and industry, finance and public works are also centrally involved in the council. Other departments attend when there are issues relating to their portfolios.

Organised business is represented by Business Unity South Africa, which brings together the Black Business Council and Business South Africa.

Organised labour is represented by the three main labour federations in South Africa: the Congress of South African Trade Unions, the Federation of Unions of South Africa and the National Council of Trade Unions.

Programmes and projects

The Department of Labour has an infrastructure network of 421 service points across the country.

These include 126 labour centres, 31 satellite offices, 19 mobile offices and 153 visiting points, as well as services provided at Thusong service centres.

Job fairs

The job fairs initiative is part of the department's Public Employment Services' contribution to government service-delivery outcomes.

It is a first step towards building a working relationship with social partners and providing a link between work seekers and potential job opportunities.

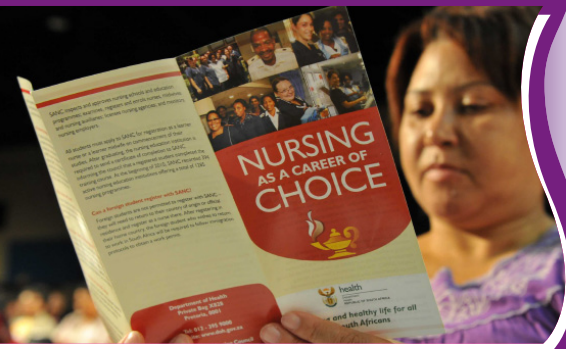
Job fairs provide free services to create an opportunity for work seekers to meet with prospective employers and other organisations or departments that can assist with their placement in different forms of employment or learning opportunities.

Various organisations present career and other placement opportunities to work seekers, as well as employment counselling, job search tools and assessments.

The fairs are targeted at unemployed youth who dropped out of school, unemployed youth with school exit certificates, unemployed graduates, and under-employed and retrenched workers.

The fairs are held in conjunction with national and provincial sister departments, including the departments of economic development, transport and rural development; as well as a number of state-owned and private companies, including Transnet, Eskom, the South African Safety and Maritime Authority of South Africa, the Development Bank of Southern Africa and multilateral organisations such as the International Monetary Fund, the World Bank and the International Labour Organisation.





Education

In November 2014, the Minister of Basic Education was among the panel members sitting in on the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (Unesco) world conference on Education for Sustainable Development (ESD) in Nagoya, Japan under the theme, “Celebrating a Decade of Action – What have we achieved, what lessons learnt”.

The conference praised South Africa as one of the countries that have made much progress in the area of ESD in the past decade.

One of the most significant achievements in South Africa was the reaffirmation and attention given to the role of indigenous knowledge and practices regarding sustainable living, sustainable development and caring for the well-being of future eco-systems.

During the conference, awareness and engagements in ESD ensured that South Africa’s National Curriculum Statement (NCS) grades R – 12 embedded the essence of ESD principles in every subject. Principles include human rights, inclusivity, environmental and social justice: infusing the principles and practices of social and environmental justice and human rights as defined in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa.

The NCS grades R –12 is sensitive to issues of diversity such as poverty, inequality, race, gender, language, age, disability and other factors.

Government is committed to strengthening the progress already made in basic education by integrating the five priority action areas of the Global Action Programme into the strategic planning framework of the Department of Basic Education (DBE).

This would be done by:

- advancing policy
- integrating sustainability practices into education and training environments (whole-institution approaches)
- increasing the capacity of educators and trainers
- empowering and mobilising youth
- encouraging local communities and municipal authorities to develop community-based ESD programmes.

The preamble to the Constitution states the aim to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people and every citizen is equally protected by law

- build a united and democratic South Africa able to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations.

The responsibility for education is shared by the DBE and the Department of Higher Education and Training (DHET).

The DBE deals with all schools from Grade R to Grade 12, and adult literacy programmes, while the DHET deals with universities, and other post-school education and training, as well as coordinating the Human Resource Development Strategy for South Africa (HRDSSA).

The DBE develops, maintains and supports a South African school education system for the 21st century in which all citizens have access to lifelong learning, as well as education and training, which will, in turn, contribute towards improving quality of life and building a peaceful, prosperous and democratic South Africa.

To respond to the call made by the National Development Plan (NDP) for intersectoral cooperation to improve educational outcomes, working with various partners, the DBE put in place an Education Collaboration Framework (ECF). Annually, companies spend just under R3 billion on education.

The ECF will implement targeted programmes, including district and systemic change interventions and innovation projects. A special education trust was set up. Since signing the National Economic Development and Labour Council (Nedlac) Accord on Basic Education, the department has entered into partnerships with over 100 private businesses.

The objectives of the DBE are to:

- improve overall educational performance in the long term by increasing the number of five-year-old learners enrolled in publicly funded Grade R classes in public and independent primary schools and community based early childhood development sites from 734 650 in 2011 to 950 000 learners by 2014/15
- reduce the number of illiterate adults in South Africa by 4,7 million by 2015/16 through the Kha Ri Gude mass literacy campaign.
- increase literacy and contribute to job creation by recruiting and training 41 870 volunteer educators for the Kha Ri Gude mass literacy campaign in 2014/15.
- improve the learning and teaching of critical foundational skills by developing, printing and distributing literacy/languages, numeracy/mathematics and English first additional language workbooks to all learners from grades R to 9 each year.
- improve the quality of mathematics, science and technology education in order to

increase the number of matric mathematics and science passes at all Dinaledi schools by providing additional learner and teacher support materials as well as additional training for mathematics and science teachers and monitoring the performance and participation of all Dinaledi schools in these subjects over the MTEF period.

- improve the capacity of technical secondary schools to contribute to skills development and training in the country.

Basic education

In November 2014, a task team, established by the Minister of Basic Education, recommended medium to long term improvements to the standard National Senior Certificate (NSC).

The DBE presented the task team's findings and recommendations to the Portfolio Committee on the report looking into the promotion requirements for the NSC.

Some of the recommendations included the retention of Mathematics Literacy and Mathematics following concerns around the NSC.

The 30% pass requirement was one of a small component of the pass requirements and it does not encapsulate the standard of NSC. The NSC reflected an equivalent if not higher standard in certain aspects to the old Senior Certificate (SC) and that the requirements for admission to bachelor studies were higher in the NSC than the old SC given that a candidate has to obtain a pass in four subjects at 50%.

The department had been providing science kits to schools with no science laboratories. This was to ensure that concepts are not only dealt with in theory but also in practice.

In terms of providing libraries, the department had moved from centralised libraries to classrooms.

Legislation and policies

Education in South Africa is governed by the following key policies and legislation:

- The fundamental policy framework of the Ministry of Basic Education is stated in the Ministry's first *White Paper on Education and Training in a Democratic South Africa: First Steps to Develop a New System*, published in February 1995.
- The National Education Policy Act (Nepa), 1996 (Act 27 of 1996) brought into law the policies, and legislative and monitoring responsibilities of the Minister of Education, as well as the formal relations between national and provincial authorities. It laid the foundation for the establishment of the Council

of Education Ministers (CEM), as well as the Heads of Education Departments Committee (Hedcom), as intergovernmental forums that would collaborate in the development of a new education system. Nepa of 1996, therefore, provided for the formulation of national policy in general, and Further Education and Training (FET) policies for curriculum, assessment, language and quality assurance.

- The South African Schools Act (Sasa), 1996 (Act 84 of 1996) is aimed at ensuring that all learners have access to quality education without discrimination, and makes schooling compulsory for children aged seven to 15.

It provides for two types of schools namely independent and public schools. The provision in the Act for democratic school governance, through school-governing bodies (SGBs), has been implemented in public schools countrywide. The school-funding norms, outlined in Sasa of 1996, prioritise redress and target poverty regarding the allocation of funds for the public-schooling system.

- The Adult Basic Education and Training (Abet) Act, 2000 (Act 52 of 2000) regulates Abet; provides for the establishment, governance and funding of public adult learning centres; provides for the registration of private adult learning centres; and provides for quality assurance and quality promotion in Abet.
- Sasa of 1996 was amended by the Education Laws Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 24 of 2005), which authorises the declaration of schools in poverty-stricken areas as “no-fee schools”, and by the Education Laws Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 31 of 2007), which provides for the functions and responsibilities of school principals.
- The Employment of Educators Act, 1998 (Act 76 of 1998) regulates the professional, moral and ethical responsibilities of educators, as well as teachers’ competency requirements. The Act and the South African Council for Educators (SACE) regulate the teaching corps.
- The design of the National Qualifications Framework (NQF) was refined with the publication of the Higher Education Qualifications Framework in the *Government Gazette* in October 2007, to provide 10 NQF levels.
- The NCS grades R to 12 replaced the policy document, *A Résumé of Industrial Programmes in Schools, Report 550 (89/03)*.
- The *Education White Paper on ECD (2000)* provides for the expansion and full participation of five-year-olds in pre-school Grade R education by 2010, and an improvement in the quality of programmes, curricula and teacher

development for birth to four-year-olds and six- to nine-year-olds.

- The *Education White Paper 6 on Inclusive Education (2001)* describes the DBE’s intention to implement inclusive education at all levels in the system by 2020. The system will facilitate the inclusion of vulnerable learners and reduce the barriers to learning through targeted support structures and mechanisms that will improve the retention of learners in the education system, particularly learners who are prone to dropping out.
- The Education Laws Amendment Act, 2002 (Act 50 of 2002) set the age of admission to Grade 1 as the year in which the child turns seven. However, the school-going age of Grade 1 was changed to age five, if children turned six on or before 30 June in their Grade 1 year.
- The Umalusi Council sets and monitors standards for general and FET in South Africa, in accordance with the NQF Act, 2008 (Act 67 of 2008), and the General and FET Quality Assurance Act, 2001 (Act 58 of 2001).

Action Plan 2014: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2025

This action plan explains the 27 national goals that lie at the heart of the plan. The future of basic education is informed by Action Plan to 2014: Towards the Realisation of Schooling 2025.

Medium- to long-term interventions focus on:

- improving the quality of teaching and learning, with an emphasis on strengthening numeracy and literacy
- undertaking regular assessments to track progress
- improving ECD
- ensuring a credible outcomes-focused planning and accountability system.

Annual National Assessment (ANA)

ANA is used to monitor levels and quality of learning outcomes. Among the closely monitored performance areas are learners’ Mathematics and Physical Science pass rates and the number of Grade 12 learners qualifying for university entry.

In September 2014, more than 6,8 million learners in grades 1 to 6 and Grade 9 across South Africa started writing the third ANA to determine their levels of competency in Literacy and Numeracy.

This is an important exercise that helps identify learning challenges and assists in planning appropriate interventions to improve Literacy and Numeracy.

The tests are administered in all 11 official

languages in the foundation phase, and in the two languages of teaching and learning in the Intermediate and Senior Phase.

Necessary adaptations are effected for learners who experience various kinds of learning disabilities, to ensure that every learner has the opportunity to demonstrate what they know in the assessment.

The department uses ANA as a measuring tool to annually record progress in learner achievement, towards achieving the 2014 target, of ensuring that at least 60% of learners achieve certain levels in Literacy and Numeracy.

ANA targets Literacy and Numeracy because these have been found universally to be the key foundational skills for successful learning in school and beyond.

National Curriculum Statement

The NCS grades R to 12, implemented between 2012 and 2014, represents a policy statement for learning and teaching in South African schools. It is the curriculum that underpins the various programmes followed in each Grade from grades R to 12.

It enables a learner to obtain an NSC after completing the full programme of the NCS grades R to 12.

The NCS grades R to 12 consists of three documents, namely:

- curriculum and assessment policy statements for each approved school subject as listed in the National Policy Document pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the NCS grades R to 12
- national policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the NCS grades R to 12, which describes the number of subjects to be offered to learners in each grade and the promotion requirements
- National Protocol for Assessment of grades R to 12, which standardises the recording and reporting processes for grades R to 12 within the framework.

South Africa was ranked last on the quality of its Mathematics and Science education in the World Economic Forum (WEF) Global Competitiveness Report 2014 – 2015. The Global Competitiveness Report 2014 – 2015 assesses the competitiveness landscape of 144 economies, providing insight into the drivers of their productivity and prosperity.

Secondary School Improvement Programme

The importance of the Secondary School Improvement Programme (SSIP) will be pushed to the fore, as matrics wrote for the first time write the NSC exams based on the Curriculum

and Assessment Policy Statements (CAPS).

Through the programme, teachers will receive additional training to ensure they are confident to deliver the new curriculum. The DBE also ensured that learner study notes and extra classes were aligned to the CAPS curriculum.

Under SSIP, Grade 12 learners received extra classes on Saturdays and during school holidays. In its fifth year, SSIP has become an important element in improving the quality of education in Gauteng schools by giving support to educators and school managers to ensure better curriculum delivery.

SSIP has helped 435 priority schools to achieve the provincial benchmarks. SSIP has shown an average performance increase of 15% since 2009 and the gap in performance between fee-paying and no-fee schools has narrowed from 24% in 2009 to 9% in 2013. In 2013, the number of public schools achieving a pass rate of less than 60% has dropped from 188 in 2009 to 19 in 2013. Subjects targeted were: Maths; Maths Literacy; Physical Science; Life Sciences; Accounting; English First Additional Language; Economics, Business Studies; History and Geography.

Curriculum and Assessment Policy Statement

CAPS is a single, comprehensive and concise policy document, which replaces the Subject and Learning Area Statements, Learning Programme Guidelines and Subject Assessment Guidelines for all the subjects listed in the NCS grades R to 12.

It comprises the following:

- CAPS for all approved subjects
- National policy pertaining to the programme and promotion requirements of the NCS grades R to 12
- National Protocol for Assessment grades R to 12.

The department's continued focus is on the phased-in implementation of the revised CAPS. .

The department completed the process with a roll-out to grades seven to nine and 12 in the 2014 academic year.

South Africa has continuously been ranked in the lower tiers of international assessments such as Progress in International Reading Literacy Studies (PIRLS). On a scale of 0 to 1 000, pupils tested for English and Afrikaans in Grade 5 achieved a score of 421, described in the 2011 PIRLS report as "the lowest for benchmarking participants." According to the PIRLS report, 43% of Grade 5 pupils in South African schools have not developed the basic skills required for reading at an equivalent international Grade 4 level.

Budget and funding

The overall budget for 2014/15 for the DBE was R19, 680 billion. The budget allocation to provincial education departments (PEDs) was R186,147 billion. It exceeded R200 billion in 2015/16.

Umalusi was allocated R107,4 million and would reach R112,7 million in 2015/16 to cover its expanded mandate. The National Education Evaluation Development Unit (Needu) continued to do important work for the DBE. For 2014/15, Needu was allocated R14,2 million.

Kha Ri Gude received R634,9 million. The mass literacy campaign impacted the lives of millions of our people. The department allocated R62,2 million particularly for Extended Public Works Programme (EPWP): Kha Ri Gude, as a contribution to job creation by recruiting and training volunteers.

An amount of R30 million was allocated in 2014/15 for the National Initiative to improve learning outcomes, which will reach R40 million in 2015/16.

The conditional grant for the National School Nutrition Programme has increased by R288,8 million in 2014/15 to R5,462 billion. It is expected to reach R5,704 billion in 2015/16.

The allocation for 2014/15 for workbooks was R896,7 million and for textbooks, the estimated budget was R4,2 billion allocated to PEDs.

The total allocated infrastructure budget for 2014/15 was R 10,1 billion and it included a portion of the Education Infrastructure Grant amounting to R 6,9 billion. The department has reviewed the Integrated Quality Management System (IQMS), in consultation with teacher unions, and developed a revised instrument, the IQMS for school-based educators. For 2014/15, the IQMS was allocated R4,2 million.

The Mpumalanga Department of Education has taken steps to assist Grade 12 learners prepare for their 2014 final examinations.

The department partnered with national and local radio stations to dedicate special programmes to learners on Thursday afternoons. The radio are Ikwekwezi FM, Ligwalagwala FM, BCR, K Radio, Radio Bushbuckridge, Nkomazi Community Radio, Emalahleni Community Radio, Greater Middleburg Community Radio, Moutse Community Radio and Nkangala Community Radio.

The department has also established the dial-a-tutor programme, which allows learners to interact with curriculum implementers during their studies, linking learners with various curriculum specialists by dialling 087 805 1350 during the radio programmes. The system hangs up and automatically calls back the number whereby it directs the learner to the correct curriculum specialist. The department added that a text-a-tutor programme will also be introduced from the beginning of October 2014, to assist learners further.

Role players/statutory bodies Provincial departments of education

The role of the DBE is to translate government's education and training policies and the provisions of the Constitution into a national education policy and legislative framework.

Therefore, the department works closely with the PEDs to ensure that provincial budgets and strategies are in line with and support national policies.

The national department shares a concurrent role with the PEDs for basic schooling and ECD, but it is the responsibility of each PEDs to finance and manage its schools directly.

District offices are the PEDs' main interface with schools. Not only are they central to the process of gathering information and diagnosing problems in schools, but they also perform a vital support and intervention function.

This includes organising training for personnel; dealing with funding; resourcing bottlenecks; and solving labour-relations disputes. District offices are key to ensuring that school principals remain accountable to the PEDs and that accountability lines within the school to the principal and to the SGB are maintained.

Equity in education expenditure between and within provinces is achieved through the equitable division of national revenue between provinces, making use of the Equitable Shares Formula, the National Norms and Standards for School Funding, and the national post-provisioning norms.

The norms are progressive, with 60% of a province's non-personnel expenditure going to the poorest 40% of learners in public schools. The poorest 20% of learners receive 35% of non-personnel resources, while the richest 20% receive 5%.

Council of Education Ministers

The CEM – consisting of the Ministers of Basic Education, Higher Education and Training and the nine provincial members of the executive councils for education – meets regularly to discuss the promotion of national education policy; share information and views on all aspects of education in South Africa; and coordinate action on matters of mutual interest.

Heads of Education Departments Committee

Hedcom comprise the Director-General (DG) of the DBE, the deputy DGs of the department and the heads of provincial departments of education.

The purpose of the committee is to facilitate the development of a national education

system, share information and views on national education, coordinate administrative action on matters of mutual interest and advise the department on a range of specified matters related to the proper functioning of the national education system.

Umalusi

Umalusi is responsible for the development and management of a sub-framework of qualifications for general and FET and for the attendant quality assurance. Umalusi means “herder” or “shepherd” which in Nguni culture, is the person who is the guardian of the family’s wealth.

The council is tasked with the certification of the following qualifications:

- In schools: NSC.
 - In FET colleges: the National Technical Certificate (Level N3) and the National Certificate Vocational (NCV).
 - In adult learning centres: the General Education Training Certificate: Adults.
- To issue learners with certificates that are credible, Umalusi:
- develops and evaluates qualifications and curricula to ensure that they are of the expected standard
 - moderates assessment to ensure that it is fair, valid and reliable
 - accredits providers of education and training, and assessment
 - conducts research to ensure educational quality
 - verifies the authenticity of certificates.

National Education Evaluation and Development Unit

Needu ensures effective evaluation of all educators based on the extent to which learner performance improves. Its core responsibilities include:

- providing the Minister with an independent account of the state of schools, including the quality of teaching and learning in all schools.
- providing an independent account on the development needs of the school education system
- accounting for the attainment of the standards by all schools through a monitoring and evaluation system
- identifying on a systemwide basis the critical factors that inhibit or advance school improvement and making focused recommendations for redressing problem areas that undermine school improvement
- proposing appropriate sanctions to ensure that schools offer effective education for all learners
- strengthening internal evaluation capacity

within schools in ways that inform and complement external evaluation.

- monitoring the different levels of school support and the extent action is considered on proposed interventions, whether in the form of developmental support or disciplined action
- reviewing and assessing existing monitoring, evaluation and support structures and instruments regularly, to ensure clarity and coherence in the way schools and teachers are assessed and supported
- providing schools with evidence-based advice on how to pursue school improvement in their particular context
- promoting school improvement through the dissemination of good practice.

Education Labour Relations Council (ELRC)

The ELRC serves the public education sector nationally. It is a statutory council, initially established by the Education Labour Relations Act, 1993 (Act 146 of 1993), but draws authority from the Education Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995).

The main purpose of the council is to maintain labour peace within public education through processes of dispute prevention and resolution.

These include collective bargaining between the educator unions and the DBE as the employer. The ELRC also conducts various workshops to increase the level of awareness and understanding of sound labour-relations procedures.

South African Council for Educators

The SACE is a professional council aimed at enhancing the status of the teaching profession and promoting the development of educators and their professional conduct. It was established in terms of the SACE Act, 2000 (Act 31 of 2000).

Africa Engineering Week, held in September 2014, is a collaboration between the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (Unesco), the Department of Science and Technology (DST) and the Engineering Council of South Africa (ECSA).

The week, themed “Engineering is a life changer,” was aimed at highlighting the important role that engineers play in everyday life. It also encourages youth to participate in science, mathematics, engineering and technology related studies and careers.

The University of Johannesburg’s campus in Doornfontein’s Faculty of Engineering and the Built Environment was participating in Africa Engineering Week with various activities being planned.

These included a conference on sustainable engineering and a four-day career exhibition showcasing the different engineering disciplines, a photographic exhibition, learner and teacher workshops and a Women in Engineering Breakfast Workshop.

The SACE's functions are to:

- register educators
- promote the professional development of educators
- set, maintain and protect ethical and professional standards.

Before their employment, educators are required to register with the SACE, which has a register of about 500 000 educators.

The council has strengthened entry requirements by checking applicants' professional standing.

The SACE has a number of programmes that promote the development of educators and enhance the status and image of the teaching profession. These include:

- the Professional Development Portfolio Project, which aims to encourage educators to reflect on their practice and take responsibility for their own professional development
- teacher education and development research activities
- setting up the Continuing Professional Teacher Development System
- celebrating World Teachers' Day to acknowledge the work of educators
- ensuring that educators adhere to the SACE Code of Professional Ethics
- the Continuing Professional Teacher-Development System, which recognises professional development undertaken by educators on their own initiative.

Educator unions

Educators are organised into six educator unions, namely the National Professional Teachers' Organisation of South Africa, the National Teachers' Union, the South African Teachers' Union, the Professional Educators' Union, Cape Professional Teachers' Association and the South African Democratic Teachers' Union.

A labour-relations framework was agreed on by the former Ministry of Education and the unions. This encompasses both traditional areas of negotiation, and issues of professional concern, including pedagogy and quality-improvement strategies.

An agreement was reached on the framework for the establishment of an occupation-specific dispensation (OSD) for educators in public education. The OSD provides for dual career paths, where educators and specialists in classrooms can progress to levels where they earn salaries that are equal to or higher than those of managers without moving into management/supervisory posts.

It also provides for a new category of posts for teaching and learning specialists and senior

learning and teaching specialists, as well as the creation of a cadre of education managers at school and office level.

Programmes and projects

Learning and teaching support material

The department increased learner access to workbooks and coverage to improve literacy, numeracy and reading.

It provided workbooks to all learners in grades one to nine. Through savings from developing content in-house, the scope was expanded to cover Braille workbooks as well.

The *Southern and Eastern Africa Consortium for Monitoring Education Quality 2011 Survey* put South Africa at 78% for literacy and 83% for Mathematics.

Prudence in the deployment of resources is key to the national endeavour for equality and inclusive development and growth. Addressing inequalities in education forms part of the rationale for centralising the procurement of books.

Learn English Audio Project (LEAP)

The DBE launched the LEAP in partnership with the British council.

LEAP is a British Council project, which seeks to help teachers from remote and under-resourced schools in nine African countries. It is aimed at improving listening and speaking skills in learners and, ensure access to quality English learning materials on micro-SD cards delivered via solar powered MP3 players popularly known as 'Lifeplayers'. The Lifeplayer technology has been developed in South Africa thus ensuring its relevance and long-term sustainability.

The training pack comprises a solar powered MP3 player pre-loaded with over 40 hours of teaching material, teacher guides and lesson plans for grades R to 4, a book with primary songs and stories, and a set of colourful cartoon story posters. Relevant teaching and learning audio material linked to the South African national curriculum and in particular the DBE Rainbow Workbooks have been developed by the British Council and the DBE.

This material has been uploaded onto the solar powered MP3 players for distribution to selected multi-grade schools in three provinces: the Eastern Cape, Mpumalanga and KwaZulu-Natal. To complement the training package, teachers received a training video, lesson plans and posters, and an extra SD card containing the all the materials so that they could access the materials on their cell phones, thus facilitating lesson planning at any time and location.

The LEAP is a valuable addition to the efforts of the DBE to support teachers in the poorest

schools. It provides an innovative approach to providing materials to teachers to improve their subject knowledge in English, and other languages, as well as for learners to access materials.

Incremental Introduction of African Languages (IIAL)

The DBE's African language pilot policy was implemented in 2014.

The purpose of the pilot is to identify challenges in the implementation of IIAL to inform full scale implementation in 2015.

In 2012, the department announced that full implementation would be preceded by a pilot in Grade 1 classes in selected schools in each province in 2014.

The IIAL policy will be implemented incrementally, commencing in Grade 1 in 2015 and continuing until 2026 when it will be implemented in Grade 12.

The pilot project is targeting the introduction of the previously marginalised African languages in schools where an African language is presently not offered.

Satellite broadcasting programme

The satellite broadcasting service broadcasts Mathematics for grades eight and nine directly to priority high schools during lesson time so that teachers can integrate the broadcasts with their teaching time. Broadcasts are automatically recorded for revision or afternoon lessons.

Eco-school programme

The Eco-Schools programme was established by the international non-governmental organisation (NGO), Foundation for Environmental Education in 1994, in response to a need to involve young people in environmental projects at local level.

Eco-Schools are required to involve students in different themes, including healthy living, nature and biodiversity, local and global environmental issues, resource use and heritage and culture.

Each school follows a seven-step change process and empowers its young people to lead processes and actions wherever they can.

Through commitment to the Eco-Schools seven-step process, improvements will be seen in the learning outcomes, attitude and behaviour of students; ultimately, the local community; and the local environment. Evidence of success in these areas will eventually lead to a school being awarded "The Green Flag".

Student Sponsorship Programme (SSP)

The SSP assists academically distinguished pupils to realise their potential during their high school years with scholarships and bursaries. To

find the country's brightest kids, SSP searches schools in the major townships.

The focus is on giving pupils from low-income families a great education to improve their chances of a bright and prosperous future.

The pupils have to be academically distinguished to be considered and once they are selected, they are placed in the top high schools in Gauteng, the Eastern Cape and the Western Cape.

The non-profit organisation has awarded more than 640 scholarships since 2000. The SSP partners with top high schools that obtain high matric pass rates and university passes in the three provinces.

The programme commits to funding the pupils for five years of high school by matching each child with either an individual or a corporate sponsor. Many of the pupils who have been part of the programme have passed matric and are now studying at tertiary institutions.

The organisation's vision is to produce leaders who are committed to creating a society that is non-racist, non-sexist, democratic and prosperous. In addition to the quality education and enrichment provided by the partner schools, SSP supports its pupils by assigning a student programme officer to them and finding a corporate mentor for each pupil.

The SSP also runs a parallel programme that focuses on leadership development, study skills, life skills, career guidance and assistance with applications to tertiary institutions and bursaries for further studies. The mentors also help the pupils cope and adjust in their new schooling environment and guide them throughout high school.

They run leadership development programmes that offer pupils regular compulsory leadership workshops. This approach has produced an incomparable track record for SSP, with 94% of their scholars completing the programme (matric pass) and 91% going on to pursue a tertiary qualification.

Pupils who wish to apply for the programme must be in Grade 6 and not older than 12. The pupils must attain an overall average of 70% or more in Grade 5.

They must achieve a 70% minimum grade for mathematics, English and science. Their families must earn less than R200 000 in combined annual incomes. In addition, the applicants must show leadership potential and be community-service orientated. Successful applicants will be placed in a year-long bridging programme that seeks to improve their abilities in English, mathematics, science and technology. The scholar development programme consists

of Saturday classes, academic camps and personal development workshops.

Educational portal

The educational portal www.thutong.doe.gov.za offers a range of curriculum and learner-support material, professional development programmes for educators, and administration and management resources for schools.

Thutong – meaning “a place of learning” in Setswana – features a searchable database of web-based curriculum resources for various education sectors, grades and subjects.

The portal is a free service to registered users, who must go through a once-off, no-cost registration process. The portal is a partnership venture between the DBE and various role-players in the field.

The department also revitalised and revised the content of the portal. It has over 31 000 registered users and more than 22 000 curriculum resources.

Improving access to free and quality basic education

School fees are set at annual public meetings of SGBs, where parents vote on the amount to be paid. Parents who cannot afford to pay or who can only afford a smaller amount, are granted an exemption or reduction in fees.

The threshold target allocation for no-fee schools for operational expenditure has increased to R880 per learner. The national per learner target amount for Quintile 1 schools is R960.

Total expenditure for school allocation on no-fee schools at the national target level is projected to be in excess of R7,7 billion.

Early Childhood Development

In respect of Early Childhood Development (ECD), the NDP underlined the need for access for all children to at least two years of pre-school education.

The DBE has made significant progress in increasing access to grade R. In 2014, 16 909 of the 18 475 public primary schools had grade R classes with an enrolment of 779 370 learners (2013 School Realities). The General Household Survey 2013 indicated that a total of 481 000 five-year-old learners were in pre-school institutions.

The first ever impact evaluation of Grade R on learning outcomes was conducted in 2013 with the support of the Department of Performance Monitoring and Evaluation. The report was presented to Cabinet in March 2014. In response to the recommendations made, a management plan has been approved

to strengthen the quality of implementation and provision of Grade R schooling especially in relation to teaching.

The NCF for children under four years were rolled out in registered ECD centres from January 2015. All preparations such as practitioner training and supply of resources have already started.

Over the next three years, R1,4 billion will be spent to support ECD programmes and implement the community-based Child Care and Protection Programme. This will increase access to ECD from the current 500 000 to 580 000 children, with a focus on rural areas. It is expected that more than 10 000 youths will be employed as a result of the programme.

Government is committed to ensuring that ECD is linked to other development-based programmes, particularly within the context of the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP), and integrates other services that flow from different departments and relevant stakeholders.

This is done through an education campaign focused on women in rural areas, and selected peri-urban and urban areas such as informal settlements, which are generally regarded as focal points for government's poverty and malnutrition eradication programmes.

ECD centres play an integral part in providing children with tools to cope socially, especially where there is a lack of parental supervision at home. More than 20 000 ECD practitioners have, therefore, been equipped with the necessary skills to nurture, instil discipline and care for children in ECD centres.

The Department of Social Development (DSD) coordinates the activities of the three partner departments, namely social development, health and basic education.

The integrated plan includes the development of national early learning standards, the training of ECD practitioners – which is part of government's employment creating EPWP – and the development of national norms and standards for funding.

The DSD leads government departments regarding services to children under the age of four years. In terms of the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), it is the DSD's responsibility to manage the registration of ECD sites, monitor their functionality and impact, and provide a subsidy for those children where a need exists.

In October 2014, 800 ECD volunteers had been training on 0-4 year stimulation. Certificates have been issued to blind and deaf volunteers that received the training, during the disability sector training session and 619 000 learners

registered. Classes for the disabled learners commenced in August 2014. Classes for the able-bodied group began in September 2014. - SAnews.gov.za

Education of learners with special needs

In July 2001, the then Department of Education gazetted *White Paper 6, Special Needs Education: Building an Inclusive Education and Training System*. This White Paper provided strategies for developing an inclusive system and increasing access to quality education for children experiencing barriers to learning.

The department's approach to inclusive education is geared toward promoting the democratic values enshrined in the Constitution. PEDs provide a wide range of education services to learners who, owing to a range of factors, experience barriers to learning and participation.

These factors include:

- autism
- behavioural problems
- visual and hearing impairments
- tuberculosis
- conflict with the law
- physical disabilities
- neurological and specific learning disabilities
- intellectual disabilities
- communication disorders
- epilepsy
- over-aged learners.

Educator development

The department developed a National Education Human Resource Planning Framework to effectively manage the demand, supply and utilisation of educators.

With support from the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization, the department commissioned a project to develop an instrument for evaluating the implementation of the post-provisioning norms. The department has a responsibility to monitor compliance regarding teacher attendance, punctuality and proper use of school resources.

The implementation of the Integrated Strategic Planning Framework for Teacher Education and Development is making progress.

The CAPS has seen over 200 000 educators being familiarised with the new curriculum imperatives.

The DBE distributed 400 000 copies of educator guides to the workbooks and ensured the training of 200 Foundation Phase and Intermediate Phase advisors and specialist trainers.

In addition, the DBE concluded strategic partnerships with Vodacom, CISCO, Mindset,

University of South Africa (Unisa), MTN and other partners to strengthen the capacity of teacher centres by improving Information and Communications Technology (ICT) and content for teacher development.

School infrastructure

One-school-a-week

From September 2014, the DBE opened a new school every week in Gauteng. In total 17 schools were opened in a bid to ensure that every child in the province gets education closer to where they stay.

The PED was determined to ensure that every learner in the province was able to compete at international standards.

In August 2014, the newly built Freedom Park Secondary School in Devland, in Soweto, was officially handed over. The state-of-the-art school, which will accommodate about 1 000 learners from the area, has 25 classrooms, three laboratories, a computer room and a library.

It further features a sports facility building, soccer or rugby ground, canteen and courts for netball, tennis and/or basketball.

The opening of the school reaffirmed government's commitment to provide state-of-the-art infrastructure to communities which have been previously under serviced.

By August 2014, the DBE had built 74 schools that changed the experience of learning and teaching for thousands of pupils and teachers. In the Eastern Cape 70 new schools were built and four were built in the Western Cape.

The schools were built under the Asidi programme that aims to restore dignity to education through the building of new schools and delivering much needed facilities to schools around the country, particularly in the Eastern Cape.

The Samson Primary School in the Eastern Cape joined the long list of schools that received new facilities – built from alternative construction technology – by December 2014.

The department also procured 78 240 double combination desks, 5 292 teachers' tables and chairs from the Department of Labour to the value of nearly R60 million. By August 2014, 53 948 desks, 5 292 teachers' chairs and 1 134 teachers tables were delivered to schools in the Eastern Cape. More than 73 084 desks were also ordered from the Department of Environmental Affairs to the value of R42.8 million.

The first group of 252 schools in the Libode district in the Eastern Cape received its consignment consisting of 24 535 desks. A further consignment of 24 000 desks were delivered in August 2014 to schools in the Eastern Cape.

The National Treasury finalised a further contract to supply furniture from Grade R to 12 for the period August 2014 to July 2016. Furniture provision is an ongoing programme.

Accelerated Schools Infrastructure Development Initiative (Asidi)

The programme aims to deliver an adequate standard of schools to all children in provinces and to ensure that the facilities are conducive for effective teaching and learning.

Asidi is an on-going programme aimed at implementing the basic safety norms and standards in school infrastructure.

The R8,2 billion public-private programme aims to eradicate the 496 mud schools in the country, provide water and sanitation to 1 257 schools and electricity to 878 schools by March 2016.

By September 2014, 60 infrastructure programmes had been completed in the Eastern Cape, as part of government's programme to transform the education sector by providing decent school facilities.

Eradicating mud schools restores dignity to education and is transforming people's lives for the better.

Learners and educators have better access to improved environments for learning, teaching and growth.

The department is building close to 500 schools nationally under the Asidi programme. The majority of the schools are being built in the Eastern Cape to replace mud or inappropriate structures.

It usually takes 10 to 15 months for a state-of-the-art school to be built, if no delays are encountered.

Learning is not interrupted as the learners are housed in temporary mobile classrooms during construction. They move into the school as soon as it is ready. Standard facilities for newly built schools include classrooms, administration blocks multi-purpose centres, science and computer labs, nutrition centres, libraries, decent sanitation, electricity, rainwater harvesting tanks and a fully resourced Grade R centre, complete with jungle gym and sand pit.

Asidi also provides basic services of water, electricity and sanitation to schools that previously had none. By August 2014, 266 schools have been provided with sanitation, while 339 schools are at various stages of procurement of contractors and construction. Under the programme 224 schools have been provided with water; 685 schools are at various stages of procurement of contractors and construction of the works; and 265 schools have been provided with electrification.

Schools are assessed to establish infrastructure needs. The department appoints implementing agents that manage projects on its behalf. The implementing agents in turn procure and appoint professional service providers and contractors, who carry out the work.

National School Nutrition Programme

The NSNP is changing the face of the education system across the country.

As at June 2014, over nine million learners in more than 21 000 Quintile 1 to 3 primary and secondary schools benefitted from the school nutrition programme. This increase is attributed to the successful extension of the programme to public secondary schools.

The conditional grant for the NSNP has increased by R288,8 million in 2014/15 to R5,462 billion. It will reach R5,704 billion in 2015/16.

Over 54 000 volunteers prepare and serve the meals. The NSNP has been transformed from a simple cold meal to a daily hot, cooked meal.

School enrichment programmes

Sport is set to become an integral part of the school curriculum, with different sporting codes to be offered at every school in South Africa. This will culminate in the annual National Olympics Championship, with stakeholders such as trade unions, universities and the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee supporting the programme.

Some of the arts, culture and music flagship programmes the DBE coordinates, in collaboration with the Department of Arts and Culture, include the South African Schools Choral Eisteddfod, the National Indigenous Games, the Music and Movement Festival, and the National Language Festival and Concert.

To boost the South African Schools Choral Eisteddfod, the DBE trained 359 adjudicators, 509 conductors, 82 data capturers and 15 programme directors, most of whom were educators.

In the International Mathematics Olympiad that took place in Cape Town in July 2014, girls accounted for fewer than 10% of the participants. All six South African contestants in the event were boys. The dominance of boys in the competition reflected a worrying tendency in local schools for girls not to pursue top-level mathematics. The Olympiad saw 582 students from 108 countries compete in solving six complex mathematical problems. It is the highest number of nations ever to take part, with 12 coming from Africa.

Learner health Integrated School Health Programme

Key among the department's successes is the Integrated School Health Programme that will offer, over time, a comprehensive and integrated package of health services to all learners.

Physical education at schools

The Portfolio committees on Sport and Recreation and Basic Education have welcomed the decision to include South African Local Government Association (Salga) into the Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on school sport. The agreement will allow schools without facilities to utilise municipal facilities for school sport.

This followed a report presented by the departments of education and sport and recreation on school sport, particularly physical education.

The committees also welcomed the suggestion for both departments to work together towards the training of teachers in sport coaching at sport focused schools.

International cooperation

In January 2014, the Minister of Basic Education represented South Africa at the Education World Forum in London, in the United Kingdom where leaders in the field mapped out policy related plans for the next decade.

Dubbed "Planning for 2015, policy-making catalyst for a decade ahead: measurement, reach and enterprise," the forum brought together delegates representing over 75% of the world's population to share ideas, form collaborative links and discuss education policy.

While in London on the side-lines of the EWF, the Minister and the British Council signed a

declaration of Intent between the two counties. The groundbreaking declaration speaks to a partnership on the training of teachers for English as a first additional language in a bid to improve literacy in English as a second language as well as the language of learning and teaching.

In October 2014, the Deputy Minister of Higher Education and Training attended the Moscow International Education Salon. The salon is an extensive international forum that embraces leading innovation technologies in the education sphere.

The event aimed at enhancing access to quality education through public-private partnership and promoting international best practices to boost the personal and professional development of individuals.

Higher education and training

The DHET is responsible for post-school education and training in universities, colleges and adult education centres. The DHET has been building a single, coherent, differentiated and articulated post-school education and training system.

This will contribute to overcoming the structural challenges facing society, by expanding access to education and training opportunities and increasing equity, as well as achieving high levels of excellence and innovation. Entry into institutions of higher learning is through a Grade 12 pass or a Grade 12 pass with exemption.

Legislation and policies

Some key policies and legislation relating to higher education and training in South Africa include the:

- Higher Education Act, 1997 (Act 101 of 1997), in accordance with which private institutions offering higher education must register with the DHET
- Council on Higher Education, which was established in terms of the Higher Education Act of 1997.
- The Higher Education Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 39 of 2008), and the NQF Act of 2008, implied a significant change for the council
- National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS) Act, 1999 (Act 56 of 1999) which is responsible for administering and allocating loans and bursaries to eligible students; developing criteria and conditions for granting loans and bursaries in consultation with the Minister; raising funds; recovering loans; maintaining and analysing a database; and undertaking research for the better use of financial resources.
- FET Colleges Act, 2006 (Act 16 of 2006), regulates FET to provide for the:

The paperless classroom is aimed at bringing public schools into the 21st century; to position public schools as an ICT-driven education system; and, to do away with the pains of the past, including carrying books around, sharing textbooks or going without them, and having teachers lug-ging books from classroom to staffroom for marking.

It is four-phased to provide:

- Internet connection for all schools
- introduction of e-learning
- providing ICT training for teachers
- rolling out the gadgets (tablets and computers).

The first two phases are scheduled to take place within the first three years of the current administration's five-year tenure, and the last two in the remaining years.

Twenty-one priority schools have been identified for piloting the project:

- 10 struggle academically, with leadership and management issues
- five are "schools of the future"
- six are top schools to which every parent wants to send their child, but where government has not been investing.

- establishment, governance and funding of public FET institutions
- registration of private FET institutions
- quality assurance and quality promotion in FET
- transitional arrangements and the repeal of laws.
- General and FET Quality Assurance Act, 2001 (Act 58 of 2001), which provides for the establishment, composition and functioning of the General and FET Quality Assurance Council. It also provides for quality assurance in general and FET, providing for control over norms and standards of curriculum and assessment; the issue of certificates at the exit points; and the conduct of assessment and repealing the South African Certification Council Act of 1986
- South African Qualifications Authority (Saq) Act, 1995 (Act 58 of 1995), which provides for the establishment of the NQF forms the foundation for a national learning system integrating education and training at all levels.

National Skills Development Strategy (NSDS)

The DHET is responsible for ensuring the development of a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path.

The key driving force of the NSDS 3 is improving the effectiveness and efficiency of the skills development system. It represents an explicit commitment to encouraging the linking of skills development to career paths, career development and promoting sustainable employment and in-work progression. The emphasis is particularly on those who do not have relevant technical skills or adequate reading, writing and numeracy skills to enable them to find employment.

The development strategy promotes partnerships between employers, public education institutions (FET colleges, universities of technology and universities), private training providers and sector education and training authorities (Setas), to ensure that cross-sectoral and intersectoral needs are addressed.

The NSDS 3 is guided by, and measured against, several key developmental and transformation imperatives, such as race, class, gender, geographic considerations, age differences, disability and HIV and AIDS.

NSDS 3 addresses the scope and mandate of the Setas. The Setas are expected to facilitate the delivery of sector-specific skills interventions that help achieve the goals of NSDS 3, address employer demand and deliver results. They

must be recognised experts in relation to skills demand in their sectors.

The strategy emphasises the relevance, quality and sustainability of skills training programmes focusing on eight goals, namely:

- establishing a credible institutional mechanism for skills planning, and ensuring that the national need in relation to skills development is researched, documented and communicated to enable effective planning across all economic sectors
- increasing access to occupation-specific programmes targeting intermediate and higher-level professional qualifications
- promoting the growth of a public FET college system that is responsive to sector, local, regional and national skills needs and priorities
- addressing the low level of youth and adult language and numeracy skills to enable additional training
- encouraging better use of workplace-based skills development
- encouraging and supporting co-operatives, small enterprises, worker-initiated NGOs and community-training initiatives
- increasing public-sector capacity for improved service delivery and supporting the building of a developmental state
- building career and vocational guidance.

The DHET has been increasing access to higher education programmes by expanding spaces and options available at FET colleges and universities.

The move is part of the department's plan to shift learner focus from traditional institutions such as universities and universities of technology, to FET colleges, where training is vocationally based.

Resources Universities

South Africa's higher education landscape comprises the following institutions:

- Cape Peninsula University of Technology
- Central University of Technology, Free State
- Durban Institute of Technology
- Mangosuthu University of Technology
- National Institute for Higher Education, Northern Cape
- National Institute for Higher Education, Mpumalanga
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University
- North-West University
- Rhodes University
- Sefako Makgatho Health Sciences University (SMU)
- Sol Plaatje University (SPU), Northern Cape
- Tshwane University of Technology

- University of Cape Town
- University of Fort Hare
- University of the Free State
- University of Johannesburg
- University of KwaZulu-Natal
- University of Limpopo (UL)
- University of Mpumalanga (UMP)
- University of Pretoria
- Unisa
- University of Stellenbosch
- University of Venda
- University of the Western Cape
- University of the Witwatersrand (Wits)
- University of Zululand
- Vaal University of Technology.
- Walter Sisulu University.

subdivision with effect from January 2015. The Executive Management of Medunsa Campus has been seconded to SMU as the Interim Executive Management to enable the smooth opening of the university.

The initial steps have been taken to develop new courses with the help of the John Hopkins University, Bloomberg School of Public Health and the Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC). Establishment of partnership with the University of Alabama in Birmingham, in a form of an MoU, with a view to conduct joint research, exchange faculty and exchange students are underway.

Further Education and Training

The DHET's top priority is to expand and improve the quality of FET colleges, soon to be renamed Technical and Vocational Education and Training (TVET) colleges.

With the assistance of the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants (SAICA), the department appointed 50 chartered accountants as chief financial officers at FET colleges.

In partnership with SAICA, the department also appointed 20 human resources specialists to help clusters of colleges to set up human resource systems, procedures and policies to ensure smooth and effective human resource management and development in each college.

The department agreed to a partnership with the Engineering Council of South Africa to improve the FET curriculum, make it more relevant to the world of work and facilitate articulation into higher education.

The DHET developed FET college-based mathematics and science foundation programmes that would enable young people to take up university studies in the engineering, science and technology fields. This programme was piloted from 2014.

An analysis of the funding framework for FET colleges and public adult learning centres

concluded that the framework was inconsistent with the vision of an integrated, yet differentiated post-school education and training system. To remedy this anomaly, a ministerial committee to advise the Minister was set up on how best to fund the TVET System (FET colleges) and envisaged community colleges, both from the fiscus and levy funds.

The centre forms part of the Department of Trade and Industry's programme to establish platforms with FET colleges to develop local entrepreneurs who will go on to establish and sustain viable and competitive businesses.

Seed funding of R3 million was allocated towards setting up the first phase of the centre.

Adult education and training

The FET Colleges Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 1 of 2013) provides for the creation of a new institutional type, to be known as the Community Education and Training (CET) college. With time, the Public Adult Learning centres will be absorbed into the CET colleges, additional facilities and staff will be provided and the offerings will be extended to provide vocational or community-oriented programmes.

Budget and funding

Post-schooling education and training accounted for about 21% of the total education spending for 2014/15, with R21 billion set aside for university subsidies and R19 billion for the National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS) for bursaries and loans.

Provincial education departments also received a big portion of the budget to pay teachers' salaries

The allocation to the NSFAS increased from R5,1 billion in 2013 to R6,6 billion in 2016.

This increased the number of FET bursaries to 292 000 and will assist over 236 000 students to attend university the next three years.

According to the Budget Review, five million children had access to free education in 2007. In 2014, the number increased to 8,8 million. In recent years, there has also been a sharp increase in the number of children who

In August 2014, the University of Cape Town (UCT) was once again ranked as the top South African university in the QS University BRICS rankings. The institute was ranked ninth overall across all BRICS universities, with a score of 84,9 tied with UniCamp in Brazil. Wits, which was ranked South Africa's top university in the recent Centre for World University Rankings, found itself second to UCT, ranked 31st overall, with a score of 72,1. Stellenbosch University was rated the third best university in the country (34th overall), followed by the University of Pretoria at 46th.

attend Grade R. The national school nutrition programme now feeds 8,7 million children.

The DBE's long-term plan to improve the quality of education focuses on literacy, numeracy as well as science and languages. The Funza Lushaka bursary scheme for students wanting to teach in public schools is intended to increase the number of qualified teachers. In 2013, more than 3 000 graduates qualified for placement in schools in 2014.

Programmes and projects

Thusanani Foundation

In November 2014, the Thusanani Foundation was launched at Wits. The Thusanani Foundation is a youth-led non-profit organisation that aims to bridge the educational information gap between rural high school learners and their urban counterparts through a four pillar holistic approach to learner development.

Thusanani is important because it speaks to an important collaboration between government and the community sector and academia, in promoting youth education and empowerment.

Through the DHET, government committed to ensure that no poor and academically deserving young person should ever miss out on a study opportunity in institutions because of their financial background.

Thusanani Foundation and the DHET also launched two scholarships namely, the Pixley ka Isaka Seme Scholarship Fund and the Johnstone Mfanafuthi Makhatini International Scholarship Fund.

The Pixley ka Isaka Seme Scholarship Fund aims to provide academically deserving but financially needy youth from townships and rural areas with scholarships to further their studies in public institutions of higher learning. This will empower them to pursue their studies in scarce skills programmes at universities.

The Johnstone Mfanafuthi Makhatini International Scholarship Fund is a direct response to the commitment by the DHET to send rural and township students abroad to address the country's areas of skills shortages such as renewable energy, nuclear, gas, maritime and rail engineering.

This is aimed at growing the country's skills base as informed by the National Scarce Skills list published by the department in May 2014 and the NDP.

In March 2014, President Jacob Zuma launched the Solomon Mahlangu Scholarship Fund. The R20-million scholarship fund, a partnership between the National Youth Development Agency (NYDA) and the Department of Higher Education, was aimed at assisting excelling

learners from disadvantaged areas wishing to further their studies at an institution of higher learning. The launch of the fund comes after the NYDA hosted the Presidential Youth Indaba on Youth Jobs and Skills, in Boksburg, in March 2014, to track the progress made in implementing the Youth Employment Accord, which was signed in April 2013 by youth leaders, business, labour, government and the community sector.

Role players

South African Qualifications Authority

Saqa, which is recognised nationally and internationally, focuses on upholding the principles of the NQF, including ensuring access, quality, redress and development for all learners through an integrated national framework of learning achievements.

The authority's main responsibilities include:

- registering qualifications and part-qualifications on the NQF
- maintaining and developing the National Learners' Records Database as the key national source of information for human resources and skills development in policy, infrastructure and planning
- maintaining and developing the authority's role as the national source of advice on foreign and domestic learning and qualifications
- conducting research
- monitoring and undertaking evaluation studies that contribute to the development of the NQF and a culture of lifelong learning
- registering professional bodies and professional designations on the NQF.

In terms of the NQF Act of 2008, the executive functions for setting standards and quality assurance will move to the three quality councils.

Quality Council for Trades and Occupations (QCTO)

The QCTO addresses the quality of training in and for the workplace, and ensures that such training and knowledge is accredited and certified, including proper recognition of prior learning.

The National Artisan Moderation Body is responsible for coordinating artisan development in South Africa. Plans are in place to establish offices in the engineering campuses of public FET colleges.

Higher Education South Africa (HESA)

HESA is the voice of South Africa's university leadership as it represents the vice-chancellors of public universities. Its mandate is to facilitate the development of public policy on higher education and encourage cooperation among

universities, government, industry and other sectors in South Africa.

HESA provides services to member universities in five main areas, namely:

- strategic research
- policy advocacy and stakeholder engagement
- sector support, including providing university leaders and their institutions with a supportive network and opportunities for collective action
- special programmes to strengthen institutions' capacity
- value-adding services, including scholarships and international programmes.

To obtain admission to university study for Bachelor's degrees with the NSC, admission to Bachelor studies requires a pass in four subjects with 50% and in the remaining subjects with 30%, provided that the home language is passed with 40% and the language of learning and teaching with 30%. The NSC requires a candidate to complete seven subjects.

The DHET benchmarks its question papers as a credible mechanism for ensuring that national question papers are internationally comparable and are of the highest standard and quality.

Human Resource Development Council of South Africa

The HRDCSA is a national, multi-tiered and multi-stakeholder advisory body.

One of its key responsibilities is to build the human-resource development base required to ensure a prosperous and inclusive South African society and economy.

In essence, it must ensure that all relevant policies, programmes, projects, interventions and strategies are streamlined and optimised to support overall government objectives, rather than merely sectoral imperatives.

The HRDCSA is supported by a technical working group co-chaired by business and labour. It is supported by a team of experts comprising technical task teams appointed on an issues basis to provide expert input in respect of all matters pertaining to human resources.

Sector education and training authorities

Setas were re-established by the Ministry of Labour in March 2005, to help implement the NSDS and to increase the skills of people in particular sectors. Setas replaced and extend the work of the old industry training boards and are accredited by Saqa.

Work Integrated Learning Partnerships and Innovation

Linking the education and training institutions and the labour market is a priority. This is

because workplace training is generally more effective if on-the-job training is combined with theoretical study and also because practical experience gained during training or immediately afterwards increases a student's chances of finding employment.

Government departments and agencies at national, provincial and local level as well as state-Owned Companies started to increase their intake of young people for apprenticeships, learnerships and internships.

National Skills Authority (NSA)

The NSA is an advisory body, established in terms of the Skills Development Act of 1998, to advise the Minister of Higher Education and Training on, among others:

- policy, strategy, implementation and NSF allocations
- liaising with Setas about policy, strategy and sector skills plans
- implementing the NSDS
- reviewing the accounts and balance sheet of the NSF annually
- receiving and using information from the Skills Development Planning Unit.

National Skills Fund

National Student Financial Aid Scheme

NSFAS is the department's primary tool for ensuring, poor students have access to post-school education. Since 1991, NSFAS has assisted 1.4 million students and many NSFAS alumni play important roles in the country's economy and society.

The board and staff of NSFAS continue to implement the recommendations of the *Ministerial Review Committee Report of 2010* and have made significant progress in the turnaround process to enable the entity to deliver on its mandate.

Libraries in the higher education sector

The higher education libraries hold the bulk of South Africa's scientific and scholarly information resources and fulfil more than half of all interlibrary loan requests. Pressure on higher education libraries includes redistribution of educational resources and rising prices.

These libraries have responded by forming consortia, looking at access and exploring digital resources.



The Department of Energy (DoE) is mandated to ensure the secure and sustainable provision of energy for socio-economic development. This is achieved by developing an integrated energy plan, regulating the energy industries, and promoting investment in accordance with the integrated resource plan. The department's strategic goals are to:

- ensure that energy supply is secure and demand is well managed
- facilitate an efficient, competitive and responsive energy infrastructure network
- ensure that there is improved energy regulation and competition
- ensure that there is an efficient and diverse energy mix for universal access within a transformed energy sector
- ensure that environmental assets and natural resources are protected and continually enhanced by cleaner energy technologies
- implement policies that adapt to and mitigate the effects of climate change
- implement good corporate governance for effective and efficient service delivery.

The DoE places emphasis on broadening electricity supply technologies to include gas and imports, as well as nuclear, biomass and renewable energy resources (wind, solar and hydro), to meet the country's future electricity needs and reduce its carbon-dioxide (CO₂) emissions.

Goals beyond 2020 include contracting more than 20 000 megawatts (MW) of renewable energy, including an increasing share from regional hydro-electricity.

About 11 000 MW of Eskom's older coal-powered stations will be decommissioned, but close to 6 000 MW of new coal capacity will be contracted – part of it from other southern African countries.

South Africa has committed to attain substantial reductions in CO₂ emissions by 2025. The country supports research, technology development and special measures aimed at environmentally sustainable economic growth.

Legislation and policies

The DoE derives its mandate from the *White Paper on Energy Policy, 1998*, the *White Paper on Renewable Energy, 2003*, and the National Energy Efficiency Strategy.

The following legislation regulates the energy sector:

- The National Energy Act, 2008 (Act 34 of 2008) ensures that diverse energy resources are available in sustainable quantities and at affordable prices in South Africa. In addition, the Act provides for the increased

Energy

use of renewable energies, contingency energy supplies, the holding of strategic energy feedstock and carriers, and adequate investment in energy infrastructure.

- The Electricity Regulation Act, 2006 (Act 4 of 2006) establishes a national regulatory framework for the electricity supply industry to be enforced by the National Energy Regulator of South Africa (Nersa). The Minister of Energy is empowered to make determinations for the establishment of independent power producers (IPPs) to increase the supply of electricity.
- The Petroleum Products Act, 1977 (Act 120 of 1977), as amended, provides for measures to save petroleum products and the economy in distribution costs, the maintenance and control of price, the furnishing of certain information regarding petroleum products and the rendering of service. It further provides for the licensing of people involved in the manufacturing, wholesale and retailing of prescribed petroleum products.
- The Central Energy Fund (CEF) Act, 1977 (Act 38 of 1977), as amended, provides for the determination of State levies.
- The Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 (Act 46 of 1999) provides for the establishment of the National Energy Corporation of South Africa (Necsa) and defines its functions, powers, financial and operational accountability, governance and management. It also regulates the acquisition and possession of nuclear fuel, nuclear and related material and equipment, and the import and export thereof.

Other relevant legislation includes the:

- National Nuclear Regulator (NNR) Act, 1999 (Act 47 of 1999)
- National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute Act, 2008 (Act 53 of 2008)
- Petroleum Pipelines Act, 2003 (Act 60 of 2003)
- Petroleum Pipelines Levies Act, 2004 (Act 28 of 2004)
- Gas Act, 2001 (Act 48 of 2001)
- Gas Regulator Levies Act, 2002 (Act 75 of 2002)
- National Energy Regulator Act, 2004 (Act 40 of 2004)
- Electricity Act, 1987 (Act 41 of 1987), as amended
- National Environmental Management Act, 1999 (Act 107 of 1999)
- Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (Act 28 of 2002)
- Electricity Regulation Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 28 of 2007).

National Energy Efficiency Strategy

The National Development Plan (NDP) envisages that by 2030 South Africa will have an adequate supply of electricity and liquid fuels to ensure that economic activity and welfare are not disrupted, and that at least 95% of the population will have access to grid or off-grid electricity.

The NDP proposes that gas and other renewable resources such as wind, solar and hydro-electricity will be viable alternatives to coal and will supply at least 20 000 MW of the additional 29 000 MW of electricity needed by 2030.

Other recommendations in the NDP include diversifying power sources and ownership in the electricity sector, supporting cleaner coal technologies, and investing in human and physical capital in the 12 largest electricity distributors.

The DoE will continue to address these proposals through a combination of new and existing programmes.

Funds will continue to be allocated to the South African National Energy Development Institute (Sanedi) for research and development into a carbon capture and storage project, and for a hydraulic fracturing pilot to assess the potential for shale gas.

The department aims to bring IPPs into the market when the Independent System and Market Operator Bill of 2012 is signed into law.

The DoE will also continue implementing the pilot approach to the distribution asset management programme, by providing capital subsidies to nine municipalities to address maintenance, refurbishment and backlog concerns to improve the quality of electricity supply.

The objectives of the revised energy efficiency strategy are to:

- promote and develop energy efficiency practices, norms and standards in different energy sectors, including industries, commercial buildings, households, transport and agriculture
- develop energy efficiency policies and guidelines
- facilitate information awareness, and capacity-building campaigns concerning energy efficiency and environmental issues
- promote energy for sustainable development
- mitigate negative impacts of energy use on the environment
- promote energy efficiency technologies and clean energy technologies, including environmentally sound energy technologies
- promote and facilitate international collaboration and cooperation

- ensure the DoE's participation at international forums on energy efficiency and the environment, including the United Nations (UN) Commission on Sustainable Development, the Kyoto Protocol and the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change.

The strategy includes Eskom's demand-side management (DSM). Municipalities are also implementing their own energy efficiency strategies.

In addition, 32 large companies have joined forces with the DoE and Eskom by signing an energy efficiency accord, committing themselves to targets contained in the strategy.

To assist households in becoming more energy efficient, the DoE initiated an appliance-labelling campaign. Labels on household appliances inform consumers of the energy efficiency of the appliances.

The DoE, in collaboration with the Department of Public Works (DPW) and Eskom, is retrofitting government buildings to make them more energy efficient.

National building standards

Energy-efficient regulations for new buildings form part of the deliverables of South Africa's National Energy Strategy to strengthen standards and regulations for energy efficiency.

The energy-efficient regulations apply to residential and commercial buildings, places of learning and worship, certain medical clinics and other categories of building.

The regulations make it compulsory for all new buildings to be designed and constructed to a standard that makes it possible for the user to minimise the energy required to meet the functional requirements. This will save energy significantly, which will relieve pressure on the electricity supply grid.

In addition to temperature regulations, all buildings will also have to be fitted with renewable-energy water-heating systems such as solar systems, which also have to comply with South African national standards.

National Strategic Fuels Stock Policy

The Energy Security Master Plan for Liquid Fuel identified a number of capacity constraints and challenges faced by the petroleum sector in meeting the energy demand. The National Strategic Fuels Stock Policy. It sets out the framework for the storage of fuel stock by government and the industry. It aims to ensure uninterrupted supply of petroleum products throughout South Africa by providing adequate strategic stocks and infrastructure such as storage facilities and pipeline capacity.

Strategic stocks are to be used during declared emergencies. The Minister of Energy will have the power to decide when a shortage of fuel and oil is at such a level to warrant an emergency.

National Liquid Petroleum Gas (LPG) Strategy

LPG is commonly used in mines to power smelting furnaces that are processing materials, such as platinum and vanadium, as well as domestically for cooking.

The LPG strategy's main objectives are to provide access to safe, cleaner, efficient, portable, environmentally friendly and affordable thermal fuel for all households, and to switch low-income households away from the use of coal, paraffin and biomass to LPG.

The strategy highlights strategic options that could be adopted for the orderly development of the LPG industry in South Africa to make LPG an energy carrier of choice for thermal applications.

The domestic LPG price is regulated through the DoE by the Minister of Energy.

Budget and funding

In 2014/15, the department was allocated a total budget of R7,4 billion. A significant portion of the department's budget, 57% and 27%, was earmarked for the implementation of the electrification programme and the Clean Energy programme respectively. For electrification, the department makes transfer payments to Eskom and municipalities through the Integrated National Electrification Programme (Inep).

During Eskom's National Electricity Safety week in August 2014, illegal power connections have come under the spotlight. An electricity connection is illegal when any connection is made to the Eskom network without Eskom's permission. This can range from connecting to a mini-substation to connecting a neighbour through a personal meter or electricity board. Communities can immediately report unsafe electricity connections to 08600 37566 or 0800 112 722 and by reporting electricity theft to Operation Khanyisa by sending an SMS to Crime Line on 32211. The service is completely anonymous and costs only R1/SMS. Illegal connections are dangerous for several reasons, the most common of which is the lack of safety features associated with the connections. When untrained professionals make electrical connections, the cables often lack protective insulation. In addition, illegal connections are not suspended at a safe height above ground. This means that children, animals and even adults often touch these unprotected wires accidentally, causing electrocution, which can cause injury or even fatalities.

To help protect children, Eskom encourages parents to ensure their children:

- Avoid playing near power lines or substations.
- Do not fly kites near power lines. If a kite gets stuck in a power line, do not try to retrieve it; you could be hurt.
- Never climb trees or other structures near power lines.

These transfers are used to fund infrastructure for the electrification of households such as the building of substations, as well as upgrading of electrical networks. The Clean Energy programme, which is mainly responsible for the Energy Efficiency Demand Side Management programmes, also makes transfers to Eskom for the implementation of the National Solar Water Heater programme and to municipalities for the installation of energy-efficient lighting and technologies. The balance of the budget (16%) is allocated for Energy Policy and Planning, Petroleum and Petroleum Products Regulation and Nuclear Energy.

Between 2011/12 and 2013/14, R9,6 billion was allocated to Inep for electricity infrastructure, R3,6 billion to municipalities and R5,8 billion to Eskom for grid connections. The non-grid connections received a total of R296,5 million. As a result of the infrastructure investment over this period, 612 949 households received new electricity connections. In the period 2002 to 2014/15, 84 896 households were supplied with non-grid technology (Solar panels – Renewable Energy). Non-grid electrification programmes will in future be extended to cover areas country-wide and not only be implemented in concessionary areas.

Over the medium term, electrification infrastructure spending is expected to increase from R4,2 billion in 2014/15 to R6,3 billion in 2017/18, which will be used to implement grid electricity connections of 260 000 units in 2015/16, 265 000 in 2016/17 and 285 000 in 2017/18. In addition, 20 000 non-grid connections in 2015/16, 20 000 in 2016/17 and 25 000 in 2017/18 will be implemented. During the same period, it is planned that 15 new substations will be built while 18 are upgraded.

Although the department has six entities reporting to the Minister of Energy, in 2014/15, the DoE made transfer payments to three of these entities to fund their the operations. These are the:

- Sanedi
- Necsa
- Nnr.

Collectively, transfer payments to these three entities accounted for 13% of the department's total 2014/15 budget allocation.

R162,7 million was transferred to Sanedi to fund its operational expenditure as well as undertake research related to hydraulic fracturing and carbon capture and storage. The two nuclear energy entities, Necsa and NNR, received R760,7 million and R33,7 million respectively.

Transfers to the three entities continue over the medium term. From 2015/16 to 2017/18, R145,3

million will be transferred to Sanedi, R1,8 billion to NECSA and R76,7 million to the NNR.

Infrastructure spending is expected to increase to R5,7 billion in 2015/16.

In 2014/15, a total of R40 billion in infrastructure grants was transferred to local governments for their water, sanitation, energy and environmental functions.

The private sector was also making an increasing contribution to infrastructure investment. Contracts for 47 renewable energy projects were concluded in 2012 and 2013, many of which are already under construction.

These added 2 460 MW of power capacity, and an investment of R70 billion. A further R45 billion investment was contracted in 2014/15.

The construction of the Medupi and Kusile power stations had progressed, with Medupi set to deliver power in 2014 and Kusile in 2015.

The Ingula pumped storage scheme will be Eskom's third such scheme with an output of 1 332 MW, mostly used during peak demand periods. Investment in these three projects was estimated at R250 billion.

Role players

National Energy Regulator of South Africa

Nersa is a regulatory authority established as a juristic person in terms of Section 3 of the National Energy Regulator Act, 2004 (Act 40 of 2004). Nersa's mandate is to regulate the electricity, piped-gas and petroleum pipelines industries in terms of the Electricity Regulation Act, 2006 (Act 4 of 2006), Gas Act, 2001 (Act 48 of 2001) and Petroleum Pipelines Act, 2003 (Act 60 of 2003). The structure of the energy regulator consists of nine members, five of whom are part-time, and four full-time, including the Chief Executive Officer.

Nersa has formulated the following five strategic outcome-oriented goals:

- facilitate security of supply to support sustainable socio-economic development in South Africa
- facilitate investment in infrastructure in the energy industry to support sustainable socio-economic development in South Africa

In August 2014, women in the energy sector came together to take stock of the challenges and successes of South African women at the Women's Seminar, which was a partnership between consulting company Mzesi Academy, the Department of Energy and the Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa, among others. The aim of the seminar was to demystify the nuclear industry, given that it is a complex one. Many developments can be expected in the nuclear field as South Africa increases its investment in the industry.

- promote competitive and efficient functioning of the energy industry in order to sustain socio-economic development in South Africa
- facilitate affordability and accessibility in the energy industry to balance the socio-economic interests of all stakeholders in support of economic development of South Africa and a better life for all
- position and establish Nersa as a credible and reliable regulator in order to create regulatory certainty.

National Nuclear Regulator

The NNR is responsible for the protection of people, property and the environment against nuclear damage.

Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa

Necsa is a wholly state-owned company. Its functions are to:

- undertake and promote research into nuclear energy and radiation sciences and technology
- process source, special nuclear and restricted material including uranium enrichment
- collaborate with other entities.

The Nuclear Energy Act of 1999 provides for the commercialisation of nuclear and related products and services, and delegates specific responsibilities to Necsa, including the implementation and execution of national safeguards and other international obligations. The Nuclear Energy Policy of 2008 elaborated on Necsa's mandate relating to research and development and nuclear fuel-cycle responsibilities.

Necsa's main function is to serve as the anchor for nuclear energy research and development, and innovation in South Africa. The research focuses mainly on nuclear technology applications such as:

- the production of medical isotopes
- applied chemistry with an emphasis on uranium chemistry
- the application of radiation and nuclear technologies
- aspects of the nuclear fuel cycle, including waste.

The corporation is also responsible for:

- operating the Safari-1 research reactor to undertake nuclear science research and development and to provide irradiation services for the production of medical radioisotopes
- decommissioning and decontaminating nuclear facilities
- implementing the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty and the Comprehensive Safeguards Agreement with the International Atomic

Energy Agency (IAEA); the Africa Regional Cooperative Agreement for Research, Development and Training related to Nuclear Science and Technology; and the Pelindaba Treaty.

In the medium term, Necsa will focus on:

- radiation research, products and services
- nuclear fuel research and development in relation to low-enriched uranium research-reactor production facilities
- nuclear component manufacturing to support future nuclear programmes and future power reactors
- contributing to higher industrial manufacturing standards and sustainable job creation.

South African National Energy Development Institute

Sanedi is mandated to stimulate innovation in energy research and development, transform the gender and race profile of researchers in the sector, and improve South Africa's competitiveness in energy research internationally.

Central Energy Fund

The CEF's spending focus over the medium term is on accelerating spending on infrastructure, as well as the development of renewable and alternative energy sources. Projects incorporated over the medium term include Ikhwezi, with a total approved budget of R11,2 billion; Sabre Oil and Gas in the Jubilee Production Field, with a total budget of R4 billion; and Irene and other downstream acquisitions, with a total estimated cost of R14 billion.

Other projects to be undertaken are Project Mthombo, and projects in Venezuela and Equatorial Guinea. Project Mthombo is a PetroSA initiative to build a world-class crude refinery in the Coega Industrial Development Zone (IDZ) in the Eastern Cape. The initiative in Equatorial Guinea is a drilling project, while the project in Venezuela relates to the acquisition of a mature field opportunity. This accounts for the strong growth in acquisition of assets over the medium term.

The CEF researches, finances, develops and exploits appropriate energy solutions across the spectrum of energy sources to meet South Africa's future energy needs. It is also mandated to manage the Equalisation Fund, which collects levies from the retail sales of petroleum products to eliminate unnecessary fluctuations in the retail price of liquid fuel and to give tariff protection to the synthetic fuel industry.

The objectives of the CEF are to:

- manage the energy business for the benefit of all South Africans

- play an active role in the governance and planning of all its subsidiaries and coordinating the long-term future of the group
- improve security of energy supply by diversifying sources, and building and managing strategic energy stocks and energy infrastructure
- develop and invest in renewable and alternative energy sources and in energy efficiency
- develop human capacity and invest in relevant research and development
- manage and optimally exploit local strategic energy and related resources
- mitigate against environmental impacts and maximise sustainable development.

Integrated energy centres (IECs)

Government has identified access to energy for people in areas of greatest need as an urgent requirement to facilitate socio-economic development. One of the many approaches that the DoE has developed to address energy poverty through deliberate interventions in the second economy is the IECs programme.

The department is partnering with relevant stakeholders, the private sector, municipalities and communities in establishing the IECs. As a result, this is a public-private partnership venture.

An IEC is a one-stop energy supplier, owned and operated by the community cooperative and organised as a community project. It provides energy solutions to communities; access to affordable, safe and sustainable energy services; information and awareness on how to handle and use energy services such as paraffin and LPG and small, medium and micro enterprise development through partnerships with key stakeholders, such as the National Development Agency and the Department of Trade and Industry.

The six IECs are: Kgalagadi and Moshaweng in Kuruman, Northern Cape; Eshane in Greytown, KwaZulu-Natal; Caba Mdeni in Matatiele and Mbizana, Eastern Cape; Mutale in Thohoyandou, Limpopo; and Ratlou in Makgobistad, North West.

Sasol

Sasol is a leader in various energy fields, including the Sasol Slurry Phase Distillate Process (SPD process). Through this process, natural gas is transformed into energy and chemical products, including transport fuels, base oils, waxes, paraffin and naphtha.

The company develops and commences Sasol is expanding internationally based on a unique value proposition. The company is listed

on the JSE Limited in South Africa and on the New York Stock Exchange in the United States of America (USA).

The company is one of the world's largest producers of synthetic fuels. It mines coal in South Africa and produces natural gas and condensate in Mozambique, oil in Gabon and shale gas in Canada.

Sasol continues to advance its upstream oil and gas activities in West and southern Africa, the Asia Pacific region and Canada. In South Africa, Sasol refines imported crude oil and sells retail liquid fuels through its network of some 400 service stations and supplies gas to industrial customers. It also supplies fuels to other licensed wholesalers in the region.

Through Sasol Synfuels International, Sasol is pursuing international opportunities to commercialise its gas-to-liquids (GTL) and coal-to-liquids (CTL) technology.

In June 2014, Sasol said its synthetic fuels production year-on-year was stable, as it announced plans to build a plant in the USA with Ineos Group. Ineos and Sasol plan to build a high-density polyethylene plant in La Porte, Texas, that will start in 2016 and produce 470 000 t of the material used in pipes, bottles and containers annually.

Sasol planned to make a final investment decision in 2014 on an ethane cracker project in Westlake, Louisiana, and a gas-to-liquids plant at the site 24 months later.

The GTL plant would be the first of its kind in the USA.

Sasol's energy cluster focuses on the manufacturing, refining and marketing of automotive and industrial fuels, oils and gas.

With partners in China, the company launched a feasibility study into a CTL plant with a potential capacity of around 80 000 barrels per day.

End products include petrol; diesel; jet fuel; fuel oil; illuminating paraffin; liquefied petroleum gas; pipeline gas; lubricants and greases; bitumen and naphtha.

Sasol's local energy cluster comprises the following:

- Sasol Oil, which handles crude oil refining activities as well as the blending and marketing of liquid fuels and lubricants.
- Sasol Gas, which supplies pipeline gas to industrial and commercial customers.
- Sasol Mining, which produces about 40 million tons (Mt) of saleable coal a year.
- Sasol Synfuels, which operates the coal-based synfuels manufacturing facility at Secunda, in Mpumalanga.

Eskom

Eskom generates, transmits and distributes electricity to industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential customers and redistributors. Additional power stations and major power lines are being built to meet rising electricity demand in South Africa. Eskom will continue to focus on improving and strengthening its core business of electricity generation, transmission, trading and distribution.

Eskom buys electricity from and sells it to the countries of the Southern African Development Community (SADC). Future involvement in African markets outside South Africa – the SADC countries connected to the South African grid and the rest of Africa – is limited to those projects that have a direct impact on ensuring security of supply for South Africa.

In October 2014, Eskom's Medupi power station project received its boiler registration certificate. This was the first of the six Medupi units that was synchronised with the national electricity grid in December 2014.

Southern African Power Pool (SAPP)

The SAPP allows the free trading of electricity between SADC member countries, providing South Africa with access to the vast hydropower potential in the countries to the north, notably the significant potential in the Congo River (Inga Falls). The SAPP has made it possible for members to delay capital expenditure on new plants due to the existence of interconnections and a power pool in the region. SAPP member countries are Angola, Botswana, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

Other role players

- iGas is the official state agency for the development of the hydrocarbon gas industry in southern Africa.
- PetroSA is a government-owned oil and gas company mandated by Cabinet to lead developments in gas infrastructure in the Western Cape.
- The Petroleum Agency of South Africa promotes the exploration and exploitation of

natural oil and gas, both onshore and offshore, in South Africa and undertakes the necessary marketing, promotion and monitoring of operations.

- Petronet owns, operates, manages and maintains a network of 3 000 km of high-pressure petroleum and gas pipelines, on behalf of the Government.

Energy resources

South Africa produces about 5% of its fuel needs from gas, about 35% from coal and about 50% from local crude oil refineries. About 10% is imported from refineries elsewhere in the world. The country has a sizeable capital stock and management capacity to produce fuel from gas. The DoE's Hydrocarbons and Energy Planning Branch is responsible for coal, gas, liquid fuels, energy efficiency, renewable energy and energy planning, including the energy database.

Liquid fuels

The recommendations made in the Energy, Security Master Plan for Liquid Fuels, approved by Cabinet in 2007, continue to be implemented, with the focus primarily on addressing short to medium-term infrastructural constraints within the liquid fuels sector.

South Africa faces a number of specific challenges in the liquid fuels sector:

- Gas stocks for the existing gas-to-liquids plant from offshore fields are declining.
- Refining capacity has run out and South Africa now has to import a share of its refined fuel needs. There are five options to deal with this, namely:
 - building a new oil-to-liquid refinery (such as the proposed Mthombo Project in Coega)
 - building a new CTL refinery
 - upgrading the existing refineries; allowing significant expansion of one or more of the existing refineries
 - importing refined products
 - building a refinery in Angola or Nigeria and buying a share of the product of that refinery.
- Other issues related to liquid fuels include:
 - clean fuel standards
 - vehicle carbon tax
 - electric vehicles
 - use of public transport.

The South African liquid-fuels sector presents several opportunities for investors throughout the petroleum value chain.

A key feature of the South African liquid-fuels sector is that most transport fuel is produced in the coastal areas, about 68% of which is consumed in Gauteng. This requires investments

In 2014, South Africa took a leading global position in the conversion of sunlight into electricity through the development of new generation thin-film photovoltaic technology. This technology was fully developed in South Africa and is now produced at Technopark, Stellenbosch.

The PTiP demonstration plant is now used to demonstrate the advantages of the new technology to the world. In terms of cost and quality, the technology and product can compete with any similar product world-wide.

Electricity resellers have an important role to play in property management. Municipalities have created the need for resellers by implementing a policy of supplying only one electricity meter per property. The internal distribution to multiple end-users became the responsibility of the developer and later the landlord or body corporate. In the last few years some municipalities have introduced bulk domestic tariffs at which the resellers may buy the electricity and reseller tariffs at which they are supposed to sell the electricity to domestic end-users. The City of Tshwane is at the forefront of this and the energy regulator Nersa has recently compelled the metropolitan councils to accommodate resellers in their tariff structure.

in storage and distribution facilities for the supply of petroleum products at the point of need.

The construction of the new multi-product pipeline, which was funded under the DoE through Transnet, was completed. The new 555-km pipeline, which has a 70-year design life, runs from Durban to Gauteng. It can transport jet fuel, 93-grade and 95-grade unleaded petrol, low-sulphur diesel and ultra-low-sulphur diesel.

The trunk pipeline, with pump stations, terminals and a 160-km inland pipeline network, came into operation at the end of 2013, increasing capacity from the existing 4,4 billion litres to 8,4 billion litres.

These mega infrastructural projects and related support infrastructure require a close and ongoing partnership between state-owned enterprises and private companies.

Oil and natural gas

South Africa has very limited oil reserves. About 60% of its crude oil requirements are met by imports from the Middle East and Africa.

Refined petroleum products such as petrol, diesel, residual fuel oil, paraffin, jet fuel, aviation gasoline, LPG and refinery gas are produced by the following methods:

- crude oil refining (oil refineries)
- CTL and GTL fuels (Sasol)
- natural GTL (PetroSA).

Government regulates wholesale margins and controls the retail price of petrol. The industry has entered into product-exchange agreements to serve different markets.

Together, these controls provide for access to fuel throughout the country and protect consumers, while rendering a reasonable return on investment to the oil industry and enhancing opportunities for employment.

Refineries and Sasol produce LPG and illuminating paraffin (kerosene). Most LPG is consumed in the country and the rest is used in refineries as fuel and/or exported regionally.

The DoE views natural gas as an evolving energy source, despite the country's limited gas

reserves. There are projects underway to explore the potential of importing natural gas, both as liquid natural gas and compressed natural gas.

To this end, the Integrated Resources Plan (IRP) was developed, which incorporates gas among alternative energy sources for electricity generation. The IRP presents a 20-year view on South Africa's energy mix that seeks to balance growth in demand with South Africa's commitments to reduce its dependence on coal and to lower climate-changing emissions.

The IRP aims to:

- improve the country's global competitiveness
- support job creation
- improve the management of natural resources
- reduce and mitigate greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions in line with reduction targets.

In August 2013, South Africa's state-owned oil and gas company PetroSA launched a R15-million geoscience collaboration, visualisation and technology centre, which will prove a boost to gas exploration and drilling. Geoscientists, engineers and technical officials will be able to collaborate in the Ulwazi (Knowledge) Collaboration and Visualisation Centre, which is equipped with various screens and computers that can display 3D imaging of subsurface formations. This will make it possible to take better informed and faster decisions when drilling for gas.

The centre can also be used daily to monitor and guide drilling operations for PetroSA's gas drilling project Ikhwezi located off the East Coast to sustain its GTL refinery in Mossel Bay.

Using data fed back from drilling bits on such things as sand or rock type or the resistivity of the substance being drilled, officials will also be able to adjust where exactly to drill, compare data from old drilling sites and make changes to the angle or direction of its active drill bits.

This is particularly useful to the Ikhwezi project where horizontal drilling is taking place 1,5 km along the basin at a depth of four kilometres from the surface.

Alternative gas resources

Experiments are underway to assess the potential for mining coal-bed methane gas.

Underground coal gassification technology is also being developed.

According to the USA Energy Information Administration, technically recoverable shale-gas resources in South Africa form the fifth largest reserve globally.

Since the publication of draft regulations on shale gas development, substantive inputs have been received from interested and affected stakeholders. The regulations to guide shale

gas exploration were at a consultation stage by November 2014.

In August 2014, government said it is ready to regulate and monitor companies that have expressed an interest in exploring shale gas in the country.

The Department of Mineral Resources first halted new applications for exploration rights in 2011 to investigate the impact that the process would have on the environment, and an inter-departmental task team was set up to head this process.

Government is clear that shale gas will form a part of the energy mix going forward.

There will be ongoing research, facilitated by relevant institutions, to develop and enhance scientific knowledge, including but not limited to the geo-hydrology of the prospective areas, methodologies for hydraulic fracturing in South Africa and environmental impact.

Electricity

Electricity demand is expected to double over the next 20 years as government implements its Programme of Action, including the Infrastructure Development Programme, to put the country's economy onto a higher growth path.

To this end, more than R340 billion will be spent on Eskom's New Build Programme. This will bring on line a further 11 641 MW of new capacity in the short term, adding to Eskom's existing 40 000 MW of capacity.

In December 2014, the departments of energy, cooperative governance and traditional affairs, public enterprises, national treasury, economic development, water and sanitation and Eskom – as well as technical officials were overseeing the implementation of government's five-point plan to address the electricity challenges facing the country.

Government said the five-point plan would address the strain the electricity system faces.

The five-point plan covers:

- the interventions that Eskom will undertake
- harnessing the cogeneration opportunity through the extension of existing contracts with the private sector
- accelerating the programme for substitution of diesel with gas to fire up the diesel power plants
- launching a coal independent power producer programme
- managing demand through specific interventions within residential dwellings, public and commercial buildings and municipalities through retrofitting energy efficient technologies.

To meet the country's future energy requirements, government is implementing an energy mix

which comprises coal, solar, wind, hydro, gas and nuclear energy. In future, biomass, wind power, solar power and hydro-power will contribute 11,4 Gigawatts of renewable energy to the grid.

Coal

South Africa's indigenous energy-resource base is dominated by coal.

By international standards, South Africa's coal deposits are relatively shallow with thick seams, making them easier and cheaper to mine. At the present production rate, it is estimated that there more than 50 years of coal supply left.

Coal provides for about 65% of South Africa's primary energy needs. This is unlikely to change significantly in the next two decades, owing to the relative lack of suitable alternatives to coal as an energy source.

In addition to the extensive use of coal in the domestic economy, about 28% of South Africa's production is exported, mainly through the Richards Bay Coal Terminal, making South Africa the fourth largest coal exporting country in the world.

South Africa's coal is obtained from collieries that range from among the largest in the world to small-scale producers.

About 51% of South African coal mining is done underground, while the rest is produced by open-cast methods.

The coal-mining industry is highly concentrated, with five companies accounting for 85% of saleable coal production.

Production is concentrated in large mines, with 11 mines accounting for 70% of the output. South African coal for local electricity production is among the cheapest in the world. The beneficiation of coal, particularly for export, results in more than 65 Mt of coal discards being produced every year.

About 21% of the run-of-mine coal produced is exported, and 21% is used locally (excluding power-station coal). The rest is not saleable and is discarded.

The remainder of South Africa's coal production feeds the various local industries:

- 62% is used for electricity generation
- 23% for petrochemical industries (Sasol)
- 8% for general industry
- 4% for the metallurgical industry (Mittal)
- 4% is purchased by merchants and sold locally or exported.

The key role played by South Africa's coal reserves in the economy is illustrated by the fact that Eskom ranks first in the world as a steam coal user and seventh as an electricity generator. Sasol is the largest coal-to-chemicals producer in the world.

Renewable and alternative fuels

On renewable energy such as solar and wind, the DoE has procured over 3 900 MW of renewable energy with about 1 000 MW already in operation and 1 400 MW planned to come online during 2016.

Work is underway to procure the remaining megawatts in line with the IRP 2010. About 2 500 MW has been allocated for coal programme procurement from IPPs.

Work on the Grand Inga Project to secure 2 500 MW is continuing, while an energy agreement between South Africa and the DRC has been signed.

The agreement, which was signed in September 2014, provides a legal framework for cooperation between the two countries.

The Medupi Power Station Unit 6 synchronization was on track for the end of December 2014, with grid connection and full operation was around June 2015.

Biofuel

South Africa has remained a peripheral participant in the international biofuel sector's growth. There are several reasons for this:

- Being a relatively new sector, there are various complex regulatory barriers to be finalised.
- The global economic crisis and the resultant reduction in oil prices reduced the commercial viability of some investments and negatively affected investor sentiment.
- National debates focus on food-versus-fuel arguments and the potential to create biofuels using crop surpluses.

South Africa has significant potential to develop a commercially viable biofuels sector, notwithstanding the country's water-poor status. The Industrial Development Corporation (IDC) and the CEF are the main investors in the sector, in South Africa. The IDC, in particular, is involved in all four of South Africa's current biofuel projects.

The biofuels sector has strong linkages to agriculture, manufacturing and distribution, and has the potential to create substantial numbers of labour-intensive jobs in the agriculture sector in particular.

In addition, second-generation biofuel technology will also contribute to South Africa meeting its renewable energy targets sustainably.

Government has committed to a 2% blend target for biofuels inclusion in the national fuel supply. If South Africa increased its blending target to 10%, some 125 000 direct jobs could be created, many of which would be based in rural areas, where poverty is widespread.

South Africa set the beginning of October 2015 as the date from which fuel producers would have to blend diesel and petrol with biofuels.

Fuel producers would be required to blend a minimum of 5% biodiesel in diesel and between 2% and 10% of bioethanol in petrol.

Biofuels are expected to reduce the country's reliance on imported fuel.

The biofuels industry in South Africa, the continent's biggest agricultural producer, has been held back by an inadequate regulatory regime and concerns that biofuels would hurt food security and affect food prices.

Canola, sunflower and soya are feedstock for biodiesel, while sugarcane and sugar beet are feedstock for ethanol.

The Government said maize, South Africa's staple food, could not be used in the production of biofuels to ensure food security and control high prices.

Hydropower

Energy from water can be generated from waves, tides, waterfalls and rivers and will never be depleted as long as water is available. South Africa has a mix of small hydroelectricity stations and pumped-water storage schemes.

Pumping uses some electricity, but this is done in off-peak periods. During peak hours, when extra electricity is needed, the water is released through a turbine that drives an electric generator. Peak hours are usually from 06:00 to 08:00 and 18:00 to 20:00.

South Africa used to import electricity from the Cahora Bassa hydropower station in Mozambique and will do so again once the transmission line is repaired. There is also the potential to import more hydropower from countries such as Zambia, Zimbabwe and DRC, which could make South Africa less dependent on coal-fired power stations.

Irrespective of the size of its installation, any hydropower development will require authorisation in terms of the National Water Act 1998, (Act 36 of 1998).

The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are endowed with the best potential for the development of small, i.e. less than 1 MW, hydropower plants. These plants can either be stand-alones or in a hybrid combination with other renewable energy sources. Advantage can be derived from the association with other uses of water – such as water supply, irrigation and flood control – which are critical to the future economic and socio-economic development of South Africa.

Ocean energy could potentially be derived from the various characteristics of the sea.

Eskom is continuing resource surveys of the Agulhas Current on the east coast of South Africa and of wave energy, in partnership with the DEA and the Bayworld Centre for Research and Education.

Results have proved the technical feasibility of extracting significant large-scale renewable energy from the current.

According to the IRP's 20-year projection on electricity supply and demand, about 6% of electricity generated in the country will be required to come from hydro resources.

Solar power

Most areas in South Africa average more than 2 500 hours of sunshine per year, and average daily solar-radiation levels range between 4,5 kWh/m² and 6,5 kWh/m² in one day. The southern African region and in fact the whole of Africa, is well endowed with sunshine all year round. The annual 24-hour global solar radiation average is about 220 W/m² for South Africa. The solar resource is the most readily accessible in South Africa. It lends itself to a number of potential uses.

In November 2014, SolarReserve, a global developer of solar power projects and solar thermal technology, announced that the 96 MW photovoltaic (PV) Jasper solar power project is fully operational.

Jasper is located in the Northern Cape in a solar park that also includes the 75 MW Lesedi solar power project, which came online in May 2014.

In addition to helping South Africa meet its electricity needs, the Jasper Project will bring long lasting economic benefits to the region.

With over 325 000 PV modules, the Jasper Project will deliver 180 000 MW-hours of renewable electricity annually for South African residents.

The power generated is enough to power up to 80 000 households through a 20-year power purchase agreement with Eskom.

The project also marked Google's first renewable energy investment in Africa – the Internet search invested US\$12 million in the solar project.

In August 2014, China-based solar PV giant, Jinko Solar, has officially opened a state-of-the-art factory in Cape Town, creating 250 jobs and producing 1 300 solar PV modules a day.

Jinko Solar opened this facility in response to the roll out of the South African REIPPP where 1484MW of solar PV projects have been procured. Since the inception of this programme, Jinko Solar has deployed over 300MW of solar PV panels, reaching approximately 30% market share.

The opening of Jinko's state-of-the-art production facility in Cape Town highlights the attractiveness of South Africa as an investment destination. It will contribute further to establishing the country as a hub for renewable energy and other green economy industries.

Wind power

The R3-billion Jeffrey's Bay wind farm, located between the towns of Jeffreys Bay and Humansdorp in the Eastern Cape, was officially inaugurated in July 2014.

Built by a consortium led by British company Globeleq, the 138 megawatt (MW) wind farm is one of Africa's biggest - larger than the 120 MW Ashegoda windfarm that was unveiled by Ethiopia in October 2013, though not as big as the Tarfaya wind farm in south-western Morocco, which started producing energy in April and will eventually generate up to 300 MW of electricity.

The Jeffrey's Bay wind farm, comprising sixty 80-metre high turbines spread over 3 700 hectares, will supply enough clean, renewable electricity to power more than 100 000 homes a year, helping South Africa to avoid production of 420 000 tonnes of carbon dioxide annually.

The facility was built under the government's renewable energy programme for independent power producers, which aims to add 3 725 MW of wind, solar photovoltaic and concentrating solar power to South Africa's energy mix.

Hybrid systems

Hybrid energy systems are a combination of two or more renewable energy sources such as photovoltaic, wind, micro-hydro, storage batteries and fuel-powered generator sets to provide a reliable off-grid supply.

There are two pilot hybrid systems in the Eastern Cape at the Hluleka Nature Reserve on the Wild Coast and at the neighbouring Lucingweni community.

Tradable renewables

The *White Paper on Renewable Energy Policy* proposed that tradable renewable energy certificates be investigated to find out whether these could be one of the funding streams to support the implementation of the renewable energy programme in South Africa. This would be in addition to other funding options, i.e. sale of physical electrical power through a power purchase agreement into the electrical grid at prevailing electricity market prices and certified emission reductions trading through the clean development mechanism (CDM), a UN framework mechanism that encourages developing countries to implement emission-

reduction projects to earn certified emission reductions.

A tradable renewable energy certificate is an electronic record that verifies the origin of energy by a registered renewable energy entity. It is also referred to as a green certificate or green tag. Tradable renewable energy certificates are based on separating the various attributes of renewable resource-based energy provision from the physical energy carrier, electric or otherwise. It is another revenue stream for renewable energy IPPs and its major advantage is that, apart from potential extra income, certificates can be traded worldwide and separately from the electricity grid infrastructure.

Nuclear

In November 2014, South Africa held its second nuclear vendor parade with China, France, the USA and South Korea.

South Africa's nuclear energy policy was approved in 2008 and was further enhanced by the approval of the IRP 2010 – 2030, which stipulates that nuclear power will form part of the country's energy mix to a level of 9 600 MW.

The nuclear vendor parade workshops entail vendor countries presenting their nuclear technology offerings.

The NDP enjoins DoE to do thorough investigations on various aspects of the nuclear power generation programme before a procurement decision is taken. The vendor parade workshops form part of the Government's technical investigation in preparation for a procurement decision.

South Africa already held one workshop in October 2014 with Russia.

The platform is created for vendor countries to showcase and demonstrate their capabilities on how, if chosen, they plan to meet South Africa's needs.

Government remains committed to ensure energy security for the country, through the roll-out of the nuclear new build programme as an integral part of the energy mix. Government remains committed to ensuring the provision of reliable and sustainable electricity supply, as part of mitigating the risk of carbon emissions.

The nuclear new build programme will enable the country to create jobs, develop skills, create industries, and catapult the country into a knowledge economy.

Proper safety measures were put in place and overseen by the appropriate expert authorities. As a member of the IAEA, South Africa is obliged to comply with the relevant guidelines and safeguards on nuclear plants.

The nuclear sector in South Africa is mainly governed by the Nuclear Energy Act, 1999

(Act 46 of 1999) and the NNR Act of 1999. The DoE administers these Acts.

The Department of Health (DoH) administers the Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act 15 of 1973), related to Group 3 and Group 4 hazardous substances.

Skills development strategies and acquisition and retention of the relevant skills to support the nuclear programme are addressed in the following categories:

- construction
- plant-operation
- skills for the relevant government departments
- regulatory skills
- supporting industry skills
- decommissioning and rehabilitation
- radioactive waste management.

The Nuclear Fuel Cycle Strategy for the beneficiation of uranium resources is a key factor with special focus on:

- securing uranium mineral resources
- developing a uranium conversion plant
- developing a uranium enrichment plant
- developing a fuel fabrication plant.

Eskom is investigating the possibility of generating up to 20 000 MW of new nuclear power capacity by 2025. This will entail recapitalising certain nuclear agencies, financing others and setting up new ones.

The main organisations directly involved in the nuclear sector fulfil the following functions:

- The DoH's Directorate: Radiation Control issues licences for Group 3 hazardous substances (electronic product-generating X-rays, other ionising beams, electrons, neutrons or other particle radiation or non-ionising radiation) and Group 4 hazardous substances (radioactive material outside a nuclear installation, which does not form part of or is used or intended to be used in the nuclear fuel cycle, and which is used or intended to be used for medical, scientific, agricultural, commercial or industrial purposes).
- The Koeberg Nuclear Power Station is responsible for about 6% of total electricity generation and is owned by Eskom.
- The iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences brings together scientists working in the physical, medical and biological sciences. The facilities provide opportunities for modern research, advanced education, the treatment of cancers and the production of unique radioisotopes.
- The nuclear fuels corporation of South Africa is responsible for uranium-ore refinement and export.

Programmes and projects

The department participates in the Women in Nuclear South Africa Programme. Government is expected to accelerate preparatory work to ensure greater reliance on nuclear energy and other renewable energies. The department has introduced initiatives such as the South African Young Nuclear Professionals Society and the Women in Nuclear South Africa Programme to promote the industry among historically disadvantaged people.

Wind Resource Map

The DoE launched the country's first Large Scale High Resolution (250 m) Wind Resource Map in July 2013. The data is based on the Verified Numerical Wind Atlas for South Africa (WASA). It includes important information such as ground surface terrain effects that determine the local wind climate and, in turn, can be used to identify high-yielding wind development zones; and the estimation of available wind energy and capacity which can be used by prospective wind farm developers of all sizes in their planning process.

The Wind Resource Map offers important benefits for planners, policy makers and industry. These benefits include cost and timing savings as the viability, in terms of wind speed, of a potential site can be predicted with known and traceable accuracy, while it also levels the playing field between small or large industry players to identify and develop project sites for wind farms.

It will also assist government in calculating the potential yield of wind energy resources, among other things.

The Large Scale High Resolution Wind Resource Map is available to the public from the WASA's online portal <http://wasadata.csir.co.za/wasa1/WASAData>.

The purpose of the WASA is to improve knowledge and the quality of resource assessment methods and tools, to make available this knowledge and tools free of charge for planning and development of wind farms and off-grid electrification, and to build capacity of local institutions to do wind resource measurements.

Integrated Resources Plan

The IRP 2010 – 2030 envisages 9 600 MW additional nuclear capacity by 2030. The IRP is a 20-year projection on electricity supply and demand.

Following the Fukushima nuclear accident, South Africa, through the NNR, needed to find assurance in terms of the safety of existing installations. The safety of the Safari-1 research reactor and Koeberg nuclear power station were reassessed.

In September 2013, the DoE launched the public-consultation phase for the formulation of an Integrated Energy Plan (IEP) for South Africa, which it says should be published during the course of 2014.

The publication of an IEP is a requirement of the National Energy Act of 2008, but South Africa has hitherto not had a fully consulted IEP as envisaged in the legislation, despite having published an Integrated Resource Plan for electricity early in 2011.

Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement (REIPPP) Bidding Programme

This programme is an indication that government wants to create space for IPPs to also generate electricity in the country. By 2014, under the REIPPP the department was expected to enter Window 3 having already selected bidders for a total of 2 614 MW to be added to the country's power grid by 2016.

South Africa wants to procure 3 625 MW of renewable energy through this process.

According to the IRP 2010, about 42% of electricity generated in South Africa has to come from renewable resources.

Job opportunities, local content and community development are the essential ingredients of the programme.

Localisation needs constant emphasis because in its design and implementation, the REIPPP is biased toward the economic development of the country with bidders being subjected to local content assessment.

Integrated National Electrification Programme (Inep)

Inep is an initiative of government to provide capital subsidies to municipalities to address the electrification backlog of permanently occupied residential dwellings.

The purpose of the Inep is to manage the electrification planning, funding and implementation process with the aim of addressing electrification backlog and to reach universal access by 2014.

New Build Programme

Eskom's New Build Programme was launched in 2005 with the aim of adding more than 17 000 MW to the national electricity grid by 2018. Two new coal power stations are under construction – the 4 800-MW Medupi Power Station near Lephalale in Limpopo and Kusile in Mpumalanga, which is also expected to have an output of 4 800 MW.

By November 2014, steady progress was being made with regards to the construction of

the Medupi coal fired power station in Limpopo, to deliver Unit 6 within the December deadline.

Medupi is scheduled for full commercial operation by 2015 and Kusile by 2018, although individual units will be brought online earlier as they are completed.

By October 2014, work was progressing well at Eskom's Kusile power station, with the barring gear motor at Unit 1 of the power station being switched.

Kusile, which is being built near Emalahleni in Mpumalanga, is a six-unit coal fired power station that will generate approximately 4 800 MW of electricity.

The power station's unit six is set to see first power to the grid in the second half of 2015.

Carbon capture and storage roadmap

Although South Africa has a programme to increase the use of renewable energy and energy efficiency, coal is likely to provide most of the country's primary energy for the next few decades.

The displacement of fossil fuels by renewable and nuclear energy is seen as a gradual task. Carbon capture and storage is a transition measure from fossil fuel to nuclear and renewable energy. To this end, the South African Centre for Carbon Capture and Storage was established in March 2009.

The five phases of the roadmap and their status are as follows:

- A preliminary investigation was undertaken by the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research for the then Department of Minerals and Energy to ascertain whether South Africa had potential capturable CO₂ sources and storage sites. The results of that investigation, released in 2004, showed that South Africa had capturable emissions and potential storage sites. Preliminary investigation identified that the synfuel industry in South Africa produced 30 Mt per year of 95% concentration CO₂.
- The Carbon Dioxide Geological Storage Atlas, launched in August 2010, will locate and characterise potential storage sites at a theoretical level and on a geological basin extent. The atlas will then be taken into the South African Centre for Carbon Capture and Storage's programme of work and developed to locate a storage site suitable for a test injection. Pre-atlas knowledge had identified four possible CO₂ geological storage basins:
 - Orange Basin (offshore of the west coast)
 - Outeniqua Basin (offshore of the southern coastline and site of the only producing gas/petroleum wells in South Africa)
 - Durban/Zululand Basin (east coast)

- Karoo On-Shore Basin (near the main coal fields and most coal-based electricity generation and synfuel production).

The first three are conventional types of storage that is depleted oil/gas wells and deep saline formations. The fourth, the Karoo Basin, has sandstone formations that are subject to low permeability and also to dolerite intrusions.

Consequently, further investigation is required as to how CO₂ could be stored in these less favourable formations.

The Karoo Basin is the closest to the major sources of CO₂ emissions.

- The CO₂ Test Injection Experiment of safely injecting CO₂ into South African reservoirs is essential to understanding the suitability of the local geology as a storage medium. It is also necessary to ascertain the dispersion and transformation reactions of CO₂ in the storage medium and its effects on the surroundings of the storage medium. This experiment will be informed by similar injection activities underway internationally.
- A demonstration plant will test an integrated operating system under local conditions and form an essential link between feasibility trials and a full-scale commercial plant. This phase will demonstrate the safe injection of CO₂ into South African geological formations. The magnitude of the demonstration plant is in the order of hundreds of thousands of tons of CO₂ per year.
- If positive outcomes of the demonstration plant ensue, a full-scale commercial plant is envisaged. This phase will depend on the outputs of the previous phases.

Working for Energy Programme

The Working for Energy Programme is a social programme mainly intended to provide energy services derived from renewable resources to rural and urban low-income houses. In this manner it facilitates job creation, skills development, community-based enterprise development and the emancipation of youth, women and people with disabilities.

It is an integral part of the Expanded Public Works Programme. The programme was conceived in 2008/09 and transferred by the DoE to Saneri.

The major focus area is the provision of sustainable energy solutions (supply side) with special emphasis on the youth, women and people with disabilities in rural areas and low-income urban communities in terms of:

- labour-intensive options, targeting short-term employment opportunities
- sustainable employment opportunities, and enhancing stimulated local economic activity

- community development initiatives and cross-cutting human capital development.

Designated National Authority (DNA) for Clean Development Mechanism

The DoE is mandated to regulate and promote the implementation of a CDM in South Africa. This is done to make sure that South Africa complies with its obligations under the Kyoto Protocol and the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change.

As custodian of the CDM, the DNA is responsible for ensuring that CDM investments are in line with sustainable development objectives and that South Africa benefits from the CDM.

Liquid Fuels Roadmap

As a result of identified constraints throughout the liquid-fuels supply chain, the DoE embarked on a process to develop a liquid-fuels infrastructure roadmap. A key objective of this roadmap is to ensure that South Africa has access to reliable, affordable, clean, sufficient and sustainable sources of energy to meet the country's liquid fuel demand.

The 20-Year Liquid Fuels Infrastructure Plan

The 20-Year Liquid Fuels Infrastructure Plan will form the basis for the implementation of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission Strategic Implementation Project regarding refinery upgrades and development, and will make recommendations on the future of the refinery infrastructure in the country.

As a further response to the global situation and domestic development imperatives, the department decided to strengthen the Strategic Fuels Fund (SFF), a subsidiary of the CEF. The DoE will position the SFF to improve the country's strategic petroleum reserves and enable the country to better respond to catastrophic global events that impact on the petroleum trade.

Renewable energy programmes from Eskom

Eskom has an active research programme investigating ways to harness South Africa's renewable energy sources for power generation. Eskom is looking to increase the renewables component of its supply mix.

The long-term strategic energy plan includes a mix of all viable sources, including renewables, to be implemented where commercially viable. The two most advanced areas under investigation are wind-generated and concentrated solar thermal power.

Eskom's renewable energy journey has been affected by several factors, including the changing nature of power generation, environmental concerns and procuring loans that will fund solar and wind-electricity generation.

Sere Wind Farm

Eskom has awarded technology group Siemens the contract to supply 46 wind turbines to its 100 MW Sere wind farm project being developed on a 3 700-ha site near Vredendal in the Western Cape. The R2,4-billion renewable-energy project was scheduled to begin feeding electricity into the grid by the first half of 2014.

The turbine contract comprises about 65% of the project's total capital expenditure, with the other main contract being for the supply, installation and commissioning of a 132-kV transmission line and a substation close to the project site.

Sere is receiving some of its funding from the World Bank's US\$3,75-billion Eskom Investment Support Project, approved in 2010 primarily to support the Medupi coal-fired power station. Additional funding was secured from the African Development Bank (AfDB), the French development agency, Agence Française de Développement (AFD), and the Clean Technology Fund.

In total, the World Bank component comprises 32,4% of the overall funding plan for Sere, situated about 300 km north of Cape Town. The AFD component, meanwhile, is 36,7%, while the AfDB component comprises 26,8%. Eskom is carrying the development costs.

Each turbine has a height of 115 m, a rotor diameter of 108 m and a power output of 2,3 MW.

The turbine order was the second for Siemens in South Africa, with the first having been awarded by the developers of the 138-MW Jeffreys Bay wind farm.

The Eastern Cape wind project secured a power purchase agreement following the first bidding round under South Africa's Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme.

Mainstream Renewable Power, Globeleq, Thebe Investments, Enzani and Usizo constructed the project.

Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme

The Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme near Van Reenen in KwaZulu-Natal, consists of an upper and a lower dam; both with the capacity to hold about 22 million cubic metres of water capacity.

The dams, 4,6 km apart, are connected by underground waterways, through an

underground powerhouse accommodating 4 x 333-MW pump turbines.

During times of peak energy consumption, water will be released from the upper dam through the pump turbines to the lower dam to generate electricity.

During times of low-energy demand the pump turbines are used to pump the water from the lower dam back up to the upper dam. The project came on line during 2013/14.

Underground coal gassification

Eskom also has an underground coal gassification project in the pilot stage, with a test plant next to Majuba Power Station in Mpumalanga. The gas produced is co-fired with coal in Majuba's Unit Four, and contributes 3 MW to the station's output.

The process entails using coal seams that cannot be mined for various reasons – they may be too deep, fractured, or of poor quality – and turns the coal into clean gas on site. With the region's substantial coal reserves, there is potential in this source of power. Eskom has developed a 10-year transmission development plan which includes renewable energy integration.

Concentrated solar power

A solar park is a concentrated zone of solar plants that are built in clusters, sharing common transmission and infrastructure. Together, these clusters generate thousands of megawatts of electricity. The types of technology used are solar PV and concentrated PV, which operate with semiconductors and solar panels, as well as concentrated solar power, which uses mirrors to reflect the sun's rays.

PV systems make a direct conversion into electricity, and are ideal to use at peak load times. However, there is no cost-effective way to store this power.

Concentrated solar power, on the other hand, captures the sun as heat and turns it into steam to power turbines, which in turn generate electricity – much like coal-fired plants. Its advantage is that it is cheap and efficient to store heat, so power can be supplied around the clock.

International cooperation

At bilateral level, the DoE signed seven agreements/declarations of intent with Denmark, the DRC, Ghana, the International Energy Agency, Korea, Lesotho and the Swiss Confederation. These agreements cover access to capacity-building, funding, technology, exchange of information and the development of energy infrastructure on the continent, with the objective of increasing generation capacity.

The Royal Danish Embassy and the GEF through the South African Wind Energy Project financially supports the WASA.

In August 2014, Cabinet approved the ratification of the treaty on the Grand Inga hydropower project between South Africa and DRC, paving the way for the next phase of what could eventually become the largest hydroelectric project in the world, with the potential to power half the continent.

The Grand Inga project will seek to harness the power potential of the Congo River, sub-Saharan Africa's greatest waterway. Once all seven of its planned phases are complete, it is expected to generate a massive 40 000 megawatts (MW) of renewable power.

Two existing dams, Inga 1 and 2, have been in operation since 1972 and 1982 respectively, together generating nearly 1 800 MW. The next phase of the Grand Inga project, Inga 3, is expected to cost in the region of US\$12 billion and produce around 4 800 MW of electricity. Subsequent phases, adding up to an eventual total capacity of 40 000 MW, will allow countries in southern Africa, north-east Africa and parts of west Africa to benefit from production at the site.

The ratification of the treaty paves the way for the development of Inga 3, which will provide 2 500 MW of electricity to South Africa and contribute to regional integration, energy security and economic growth in an environmentally sustainable manner.

The project has the potential to supply clean and affordable imported hydroelectric power to meet the needs of the DRC, South Africa and surrounding countries.

The project holds the potential to fast-track SADC development, alleviate energy poverty, stimulate economic growth and facilitate infrastructure development. This represents one of the most ambitious projects ever undertaken on the African continent, and one, which will long be a resounding symbol of the rise of Africa and her people.

In June 2014, South Africa celebrated the success of REIPPP in a landmark deal that saw the country sell off excess energy to neighbouring African countries.

According to the South African Excess Energy Export Committee (SAEEEC), which tendered the energy sales deal, the country has been growing in terms of its high level of renewable energy potential – and has recently surpassed the mark needed to safeguard local energy needs. In particular, solar and thermal initiatives helped to drive the success of the REIPPP to that which it is today.

There are 30 wind farms in operation, with many more under construction. Therefore, government decided to sell off this excess energy to South Africa's neighbouring countries including Mozambique, Namibia, and Zimbabwe. It is the dawning of a new era of sustainability and growth not just for South Africa, but also for the African continent as a whole, with South Africa leading the way with regard to unlocking possibilities.

The Mozambique Energy Reception Commission also expressed their excitement at being part of this unprecedented undertaking.

Sustainable development in Africa

The Intergovernmental Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on the Western Power Corridor Project was signed in October 2004.

This New Partnership for Africa's Development flagship programme intends to pilot the use of hydro-electric energy obtained from the Inga rapids site in the DRC to ensure the security of supply in the SADC.

The participating utilities are those of Angola, Botswana, the DRC, Namibia and South Africa. A joint-venture company has been formed to initiate studies determining the viability of the project and to build, own and operate the infrastructure.

The main project outside South Africa's borders is Westcor. It entails a five-way intergovernmental MoU signed between the utilities of Angola, Botswana, the DRC, Namibia and South Africa. Westcor will tap into some of the potential in the DRC. Inga III, a 3 500-MW hydro plant on the Congo River, will be the first of these projects.

At the same time, the countries to the north could benefit through access to the coal-fired power resources in the south. Such an arrangement should stabilise the energy requirements of the region well into this century.

Exploitation of the vast hydropower resources would constitute a significant infusion of renewable-energy resources into the energy economy of the region over the medium to long term.

The Lesotho Highlands Water Project could contribute some 72 MW of hydroelectric power to the system in the short term.

Global pressures regarding the environmental impact and displacement of settlements by huge storage dams are likely to limit the exploitation of hydropower on a large scale.

Irrespective of the size of installation, any hydropower development will require authorisation in terms of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998).

Energy and the global environment

South Africa is classified as a developing country or a non-Annex 1 country. This means that within the international political and negotiation context, South Africa is not required to reduce its GHG emissions.

South Africa is among the top 20 emitters of GHGs in the world and the largest emitter in Africa, largely because of the economy's dependence on fossil fuels. It emits more than 400 Mt of CO₂ per year.

The National Climate Change Strategy, developed by the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, requires that government departments collaborate in a coordinated manner to ensure that response measures to climate change are properly directed and carried out with a national focus.

The South African economy depends greatly on fossil fuels for energy generation and consumption, and is therefore, a significant emitter due to relatively high values being derived from emission intensity and emissions per capita.

Therefore, South Africa is proactively moving the economy towards becoming less carbon-intensive, with the DoE playing a prominent role. The department has introduced systems to access investment through the CDM of the Kyoto Protocol. It developed the *White Paper on Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development*, together with an energy efficiency programme, to support diversification in pursuit of a less carbon-intensive energy economy.

The Grand I MoU signed with the DRC is an important milestone in working towards sustainable African partnerships aimed at developing strategies for low-carbon economies and interconnected energy systems.

The Tete-Maputo Power Transmission Line, also known as the Centre-South Project (Cesul), in Mozambique, will improve the ability to evacuate power from the projects in the northern Mozambique complex, particularly releasing the hydropower potential relating to Mpanda Nkuwa and Cahora Bassa.

The South African Renewables Initiative secures international financing partnerships in investment in deploying renewable energy; and develops renewable supply chains through securing a critical mass of renewable energy, without imposing undue burden on the fiscus or the South African consumer.

In line with this objective, the DoE has signed a Declaration of Intent with Germany, the United Kingdom, Denmark, Norway and the European Investment Bank. This agreement will lead to the establishment of a fund to assist in the deployment of renewable energy.

Further, the department participates in structures such as the:

- International Renewable Energy Agency
- International Energy Forum
- International Partnership for Energy Efficiency Cooperation
- UN Industrial Development Organisation
- Clean Energy Ministerial
- African Union-European Union Energy Partnership.

Cross-border gas trade agreement

To facilitate the movement of gas across international borders, cross-border gas trade agreements have been signed with Mozambique and Namibia. Since the arrival of natural gas from Mozambique in 2004, the contribution of natural gas to the primary energy supply has risen from 1,5% to 3,3% (2005).

This figure is expected to rise to 4,3% when the new Mozambique-South Africa gas-transmission pipeline reaches maximum capacity.

The South Africa-Namibia Gas Commission addresses harnessing the natural gas reserves in the Kudu Gas Field.

Import and export of fuel products

The importation of refined products is restricted to special cases where local producers cannot meet demand. It is subject to State control to promote local refinery usage.

When overproduction occurs, export permits are required and generally granted, provided that the needs of both South Africa and other Southern African Customs Union members are met. More diesel than petrol is exported, due to the balance of supply and demand of petrol and diesel relative to refinery configurations.

Although petrol and diesel make up 55% of total liquid-fuel exports, South Africa is also the main supplier of all other liquid fuels to Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland.



The Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) is mandated to give effect to the right of citizens to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being, and to have the environment protected for the benefit of present and future generations. To this end, the department provides leadership in environmental management, conservation and protection towards sustainability for the benefit of South Africans and the global community.

Strategies are therefore in place to:

- ensure that the department has optimal capacity to deliver services efficiently and effectively
- ensure that South Africa's environmental assets are conserved, valued, sustainably used, protected and continually enhanced for the benefit of both current and future generations
- enhance socio-economic benefits and employment creation in a safe, clean and healthy environment for both present and future generations
- provide leadership in environmental management, conservation and protection towards sustainability for the benefit of both current and future generations
- manage the interface between the environment and development to encourage the transformation of the development trajectory to an environmentally sustainable, inclusive, low carbon and green economic growth path
- promote compliance with environmental legislation, and act decisively against transgressors
- develop and facilitate the implementation of a climate change adaptation and mitigation regulatory framework
- facilitate the transition to an environmentally sustainable, job creating and low carbon, green development pathway through the Green Fund and environmental projects in the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)
- improve the provision of quality waste-management services across the country with clear environmental health benefits for communities, particularly those with no previous access to waste-management services.

Budget and funding

An amount of R103 million for the period of 2014/15 to 2016/17 has been allocated to South African National Parks (SANParks) to combat rhino poaching. This is in addition to other financial assistance that SANParks has and continues to receive from private-sector organisations.

Environment

As part of the National Development Plan (NDP) to create green jobs, the spending focus over the medium term continued to be on creating jobs in the environment sector through the roll-out of the EPWP.

This focus is reflected in the significant amount of the DEA's budget allocated to the Environmental Programmes programme, which makes transfers of funds for the EPWP. Over the medium term, expenditure in this programme is projected to grow at an average annual rate of 10,7 % due to an additional allocation of R205 million over the period.

The increased expenditure will allow the EPWP to create 115 600 full-time equivalent jobs and 228 860 work opportunities over the medium term. Between 2010/11 and 2013/14, the programme created 102 128 full-time equivalent jobs and 276 080 work opportunities, hence the significant growth evident in expenditure on transfers and subsidies over the period.

In addition to transfers for the EPWP, the Environmental Programmes programme also makes transfers of funds to its public entities.

Projected to take up 21,9% of the department's allocation over the medium term, these transfers are expected to increase due to further Cabinet approved additional allocations of R490 million between 2014/15 and 2015/16 for infrastructure upgrades at the public entities; R50 million between 2014/15 and 2015/16 for combatting rhino poaching, mainly in the SANParks; R28 million over the medium term to repair infrastructure damaged by disasters at some SANParks operations; and R250 million in 2014/15 for the Green Fund to fund projects that support environmental protection.

An amount of R15,9 million in 2014/15 and R12,1 million in 2015/16 is allocated for the repairment of infrastructure damaged by natural disasters at the Kruger National Park in both Limpopo and Mpumalanga.

Legislation and policies

The framework within which the department fulfils its mandate is guided by a number of policies and legislation:

- The National Environmental Management Act (Nema), 1998 (Act 107 of 1998); the National Environmental Management Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 46 of 2003); the National Environmental Management Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 8 of 2004); the National Environment Laws Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 44 of 2008); the National Environmental Management Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 62 of 2008), and the National Environment Laws Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 14 of 2009) establish the

concepts of participatory, cooperative and developmental governance in environmental management, as well as principles for environmental management and provides for structures to facilitate these.

- The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (Nemba), 2004 (Act 10 of 2004), reformed South Africa's laws regulating biodiversity. It sets out the mechanisms for managing and conserving South Africa's biodiversity and its components; protecting species and ecosystems that warrant national protection; the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources; the fair and equitable sharing of benefits arising from bioprospecting, including indigenous biological resources; and the establishment of the South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi).
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003 (Act 57 of 2003) provides for the protection and conservation of ecologically viable areas, the establishment of a national register of protected areas, as well as the proclamation and management of these areas.
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 15 of 2009) provides for the assignment of national parks, special parks and heritage sites to SANParks.
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 31 of 2004) provides for a national system of protected areas in South Africa as part of a strategy to manage and conserve the country's biodiversity.
- The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (AQA), 2004 (Act 39 of 2004) reforms the law regulating air quality to protect the environment by providing reasonable measures for the prevention of pollution and ecological degradation and for securing ecologically sustainable development.
- The National Environmental Management: Integrated Coastal Management Act, 2008 (Act 24 of 2008) establishes a system of integrated coastal and estuarine management in the country, ensuring socially and environmentally responsible development and use.
- The National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act 59 of 2008) reforms the law regulating waste management to protect health and the environment.
- The World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act 49 of 1999) provides for the cultural and environmental protection and sustainable development of, and related activities in a world heritage site.

- South African Weather Service (SAWS) Act, 2001 (Act 8 of 2001).
- Sea Shores Act, 1935 (Act 21 of 1935).
- Sea Birds and Seals Protection Act, 1973 (Act 46 of 1973).
- Dumping at Sea Control Act, 1980 (Act 73 of 1980).
- Sea Fishery Act, 1988 (Act 12 of 1988).
- Antarctic Treaties Act, 1996 (Act 60 of 1996).
- Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998).
- Prince Edward Islands Act, 1948 (Act 48 of 1948).
- The National Environmental Management: Waste Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 449 of 2014)

Other policy frameworks include:

- The White Paper on National Climate Change Response, 2011.
- The White Paper on Integrated Pollution and Waste Management, 2000.
- The White Paper on Environmental Management, 1998.
- The White Paper on Conservation and Sustainable Use of Biodiversity, 1997.
- The White Paper for Sustainable Coastal Development in South Africa, 2000.

During 2013, the following legislation was amended or pending promulgation:

- Draft regulations on the format of the atmospheric impact report.
- Draft notice on the amendment of the national list of activities, which result in atmospheric emissions which have or may have a significant detrimental effect on the environment, including health, social, economic and ecological conditions or cultural heritage published for public comment.
- Draft notice on the declaration of small boilers as controlled emitters published for public comment.
- Draft national dust control regulations published for public comment.
- Under section 62 of the Nemba of 2004, the summary of the non-detriment findings made by the Scientific Authority published for public comment.
- The Biodiversity Management Plan for Pelargonium sidoides.
- Under section 97 of the Nemba of 2004, the Regulations related to listed Threatened or Protected Species were published for public comment.
- The National Environmental Management Laws Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 14 of 2013).

- The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 20 of 2014).
- The National Environmental Management: Waste Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 26 of 2014).
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 21 of 2014).
- In terms of section 97 of the Nemba of 2004, the Draft Regulations for the Registration of Professional Hunters, Hunting Outfitters and Trainers were published for public participation.
- The Waste Classification and Management Regulations and the Norms and Standards for the Assessment of Waste for Landfill and the Norms and Standards for the Disposal of Waste to Landfill were published.

National Framework for Sustainable Development (NFSD)

In 2008, Cabinet approved the NFSD, which signalled a new line of thinking to promote the effective stewardship of South Africa's natural, social and economic resources.

The NSSD 1 builds on the 2008 NFSD, as well as several initiatives that address issues of sustainability in South Africa, and marks the continuation of a national partnership for sustainable development.

The NSSD 1 was implemented during the period 2011 to 2014. The lessons and evaluation of progress regarding the implementation of NSSD 1 will inform NSSD 2 (2015 to 2020).

The 1992 Rio Earth Summit, followed by the 2002 Johannesburg World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD), provided a platform to learn and begin to implement sustainability practices.

Rhino Issue Management Report (RIM)

In July 2013, the DEA released the RIM Report, which emanated from the national consultation process to facilitate a common understanding of the key issues related to the protection and conservation of South Africa's rhino population.

The RIM report incorporates opinions on sustainable rhino conservation by acknowledged rhino specialists, ecologists and a range of other experts. It encapsulates viewpoints from non-government organisations both specialised and community-based, civil society, traders, professional hunters, resource economists and ordinary citizens with a deep concern for the ethical and humane treatment of animals. The report focuses on three areas:

- conservation of the rhino
- safety and security of rhino
- commerce and trade.

On 29 March 2014, South Africans celebrated Earth Hour. The purpose of Earth Hour is to make people aware of all the little things that can be done and people's choices and decisions that make a difference.

The theme for the 2014 celebration of International Day for Biological Diversity was "Island Biodiversity".

Mining and Biodiversity Guideline

The Mining and Biodiversity Guideline: Mainstreaming Biodiversity into the Mining Sector, launched in May 2013, is a product of the collaboration between the South African Mining and Biodiversity Forum, the DEA and the Department of Mineral Resources. The guideline seeks to find a balance between economic growth and environmental sustainability and is a key outcome of the Outcome 10 Delivery Agreement.

The Life: State of Biodiversity Report is symbolic of the culmination of 100 years of science in assessing biological resources and highlighting the status of water resources in the country.

The key points in the report are:

- **Dynamite in a small package:** wetlands, which make up only a little over 2% of the country's footprint, perform irreplaceable functions, such as purifying water and slowing down flood waters. Many wetlands have already been lost; of those which remain, nearly half are endangered.
- **Protect water factories:** areas with high natural runoff, such as the Drakensberg, the Soutpansberg and the Wolkberg in Limpopo gather and channel the water, which the semi-arid country depends on. Only about a fifth of these areas are formally protected.
- **Treasure the small tributaries:** all those smaller rivers, which feed into the country's main, arteries such as the Orange and the Vaal rivers, are needed to keep water supplies in good health.
- **Paving over the coast:** nearly a fifth of the coastline has some form of development within 100 m of the shoreline, which means nature's buffers against storm surges and rising seas may have been stripped away and paved over in parts. This puts people and property at risk in the face of climate change. Coastal and inshore ecosystems are more threatened than offshore marine ecosystems.
- **Lost at sea:** further out to sea, offshore ecosystems are the most poorly protected of all South Africa's ecosystems. Yet, these are the lifeblood for healthy and productive fisheries. Marine protected areas (MPAs) are essential for keeping both the ecosystems and the fisheries safe.
- **Hand-in-hand – State meets the private sector:** biodiversity stewardship programmes, where private landowners enter into an agreement with State conservation bodies to

protect a section of their land and biodiversity, are making headway, in terms of national protected area targets. This is more affordable than when the State buys land for conservation purposes. With modest increases in resources, this scheme could make an even larger contribution.

- **Warning signs:** some parts of the country have lost more natural habitat than others. If Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal and North West keep losing natural landscapes to cultivation, mining and urban expansion at the current rate, these provinces will have almost no natural habitat left outside protected areas by 2050. Where natural vegetation is being converted to other land uses at a high rate, it's important to use maps of biodiversity-priority areas to guide decisions about where best to locate development.
- **Planning for an uncertain climate:** with an uncertain and extreme climate in the future natural habitats should be kept healthy so they can support functional, stable landscapes in the long term, which can then better support human activities. Scientists have drawn up a new national map, which identifies areas that are important for climate change resilience and need to be kept intact.
- **Protecting natural medicines:** South Africa has over 2 000 plant species that are used for medicinal purposes, about a third of which are traded commercially; some are threatened.
- **A bridgehead against invasion:** invasive alien plants increased their footprint in South Africa in about a decade. The country loses about R6,5 billion worth of ecosystem services to them each year.
- **Having the right tools for the job:** scientists have made great strides in mapping and classifying South Africa's ecosystems. This has provided the foundation for meaningful assessment, planning and monitoring of ecosystems. The first maps by which to identify marine and coastal habitat types and wetland ecosystem types have been completed.

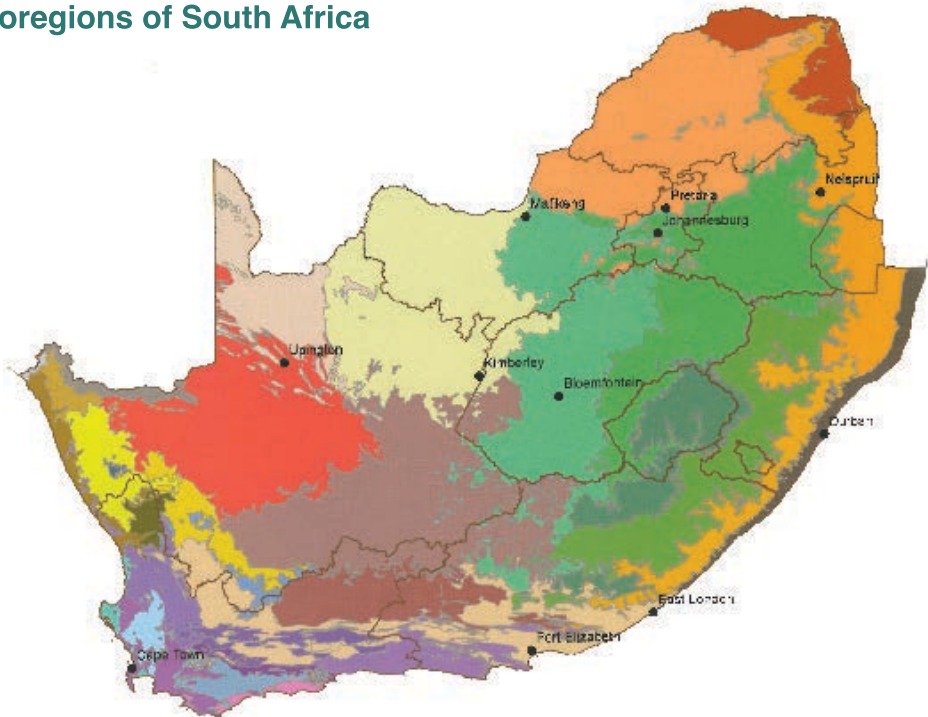
Projects, programmes and initiatives

South Africa's Green Economy

South Africa's green economy strategy comprises 8 key pillars, namely; green buildings and built environment; sustainable transport

Although 5 June is a global celebration of World Environment Day, South Africa has amplified this and dedicated the month of June as National Environment Month. World Oceans Day is celebrated on 8 June and World Day to Combat Desertification is on 17 June.

Bioregions of South Africa



- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| Northwest Fynbos Bioregion | Southern Namib Desert Bioregion |
| Southwest Fynbos Bioregion | Gariep Desert Bioregion |
| Southern Fynbos Bioregion | Bushmanland Bioregion |
| South Coast Fynbos Bioregion | Upper Karoo Bioregion |
| Western Fynbos-Renosterveld Bioregion | Lower Karoo Bioregion |
| Eastern Fynbos-Renosterveld Bioregion | Drakensberg Grassland Bioregion |
| West Coast Renosterveld Bioregion | Dry Highveld Grassland Bioregion |
| East Coast Renosterveld Bioregion | Mesic Highveld Grassveld Bioregion |
| Karoo Renosterveld Bioregion | Sub-Escarpment Grassland Bioregion |
| Namaqualand Cape Shrublands Bioregion | Central Bushveld Bioregion |
| Dry Highveld Grassland Bioregion | Mopane Bioregion |
| West Strandveld Bioregion | Lowveld Bioregion |
| Richtersveld Bioregion | Sub-Escarpment Savanna Bioregion |
| Namaqualand Hardeveld Bioregion | Eastern Kalahari Bushveld Bioregion |
| Namaqualand Sandveld Bioregion | Kalahari Dunneveld Bioregion |
| Knersvlakte Bioregion | Albany Thicket |
| Trans-Escarpment Succulent Karoo Bioregion | Indian Ocean Coastal Belt |
| Rainshadow Valley Karoo Bioregion | |

Source: *Vision Endangered Wildlife Trust Seventeenth Annual*

and infrastructure; clean energy and energy efficiency; resource conservation and management; sustainable waste management; water management; sustainable consumption and production; and agriculture food production and forestry.

The Green Fund is one example of an innovative approach with which the country has made great strides. By 2014, 22 multi-year green economy projects and 16 research and technology-related projects valued at R572 million have been implemented.

South Africa is working at growing existing green sectors or industries that at the same time maximise job creation co-benefits. Through the Expanded Public Works culture and environment programme, the country is working on expanding job creation in the medium term.

People and Parks and Wildlife Economy projects

The DEA, in collaboration with the Mpumalanga Tourism and Parks Agency launched the People and Parks, and Wildlife Economy projects worth over R256 million in Arconhoek, Mpumalanga.

It is anticipated that more than 2 200 jobs will be created through this programme to be implemented in Mpumalanga alone.

The People and Parks programme is one of the DEA's initiatives aimed at addressing

issues at the interface between conservation and communities, particularly with regards to the realisation of tangible economic and social benefits by communities who were previously displaced to pave the way for the establishment of protected areas.

The programme encourages communities to take leadership roles in the management and benefits of South Africa's biodiversity conservation, particularly in the protected areas.

It is through this programme that the DEA launched the National Co-Management Framework in September 2010, which is in accordance to the provisions of the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act of 2003.

The framework provides a coherent national guideline for the co-management of protected areas restored in terms of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act 22 of 1994). It also aims to guide conservation agencies and successful restitution claimants in the development of co-management agreements for protected areas structuring benefit packages.

On the other hand, the Wildlife Economy programme fosters community participation to a sustainable beneficiation of wildlife.

Communities and nature reserves that stand to benefit directly from these projects include Andover; Loskop Dam; Barbarton; Mahushe Shongwe; Mawewe; Mdala-Mkhombo; Mthethomusha; Songimvelo; Nooitgedacht Dam; Manyeleti; and Bushbuckridge.

The DEA's Environmental Protection and Infrastructure Programme (EPIP), which funds the implementation of various projects aimed at protecting the integrity of the environment in South Africa, has grown from a budget of R28 million in the 1999/2000 financial year to just under R900 million in 2014.

Sustainable Development and the Green Economy

South Africa has developed the NDP to address its need to develop its economy along an internationally competitive, job creating, sustainable, climate resilient and low carbon development path. All the while recognising that South Africa's natural capital, in the form of ecosystems, biodiversity and other natural resources, is a critical foundation to unlocking and boosting socio-economic growth and ensuring the long-term well-being of society.

South Africa has introduced legislative amendments to develop an integrated environmental regulatory system. Among these are amendments to the National Environmental Management, Waste, Air Quality Management and Water Services Acts.

Important dates on the world's environmental calendar

2 February	World Wetlands Day
20 March	Earth Day
22 March	World Water Day
23 March	World Meteorological Day
27 March	Earth Hour
22 April	Earth Day
22 May	International Day for Marine Biological Diversity
5 June	World Environment Day
8 June	World Oceans Day
17 June	World Day to Combat Desertification
5 – 11 September	World Water Week
16 September	International Day for the Protection of the Ozone Layer
18 September	International Coastal Clean-up Day
22 September	World Car-Free Day
5 October	World Habitat Day
11 December	International Mountain Day

In addition, the Nema now includes environmental authorisation for mining developments. Accordingly, the Minister of Mineral Resources will issue mining-related environmental impact assessment and waste license authorisations – with the Minister of Environmental Affairs being an Appeals Authority on mining related environmental authorisations.

The cooperative governance arrangement also aligns the simultaneous processing of air emission and water use licences for mining activities.

Further regulations are being developed and will be published in the 2015/16 financial year.

People and Parks projects

In April 2015, the Minister of Environmental Affairs launched the People and Parks projects worth more than R208 million in collaboration with the Limpopo Tourism Agency.

It was anticipated that at least 2 300 jobs will be created through the People and Parks projects to be implemented in Limpopo over two years.

The project was launched at the Lekgala-meetse Nature Reserve in Tzaneen as part of government's national Imbizo Focus Week, which enables government leaders to interact with communities in different parts of the country.

As part of the project, chalets will be constructed, old and dilapidated infrastructure will be rehabilitated, perimeter fences will be erected and roads will be upgraded.

The People and Parks projects invests in infrastructure development and biodiversity conservation for economic benefits by ensuring that local communities are involved in the management of protected and surrounding areas.

South African Carbon Disclosure Project (CDP)

According to the CDP Report of 2014, companies' disclosure continued to improve compared to previous years. Over the last few years, companies have risen to the challenge of more transparent reporting and standards are high. The overall threshold score required to be in the Climate Disclosure Leadership Index

(CDLI) much higher in 2014 than it was a few years ago.

JSE100 companies are generally doing well at disclosure: almost half of the companies responding scored above 90/100 (up from a median of 83 in 2013). The average disclosure score is 87/100 (up from a mean of 83 in 2013). The range of scores has significantly decreased: only 8% of companies scored between 50 and 70, and 82% of companies scored above 80.

The threshold score required to be in the CDLI, the top 10% of companies, has also increased: it is now 98, up from 97 in 2013 and 95 in 2012.

This shows the commitment of South African companies to increasing transparency, thus providing a good base for improving performance.

The overwhelming majority of reported risks (76%) are perceived as having medium to high likelihood and medium to high impact. The majority of the different risk categories, under which the risks are disclosed in the questionnaire, are also seen as medium to high impact and medium to high likelihood. While the carbon tax is viewed as the most likely and highest impact risk, the key risks are not only regulatory. Companies recognise the immediacy and impact of physical risks (such as increasing drought and extreme precipitation) and reputation risks, indicating that companies are giving the identification of risks an increased degree of strategic attention.

Companies are recognising some important climate-related opportunities. The most commonly reported opportunities relate to reputation (reported by 64% of companies), followed by changing consumer behaviour, and fuel/energy taxes and regulation (reported by 53% of companies each). The opportunities are reported to be arising within a short time horizon: 70% of reported opportunities are perceived as arising within six years and a quarter are seen as being current. Opportunities that are viewed as high impact and high likelihood (21%) are approximately the same proportion as the described risks (20%), and 78% are viewed as medium to high likelihood and medium to high impact (compared with 76% of risks).

Role players South African National Biodiversity Institute

In support of the NDP, government was working through Sanbi to spearhead an innovative programme of work on analysing ecological infrastructure and costing natural capital. This body of knowledge will empower the department to make informed development-related decisions.

Important dates on South Africa's environmental calendar in 2014

17 – 23 March	National Water Week
June	Environment Month
1 – 7 September	National Arbor Week
6 – 10 October	National Marine Week

The Groen Sebenza Project, launched in 2015 is a R300-million training, mentoring and workplace-based learning project aimed at building a pool of young, capable professionals for the country's biodiversity and natural resource management sector.

Spearheaded by Sanbi, the innovative project will see 800 unemployed graduates and matriculants being placed in skilled biodiversity jobs in both the public and private sector for a period of two-and-a-half years.

The practical workplace experience and training will, it is hoped, kick-start their careers in a fast-growing industry. The project is sponsored by the Government's Jobs Fund, which is administered by the Development Bank of Southern Africa.

Sanbi is a respected authority in research and has an unmatched research record in the indigenous, naturalised and alien flora of southern Africa and beyond. Its research management covers systematics and collections expansion, conservation and applied biodiversity science, and climate change. Sanbi is also responsible for ensuring that biodiversity knowledge influences policy, management and decision making.

Its biome programmes, which focus on South Africa's biodiversity hotspots, ensure that the country's most important biodiversity regions, such as the grasslands, wetlands and succulent Karoo, are protected in a sustainable and beneficial way.

Sanbi is increasingly embracing biodiversity in its broadest sense through the inclusion of the country's fauna as part of its taxonomic research mandate. It is coordinating a catalogue of all South Africa's species (at least 100 000), including animals, through the South African Tree of Life Project.

The institute operates environmental education programmes within its national botanical gardens, while outreach greening programmes focus on promoting indigenous gardening at disadvantaged schools in surrounding areas.

Sanbi is South Africa's official body for facilitating access to the Adaptation Fund, set up to help developing countries cope with climate change. It was established by the parties to the Kyoto Protocol of the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC) to finance concrete adaptation projects and programmes in developing countries that are parties to the protocol.

The Working for the Coast programme

The Working for the Coast Programme (WfC) of the DEA was established to deal with some of the challenges in line with the Integrated

Coastal Management Act of 2008. The WfC programme is informed by the broader EPWP, which is using labour-intensive methods in its implementation.

The programme is also linked to other inland EPIP aimed at street cleaning and greening, waste management, rehabilitation of degraded areas (catchments) and bio-remediation of polluted rivers.

iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority

The Lake St Lucia System is the most important estuary and a key nursery for fish on the southeast African coast. For six decades St Lucia received too little fresh water, due to human interventions and drought, leaving this flagship estuary in poor condition and closed to the sea for much of the past 10 years. Work has begun on restoring St Lucia back to health, a top priority for the iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority, but it is challenging and will take time.

As an area of exceptional and outstanding universal heritage significance, the iSimangaliso Wetland Park was named South Africa's first World Heritage site in December 1999.

The park has received recognition under three of four natural criteria recognised by the World Heritage Convention: it has outstanding examples of ecological processes, superlative natural phenomena and scenic beauty, and exceptional biodiversity and threatened species.

iSimangaliso is located in one of South Africa's poorest rural areas and has been largely under claim. All but three of the land claims settlements have been concluded and a series of co-management agreements have been signed with land claimants. The management of such a diverse asset in an area of extreme poverty and high expectations requires an adaptive and inclusive approach.

South African Weather Service

The SAWS provides useful and innovative weather, climate and related products and services by:

- enhancing observational data and communications networks
- developing and managing talent within the sector

The Minister of Environmental Affairs launched the Kwelela National Botanical Garden in the Eastern Cape in September 2014. The garden will provide a tourism attraction for the Buffalo City Metropolitan Municipality and the greater East London area. The garden would play a significant role in promoting biodiversity education to surrounding communities. The new garden formed part of the South African National Biodiversity Institute Gardens Expansion Strategy, and work was underway to establish a new national botanical garden in Limpopo.

- enhancing collaborative partnerships and disseminating weather services products to their users
- using cutting edge technology to convert data into meaningful products and services for risk mitigation
- advancing the science of meteorology, research and relevant applications
- enhancing fiscal discipline and resource mobilisation to ensure sustainability.

In its continued efforts to carry out its legal mandate, the work of SAWS is guided by four key strategic goals:

- ensuring the continued relevance of the organisation in delivering meteorological-related products and services in compliance with all applicable regulatory frameworks
- ensuring effective management of stakeholder, partner and key client relations
- addressing the short-term viability and long-term sustainability of the entity's revenue and ensuring continued fiscal discipline
- ensuring the availability of strategy-driven human capital capacity for the performance of the SAWS.

Environmental resources

National botanical gardens

Sanbi manages the 10 national botanical gardens, classified as conservation gardens, in five of South Africa's nine provinces. Together, they conserve more than 7 500 ha of natural vegetation. The gardens, which collectively attract over a million visitors a year, are signatories to the International Agenda for Botanic Gardens in Conservation, which was launched in 2000, and are founding members of the African Botanic Gardens Network.

The national botanical gardens are natural escapes close to some of the country's urban centres, offering visitors a taste of the country's uniquely rich and colourful biodiversity. They feature facilities such as restaurants, function rooms and conference venues and include activities such as hikes, picnics and shopping.

Government has started to roll out the One Environmental System, which will initiate the streamlining of the licensing processes for mining, environmental authorisations and water use. The system represents government's commitment to improve the ease of doing business and further enhances South Africa's global competitiveness as a mining investment jurisdiction.

Under the One Environmental System, the Minister of Mineral Resources will issue environmental authorisations and waste management licences in terms of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998), and the National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act 59 of 2008), respectively, for mining and related activities.

The botanical gardens are:

- Kirstenbosch, Cape Town
- Pretoria
- Harold Porter, Betty's Bay
- Walter Sisulu, Roodepoort
- Hantam, Nieuwoudtville
- Free State, Bloemfontein
- Karoo Desert, Worcester
- KwaZulu-Natal, Pietermaritzburg
- Lowveld, Nelspruit
- Kweelera National Botanical Garden

National Herbarium

The National Herbarium, situated within the Pretoria National Botanical Garden, houses over one million scientific plant specimens in southern Africa.

The Crompton Herbarium in Cape Town focuses mainly on the flora of the winter rainfall region of southern Africa, while the KwaZulu-Natal Herbarium in Durban primarily focuses on the flora of the subtropical eastern region of South Africa, in particular the flora of the province.

Protected areas

The Convention on Biological Diversity, to which South Africa is a signatory, required that 10% of terrestrial and 20% of marine biodiversity be conserved by 2010.

There are a number of management categories of protected areas in South Africa, which conform to the accepted categories of the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN).

South Africa has 528 protected areas, of which 20 were marine, totalling 7,5 million ha or 6,2% of the country's land area.

South Africa aims to expand the conservation areas under formal protection to the international standard of 10% of the total area of the country. The department works closely with landowners to ensure their participation in the Stewardship Programme, which allows land owners to use their land for biodiversity and conservation purposes. This is aimed at expanding the country's conservation estate.

Scientific reserves

Scientific reserves are sensitive and undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and the maintenance of genetic sources.

Access is limited to researchers and staff. Examples of such areas are Marion Island and the Prince Edward Islands near Antarctica.

Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive, uninhabited and underdeveloped, and access is strictly

controlled with no vehicles allowed. The highest management priority is the maintenance of the intrinsic wilderness character.

Wilderness areas include the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the Western Cape, and the Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area in the Eastern Cape.

South African National Parks

SANParks' primary mandate is to oversee the conservation of South Africa's biodiversity, landscapes and associated heritage assets through a system of national parks. Its mandate is based on the following core values:

- conservation management through the national parks system
- constituency building and people-focused eco-tourism management
- corporate governance and sound business and operational management.

SANParks manages a system of parks, which represents the indigenous fauna, flora, landscapes and associated cultural heritage of the country. The work of SANParks focuses on building strategic partnerships at international, national and local levels, in support of the conservation of the natural and cultural heritage of South Africa. It has to ensure that South Africans participate and get involved in biodiversity initiatives, and that all its operations have a synergistic existence with neighbouring communities for their educational and socio-economic benefit.

Revenue for SANParks increased from R1,4 billion in 2010/11 to R1,6 billion in 2014/15, mostly from tourism activities within the parks such as self-drive safaris, game viewing, accommodation tariffs, adventure activities such as guided walks and hiking, bird-watching, 4x4 trails, sight-seeing, cultural and historical experiences, mountain biking, golf, canoeing and swimming.

This revenue funds activities and projects, mostly infrastructure, which could not be accommodated in the budget allocations. Between 2010/11 and 2013/14, revenue decreased mainly due to a decline in tourism arrivals in a difficult economic climate. However, revenue is expected to grow over the medium term with an increase in the transfers from the DEA for infrastructure development and operational activities.

The national parks are:

- Addo Elephant National Park
- Agulhas National Park
- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier Park
- Augrabies Falls National Park
- Bontebok National Park

- Camdeboo National Park
- Garden Route (Tsitsikamma, Knysna and Wilderness) National Park
- Golden Gate Highlands National Park
- Karoo National Park
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kruger National Park
- Mapungubwe National Park
- Marakele National Park
- Mokala National Park
- Mountain Zebra National Park
- Namaqua National Park
- Table Mountain National Park (which incorporates the Cape of Good Hope, Table Mountain and Silvermine nature reserves)
- Tankwa Karoo National Park
- West Coast National Park.

SANParks is the leading conservation authority in all national parks around South Africa and responsible for 3 751 113 ha of protected land in 20 national parks. SANParks, supported by the Government through the departments of environmental affairs and of tourism, has increased the area of land under its protection by 360 000 ha over the past 20 years. Since 2000, SANParks has added 558 897 ha to its national parks.

Transfrontier conservation areas (TFCAs)

A TFCA is a cross-border region. The conservation status of the areas within a TFCA ranges from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural-resource management areas to hunting-concession areas. Although fences, highways, railway lines or other barriers separate the constituent areas, they are managed jointly for long-term sustainable use of natural resources.

Unlike in transfrontier parks, free movement of animals between the components of a TFCA is not always possible. TFCAs facilitate and promote regional peace, cooperation and socio-economic development.

The success of TFCAs depends on community involvement.

In turn, TFCAs provide local communities with opportunities to generate revenue.

In April 2015, the SA Agulhas II embarked on her third logistical and scientific voyage to Marion Island. Aboard the ship were researchers and participants from departments of environmental affairs and public works, the South African Weather Service and various tertiary institutions. The Marion 72 expedition team was the fourth of its kind to inhabit the new base since its commission in March 2011 and occupied it for a period of 14 months. During the voyage, scientists from various institutions in South Africa jointly continued to monitor oceanographic processes, both physical and chemical changes in planktic and benthic communities.

The seven TFCAs are the:

- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld (Namibia, South Africa)
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park (Botswana, South Africa, Zimbabwe)
- Greater Mapungubwe
- Kavango-Zambezi (Angola, Botswana, Namibia, Zambia, Zimbabwe)
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park (Botswana, South Africa)
- Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area (Mozambique, South Africa, Swaziland)
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area (Lesotho, South Africa).

Biosphere reserves

A biosphere designation is given by the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco) to special landscapes where people are collaborating to ensure their environmental integrity as the basis for their economic development. Biosphere reserves are nominated by their governments for inclusion in the Man and the Biosphere Programme.

Whether they are terrestrial, freshwater, coastal or marine in nature, all are experimental areas where different approaches to integrated environmental management (IEM) are tested. This helps to deepen knowledge of what works in conservation and sustainable development.

South Africa's biosphere reserves include:

- Vhembe, situated in the north-east of Limpopo, which includes the northern part of the Kruger National Park; the Makuleke Wetland, which is protected under the Ramsar Convention; the Soutpansberg and Blouberg biodiversity hot spots; and the Makgabeng Plateau.
- The 100 000-ha Kogelberg Reserve on the country's southern coast is in the middle of the Cape Floral Region and home to 1 880 different plant species, 77 of which are found only in this region.
- The Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve starts in Cape Town in the southern suburb of Diep River and stretches up the west coast as far as the Berg River, encompassing parts of the Cape Floral Region. The reserve includes

the Ramsar-protected Langebaan Lagoon as well as Dassen Island, which is home to a penguin colony.

- The Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve includes a part of the Cape Floral Region, as well as the wine-growing region.
- In the north there is the Waterberg Biosphere Reserve, an area of some 400 000 ha in Limpopo. It is an important catchment area for the Limpopo Basin, with four large rivers originating within its borders – the Lephalale, Mokolo, Matlabas and Magalakwena rivers.
- The Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve stretches from the Kruger National Park to the Blyde River Canyon. It is an important conservation area as it covers three biomes.
- The Gouritz Cluster Biosphere Reserve is recognised by Unesco in terms of the Man and Biosphere Programme.

World heritage sites

A Unesco World Heritage Site is listed by Unesco as being of special cultural or physical significance.

It catalogues, names and conserves sites of outstanding cultural or natural importance to the common heritage of humanity.

While each World Heritage Site remains part of the legal territory of the State wherein the site is located, Unesco considers it in the interest of the international community to preserve each site.

South Africa has eight world heritage sites proclaimed by Unesco:

- Robben Island: situated 11 km offshore from Cape Town, the island is most famous as the place where Nelson Mandela was imprisoned. It is now home to the world-renowned Robben Island Museum and has become a popular tourist attraction.
- The iSimangaliso Wetland Park was listed as South Africa's first World Heritage Site in December 1999 in recognition of its natural beauty and unique global values. The 332 000-ha park contains three major lake systems, eight interlinking ecosystems, 700-year-old fishing traditions, most of South Africa's remaining swamp forests, Africa's largest estuarine system, 526 bird species and 25 000-year-old coastal dunes – among the highest in the world. The name iSimangaliso means miracle and wonder. The park also has four Ramsar sites.
- The Cradle of Humankind consisting of the hominid fossil sites at Swartkrans, Sterkfontein and Kromdraai. The world heritage status of Sterkfontein's fossil hominid sites was extended in July 2005 to include the Taung

In March 2014, World Wildlife Fund South Africa would move away from its Biodiversity and Wine Initiative label to embrace the industry-wide Integrated Production of Wine scheme's 'Sustainable Wines South Africa' seal as the standard in environmental good practice. This consolidation will promote one publically communicated certification message to assure wine lovers of the Integrated Production of Wine accredited producers' environmental credentials. It will also assist the wine industry to grow their now well-established foundation as global leaders in environmental sustainability.

skull fossil site in North West and the Mokopane Valley in Limpopo. The Cradle of Humankind has one of the world's richest concentrations of hominid fossils that provide evidence of human evolution over the past 3,5 million years. Found in Gauteng and North West, the fossil sites cover an area of 47 000 ha. The remains of ancient forms of animals, plants and hominids are encased in a bed of dolomite deposited around 2,5 billion years ago. In April 2010, a new species of hominid, *Australopithecus sediba*, estimated to be two million years old, was discovered in the Cradle of Humankind.

- The Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park (a mixed natural and cultural site) is a world heritage site covering 242 813 ha (2 428 km²). The park spans parts of both South Africa and Lesotho. The park includes the Royal Natal National Park, a provincial park, and the Drakensberg National Park, which covers part of the Drakensberg, the highest mountain in southern Africa. Under the Ramsar Convention, the park is in the List of Wetlands of International Importance.
- Mapungubwe Heritage Site: in September 2011, the DEA, SANParks and Coal of Africa Limited signed an historical Memorandum of Agreement (MoA) as part of the environmental authorisation issued in accordance with Nema of 1998, to ensure the integrity of the Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape World Heritage Site. According to the MoA, the integrity of the World Heritage Site will be maintained through comprehensive biodiversity offset programmes, thereby optimising benefits to local communities.
- Cape Floral Region, the smallest of the six recognised floral kingdoms of the world, is an area of extraordinarily high diversity and home to more than 9 000 vascular plant species, of which 69% are endemic. Much of this diversity is associated with the fynbos biome. The economical worth of fynbos biodiversity, based on harvests of fynbos products (e.g. wildflowers) and ecotourism, is estimated to be in the region of R77 million a year.
- Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape: The site covers 160 000 ha of dramatic mountainous desert in the north-west of South Africa. It is the only area where the Nama still construct portable rush-covered domed houses, or *Iharu oms*.
- Vredefort Dome, about 120 km south-west of Johannesburg, is a representative part of a larger meteorite impact structure, or astrobleme. Dating back more than two million years, it is the oldest astrobleme yet found on Earth. With a radius of 190 km,

it is also the largest and the most deeply eroded. Vredefort Dome bears witness to the world's greatest known single energy release event, which had devastating global effects including, according to some scientists, major evolutionary changes. It provides evidence of the Earth's geological history and is crucial to understanding of the evolution of the planet. Despite the importance of impact sites to the planet's history, geological activity on the Earth's surface has led to the disappearance of evidence from most of them, and Vredefort is the only example to provide a full geological profile of an astrobleme below the crater floor.

Habitat and wildlife management areas

These areas are subject to human intervention, based on research into the requirements of specific species for survival. They include conservancies; provincial, regional or private reserves created for the conservation of species habitats or biotic communities; marshes; lakes; and nesting and feeding areas.

Protected land and seascapes

These areas are products of the harmonious interaction of people and nature, and include natural environments protected in terms of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act 73 of 1989), scenic landscapes and historical urban landscapes.

Sustainable-use areas

These areas emphasise the sustainable use of protected areas such as the Kosi Bay Lake System in KwaZulu-Natal.

Nature areas in private ownership are proclaimed and managed to curtail undesirable development in areas with high aesthetic or conservation potential.

Conservancies are formed to involve the ordinary landowner in conservation. Landowners can establish a conservancy where conservation principles are integrated with normal farming activities.

Wetlands

The IUCN identifies wetlands as the third most important support system on Earth.

I World Oceans Day is observed internationally on 8 June. The 2014 theme was: "Together let's ensure oceans can sustain us into the future." The observance of World Oceans Day in South Africa provides the department with an opportunity to highlight the considerable challenges of dealing with marine pollution, maintaining the oceans' capacity to regulate the global climate, supply essential ecosystem services and provide sustainable livelihoods and safe recreation.

About 115 000 wetlands, covering over four million hectares, comprising close to 4% of the country's total surface area, had been mapped in South Africa. They are part of the natural infrastructure for gathering, managing and delivering water for human use.

Wetlands support a range of specialised plant, insect and mammal life and also supply food, grazing, building and craft material. They are able to improve water quality, reduce flood impacts, control erosion and sustain river flows. Of special importance is the role wetlands play in ensuring a steady supply of clean water for communities and helping government save hundreds of millions of rands that would be required to set up purification plants/facilities.

South Africa was one of the first six countries to become a signatory to the Convention on Wetlands of International Importance, called the Ramsar Convention, when it came into force in 1975. It is an intergovernmental treaty that provides the framework for national action and international cooperation for the conservation and wise use of wetlands and their resources.

The DEA is responsible for the South African Wetlands Conservation Programme, which ensures that South Africa's obligations in terms of the Ramsar Convention are met.

South Africa's Ramsar sites include:

- Barberspan
- Blesbokspruit Nature Reserve
- De Hoop Vlei
- De Mond (Heuningnes Estuary)
- Kosi Bay
- Langebaan
- Makuleke Wetlands
- Ndumo Game Reserve
- Ntsikeni Nature Reserve
- Nylsvley Nature Reserve
- Orange River Mouth Wetland
- Prince Edward Islands in Antarctica
- Seekoeivlei
- St Lucia
- the turtle beaches and coral reefs of Tongaland
- Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park
- Verlorenvlei Nature Reserve
- Wilderness Lakes.

South Africa is seen as a leader in the rehabilitation of wetlands. The damage done to wetlands can be reversed, as is seen at Rietvlei Dam in Gauteng.

Government has pledged more than R75 mil-

lion to rehabilitating wetlands. Rehabilitation is ongoing, with attention given to poverty-stricken areas.

Marine protected areas

MPAs conserve natural environments and assist in the management of fisheries by protecting and rebuilding economically important stocks. They are also used to develop and regulate coastal ecotourism opportunities.

Government shares joint responsibility for South Africa's MPAs with SANParks and Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife.

South Africa's MPAs include the:

- Aliwal Shoal, KwaZulu-Natal
- Betty's Bay, Western Cape
- Bird Island, Eastern Cape
- De Hoop, Western Cape
- Dwesa-Cwebe, Eastern Cape
- False Bay, Western Cape
- Goukamma, Western Cape
- Hluleka, Eastern Cape
- iSimangaliso, KwaZulu-Natal
- Langebaan Lagoon, Sixteen Mile Beach, Malgas Island, Marcus Island, Jutten Island, Western Cape
- Pondoland, Eastern Cape.
- Robberg, Western Cape
- Sardinia Bay, Eastern Cape
- Stilbaai, Western Cape
- Table Mountain, Western Cape
- Trafalgar, KwaZulu-Natal
- Tsitsikamma, Western Cape.

In March 2015, World Wildlife Fund (WWF) South Africa in partnership with Local Governments for Sustainability, the City of Tshwane and Tshwane University of Technology (TUT) hosted the Earth Hour Capital Challenge, an event aimed at raising the profile of public transport as a means to support low-carbon development.

TUT students paired with WWF and City of Tshwane partners used all available modes of public transport to navigate a series of destination checkpoints across the city. Guided by the newest release of the urban transportation and journey planner app, Findmyway, the winning team was one that completed the route with the lowest carbon footprint.

Zoological gardens

Established in 1899 in Pretoria, and given national status in 1916, the National Zoological Gardens (NZG) of South Africa is the largest zoo in the country and the only one with national status. Over 600 000 people visit it every year.

It plays a major role in the conservation of wildlife, maintaining one of the largest animal

The Minister of Environmental Affairs participated in the World Leaders' Dialogue titled: "The nature of crime – Extent and impact of illegal wildlife trade", in November 2014. The event explored the causes and effects of illegal wildlife trade, and new approaches and investments to combat it.

collections in Africa, and has over 8 000 individual animal specimens representing over 500 species.

The species are managed across two facilities stretching into Gauteng (Pretoria) and Limpopo (Mokopane). About 70% of the species are of African origin and 30% of global representation.

As a member of the World Association of Zoos and Aquariums and the African Association of Zoos and Aquariums, the NZG participates in several endangered species management programmes and successfully breeds several endangered species of both continental and global significance.

Among the endangered species the NZG contributes to conserving are the cheetah, rhino, ground hornbill, red-billed oxpecker and several endangered antelope species.

The 85-ha NZG houses 3 117 specimens of 209 mammal species, 1 358 specimens of 202 bird species, 3 871 specimens of 190 fish species, 388 specimens of four invertebrate species, 309 specimens of 93 reptile species, and 44 specimens of seven amphibian species.

The Johannesburg Zoological Gardens' core business is the accommodation, enrichment, husbandry and medical care of wild animals.

It also plays an important role in conservation projects of both indigenous and internationally endangered animals. The zoo joins other conservation organisations in programmes involving:

- wattled crane recovery
- amphibian conservation
- ground hornbill breeding and off-site surveys
- vulture conservation
- chimpanzee conservation with the Jane Goodall Institute.

The Endangered Wildlife Trust (EWT) is a major partner.

Mitchell Park in Durban is the country's second oldest zoo after the NZG. There are about 30 projects on the cards for the zoo, including cheetah and chimpanzee enclosures.

Breeding centres

There are a number of game-breeding centres in South Africa. The NZG of South Africa is responsible for the management of the Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre, which covers an area of some 6 000 ha, and the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre, covering 1 333 ha.

The two centres supplement the NZG's breeding programme for various endangered animals, and its own animal collection.

The Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre houses, among other animals, Père David's deer, which are extinct in the wild, pygmy

hippopotamus, white rhino, the endangered addax, and scimitar-horned and Arabian oryx. Large herds of impala, springbok, zebra, blesbok and red hartebeest also roam the area.

About 32 ha of the wetland area at the centre have been developed into a system of dams and pans, which serve as a natural haven for waterbirds such as spoonbills, kingfishers, ibises and herons.

The Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre is home to an abundance of exotic and indigenous fauna such as the lemur, the rare tsessebe, roan antelope and black rhino.

The De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Centre near Pretoria, is best known for its captive-breeding programme that contributed to the cheetah being removed from the endangered list in the South African Red Data Book – Terrestrial Mammals in 1986.

De Wildt also breeds a number of rare and endangered African species.

The most spectacular of these is the magnificent king cheetah, which is a true cheetah, but with a variation in coat pattern and colouring. De Wildt also plays a major role in breeding and releasing wild dogs.

It has donated breeding nuclei of the highly endangered riverine rabbit and suni antelope to the Kruger National Park.

The De Wildt Vulture Unit is a rehabilitation and holding facility for injured, poisoned and disabled vultures.

The Hoedspruit Endangered Species Centre in Limpopo was established as a breeding programme for the then endangered cheetah.

The centre caters for, among other animals, five species of vulture: Cape griffins as well as white-backed, hooded, whiteheaded and lappet-faced vultures.

The centre is also known for its wild-dog breeding programme.

The Hoedspruit Research and Breeding Programme includes the rare black-footed cat, vulnerable African wild cat, ground hornbills (in cooperation with the NZG), the bald ibis and the endangered blue crane. Elephant, white rhino, buffalo, caracal, sable antelope, bushbuck and tsessebe have also been cared for and rehabilitated there.

The Minister of Environmental Affairs confirmed that no decision has yet been taken over the legal trade in rhino horn by South Africa. At the sixth World Parks Congress in Sydney, Australia, in November 2014, the Minister said if the country comes up with measures that completely eradicate poaching, it may not need to look at trade. The Minister also said actions at international level would further strengthen efforts to address not only rhino poaching, but the illegal wildlife trade in general.

Aquariums and oceanariums

There are aquariums in Pretoria, Port Elizabeth, Cape Town, Durban and East London.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park of the NZG in Pretoria is the largest inland aquarium in Africa, with the largest collection of freshwater fish.

It is also the only aquarium in South Africa that exhibits a large variety of marine fish in artificial sea water and the only inland aquarium housing ragged-tooth sharks.

The Port Elizabeth Oceanarium is one of the city's major attractions. Exhibits include an underwater observation area, a dolphin research centre, various smaller tanks containing 40 different species of bony fish and two larger tanks that display sharks and stingrays. East London aquarium was 83 years old in 2014, making it South Africa's oldest aquarium.

At the Two Oceans Aquarium at the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront, Cape Town, more than 3 000 specimens represent some 300 species of fish, invertebrates, mammals, birds and plants supported by the waters along the Cape coast.

The aquarium at uShaka Marine World in Durban incorporates both fresh and sea water species, and is the fifth largest aquarium in the world by water volume. It comprises Sea World, Dolphin World, Beach World, and Wet and Wild World.

Sea World has a unique shipwreck-themed aquarium, a penguin rookery and a 1 200-seater dolphin stadium, the largest dolphinarium in Africa.

Snake and reptile parks

The Port Elizabeth Snake Park at Bayworld has a wide variety of South African and foreign reptiles, including tortoises, boa constrictors, pythons, crocodiles, lizards and deadly venomous snakes such as cobras, mambas and rattlers. Rare and threatened species, including the Madagascar ground boa, are housed in realistically landscaped glass enclosures.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park at the NZG houses 80 reptile species from all over the world.

The Hartbeespoort Dam Snake and Animal Park near Pretoria features one of the finest reptile collections in southern Africa. It offers seal shows and snake-handling demonstrations.

The Pure Venom Reptile Farm is one of the largest of South Africa's reptile parks. It is inland from Shelly Beach, on KwaZulu-Natal's South Coast.

The CrocRiver Enviro Park in Nelspruit is the largest facility of its type in Africa. The park offers, among other things, turtle, crocodile and fish ponds; the water monitor lizard pond; and the Desert House, in which a desert-like atmosphere

has been created, and which is home to the reptile gallery where indigenous and exotic reptiles from all over the world are displayed.

Khamai Reptile Centre's primary aims are conservation, breeding of endangered reptiles and education. Located outside Hoedspruit in Mpumalanga, it offers a close-up look at many local as well as exotic snakes, crocodiles and lizards.

Managing environmental resources

Private sector involvement

In South Africa, numerous private bodies are involved in conservation activities. More than 400 organisations concentrate on conservation, wildlife and the general environment, while more than 30 botanical and horticultural organisations concentrate on the conservation of the country's fauna and flora. These include the:

- BirdLife South Africa
- Botanical Society of South Africa
- Centre for Rehabilitation of Wildlife
- Conservation International
- Delta Environmental Centre
- Dolphin Action Protection Group
- EcoLink
- EWT
- Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife
- Green Trust
- Keep South Africa Beautiful
- KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board
- National Conservancy Association of South Africa
- Peace Parks Foundation
- Southern African Foundation for the Conservation of Coastal Birds
- Trees and Food for Africa
- Wildlife and Conservation Society of South Africa
- World Wildlife Fund of South Africa.

Rhino poaching

The number of rhinos poached in 2014 tipped the 1 000 mark. A total of 1 020 rhinos were poached for their horn, more than the 1 004 rhinos poached in 2013. The largest number of rhino poached were in the Kruger National Park, where 672 rhino were poached.

A total of 110 rhino were poached in Limpopo, 84 in KwaZulu-Natal, 70 in Mpumalanga, 58 in North West and 15 in the Eastern Cape. The ongoing killing of the rhino for its horns is part of a multi-billion dollar worldwide illicit wildlife trade.

Government continued to strengthen holistic and integrated interventions and explore new innovative options to ensure the long-term survival of the species.

Government implemented integrated strategic management of rhinoceros in South Africa to address the ongoing scourge. The interventions have seen the number of individuals arrested for poaching and related activities increase. A total of 344 alleged rhino poachers, couriers and poaching syndicate members were arrested during 2014.

These arrests followed an intensification of anti-poaching actions by SANParks and the police, as well as the South African National Defence Force and provincial conservation and security officials.

South Africa's multi-disciplinary response further included the creation of an intensive protection zone within the Kruger National Park, the introduction and implementation of new technology, pro-active intelligence, improving national, regional and international collaboration, and translocating rhino to safe areas within the country, and in rhino range states.

The DEA has a number of interventions to fight rhino poaching. They include strategic translocation of rhino, increased collaboration between law-enforcement agencies, disruption of criminal syndicates and tightening ports of entry and exit to combat the smuggling of illicitly sourced wildlife parts, including rhino horns. Other interventions include: providing economic alternatives for communities vulnerable to recruitment by poachers and collaboration with range, transit and end-user states.

In February 2015, the Minister of Environmental Affairs announced a committee of inquiry to look into matters of rhino poaching, including the feasibility of trade in rhino horn. The committee of inquiry comprises stakeholders from the public and private sectors, and this includes representatives from law-enforcement agencies, SANParks, the scientific community, immigration service, revenue service, conservation industry, private wildlife owners, community organisations as well as non-governmental organisations and traditional leadership. The committee will report to the inter-ministerial committee IMC before the end of 2015. The terms of reference of the committee include investigating, evaluating, reporting on and making recommendations relating to a diverse set of key areas.

Marine pollution and sustainability

South Africa has one of the world's busiest shipping routes and has experienced many oil spills over the years. It is estimated that 80% of the world's tanker traffic passes South Africa's coast.

The then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism developed the National Contin-

gency Plan for the Prevention and Combating of Pollution from Ships, in consultation with the South African Maritime Safety Authority and the Department of Transport. This includes disposing of, recovering or stabilising spilled oil and rehabilitating the environment.

With 80% of marine pollution emanating from land-based activities, the DEA will be implementing the national Programme of Action for land-based sources of pollution, while refining strategies for combating marine pollution from oil spills.

The department has embarked on a process to adopt a new protocol on land-based sources of marine pollution under the amended Nairobi Convention for the Protection, Management and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the Western Indian Ocean.

The department has also developed the Cape Zone Oil Spill Plan.

Protecting the coastline

To counter illegal activities along the coastline, as well as the country's 1 155 000-km² Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism boosted its compliance unit with the appointment of more than 80 fishery-control officers and 100 honorary fishery-control officers, after the implementation of the Honorary Fishery-Control Officers Policy.

The department took delivery of four environmental-protection vessels as part of measures to protect marine and coastal resources, namely the Lillian Ngoyi, Ruth First, Victoria Mxenge and Sarah Baartman. They patrol up to the 200 nautical-mile limit from the shore and the most remote reaches of the EEZ as well as around the Prince Edward Islands. The vessels also conduct multilateral patrols in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) coastal states.

In July 2014, President Jacob Zuma launched Operation Phakisa, which is expected to play a critical role in fast-tracking delivery of the priorities outlined in the NDP. The first phase of implementing Operation Phakisa was led by the DEA. It focused on unlocking the economic potential of South Africa's oceans, which are estimated to have the potential to contribute up

Twenty bids were received during the SANParks tender process for the purchase of white rhino from the Kruger National Park. Among the objectives of the rhino sales programme, which has taken place in South Africa before, is supporting the development and growth of viable rhino populations on privately owned properties and elsewhere; provided acceptable criteria in respect of habitat and security are met.

to R177-billion to the country's GDP by 2033 compared with R54-billion in 2010.

Vessel monitoring

The department is making it obligatory for fishing vessels to have satellite technology on board so that their movements can be monitored.

Five coastal nations in the SADC have taken the innovative step of linking their vessel-monitoring systems. Angola, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa and Tanzania have signed a MoU that will allow them to share information about the movement of licensed boats along the southern African coast.

Strategic Environmental Assessment

In May 2015, the Minister of Environmental Affairs launched the commission of a strategic environmental assessment of shale gas development in South Africa.

The aim of the strategic environmental assessment is to provide an integrated assessment and decision-making framework to enable South Africa to establish effective policy, legislation and sustainability conditions under which shale gas development could occur. The strategic environmental assessment will consider both the exploration and production related activities of shale gas development across different scenarios in a holistic and integrated manner; and will include an assessment of all the material social, economic and biophysical risks and opportunities associated with the industry.

The strategic environmental assessment will be undertaken by a science council consortium, consisting of the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), the Sanbi and the Council for Geosciences.

The strategic environmental assessment for shale gas development was formally commissioned in February 2015 and will run for 24 months. The study area will include regions of the Karoo Basin.

Chemicals and waste management

South Africa has taken a number of steps to promote environmentally sound management of chemicals and waste throughout the life cycle, including being a party to a range of multilateral environment agreements and an active member in instruments on chemicals and waste. These include the:

- Rotterdam Convention on the Prior Informed Consent Procedure for Certain Hazardous Chemicals and Pesticides in International Trade
- Stockholm Convention on Persistent Organic Pollutants

- Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer
- Basel Convention on the Control of Transboundary Movement of Hazardous Wastes
- Strategic Approach to International Chemicals Management, which is governed by the International Conference on Chemicals Management.

South Africa had a significant role in the ongoing negotiations concerning the Intergovernmental Negotiating Committee to Prepare a Globally Legally Binding Instrument on Mercury, including research into coal-dependent power/electric stations and the situational analysis of mercury in the country.

To align fragmented legislation, the department established a National Multi-Stakeholder Committee for Chemicals Management to facilitate coordination.

The National Waste Management Strategy has eight key goals namely:

- promoting waste minimisation, reuse, recycling and recovery of waste
- ensuring effective and efficient delivery of waste services
- growing the contribution of the waste sector to the green economy
- ensuring that people are aware of the impact of waste on their health, well-being and the environment
- achieving integrated waste management planning
- ensuring sound budgeting and financial management for waste services
- providing measures to rehabilitate contaminated land
- establishing effective compliance with and enforcement of the Waste Act.

Youth Jobs in Waste and Township Greening Projects

The Minister of Environmental Affairs launched the Youth Jobs in Waste and Township Greening Projects in May 2014.

The projects, funded by the DEA through its EPIP aim to contribute towards poverty alleviation while empowering beneficiaries to participate in the mainstream economy.

The youth will benefit from this project through the formation of self-help groups, which will positively impact on their knowledge of financial literacy and self-empowerment.

The Youth Jobs in Waste initiative has focused on: landfill operation and management, planning administration relating to waste collection and planning and undertaking waste awareness campaigns. The people who will be assisting with the activities will be located in the municipalities for a year.

The areas of focus for the Township Greening will be the Zeerust/Litchenburg gateways into Mahikeng and the development of two community recreational parks: in the Danville suburb and one under the jurisdiction of the Barolong Boora Tshidi Traditional Council. The project will involve general landscaping, planting of indigenous trees, installation of park playground equipment, installation of street and park furniture, park bins and other activities promoting greening.

The DEA aims to create eco-friendly greener open spaces that are safe, attractively designed, well managed for the benefit of all our communities as well as promoting maximum use of alternative energy sources and promote an environment that is clean, green and healthy for all.

Recycling

The National Recycling Forum (NRF) is a non-profit organisation created to promote the recovery and recycling of recyclable materials in South Africa. Members of the NRF include representatives of:

- the formal recycling industry in South Africa
- government departments
- regional recycling forums
- local government-based organisations
- local government utilities and co-opted advisory members

To promote the interests of its members and the formal recycling industry in South Africa, the NRF:

- provides a national communication forum for key players in the field of recycling
- interacts with central and provincial government to encourage the recycling of glass, paper, plastics, tin-plate steel, used oil and electrical and electronic waste
- facilitates the formation of regional forums that draw their memberships from enthusiastic and interested volunteers as well as small recyclers, in the major centres of South Africa
- encourages the establishment of buy-back centres and drop-off points through the activities of its members in the various centres.

Collect-a-can, one of the oldest recycling initiatives in South Africa, has been instrumental in creating a culture of recycling in South Africa. It has obtained local and international acclaim for its contribution towards protecting the environment, as well as its significant contribution to job creation and poverty alleviation.

Collect-a-Can has introduced millions of school children to the idea of caring for the environment through its schools competition.

Recycling has been valued at a contribution of as much as R50 billion to the South African economy. In effect, waste is now a renewable resource and not something to throw away.

Climate change and air-quality management

South Africa is making steady progress in implementing the National Climate Change Response Policy, despite having to balance its economic aspirations and environmental protection.

Government continues to engage actively and meaningfully in international climate change negotiations, specifically with the UNFCCC.

The policy implementation actions and activities flowing from this include the analysis of mitigation potential in key economic sectors as the basis for the establishment of Desired Emission Reduction Outcomes (DEROs), and defining the optimal mix of measures for achieving those DEROs, with the greatest benefit and least cost to the economy.

Air quality remains an important and challenging environmental issue in South Africa.

Technical and legislative tools have been developed to roll-out and monitor the implementation of national environmental management including the:

- National Framework for Air Quality Management
- air quality model by-laws
- Air-Quality Management Planning Manual
- National Ambient Air-Quality Standards and Listed Activities and the Minimum Emission Standards.

Several of these tools were under review accelerate the ongoing implementation of the AQAs of 2004.

The South African Air-Quality Information System (Saaqis) contains the latest updated data on locations and can give the status of air quality or pollution for a specific day and time on its website: www.saaqis.org.za.

A number of air-quality monitoring stations, mostly in Mpumalanga, eThekweni Municipality, the City of Johannesburg and the City of Tshwane, report to Saaqis.

Environmental impact management

South Africa's environmental impact assessment (EIA) regulations are:

- streamlining the EIA process
- introducing an approach where impact on the environment gets more attention
- introducing a listing notice dedicated to activities planned for predefined sensitive areas.

In February 2015, the Working on Fire and Eco-Furniture programmes of the Department of Environmental Affairs conducted a test at the Landquedoc Sport Field in Stellenbosch, to reduce the spread of fire in temporary structures in informal settlements.

The Environmental Assessment Practitioners' (EAP) Association of South Africa aims to:

- achieve effective quality assurance in environmental assessment practice in South Africa
- promote the empowerment of black and female professionals within the environmental assessment field
- encourage continued professional development for EAPs
- promote awareness of the purpose and practice of environmental assessment in South Africa.

The DEA has a new and improved EIA and management approach. In addition, the department is using alternative approaches to environmental impact management.

The department is already fully integrating waste and EIA.

Aquaculture

Government showed its dedication to aquaculture when President Zuma launched Operation Phakisa in July 2014. The operation will look to unlock the growth potential of the country's coastline, which is in line with the NDP.

It will also implement policies and programmes faster and more effectively. As a result, it can unlock the ocean's potential to contribute up to R177 billion to the country's GDP and create as many as one-million direct jobs.

Aquaculture is a big part of that plan and government recognises the industry as a way of contributing to food security since it has shown strong growth of 6,5% per year. Operation Phakisa will look to grow all segments of the aquaculture industry, especially by creating jobs within processing and marketing.

Despite aquaculture's advantages, the wild capture sector remains fishery's biggest contributor. According to the WWF-SA, wild capture fisheries include commercial, recreational and subsistence fisheries. It estimated about 500 000 people fished recreationally in South Africa. Commercially caught line fish was about 16 000 tons, which placed pressure on fish resources.

National Environmental Impact Assessment and Management Strategy (EIAMS)

The EIAMS consists of voluntary and regulated instruments where:

- regulated EIAs are used only when it is the most appropriate tool
- EIAM occurs within the strategic context of environmentally informed spatial instruments, sector strategies and policies
- authorities have enough capacity with skilled and experienced officials

- other stakeholders have the capacity and skills to ensure maximum impact on the effectiveness and efficiency of the strategy
- government regulatory processes have been integrated and aligned
- government, EAPs, developers, and the community are equally committed to making it work.

4x4 regulations

The Strategy Towards Co-Regulation of the Off-Road Sector in South Africa is aimed at minimising the impact of off-road driving on the environment by giving direction to off-road users and owners to develop and use inland routes in sensitive areas responsibly. The strategy applies to the inland recreational use of off-road vehicles, including two-wheel, three-wheel and four-wheel vehicles, which include 2x4 and 4x4 motor vehicles, quad bikes and motorbikes.

A key outcome of the strategy was the development, drafting and implementation of national norms and/or standards, with a supportive enabling legislative framework, to facilitate environmental compliance, responsible tourism and the longterm sustainability of the offroad industry.

The banning of off-road vehicles in coastal zones has enabled several shore-breeding birds, especially the Damara tern and the African black oystercatcher, to breed successfully on beaches again. The number of loggerhead and leatherback turtles hatching successfully on KwaZulu-Natal's northern beaches has also increased since the ban was enforced.

Coastal management

The ocean covers three quarters of the Earth, hence the importance of its protection.

The department recognises the challenges regarding the management of ocean spaces in South Africa's adjacent ocean areas.

Of the 200 estuaries found along the South African coast, 25% are in a degraded state. This is due to inappropriate developments along the banks of estuaries and in their catchment areas. The department is focusing its attention proactively on these degraded systems and prioritising developing management plans to improve the functioning of estuaries in associated hinterlands.

The Buoy Oceans Monitoring System, which provides information on the state of the oceans at Storms River in the Tsitsikamma National Park, is the first in a series of observation and monitoring platforms, which will form the basis of the South African National Oceans and Coastal Monitoring System.

The DEA reviewed the Recreational Water Quality Guidelines for Coastal Waters, intending to develop effective early warning systems to pre-empt the catastrophic impacts of possible hazards.

Erosion and desertification

According to the UN Environment Programme, desertification affects 900 million people in 99 countries with 24 million tons (Mt) of topsoil being lost to erosion annually. The resultant land degradation costs Africa about US\$9 billion every year.

Most South African soil is unstable. The country loses an estimated 500 Mt of topsoil annually through erosion caused by water and wind.

About 81% of South Africa's total land area is farmed. However, only 70% of this area is suitable for grazing. Overgrazing and erosion diminish the carrying capacity of the veld and lead to land degradation. This process has already claimed more than 250 000 ha of land in South Africa.

South Africa is a signatory to the UN Convention to Combat Desertification (UNCCD). Its main objectives include cooperation between governments, organisations and communities to accomplish sustainable development, especially where water resources are scarce.

South Africa also acts as the coordinator for the Valdivia Group for Desertification.

The group consists of Argentina, Australia, Brazil, Chile, New Zealand, South Africa and Uruguay. The aim is, among other things, to foster scientific and technological cooperation.

South Africa has introduced legislation such as the Nema of 2004 to promote the conservation of biodiversity, and fight desertification and land degradation.

As part of the UN international campaign to address global environmental deterioration and in particular, combat dry land degradation, which affects up to one-quarter of the world's land surface, the UN has designated 17 June as the World Day to Combat Desertification (WDCD). The theme of 2014's WDCD was ecosystem-based adaptation. With the slogan "Land Belongs to the Future, Let's Climate Proof It", the WDCD highlighted the benefits of mainstreaming sustainable land management policies and practices into collective response to climate change.

Biodiversity

South Africa is home to some 24 000 species, around 7% of the world's vertebrate species, and 5,5% of the world's known insect species (only about half of the latter have been described).

In terms of the number of endemic species of mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians found in South Africa the country ranks as the fifth richest in Africa and the 24th richest in the world.

Marine biodiversity is also high, with more than 11 000 species found in South African waters, which is about 15% of global species. More than 25% of these species (or 3 496 species) are endemic to South Africa, many of which are threatened, especially in river ecosystems (82%) and estuaries (77%).

South Africa ratified the Nagoya Protocol on Access to Genetic Resources and the Fair and Equitable Sharing of Benefits Arising from their Utilisation to the Convention on Biological Diversity, popularly referred to as the Nagoya Protocol on ABS. The Nagoya Protocol is a legally binding agreement outlining a set of terms prescribing how one country will gain access to another country's genetic resources and how the benefits derived will be shared.

The aim of the National Biodiversity and Business Network is to assist businesses from various sectors to integrate and mainstream biodiversity issues into their strategies and operations.

Government and businesses are realising that the economic and social development of the country depends on healthy ecosystems and biodiversity. The South African NDP: Vision 2030 confirms that national economic growth depends on the environmental sustainability of the country's proposed development path.

South Africa is the third most biodiverse country in the world, after Indonesia and Brazil. These countries harbour most of the Earth's species and collectively accommodate more than two thirds of global biodiversity.

South Africa is a signatory to several biodiversity-related multilateral agreements such as the:

- Convention on Biological Diversity Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety
- Ramsar Convention
- Cites
- UNCCD
- Convention on Migratory Species.

The National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP) is aimed at establishing a framework and plan of action for the conservation and sustainable use of South Africa's biodiversity and the equitable sharing of benefits derived from this use.

A scientific, systematic biodiversity assessment for the country was carried out in 2004 to spatially support the NBSAP, titled the National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment (NSBA).

The NSBA was updated in 2012, forming the

National Biodiversity Assessment, 2011, with many significant findings requiring conservation action.

South Africa and the Socialist Republic of Vietnam signed an action plan in May 2013 to implement the MoU on Biodiversity Conservation and Protection.

The implementation plan, effective until 2017, gives further impetus to the fight against wildlife crimes, particularly rhino poaching.

The National Biodiversity Framework (NBF), published in 2009, provides a framework to coordinate and align the efforts of the many organisations and individuals involved in conserving and managing South Africa's biodiversity, in support of sustainable development. The NBF is a requirement of the Nema of 2004.

Three internationally recognised biodiversity hotspots are found in South Africa. They are the:

- Cape Floral Kingdom (equivalent to the fynbos biome)
- Succulent Karoo (shared with Namibia)
- Maputaland-Pondoland-Albany Centre of Plant Endemism, which stretches from the Albany Centre in the Eastern Cape, through the Pondoland Centre of Plant Endemism and KwaZulu-Natal, and the eastern side of Swaziland, into southern Mozambique and Mpumalanga.

The Succulent Karoo Biome is one of only two arid biodiversity hotspots in the world, the other being the Horn of Africa.

There are eight major terrestrial biomes, or habitat types, in South Africa, which are divided into 70 veld types.

National biodiversity biomes

Savanna Biome

The Savanna Biome is the largest biome in southern Africa, occupying 46% of its area, and over a third of South Africa. It is an area of mixed grassland and trees, generally known as bushveld.

In the Northern Cape and Kalahari sections of this biome, the most distinctive trees are the camel thorn (*acacia erioloba*) and the camphor bush (*tarchonanthus camphoratus*).

In Limpopo, the portly baobab (*adansonia digitata*) and the candelabra tree (*euphorbia ingens*) dominate. The central bushveld is home to species such as the knob thorn (*acacia nigrescens*), bushwillow (*combretum* spp.), monkey thorn (*acacia galpinii*), mopani (*colophospermum mopane*) and wild fig (*figus* spp.). In the valley bushveld of the south, euphorbias and spekboom trees (*portulacaria africa*) dominate.

Abundant wild fruit trees provide food for many birds and animals in the Savanna Biome. Grey loeries, hornbills, shrikes, flycatchers and rollers are birds typical of the northern regions.

The subtropical and coastal areas are home to Knysna loeries, purple-crested loeries and green pigeons. Raptors occur throughout the biome. The larger mammals include lion, leopard, cheetah, elephant, buffalo, zebra, rhino, giraffe, kudu, oryx, waterbuck and hippopotamus.

About 8,5% of the biome is protected. The Kruger National Park, Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, iSimangaliso Wetlands Park and other reserves lie in the Savanna Biome.

Nama-Karoo Biome

The Nama-Karoo is the third largest biome in South Africa, covering about 20,5% of the country or more than 260 000 km². It stretches across the vast central plateau of the western half of the country. This semi-desert receives little rain in summer.

Rainfall varies from about 200 mm a year in the west to 400 mm a year in the north-east. Summer is very hot and winter is very cold with frequent frost.

Most of the plants are low shrubs and grass. Many plants are deciduous. Trees such as the sweet thorn (*acacia karoo*) are usually only found along rivers or on rocky hillsides.

Common animals include the bat-eared fox, ostrich, spring hare, tortoises and brown locust. The riverine rabbit is a threatened species found in the Nama-Karoo Biome.

This biome includes the Namaland area of Namibia, and the central Karoo area of South Africa.

Because of low rainfall, rivers are non-perennial. Cold and frost in winter and high temperatures in summer demand special adaptation by plants.

Only 1% of the Nama-Karoo Biome falls within officially protected areas, of which the Karoo and Augrabies national parks are the largest.

Overgrazing and easily eroded soil surfaces are causing this semi-desert to advance slowly on the neighbouring savanna and grassland biomes.

Grassland Biome

The Grassland Biome is the second largest biome in South Africa, covering an area of 339 237 km² and occurring in eight of South Africa's nine provinces. It is one of the most threatened biomes in South Africa, with 30% irreversibly transformed and only 1,9% of the biodiversity target for the biome formally conserved.

The Grassland Biome provides essential

ecosystem services, such as water production and soil retention necessary for economic development. It holds important biodiversity of global and domestic significance and value.

Trees are scarce and found mainly on hills and along riverbeds. Karee (*rhys lancea*), wild currant (*rhys pyroides*), white stinkwood (*celtis africana*) and several acacia species are the commonest.

The Grassland Biome has the third largest number of indigenous plant species in the country.

Eight mammal species endemic to South Africa occur in the wild in this biome.

The area is internationally recognised as an area of high species endemism for birds. The black korhaan, blue crane and guinea-fowl are among the birds found in the area.

Succulent Karoo Biome

The Succulent Karoo Biome covers a flat to gently undulating plain, with some hilly and "broken" veld, mostly situated to the west and south of the escarpment, and north of the Cape Fold Belt.

One of the natural wonders of South Africa is the annual blossoming of the Namaqualand wild flowers (mainly of the family asteraceae), which transforms the semi-desert of the Northern Cape into a fairyland. After rain, the drab landscape is suddenly covered with a multicoloured carpet of flowers (from August to October, depending on the rainfall). This is a winter rainfall area with extremely dry and hot summers. Succulents with thick, fleshy leaves are plentiful. Most trees have white trunks to reflect the heat.

The quiver tree (aloe dichotoma) and the human-like elephant's trunk (pachypodium namaquanum) are prominent in the Richtersveld. Grass is scarce.

The animal life is similar to that of the neighbouring Fynbos and Nama-Karoo biomes.

The biome includes 2 800 plant species at increased risk of extinction.

Fynbos Biome

The Fynbos Biome is one of the six accepted floral kingdoms of the world. This region covers only 0,04% of the Earth's land surface.

Fynbos, which is found mainly in the Western Cape, is the name given to a group of ever-green plants with small, hard leaves (such as those in the Erica family). It is made up mainly of the protea, heathers and restio, and incorporates diverse plant species (more than 8 500 kinds, of which more than 6 000 are endemic).

The Fynbos Biome is famous for the protea, which is South Africa's national flower. The biome also contains flowering plants now regarded as

garden plants, such as freesia, tritonia, sparaxis and many others.

Protected areas cover 13,6% of the Fynbos Biome and include the Table Mountain and Agulhas national parks.

This biome is not very rich in bird and mammal life, but does include the endemic Cape grysbok, the geometric tortoise, the Cape sugarbird and the protea seed-eater. Baboon, honey-badgers, caracal, the buck and several types of eagle and dassies are found in the mountains.

Forest Biome

South Africa's only significant natural forests are those of Knysna and Tsitsikamma in the Western and Eastern Cape respectively. Other reasonably large forest patches that are officially protected are in the high-rainfall areas of the eastern escarpment (Drakensberg mountains), and on the eastern seaboard. Forest giants such as yellowwood (podocarpus spp.), ironwood (olea capensis) and lemonwood (xymalos monospora) dominate.

The indigenous forests are a magical world of ferns, lichens and colourful forest birds such as the Knysna loerie, the endangered Cape parrot and the rameron pigeon. Mammals include the endangered samango monkey, bushpig, bushbuck and the delicate blue duiker.

Thicket Biome

The Thicket Biome is the second smallest biome in South Africa, and is known for its high biodiversity. Subtropical thicket ranges from closed shrubland to low forest, dominated by evergreen succulent trees, shrubs and vines.

It is often impenetrable and has little herbaceous cover. Roughly 20% of the species found there are endemic to the Thicket Biome.

The Thicket Biome, which is predominantly in the Eastern Cape, supports four species of tortoise: the leopard tortoise (geochelone pardalis), angulate tortoise (chersina angulata), tent tortoise (psammobates tentorius) and parrot-beaked tortoise (homopus areolatus).

Desert Biome

True desert is found under very harsh environmental conditions, which are even more extreme than those found in the Succulent Karoo and the Nama-Karoo biomes. The climate is characterised by summer rainfall, but also by high levels of summer aridity. Rainfall is highly variable from year to year. Desert is found mostly in Namibia, although it does occur in South Africa in the lower Orange River Valley.

The vegetation of the Desert Biome is characterised by the dominance of annual plants (often

annual grasses). This means that after a rare season of abundant rain, the desert plains can be covered with a sea of short annual grass, whereas in drier years, the plains appear bare with annual plants persisting in the form of seeds.

Perennial plants are usually encountered in specialised habitats associated with local concentrations of water from broad drainage lines or washes. Nearer the coast, coastal fog also governs the distribution of certain species commonly associated with the desert.

The Desert Biome incorporates abundant insect fauna, which includes many tenebrionid beetles, some of which can use fog water. There are also various vertebrates, including reptiles, springbok, ostrich, gemsbok, snakes and geckos.

Some areas in this Biome are formally protected in the Richtersveld National Park.

International cooperation Benguela Current Large Marine Ecosystem(BCLME)

The BCLME is regarded as one of the richest ecosystems on Earth, with ecosystem goods and services estimated to be worth at least US\$54,3 billion per year. Offshore oil and gas production, marine diamond mining, coastal tourism, commercial fishing and shipping are some of the most important industrial activities that take place in the region.

The accord, signed in Angola, is a formal agreement between Angola, Namibia and South Africa that seeks to provide economic, environmental and social benefits for the three countries.

The Benguela Current Commission is a permanent intergovernmental organisation, with a mandate to promote the long-term conservation, protection, rehabilitation, enhancement and sustainable use of the BCLME.

South Africa has signed several international conventions, treaties, protocols and other agreements supporting the principles of sustainable development including the:

- Convention on Biological Diversity (ratified in 1995)
- Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety (South Africa became a party in 2003)
- Kyoto Protocol (signed in 2003)
- UNCCD
- World Heritage Convention (ratified in 1997)
- Convention on Wetlands of International Importance (Ramsar Convention) (ratified in 1975)
- Convention on the Conservation of Migratory Species (acceded in 1991).

United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC)

South Africa ratified the UNFCCC in 1997. The UNFCCC is aimed at:

- implementing urgent action, from 2013 to 2020, including the adoption of a second commitment period under the Kyoto Protocol and a number of institutional mechanisms such as the Green Climate Fund
- acknowledging the inadequate commitments to reduce emissions made thus far; a work programme was agreed upon to increase pre-2020 levels of ambition
- action for the future with the negotiation of a legal agreement for the period beyond 2020.

The UNFCCC entered into force in 1994. The Conference of the Parties (COP) to the UNFCCC meets annually to assess progress in dealing with climate change. The COP is the supreme body of the convention and is its highest decision-making authority.

With 195 parties, the UNFCCC has near universal membership and is the parent treaty of the 1997 Kyoto Protocol. The Kyoto Protocol has been ratified by 193 of the UNFCCC parties.

Under the protocol, 37 states, consisting of highly industrialised countries and those making the transition to a market economy, have legally binding emission limitation and reduction commitments.

The ultimate objective of both treaties is to stabilise greenhouse-gas (GHG) concentrations in the atmosphere at a level that will prevent dangerous human interference with the climate system.

The launch of negotiations to shape the new global climate change agreement and first discussions on how to raise ambition took place at the UNFCCC in Bonn in May 2012, which prepared decisions for adoption at the UNFCCC in Qatar later in 2012.

One of the central outcomes of the meeting in South Africa was to pave the way for a legal agreement under the UNFCCC applicable to all parties, to be completed by 2015 and to come into effect from 2020.

The 19th session of the Conference of the Parties (COP 19), held during November 2013, in Warsaw, Poland, ensured that progress was made with the implementation of decisions already taken under the UNFCCC and the Kyoto Protocol.

Under South Africa's COP Presidency, COP 17 achieved a historic agreement, initiating negotiations on a new global legal instrument, applicable to all countries, to be adopted by 2015 and to be fully operational in 2020.

United Nations Commission on Sustainable Development (CSD)

The UN CSD was established by the UN General Assembly in December 1992 to ensure effective follow-up of the UN Conference on Environment and Development, also known as the Earth Summit.

From its inception, the CSD was highly participatory in structure and outlook, by engaging in its formal proceedings a wide range of official stakeholders and partners through innovative formulae.

At the UN CSD (Rio+20), member states agreed to establish a high-level political forum that would subsequently replace the CCSD.

Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (Cites)

South Africa was a founding member of the Cites Treaty, which was adopted on 3 March 1973, but only came into force on 1 July 1975.

Signed by 149 countries, Cites is an international agreement between governments to protect endangered species against over-exploitation through regulations regarding imports and exports and in some cases prohibiting trade.

Cites was drafted as a result of a resolution adopted in 1963 at a meeting of members of the IUCN. Cites accords varying degrees of protection to more than 30 000 animals and plant species, whether they are traded as live specimens, fur coats or dried herbs.

South Africa used the 16th Cites held in February 2013, in Thailand, to shine the spotlight on rhino conservation.

South Africa hosted and participated in side events during the 16th COP, and three of these events focused on rhino matters including conservation, safety and security and rhino economics or trade matters. This was reflective of the key areas addressed during the RIM process in 2012.

South Africa appointed a RIM in May 2012, with the responsibility of conducting research and convening a series of stakeholder dialogues with all interested parties to facilitate wide-ranging and expert input into policy thinking.

In the course of the work of the RIM, 12 stakeholder meetings were held in Gauteng, Durban and Cape Town, with presentations being conducted in Bloemfontein and Cape Town.

In February 2014, South Africa hosted the fifth biennial summit of the C40 Cites Climate Leadership Group to discuss ways urban leaders can tackle the causes – and effects – of climate change. Climate change directly affects city government. Mayors of cities have the power to

introduce innovative methods to combat climate change, such as installing energy-efficient LED lighting and creating bicycle lanes and bike hire programmes, to introducing bus rapid transit systems to cut down on carbon emissions.

The summit, held in Africa for the first time, brought together officials from 66 cities, representing 600 million people across the world, in a global network to share information on how they can reduce their carbon footprint. These cities produce 55% of global greenhouse gas emissions, and 21% of GDP.

Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer

In 2014, parties to the Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer celebrated the International Day for the Preservation of the Ozone Layer under the theme: “Ozone Layer Protection: The Mission Goes On.”

The International Ozone Day is an annual event that commemorates the date of the signing the Montreal Protocol in 1987. The theme for the 2014 celebrations highlighted the fact that efforts to protect the ozone layer continue in earnest and encouraged action to address future challenges.

South Africa, which became a signatory to the Montreal Protocol in 1990, has phased out CFCs, halons, methyl chloroform and carbon tetrachloride.

This makes it the only developing country in the world that has achieved so much in line with the phase-out schedule for developed countries. Although South Africa is classified as a developing country, its consumption of these substances is equal to that of some developed countries.

World Summit on Sustainable Development

South Africa hosted the WSSD in September 2002 in Johannesburg. The agreements reached then are a guide to action that will take forward the UN Millennium Summit Declaration's goal of halving world poverty by 2015, and will incorporate decisions taken by world bodies since the Rio Earth Summit in 1992.

The most notable success was getting the world to turn the UN Millennium Declaration into a concrete set of programmes and to mobilise funds for these programmes.

Targets set at the summit will have an enormous impact such as:

- the number of people without basic sanitation and access to safe drinking water has to be halved by 2015
- collapsed fish stocks must be restored by 2015
- chemicals with a detrimental health impact are to be phased out by 2020

- energy services have to be extended to 35% of African households over the next 10 years.

United Nations Conference on Sustainable Development (Rio+20)

Rio+20 refers to the UN Conference on Sustainable Development which took place in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, in June 2012. The meeting took place 20 years after the landmark 1992 Earth Summit in Rio, when more than 108 heads of State agreed to work together to develop national strategies to reduce carbon emissions, stabilise GHG, protect forests from destruction, and pay for their share of the damage caused to the Earth through pollution.

At the Rio+20 talks 50 of the 193 member states of the UN launched new energy strategies, and private investors pledged more than US\$50 billion to carry out the goal of doubling the share of global renewable energy and the rate of energy efficiency improvement by 2030.

Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC)

In April 2014, the UN's IPCC published a comprehensive climate-change study, warning that storms, floods, droughts and heat waves are a growing threat. The effects of global warming are likely to be severe, pervasive and irreversible, with rising temperatures putting health, homes, food supplies and safety at risk. The IPCC is based in Geneva and has 12 full-time staff. The report was compiled by more than 300 authors from 70 countries, with contributions from thousands of experts worldwide. The report is the first of its kind to analyse rising temperatures as a series of comprehensive global risks caused by increasingly perilous levels of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere.

Job creation

Demonstrating its commitment to improving socio-economic benefits within the environmental sector, the department has created more than 65 000 work opportunities, yielding more than 34 019 full-time equivalent jobs. The targeted designated groups were women, youth and people living with disabilities.

Some 2 700 young people are expected to benefit from the Youth Environmental Services Programme over the next three years. Upon exiting the programme participants will be placed in either permanent employment or further training institutions.

The department launched the Youth Jobs in Waste Programme. This project was expected to create 330 job opportunities in the Free State and 326 in North West, and once rolled

out nationally, it was expected to provide 3 577 young people with job opportunities in waste management and related entrepreneurship.

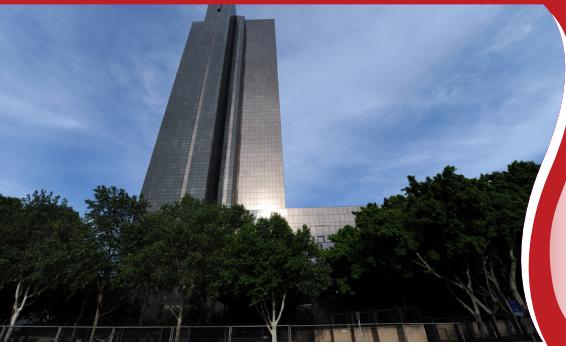
In addition to these youth employment initiatives, environmental monitors were introduced to deal with environmental threats in protected areas, including the scourge of rhino poaching nationally. This programme employs 1 000 young people to strengthen the fight against rhino poaching and other environmental challenges.

Urban environmental management

The Urban Environmental Management Programme is a partnership between 11 government institutions from the national, provincial and municipal spheres of government. The programme alleviates poverty through improved service delivery within the environmental management of urban areas.

Started in April 2006, the programme is a continuation of more than 10 years of environmental collaboration between South Africa and Denmark.





Finance

National Treasury is the custodian of the nation's financial resources, accountable to the nation to discharge its responsibilities professionally, with the aim of promoting growth and prosperity for all.

In October 2014, the Minister of Finance Nhlanhla Nene tabled the 2014 Medium Term Budget Policy Statement (MTBPS) which signaled a shift in the country's fiscal policy. Government proposed a series of measures to reduce the country's budget deficit and to stabilise public debt.

Proposed reductions to planned expenditure ceilings were targeted to avoid cuts in front-line service delivery.

Budgets for non-essential goods and services were frozen, which was expected to result in substantial savings over the next two years. Across national departments, planned expenditure on travel and subsistence were cut by R555 million, while advertising and communication budgets were reduced by R240 million.

The office of the Auditor-General of South Africa (AGSA) flagged government spending on consultants. Lower spending on consultants was expected to generate savings of R370 million.

Fiscal policy framework

In October 2014, government proposed a package of fiscal measures on the expenditure and revenue side to re-establish the sustainable foundation for public finance and to build a platform for investment-led growth in the future.

These measures were in line with the Constitution of South Africa, which requires government to act within its available resources to progressively realise fundamental social and economic rights. These steps, according to the MTBPS, were necessary to ensure the sustainability of the country's most important public spending programmes in a weaker economic environment.

The proposals complemented reforms to moderate consumption, boost savings and expand productive investment.

Jobs Fund

In 2011, President Jacob Zuma launched the "Year of the Job" campaign at the back of the 2008 global economic meltdown that shed one million jobs by 2009.

In support of the President's campaign, the Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA), which the Minister of Finance is the governor of, launched the Jobs Fund.

After three funding cycles, 93 projects were approved for an overall funding of R5 billion,

while a further R6,1 billion was leveraged through project partners.

By October 2014, R969,2 million had been disbursed. Total employment in these projects amounted to 167 847, of which 56 356 were new placements into vacant positions.

Over 185 000 beneficiaries received work-related training.

Budget framework

Government proposed a series of measures to narrow the country's budget deficit from 4,1% in 2014 to 2,5% over the next three years. Among the elements was the reduction of spending. Government lowered its expenditure ceiling by R10 billion in 2015/16 and R15 billion in 2016/17. It also adjusted tax policy and administration.

In the 2015 national budget, proposals were introduced to generate additional revenue of at least R27 billion over the next two years.

Long-term planning also came to the fore with strengthened budget preparation. Emphasis was placed on longer-term planning and efficient resource allocation within a fiscal framework that linked aggregate expenditure and economic growth beyond the medium term.

The headcount of government personnel was frozen while government would also review funded vacancies.

Government adopted a deficit-neutral approach to financing State-owned companies (SOCs), over the next two years ensuring that any capitalisation required does not widen the budget deficit.

Expenditure planning and statistics

According National Treasury's MTBPS October 2014, South Africa's 2014/15 account deficit increased to about 5,5% of the gross domestic product (GDP) over the past two years.

The trade deficit is projected to widen to -2,4% of the GDP in 2014.

According to the MTBPS, while declining commodity prices in South Africa's traditional export market – the European Union (EU) – has put pressure on exports, other opportunities are emerging.

Trade and financial links with sub-Saharan Africa have grown and South African firms are well positioned to expand to Africa.

The global re-balancing of growth also provided opportunities for South Africa to broaden beyond its traditional reliance on minerals, metal and agricultural commodities to manufactured exports with greater value addition, supported by the more competitive exchange rate.

National Treasury's projection comes at the back of an increased interest by European markets to invest in sub-Saharan Africa.

In October 2014, the European House-Ambrosetti, one of Europe's major think tanks, told Italian and South African CEOs that the region had untapped potential in the energy, manufacturing and agribusiness sectors that could increase the region's exports.

The African Union Commission (AUC) identified regional integration as a key to unlock growth in Africa.

In October 2014, the International Monetary Fund (IMF) forecasted economic growth to remain above 5%.

Growing the economy

National Treasury proposed increasing its spending over the next three years on initiatives to boost job creation, education and skills development.

The budget proposed expenditure growth of 7,6% a year over the next three years, reaching R1,55 trillion by 2017/18.

Over the past decade the Department of Finance increased public spending of the main budget from 26% to 31% of the GDP. Much of this increase has gone to programmes that contribute to the social wage, including schools, roads, hospitals, housing and municipal services.

The medium-term objective was to ensure that public spending promoted growth and created an environment for greater private-sector investment.

Government planned to the spend budget on, among other things:

- reinforcing support for export competitiveness and job creation, including over R18 billion for manufacturing incentives, the establishment of special economic zones (SEZs) and the employment tax incentive
- supporting cities to improve living conditions, modernise transport and communication infrastructure, expand the urban economy and promote trade and investment
- working with development-finance institutions to increase investment in the urban landscape and expand the municipal debt market
- expanding the skills base, with R800 billion to be disbursed on education and skills
- post-school education and training received the fastest-growing share of the budget and would continue to expand.

One-third of the 2014/15 budget went to the compensation of employees. Government budgeted for nominal wage-bill growth in line with consumer-price inflation (CPI).

In the 2014 economic circumstances, it was especially important that government maintained

a careful balance between personnel spending and other resources required for public service delivery.

Changes that set out in the MTSF was government's plan of action over the next five years.

The MTSF includes programmes aimed at improving competitiveness, particularly in new areas such as oil and gas development, renewable energy and green technology.

It recognises the need to support job creation through sector-based interventions, employment incentives, the Expanded Public Works programme (EPWP) and the Jobs Fund.

The structural announced in October 2014, included:

- helping companies in the manufacturing sector to enhance their competitiveness and upgrade equipment through the Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP), a new framework for SEZs that allows for targeted incentives, logistics improvements and active partnerships between businesses, municipalities and development agencies
- improving links between emerging farmers and produce markets to accompany an improved alignment between land reform and agricultural support programmes
- expanding footprints into sub-Saharan Africa through investments and business partnerships
- extending the independent power producer programme to include 2 500 MW of coal projects and 800 MW of cogeneration projects to be connected into the national electricity grid
- transforming investments in the transport and communication sector, where the Passenger Rail Agency of South Africa (Prasa) has concluded a R53-billion contract to replace over 500 commuter trains over the next 10 years
- improving consumer protection and safeguarding investments including attention to unfair lending and debt recovery practices and initiatives to encourage saving.

The MTSF aims to:

- informing spending patterns across key priority objectives
- improving the quality of the country's education system and health services
- building capacity
- strengthening accountability in the public sector
- reshaping the country's spatial landscape
- investing in dynamic city development, integrated housing and transport programmes
- supporting small business activity and job creation in urban and rural areas.

International Development and Cooperation

The International Development Cooperation (IDC) unit is responsible for coordinating, mobilising and managing official development assistance (ODA). The IDC enhanced ODA coordination through continuous engagements with development partners on various platforms, including annual consultations, high-level bilateral meetings and official visits.

Within government departments, the IDC has enhanced coordination by organising national and provincial ODA coordinators' forums, and has facilitated greater accountability and transparency by reporting on ODA programmes to the budget-allocation decision-making process.

Through a series of community practice sessions and manuals, the unit has also developed capacity within line departments to report on and manage ODA programmes.

Overview of the 2014/15 Budget

For the period of 2014 to 2019 government's MTSF provides a roadmap to address challenges as it is the first five-year policy framework designed in line with the 2030 vision of the National Development Plan (NDP).

Among the MTSF priorities for structural reform, is building the capacity of the Public Sector, particularly at local government through a "back to basics" approach as well as reshaping South Africa's urban environment through integrated spatial planning (ISP).

In October 2014, government announced that it would spend R4,4 trillion over the next three years.

South Africa's longer term economic prospects are tied to a successful implementation of the reforms described in the NDP and the MTSF. This included large infrastructure investments in electricity and transport, expanded partnerships to encourage private-sector investment; SEZs to boost exports; programmes to encourage more dynamic, integrated cities and initiatives to improve the quality of education and skills development.

Critical MTSF interventions over the medium term included:

- expanding energy supply through public and private investment, including procuring 2,5 GW of privately supplied baseload electricity and signing cogeneration agreements for over 800 MW to be added to the national grid
- expanding rail capacity for coal exports between Mpumalanga and the Richards Bay coal terminal, building a new heavy-haul rail line from the Waterberg region, and increasing

port capacity for iron exports via Saldanha and the Northern Cape corridor

- enhancing the performance of sea ports and inland terminals, revising and consolidating port charges, establishing a single transport regulator and reducing cross-subsidisation in transport pricing
- preparing to exploit on- and offshore oil and gas by developing an exploratory drilling plan and legislation
- improving dispute-settlement mechanisms in labour relations
- enabling immigration reform to encourage people with skills to work in South Africa.

Combating corruption

Efforts to combat corruption continued in 2014. Government continued to fight waste and corruption, supported by audit institutions and stringent monitoring and reporting requirements.

Efforts to improve value for each rand spent included strengthened measures to identify, prevent and combat corruption in both the public and private sectors.

Government's anti-corruption task team investigated 169 criminal cases involving 945 individuals. By September 2014, investigations had led to 54 convictions with R1,8 million in assets having been frozen and R105 million in assets being forfeited.

Financial accounting and control systems were also strengthened resulting in improved reporting of unauthorised, irregular or wasteful spending.

Effective responses distinguished between technical infractions and illegal activity.

Additionally, National Treasury announced that between 2014/15 and 2016/17 the Chief Procurement Officer will build a foundation for more cost-effective operations in the public sector.

The range and scope of nationally negotiated contracts will be expanded and a national price referencing system will be introduced. Government will also draw on private-sector expertise and best practice in procurement systems.

The fight against corruption also depends on an active citizenry, which the NDP stresses is a precondition for South Africa to achieve its ambitious social and economic objectives.

Improving government services

Government expressed its commitment to maintain the core of social expenditure programmes, while sustainably increasing capital investment. Budgets for health, education and social grants will keep pace with inflation over the medium term.

Allocations to employment programmes, technical training and skills development as well as housing and social infrastructure also continued to grow.

The alignment and coordination across government, improved programme effectiveness without requiring additional funds.

Over the medium term the national budget emphasised improving the use of public resources and identifying savings to finance policy priorities without affecting service delivery.

National budgets emphasised restructuring the way departments and agencies work together to eliminate inefficient resource-allocation and overlapping mandates.

It also reinforced cost-containment with the 2015/16 budget by paying particular attention to reducing items that are not critical for service delivery.

Government encouraged expanded partnerships between public agencies or with the private sector where such initiatives could bring about more efficient outcomes.

Legislation and policies

- The Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999) ensures that public funds are managed by a less rigid environment for financial management, with a stronger emphasis on the prudent use of state resources, improved reporting requirements and the use of management information to enhance accountability.
- The Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003) applies to all municipalities and municipal entities, and national and provincial organs of state, to the extent of their financial dealings with municipalities.
- The Cooperative Banks Act, 2007 (Act 40 of 2007) provides for the establishment of the Cooperative Banks Development Agency as a public entity under the executive authority of the Minister of Finance.
- Division of Revenue Act, 2012 (Act 5 of 2012)
- Appropriation Act, 2012 (Act 7 of 2012)
- Rates and Monetary Amounts and Amendment of Revenue Laws Act, 2012 (Act 13 of 2012)
- Adjustments Appropriation Act, 2012 (Act 17 of 2012)
- Division of Revenue Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 18 of 2012)
- Financial Markets Act, 2012 (Act 19 of 2012)
- Tax Administration Laws Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 21 of 2012)
- Taxation Laws Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 22 of 2012)
- Credit Rating Services Act, 2012 (Act 24 of 2012).

- Finance Intelligence Centre (FIC) Act, 2001 (Act 38 of 2001).

Financial institutions

Financial Intelligence Centre

The FIC is South Africa's national centre for the gathering, analysing and disseminating financial intelligence. The FIC was established to identify proceeds of crime, combat money laundering and the financing of terrorism. In so doing the FIC's primary role is to protect the integrity of South Africa's financial system. The FIC was established by the FIC Act, of 2001 and reports to the Minister of Finance and to Parliament. The FIC's mandate is to:

- identify the proceeds of crime, combat money laundering and prevent terror financing
- supervise and enforce compliance with the FIC Act 38 of 2001
- share information with law enforcement authorities, supervisory bodies, intelligence services, the South African Revenue Service (Sars) and other local and international agencies
- facilitate effective supervision and enforcement by supervisory bodies
- formulate and lead the implementation of policy regarding money laundering and the financing of terrorism
- provide policy advice to the Minister of Finance
- uphold the international obligations and commitments required by the country in respect of anti-money laundering and combating financing of terrorism (AML/CFT).

The FIC Act of 2001, introduces a regulatory framework of measures which requires certain categories of business to take steps regarding client identification, record-keeping, reporting of information and internal compliance structures.

All businesses have to report various suspicious transactions to the FIC. The FIC also receives additional financial data from accountable and reporting institutions.

South Africa is a member of the Financial Action Task Force, the international body, which sets standards and policy on anti-money laundering and for combating the financing of terrorism (AML/CFT). The FIC is also a member of Eastern and Southern Africa Anti-Money Laundering Group, which aims to support countries to implement the global AML/CFT standards.

The FIC is a member and current chair of the Egmont Group, which consists of financial intelligence units from 147 countries around the world. The primary aim of the organisation is to facilitate cooperation and sharing of financial intelligence information among its members.

Financial and Fiscal Commission (FFC)

The FFC is an independent, objective, impartial and unbiased constitutional advisory institution. It is a permanent expert commission with a constitutionally defined structure, a set of generic responsibilities and institutional processes.

The FFC submits recommendations and advice to all spheres of government, based on research and consultations on a range of intergovernmental fiscal issues.

The research includes:

- developing principles for intergovernmental fiscal relations, based on analysis of international best practice
- analysing local, provincial and national government budgets to understand revenue and expenditure trends
- identifying and measuring factors influencing provincial and local revenues and expenditures
- assessing fiscal policy instruments, such as conditional grants, equitable share transfers and taxes.

The Constitution and other legislation requires government to consult with the FFC on issues such as provincial and local government revenue sources, and provincial and municipal loans.

Consultation about the fiscal implications of assigning functions from one sphere of government to another is also required.

Public Investment Corporation (PIC)

The PIC's clients are public-sector entities, most of which are pension, provident, social security, development and guardian funds.

The PIC's role is to invest funds on behalf of these clients, based on investment mandates set by each client and approved by the Financial Services Board (FSB), with which it is registered as a financial services provider (FSP).

The PIC is wholly owned by the South African Government, with the Minister of Finance as the shareholder representative.

The PIC was established as a corporation on in accordance with the PIC Act, 2004 (Act 23 of 2004).

Corporatisation has enabled the PIC to structure its investment activities and operations in a manner comparable to that of private-sector investment managers.

Apart from pursuing FSB-compliant mandates, the PIC benchmarks its investment performance against market-driven indices, enabling clients and the shareholder to compare PIC's returns with those achieved in the marketplace.

South African Revenue Service

Sars is an organ of State outside the public

service, established in accordance with the Sars Act, 1997 (Act. 34 of 1997).

It aims to provide a world-class, efficient, transparent and taxpayer-centred service, ensuring optimum and equitable revenue collection. Its main functions are:

- collecting and administering all national taxes, duties and levies imposed under national legislation
- collecting revenue that may be imposed under any other legislation, as agreed upon between Sars and an organ of State or institution entitled to the revenue
- advising the Minister of Finance on revenue
- facilitating trade
- providing protection against the illegal import and export of goods
- advising the Minister of Trade and Industry on matters concerning control over the import, export, manufacture, movement, storage or use of certain goods.

Tax administration

National Treasury is responsible for advising the Minister of Finance on tax policy issues that arise in local, provincial and national government. As part of this role, National Treasury must design tax instruments that can optimally fulfil their revenue-raising function. These tax instruments must be aligned to the goals of government's economic and social policy.

A single, modern framework for the common administrative provisions of various tax Acts administered by Sars, excluding customs, was established by the Tax Administration Act, 2011 (Act 28 of 2011). The Act simplifies and provides greater coherence in South African tax administration law. It eliminates duplication, removes redundant requirements, and aligns disparate requirements that previously existed in different tax Acts administered by Sars.

The Act provides for common procedures across the various tax Acts, and strives for an appropriate balance between the rights and obligations of Sars and the rights and obligations of taxpayers in a transparent relationship.

In 2014, the Government employed a structural increase in revenues over the medium term. Policy and administrative reforms will raise at least R12 billion in 2015/16, R15 billion in 2016/17 and R17 billion in 2017/18.

The proposals were expected to enhance the progressive character of the fiscal system, improve tax efficiency and realise a structural improvement in revenue.

The short and long term implications for economic growth and job creation will be a key consideration to this.

In 2014, Sars reported a collection of R899,7 billion in tax in the 2013/14 fiscal year. Collections were up 10,5% from the R814,1 billion collected in the 2012/13 year. Due to the increased collections the Government was able to meet its 4% deficit target.

Employment Tax incentives

Government's employment tax incentives, which were introduced in 2014, attracted buy-in from employers.

The tax incentive began to improve the job prospects for young workers. The incentive was introduced to encourage employers to appoint young workers with little or no work experience.

By August 2014, about 23 500 employers had claimed the incentive for at least 209 000 employees.

Over the past five years, the EPWP created four million jobs on short- to medium-term.

The Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) runs several programmes that create jobs and train people.

The Department of Trade and Industry (dti) provides incentives to create jobs in areas such as business process outsourcing and off shoring, which created 9 000 jobs by October 2014.

This came against the backdrop of the 2014 Quarterly Labour Force Survey, which showed that formal employment creation was more moderate.

The unemployment rate remained at about 25% (or 35% if discouraged job seekers were included.) The survey indicated that 403 000 jobs had been created since June 2013. Data also showed that temporary employment associated with the national and provincial elections in May 2014, and growth in public employment programmes accounted for a large share of growth recorded in 2014.

Weak employment outcomes were reflected in slowing real disposable income growth. As household balance sheets came under strain, credit extension declined, reducing the pace of household consumption growth.

Davis Tax Committee

In July 2013, the Minister of Finance appointed a tax review committee, headed by Judge Dennis Davis.

The terms of reference of the committee includes evaluating the current tax system against internationally accepted standards, principles and practices, improving tax compliance and addressing base erosion and profit shifting.

Tax Ombud

In terms of the Tax Administration Act of 2011,

the Minister of Finance appointed South Africa's first Tax Ombud on 1 October 2013. The office of the Tax Ombud is intended to provide taxpayers with an impartial and low-cost mechanism to address service, procedural or administrative difficulties that taxpayers have not been able to resolve through Sars' complaints management channels.

South African tax system

South Africa has a residence-based income tax system. Residents are, subject to certain exclusions, taxed on their worldwide income, irrespective of where their income was earned.

Non-residents are taxed on their income from a South African source. The liability of taxpayers is determined subject to the provisions of International Agreements for the Avoidance of Double Tax.

Tax is levied on taxable income, which is calculated as gross income, less exemptions and permissible deductions, plus the applicable percentage of the net capital gain, for the year.

The main tax products are company income tax (CIT), personal income tax (PIT), value added tax (VAT) and customs and excise duties. Relief is often available from any consumption-based tax when the goods are exported under certain terms and conditions.

Company income tax

Companies are subject to a flat tax rate, which is 28% of taxable income. Exceptions to the rule are the lower, progressive tax rates that apply to small and micro-businesses, as well as the reduced rate that applies to companies operating in designated SEZs.

Value-added tax

VAT is levied at 14% on the supply of all goods and services by VAT vendors (certain supplies are zero-rated) and contributes about 26% of total tax revenue.

The quoted or displayed price of goods and services must be VAT-inclusive. A person who supplies goods or services is liable to register for VAT, if the income earned is more than R1 million in a 12-month period, or when there is a reasonable expectation that the income will exceed this amount. A person can also register voluntarily for VAT, if the income earned from supplying goods or services for 12 months exceeded R50 000.

Personal income tax

PIT mainly focuses on the taxation of individuals' income. The main contributor to PIT is employment income from salary earners, and income

generated from sole-proprietor activities. The tax rate applicable to PIT-related taxable income is progressive, ranging from marginal rates of 18% to 40%. As a means of collecting PIT from salary and wage income, a mechanism known as Pay-as-you-earn (PAYE) is in operation that enables employers to withhold tax due to Sars from employees and pay this over to Sars monthly and reconciled biannually.

Other tax products administered by Sars

Carbon tax

The carbon tax policy presents improved linkage between the proposed carbon tax pricing mechanism and the desired emission reduction outcomes (DEROs) proposed in the National Climate Change Response Policy. South African technologies, such as coal-to-liquids processes, were some of the most advanced in the world; however, it had high emission rates and, therefore, the country would have to decide whether it wanted to close down the sector and lose that revenue to reduce the country's carbon emission. DEA was also expected to in future be more prominent in the measurement, reporting and verification of greenhouse gases, with emphasis being placed on an updated greenhouse-gases inventory.

Excise duty

Excise duty is levied on certain locally manufactured goods and their imported equivalents, such as tobacco and liquor products, and as an ad valorem duty on cosmetics, audio-visual equipment and motor cars.

Environmental levy

There are four main areas of levies in this category namely the plastic bags levy, electricity generation levy, electric filament levy and motor vehicle CO₂ emission levy.

Fuel levy

Fuel levy is a consumption-based levy that is levied on petroleum products that are imported or manufactured in South Africa.

Transfer duty

Transfer duty is payable on the acquisition of property. With effect from 23 February 2011, property costing less than R600 000 attracts no duty. A 3% rate applies to properties costing between R600 000 and R1 million.

In respect of property with a value between R1 million and R1,5 million, the duty is R12 000 plus 5% of the value above R1 million.

In respect of property above R1,5 million, the duty is R37 000 plus a rate of 8% of the value exceeding R1,5 million.

Estate duty

Estate duty is levied at a flat rate of 20% on residents' property and non-residents' South African property.

A basic deduction of R3,5 million is allowed in the determination of an estate's liability for estate duty, as well as deductions for liabilities, bequests to public-benefit organisations and property accruing to a surviving spouse.

Dividend-withholding tax

With effect from 1 April 2012, a dividend-withholding tax is levied on shareholders on payment of a dividend at 15%. The tax is withheld by either the institution paying the dividend or by a regulated intermediary distributing the dividend. The dividend-withholding tax replaces the secondary tax on companies.

Securities transfer tax

Securities transfer tax is levied at a rate of 0,25% on the transfer of listed or unlisted securities. Securities consist of shares in companies or members' interests in close corporations.

Skills-development levy

The Skills Development Fund is intended to be used for employee training and skills development.

The levy, which is an amount paid by all employers to Sars, goes into a government body responsible for organising education and training programmes within a specific sector. Each sector has its own Sector Education and Training Authority (Seta). The rate is 1% for employers with an annual payroll in excess of R500 000.

Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF)

The UIF insures employees against the loss of earnings, due to termination of employment, illness or maternity leave. The contribution to the UIF is shared equally by employers and employees at a rate of 1% of remuneration each. The employee share of 1% is withheld by the employer and paid to Sars, together with the employer share of 1%, monthly.

Tax on international travel

This tax is levied as follows: R190 per passenger departing on an international flight, excluding flights to Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland, in which case the tax is R100.

Rates on property

Property-related taxes include municipal rates and charges for refuse and sewerage.

Customs duty

Customs duty is a tax levied on imports by the customs authority to protect domestic industries. Anti-dumping duty, countervailing duty and safeguard measures are trade-remedy tools that allow government to take remedial action against imports which are causing material injury to a domestic industry.

The policy on customs duty rates and trade remedies relating to the importation of goods into South Africa is set by the International Trade Administration Commission under the authority of the dti.

A new Customs Control Act, 2014 (Act 31 of 2014) and Customs Duty Act, 2014 (Act 30 of 2014) were promulgated in July 2014 to provide a platform for the modernisation of customs administration that achieves a balance between effective customs control, the secure movement of goods and people into and from the country and the facilitation of trade and tourism. In addition, VAT is also collected on goods imported and cleared for home consumption.

Southern African Customs Union (SACU)

Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, South Africa, and Swaziland are signatories to the SACU Agreement. They apply similar customs and excise legislation and the same rates of customs and excise duties on imported and locally manufactured goods. Applying uniform tariffs and harmonising procedures simplifies trade within the SACU area by enabling the free movement of goods for customs purposes. However, all other national restrictive measures such as import and export control, sanitary and phytosanitary requirements and domestic taxes apply to goods moved between member states.

The 2002 SACU Agreement is in force and provides a dispensation for calculating and effecting transfers based on customs, excise and a development component of the Revenue-Sharing Formula.

The SACU heads of State and government endorsed an ambitious SACU regional trade facilitation programme that is focused on creating common information technology platforms to allow:

- interconnectivity
- enforcement strategies to be harmonised to curb illicit trade
- improved border efficiencies to facilitate seamless trade.

Compliance levels

Registration compliance

Sars continues to broaden the tax base and expand its taxpayer and trader register. In the 2010/11 financial year Sars changed its registration policy. It stipulated that all individuals who are formally employed must register with Sars and not, as in the past, only those individuals above the tax threshold. The number of individuals on the Sars register has increased from around 6,4 million taxpayers in 2009/10 to 16,8 million in 2013/14. This shift in policy, together with other measures implemented by Sars, grew the taxpayer and trader register by 9,8% during the 2013/14 financial year.

Measures implemented by Sars to increase registration compliance include the introduction of bulk registration at places of employment and the launch of an online facility that enables employers to register staff when submitting their monthly PAYE returns. A compliance level of more than 99% has been achieved among individuals required to register for PIT.

PIT filing compliance

PIT filing compliance is calculated by comparing the total number of returns received on time for a particular filing season (From 1 July to end November when taxpayers must submit income tax returns) with the expected total number of returns for the same filing season. During the 2013 filing season more than 91% of all returns expected by Sars were filed by the end of the filing season.

Voluntary Disclosure Programme

A one-year Voluntary Disclosure Programme (VDP) was introduced in November 2010. This was followed by a permanent VDP in terms of the Tax Administration Act of 2011, in October 2012. The permanent VDP is part of a package of compliance measures aimed at encouraging non-compliant taxpayers to regularise their tax affairs. By 2014, the combined revenue collected through the programmes stands at R6,7 billion.

Modernisation Programme

Through its Modernisation Programme, launched in 2006, Sars established an electronic platform to help taxpayers, traders and employers engage with the organisation quickly and efficiently. The eFiling service allows Sars clients to request information, submit returns, make declarations and pay taxes and duties electronically. It supports major tax products, such as CIT, PIT, PAYE and VAT as well as several customs and excise products. Sars clients can access the eFiling service via the internet or by visiting

a Sars branch office. A mobile facility, which enables taxpayers to access the eFiling service from a mobile device, was introduced in 2013.

The modernisation programme has also enabled Sars to use advanced technology to improve compliance, manage risk and combat fraud and corruption. Sars is deploying an increasing proportion of its personnel in service and compliance activities. Greater access to third-party data has helped Sars tailor its electronic platform to suit client requirements better as well as improve the verification of information submitted by taxpayers and traders.

National Gambling Board (NGB)

The NGB is governed by the NGA, 2004 (Act 7 of 2004).

The vision of the board is to position South Africa as the pre-eminent jurisdiction with an effectively regulated industry. The NGB is committed to effective regulation and super-vision of the South African gambling industry, which is a significant economic sector, by upholding internationally recognised standards of compliance.

The emergence of illegal internet gambling raises challenges to the regulatory regime concerning when, how and what the framework of interactive gambling will be, and what the challenges are.

Statistics

The NGB maintains a national gambling database that contains information on national gambling statistics such as turnover, gross gambling revenue (GGR), gambling taxes and levies, as well as returns to players and punters.

Provincial licensing authorities are required to submit statistics to the NGB quarterly for consolidation and reporting on the national status.

Responsible gambling

The NGB has a legislated responsibility to educate the public about gambling and the negative socio-economic impact of the gambling industry on society.

The National Responsible Gambling Programme (NRGP) integrates research and monitoring, public education and awareness, training, treatment and counselling.

The NRGP is managed by the South African Responsible Gambling Foundation. The main thrust of the NRGP's prevention programme is to educate gamblers, potential gamblers and society as a whole about responsible gambling.

The NRGP has various operational components, such as public awareness and prevention,

the toll-free counselling line, a countrywide treatment network for outpatient counselling and therapy, research and monitoring initiatives, training for regulators and industry employees, a crisis line service available to gambling industry employees and management, as well as the Taking Risks Wisely life-skills programme – a teaching resource for grades 7 to 12.

National Lotteries Board (NLB)

The NLB was established in October 1998, in terms of the Lotteries Act, 1997 (Act 57 of 1997).

The board's main activities include:

- advising the Minister of Trade and Industry on the issuing of the licence to conduct the National Lottery
- ensuring that the National Lottery and sports pools are conducted with all due propriety
- ensuring that the interests of every participant in the National Lottery are adequately protected
- ensuring that the nett proceeds of the National Lottery are as high as possible
- administering the National Lottery Distribution Trust Fund and holding it in trust
- advising the Minister on percentages of money to be allocated, in terms of the Lotteries Act of 1997
- advising the Minister on establishing and implementing a social-responsibility programme in respect of lotteries
- administering and investing the money paid to the board in, accordance with the Lotteries Act, 1997.

The National Lottery operator is Gidani, an 89,2% black-majority-owned private company.

Auditor-General of South Africa

The AGSA strengthens South Africa's democracy by enabling oversight, accountability and governance in the public sector through auditing, thereby building public confidence.

The AGSA is one of the Chapter 9 institutions mandated by the Constitution to fulfil certain functions. These institutions are not part of government and do not have a duty to be part of the mechanisms of cooperative government. The independence of the AGSA is, therefore, respected and strengthened.

As mandated by the Constitution and the Public Audit Act, 2004 (Act 25 of 2004), the AGSA is responsible for auditing national and provincial State departments and administrations, all municipalities and any other institution or accounting entity required by national and provincial legislation to be audited by the AGSA.

Various business units provide auditing services, corporate services and specialised

audit work, such as performance audits, information system audits and audit research and development. The AGSA also has an international auditing complement.

Financial sector

South African Reserve Bank (SARB)

The primary purpose of the Bank is to achieve and maintain price stability in the interest of balanced and sustainable economic growth in South Africa. Together with other institutions, it also plays a pivotal role in ensuring financial stability.

The SARB is the central bank of South Africa. It was established in 1921, in terms of a special Act of Parliament and the Currency and Banking Act, 1920 (Act 10 of 1920), which was the direct result of abnormal monetary and financial conditions that had arisen during and immediately after World War I.

The SARB is governed by the SARB Act, 1989 (Act 90 of 1989). In terms of the Constitution, it has been given an important degree of autonomy in the execution of its duties.

Since its establishment, the SARB has always had private shareholders who have limited rights. It has more than 600 shareholders. Its shares are traded on the over-the-counter share-trading facility managed by the SARB. Its operations are not motivated by a drive to return profits, but to serve the best interests of all South Africans.

The SARB's head office is in Pretoria. It has branch offices in Johannesburg, Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Durban, East London, Johannesburg and Port Elizabeth. The bank must submit a monthly statement of its assets and liabilities to National Treasury and an annual report to Parliament. The Governor of the SARB holds regular discussions with the Minister of Finance and appears before the Parliamentary Portfolio and other select committees on finance, from time to time.

The SARB has a unique position in the economy, as it performs various functions and duties not normally carried out by commercial banks. Although the functions of the SARB have changed and expanded over time, the formulation and implementation of monetary policy has remained one of the cornerstones of its activities.

The SARB publishes monetary-policy reviews, and regular regional monetary-policy forums are held to provide a platform for discussions on monetary policy with broader stakeholders from the community.

System of accommodation

The SARB's refinancing system is the main mechanism used to implement its monetary

policy. Through its refinancing system, the SARB provides liquidity to banks, enabling them to meet their daily liquidity requirements. "Liquidity" refers to the banks' balances at the central bank, which are available to settle their transactions with one another, over and above the minimum statutory level of reserves that they have to hold.

The main instrument for managing liquidity in the money market is repo transactions. The repo rate is the price at which the SARB lends cash to the banking system and is the key operational variable in the monetary-policy implementation process. It represents the most important indicator for short-term interest rates.

The refinancing system also provides for supplementary and standing facilities to bridge the banking sector's overnight liquidity needs, as well as a concession to banks to use their cash-reserve balances with the SARB to square off their daily positions.

Creating a liquidity requirement

In terms of its monetary-policy implementation framework, the SARB has to compel banks to borrow a substantial amount (the liquidity requirement or the money-market shortage) from the SARB.

The SARB, therefore, creates a liquidity requirement (or shortage) in the money market, which it then refinances at the repo rate – a fixed interest rate determined by the Monetary Policy Committee (MPC), comprising the bank's governors and other senior officials. After each meeting, the MPC issues a statement indicating its assessment of the economy and announces policy changes, if necessary.

The SARB has to intervene regularly in the money market to create a shortage that would drain excess liquidity. In addition to the liquidity-management operations, the SARB uses other open-market operations to achieve its monetary-policy objectives. The open-market operations refer to the selling of SARB debentures, longer-term reverse repos, money-market swaps in foreign exchange and the movement of public-sector funds, for example, the Corporation for Public Deposits and central government funds, as well as changes in the cash-reserve requirements for banks.

Functions

The primary function of the SARB is to protect the value of South Africa's currency.

In discharging this role, it takes responsibility for:

- ensuring that the South African money, banking and financial system as a whole

is sound, meets the requirements of the community and keeps abreast of international developments

- assisting the South African Government, as well as other members of the economic community of southern Africa, with data relevant to the formulation and implementation of macroeconomic policy
- informing the South African community and all stakeholders abroad about monetary policy and the South African economic situation.

Open-market operations: Through this mechanism, the bank can exert influence over interest rates in the market. These operations are conducted to:

- neutralise or smooth the influence of exogenous factors on the liquidity position in the money market
- maintain an adequate liquidity requirement in the market, which has to be refinanced from the bank.

Service to government:

• Gold and foreign-exchange reserves:

The bank is the custodian of the country's official gold and foreign-exchange reserves. Subsequent to the conversion of the negative net open foreign currency position in May 2003 into a positive position, foreign reserves have been growing.

• Banker and adviser to government:

The main services provided are administering the auctions of government bonds and National Treasury bills, participating in the joint standing committees between the bank and National Treasury, and managing the flow of funds between the exchequer account and tax and loan accounts.

• Administration of exchange control:

The bank is responsible, on behalf of the Minister of Finance, for the day-to-day administration of exchange controls in South Africa.

• Provision of economic and statistical services:

The bank collects, processes, interprets and publishes public information, economic statistics and other information, and uses this information in policy formulation.

• Bank supervision:

The mission of the department is to promote the soundness of the banking system and contribute to financial stability.

• The national payment system:

The bank is responsible for overseeing the safety and soundness of the national payment system. The main aim is to reduce interbank settlement risk, with the objective of reducing the potential of a systemic risk crisis emanating

from settlement default by one or more of the settlement banks.

- **Banker to other banks:**

The bank acts as the custodian of the cash reserves that banks are legally required to hold or prefer to hold voluntarily, with the bank.

- **Banknotes and coins:**

The South African Mint Company, a subsidiary of the bank, mints all coins on behalf of the bank. The South African Bank Note Company, another subsidiary of the bank, prints all banknotes on behalf of the SARB. Currency is distributed to commercial banks through the bank's seven branches. It is the responsibility of the branches to ensure that there is an adequate supply of new notes available to meet demand, and to replace unfit notes. The branches are responsible for the quality of banknotes in circulation in their respective regions.

- **Lender of last resort:**

In terms of its "lender-of-last-resort" activities, the bank may, in certain circumstances, provide liquidity assistance to banks experiencing liquidity problems.

- **Monitoring financial stability:** In view of the interrelationship between price and financial system stability, the bank monitors the macro-prudential aspects of the domestic financial system. The objective of financial stability is to prevent costly disruptions in the country's financial system.

- **Provision of internal corporate support services and systems:** To ensure smooth operations and administration, the bank provides its own internal services, supported by information, communication and technology, and human resources.

Monetary policy

The SARB is responsible for the monetary policy of South Africa. Monetary policy can be defined as the measures taken by monetary authorities to influence the quantity of money and the rate of interest in a country, with a view to achieving stable prices and facilitating full employment and sustainable economic growth. South Africa's monetary policy is conducted within an inflation targeting framework and the refinancing system is the mechanism used by the Bank for the implementation of monetary policy.

Owing to a slightly improved inflation outlook, stable inflation expectations and the downside risk posed by the weak growth outlook, the Monetary Policy Committee (MPC) decided to keep the repurchase rate unchanged at 5,75% at its September and November 2014 meetings. While the inflation trajectory remained

uncomfortably close to the upper end of the target range, the combination of stubborn inflation and a sluggish growth outlook continued to pose a difficult dilemma for monetary policy.

The banking industry

As at the end of December 2014, 34 banking institutions – 10 locally controlled, six foreign-controlled, 14 registered branches, three mutual banks and one cooperative bank were reporting data to the Bank Supervision Department of the SARB.

There were also 39 authorised representative offices of international banks in South Africa. By December 2014, two banks were in liquidation namely Islamic Bank Limited and Regal Treasury Private Bank Limited.

The microlending industry

The dti introduced the National Credit Act (NCA), 2005 (Act 34 of 2005), to allow the credit market to function in a robust and effective manner.

The NCA of 2005 replaced the Usury Act, 1968 (Act 73 of 1968), and the Credit Agreements Act, 1980 (Act 75 of 1980). The NCA of 2005, which became effective on 1 June 2007, regulates the granting of consumer credit by all credit providers, including micro-lenders, banks and retailers.

The National Credit Regulator (NCR) and the National Consumer Tribunal play a vital role in ensuring enforcement, promoting access to redress and adjudicating contraventions of the Act. Out of a population of 54 million, South Africa has just over 18 million credit-active consumers.

The NCR is responsible for regulating the South African credit industry. It carries out education, research and policy development; registers industry participants; investigates complaints; and ensures that the Act is enforced.

In terms of the Act, the NCR has to promote the development of an accessible credit market to meet the needs of people who were previously disadvantaged, earn a low income or live in remote, isolated or low-density communities.

The National Consumer Tribunal adjudicates various applications and hears cases against those who contravene the Act. The Act provides for the registration of debt counsellors to assist over-indebted consumers. Debt counsellors are required to undergo training approved by the NCR through approved training service providers appointed by the regulator.

Other financial institutions Cooperative Banks Development Agency

The Cooperative Banks Development Agency was established to regulate, promote and

develop cooperative banking, including deposit-taking and lending co-operatives. The agency envisages a strong and vibrant cooperative banking sector that broadens access to and participation in diversified financial services towards economic and social well-being.

Cooperative Banks Development Agency are to:

- register, regulate and supervise cooperative banks
- promote, register and regulate representative bodies
- facilitate, promote and fund education and training to enhance the work of co-operative financial institutions
- accredit and regulate support organisations
- provide liquidity support to registered cooperative banks through loans or grants
- manage a deposit insurance fund. financial cooperatives seeking to increase their capacity and work towards becoming cooperative banks, support organisations, representative bodies and regulatory authorities operating within the sector.

Development Bank of Southern Africa

The DBSA Act, 1997 (Act 13 of 1997) stipulates that the DBSA's main role is to promote economic development and growth, human-resource development and institutional capacity-building. The bank achieves this by mobilising financial and other resources from the private and public sectors, both nationally and internationally, for sustainable development projects and programmes.

In March 2014, the European Union (EU) appointed the DBSA as its fund manager for a €100-million programme designed to accelerate the preparation of social and economic infrastructure projects in South Africa and the broader region.

Known as the Infrastructure Investment Programme for South Africa (IIPSA), the fund specifically aims to move priority energy, transport, water, information and communications technology, education and health projects from concept to bankability.

Besides the direct financial input from the European governments, IIPSA is also being backed by the European Investment Bank, Germany's KfW, the Agence Française de Développement and the UK's Department for International Development.

Land and Agricultural Development Bank (Land Bank)

The Land Bank operates as a development finance institution within the agricultural and

agribusiness sectors, and is regulated by the Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act, 2002 (Act 15 of 2002).

The Land Bank provides a range of financing products to a broad spectrum of clients within the agricultural industry. Financing products include wholesale and retail financing to commercial and developing farmers, cooperatives and other agriculture-related businesses.

The Land Bank's objectives are defined within its mandate, which requires that it should achieve:

- growth in the commercial market
- growth in the development market
- business efficiency
 - service delivery
 - resource management
- sustainability.

The Land Bank is the sole shareholder in the Suid-Afrikaanse Verbandversekeringsmaatskappy Beperk, which provides insurance to people indebted to the bank through mortgage loans.

Financial Services Board

The FSB is a regulatory institution, established in terms of the FSB Act, 1990 (Act 97 of 1990).

The functions of the board include:

- supervising compliance with laws regulating financial institutions and the provision of financial services
- advising the Minister on matters concerning financial institutions and financial services
- promoting programmes and initiatives by financial institutions and bodies representing the financial services industry to inform and educate users and potential users of financial products and services.

The Financial Markets Act, 2012 (Act 19 of 2012), which will regulate financial markets and over-the-counter (OTC) derivatives. The introduction of the new law is meant to bring South Africa in line with international norms and standards.

The Act ensures that financial markets in South Africa operate fairly, efficiently and transparently to promote investor confidence. It also ensures that the legislative and regulatory framework is brought in line with the recommendations of international standard-setting bodies such as the G20, Financial Stability Board, Basel Committee on Banking Supervision and the International Organisation of Securities Commissions.

The Act primarily focuses on the licensing and regulation of exchanges, central securities depositories, clearing houses, trade repositories and market infrastructure, as well as the prohibition of insider trading and other market abuses.

The Act also improves OTC trading in derivatives and does away with misleading and conflict-of-interest trading. This is one of several commitments made by the G20 countries.

Collective investment schemes (CIS)

CISes are investment structures where individual investor funds are pooled with those of other investors. Qualified asset managers regulated by the Financial Advisory and Intermediaries (FAIS) Act, 2002 (Act 37 of 2002), invest these funds on behalf of the investor. Each investor owns units (participatory interest) in the total fund.

Financial advisers and intermediaries

The purpose of the FAIS Act of 2002, is to regulate, in pursuance of consumer protection, the provision of advice and intermediary services in respect of a range of financial products and services.

The FSB, through the FAIS Division, is responsible for regulating the rendering of financial advisory and intermediary services by FSPs, in respect of a wide range of financial products.

In terms of the provisions of the FAIS Act of 2002, before conducting any transaction, consumers should ensure that the FSP they are dealing with has obtained a licence from the FSB. Information on authorised FSPs may be obtained from the FSB website.

Recognised representative bodies

Section 6(3)(iii) of the FAIS Act of 2002 provides for the Registrar of FSPs to delegate any of its powers, in terms of the Act, to anybody recognised by the Act. Two such functions, the consideration of applications for licences under Section 8 and the consideration of applications for approval of compliance officers under Section 17(2) of the Act, were delegated to two recognised representative bodies. As recognised examination bodies, another four bodies are responsible for developing and delivering the regulatory examination.

Advisory Committee on Financial Service Providers

The Minister of Finance appointed the Advisory Committee on FSPs, whose function, is to investigate and report, or advise on any matter covered by the FAIS Act, 2002.

The advisory committee comprises a chairperson, a representative of the Council for Medical Schemes, established by Section Three of the Medical Schemes Act, 1998 (Act 131 of 1998), persons representative of product suppliers, FSPs and clients involved in the application of this Act.

The members of the advisory committee, except for the Registrar and Deputy Registrar, who are ex officio members, hold office for a period determined by the Minister.

Licensing of financial service providers

The Registrar of FSPs authorises and renders ongoing supervision of the following FSPs:

- financial advisers and intermediaries who provide financial services without discretion
- those who offer discretionary intermediary services, in terms of financial product choice, but without implementing bulking
- hedge-fund managers
- investment administrators specialising mainly in the bulking of collective investments on behalf of clients (linked investment services providers)
- those who represent assistance business administrators who render intermediary services, in terms of the administration of assistance business (funeral policies), on behalf of an insurer to the extent agreed to in a written mandate between the two parties.

Insurance companies

Insurance is an agreement between a policyholder and an insurance company. It is divided into long and short-term insurance. In terms of the Long-Term Insurance Act, 1998 (Act 52 of 1998) and the Short-Term Insurance Act, 1998 (Act 53 of 1998), all insurance companies must be registered by the FSB and must comply with the provisions of these Acts.

The insurance industry has appointed a short-term and long-term insurance Ombudsman to mediate dispute resolution between insurers and policy holders.

Market abuse

The Directorate: Market Abuse is an FSB committee responsible for combating market abuse in the financial markets in South Africa. The three forms of market abuse prohibited in South Africa are: insider trading, price manipulation and publication of false or misleading statements.

All three forms of market abuse are criminal contraventions. In addition, an offender may be referred to the FSB Enforcement Committee, which can impose unlimited penalties. In the case of insider trading contravention, such penalties are distributed to people who were prejudiced by the offending transactions.

Retirement funds

To encourage South Africans to save more, employer contributions to retirement funds

will become an employee fringe benefit for tax purposes from April 2015.

Individuals will be able to receive a tax deduction on employer and employee contributions to a pension fund, provident fund or retirement annuity fund up to 27,5% of the greater of remuneration and taxable income.

An annual cap on deductible contributions of R350 000 will apply.

In addition, government is exploring ways to increase retirement fund coverage to all workers.

Enforcement

The Enforcement Committee of the FSB adjudicates on all alleged contraventions of legislation, regulations, and codes of conduct administered by the FSB within the South African non-banking financial services industry.

The FSB administers the following Acts:

- CIS Control Act, 2002 (Act 45 of 2002)
- FSB Act of 1990, the FAIS Act of 2002
- Financial Institutions (Protection of Funds) Act, 2001 (Act 28 of 2001)
- Financial Supervision of the Road Accident Fund Act, 1993, (Act 8 of 1993)
- Friendly Societies Act, 1956 (Act 25 of 1956)
- Inspection of Financial Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 80 of 1998)
- Long-Term Insurance Act of 1998
- Pension Funds Act, 1956 (Act 25 of 1956)
- Short-Term Insurance Act of 1990
- Supervision of the Financial Institutions Rationalisation Act, 1996 (Act 32 of 1996)
- Securities Services Act, 2004 (Act 36 of 2004).

The committee considers cases of alleged contraventions of legislation administered by the FSB. The industries regulated by the FSB include: CISes; FSPs; insurance; nominee companies; retirement funds and friendly societies.

The committee may impose unlimited penalties, compensation orders and cost orders. Such orders are enforceable as if they were judgments of the Supreme Court of South Africa.

Government bonds

Retail bonds

Government issued retail bonds to encourage South African citizens to save and as a diversified source of funding. Retail bonds may be purchased from National Treasury, the South African Post Office and Pick n Pay stores countrywide.

Domestic capital market bonds

Increased global demand for emerging markets' higher-yielding debt has led to rising international interest in South African government bonds.

Primary market

National government is responsible for the bulk of the net issuances in the local bond market, consistent with its elevated funding needs.

Government funding in the domestic primary market is, among others, effected through long-term market loans, which comprise fixed-income bonds, inflation-linked bonds, floating-rate notes and retail bonds.

The gap between the nominal yield on conventional bonds and the real yield on inflation-linked government bonds also narrowed in recent months as inflation expectations improved, regardless of the depreciation in the exchange value of the rand. The break-even inflation rate in the nine-year maturity range progressively moved lower from 6,77% in June 2014 to 5,87% in November 2014, as the conventional government bond yield declined, while the real yield on inflation-linked government bonds increased. Consistent with the downward trend in domestic bond yields, the currency risk premium on South African government bonds narrowed from 401 basis points in May 2014 to 369 basis points in October, as yields on rand-denominated bonds declined more pronouncedly than yields on US dollar-denominated bonds.

International bonds

The country's outstanding foreign currency-denominated debt declined marginally to US\$62,2 billion at the end of the second quarter of 2014 due to the redemption of international bonds by the private as well as the public sector. The JPMorgan Emerging Markets Bond Index Plus (EMBI+) yield spread above United States of America (US) government bonds fluctuated wider from 283 basis points in July 2014 to 322 basis points in October, as investor sentiment towards emerging markets turned less favourable along with the sell-off of emerging-market currencies. The sovereign risk premium on South African government US dollar-denominated bonds in the 10-year maturity range trading in international markets narrowed noticeably from 233 basis points in February 2014 to 169 basis points in September, before widening to 189 basis points in October 2014.

Secondary market

Sentiment towards emerging-market economies, including South Africa, improved notably in the third quarter of 2014 as indicated by non-resident investors' interest in three international bonds issued by the South African Government. The bond issues comprised a dollar-denominated bond, a euro-denominated bond and a well over-subscribed Sukuk (Islamic) bond, the

first of its kind issued by South Africa. In total, government raised more than R23 billion through these issuances. Non-resident investors' net purchases of South African equities amounted to R23,6 billion in the third quarter of 2014.

Exchange rates

Positive economic developments in the United States of America (USA), among other factors, caused the nominal effective exchange rate of the US dollar to increase, on balance, by about 7% in the third quarter of 2014. During 2014, the exchange rate of the euro weakened by 4%, weighed down by concerns about lacklustre economic growth. Among emerging-market currencies, the oil-sensitive Russian rouble and the Argentine peso proved to be two of the worst performing currencies in 2014, while the Indian rupee and Indonesian rupiah were rated among the best-performing currencies.

The South African rand experienced some strain in the third quarter of 2014, in line with the performance of other emerging-market currencies. Factors that weighed down on the rand included industrial strike action in the steel and engineering industry, subdued domestic economic growth, a decline in international commodity prices and the country's twin deficits. On balance, the nominal effective exchange rate of the rand declined by 2% in the third quarter of 2014 with the depreciation concentrated in September 2014, partly due to the strengthening of the US dollar. However, the nominal effective exchange rate of the rand recovered by no less than 4% in October as the US Federal Reserve announced that monetary policy in the US would remain accommodative for longer and further stimulus injection measures were introduced by the People's Bank of China and the European Central Bank. In addition, the exchange rate of the rand also benefited from the announcement of a narrowing in the country's trade deficit for September and a prudent MTBPS in October 2014. The real effective exchange rate of the rand on balance increased by about 6% from January 2014 to October 2014, but remained below its 10-year average level. Structural factors continued to impair South Africa's ability to take full advantage of the more competitive levels of the exchange rate and step up the country's exports.

Exchange controls

Exchange Control Regulations are administered by the SARB, on behalf of the Minister of Finance. The Minister of Finance has also appointed certain banks to act as authorised dealers in foreign exchange, as well as authorised dealers

in foreign exchange with limited authority, which gives them the right to buy and sell foreign exchange, subject to conditions and within limits prescribed by the Financial Surveillance Department of the SARB. Authorised dealers are not agents for the Financial Surveillance Department, but act on behalf of their customers.

Under exchange control regulations, there are no limitations as to how much money may be brought into South Africa, but there are certain limitations on the amount of money that may be transferred out of South Africa.

By 2014, South African individuals were able to transfer up to R4 million, per individual per calendar year, out of the country and invest it overseas. Additional allowances were available for travel and other defined activities.

For all non-South Africans, there is no limitation on transferring money out of South Africa.

Johannesburg Stock Exchange Ltd

The JSE Ltd is privately owned and funded, and governed by a board of directors. Its activities are licensed and regulated by two Acts of Parliament, namely the Stock Exchanges Control Act, 1985 (Act 1 of 1985), which governs the equities markets, and the Financial Markets Control Act, 1989 (Act 55 of 1989), which governs the derivatives markets.

In keeping with international practice, the JSE Ltd regulates its members and ensures that markets operate in a transparent way, ensuring investor protection. Similarly, issuers of securities must comply with the JSE Ltd listings requirements, which ensure sufficient disclosure of all information relevant to investors.

The JSE Ltd's roles include regulating applications for listing and ensuring that listed companies continue to meet their obligations. The JSE Ltd monitors applications for alterations to existing listings, and scrutinises company disclosures to the public. It also provides the Stock Exchange News Service through which company news, including price-sensitive information, is distributed to the market.

The JSE Ltd has been bold in restructuring, in view of increasingly tough global competition, adopting new technologies and outsourcing aspects of its business.

The JSE Ltd opened to corporate membership, resulting in a stampede by foreign banks, which have bought out most of the major local broking firms, using these as platforms for other financial services, such as corporate and government advisory work.

The electronic settlement system, Share Transactions Totally Electronic (Strate), has replaced the previous manual settlement method.

Strate Ltd is the licensed Central Securities Depository for the electronic settlement of financial instruments in South Africa.

The JSE Ltd's trading and information systems were replaced with the London Stock Exchange's (LSE) Sequence and the London Market Information Link or LMIL systems, branded JSE SETS and InfoWiz, respectively.

The trading engine and information dissemination feed-handler is hosted in London and connected remotely to the JSE Ltd 9 000 km away, via a transcontinental undersea cable and an innovative, integrated solutions design. More than 1 500 traders and information users access the system, using a sophisticated application service provider with sub-second response time.

The JSE Ltd has also aligned its equities trading model with that of Europe, and reclassified its instruments in line with the Financial Times of London Stock Exchange (FTSE) Global Classification System. This has led to the introduction of the FTSE/JSE Africa Index Series that makes the South African indices comparable to similar indices worldwide.

One of the most reliable trading platforms worldwide serves the investment community. The LSE can now disseminate trade information about instruments listed on the JSE Ltd to more than 104 000 trading terminals around the world, raising the profile of the JSE Ltd among the members of the international investor community.





Government System

South Africa is a constitutional democracy with a three-tier system of government and an independent judiciary.

The national, provincial and local levels of government all have legislative and executive authority in their own spheres, and are defined in the Constitution as distinctive, interdependent and interrelated.

Operating at both national and provincial levels are advisory bodies drawn from South Africa's traditional leaders.

It is a stated intention in the Constitution that the country be run on a system of cooperative governance.

Government is committed to the building of a free, non-racial, non-sexist, democratic, united and successful South Africa.

The Constitution

South Africa's Constitution is one of the most progressive in the world and enjoys high acclaim internationally. Human rights are given clear prominence in the Constitution.

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 was approved by the Constitutional Court on 4 December 1996 and took effect on 4 February 1997.

The Constitution is the supreme law of the land. No other law or government action can supersede the provisions of the Constitution.

The Preamble

The Preamble states that the Constitution aims to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people, and in which every citizen is equally protected by law
- build a united and democratic South Africa that is able to take its rightful place as a sovereign State in the family of nations.

Founding provisions

South Africa is a sovereign and democratic State founded on the following values:

- human dignity, the achievement of equality and the advancement of human rights and freedom
- non-racialism and non-sexism
- supremacy of the Constitution
- universal adult suffrage, a national common voters' roll, regular elections and a multiparty system of democratic government to ensure accountability, responsiveness and openness.

Fundamental rights

The fundamental rights contained in Chapter 2 of the Constitution seek to protect the rights and freedom of individuals.

The Constitutional Court guards these rights and determines whether actions by the State are in accordance with constitutional provisions.

Government

Government consists of national, provincial and local spheres, which are distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. The powers of the law-makers (legislative authorities), government (executive authorities) and courts (judicial authorities) are separate from one another.

Parliament

Parliament is the legislative authority of South Africa and has the power to make laws for the country, in accordance with the Constitution.

It consists of the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public.

Since 1994 a number of steps have been taken to make it more accessible and to motivate and facilitate public participation in the legislative process.

The website www.parliament.gov.za encourages comment and feedback from the public.

Cabinet

The Cabinet consists of the President, as head, the Deputy President and ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President, ministers and deputy ministers, assigns their powers and functions, and may dismiss them.

The Presidency, July 2015

President	Jacob Zuma
Deputy President	Cyril Ramaphosa

The President may select any number of ministers from the members of the National Assembly, and may select no more than two ministers from outside the assembly.

The President appoints a member of the Cabinet to be the leader of government business in the National Assembly.

National Assembly

The National Assembly is elected to represent the people and to ensure democratic governance as required by the Constitution. It does this by electing the President, providing a national forum for public consideration of issues, passing legislation and scrutinising and overseeing executive action.

The National Assembly consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members elected through a system of proportional representation.

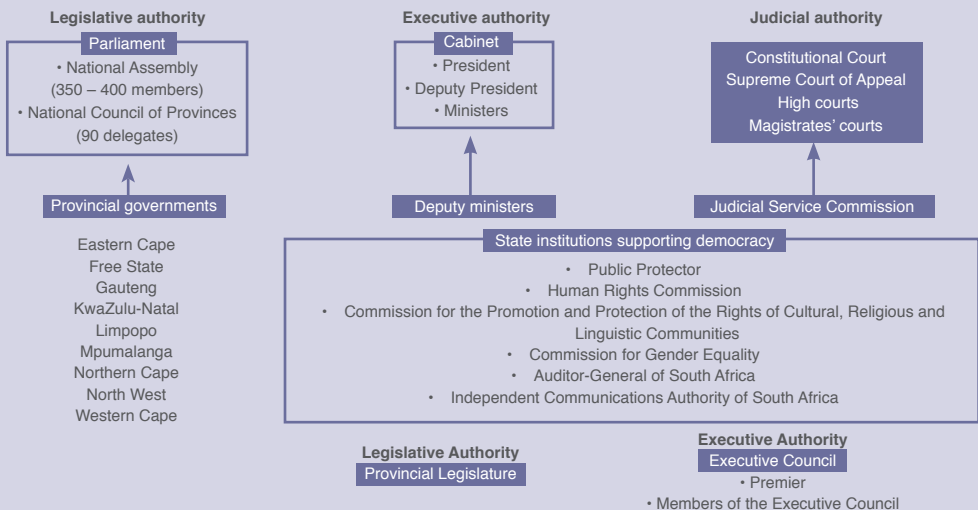
The National Assembly, which is elected for a term of five years, is presided over by the speaker, assisted by the Deputy Speaker.

National Council of Provinces

The NCOP consists of 54 permanent members and 36 special delegates, and represents provincial interests in the national sphere of government.

Delegations consist of 10 representatives from each province. The NCOP must have a mandate from the provinces before it can make certain decisions.

Structure and functions of the South African Government



It cannot, however, initiate a Bill concerning money, which is the prerogative of the Minister of Finance.

NCOP Online (www.parliament.gov.za/ncop) links Parliament to the provincial legislatures and local government associations.

It provides information on draft legislation and allows the public to make electronic submissions.

The NCOP came into existence in February 1997.

Government clusters

Clusters foster an integrated approach to governance that is aimed at improving government planning, decision making and service delivery. The main objective is to ensure proper coordination of all government programmes at national and provincial levels.

The main functions of the clusters are to ensure the alignment of government wide priorities, facilitate and monitor the implementation of priority programmes and to provide a consultative platform on cross-cutting priorities and matters being taken to Cabinet.

The clusters of the Forum of South African Directors-General (Fosad) mirror the Ministerial clusters. The Fosad clusters provide technical support to the Ministerial clusters.

The Director-General in the Presidency is the chairperson of Fosad. Ministers had entered into delivery agreements with President Jacob Zuma, having to give progress reports on their departments' set targets.

The 12 outcomes identified by government include:

- improved quality of basic education
- a long and healthy life for all South Africans
- all people in South Africa are and feel safe
- decent employment through inclusive economic growth
- a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path
- an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network
- vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all
- sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life
- a responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system
- environmental assets and natural resources that are well protected and continually enhanced
- a better South Africa and contributing to a better and safer Africa and world
- an efficient, effective and development-oriented public service and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship.

Economic Sectors, Employment Infrastructure Development Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Rural Development and Land Reform (Chair)
- Science and Technology (Deputy Chair)
- Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries
- Communications
- Economic Development
- Finance
- Higher Education and Training
- Labour
- Mineral Resources
- Public Enterprises
- Environmental Affairs
- Transport
- Water and Sanitation
- Public Works
- Human Settlements
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
- Energy
- Small Business Development
- Telecommunications and Postal Services
- Public Works
- The Presidency: Planning, Performance Monitoring and Evaluation.

Governance and Administration Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Home Affairs (Chair)
- Public Service and Administration (Deputy Chair)
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
- Justice and Constitutional Development
- Finance
- The Presidency: Planning, Performance Monitoring and Evaluation and Administration
- Communications

Social Protection, Community and Human Development Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Social Development (Chair)
- Basic Education (Deputy Chair)
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
- The Presidency: Women
- Human Settlements
- Labour
- Public Works
- Rural Development and Land Reform
- Social Development
- Transport
- Sport and Recreation
- Water and Sanitation
- Arts and Culture
- Basic Education

Cabinet Ministers and Deputy Ministers, as at December 2015

Portfolio	Minister	Deputy Minister
Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries	Senzeni Zokwana	Bheki Cele
Arts and Culture	Nathi Mthethwa	Rejoice Mabudafhasi
Basic Education	Angie Motshekga	Enver Surty
Communications	Faith Muthambi	Stella Ndabeni-Abrahams
Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs	David van Rooyen	Obed Bapela Andries Nel
Defence and Military Veterans	Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula	Kebby Maphatsoe
Economic Development	Ebrahim Patel	Madala Masuku
Energy	Tina Joemat-Pettersson	Thembi Majola
Environmental Affairs	Edna Molewa	Barbara Thompson
Finance	Pravin Gordhan	Mcebisi Jonas
Health	Aaron Motsoaledi	Joe Phaahla
Higher Education and Training	Blade Nzimande	Mduduzi Manana
Home Affairs	Malusi Gigaba	Fatima Chohan
Human Settlements	Lindiwe Sisulu	Zoliswa Kota-Fredericks
International Relations and Cooperation	Maite Nkoana-Mashabane	Nomaindia Mfeketo Luwellyn Landers
Justice and Correctional Services	Michael Masutha	Thabang Makwetla John Jeffery
Labour	Mildred Oliphant	Patekile Holomisa
Mineral Resources	Mosebenzi Zwane	Godfrey Oliphant
Police	Nkosinathi Nhleko	Makhotso Soty
Public Enterprises	Lynne Brown	Gratitude Magwanishe
Public Service and Administration	Ngoako Ramatlhodi	Ayanda Dlodlo
Public Works	Thembelani Nxesi	Jeremy Cronin
Rural Development and Land Reform	Gugile Nkwinti	Candith Mashego-Dlamini Mcebisi Skwatsha
Science and Technology	Naledi Pandor	Zanele kaMagwaza-Msibi
Small Business Development	Lindiwe Zulu	Elizabeth Thabethe
Social Development	Bathabile Dlamini	Hendrietta Bogopane-Zulu
Sport and Recreation	Fikile Mbalula	Gert Oosthuizen
State Security	David Mahlobo	Ellen Molekane
Telecommunications and Postal Services	Siyabonga Cwele	Hlengiwe Mkhize
The Presidency: Performance Monitoring, Evaluation and Administration	Jeff Radebe	Buti Manamela
The Presidency: Women	Susan Shabangu	
Tourism	Derek Hanekom	Thokozile Xasa
Trade and Industry	Rob Davies	Mzwandile Masina
Transport	Dipuo Peters	Sindiwe Chikunga
Water and Sanitation	Nomvula Mokonyane	Pamela Tshwete

- Health
- Higher Education and Training
- Science and Technology

International Cooperation, Trade and Security Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Defence and Military Veterans (Chair)
- Telecommunications and Postal Services (Chair)
- International Relations and Cooperation (Deputy Chair)
- International Relations and Cooperation
- Finance
- Trade and Industry
- Tourism
- Environmental Affairs
- State Security

Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Justice and Constitutional Development
- Defence and Military Veterans (Chair)
- Police (Deputy Chair)
- Defence and Military Veterans
- Home Affairs
- State Security
- Police
- Correctional Services

Izimbizo

The National Imbizo Focus Week ran from 10 to 20 July 2014 under the theme "Together we move South Africa forward." The Focus Week saw Cabinet members engage in dialogues of empowerment with various communities across the country. The *Izimbizo* programme is a communication platform that enables the citizenry to have a meaningful and direct engagement with members of the national, provincial and local executive.

The Imbizo Focus Week coincided with the first International Mandela Day since the passing of former President Nelson Mandela.

On 18 July, a number of stakeholders participated in a clean-up campaign. Government hosted over 30 clean-up activities at schools, hospitals, community facilities and orphanage centres countrywide in honour of former President Mandela's legacy.

During the Imbizo Focus Week, government embarked on approximately 48 izimbizo events across the country.

Law-making

Any Bill may be introduced in the National Assembly. A Bill passed by the National Assembly

must be referred to the NCOP for consideration.

A Bill affecting the provinces may be introduced in the NCOP. After the council passes it, it must be referred to the National Assembly.

A Bill concerning money must be introduced in the assembly and referred to the NCOP for consideration and approval after being passed.

If the NCOP rejects a Bill or passes it subject to amendments, the assembly must reconsider the Bill and pass it again with or without amendments.

There are special conditions for the approval of laws dealing with provinces.

The Presidency

As the executive manager of government, The Presidency is at the apex of South Africa's government system. It is situated in the Union Buildings in Pretoria, and has a subsidiary office in Tuynhuys, Cape Town.

The Presidency comprises three political principals: the President, the Deputy President, and the Minister of Planning, Performance Monitoring, Evaluation and Administration.

The President, as the Head of State, leads the Cabinet. He or she is elected by the National Assembly from among its members, and leads the country in the interest of national unity, in accordance with the Constitution and the law.

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the National Assembly.

The Deputy President assists the President in executing government functions.

The Presidency received Cabinet approved additional allocations of R30 million in 2014/15, R20 million in 2015/16 and R30 million in 2016/17. Cabinet has also approved reductions of R13,6 million over the medium term for non-core goods and services items and the transfer payment to the National Youth Development Agency.

National Development Plan (NDP)

The NDP is South Africa's socio-economic policy blueprint that focuses, among other things, on:

- eliminating poverty by reducing the proportion of households with a monthly income below R419 per person from 39% to zero and the reduction of inequality.
- increasing employment from 13 million in 2010 to 24 million by 2030.
- broadening the country's ownership of assets by historically disadvantaged groups.
- ensuring that all children have at least two years of pre-school education and that all children can read and write by Grade 3.
- providing affordable access to healthcare.
- ensuring effective public transport.

Monitoring and evaluation

Institutional Performance Monitoring and Evaluation (IPME)

IPME monitors the quality of management practices in government departments through the Management Performance Assessment Tool (MPAT).

The Frontline Service Delivery Monitoring programme of IPME is responsible for designing and implementing hands-on service delivery monitoring activities with offices of the Premier and for setting up and supporting the implementation of citizens-based monitoring systems.

The Presidential Hotline is also located in this branch.

Elections

National and provincial elections are held once every four years.

All South African citizens aged 18 and over are eligible to vote.

The Constitution places all elections and referendums in the country in all three spheres of government under the control of the Independent Electoral Commission (IEC), established in terms of the IEC Act, 1996 (Act 51 of 1996).

The obligations of the IEC are to:

- manage elections of national, provincial and municipal legislative bodies
- ensure that those elections are free and fair
- declare the results of those elections
- compile and maintain a voters' roll.

The duties of the IEC are to:

- compile and maintain a register of parties
- undertake and promote research into electoral matters
- develop and promote the development of electoral expertise and technology in all spheres of government
- continuously review electoral laws and proposed electoral laws, and make recommendations
- promote voter education
- declare the results of elections for national, provincial and municipal legislative bodies within seven days
- appoint appropriate public administrations in any sphere of government to conduct elections when necessary.

The Electoral Commission manages an average of approximately 130 by-elections a year. By-elections are held when ward councillors vacate their seats for a variety of reasons including death, resignation, or expulsion from the party or the council.

In August 2014, over 200 000 registered voters in 25 wards across the country's nine provinces went to the polls to elect municipal

councillors. The by-elections were one of the largest mobilisations of voters outside of general elections. The by-elections included a number of wards in metro councils in Johannesburg, Tshwane, Cape Town, Nelson Mandela Bay and Mangaung. The increase in by-elections was because of the election of municipal councillors to provincial and national legislatures after the 7 May elections. The by-elections were contested by 62 candidates, representing 12 political parties and four independent candidates. Three by-elections were uncontested.

Inter-Ministerial Committees (IMCs)

In July 2014, President Jacob Zuma appointed IMCs that would form part of the new government system of the fifth democratic administration. The IMCs are appointed by the President (and in certain instances by Cabinet) for specific purposes that require the attention and dedication of a team of certain ministers. The mandate of the IMCs is limited to the matter that they are established to execute. The new IMCs are as follows:

- **IMC on the Prevention and Combating of Corruption:** The purpose of this anti-corruption IMC is to coordinate and oversee the work of state organs aimed at fighting the scourge of corruption in the public and private sectors. It comprises the following ministers: Jeff Radebe, the Minister in the Presidency responsible for Planning, Performance Monitoring and Evaluation, who serves as a convener and chair; Michael Masutha, Justice and Correctional Services; David Mahlobo, State Security; Nkosinathi Nhleko, Police; Pravin Gordhan, Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs; Collins Chabane, Public Service and Administration; Malusi Gigaba, Home Affairs; Nhlanhla Nene, Finance; and Bathabile Dlamini, Social Development.
- **IMC on Information and Publicity:** The IMC will be responsible for championing and coordinating the work of government with regards to communicating programmes to the nation at large, as well as branding and marketing the country to the citizens and the world. The IMC comprises the following ministers: Jeff Radebe, the Minister in the Presidency responsible for Planning, Performance Monitoring and Evaluation, who will serve as the convener and chair; Faith Muthambi, Communications; Maite Nkoana-Mashabane, International Relations and Cooperation; Rob Davies, Trade and Industry; Nhlanhla Nene, Finance; Pravin Gordhan, Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs; Nomvula Mokonyane,

Water and Sanitation; Derek Hanekom, Tourism; Edna Molewa, Environmental Affairs; Bathabile Dlamini, Social Development; Gugile Nkwinti, Rural Development and Land Reform; and Collins Chabane, Public Service and Administration.

- **Inter-Ministerial Service Delivery Task Team:** The purpose of the Inter-Ministerial Service Delivery Task Team is to fast-track service delivery in areas where there are bottlenecks, quickly respond to areas where there are service delivery problems and ensure that general service delivery is improved. The Service Delivery Task Force comprises the following ministers: Pravin Gordhan, Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs, who serves as the convenor and chair; Lindiwe Sisulu, Human Settlements; Nomvula Mokonyane, Water and Sanitation; Tina Joemat-Pettersson, Energy; Malusi Gigaba, Home Affairs; Lynne Brown, Public Enterprises; Dipuo Peters, Transport; Gugile Nkwinti, Rural Development and Land Reform; Angie Motshekga, Basic Education; Aaron Motsoaledi, Health; and Jeff Radebe, Planning, Performance Monitoring and Evaluation in the Presidency.
- **IMC on State funerals:** The purpose of the IMC is to oversee the organisation of State funerals. The IMC comprises the following ministers: Jeff Radebe, Minister in the Presidency for Planning, Performance Monitoring and Evaluation, who serves as the convenor and chair; Nkosinathi Nhleko, Police; Thulas Nxesi, Public Works; David Mahlobo, State Security; Maite Nkoana-Mashabane, International Relations and Cooperation; Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakul, Defence and Military Veterans; and Dipuo Peters, Transport.
- **IMC on the Revitalisation of Distressed Mining communities:** The purpose of the IMC is to drive and oversee the implementation of the Special Presidential Package for the revitalisation of distressed mining communities. The following four focus areas have been identified as requiring special attention:
 - Integrated and sustainable human settlements in mining towns and in the Labour Sending Areas (LSAs).
 - Improved socio-economic conditions of mine communities and the LSAs.
 - Improved working conditions of mine workers.
 - Ensuring decent living conditions for mine workers and meaningful contribution to the development trajectory of mining towns and the LSA.

The IMC comprises the following ministers: Jeff Radebe, the Minister in the Presidency responsible

for Planning, Performance Monitoring and Evaluation, who serves as a convenor and chair; Ngoako Ramathlodi, Mineral Resources; Rob Davies, Trade and Industry; Nkosinathi Nhleko, Police; Bathabile Dlamini, Social Development; Pravin Gordhan, Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs; Nomvula Mokonyane, Water and Sanitation; Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula, Defence and Military Veterans; Mildred Oliphant, Labour; David Mahlobo, State Security; Aaron Motsoaledi, Health; Nhlanhla Nene, Finance; Lindiwe Sisulu, Human Settlements; Ebrahim Patel, Economic Development; and Susan Shabangu, Minister in the Presidency: Women.

- **IMC on Migration:** In April 2015, following attacks on foreign nationals, the mandate of this IMC was broadened to deal with all the underlying causes of the tensions between communities and the foreign nationals. Some of the areas to be addressed, is the implementation of our Labour Relations policies as they affect the foreign nationals; the implementation of the laws that govern business licenses; the country's border management and generally the country's migration policies. The IMC comprised of the Minister in The Presidency: Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation (Chairperson); Minister of Police (Deputy Chairperson); Minister of Home Affairs; Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs; Minister of International Relations and Cooperation; Minister of Defence and Military Veterans; Minister of Social Development; Minister of Health; Minister of Basic Education; Minister of State Security; Minister of Justice and Correctional Services; Minister of Small Business Development; Minister of Trade and Industry; and Minister of Human Settlements.

Short-term IMCs

The President has also established the following short-term IMCs dedicated to organising certain high level events:

- The IMC on the Smart Partnership Dialogue.
- The IMC on the Commonwealth Partnership for Technology Management (CPTM) Smart Partnership Dialogue will oversee the organisation of the Smart Partnership Dialogue, which took place for the first time in South Africa in October 2014. The Smart Partnership Dialogue will serve as a platform for SMART partners, including Heads of State and Government, business leaders, scientists, academics and others, to discuss ideas and experiences related to Science, Technology and Innovation for socio-economic transformation and development. The IMC is chaired by the Minister in The Presidency

for Planning, Performance Monitoring and Evaluation and consists of the following Ministers: Maite Nkoana-Mashabane, International Relations and Cooperation; Rob Davies, Trade and Industry; Siyabonga Cwele, Telecommunications and Postal Services; Faith Muthambi, Communications; Naledi Pandor, Science and Technology; Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula, Defence and Military Veterans; Ebrahim Patel, Economic Development; Lynne Brown, Public Enterprises; Lindiwe Zulu, Small Business Development; Dipuo Peters, Transport; Thulas Nxesi, Public Works; Nhlanhla Nene, Finance; Derek Hanekom, Tourism; Nkosinathi Nhleko, Police; and David Mahlobo, State Security.

- 20 Years of Freedom: The IMC on the 20 Years of Freedom and Democracy is chaired by the Minister of Arts and Culture, Nathi Mthethwa and consists of the following ministers: Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula, Defence and Military Veterans; Pravin Gordhan, Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs; Maite Nkoana-Mashabane, International Relations and Cooperation; Dipuo Peters, Transport; Lynne Brown, Public Works; Derek Hanekom, Tourism; Nhlanhla Nene, Finance; Nkosinathi Nhleko, Police; and Jeff Radebe, Presidency: Planning, Monitoring and Evaluation.

Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (CoGTA)

The CoGTA is responsible for facilitating cooperative governance, to support all spheres of government and to assist the institution of traditional leadership with transforming itself into a strategic partner of government in the development of communities.

The best mechanism to build confidence between the people and municipalities is to address the following priority issues:

- accelerating service delivery
- promoting good governance
- enhancing sound financial management
- rolling out infrastructure development and effective maintenance
- intensifying the fight against corruption.

Legislation and policies

The department oversees the implementation of, among other things, the following legislation:

- Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005).
- Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 (Act 6 of 2004). The Municipal Property Rates Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 19 of 2009).
- Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003

(Act 56 of 2003).

- Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002).
- Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 32 of 2002).
- The Municipal Systems Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 7 of 2011).
- Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act 117 of 1998).
- Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998 (Act 27 of 1998).
- *White Paper on Local Government (1998)*.
- National House of Traditional Leaders Act, 2009 (Act 22 of 2009), and the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003 (Act 49 of 2003), which were consolidated by the National Traditional Affairs Bill to simplify the process. In September 2013, the National Traditional Affairs Bill was published in the *Government Gazette* for public comment. The amendment of the legislation will also ensure, among other things, that traditional affairs, rather than only traditional leaders, will take centre stage. The Khoisan communities will also be fully represented in the National House of Traditional Leaders.
- In August 2014, President Jacob Zuma signed into law the Local Government: Municipal Property Rates Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 29 of 2014).

The Act seeks to:

- regulate the categories of property in respect of which rates may be levied
- regulate the time frames of publication of the resolutions levying rates and what must be contained in the promulgated resolution;
- provide for the exclusion from the rates of certain categories of public service infrastructure;
- give powers to a municipality to levy different rates on vacant land;
- give power to the MEC of Local Government to extend the period of validity of a valuation roll by additional two years;
- amend the dates on which a supplementary valuation takes effect; and
- address the problems that have been experienced in the implementation of the Local Government: Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004.

Budget

Over the medium term, spending on conditional and other fiscal transfers is expected to increase as a result of Cabinet approved budget changes within the local government, housing and community amenities and the employment programmes function.

The largest increase in expenditure relates to

Members of the executive councils of provincial government, as at December 2015

Eastern Cape	
Phumulo Masualle	Premier
Mandla Makupula	Education and Training
Sakhumzi Somyo	Finance, Economic Development, Environmental Affairs and Tourism
Pumza Dyantyi	Health
Helen Sauls-August	Human Settlements
Fikile Xasa	Cooperative Government and Traditional Affairs
Thandiswa Marawu	Roads and Public Works
Mlibo Qoboshiyane	Rural Development and Agrarian Reform
Weziwe Tikana	Transport, Safety and Liaison,
Fikile Xasa	Local Government and Traditional Affairs
Nancy Silwayi	Social Development
Pemmy Majodina	Sport, Recreation, Arts and Culture
Free State	
Sekgobelo Magashule	Premier
Oupa Khoabane	Agriculture and Rural Development
Olly Mlamleli	Cooperative Governance, Traditional Affairs and Human Settlements
Malambulele Samuel Mashinini	Economic, Small Business Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs
Pule Makgoe	Education
Benny Malakoane	Health
Elzabe Rockman	Provincial Treasury
Butana Komphele	Police, Roads and Transport
Dora Kotzee	Public Works and Infrastructure
Sefora Ntombela	Social Development
Mathabo Leeto	Sport, Arts, Culture and Recreation
Gauteng	
David Makhura	Premier
Molebatsi Bopape	Social Development
Sizakele Emelda Nkosi-Malobane	Community Safety
Lebogang Maile	Economic Development, Environment, Agriculture and Rural Development
Panyaza Lesufi	Education
Barbara Creecy	Finance
Qedani Mahlangu	Health
Jacob Mamabolo	Human Settlements and Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
Nandi Mayathula-Khoza	Infrastructure Development
Faith Mazibuko	Sport, Arts, Culture and Recreation
Ismail Vadi	Roads and Transport
KwaZulu-Natal	
Senzo Mchunu	Premier
Cyril Xaba	Agriculture and Rural Development
Ntombikayise Sibhidla-Saphetla	Arts, Culture, Sport and Recreation
Nomusa Dube-Ncube	Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
Michael Mabuyakhulu	Economic Development, Tourism and Environmental Affairs
Peggy Nkonyeni	Education
Belinda Scott	Finance
Sibongiseni Dhlomo	Health
Ravi Pillay	Human Settlements and Public Works
Weziwe Thusi	Social Development
Thembinkosi Mchunu	Transport, Community Safety and Liaison

Members of the executive councils of provincial government, as at December 2015

Limpopo	
Stanley Mathabatha	Premier
Joyce Matshoge	Agriculture and Rural Development
Makoma Makhurupetje	Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs
Seaparo Sekoati	Economic Development, Environmental Affairs and Tourism
Ishmael Kgetjepe	Education
Phophi Ramathuba	Health
Rob Tooley	Provincial Treasury
Jerry Ndou	Public Works, Roads and Infrastructure
Mapula Mokaba-Phukwana	Transport, Safety, Security and Liaison
Joyce Mashamba	Social Development
Nandi Ndalane	Sport, Arts and Culture
Mpumalanga	
David Mabuza	Premier
Andries Gamede	Agriculture, Rural Development and Environmental Affairs
Vusi Shongwe	Community Safety, Security and Liaison
Refilwe Mtsweni	Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
Norah Mahlangu	Culture, Sports and Recreation
Makgabo Mhaule	Education
Eric Kholwane	Finance, Economic Development and Tourism
Gillion Mashego	Health
Violet Siwela	Human Settlements
Dumisile Nhlengethwa	Public Works, Roads and Transport
Nomsa Mtsweni	Social Development
Northern Cape	
Sylvia Lucas	Premier
Norman Shushu	Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development
Alvin Botes	Cooperative Governance, Human Settlements and Traditional Affairs
Masa Bartlett (Acting)	Education
Magdalene Chotelo	Environment and Nature Conservation
Maccollen Jack (Acting)	Finance, Economic Affairs and Tourism
Maccollen Jack	Health
Dawid Rooi	Infrastructure and Public Works
Simon Sokatsha	Social Development
Lebogang Motlhaping	Sport, Arts and Culture
Masa Bartlett	Transport, Safety and Liaison
North West	
Supra Mahumapelo	Premier
Gaoage Molapisi	Community Safety and Transport Management
Tebogo Modise	Culture, Arts and Traditional Affairs
Wendy Matsemela	Education and Sport Development
Magome Masike	Health
Wendy Nelson (Acting)	Local Government and Human Settlements
Madoda Sambatha	Public Works and Roads
Manketsi Tlhape	Rural, Environment and Agricultural Development
Fenny Gaolaolwe	Social Development
Desbo Mohono	Tourism
Wendy Nelson	Finance, Economy and Enterprise Development

Members of the executive councils of provincial government, as at December 2015

Western Cape	
Helen Zille	Premier
Dan Plato	Community Safety
Anroux Marais	Cultural Affairs and Sport
Debbie Schäfer	Education
Ivan Meyer	Finance
Alan Winde	Agriculture and Economic Development
Nomafrench Mbombo	Health
Bonginkosi Madikizela	Human Settlements
Anton Bredell	Local Government, Environment Affairs and Development Planning
Albert Fritz	Social Development
Donald Grant	Transport and Public Works

R1,1 billion in 2016/17 for the expansion of the community work programme (CWP) to increase the number of participants from 172 000 in 2013/14 to 362 000 in 2016/17.

The Municipal Infrastructure Support Agency received an additional allocation of R60 million over the medium term to expand infrastructure capacity to 80 municipalities and the municipal disaster recovery grant receives an additional R59.1 million for the disasters that occurred in 2009 and 2010 in Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and Western Cape.

The budget includes a Cabinet approved baseline reduction of R850 million on the municipal infrastructure grant CWP. The allocation for the CWP has also been reduced by R132 million in 2014/15 and R31,6 million has been reprioritised from goods and services towards the monitoring of personnel to support the implementation of the MIG.

Infrastructure spending is set to increase to R15,8 billion in 2016/17.

Provincial government

In accordance with the Constitution, each province has its own legislature, consisting of between 30 and 80 members.

The number of members is determined according to a formula set out in national legislation. The members are elected in terms of proportional representation.

The executive council of a province consists of a premier and a number of members (MECs). Premiers are appointed by the President.

Decisions are taken by consensus, as is the case in the national Cabinet.

Besides being able to make provincial laws, a provincial legislature may adopt a constitution for its province if two thirds of its members agree.

A provincial constitution must correspond with the national Constitution.

According to the Constitution, provinces may

have legislative and executive powers, concurrent with the national sphere, over:

- agriculture
- casinos, racing, gambling and wagering
- cultural affairs
- education at all levels, excluding university and university of technology education
- environment
- health services
- human settlements
- language policy
- nature conservation
- police services
- provincial public media
- public transport
- regional planning and development
- road-traffic regulation
- tourism
- trade and industrial promotion
- traditional authorities
- urban and rural development
- vehicle licensing
- welfare services.

These powers can be exercised to the extent that provinces have the administrative capacity to assume effective responsibilities.

Provinces also have exclusive competency over a number of areas, which include:

- abattoirs
- ambulance services
- liquor licences
- museums other than national museums
- provincial planning
- provincial cultural matters
- provincial recreational activities
- provincial roads and traffic.

The President's Coordinating Council (PCC) is a statutory body established in terms of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act of 2005, which brings together the three spheres of government on matters of common interest and national importance, thereby strengthening

cooperative government. Among other things, the forum looked at:

- mechanisms for monitoring job creation and implementation of the New Growth Path (NGP) in all spheres of government
- shared experiences in creating an environment for job creation in provinces
- specific provincial matters
- monitoring and evaluation.

Provincial Spatial Development Framework (PSDF)

The PSDF aims to:

- be the spatial expression of the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
- guide (metropolitan, district and local) municipal IDPs and spatial development frameworks and provincial and municipal framework plans
- help prioritise and align the investment and infrastructure plans of other provincial departments, as well as national departments' and parastatals' plans and programmes in the provinces
- provide clear signals to the private sector about desired development directions
- increase predictability in the development environment, for example by establishing "no-go," "conditional" and "go" areas for development and redress of the spatial legacy of apartheid.

Local government

In accordance with the Constitution and the Organised Local Government Act, 1997 (Act 52 of 1997) up to 10 part-time representatives may be designated to represent municipalities and participate in proceedings of the NCOP.

The CoGTA aims to build and strengthen the capability and accountability of provinces and municipalities.

This includes:

- continued hands-on support through the established system and capacity-building programme, focusing on critical areas such as integrated development planning, local economic development (LED), financial management, service delivery and public participation
- evaluating the impact of government programmes in municipal areas, enhancing performance and accountability by improving the quality of reporting on the Local Government Strategic Agenda (LGSA) and improving the monitoring, reporting and evaluation of capacity in local government
- coordinating and supporting policy development, implementing the LGSA, and moni-

toring and supporting service delivery.

Municipalities

The Constitution provides for three categories of municipality. There are 278 municipalities in South Africa, comprising eight metropolitan, 44 district and 226 local municipalities. They are focused on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and service.

As directed by the Constitution, the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act of 1998 contains criteria for determining when an area must have a category-A municipality (metropolitan municipalities) and when municipalities fall into categories B (local municipalities) or C (district municipalities).

The Act also determines that category-A municipalities can only be established in metropolitan areas.

Metropolitan councils have single metropolitan budgets, common property ratings and service-tariff systems, and single-employer bodies.

South Africa has eight metropolitan municipalities, namely:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekweni (Durban)
- City of Johannesburg
- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth)
- City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

Metropolitan councils may decentralise powers and functions. However, all original municipal, legislative and executive powers are vested in the metropolitan council.

In metropolitan areas, there is a choice of types of executive system: the mayoral executive system where executive authority is vested in the mayor, or the collective executive committee system where these powers are vested in the executive committee.

Non-metropolitan areas consist of district councils and local councils. District councils are primarily responsible for capacity-building and district-wide planning. The Local Government: Municipal Structures Act of 1998 provides for ward committees whose tasks, among other things, are to:

- prepare, implement and review IDPs
- establish, implement and review municipalities' performance-management systems
- monitor and review municipalities' performances
- prepare municipalities' budgets
- participate in decisions about the provision of

municipal services

- communicate and disseminate information on governance matters.

Municipal Infrastructure Support Agent (Misa)

At the end of March 2013, Misa deployed 68 technical consultants and 24 service providers that support 100 priority municipalities.

Local Government Turnaround Strategy (LGTAS)

The LGTAS was introduced as a government programme of action and a blueprint for better service delivery aimed at responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government. Five focus areas aimed at fast-tracking implementation of the strategy have been identified. These are:

- service delivery
- governance
- financial management
- infrastructure development
- fighting corruption.

The department aims to review all pieces of legislation that impede service delivery. In this regard, more than 300 sections of legislation that fall under this category have been identified and reviews undertaken.

Municipal Infrastructure Grant

The MIG aims to eradicate municipal infra-structure backlogs in poor communities to ensure the provision of basic services such as water, sanitation, roads and community lighting.

The CoGTA is responsible for managing and transferring the MIG and provides support to provinces and municipalities on implementing MIG projects.

Community Work Programme

The CWP aims to create one million work opportunities by the 2018/19 financial year, covering all local municipalities. The department will spend R2,5 billion in 2015/16 to provide 202 000 work opportunities and R3,7 billion in 2016/17 to provide one million work opportunities across local municipalities.

The CWP is a key government initiative aimed at mobilising communities to provide regular and predictable work opportunities at the local government level. The purpose of the programme is to provide an employment safety net for those without access to opportunities designed to lift them out of poverty. The programme also provides access to a minimum level of regular work, two days a week; eight days a month; and 100 days a year at a wage rate presently set at

R71 a day.

The programme recognises that policies to address unemployment and create decent work will take time to reach people living in marginalised areas where few opportunities exist.

The programme has been implemented in 76 of the department's 105 priority municipalities in the short-term, while in the medium-term; all municipalities in the country will have at least one CWP site.

The department spent R2,7 billion in 2014/15 period to create 332 000 work opportunities covering all municipalities.

Local economic development

LED is an approach towards economic development that allows and encourages local people to work together to achieve sustainable economic growth and development, thereby bringing economic benefits and improved quality of life to all residents in a local municipal area.

LED is intended to maximise the economic potential of municipal localities and enhance the resilience of macro-economic growth through increased local economic growth, employment creation and development initiatives within the context of sustainable development. The "local" in economic development points to the fact that the political jurisdiction at local level is often the most appropriate place for economic intervention, as it carries alongside it the accountability and legitimacy of a democratically elected body.

LED programmes provide support in the following areas:

- developing and reviewing national policy, strategy and guidelines on LED
- providing direct and hands-on support to provincial and local government
- managing the LED Fund
- managing and providing technical support to nodal economic development planning
- facilitating, coordinating and monitoring donor programmes
- assisting LED capacity-building processes.

Through these interventions and resources, local role players and interest groups are mobilised to achieve economic growth and creating jobs to reduce poverty.

Municipal Demarcation Board (MDB)

The MDB is an independent authority responsible for the determination of municipal boundaries. The board's status as an independent authority is also protected by Section 3 of the Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act of 1998 and various judgements by the Constitutional Court.

In addition to the determinations and re-determinations of municipal boundaries, the MDB is also mandated by legislation to declare the district management areas; to delimit wards for local elections; and to assess the capacity of municipalities to perform their functions.

South African Local Government Association (Salga)

Salga is a listed public entity, established in terms of Section 21 of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), and recognised by the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs, in terms of the Organised Local Government Act of 1997.

Salga represents local government on numerous intergovernmental forums such as the PCC, Minister and MECs (MinMec) forum, the Budget Forum, the NCOP and the Financial and Fiscal Commission.

Salga aims, among other things, to:

- transform local government to enable it to fulfil its developmental role
- enhance the role of provincial local government associations as provincial representatives and consultative bodies on local government
- raise the profile of local government
- ensure full participation of women in local government
- act as the national employers' organisation for municipal and provincial member employers
- provide legal assistance to its members, using its discretion in connection with matters that affect employee relations.

Salga is funded through a combination of sources, including a national government grant, membership fees from provincial and local government associations that are voluntary members, and donations from the donor community for specific projects.

The Human Resource Management and Development Strategy aims to turn municipalities into professional and responsive entities.

The strategy is intended to help municipalities make better use of the human capital at their disposal, for them to be able to fulfil their important objective of accelerating service delivery as well as promoting development in local government as a whole.

The strategy emphasises employing individuals who are prepared to extend themselves in serving the needs of people, are professional, and are constantly learning and developing themselves.

One of Salga's achievements was the establishment of public accounts committees on municipalities, which allowed councils themselves to exercise accountability.

Disaster management

The Disaster Management Act of 2000, was promulgated in 2003. The National Disaster-Management Centre (NDMC) and functional disaster-management centres and advisory forums were established in eight provinces. The National Disaster-Management Advisory Forum was recognised by the United Nations (UN) as the national platform for reducing disaster risk.

South Africa has also made significant progress in implementing the Hyogo Framework for Action – a global blueprint which aims to substantially reduce disaster losses by 2015.

Through the NDMC, the CoGTA registered unit standards for levels three to seven with the South African Qualifications Authority (Saq) for a national certificate in disaster risk management.

The department also developed regulations for recruiting and using disaster-management volunteers.

Traditional affairs

In September 2013, Cabinet approved the publication of a Bill that would pave the way for the Khoisan people to be recognised.

The Bill makes statutory provisions for the recognition of the Khoisan and also addresses limitations of existing legislation relating to traditional leadership and governance. The Bill will contribute to the NDP's key target relating to broadening social cohesion and unity while addressing the inequalities of the past.

Traditional leadership

Chapter 11 of the Constitution states that the institution, status and roles of traditional leadership, according to customary law, are recognised.

Government acknowledges the critical role of traditional leadership institutions in South Africa's constitutional democracy and in communities, particularly in relation to the rural-development strategy.

It therefore remains committed to strengthening the institution of traditional leadership.

To this end, numerous pieces of legislation have been passed and various programmes implemented to ensure that traditional leadership makes an important contribution to the development of society.

The department is also working on a range of issues, which include policies on unity and diversity, initiation, traditional healing, traditional leaders' protocol, family trees, the remuneration and benefits of traditional leaders based on uniform norms and standards, and involving the Khoisan people in the system of governance in

South Africa.

Traditional councils

Legislation has transformed the composition of traditional councils to provide for elements of democracy. It states that 40% of members must be elected and that one third of members must be women.

Legislation has also opened up an opportunity for municipalities and traditional councils to achieve cooperative governance.

Traditional councils have been given a strong voice in development matters and may now enter into partnerships and service-delivery agreements with government in all spheres.

The National Khoisan Council aims to unite the Khoisan communities and create a platform through which they can raise issues affecting them as a group of communities. The most important issue is the statutory recognition and inclusion of the Khoisan people in formal government structures.

Houses of traditional leaders

The Constitution mandates the establishment of houses of traditional leaders by means of either provincial or national legislation.

The National House of Traditional Leaders was established in terms of the then National House of Traditional Leaders Act, 1997 (Act 10 of 1997). Its objectives and functions are to promote the role of traditional leadership within a democratic constitutional dispensation, enhance unity and understanding among traditional communities and advise national government.

Provincial houses of traditional leaders were established in all six provinces that have traditional leaders, namely the Eastern Cape, Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga and North West.

The national and provincial houses of traditional leaders enhance the cooperative relationships within national and provincial government, while the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders deepens and cements the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

Commission on Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims

The commission was established in terms of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act of 2003.

It is tasked with restoring the dignity of traditional leaders and their communities by investigating and ensuring that the institution of traditional leadership is restored to where it

belongs. It also investigates all claims to any position of traditional leadership (king/queen/principal/senior traditional leader and headmen and women), including disputes over the boundaries of traditional councils.

Section 25 of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act of 2003 requires that the commission investigate and make recommendations on cases where there is doubt as to whether a kingship, principal traditional leadership or senior traditional leadership and headmanship was established in accordance with customary law and customs.

Department of Public Service and Administration (DPSA)

The DPSA is at the centre of government. It plays a major policy role in establishing norms and standards for the Public Service, which ensure that service-delivery mechanisms, integrated systems and access, human resources, institutional development and governance initiatives are responsive to the needs of citizens.

This mandate has evolved over the years from transforming and modernising the Public Service through the development and implementation of policies and frameworks, to providing implementation support to ensure compliance, improve service delivery and strengthen monitoring and evaluation.

In terms of the Public Service Act of 1994, as amended, the Minister of Public Service and Administration is responsible for establishing norms and standards relating to:

- the functions of the Public Service
- organisational structures and the establishment of departments and other organisational and governance arrangements in the Public Service
- labour relations, conditions of service and other employment practices for employees
- the health and wellness of employees
- information management
- electronic government in the Public Service
- integrity, ethics, conduct and anti-corruption
- transformation, reform, innovation and any other intervention to improve the effectiveness and efficiency of the Public Service and its service delivery to the public.

The DPSA has identified five focus areas that will form part of the overall work of the Public Service and Administration Portfolio over the next four-year period. These will serve as the main strategic indicators that will point to whether the Public Service is effective, efficient and development-oriented.

They are:

- services rendered with speed

- services easily accessible to citizens
- services provided at lower cost
- appropriately skilled public servants to render services.
- competitive conditions of service for public servants and the achievement of labour peace.
- no corruption
- a positive impact on the lives of people and the economy.

The Minister of Public Service and Administration and union leaders launched the Public Service Charter in August 2013. The charter is a commitment between the State as the employer and labour, which seeks to professionalise and encourage excellence in the public service and improve service delivery. It also introduces service standards in the public service, with a call to public servants to meet and exceed them.

Anti-corruption bureau

The Minister of Public Service and Administration launched the anti-corruption bureau to fast-track disciplinary cases in the public sector. The bureau forms part of amendments to the Public Service Act of 1994.

The amendments also include banning all public servants from doing business with the government.

Cabinet and provinces have adopted a manual on procedures for recruiting, and/or retaining officials that resign.

Uniform standards will be applied to all public servants across government.

The bureau will conduct investigations, institute disciplinary proceedings and work with existing law enforcement agencies, such as the Special Investigating Unit (SIU) and National Prosecuting Authority (NPA), and the other related agencies such as, Financial Intelligence Centre (FIC) and South African Revenue Service (Sars).

Criminal cases will be referred to law enforcement agencies.

The bureau also has to provide technical assistance and advisory support to deal with disciplinary matters in the public administration, while ensuring that the public sector applies uniform disciplinary standards.

A case management system allows officials to monitor the progress of cases to ensure that they are finalised speedily. By 2014, an agreement was already in place with the NPA to ensure that whistle-blowers were protected.

The passing of the Public Administration Management Bill (PAM) in March 2014 was expected to change the face of the state at national, provincial, and local levels. The Bill was a major step forward in the building of an

effective, efficient, and ethical public service.

An effective, efficient and ethical Public Service is a central element in the building of a democratic developmental state as mandated by the NDP.

Among other things, the PAM Bill prohibits public administration officials from conducting business with the State and officials in public administration are required to declare the financial and business interests of their immediate family members.

By prohibiting officials from conducting business with the State, government is eliminating incentives and opportunities for corruption and unethical conduct.

Legislation and policies

The DPSA oversees the implementation of the following legislation:

- Public Service Act of 1994 as amended by Public Service Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 30 of 2007)
- State Information Technology Agency (Sita) Act, 2002 (Act 38 of 2002)
- Protected Disclosures Act, 2000 (Act 26 of 2000)
- Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999)
- Public Service Laws Amendment Act, 1997 (Act 47 of 1997)
- Public Service Laws Second Amendment Act, 1997 (Act 93 of 1997)
- Public Service Regulations, 2001, as amended 31 July 2012.

Role players

Community development workers (CDWs)

CDWs link early childhood development centres with programmes of the Department of Social Development. In the area of HIV and AIDS, CDWs disseminate user-friendly information on these conditions and mobilise communities to actively participate in HIV and AIDS-related awareness programmes including World AIDS Day.

To promote food security, CDWs identify indigent households and mobilise them to benefit from the departments of agriculture and rural development's food security programmes.

To contribute to job creation, CDWs identify and link unemployed youths to government's Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) and Community Works Programme.

To empower CDWs with information on government priorities, the department convened a national CDW conference for 500 CDWs from all provinces in March 2013. CDWs are agents of participatory democracy. Their functions include:

- communicating government and other information to communities in an accessible way
- providing feedback to government regarding community experiences of service delivery and governance
- providing early warning to government of any obvious reduction in service standards and performance that could lead to the collapse or significant impairment of overall service functions
- reporting any corruption or irregularity encountered within the sphere of government, government departments, community organisations or the private sector.

Public Service Commission (PSC)

The PSC is tasked with and empowered to, among other things, investigate, monitor and evaluate the organisation and administration of the Public Service. This mandate entails the evaluation of achievements, or lack thereof, of government programmes.

The PSC has an obligation to promote measures that will ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service and to promote values and principles of public administration, as set out in the Constitution, throughout the Public Service.

The Constitution mandates the commission to:

- promote the values and principles governing public administration
- investigate, monitor and evaluate the organisation, administration and the personnel practices of the Public Service
- propose measures to ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service
- give directions aimed at ensuring that personnel procedures relating to recruitment, transfers, promotions and dismissals comply with the constitutionally prescribed values and principles
- report its activities and the performance of its functions, including any findings it may make and to provide an evaluation of the extent to which it complies constitutionally with the prescribed values and principles
- either of its own accord or on receipt of any complaint:
 - investigate and evaluate the application of personnel and public-administration practices, and report to the relevant executive authority and legislature
 - investigate grievances of employees in the Public Service concerning official acts or omissions, and recommend appropriate remedies
 - monitor and investigate adherence to applicable procedures in the Public Service

- advise national and provincial organs of State regarding personnel practices in the Public Service.

To be effective, the public Service has to develop a deeper understanding of the constitutional imperatives and government mandate of providing a better life for the country's citizens.

This would make it easier for government to develop the necessary skills in its human capital to deal with the challenges faced by South Africans across the board.

Government Employees Medical Aid Scheme (GEMS)

While fixing the Public Service, the department had to start by building a healthy, safe working environment for all public servants because, ensuring a healthy workforce and a sound and enabling working environment is essential for constructing a capable developmental public service.

Membership of GEMS continues to grow. The target for 2013 was 750 000 principal members of which 250 000 should be employees on salary levels 1 to 5.

Centre for Public Sector Innovation (CPSI)

The CPSI was established to identify, support and nurture innovation in the public sector to improve service delivery.

The CPSI works through partnerships with other departments and state-owned enterprises (SOEs) to, for example, enhance the productive capacity of visually impaired educators by providing data-card devices for them to access teaching material without the use of Braille.

The CPSI runs targeted innovation programmes to support the outcomes of rural development, accelerated service delivery at local government level, as well as human settlement.

The CPSI held a conference in August 2014 under the theme "Building an innovative State machinery for maximised service delivery impact." The conference was aimed at helping government serve its citizens with diligence and interrogate the challenges standing in the way of excellence. The public service employs about 1,3 million people around the country.

Government Information Technology Officers Council (Gitoc)

The Gitoc advises government on the application of IT to improve service delivery. Its membership consists of the chief information officers from national departments and premiers' offices.

The council has been involved in developing an IT security policy framework, IT procurement

guidelines and e-government policy and strategy. It also monitors government IT projects to avoid duplication.

National School of Government (NSG)

The NSG offers training and development opportunities to public servants at national, provincial and local level of government.

This includes training of new public service employees as part of their probation, re-orientation of senior managers and orientation of unemployed youth graduates, preparing them for public service employment opportunities.

The school is intended to educate, train, professionalise and develop a highly capable, skilled and committed public service cadre, with a sense of national duty and a common culture and ethos.

It will nurture a culture of professionalism and innovative thinking and serve as a catalyst for reform and modernisation, in pursuit of a performance-oriented public service.

Core training is not outsourced, but is performed internally.

The school provides everything from adult basic education and training to higher education courses, and is registered to carry out the necessary accreditation.

The school runs like a customer-focused business, with participants having to pay tuition fees. It is funded by PSeta and skills development levies are drawn from departments' payrolls.

All new public servants are required to undergo induction training.

Programmes and projects

Continental Capacity Development Programme

The DPSA continues to provide coordination for the implementation of the Continental Capacity Development Programme.

South Africa is engaged in several post-conflict interventions in several countries, namely:

- the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC): developing and implementing the Anti-Corruption Framework, the public service Census and capacity-building programmes
- Burundi: rebuilding and strengthening its Public Service for it to run effectively and implementing capacity-building programmes
- Rwanda: capacity-building programmes and leadership development
- South Sudan: capacity-building in human resources and enhancing legislative and policy review.
- For the first time, government included the participation of traditional leaders as one of the sectors in the Africa Peer Review Mechanism

process. This move was necessitated by the fact that 70% of South Africa's population is rural.

- Through the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development, South Africa was asked to assist in developing a framework for civil society's participation in the review of government programmes.

Public Service Month

South Africa marks Public Service Month in September each year.

It is a regular national event that requires all the national and provincial departments to participate by putting in place activities and campaigns to improve service delivery.

Public Service Month is a follow-up to and mirrors the UN and Africa Public Service Day. It takes place on 23 June every year.

Batho Pele

The *Batho Pele* Campaign is, aimed at improving service delivery to the public.

Batho Pele is a Sesotho phrase meaning "People First".

From this concept, eight principles were derived and made known in a White Paper as the principles for transforming public service delivery, which are:

- regular consultation with customers
- set service standards
- increased access to services
- higher levels of courtesy
- more and better information about services
- increased openness and transparency about services
- remedying failures and mistakes
- giving the best possible value for money.

Batho Pele Awards

Hard-working and dedicated public servants, those doing their bit behind the scenes to make the country a better place over the last 21 years of democracy, were given their time to shine in November 2014, at the inaugural Batho Pele Excellence Awards held in Kempton Park, Ekurhuleni.

The winners were:

- Maria Maghrieta Goodier, Auxiliary Nurse, Ruyterwacht Community Health Care Clinic, Western Cape Province won the Overall Batho Pele Public Servant of the Year Awards.
- Sister Duduzile Ndlovu, Operational Manager, Thuthuzela Care Centre, Port Shepstone Regional Hospital, KwaZulu-Natal took home the Best Frontline Public Service Employee of the Year Awards.
- Road Accident Fund-On the Road Project, Gauteng scooped the Best Implemented

Programme/Project of the Year Awards.

- The Best Functioning Provincial Department of the Year Award went to the KwaZulu-Natal Provincial Treasury.
- Intensive Care Unit: Mokopane Hospital, Department of Health won the Batho Pele Team of the Year Award.
- Boy Ngobeni, Gauteng Department of Education, scooped the award for Best Provincial Head of Department of the Year.

The awards will be extended to cover the entire public service. It is hoped that the awards will reinforce the diligence of public servants and the compassion they show to people.

Department of Public Works (DPW)

By May 2013, South Africa was well on track with the creation of an Assets Register intended to accurately reflect for the first time the State's assets.

To establish an Immovable Assets Register, the records of 180 000 land parcels, which ascribed custodianship to a responsible department or level of government, were investigated.

A physical verification process started in July 2013 and by 31 March 2015 an Immovable Assets Register was expected to be completed.

Still waiting to be completed was the allocation of custodianship of 4 500 land parcels, while about 24 000 land parcels also had to be vested.

This process would be rounded off by March 2016. With a sustainable register of State immovable assets in place, the department has at its disposal the tools to leverage a massive portfolio for economic development.

The DPW manages 2 788 leased properties in South Africa, all of which have been reviewed.

Of these 1 316 needed attention, revision or renewal, while 365 have already been addressed.

Recommendations for the remaining 951 leases were in place by the end of June 2013.

The DPW experienced challenges when it opted for a turnaround project to rebuild the department.

A Business Improvement Unit was created to drive this process.

The core of this unit is located in the office of the DG to ensure that the process is not derailed in the event of the Minister being recalled.

The turnaround strategy homed in on five areas, including developing a credible register of State immovable assets, auditing leases, and reducing fraud and corruption.

Working closely with the SIU, the department investigated a number of irregular leases and projects, with 23 out of a total of 40 investigations completed.

Expanded Public Works Programme

The EPWP Phase 3 employment target for 2014/15 was projected at 1 075 189, growing each year to the five-year target of six million. The targets were divided into several sectors, such as infrastructure, environment and culture, social, non-profit organisations and community work programmes. The EPWP Phase 3 would focus on increasing the EPWP contribution to development. This would be achieved by:

- improving the strategic and operational aspects of the EPWP
- introducing a greater degree of uniformity and standardisation across the various EPWP programmes through the introduction of universal principles
- improving targeting of participants through community involvement, improving the monitoring and evaluation of qualitative aspects
- strengthening the collaboration and synergies among lead departments and other stakeholders

The key changes that would be made in Phase 3 were that the Presidential Public Employment Coordination Commission would:

- enhance coordination across a range of Public Employment Programme (PEPs), between PEPs and other developmental initiatives
- fostering compliance with core universal principles to be progressively realised
- adherence to the EPWP minimum wage and employment conditions under the Ministerial Determination
- selection of workers based on a clearly defined process and defined criteria
- increased community participation for more visibility and ownership in poor communities
- enhancing social cohesion
- increased scope of infrastructure maintenance which provided longer duration work opportunities
- more emphasis on the monitoring and evaluation of assets created and their impact on communities and beneficiaries.

Budget

The spending focus over the medium term was on providing and managing the accommodation, housing, land and infrastructure needs of national departments; rehabilitating 34 State-owned buildings; and ensuring that at least 100 buildings were made accessible to people with disabilities in each year of the MTEF period. The focus was on leading and improving the coordination of the EPWP to achieve the department's target of creating 3.4 million work opportunities by the end of 2016/17. To achieve the target for work opportunities, Cabinet has

approved an additional allocation of R159 million in 2016/17 for the EPWP.

Cabinet approved baseline reductions of R1,3 billion over the MTEF period will be effected in the following areas: R650 million on infrastructure projects in the Immovable Assets Management programme, R150 million on non-core goods and services items in all programmes, R26,2 million on compensation of employees, R150 million on transfers to the property management trading entity, and R308,3 million on the EPWP. These reductions are largely a result of continual underspending in the department's capital budget.

Spending on infrastructure decreased from R1,3 billion in 2010/11 to R676 million in 2013/14. The decrease was due to the reprioritisation of infrastructure funds to provide funding for the turnaround programme. The department's overall infrastructure budget reduced by R220 million in 2014/15, R180 million in 2015/16 and R250 million in 2016/17. Consequently, infrastructure spending was expected to increase to R885 million over the medium term, mostly due to inflation-related adjustments to existing infrastructure projects.

The department's capital works implementation programme, was allocated R2,2 billion over the medium term. It is organised into six project categories, which are at various stages of completion. The allocations were as follows:

- R448 million for departmental projects, which deal with the construction and major refurbishment of the department's own accommodation
- R306 million for dolomite projects, which deal with the management of risk in dolomitic areas
- R30 million for accessibility projects, which make public buildings more accessible to disabled people
- R795 million for land ports of entry, which provide for the construction, maintenance and upgrading of border-control infrastructure projects
- R346 million for prestige management projects, which are for the management of government's prestige portfolio
- R314 million for inner-city regeneration projects, which facilitate inner-city regeneration around the Tshwane area in addressing the accommodation needs of national government departments.

Department of Home Affairs (DHA)

The DHA is the custodian of the identity of all South African citizens, critical to which is the issuance of birth, marriage and death certificates;

identity documents (IDs) and passports; as well as citizenship; naturalisation and permanent residency certificates. This goes beyond merely issuing documents. It encompasses the safe maintenance and archiving of biometric and demographic records of citizens and residents of the country.

The department is also responsible for the effective, secure and humane management of immigration.

Statutory bodies falling under the department are the:

- Immigration Advisory Board
- Standing Committee for Refugee Affairs
- Refugee Appeal Board.

A major focus for the DHA is the transformation of the department, so that it can deliver a service that is efficient, accessible and corruption-free. Several closely related strategic drivers are used in this regard.

Budget

The department's budget for the 2014/15 financial year was set at R6,62 billion. The DHA planned to build 14 new offices, provide 12 residences for officials at ports of entry, upgrade and renovate 14 buildings, and repair a number of elevators. These projects were expected to increase expenditure on office accommodation from R78,2m in 2013/2014 to R185,2m in 2017/2018.

Legislation and policies

The mandate of the DHA is derived from the Constitution and various Acts of Parliament and policy documents. The department's services are divided into two broad categories: civic services and immigration services. Both must ensure the efficient determination and safeguarding of the identity and status of citizens, and provide for the regulation of immigration to ensure security, promote development and fulfil South Africa's international obligations.

The department oversees the implementation of, among others, the following legislation:

- South African Citizenship Act, 1995 (Act 88 of 1995)
- Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 18 of 2010)
- The South African Citizenship Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 17 of 2010)
- Refugees Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998)
- Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), as amended by the Immigration Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 19 of 2004)
- Immigration Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 13 of 2011) which provides for, among others, revising provisions relating to the Immigration Advisory Board

- Refugees Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998) gives effect within South Africa to the relevant international legal instruments, principles and standards relating to refugees; provides for the reception into South Africa of asylum seekers; regulates applications for and recognition of refugee status; and provides for the rights and obligations flowing from such status, and related matters
 - Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), which provides for a stricter immigration policy to control illegal immigration. Implementation of administrative fines and other measures came into effect in 2003; the Act was later amended to clarify and revise immigration and permit procedures to facilitate importing skills
 - The Refugee Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 12 of 2011), which contains certain amendments to eliminate abuse of the asylum system and redefines in a clear and transparent manner the criteria for refugees seeking asylum
 - South African citizenship is regulated by the South African Citizenship Act, 1995 (Act 88 of 1995), and regulations issued in terms thereof.
- In October 2010, the National Assembly adopted the South African Citizenship Amendment and Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Bills. The Births and Deaths Registration Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 18 of 2010) seeks to streamline the procedures related to the following:
- who, other than parents, should register the birth of a child, including the next-of-kin or a legal guardian
 - the registration of orphans and abandoned children
 - simplifying the process for the change of surnames of children and adults
 - paternity, including steps to be followed when a mother registers a child under one father and later changes to another
 - registration of birth after 30 days
 - registration of adopted children to ensure alignment to the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005).

The South African Citizenship Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 17 of 2010) amends provisions of the South African Citizenship Act of 1995 that deal with citizenship by birth and naturalisation, and the loss of citizenship in terms of the mandate of the DHA.

The South African Citizenship Amendment Act of 2010, among others, ensures that a child:

- born to a South African parent inside or outside the country is a South African by birth, as long as the child is registered according to South African law
- born of non-South African parents, but adopted by South African parents is a citizen

From 1 September 2014, the Department of Home Affairs discontinued the issuing of Temporary passports. A Temporary Passport was initially issued as an interim travel document due to longer turn-around times taken to issue a Permanent Tourist Passport valid for 10 years. This turnaround time has improved drastically, rendering the issuance of Temporary passports redundant. South Africans travelling abroad and to the neighbouring countries are refused entry when travelling on Temporary passports. An Emergency Travel Certificate will be issued to an applicant under circumstances of emergency travel purposes such as when a passport is lost while abroad.

by descent

- born of non-South African parents in South Africa, may, at the age of 18 years, apply for naturalisation; while they are minors, such children will retain the citizenship of their parents
- with no claim to any citizenship will be given South African citizenship, in accordance with international law and practice.

Citizenship

South African citizenship may be granted by way of:

- birth or descent
- an application for naturalisation as a South African citizen
- an application for resumption of South African citizenship
- registration of the birth of children born outside South Africa to South African fathers or mothers
- an application for exemption, in terms of Section 26(4) of the Act.

National Population Register

To encourage parents to register their babies within 30 days of delivery, 344 hospitals, clinics and healthcare facilities were connected to the DHA in 2013. Officials visited 88 hospitals and other healthcare centres for collection of registration forms.

Immigration

The DHA's National Immigration Branch is responsible for control over the admission of foreigners for residence and departure from South Africa. The immigration policy aims to:

- discourage illegal migration into South Africa by encouraging foreign nationals to apply for relevant permits to legalise their stay in the country
- create an enabling environment for foreign direct investment in South Africa
- attract scarce skills required by the economy, in accordance with the 2014 vision of eradicating poverty and underdevelopment

- temporary and permanent residence permits issue as expeditiously as possible and according to simplified procedures
- ensure that security considerations are fully satisfied and the State regains control over the immigration of foreigners to South Africa
- ensure that economic growth is promoted through the employment of needed foreign labour; foreign investment is facilitated; the entry of exceptionally skilled or qualified people is enabled and academic exchange programmes in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) are facilitated
- ensure that tourism is promoted
- ensure that the contribution of foreigners to the South African labour market does not adversely affect existing labour standards and the rights and expectations of South African workers
- ensure that a policy connection is maintained between foreigners working in South Africa and the training of South African citizens
- ensure that a human-rights-based culture of enforcement is promoted.

The department prioritised the issuance of quota work permits to foreigners who fall within specific occupational classes or specific professional categories.

In this context, details of specific occupational classes and specific professional categories and the applicable quotas are published annually in the *Government Gazette*, after consultation with other stakeholder departments.

The Immigration Amendment Act provides for, among other things:

- revising provisions relating to the Immigrating Advisory Board
- revising provisions relating to the making of regulations
- the designation of ports of entry
- revising provisions relating to visas for temporary sojourn in South Africa
- the mandatory transmission and use of information on advance passenger processing
- the transmission of passenger name record information
- revising provisions relating to permanent residence
- revising penal provisions.

Visas

Foreigners who wish to enter South Africa must be in possession of valid and acceptable travel documents. They must have valid visas, except in the case of certain countries whose citizens are exempt from visa control. Such exemptions are normally limited to permits, which are issued for 90 days or less at the ports of entry.

The visa system is aimed at facilitating the admission of acceptable foreigners at ports of entry. The visa becomes a permit upon entry; therefore, no additional permit will be issued.

In May 2014, new immigration regulations were implemented. This is the first time since 2004 that the law has been adjusted. The amendments to the Act impact foreigners looking to visit, study, work, live and own a business in South Africa.

The DHA outsourced the handling and processing of visa applications to Visa Facilitation Services (VFS). The VFS has opened 11 offices, which are referred to as Visa Application Centres (VACs), around South Africa beginning on 2 June 2014. These could be found at:

At the VACs, applicants can submit their applications and biometric data for processing. Once the applications have been thoroughly checked, they will then be scanned and forwarded to the Head Office of DHA in Pretoria. The VFS operates strictly as a processing operation and does not offer potential immigrants any advice on immigration rule. Therefore, prospective immigrants will still have to seek advice from immigration consultants, and the consultants will be able to accompany applicants.

Zimbabwe nationals on Special Dispensation for Zimbabweans Project, Asylum and Refugee cases will still be directly handled by the DHA. The VFS does not have the authority to grant or refuse visas as that decision still lies with the DHA. The VFS charges an additional service fee of R1 350 per application. (This amount excludes the standard DHA application fee.)

New regulations state that one cannot change from a Visitor's Visa to another type of visa; these applications for change of conditions must be made at a mission abroad, i.e. an embassy or consulate, where the applicant is an ordinary resident or holds citizenship. However, exceptional circumstances include if an applicant is in need of life saving medical treatment or is an accompanying spouse or child of a business or work visa holder who wish to apply for a study or work visa.

Life partners looking to apply for temporary residency in South Africa based on a life partner visa will need to prove that they have been together for two years; those applying for permanent residency will need to prove that they have been together for five years. Spouses looking to apply for temporary residency in South Africa based on a spousal visa will not need to prove that they have been in a previous relationship for a certain number of years. If a partner or spouse was in a previous marriage, it is necessary to provide official documents that prove the dissolution of such marriage either

by divorce or the death of the other spouse. Life partners will need to attend separate but simultaneous interviews to determine the authenticity of the existence of their relationship.

The DHA has officially eradicated the Exceptional Skills and Quota permit categories. Current Exceptional Skills and Quota Permit holders will not be able to renew their permits going forward.

Those looking to renew their visa while in the country must do so 60 days before the current one expires.

Applications for a general work visa will have to include a certificate from the Department of Labour confirming the following:

- despite a thorough search, the prospective employer could not find a South African employee with the skills and experience equivalent to those of the applicant
- the applicant has proven skills and experience in line with the job offer
- the salary and benefits of the applicant are not inferior to those of citizens or permanent residents
- the contract signed by both the employer and applicant stipulates conditions that are in line with the labour laws of South Africa

The applicant will need a document to prove that their qualifications have been approved by Saqa. This document must be translated into one of the official languages of South Africa by a sworn translator. The work visa will be valid for a maximum of five years.

The Critical Skills Work Visa is based on a list of occupations that are considered critical (examples include Agricultural engineers, Land Surveyor and Forestry technicians) in South Africa. To apply for a visa in this category the applicant does not need a job offer, but within one year of being granted a visa, will need to prove that he or she is gainfully employed within their field. This visa replaced the Exceptional Skills and Quota Visas.

Visitor's Visa holders who wish to change the terms or status of their visa must submit an application no less than 60 days prior to the current visa's date of expiration. It is no longer possible to change from a Visitor's Visa to another visa category within South Africa.

It is a requirement for businesses to get a recommendation letter from the Department of Trade and Industry (DTI) for a Business Visa. The DTI will conduct a thorough forensic assessment of the feasibility of the business entity as well as the contribution to the national interest of South Africa. A minimum of R5 million must be invested into South Africa. Any accountant registered with the South African Institute of Professional Accountants or the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants can verify the availability of funds for a business visa. The business owner's workforce must be 60% South Africans or must be permanent residents employed in various positions. Business visas will be granted for no longer than three years at a time. No business visa will be issued to a foreigner who intends to establish or invest in a business that is listed as an undesirable business undertaking.

To obtain an Intra-Company Visa the employee in question must be employed with the foreign office/ business for a minimum of six months before being eligible for transfer to South Africa. This visa will now be available for four years but is non-renewable.

Holders of a Study Visa may not conduct part-time work exceeding 20 hours of labour a week. Both Study and Exchange visas will only be issued for the duration of the study period or exchange programme respectively. An Exchange Visa (for persons under 25 years) will not be granted to conduct work pertaining to an undesirable work as published by the Minister in the gazette, after consultation with the Minister of Trade and Industry.

There are no age limitations on the retirement visa. Applicants have to prove R37 000 monthly

CITY	ADDRESS
Pretoria	Cherry Lane Office Park, 1st Floor, 114 Fehrsen Street, Nieuw Muckleneuk, Brooklyn
Rustenburg	Von Wielligh 26, Bo Dorp
Kimberley	Unit 3, Building 2, Agri Office Park, N12
Durban	Suite 3, Silver Oaks, Ground Floor, 36 Silverton Road, Musgrave
Bloemfontein	Suite 4, The Park, 14 Reid Street, Westdene
George	Unit 5, Royal Eagle, 5 Progress Street
Johannesburg	1st Floor Rivonia Village, Cnr Rivonia Boulevard and Mutual Rd, Sandton
Cape Town	21st Floor, 2 Riebeeck Street, Absa Building
Polokwane	Shop 13, Thornhill Shopping Centre, Cnr Veldspaat & Munnik avenues, Bendor
Nelspruit	Office 5F, Nedbank building, 30 Brown Street
Port Elizabeth	Office 7C, 1st Floor Moffet on Main, Cnr 17th Ave and Main Road, Walmer

income per person per month from pensions, retirement annuities or property rentals. Alternatively, applicants can also prove they have a capital sum in the bank that's equivalent to R444 000 per annum (R1 776 000 for the full four years). For an additional R3 000 per month, a pensioner can put his or her life partner on to the retirement visa.

An Asylum Transit Visa issued at a port of entry will be valid for a period of five days to enable the holder to report at a nearest Refugee Reception Office.

Fines will no longer be charged for overstaying. Persons who overstay for a prescribed number of times will be declared as undesirable.

South Africa's new Passport and Travel Documents Act, 1994 (Act 4 of 1994) officially took effect from June 2015. Under the new legislation, South Africans and foreign nationals travelling with children under the age of 18 are required to produce unabridged birth certificates. It is part of the government's commitment to safeguard the best interests of children and prevent child trafficking.

Parents who needed to travel with their children and could not get unabridged birth certificates in time, would be able to leave the country if they had a letter indicating that they had applied for the documents.

The requirements were aimed at establishing the principle that all children must have the consent of their parents when travelling into or out of South Africa.

Control of travellers

People arriving in South Africa by air, sea or land have to pass through customs control, where they may be questioned and their baggage scanned or searched for dutiable, restricted or prohibited goods. Visitors found with undeclared, restricted or prohibited goods, could be fined or may face prosecution.

South Africa acceded to the Admission Temporaire/Temporary Admission (ATA) convention in 1975, which means foreign visitors companies and individuals can approach their local chambers of commerce for advice regarding the issuing of an ATA Carnet for the temporary import of certain goods in a simplified method. An example would be broadcasters or sponsors of international sporting events taking place in South Africa.

Control of sojourn

Foreigners who are in the country illegally and are, therefore, guilty of an offence may be classified into three categories, namely those who:

- entered the country clandestinely
- failed to renew the temporary residence permits issued to them at ports of entry
- breached the conditions of their temporary residence permits without permission, such as holiday visitors who took up employment or started their own businesses.

Depending on the circumstances, people who are in South Africa illegally are prosecuted, removed, or their sojourn is legalised. Officers at the various regional and district offices of the department are in charge of tracing, prosecuting and removing illegal foreigners from the country. Employers of illegal foreigners may also be prosecuted.

Permanent residence

Government allows immigration on a selective basis. The DHA is responsible for:

- processing applications for immigration permits for consideration
- admitting people suitable for immigration, such as skilled workers in occupations in which there is a shortage in South Africa.

The department particularly encourages applications by industrialists and other entrepreneurs who wish to relocate their existing concerns, or to establish new concerns in South Africa.

The department is not directly involved in an active immigration drive. In categories where shortages exist, the normal procedure is for employers to recruit abroad independently and, in most cases, initially apply for temporary work permits.

The department considers the applications for immigration permits of prospective immigrants who wish to settle in the relevant provinces. In terms of new regulations, regions will be responsible for issuing permits previously issued by the regional committees, in respect of permanent residence. They will also do so in respect of temporary residence. Enquiries in this regard may be made to the nearest office of the DHA in South Africa, to missions abroad, or to the DG of the DHA for the attention of the Directorate: Permitting, in Pretoria.

The department has prioritised temporary residence permits, as this category of foreigners is at risk of being in the country illegally, if their applications are not finalised in time.

The department will prioritise applications for permanent residence permits from holders of quota work permits and exceptional skills work permits, in line with the country's objective of attracting critical skills.

Temporary residence

In March 2014, the details of the new Zimbabwean Special Dispensation Permit (ZSP) were announced. The ZSP marked the beginning of a new phase, as the Dispensation for Zimbabwe Project (DZP) officially closed on 31 December 2014. Under the DZP, Zimbabwean nationals, who were in the country illegally, were granted an opportunity to legalise their stay. The special dispensation was introduced in 2009 to regulate the stay of Zimbabweans working illegally in South Africa because of the political and socio-economic situation in their country.

Approximately 295 000 Zimbabweans applied for the permit. Just over 245 000 permits were issued, with the balance being denied due to lack of passports or non-fulfilment of other requirements.

Since then, the DHA developed a proposal with regard to the new ZSP and it was accepted by Cabinet in August 2014. Zimbabwean nationals, who are in possession of the DZP permits, were eligible to apply for the ZSP. However, this is only if they wish to extend their stay in South Africa. Certain conditions to be fulfilled included a valid Zimbabwean passport; evidence of employment, business, or accredited study and a clear criminal record.

The ZSP will allow permit-holders to live, work, conduct business, and study in South Africa for the duration of the permit, which is valid until 31 December 2017.

VFS Global, a worldwide outsourcing and technology services specialist for diplomatic missions and governments, managed applications for ZSP permits. The DHA adjudicated applications. VFS opened four new offices in provinces where it was anticipated that there would be large numbers of applicants. These were Gauteng, Western Cape, Limpopo and Mpumalanga. The new offices were in addition to the 11 offices already opened, all of which dealt with ZSP applications.

ZSP permit-holders, who wished to stay in South Africa after the expiry of their ZSP, should return to Zimbabwe to apply for mainstream visas and permits under the Immigration Act.

Role players

Government Printing Works (GPW)

The GPW, a division of the DHA, is a South African security printing specialist that deals with the printing of passports, visas, birth certificates, smart ID-cards and examination materials, as well as government stationery and publications, such as tender bulletins and government gazettes.

It does this by continuously updating its security printing technology and today, boasts a new state-of-the-art facility that has been benchmarked internationally and is widely divergent from its

humble beginnings.

Based in Pretoria, the printing works provides a variety of related services to other government departments, the printing industry and other African countries, including manufacturing and supplying fingerprint ink to the South African Police Service, and printing postage stamps for the DRC and Lesotho.

Learning Academy

The Learning Academy deals with issues of learning and development, research, knowledge and information management within Home Affairs. The academy has three main sections, namely:

- Learning Programme Delivery
- Research and Information Management
- Quality and Stakeholder Management.

It forms part of the support for the department's core business of offering immigration and civic services for South Africa.

The academy has registered the National Certificate of Home Affairs Services with the Saqa. This qualification has three specialisations, namely: Refugee Affairs, Immigrations and Civic Services. The department is accredited by the Pseta as a site for learning, allowing the Learning Academy to enrol learners for the registered home affairs qualifications.

The academy also offers generic learning and development such as customer services, management development, programmes and training in uniform processes and procedures of the services offered by the department.

Managing research in the DHA entails coordinating research projects that external scholars and researchers want to conduct on the department.

The Research Management Unit also identifies research areas within the department that can assist in better delivery of the department's services.





The Department of Health's (DoH) strategic goals are to:

- prevent disease and reduce its burden, and promote health
- improve health facility planning by implementing norms and standards
- improve financial management by improving capacity, contract management, revenue collection and supply chain management reforms
- develop an efficient health management information system for improved decision making
- improve the quality of care by establishing the Office of Health Standards Compliance, which will monitor compliance of all health facilities with standards and improve clinical governance
- re-engineer primary healthcare by: increasing the number of ward-based outreach teams, contracting general practitioners, and district specialist teams; and expanding school health services
- make progress towards universal health coverage through the development of the National Health Insurance (NHI) scheme, and improve the readiness of health facilities for its implementation
- improve human resources for health by ensuring adequate training and accountability measures.

The DoH implemented a two-pronged approach to overhaul the health system namely by having the health system focus on PHC and by improving the functionality and management of the health system. To this end the department put measures in place to ensure that the health system is managed by appropriately trained and qualified managers.

The DoH has an overall responsibility for healthcare in the country, with a specific responsibility for public-sector healthcare. The department's priority is to improve the health status of the entire population and to realise its vision of a long and healthy life for all South Africans. To accomplish this, it has identified four strategic outputs:

- increasing life expectancy
- decreasing maternal and child mortality
- combating HIV and AIDS and decreasing the burden of tuberculosis (TB)
- strengthening health-system effectiveness.

These focal areas are consistent with the health-related millennium development goals (MDGs), which the United Nations (UN) expects nations of the world to attain by 2015.

Healthcare in South Africa is undergoing far-reaching reforms to revitalise and restructure

Health

the system and to ensure access to quality healthcare for all. In addition to its large public health sector, South Africa also has a smaller but fast-growing private sector.

As part of improving the healthcare system and ensuring that all South Africans have equitable access to essential health services, government is introducing NHI System. It is a financing system that will ensure that all South Africans, including legal long-term residents, are provided with essential healthcare, regardless of their employment status and ability to make a direct monetary contribution to the NHI Fund.

Life expectancy

Statistics South Africa's 2014 mid-year population estimates, released in July 2014, show some gains for South Africans over the last year. Increased life expectancy of the population demonstrates that the number of AIDS-related deaths and infant mortality rates have dropped over the past few years.

The statistics demonstrate that in addition to other interventions that are contributing to a higher life expectancy, South Africa is making headway with delivering antiretroviral medications to citizens living with HIV and AIDS.

About 51% of the South African population is female. According to Stats SA, at birth females have a life expectancy of 63,1 years. A male's life expectancy at birth is around 59,1 years and has since improved by nine points from 52 years in 2005. The average life expectancy is now 61 years.

Maternal and child health (MCH) Child health

Despite high numbers of women getting into government's Prevention of Mother-to-Child Transmission (PMTCT) Programme, many women still put their children at risk of HIV-infection by not visiting clearly early in their pregnancies.

In April 2014, the DoH launched a programme to register pregnant women who use a cellphone to send a 'please call me' which allows the DoH to capture their details. Through this system the department keeps track of their progress.

According to the Human Sciences Research Council's National HIV Prevalence, Incidence and Behaviour Survey released in April 2014, maternal and child morbidity declined due to the PMTCT.

Amnesty International's report struggle for Maternal Health: Barriers to Antenatal Care in South Africa, highlights the problems of rural women especially in accessing antenatal care. According to the report, South Africa was

unlikely to meet its UN Millennium Development Goal of reducing maternal mortality to 38 women per 100 000 births by 2015.

Women's health

The package of interventions for women's health includes:

- family planning and contraceptive services
- care following sexual assault
- treatment of sexually transmitted infections (STIs)
- focus on diseases specific to women such as cervical cancer.

Sexual and reproductive health interventions include contraceptive information services, safe termination of pregnancy and reproductive health education and services.

Sexual assault is an area needing strengthening, due to weak intersectoral collaboration between the provincial departments of health, non-governmental organisations (NGOs), the South African Police Service (SAPS) and the justice system.

HIV, AIDS and TB

South Africa has rolled out the world's largest treatment programme, with over 2,7 million people initiated on ARVs.

The 2016 International AIDS Conference will be held in Durban and South Africa will be hosting it for the second time in the same town since 2000.

If South Africa is to achieve the objectives articulated at AIDS 2014 in Melbourne, Australia, earlier this year, South Africa must ensure that the response to AIDS remains prominent in the post-2015 sustainable development framework.

The conference is being organised by the International AIDS Society, with its partners from the United Nations, the South African Government and international civil society organisations.

Research into the prevention of HIV is at the centre of government's strategy aimed at ending the pandemic that has held the world hostage for many years.

In October 2014, the HIV Research for Prevention 2014 (HIVR4P) conference brought over 1 000 delegates made up of researchers, academics and scholars to South Africa.

HIVR4P 2014 is the world's first and only scientific meeting dedicated exclusively to biomedical HIV prevention research.

The conference served as an opportunity for sharing and debating the latest advances and challenges in the field, and promoted critical discussions of the issues that drive intervention-specific and comprehensive biomedical

prevention research, discovery, development and implementation.

Research has shown that early treatment of infections in HIV positive people can reduce the risk of transmission of HIV, and that the use of ARVs in HIV negative people can reduce the risk of infection.

Legislation and policies

The DoH derives its mandate from the National Health Act, 2003 (Act 61 of 2003), which requires the department to provide a framework for a structured uniform health system within South Africa. The Act sets out the functions of the three levels of government as they relate to health services. The department contributes directly to achieving the government outcome, which calls for a long and healthy life for all South Africans.

The Act provides for the right to:

- emergency medical treatment
- have full knowledge of one's condition
- exercise one's informed consent
- participate in decisions regarding one's health
- be informed when one participates in research
- confidentiality and access to health records
- complain about poor service
- be treated with respect (health workers).

Other legislation that informs the health sector includes the:

- Medical Schemes Act, 1998 (Act 131 of 1998), which provides for the regulation of the medical schemes industry to ensure consonance with national health objectives.
- Medicines and Related Substances Act, 1965 (Act 101 of 1965), which provides for the registration of medicines and other medicinal products to ensure their safety, quality and efficacy. The Act also provides for transparency in the pricing of medicines.
- Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002), which provides a legal framework for mental health, in particular the admission and discharge of mental health patients in mental health institutions, with emphasis on human rights for mentally ill patients.
- Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act, 1996 (Act 92 of 1996), which provides a legal framework for the termination of pregnancies, based on choice, under certain circumstances.
- Sterilisation Act, 1998 (Act 44 of 1998), which provides a legal framework for sterilisations, also for people with mental health challenges.
- South African Medical Research Council (MRC) Act, 1991 (Act 58 of 1991), which provides for the establishment of the MRC and its role in relation to health research.
- Tobacco Products Control Act, 1993 (Act 83 of 1993), which provides for the control of tobacco products, and the prohibition of smoking in public places and advertisements of tobacco products, as well as sponsoring of events by the tobacco industry.
- National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS) Act, 2000 (Act 37 of 2000), which provides for a statutory body that provides laboratory services to the public health sector.
- Health Professions Act, 1974 (Act 56 of 1974), which provides for the regulation of health professions, in particular medical practitioners, dentists, psychologists and other related health professions, including community service by these professionals.
- Pharmacy Act, 1974 (Act 53 of 1974), which provides for the regulation of the pharmaceutical profession, including community service by pharmacists.
- Nursing Act, 2005 (Act 33 of 2005), which provides for the regulation of the nursing profession.
- Allied Health Professions Act, 1982 (Act 63 of 1982), which provides for the regulation of health practitioners such as chiropractors, homeopaths and others; and for the establishment of a council to regulate these professions.
- Dental Technicians Act, 1979 (Act 19 of 1979), which provides for the regulation of dental technicians and for the establishment of a council to regulate the profession.
- Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act 15 of 1973), which provides for the control of hazardous substances, in particular those emitting radiation.
- Foodstuffs, Cosmetics and Disinfectants Act, 1972 (Act 54 of 1972), which provides for the regulation of foodstuffs, cosmetics and disinfectants; in particular setting quality and safety standards for the sale, manufacture and importation thereof.
- Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1973 (Act 78 of 1973), which provides for medical examinations of people suspected of having contracted occupational diseases, especially in mines, and for compensation in respect of those diseases.
- Human Tissue Act, 1983 (Act 65 of 1983), which provides for the administration of matters pertaining to human tissue.
- National Health Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 12 of 2013), through which the Minister of Health established the Office of Health Standards Compliance, namely the inspectorate, a health ombudsperson and the accreditation of health workers.

Budget and funding

Government spending on health is expected to exceed R492 billion over the next three years, as part of a plan to strengthen the health system, in preparation for the implementation of the NHI scheme.

In 2014/15, over R19 billion had been earmarked for refurbishing clinics and hospitals.

National health spending will grow at a higher rate over the next few years in line with the NDP's vision of a cheaper health sector that works for everyone.

The DoH's white paper on the NHI and a financing paper by National Treasury have been completed and were tabled at Cabinet.

The roll-out of the NHI was financed by two conditional grants, the National Health Grant and the NHI Grant, the latter managed by provinces.

More than R221 million was made available in the 2014/15 budget for the NHI Grant to strengthen district health structures.

In addition to hospital and clinic building and refurbishment programmes, about R1,2 billion has been set aside for doctor's contracts.

More than R300 million went towards the establishment of the Office of Health Standards Compliance. The office serves as an independent public entity responsible for inspecting health facilities.

About R600 million had been budgeted for the introduction of the new Human Papilloma Virus (HPV) vaccine, which prevents cancer of the cervix. The roll out of the vaccine began in schools across the country in March 2014, for Grade 4 learners.

Improvements in South Africa's health system over the past five years were reflected in the rising life expectancy, the reduction in infant, child and maternal mortality as well as the increased access to HIV treatment.

During 2014/15, enrolment in the HIV treatment programme was expected to expand by 500 000 a year.

The increase in the number of new patients for ARVs will require an addition R1 billion to the health budget. By 2014, there were 2,5 million people are under treatment.

Since 2009, government has lowered the child mortality rate by reducing mother-to-child HIV transmission from 3,5% to 2,5%.

Improving health infrastructure

In September 2014, the official opening of the Dr Harry Surtie Hospital in the Northern Cape and the Natalspruit Hospital in Gauteng were an important milestone in the country's infrastructure plans.

The hospitals were among many important

milestones in government's national infrastructure programme.

The programme will see 43 hospitals and 213 clinics built over the next five years to meet the needs of the NHI system.

The South African Government adopted the National Infrastructure Plan in 2012, it intends to transform the economic landscape while simultaneously creating significant numbers of new jobs, and to strengthen the delivery of basic services.

Natalspruit hospital, which cost R1,7 billion to construct in a period of eight years, is furnished with 821 beds and spans an area of over 7 000 m². It offers services such as family medicine, 24-hour casualty, medico-legal, obstetrics and gynaecological, mortuary, radiography, and an eye nose and throat clinic.

It will take referrals from clinics, community health care centres and district hospitals, serving Thokoza, Vosloorus, Katlehong, Magugala Heights, Zonkizikwe, Phola Park, Palm Ridge, Eden Park, Germiston and Leondale.

Meanwhile, the Dr Harry Surtie Hospital serves the western half of the Northern Cape Province, as Upington alone has a population of at least 70 000 people. – *SAnews.gov.za*

In 2014, nine Gauteng hospitals and three pathology facilities received new x-ray machines that can scan trauma patients within 12 seconds an improvement to the existing machines, as its characteristics make it unique. The nine units cost R60 million.

The hospitals that received these machines were Natalspruit, George Mukhari, Steve Biko, Tembisa, Helen Joseph, Tambo Memorial, Sebokeng, Kalafong and Leratong.

In February 2014, construction started on a new day-clinic in Century City in Cape Town. The clinic comprises, among other things, four operating theatres, 24 day-beds, a radiology unit and pharmacy. The facility was operational by October 2014.

In June 2014, construction work started on the new Nelson Mandela Children's Hospital in Parktown, Johannesburg. The new facility will be a highly advanced specialised children's hospital staffed by 150 doctors and 451 paediatric nurses. In addition to giving patients access to excellent healthcare, the hospital will serve as a training and research facility, which will ensure a much wider reach into the region. Its close proximity to Wits University's Medical School and the Charlotte Maxeke Johannesburg Academic Hospital will allow for professional cross-feeding enhancing both training and operational efficiency. The hospital was expected to be completed in the first quarter of 2016.

Role players

South African National AIDS Council (Sanac) Trust

Sanac is a voluntary association of institutions established by Cabinet to build consensus across government, civil society and all other stakeholders to drive an enhanced country response to the scourges of HIV, TB and STIs.

The council is not a juristic person. Under the direction of Sanac, government created the South African National AIDS Council Trust as the legal entity that is charged with achieving its aims.

In 2014, Sanac launched a national campaign to address social perceptions that continue to fuel stigma and discrimination against people living with HIV.

Themed "I Can't Change My HIV Status But You Can Change Your Attitude," the campaign aims to engage South Africans in a sustained dialogue on stigma and discrimination against people living with HIV and AIDS.

The campaign was also aimed at encouraging greater openness and disclosure by people living with HIV and AIDS.

The campaign was built around a series of short films in which people living with HIV share their own personal experiences. These stories are not of despair and hopelessness but rather of courage and hope, and tell how key people in their lives helped them to overcome challenges.

Medicines Control Council (MCC)

The MCC is a statutory body that regulates the performance of clinical trials and registration of medicines and medical devices for use in specific diseases. The MCC is responsible to ensure that all clinical trials of both non-registered medicines and new indications of registered medicines comply with the necessary requirements for safety, quality and efficacy. The council is mandated to:

- advise the Minister of Health on any matter referred by the Minister or arising from the application of the Act
- keep the medicines register
- register new medicines
- amend entries in the register
- prohibit the sale of unregistered medicines
- transfer certificates of registration
- cancel the registration of medicines
- approve medicine labels and advertisements
- authorise the sale of unregistered medicine for certain purposes.

Compensation Commission for Occupational Diseases (CCOD)

The CCOD was established to compensate ex-miners and miners for the impairment of lungs

or respiratory organs and to reimburse them for loss of earnings incurred during TB treatment.

If the ex-miner is deceased, the CCOD compensates the beneficiaries of the ex-miner.

The CCOD administers the government's grant for pensioners.

Council for Medical Schemes

The Council for Medical Schemes provides regulatory supervision of private health financing through medical schemes. Its objectives include:

- protecting the interests of medical schemes and their members
- monitoring the solvency and financial soundness of medical schemes
- controlling and coordinating the functioning of medical schemes
- investigating complaints and settling disputes in the affairs of medical schemes
- collecting and disseminating information about private healthcare in South Africa
- making rules regarding its own functions and powers
- making recommendations to the Minister of Health on criteria for the measurement of the quality and outcomes of the health services provided by medical schemes.

Medical Research Council

The MRC is a science, engineering and technology institution, with the purpose of improving the health and quality of life of South Africans through research, development and technology transfer. Its powers and duties include:

- undertaking research of its own accord and on behalf of the State
- operating and maintaining research facilities assigned by the Minister of Health
- promoting cooperation between South Africa and other countries on research, development and technology transfer
- developing and using technological expertise
- promoting the training of researchers
- establishing and controlling research laboratories and other facilities
- cooperating with people and institutions doing research in other countries
- making grants available to universities, technikons, colleges, schools, museums and other institutions
- participating in joint research operations with other institutions
- cooperating with educational authorities, scientific or technical societies and industrial institutions representing employers and employees to promote the training of researchers
- undertaking investigations or research assigned by the Minister

- advising the Minister on research policy and priorities and the development, promotion, implementation and coordination of research.

Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPCSA)

The HPCSA is committed to promoting the health of the population, determining standards of professional education and training, and setting and maintaining excellent standards of ethical and professional practice.

To safeguard the public and indirectly the professions, registration in terms of the Act is a prerequisite for practising any of the health professions with which the Council is concerned.

The council guides and regulates the health professions in the country in aspects pertaining to registration, education and training, professional conduct and ethical behaviour, ensuring continuing professional development, and fostering compliance with healthcare standards.

All individuals who practise any of the health care professions incorporated in the scope of the HPCSA are obliged by the Health Professions, 1974 (Act 56 of 1974) to register with the council. Failure to do so constitutes a criminal offence.

Its mandate includes:

- coordinating the activities of the professional boards
- promoting and regulating interprofessional liaison
- determining strategic policy
- consulting and liaising with relevant authorities
- controlling and exercising authority over the training and practices pursued in connection with the diagnosis, treatment or prevention of physical or mental defects, illnesses or deficiencies in people
- promoting liaison in the field of training
- communicating to the Minister information that is of public importance.

Allied Health Professions Council of South Africa (AHPCSA)

The AHPCSA is a statutory health body established in terms of the Allied Health Professions Act, 1982 (Act 63 of 1982) to control all allied health professions, which includes ayurveda, Chinese medicine and acupuncture, chiropractic, homeopathy, naturopathy, osteopathy, phytotherapy, therapeutic aromatherapy, therapeutic massage therapy, therapeutic reflexology and unani-tibb:

The AHPCSA is mandated in terms of Allied Health Professions Act of 1982 to:

- promote and protect the health of the public
- manage, administer and set policies

relating to the professions registered with the AHPCSA

- investigate complaints relating to the professional conduct of practitioners, interns and students
- administer the registration of persons governed by the AHPCSA
- set standards for the education and training of intending practitioners.

The AHPCSA consists of three divisions namely the:

- council whose primary role is upholding the functions of the council as presented by legislation and by formulating policies applicable to all allied health professions
- professional boards, whose primary focus is providing the council with the profession specific standards and policy contributions
- administration, who is responsible for the administration of the council, the professional boards and the professions.

The AHPCSA is accountable to the Minister of Health and the Dof Health to:

- advise the Minister on matters as they relate to the allied health professions
- communicate to the Minister on matters of public importance known to the AHPCSA acquired in the course of its functions.

South African Dental Technicians Council (SADTC)

The SADTC controls all matters relating to the education and training of dental technicians or dental technologists and practices in the supply, making, altering or repairing of artificial dentures or other dental appliances.

Its mandate includes:

- promoting dentistry in South Africa
- controlling all matters relating to the education and training of dental technicians, dental technologists and practitioners who supply, make, alter or repair artificial dentures or other dental appliances
- promoting good relationships between dentists, clinical dental technologists, dental technicians and dental technologists
- advising the Minister of Health.

South African Pharmacy Council (SAPC)

The SAPC is the regulator established in terms of the Pharmacy Act of 1974 to regulate pharmacists, pharmacy support personnel and pharmacy premises in South Africa. Its mandate is to protect, promote and maintain the health, safety and well-being of patients and the public by ensuring quality pharmaceutical service for all South Africans.

The council is tasked with:

- assisting in promoting the health of South Africans
- advising the Minister of Health on matters relating to pharmacy
- promoting the provision of pharmaceutical care with universal norms and values
- upholding and safeguarding the rights of the general public to universally acceptable standards of pharmacy practice
- establishing, developing, maintaining and controlling universally acceptable standards
- maintaining and enhancing the dignity of the pharmacy profession.

South African Nursing Council (SANC)

The SANC is the body entrusted to set and maintain standards of nursing education and practice in South Africa. It is an autonomous, financially independent, statutory body, initially established by the Nursing Act, 1944 (Act 45 of 1944), and operating under the Nursing Act, 2005 (Act 33 of 2005).

The SANC controls and exercises authority, in respect of the education, training and manner of practices pursued by registered nurses, midwives, enrolled nurses and enrolled nursing auxiliaries.

The council's mandate includes:

- inspecting and approving nursing schools and nursing education programmes
- conducting examinations and issuing qualifications
- registering and enrolling nurses, midwives and nursing auxiliaries and keeping registers
- removing or restoring any name in a register
- issuing licences to nursing agencies
- requiring employers to submit annual returns of registered and enrolled nurses in their employ.

National Health Laboratory Service

The NHLS is the largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa with the responsibility of supporting the national and provincial health departments in the delivery of healthcare. The NHLS provides laboratory and related public health services to over 80% of the population through a national network of laboratories.

The NHLS trains pathologists, medical scientists, occupational-health practitioners, technologists and technicians in pathology disciplines, including anatomical pathology, haematology, microbiology, infectious diseases, immunology, human genetics, chemical pathology, epidemiology, occupational and environmental health, occupational medicine, tropical diseases, medical entomology, molecular biology and human nutrition.

Its specialised divisions comprise the:

- National Institute for Communicable Diseases, whose research expertise and sophisticated laboratories make it a testing centre and resource for Africa, particularly in relation to several of the rarer communicable diseases
- National Institute for Occupational Health, which investigates occupational diseases and has laboratories for occupational environment analyses
- National Cancer Registry, which provides epidemiological information for cancer surveillance
- South African Vaccine Producers, which is the only South African manufacturer of antivenom for the treatment of snake, scorpion and spider bites.

Non-governmental organisations

Many NGOs at various levels play a crucial role in healthcare, and cooperate with government's priority programmes.

They make an essential contribution, in relation to HIV, AIDS and TB, and also participate significantly in the fields of mental health, cancer, disability and the development of PHC systems.

Through the Partnership for the Delivery of PHC Programme, including the HIV and AIDS Programme, the department has strengthened its collaboration with NGOs. The programme has empowered communities and NGOs working in the health sector by focusing on three key areas:

- providing skills to NGOs in the rural nodes by using accredited service providers
- reducing unemployment by ensuring that NGO workers are provided with stipends
- ensuring accountability by requiring NGOs to include community members in their administration structures.

The involvement of NGOs extends from national level, through provincial structures, to small local organisations rooted in individual communities. All are important and bring different qualities to the healthcare network.

Resources

Medical practitioners

More than 216 191 medical practitioners are registered with the HPCSA. These include doctors working for the State, those in private practice and specialists. The majority of doctors practise in the private sector.

In selected communities, medical students supervised by medical practitioners provide health services at clinics.

In terms of the continuing professional development system, all doctors, irrespective

of earlier qualifications, must obtain a specified number of points to retain their registration.

The system requires that doctors attend workshops, conferences, refresher courses, seminars, departmental meetings and journal clubs. Non-compliance with the requirements of the system could result in a doctor being deregistered.

Applications by foreign health professionals are subject to assessment by the Examinations Committee of the Medical and Dental Professions Board. Those admitted have to write an examination, after which they can be registered in the particular category for which they applied and were assessed.

Oral health professionals

There are 5 856 dentists, 2 973 dental assistants, 1 101 oral hygienists and 610 dental therapists registered with the HPCSA. Dentists are subject to the continuing professional development system and the community service system. Oral health workers render services in the private and public sectors.

Pharmacists

All pharmacists are obliged to perform one year of remunerated pharmaceutical community service in a public health facility. Those who have not completed this year of service may not practise independently as pharmacists. There are 25 876 professionals registered with the SAPC.

Nurses

Nurses are required to complete a mandatory 12-month community service programme, whereafter they may be registered as nurses (general, psychiatric or community) and midwives. There are 260 698 registered nurses. This figure includes registered, enrolled and auxiliary nurses, but excludes students and pupils.

Health facilities

There are 4 200 public health facilities in South Africa. The number of people per clinic is 13 718, exceeding World Health Organisation guidelines of 10 000 per clinic.

Provincial hospitals

Provincial hospitals offer treatment to patients with or without medical-aid cover. Patients are classified as hospital patients, if they can't afford to pay for treatment. Their treatment is then partly or entirely financed by the particular provincial government or the health authorities of the administration concerned.

Provincial hospital patients pay for examinations and treatment on a sliding scale in

accordance with their income and number of dependants.

Patients with medical aid are charged a private rate that is generally lower than the rate charged by private hospitals.

Medical schemes

There are 88 medical schemes in South Africa, with 8 469 784 beneficiaries. These schemes have a total annual contribution flow of R84,9 billion.

Tariffs for admission to private and provincial hospitals differ. Cost differences also exist between various provincial hospitals, depending on the facilities offered.

Programmes and projects Anti-Substance National Plan of Action

Government and its partners are implementing the Anti-Substance National Plan of Action.

The plan focuses on enabling policy and legislation, reducing the supply and demand of drugs, as well as treatment and rehabilitation of addicts.

The SAPS plays a key role in the fight against drug, substance and alcohol abuse.

Re-engineering primary healthcare (PHC)

Operation Phakisa 2 was expected to transform all public sector clinics into ideal clinics, which will provide good quality care to all communities.

In November 2014, President Jacob Zuma launched Operation Phakisa 2: Scaling up Ideal Clinic Realisation and Maintenance Programme. It is designed to fast-track the implementation of government priority programmes.

Through Operation Phakisa 2, the public health sector seeks to improve the quality of care provided in 3 500 PHC facilities, which consists of government clinics and Community Health Centres (CHCs).

This work entails transforming the existing clinics and CHCs into ideal clinics, which all South Africans would use, out of choice, due to the enhanced quality of services they will provide.

In November 2014, the Minister of Health, Dr Aaron Motsoaledi, received 17 scooters, helmets and pillion boxes donated by Medscheme, on behalf of the West African countries affected by the Ebola outbreak. The donation of the scooters was in response to the Minister's call for the private sector to support the Ebola Response Fund. The scooters will aid in mobility in the rural areas. The contribution is aimed at improving access and transportation of medical supplies to communities affected by Ebola, enabling medical samples and supplies to easily reach the rural communities. African countries are concerned about the impact of Ebola in West Africa, and the South African Government spearheaded South Africa's efforts in providing relief to the worst affected communities.

From October 2014, a team of 164 senior managers from the national, provincial and local spheres of government, together with their counterparts from the private sector, organised labour, academia, civil society and public entities, participated in the Operation Phakisa laboratory to devise ways and means of making the Ideal Clinic concept a reality.

Operation Phakisa: Ideal Clinic Initiative was organised into eight work streams, focusing on the different building blocks of an Ideal Clinic capable of delivering good quality health services. The work streams include service delivery, waiting times, human resources, infrastructure, financial management, supply chain management, scaling up and sustainability and institutional arrangements.

The NDP that government is implementing through programmes such as Operation Phakisa provides the vision of an ideal health care system.

The NDP talks about a health system that works for everyone, produces positive health outcomes and is not out of reach. This goal will only be achieved through a well-functioning health system, anchored on PHC principles.

This philosophy therefore continues to influence and guide the country as it prepares for the realisation of universal health coverage for all the people of South Africa, through the implementation of the NHI.

Health Sector 10-Point Plan

In pursuit of its vision of a long and healthy life for all South Africans, the DoH remains focused on the implementation of the 10-Point Plan for the health sector for 2009 to 2014.

The plan consists of a number of priorities such as: the provision of strategic leadership and the creation of a social compact for better health outcomes; the implementation of the NHI plan; improving the quality of health services; overhauling the healthcare system and improving the management of the health system.

The plan also includes other priorities that include better human resources management, planning and development; the revitalisation of infrastructure; the accelerated implementation of programmes for HIV and AIDS and STIs; increased focus on TB and other communicable diseases; mass mobilisation for better health; a review of the drug policy; and strengthening research and development.

National Strategic Plan on HIV, AIDS, STIs and TB 2012–2016

The integration of HIV, AIDS and TB into the NSP on HIV, AIDS, STIs and TB 2012–2016

outlines a 20-year vision in the fight against the double scourges of HIV and AIDS and TB.

The NSP has four strategic objectives, namely:

- addressing the social structural drivers of HIV, STIs and TB care, prevention and support
- preventing new HIV, STI and TB infections
- sustaining health and wellness
- ensuring the protection of human rights
- improving access to justice.

The NSP 2012–2016 further encourages South Africans to be tested for these diseases at least once a year; and every pregnant woman to undergo routine HIV testing.

The department also targeted 600 000 men for male circumcision as part of the strategy.

National Health Insurance

NHI is a health financing system that is designed to pool funds to provide access to quality, affordable personal health services for all South Africans based on their health needs, irrespective of their socio-economic status. NHI is intended to ensure that the use of health services does not result in financial hardships for individuals and their families.

NHI seeks to realise universal health coverage for all South Africans. This means that every South African will have a right to access comprehensive healthcare services free of charge by using an NHI Card at the point of use at the accredited health facilities such as clinics, hospitals and private health practitioners. These services will be delivered closest to where people reside or work through certified and accredited public and private providers to improve access and coverage.

NHI will therefore ensure that all South Africans, poor or rich, young or old, have access to and use affordable, quality healthcare services, regardless of their socio-economic status. NHI is being implemented in phases over a 14-year period that started in 2012.

Integrated School Health Programme (ISHP)

The departments of basic education and health are jointly implementing the ISHP that will extend over time, the coverage of school health services to all learners in primary and secondary schools. The programme offers a comprehensive and integrated package of services, including sexual and reproductive health services for older learners.

The Health Services Package for the ISHP includes a large component of health education for each of the four school phases (such as how to lead a healthy lifestyle and drug and substance abuse awareness), health screening

(such as screening for vision, hearing, oral health and TB) and onsite services such as deworming and immunisation).

During 2013/14, the programme reached 700 000 learners in grades 1, 4, 8 and 10 in quintile 1 and 2 schools. Learners in Grade 4 in quintile 1 schools received health education. All learners repeating grades in quintile 1 and 2 schools also received health screening.

The ISHP policy forms the framework for the ISHP, which is linked with both the NHI and the Revitalisation of PHC.

HIV Counselling and Testing (HCT) Campaign

In November 2014, the Prevent, Avoid, Stop, Overcome and Protect (PASOP) Campaign was launched in an effort to call on all communities to join hands with government in the fight against HIV and AIDS and TB.

It is expected that the 50% decrease target will be reached through the use of multifaceted prevention approaches.

These included testing and screening people for HIV and TB, medical male circumcision, initiating people living with HIV who are eligible for ARV treatment and reducing the stigma and discrimination related to HIV and TB.

The PASOP strategy prioritises key populations and vulnerable groups such as sex workers, the Lesbian Gay Bisexual Transgender and Intersex (LGBTI) community, women and youth.

The highest rates of new HIV infections are still found among young single women who have older boyfriends and/or multiple sex partners.

The department is set to intensify the PASOP campaign by reaching men who are partners to young women, especially the “3Ms” or Mobile Men with Money and men that have sex with men, but do not identify as gay or bisexual.

In March 2015, on World TB Day, the DoH launched a programme to test 150 000 inmates in 242 correctional services facilities for TB and also screen the families of those who have tested positive.

Further to this, the department conducted TB screening on about 500 000 miners in six mining districts. The screening included the family members of those who tested positive for TB and children who attend schools or crèches in the mining towns.

The incidence of TB in the mines in South Africa is the highest of any working community anywhere in the world.

Managing communicable and non-communicable diseases (NCDs)

The main NCDs in the country include diabetes,

cancer, chronic respiratory diseases, mental disorders and cardiovascular diseases.

Africa remains the only WHO region where communicable diseases still account for more deaths than NCDs, according to a 2010 global status report.

The main risk factors associated with NCDs are tobacco use, alcohol abuse, an unhealthy diet and physical inactivity.

Hepatitis B is widespread in sub-Saharan Africa and South Africa. Past studies have found that about 8% of children under the age of one and almost 16% of children under the age of six are infected with Hepatitis B.

Between 10% and 18% of South African adults are Hepatitis B virus carriers. Infection has been more common in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal.

Since 1995, all children have been vaccinated against hepatitis B. Blood safety in South Africa has effectively reduced hepatitis B and hepatitis C transmission.

Improving human resources planning, development and management

The NSP for Nurse Education, Training and Practice is aimed at reconstructing and revitalising the nursing profession as part of the department's efforts to improve health outcomes.

The objectives of the strategy are to:

- promote and maintain a high standard and quality of nursing and midwifery education and training
- enhance and maintain professionalism and a professional ethos among members of the nursing and midwifery professions
- promote and maintain an enabling, well-resourced and positive practice environment for nursing, midwifery and patients/clients throughout
- enable strong leadership at all levels of nursing and midwifery practice
- guide the production of sufficient numbers and the appropriate categories of nurses required to deliver healthcare services within the policy framework for the healthcare system.

Albertina Sisulu Executive Leadership Programme in Health (ASELPH)

The ASELPH aims to:

- strengthen health policy transformation and service excellence in South Africa
- strengthen human-resource capacity in the health system, which is needed to deliver high-quality, cost-efficient services through strengthened, executive-level training of health leaders and managers.

- organise and host university forums, policy seminars and round tables to address key policy debates, as identified by the DoH and focus on issues that will present the greatest challenges to implementation.
- use new teaching and learning strategies

The programme is responsive to emerging initiatives in the South African health sector through a combination of strategies that include:

- targeted training of executive, district and hospital managers who are responsible for services related to the NHI.
- strengthened management capability of current and emerging district, health-related leaders who are responsible for the implementation of the NHI and the re-engineering of the PHC system.
- advancement of sustainable, relevant, educational and training capacity for health executives responsible for the management of large public health programmes such as HIV, STIs and TB.

The programme is a partnership between the University of Pretoria, University of Fort Hare and Harvard University, represented by Harvard School of Public Health and South Africa Partners in collaboration with the South African national and provincial departments of health. The ASELPH is seen as a local flagship programme capable of setting the standard for executive-level health leadership and management training in South Africa.





Government is committed to providing sustainable human settlements to improve the quality of household life for the poor. Such provisions entail access to quality accommodation, basic services, secure tenure and affordable mortgage finance.

Formal housing has grown by 50% since 1994, translating to an additional 5,6 million formal homes since the country's first democratic elections.

Government and human settlements stakeholders have committed to deliver 1,5 million housing opportunities by 2019. The commitment by banks, developers, mining companies and big employers officially declared South Africa the biggest construction site in Africa and the developing world.

Housing experts at the National Settlement Indaba estimated the partnership to be worth over R250 billion over five years in affordable bonded housing investments by banks, rental accommodation developments by private sector and agencies, government subsidies, housing investments by big employers and mining companies, bulk services development for townships and human settlements, upgrading of current informal settlements infrastructure and community infrastructure such as schools, churches, business sites and other amenities.

The commitment is detailed in the Social Contract for the Development of Sustainable Human Settlements signed at the end of the National Human Settlements Indaba and Exhibition held at the Sandton Convention Centre from 16 to 17 October 2014. Government, South African Local Government Association, mining companies, government parastatals, property developers and owners, engineers, banks, mines, non-governmental organisations and big employers attended the Indaba.

The Indaba, held under the theme: "Building Partnerships for the Delivery of 1,5 million Housing Opportunities," sought to mobilise and recommit different stakeholders in the private sector to support government in its quest to provide shelter for all South Africans.

Legislation and policies

The following legislation, policies and strategies govern the Department of Human Settlements (DHS). The department derives its responsibilities from Section 3 of the Housing Act, 1997 (Act 107 of 1997). According to the Act, the department must, after consultation with provinces and municipalities, establish and facilitate a sustainable national housing development process by:

- determining national policy, including national norms and standards, in respect of housing and human settlements development

Human Settlements

- setting broad national housing delivery goals
- monitoring performance of provinces and municipalities against housing budgetary and delivery goals
- building the capacity of provinces and municipalities
- promoting consultation with all stakeholders in the housing delivery chain, including civil society and the private sector.
- The Sectional Titles Schemes Management Act, 2011 (Act 8 of 2011), which provides for the establishment of bodies corporate to manage and regulate common property in sectional title schemes and the establishment of an advisory council to advise the Minister.
- The Community Schemes Ombud Service Act, 2011 (Act 9 of 2011), which could fundamentally change the lives of people living in high-rise flats, inner-city buildings, townhouse complexes and other gated communities. The Act establishes an ombud service to resolve disputes emanating from within community schemes. The Act is aimed at addressing any problems and disputes among participants involving the control and administration of finances, facilities and behaviour.
- The Estate Agency Affairs Act, 1976 (Act 112 of 1976), the Finance-Linked Individual Subsidy Programme (FLISP) and the Mortgage Default Insurance are expected to address challenges associated with the upgrading of slums, access to basic services, accreditation of key municipalities and land acquisition for human settlements. The programme of improving property markets remains a major challenge.
- The Housing Act, 1997 (Act 107 of 1997), provides for, among other things, facilitating a sustainable housing-development process. For this purpose, it lays down general principles applicable to housing development in all spheres of government; defines the functions of national, provincial and local government in respect of housing development; and provides for the financing of national housing programmes.
- The Rental Housing Act, 1999 (Act 50 of 1999), defines the responsibility of government in respect of the rental housing market. It creates mechanisms to advance the provision of rental housing property and promotes access to adequate housing by working to ensure the proper functioning of the rental housing market. It furthermore provides for the establishment of rental housing tribunals. The Act gives tribunals the power to make rulings, which are deemed to be rulings of a magistrates' court in terms of the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1993 (Act 120 of 1993), and which are enforced

in terms of the Act. The Act provides for the facilitation of sound relations between tenants and landlords and for this purpose, lays down general requirements relating to leases. Among other things, the Act prescribes that: leases may be oral or in writing; tenants can demand a written lease; the landlord must give the tenant a written receipt for all payments received by the landlord from the tenant; the landlord may require that the tenant pay a deposit before moving in; the balance of the deposit and interest must be refunded to the tenant by the landlord not later than 21 days after the expiry of the lease.

- The Rental Housing Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 43 of 2007), among other things, provides for rulings by rental housing tribunals, to expand the provisions pertaining to leases and to extend the period allowed for the filling of vacancies in rental housing tribunals.
- The Social Housing Act, 2008 (Act 16 of 2008), aims to establish and promote a sustainable social housing environment. It defines the functions of the national, provincial and local spheres of government in respect of social housing. It provides for the establishment of the Social Housing Regulatory Authority (SHRA) to regulate all social housing institutions obtaining or having obtained public funds, and it allows for the undertaking of approved projects by other delivery agents with the benefit of public money. The DHS has taken steps to assist governance and regulatory processes through the promulgation of the Social Housing Act of 2008 and the establishment of the SHRA. The Act provides for the recognition and accreditation of social housing institutions. Provincial governments are given responsibilities to approve, allocate and administer capital grants, as well as administer the Social Housing Programme. Local governments are required to ensure access to land, municipal infrastructure and services for approved projects in designated restructuring zones. Local governments are also responsible for initiating the identification of these restructuring zones. The Act's major purpose is the establishment of the SHRA.

Human Settlements Vision 2030

Human Settlements Vision 2030: On the Road to 2050 aims to provide houses and services

The Minister of Human Settlements hosted a National Human Settlements Youth Summit in December 2014 to discuss the active participation of youth in housing delivery and the strategy to position young people on the forefront of the implementation of the Social Contract for the Development of Human Settlements.

in rural and urban areas. It focuses on the total eradication of backlogs of more than 2,1 million housing units, which translates to about 12,5 million people.

Under Vision 2030's framework, most South Africans will have affordable access to services and a quality environment; instead of living in isolation on the periphery of cities.

The DHS is a key player in the property market. A study found that of the six million registered residential properties in the Deeds Registry, 1,44 million were government-subsidised houses. This represents just less than a quarter of registered residential properties and could increase to 35% if the backlog in issuing title deeds is overcome.

The value of a title deed provides the following:

- protection of rights to a property
- asset security
- facilitation of entry of ordinary South Africans as players in both the property as well as the financial markets.

What is least understood yet nevertheless a major contribution to asset formation by beneficiaries is that each time government facilitates the acquisition of a house, it comes with its own land.

Housing the poor was an ingredient of the department's three-part response to the State's Vision 2030 Strategy.

"Gap housing" is a term that describes the shortfall, or "gap" in the market between residential units supplied by the State and houses delivered by the private sector.

The gap housing market comprises people who typically earn between R3 500 and R15 000 per month, which is too little to enable them to participate in the private property market, yet too much to qualify for State assistance. Gap housing is another element of the State's Vision 2030 Strategy.

Gap housing is a policy that addresses the housing aspirations of people such as nurses, fire fighters, educators and members of the armed forces, who earned between R3 500 and R15 000 per month and, therefore, did not qualify for Reconstruction and Development Programme houses and did not earn enough to obtain home loans.

Nationally, the houses were financially assisted by the National Housing Finance Corporation (NHFC) through FLISP, which gives all qualifying beneficiaries the certainty of being granted loans, bonds or mortgages by banks and other financial institutions.

Those in the middle- to high-income groups could apply for housing bonds.

The challenges include removing racial connotations from living spaces, which more

than anything else, reflects the real evil of apartheid social engineering. Undoing this policy will require time and major resources.

As part of its strategy in this regard, the department is obliging banks to give loans to black people who want to buy properties in previously exclusively white areas.

The DHS has also been buying up high-rise buildings in inner cities, and refurbishing and transforming them from office space to rented family units. This form of social housing has become popular with young couples, students and single mothers.

Areas close to townships, known as "no-man's land" that were used as buffer zones to separate black townships from white areas are being eradicated. The land is being used for housing with occupants being moved closer to cities.

New non-racial towns and cities are being developed to fulfil the principle of a united people in non-racial residential areas. Lephalale, which is known as Joe Slovo City, in Limpopo, is an example of this policy.

Integrated Urban Development Framework

The Integrated Urban Development Framework is an ongoing consultative process aimed at encouraging members of the public and experts in the human settlements field to suggest how inclusive urban settlements should be designed, such as:

- inhabitants of sustainable human settlements, located both in urban and rural areas, must live in a safe and a secure environment
- sustainable human settlements are supportive of their communities, thus contributing towards greater social cohesion, social crime prevention, moral regeneration, support for national heritage, recognition and support of indigenous knowledge systems, and the ongoing extension of land rights.

The framework changed the apartheid legacy of urban division, which now sees many South Africans living in places that are far from their places of work, and having to bear the cost of spending most of their income on transport.

The framework tackled the call by the National Development Plan (NDP) for spatial planning of urban areas to address the main challenge of enabling job creation linked to sustainable livelihoods and to establish well-performing human settlements. This is at the heart of what municipalities do and how they function.

Planning and project implementation takes place at municipal level. Grants, such as the Urban Settlements Development Grant, is

used to ensure that the approach to national socio-economic development is integrated.

Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery

The Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery is a structuring device for steering interdependent activities into a new bargaining context so that all of the activities in the wider sector co-produce desirable outcomes such as:

- more sustainable human settlements for social equality
- economically efficient and effective settlements
- environmentally sensitive built environments with reduced carbon footprints.

The areas of focus broadly take account of the department's mandate. These focus areas are:

- social cohesion
- planning and development
- financing human settlements
- neighbourhood design: building communities (through spatial and physical articulation).

Inclusionary Housing Policy

The New Economic Growth Path has identified energy, transport, roads, water, communication and housing as key areas in its strategy to fast-track sustainable growth, employment and equity creation.

This has been given a boost by the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Committee (PICC) and is a breakthrough in the effort to reverse the system of apartheid infrastructure and its spatial planning. The introduction of the PICC means the beginning of the end for government operating in silos.

Sanitation, which provides the most basic protection to the private dignity of citizens, is an internationalised programme through the United Nations (UN) millennium development goals (MDGs) as agreed to by all UN member states. In the PICC, this programme has been made a national priority. This is also one of the key recommendations of the Ministerial Sanitation Task Team's preliminary findings.

Private-sector developers, in collaboration with financial institutions, have undertaken several inclusionary housing initiatives.

These include housing projects in Bertrams and Cosmo City, Johannesburg; Olievenhoutbosch, Pretoria; Hlanganani, Springs; and Blythedale, outside Durban.

Multiple housing projects that are designed as mixed-income housing developments ensure cross-subsidisation and achieve inclusionary housing objectives.

Budget

The department's 2014/15 budget was increased by R2,2 billion to R30,5 billion. The allocation was expected to grow over the next three years to R33,5 billion. The Urban Settlements Development Grant to municipalities received about R10,3 billion. The Human Settlements Development Grant received R17,1 billion. The Rural Household Infrastructure Grant received R47,6 million while the Municipal Human Settlements Capacity Grant was allocated R300 million.

To accelerate the delivery of housing opportunities, the department transfers funds to the Social Housing Regulatory Authority (SHRA) for the capital-restructuring grant it administers. As a result, transfers to departmental agencies and accounts are the fastest growing item in the department's budget. The Capital Restructuring Grant will contribute to the delivery of approximately 17 977 medium density rental housing units for households earning between R1 500 and R7 500 per month to contribute towards the spatial, social and economic restructuring of South African cities and towns.

To facilitate the assignment of the administration of the housing and human settlements programmes from provinces to six metropolitan municipalities in 2014, Cabinet approved an additional allocation of R900 million to create the Municipal Human Settlements Capacity Grant. In addition, Cabinet approved the introduction of a programme to accelerate the eradication of bucket toilets by expediting the delivery of suitable sanitation systems for households. As a result, the department's payments for capital assets budget are set to increase by R1,9 billion in 2014/15 and 2015/16. The budget also includes additional Cabinet approved allocations of R180 million in the Housing Development Finance subprogramme in 2014/15 to provide for rapidly urbanising mining towns, and R185 million in 2014/15 and

In June 2014, the North West provincial government set aside over R460 million for housing projects in the platinum mining area of Marikana, as South Africa looks to push through a raft of measures aimed at ensuring long-term stability in the country's mining industry.

The provincial government, in partnership with mining company Lonmin and the Rustenburg Local Municipality, will build 2 000 housing units over a period of three years. The project is called the Marikana Ext 2 Integrated Development. Government spent R47 million buying land for housing projects from private owners.

The Sunway Village Integrated Development Project in Madibeng was completed by the end of 2014. This project targeted the nearby informal settlements of Popo Molefe, Ten Room, Rietfontein and Cosmos.

R140 million in 2015/16 for disaster relief in provinces.

Subsidies and funding

Housing subsidies

A housing subsidy is a grant by government to qualifying beneficiaries to be used for housing purposes.

The subsidy is either paid to a seller of a house or, in new developments, it is used to finance the construction of a house that complies with the ministerial minimum norms and standards.

The house is then transferred to the qualifying beneficiary.

One of the DHS areas of responsibility in the delivery of human settlements relates to the bottom-most end of the market, where it provides housing subsidies to the poor.

This is where the bulk of the housing backlog exists, affecting mainly those who earn below R3 500 a month.

Individual subsidies

An individual subsidy provides qualifying beneficiaries with access to housing subsidies to acquire ownership of improved residential properties (a stand or house) or to finance the acquisition of a serviced site linked to a house-building contract that is not part of an approved housing-subsidy project.

The latter option is only available to beneficiaries with access to housing credit. The subsidy amount of R84 000, comprises R6 000 for the raw land cost, R22 162 for internal municipal engineering services and R55 706 for the cost of constructing the top structure.

Consolidation subsidies

This subsidy mechanism gives former beneficiaries of serviced stands, financed by the previous housing dispensation (including the Independent Development Trust's site and service schemes), the opportunity to acquire houses.

Institutional subsidies

Institutional subsidies are available to qualifying housing institutions.

The subsidy is paid to approved institutions to provide subsidised housing on deed of sale, rental or rent-to-buy options.

This is done on condition that the beneficiaries may not be compelled to pay the full purchase price and take transfer within the first four years of receiving the subsidy. Institutions must also invest capital from their own resources in the project.

Subsidies for people with disabilities

People with disabilities who qualify for a housing subsidy receive additional amounts to improve their houses with special additions such as paving and ramps to their doors, grab-rails in bathrooms, and visible door bells for the deaf.

Discount Benefit Scheme

The Discount Benefit Scheme promotes home ownership among tenants of state-financed rental stock, including formal housing and serviced sites.

The scheme is only available to beneficiaries who took occupation of such rented houses before 15 March 1991.

Rural subsidies

These housing subsidies are available to beneficiaries who enjoy only functional tenure rights to the land they occupy. This land belongs to the State and is governed by traditional authorities.

These subsidies are only available on a project basis and beneficiaries are supported by implementing agents. Beneficiaries also have the right to decide how to use their subsidies, either for service provision, for the building of houses, or for a combination of these.

Farm resident subsidies

The housing-subsidy programme for farm residents addresses the wide variety of housing needs of people working and residing on farms by providing a flexible package of housing models to suit the local context.

In most instances, the programme is applied where farm residents are required to reside close to their employment obligations and where the farm land is distant from the nearest town, rendering the settlement of the farm residents in town impracticable.

Farm residents play an important role in all aspects of their housing solutions regarding the selection of options, the design and implementation phase, as well as the ongoing management of the housing stock.

Finance-Linked Individual Subsidy Programme

FLISP assists households earning up to R15 000. The subsidy attaches to the beneficiary and not to the property. This is used to decrease the mortgage bond and applies only to people who have never been assisted by the State. It is disbursed as a once-off subsidy.

Human Settlements Capacity Grant

This is a new grant, the roll-out of which started

in the 2014/15 financial year, for the next three financial years.

The grant comes from the national Human Settlement Development Grant to develop capacity for municipalities and metros that have received Level 3 accreditation. Level 3 accreditation is approved by Provincial MECs of Human Settlements after municipalities and metros meet the criteria set out in the Human Settlement Code and other policies.

The grant set aside in 2014 for the six metros was R300 million. To achieve Level 3 accreditation, a municipality is required to have the following in place:

- financial systems that are compliant with national specifications
- a standard subsidy financial administration package
- reporting systems
- management information systems
- standard accounting procedures.

The total grant set aside for each of the six metros was allocated as follows:

- Nelson Mandela Metro: R37 707 000
- Ekurhuleni Metro: R52 374 000
- City of Joburg: R59 573 000
- City of Tshwane: R47 506 000
- EThekweni: R52 469 000
- City of Cape Town: R50 370 000.

In August 2014, the DHS held a workshop under its Incremental Informal Settlement Upgrading programme. The workshop was held to equip senior managers with relevant concepts, information and analysis for adopting upgrading as an effective policy while improving the management of rapidly urbanising cities.

National Housing Finance Corporation

The NHFC is a schedule 3A development finance institution that was established in 1996. Its primary mandate is to catalyse private sector funding to broaden and deepen access to affordable housing finance for middle and low-income households. To this end, it provides wholesale funding to housing development projects and partners with banks and other non-bank retail finance intermediaries to mobilise and increase lending to the target market.

The entity's strategic goals are to:

- provide effective housing finance solutions
- mobilise lending by financial institutions to the lower end of the housing market
- conduct business and lending processes on a sustainable basis.

The organisation has been incorporated as a company with share capital in terms of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973, as amended).

The NHFC supports the Breaking New Ground

Strategy of the DHS by facilitating and funding the development of sustainable human settlements and the eradication of informal settlements.

The NHFC fulfils a facilitating role by:

- implementing risk-enhancement mechanisms to encourage active participation in the low- to middle-income housing market
- promoting an enabling environment in the low- to middle-income housing market through advocacy and involvement in development
- improving access to housing finance for people in the low- and middle-income housing market to improve their living standards.

The NHFC has interacted with all provinces to identify pilot projects regarding the FLISP, to reprioritise funding allocations and to conclude implementation protocols.

Development finance institutions

To ensure the alignment of appropriate financial instruments to achieve the human settlements mandate, the consolidation of the development finance institutions namely the RHLF, National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency (Nurcha) and the NHFC was in the process of being finalised in 2012.

Rural Housing Loan Fund (RHLF)

Structured loans are the primary product that the RHLF offers. They are provided to intermediaries to establish, support or develop a housing loan operation addressing the need of individual households.

The minimum loan size is R1 million, unless expressly decided otherwise by the Credit Committee.

Structured loans are made to match the intermediary's underlying product profile, and are disbursed according to the following three criteria:

- draw-downs should be structured so that the RHLF's exposure is limited (a higher risk profile should be accompanied by a slower draw-down pattern to allow the RHLF to monitor the performance of the intermediary)
- draw-downs should be matched with the intermediary's disbursement of qualifying loans and should not allow the intermediary to build up extensive surplus funding
- the size of the facility and the draw-down schedule should be in line with the historical growth pattern of the intermediary and its

In November 2014, the Deputy Minister of Human Settlements handed over 76 houses built by 100 volunteers for the indigent at Lindelani informal settlements, outside Galeshewe in Kimberley to commemorate the 1976 student uprising. The 2014 Human Settlements Youth Build project was launched by the Deputy President in June 2014.

capacity to manage growth, to avoid potential destabilising effects.

- the repayment period should match that of the end user.

A Pilot Loan is a venture-capital investment instrument designed by the RHLF to support retail lenders to explore new markets (such as informal earners or low-income households in un-served rural areas) and/or new products (such as alternative loan products with appropriate collection methodologies).

It is expected that out of a successful pilot loan, a structured loan will follow.

To enable an institution to test new ideas, the RHLF would provide loans (up to a maximum of R5 million).

The RHLF receives its funding from the DHS and Kreditanstalt für Weiderrbaufbau (KfW) Bankengruppe. KfW helps the German Federal Government to implement its goals in international cooperation with developing and emerging countries and gear our operations to their needs and those of their populations.

KfW Bankengruppe boosts the competitive strength of the German economy by offering tailor-made advisory and financing offers to companies seeking to tap new markets.

KfW Bankengruppe is a reliable partner that shows a long-term commitment to German companies and foreign partners.

Role players

People's Housing Process (PHP)

The PHP is a government housing-delivery mechanism that supports households who wish to enhance their subsidies by building their own homes or organising between themselves, the building of their homes.

The process allows beneficiaries to establish a housing-support organisation that will provide them with organisational, technical and administrative assistance.

The assistance includes training and guiding the beneficiaries in building their own homes. The subsidy is available to beneficiaries enjoying functional tenure rights to the land they occupy.

The land is normally in rural areas and belongs to the State and is allocated by the State and the authorities.

Unlike the project-linked subsidy, where a contractor builds houses for a number of people, the PHP allows people or beneficiaries to build or organise the building of their homes.

The PHP is a useful tool for community involvement.

Savings resulting from beneficiaries participating in the building of their own homes and the material used may result in homes

that are bigger and of better quality than contractor-built houses.

Housing institutions

The department's support institutions play an important role in enhancing the norms and standards of housing, and making housing more accessible to all South Africans.

The institutions also facilitate the specific housing and housing-related needs of the market, in addition to the role that provincial governments and municipalities play. These institutions are accountable to the Executive Authority of the DHS.

The institutions are the National Home-Builders Registration Council (NHBCRC), NHFC, Nurcha, the Social Housing Foundation, RHLF, the Housing Development Agency (HDA), Servcon Housing Solutions, SHRA and Thubelisha Homes.

Stakeholder management

Increased operations through new partnerships would address the challenges of rapid urbanisation. The DHS has been at the forefront of addressing this challenge in South Africa.

The Chief Directorate: Stakeholder Management's primary objective is to mobilise sector stakeholders to partner with government to fast-track housing delivery.

The unit facilitates stakeholder engagement through various dialogue forums, which has led to collaboration in the implementation of the Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery and Rural Housing Contract, Stakeholder Engagement, Youth Build, Women's Build and the Govan Mbeki Housing Awards.

Women in housing

As a result of initiatives such as the Women's Build and the Women in Housing Indaba, women's participation in the construction industry is projected to increase significantly to reach the 50% target for female-owned projects in housing construction by 2014, including disabled women and youth.

National Women Build is a Letsema housing construction project, which was originally launched in 2005 in Gauteng. Since then, the project has been hosted by different provinces where houses have been built for vulnerable and marginalised women.

The project promotes the spirit of volunteerism and public-private partnership.

Khuthaza, meaning "encourage" in isiZulu, is a non-profit organisation supporting the development of women in the housing and construction sectors. It has been operating as

Women for Housing since 1995.

Khuthaza encourages the entrance of women into the built-environment sectors and the development of thriving careers and businesses. It supports government initiatives relating to housing and infrastructure delivery, the maintenance and growth of the construction industry and Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE).

The National Women Build is a partnership between government, the private sector and communities to raise consciousness about the construction sector and women's role in it.

The project also contributes to the creation of sustainable human settlements.

Youth Build

The Youth Build SA Programme integrates academic achievement, work experience, social action, leadership development and personal transformation in a single project. It was piloted in Ivory Park, Midrand, in Gauteng and is being introduced to other parts of the country such as Kirkwood in the Eastern Cape and Langa in the Western Cape. Its components include:

- education and skills development
- leadership and service
- counselling and support services
- exit opportunities.

The five-year planned project will see:

- 1 000 young people trained in various related skills
- 10 small businesses created
- 10 scholarships awarded.

The estimated cost of the project is R31 million.

National Home-Builders Registration Council

The mandate of the NHBRC is to protect the interests of housing consumers by providing warranty protection against defined defects in new homes, and to regulate the homebuilding industry in terms of the Housing Consumers Protection Measures Act of 1998. The council provides training and capacity building to promote and ensure compliance with technical standards in the home building environment.

The council's strategic goals will be to improve stakeholder interaction and market accessibility for housing consumers, to enhance the entities position to:

- provide quality services to housing consumers and home builders
- make better use of technological building solutions
- provide training and building capacity in the home building sector.

National Human Settlements Youth Accord

In December 2014, Minister of Human Settlements, South Africa's youth organisations and the DHS's key stakeholders signed the National Human Settlements Youth Accord for active participation in sustainable human settlements development.

The youth accord is the outcome of the National Human Settlements Youth Summit held in Johannesburg, in December 2014, to discuss government housing programmes aimed at empowering young people while mobilising them to support the Government and department's priorities in the next five years. Key to the DHS priorities is the delivery of 1,5 million housing opportunities by 2019 with special focus on the elderly, child-headed households and military veterans.

In putting resolutions of the Human Settlements Youth Summit into action, the department and different stakeholders launched the National Human Settlements Youth Brigade in Midvaal in December 2014 with 100 youth participating in the actual building of houses.

The programme will see youth getting training in different construction fields and the running of small businesses while gaining experienced at catalytic projects across the country.

National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency

Nurcha initiates programmes and takes considered risks to ensure a sustainable flow of finance for the construction of low-income and affordable housing, community facilities and infrastructure. The corporation works in partnership with all role-players in these markets to maximise the development of sustainable human settlements.

Nurcha was established as a Presidential Lead Project in 1995, in partnership with the Open Society Institute.

The institution's strategic focus is to provide bridging finance to contractors building low to moderate income housing, infrastructure and community facilities, and provides account administration and support services.

Finance is provided directly to established contractors while a separate, specialised intermediary channel is used to provide finance to emerging contractors, resulting in the normalisation of risks associated with this market segment by the traditional financial institutions.

In this regard, intermediaries assist the emerging contractors with a range of construction support services. The agency's total expenditure for 2014/15 was R100,7 million.

Social Housing Regulatory Authority

The SHRA was established in 2010 in terms of the Social Housing Act of 2008. The entity is mandated to regulate the social housing sector, and to ensure a sustainable and regulated flow of investment into social housing by providing capital grants to accredited social housing institutions.

The entity's strategic goal is to provide a transparent and credible investment and regulatory environment for the social housing sector.

Housing Development Agency

The HDA was established in terms of the HDA Act, 2008 (Act 23 of 2008), in April 2009. Its purpose is to identify, acquire, hold, develop and release state- and privately-owned land for residential and community purposes and for the creation of sustainable human settlements.

The agency is required to facilitate the acquisition of land in a way that supplements the capacities of government across all spheres.

The HDA provides project-management expertise in human-settlement projects and facilitates the development of projects through accelerated and innovative project packaging.

The National Human Settlements Land Inventory (NaHSLI) and Land and Property Spatial Information System are fully developed and operational. NaHSLI is a comprehensive, multidimensional catalogue of habitable land. NaHSLI presents a national tool based on the geospatial analysis of the natural, regulatory, structural and social environment context within which a habitable land profile for South Africa is being developed.

It facilitates the identification of suitable, available, accessible land that can be used to earn a livelihood, thereby demarcating non-habitable land and risk-prone areas and informing potential users where human settlements could be located best.

NaHSLI also provides insight into the development potential of habitable land and lends itself to the functions of choice, governance and sustainability.

In total, seven implementation protocols have been signed and further agreements are under negotiation with a number of municipalities and provinces.

The HDA is mandated to identify, acquire, hold, develop and release state and privately owned land for residential and community purposes and for the creation of sustainable human settlements. The agency's total expenditure for 2014/15 was R148,4 million.

Resources

One of the major constraints in housing delivery is the lack of capacity in terms of an efficient workforce and the installation of appropriate technology, equipment and systems for monitoring, evaluation and reporting purposes.

The DHS continues to assist provinces in ensuring effective and efficient implementation of the National Housing Programme.

The strategy and guidelines for capacity building, and guidelines for provincial housing-capacity business plans, have been developed.

The DHS undertook several initiatives to support small enterprises within housing and to promote BEE and gender mainstreaming.

Based on extensive consultation with stakeholders in the construction and housing industry, the department developed a framework for emerging contractor support that resulted in a support programme that focuses on training emerging contractors.

Programmes and projects

Sustainable human settlements

Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life are defined by:

- access to adequate accommodation that is suitable, relevant, appropriately located, affordable and fiscally sustainable
- access to basic services such as water, sanitation, refuse removal and electricity
- security of tenure irrespective of ownership or rental, formal or informal structures
- access to social services and economic opportunities within reasonable distance.

Strategic Integrated Project 7 (SIP7)

The SIP7 is part of the 17 SIPs contained in the Presidential Infrastructure Plan.

They incorporate a range of economic and social infrastructure projects and cover all nine provinces with the emphasis on poorer regions.

Investment in rail, water pipelines, energy generation and transmission infrastructure have been identified for Limpopo.

SIP7 focuses on 12 of the country's major cities in Gauteng, the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State, North West and the Western Cape.

The cities include major metropolitan municipalities such as Johannesburg, Ekurhuleni and Tshwane in Gauteng, Buffalo City and Nelson Mandela Metro in the Eastern Cape, eThekweni in KwaZulu-Natal, Cape Town in the Western Cape and Mangaung in the Free State.

The cities were chosen because of their demographic and economic significance. They will be given implementation powers, with the PICC expected to exercise an oversight role.

In Gauteng, some of the projects that are in

operation include the implementation of the Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) System in the province's three metropolitan cities. Tshwane is expected to spend more than R1,6 billion on its BRT System.

Johannesburg finalised plans for a major rehabilitation of Diepsloot and Ivory Park townships, including the construction of clinics, schools and community libraries.

About R45 million has been set aside to turn Ekurhuleni into an aerotropolis – a new urban form where cities grow around airports, connecting workers, suppliers, executives and goods to the global marketplace.

An amount of R2 billion has been earmarked for a new rail link connecting Cape Town International Airport and the city centre while in other provinces such as the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal, the focus will be on expanding ports and rail services.

Bucket Eradication Programme

The objective of the Bucket Eradication Programme is to eradicate all bucket toilets across the country. This is an indirect grant for a period of two years. The budget for the programme was R899 million for the 2014/15 financial year and R975 million for the 2015/16 financial year.

Comprehensive Housing Plan (CHP)

The CHP for the Development of Integrated Sustainable Human Settlements (Breaking New Ground) is aimed at eradicating informal settlements in South Africa in the shortest possible time.

It incorporates principles such as:

- integrating subsidised, rental and bonded housing
- providing municipal engineering services at a higher level, applying them consistently throughout townships
- providing ancillary facilities such as schools, clinics and commercial opportunities
- combining different housing densities and types, ranging from single-stand to double-storey units and row houses.

The CHP is being implemented through informal settlement-upgrading pilot projects in each province.

These projects provide for phased, area-based development, and emphasise community participation and social and economic development as an integral part of housing projects. The goal of upgrading all informal settlements by 2014/15 is aligned to the UN MDGs to improve the lives of 100 million slum dwellers worldwide.

The CHP focuses on:

- accelerating housing delivery as a key strategy for poverty alleviation

- using housing provision as a major job-creation strategy
- ensuring that property can be accessed by all as an asset for wealth creation and empowerment
- leveraging growth in the economy, combating crime and promoting social cohesion
- using housing development to break down barriers between the first-economy residential property boom and the second-economy slump
- using housing as an instrument for the development of sustainable human settlements in support of spatial restructuring
- diversifying housing products by emphasising rental stock.

The department developed and launched a number of instruments to guide the implementation of the comprehensive plan in all three spheres of government.

These include the monitoring, evaluation and impact-assessment policy and implementation guidelines, and the operating system for the policy and guidelines.

The department also initiated a project-monitoring process to measure the performance of provincial housing departments against targets set in their business plans, to identify constraints and assist with addressing them swiftly.

Rental housing for the poor

The National Rental Housing Strategy, which was approved in 2008, provides for people in the low-income bracket and living under the following conditions:

- provisions made by previous departments
- public-sector hostels for housing migratory labour in the previous dispensation
- municipal rental stock that has not been transferred to the households who inhabit the units, and which will continue to be used as rental accommodation because of the low economic status of the households
- new high-rise housing stock to be built for the specific purpose of accommodating low-income households in rental accommodation.

Many job seekers in urban areas require rental accommodation. There has been an increased demand for affordable and well-located rental accommodation. The DHS has developed a project pipeline with a mix of public-private sector rental stock.

The KwaZulu-Natal Human Settlements and Public Works Department launched the province's five-year Rental Housing Strategic Plan in Durban in May 2013. The five-year rental housing plan is informed by the National Rental Housing Strategy of which Social Housing,

Community Residential Units and Institutional Subsidy Programme are essential components.

In July 2014, government was ready to launch a public servants' housing scheme. An agreement on the scheme was reached in the last round of negotiations, and a technical working committee was set up. The groundwork on the various options, cost and models was completed, and presented to the Public Service Coordinating Bargaining Council when the negotiations got off the ground towards the end of the year.

The scheme would unlock the "gap market" – those who earn too much to qualify for government housing, and too little to obtain bank mortgages. An estimated 900 000 of the total 1,3 million public servants fall into this category. Talks had been held with private- and public-sector financial institutions and municipalities to get their support for the proposed scheme. It is important for the State to assist public servants to have reasonably affordable accommodation.

The government already has a R10-billion housing subsidy scheme, which benefits about 100 000 of its employees, but has found it to be ineffective in providing public servants with affordable housing. It provides only R900 a month, which was insufficient to acquire a home.

Community Residential Unit (CRU) Programme

The CRU Programme replaces the National Hostel Redevelopment Programme and the proposed Affordable Rental Housing Programme.

There are approximately 2 000 public hostels that need to be addressed by government.

There are also 200 000 residential units owned by provinces and municipalities. The programme, therefore, provides a coherent framework for dealing with the many different forms of existing public-sector residential accommodation.

The CRU Programme aims to facilitate the provision of secure, stable rental tenure for lower-income individuals. It targets low-income individuals and households earning between R800 and R3 500 a month, who are unable to enter the formal private rental and social housing market.

The CRU programme covers:

- public hostels owned by provincial housing departments and municipalities
- "grey" hostels that have both private and public ownership
- public housing stock that cannot be transferred and has to be managed as rental accommodation
- post-1994 newly developed public residential accommodation owned by provincial housing departments and municipalities

- dilapidated, derelict and dysfunctional buildings.

Units provide secure and stable rental tenure for lower-income earners. Potential tenants are selected according to specific criteria such as, they must be a South African citizen, not an owner of any property in the municipality, earn between R1 600 and R3 500 per month (gross income), not owe the municipality any services money, pass an affordability check, and they must be able to sign the legal documents.

Emergency housing

The main objective of this programme is to provide temporary housing relief to people in urban and rural areas who find themselves in emergency situations, such as when:

- their existing shelters have been destroyed or damaged
- their prevailing situation poses an immediate threat to their lives, health and safety
- they have been evicted or face the threat of eviction.

Assistance involves prioritising funds from the provincial housing allocations to municipalities to accelerate land development, and the provision of basic municipal engineering services and temporary shelter.

Integrated Residential Development Programme (IRDP)

The IRDP provides for the acquisition of land, servicing of stands for a variety of land uses, including commercial and recreational purposes, schools and clinics, as well as residential stands for low-, middle- and high-income groups. The land-use and income-group mix is based on local planning and needs assessment.

Social Housing Regulatory Authority

Social housing is a rental or cooperative housing option, which requires institutionalised management. Social housing is provided by accredited SHIs or in accredited social housing projects in designated restructuring zones. Social housing provides good quality rental accommodation for the upper end of the low-income market (R1 500 – R7 500).

The primary objective of urban restructuring is creating sustainable human settlements. Social housing is not just about building houses; it is also about transforming residential areas and building communities.

International relations

The South African Government is party to the UN MDGs, which provide for the significant

improvement in the lives of at least 100 million slum dwellers by 2020.

In addition to these conventions, South Africa adheres to the following declarations under the UN Habitat programme: the Vancouver Declaration on Human Settlements of 1976, the Istanbul Declaration on Cities and other Human Settlements of 1996 and the Habitat Agenda of 1996, the focus of which is to address the plight of persons without adequate housing.

Community Scheme Ombud Service (CSOS)

The CSOS provides an alternative, impartial and transparent service for the resolution of unresolved disputes in community schemes. Established in terms of the Community Scheme Ombud Service Act, 2011 (Act 9 of 2011) the CSOS regulates the conduct of parties within community schemes and ensures their good governance.

The CSOS is classified as a Schedule 3A public entity in terms of the Public Finance Management Act and its executive authority is vested in the Minister of Human Settlements. In terms of Section 38 of the CSOS Act, any person in a community scheme may apply to the CSOS, if such a person is a party to or is materially affected by a dispute, for mediation and adjudication.



International Relations

According to the South African Constitution, the President is ultimately responsible for the foreign policy and international relations. It is the President's prerogative to appoint heads of mission, receive foreign heads of mission, conduct State to State relations, and negotiate and sign all international agreements. International agreements that are not of a technical, administrative or executive nature will only bind the country after being approved by Parliament. Parliament also approves the country's ratification of or accession to multilateral agreements. All international agreements must be tabled in Parliament for information purposes.

The Minister of International Relations and Cooperation is entrusted with the formulation, promotion, execution and daily conduct of South Africa's foreign policy.

- The Department of International Relations and Cooperation's (DIRCO) overall mandate is to work for the realisation of South Africa's foreign policy objectives. This is done by:
- coordinating and aligning South Africa's international relations abroad
- monitoring developments in the international environment
- communicating government's policy positions
- developing and advising government on policy options, creating mechanisms and avenues for achieving objectives
- protecting South Africa's sovereignty and territorial integrity
- contributing to the creation of an enabling international environment for South African business
- sourcing developmental assistance
- assisting South African citizens abroad.

The department's strategic objectives are to:

- protect and promote South African national interests and values through bilateral and multilateral interactions
- conduct and coordinate South Africa's international relations and promote its foreign policy objectives
- monitor international developments and advise

In October 2014, DIRCO, in partnership with the City of Tshwane, hosted the annual Diplomatic Fair at the Union Buildings in Pretoria. The 2014 Diplomatic Fair takes place under the theme: "Celebrating 20 Years of Freedom and Democracy in South Africa." The main participants were the foreign diplomatic missions accredited to South Africa. The missions took advantage of the event to display and promote cultural diplomacy through arts and music. Through the fair, the department aimed, among other things, to provide the public with information about countries accredited to South Africa and afford government, business, the diplomatic corps, and other sectors of society the opportunity to learn and network.

government on foreign policy and related domestic matters

- contribute to the formulation of international law and enhance respect for its provisions
- promote multilateralism to secure a rules-based international system
- maintain a modern, effective department driven to pursue excellence
- provide a world-class and uniquely South African state protocol service.

Legislation

The DIRCO derives its mandate from the following legislation:

- The Foreign States Immunities Act, 1981 (Act 87 of 1981), regulates the extent of the immunity of foreign states from the jurisdiction of the South African courts and provides for matters connected therewith.
- The Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges Act, 2001 (Act 37 of 2001), provides for the immunities and privileges of diplomatic missions and consular posts and their members, heads of state, special envoys and certain representatives of the United Nations (UN) and its specialised agencies, and other international organisations and certain people.
- The African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund Act, 2001 (Act 51 of 2001), establishes an African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund to enhance cooperation between South Africa and other countries, in particular African countries, through the promotion of democracy, good governance, the prevention and resolution of conflict, socio-economic development and integration, humanitarian assistance and human resource development.
- International agreements (multilateral and bilateral): International agreements concluded by South Africa in terms of sections 231(2) and 231(3) of the Constitution.

Budget and funding

DIRCO received R5 755 million for the 2014/15 financial year and required an additional R1,6 billion over the next three years to maintain its level of operation.

Foreign policy

By prioritising Africa and promoting its renewal, development and reconstruction, South Africa is contributing to building a better Africa, which is the central foreign policy goal of the South African Government.

After the democratic elections in 1994, South Africa ceased to be the pariah of the world; it regained its rightful place in Africa, in the UN and

in the family of nations. South Africa emerged as a democratic country into a fundamentally transformed world with a visionary foreign policy that promotes relations with other countries.

Disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control

A primary goal of South Africa's policy on disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control includes reinforcing and promoting the country as a responsible producer, possessor and trader of defence-related products and advanced technologies. In this regard, the department continues to promote the benefits that disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control hold for international peace and security, particularly to countries in Africa.

Regarding conventional weapons, including small arms and light weapons, South Africa actively participates in UN efforts related to the Anti-Personnel Mine Ban Convention, the Convention on Cluster Munitions, the Certain Conventional Weapons Convention, the UN Programme of Action on Small Arms and Light Weapons and efforts aimed at establishing an arms trade treaty.

Role players

South Africa has key partnerships such as the Forum on China-Africa Cooperation, Africa's comprehensive partnership with India, and the Korea-Africa Forum. South Africa's Government spares no effort in strengthening the progressive forums of the South such as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM), G77+China, Africa-South America Summit and the New Asian-African Strategic Partnership (NAASP). These forums have demonstrated that they are trusted allies and partners in South Africa's aim for a better world and Africa.

African Union (AU)

The AU emerged from the Organisation of African Unity (OAU), which was established in 1963 with a charter signed by 32 countries in Addis Ababa. The OAU, which was officially disbanded in July 2002, was replaced by the AU with 51 members who pledged to work for closer political integration and unity among African countries.

Africa will never again tolerate change of governments through undemocratic and

In November 2014, the Department of International Relations and Cooperation, in partnership with the University of the Witwatersrand School of Governance and the Oliver and Adelaide Tambo Foundation, hosted the third debate on implementing the National Development Plan.

unconstitutional means. Africa is on a growth trajectory, which must be maintained to ensure that the people of African are truly emancipated from the wrath of underdevelopment, poverty and hunger. The strengthened African Union Commission (AUC) is central in driving the African Agenda. South Africa contributed towards the goal of having a strong AUC and its structure. Resources were also contributed to hosting the Pan African Parliament, which celebrated its 10th anniversary in March 2014.

The continent is engaged in extensive consultations on its vision for the next 50 years, known as Agenda 2063, under the theme "The Africa We Want". This vision, which is expected to be adopted by the January 2015 Summit of the AU, spells out the aspirations of African people across all sectors and the pledges of leaders, which are translated into a "Call to Action" comprised of a 10-year action plan that will contain flagship projects.

Each AU Member State, including South Africa, is expected to contribute to this vision through inclusive national consultations by October 2015. When the vision is adopted, Member States will have to align their national policies with it through a process of domestication, which, in South Africa's case, entails harmonising Agenda 2063 with the National Development Plan (NDP). DIRCO has already begun national consultations with different sectors. Agenda 2063 will affect the SADC, especially the pace and direction of the integration of the region. The approach to the SADC region in the next five years was to consolidate bilateral relations with South Africa's neighbours, and strengthening SADC as an institution. In particular, DIRCO will:

- Strengthen regional integration in the SADC neighbourhood by discharging the department's responsibilities towards the full implementation of the FTA and concluding the review of the SADC Regional Indicative Strategic Development Plan. The SADC-EAC-COMESA tripartite trade negotiations were expected to reach finality, as they are an important step towards the realisation of the African FTA by 2017.
- Peace and political stability in the region will remain a priority. The proactive and stabilising effect that resulted from the deployment of the SADC Intervention Brigade in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC) where the negative forces there were either on retreat or have been defeated, is encouraging. DIRCO will operationalise the Tripartite Agreement between South Africa, Angola and the DRC in support of the Peace and Security Framework Agreement for the Great Lakes Region.

- The department will galvanise political support for major infrastructure projects in the region, notably the Lesotho Highlands Water project Phase II, and the Grand INGA in the DRC.

For the rest of Africa, in the context of Agenda 2063, in the next five years DIRCO will:

- continue to strengthen bilateral relations with African countries through structured bilateral engagements to advance South Africa's interests throughout the continent
- intensify work in supporting the AU, including the AU institutions South Africa hosts; namely, the Nepad Secretariat, Pan-African Parliament and the APRM headquarters
- strengthen economic diplomacy to increase trade and investment opportunities for South Africa
- give dedicated attention to the North-South Corridor, and other Nepad-driven infrastructure projects in Africa that is championed by President Zuma
- ensure speedy provision of humanitarian assistance where needed to alleviate human suffering in Africa
- implement the African Diaspora programme adopted at the AU Summit South Africa hosted in 2012
- continue peace-building and conflict prevention efforts in conflict situations in support of multilateral institutions
- re-invigorate the Post-Conflict and Reconstruction and Development Strategy in African countries emerging from conflict.

AU Peace and Security Council (AUPSC)

South Africa plays an important role in efforts to bring about peace and stability on the continent.

The AUPSC is the organ of the AU in charge of enforcing union decisions. Members are elected by the AU Assembly to reflect regional balance within Africa, as well as a variety of other criteria, including capacity to contribute militarily and financially to the union, political will to do so, and effective diplomatic presence at Addis Ababa.

The AUPSC entered into force in December 2003, after being ratified by the required majority of AU member states. It is made up of 15 member states and is responsible for the resolution of conflict, peacekeeping and post-conflict reconstruction and development (PCRD) in conjunction with the UN.

AU regional economic communities (RECs)

The AU is the principal institution responsible for promoting sustainable development at economic, social and cultural level, as well as integrating African economies.

RECs are recognised as the building blocks of the AU, necessitating the need for their close involvement in formulating and implementing all AU programmes.

To this end, the AU must coordinate and take decisions on policies in areas of common interest to member states, as well as coordinate and harmonise policies between existing and future RECs, for the gradual attainment of the AU's objectives.

Seven specialised technical committees are responsible for the actual implementation of the continental socio-economic integration process, together with the Permanent Representatives Committee.

New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad)

Nepad, an AU strategic framework for pan-African socio-economic development, is both a vision and a policy framework for Africa in the 21st century. Nepad provides unique opportunities for African countries to take full control of their development agenda, to work more closely together, and to cooperate more effectively with international partners.

Nepad manages a number of programmes and projects in six theme areas namely:

- agriculture and food security
- climate change and national resource management
- regional integration and infrastructure
- human development
- economic and corporate governance
- cross-cutting issues, including gender, capacity development and information and communication technology (ICT).

South Africa, as one of the initiating countries, played a key role in the establishment of Nepad and the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM), and hosts the Nepad Agency and APRM Secretariat in Midrand, Gauteng.

The APRM process is aimed at addressing corruption, poor governance and inefficient delivery of public goods and services to the citizens of African countries. It encourages the adoption of policies, standards and practices that lead to political stability, high economic growth, sustainable development and accelerated regional and continental economic integration through the sharing of experiences and best practices, and is important to the sustainability of Nepad.

In January 2014, at the 20th Summit of the Committee of Participating Heads of State and Government of the APRM (APR Forum), South Africa presented its Third Progress Report on the Implementation of the APRM National Programme of Action. Following the presen-

tation of the Third Report, South Africa was in a position to undergo its second APRM periodic review.

Nepad remains the main programme of reference for intra-African socio-economic and developmental relations and Africa's partnerships with international partners such as the European Union (EU-AU) Strategic Partnership, Forum for Africa-China Partnership, the Group of Seven Most Industrialised Nations plus Russia (G8), the Tokyo International Conference on African Development, the NAASP and the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development.

Through Nepad, Africa has expanded its development priorities. Development and funding in agriculture, ICT, science and technology, infrastructure and education has improved the quality of life for millions of Africans.

Southern African Development Community (SADC)

The SADC developed from the Southern African Development Coordination Conference (SADCC), which was established in 1980. It adopted its current name during a summit held in Windhoek, Namibia, in August 1992. Before 1992, the aim of the SADCC was to forge close economic cooperation with southern African countries excluding South Africa, to bolster their economies and reduce their dependence on the South African economy.

From 1992, when the organisation became the SADC, its mandate changed to the following:

- establishing an open economy based on equality, mutual benefit and balanced development
- breaking down tariff barriers
- promoting trade exchanges and mutual investment
- realising the free movement of goods, personnel and labour service
- achieving the unification of tariffs and currencies
- establishing a free trade zone.

The initial member states were Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe. South Africa became a member after 1994.

South Africa has consistently sought to nurture regional integration at three levels: SACU, SADC and the Tripartite Free Trade Area (FTA) between SADC, the Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa (COMESA) and the East African Community (EAC). In particular, South Africa has championed a "developmental regionalism" approach that combines market integration, cross-border infrastructure development, and

policy coordination to diversify production and boost intra-African trade. South Africa contributed to the development of SACU's Five-Point Plan, which aims to transform the customs union from a tariffs and a revenue-sharing agreement to an integrated institution capable of promoting true regional economic development. The 2014 revenue arrangement made South Africa the biggest development partner of the Botswana-Lesotho-Namibia-Swaziland (BLNS) countries. Work in SADC continues to focus on consolidating the SADC FTA launched in 2008, before considering deeper forms of integration in the region. The ongoing negotiations to establish the Tripartite FTA will combine the three major regional economic communities of 600 million people and combined GDP of USD\$1 trillion, as building blocks towards continental integration. Once established, the T-FTA will contribute to economies of scale, the building of new distribution channels, value addition, and manufacturing in Africa. One of the key areas to stimulate regional economic development has been the finalisation of the SADC Regional Infrastructure Development Master Plan (RIDMP), which will focus on the following six priority sectors: energy, transport, ICT/communications, water, tourism and meteorology.

In October 2014, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation arrived in Gaborone, Republic of Botswana, for of the launch of the SADC Election Observer Mission.

Minister Nkoana-Mashabane represented President Jacob Zuma, Chairperson of the SADC Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Cooperation. South Africa was elected at the recent SADC Summit held in Zimbabwe to chair the SADC, which is responsible for the maintenance of peace and stability in the region.

South Africa led the SADC Election Observer missions in Mozambique, Botswana and Namibia.

In February 2015, South Africa hosted an Extraordinary Summit of the SADC Double Troika in Pretoria. The Extraordinary Summit considered the political and security situation in Lesotho ahead of the February 2015 elections.

United Nations

The UN occupies the central and indispensable role within the global system of governance. South Africa looks to the UN to advance the global development agenda and address under-development, social integration, full employment and decent work for all and the eradication of poverty globally. Through participation in multilateral forums, South Africa also upholds the belief that the resolution of international conflicts

should be peaceful and in accordance with the centrality of the UN Charter and the principles of international law. South Africa was one of the 51 founding member of the UN in 1945. Since then, UN membership has grown to 193 states. After being suspended in 1974, owing to international opposition to the policy of apartheid, South Africa was readmitted to the UN in 1994 following its transition to democracy.

UN General Assembly

President Jacob Zuma, led the South African delegation to the 69th Session of the UN General Assembly (UNGA 69), which took place in New York, in the United States of America (USA) from 24 – 30 September 2014.

The UNGA is the main deliberative, policy-making and representative organ of the UN. Comprising all 193 members of the United Nations, it provides a unique forum for multilateral discussion of the full spectrum of international issues covered by the Charter of the UN.

The 2014 theme was: "Delivering on and Implementing a Transformative Post-2015 Development Agenda." The theme was building on that of UNGA 68 and took place against the rapidly approaching target date for achieving the millennium development goals (MDGs) by 2015, and the start of the intergovernmental negotiations on the post-2015 development agenda, which was the major focal point in the multilateral arena.

In accordance with its strategic approach, South Africa's participation was informed by national interests and priorities, its regional and continental commitments, as well as its aspirations for a prosperous world at peace with itself. In this regard, the general debate provided a platform for South Africa to advance its strategic priorities in the world's pre-eminent multilateral forum.

President Zuma addressed the UNGA on 24 September 2014.

UN Security Council (UNSC)

South Africa has served on the United Nations Security Council (UNSC) as non-permanent member for two terms. More than two-thirds of the UNSC's agenda focuses on African issues. During its second term, one of South Africa's biggest achievements was the adoption by the UNSC of resolution 2033 (2012), which South Africa initiated, to formalise, strengthen and promote the UNSC's cooperation with regional organisations, particularly the AUPSC. Close on 70 years of its existence, the UNSC still remains undemocratic, unrepresentative and unfair to developing nations and small states, which

cannot remain beholden indefinitely to the will of an unrepresentative minority on most important issues of international peace and security. Other notable achievements that South Africa championed are:

- setting the UN members the target to celebrate the 70th Anniversary of the UN in 2015, with a reformed, more inclusive, democratic and representative UNSC
- witnessing the birth of the new State of South Sudan.

The issue of Western Sahara remains an important challenge for the AU and for peace and stability in the region.

UN Economic and Social Council (Ecosoc)

Ecosoc is a premier organ of the UN responsible for economic and social development matters of the world.

South Africa assumed membership of Ecosoc on 1 January 2013, giving the country an opportunity to be located at the centre of the debate on the global development agenda, including the acceleration of the implementation of the MDGs.

UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco)

South Africa is an active participant in key Unesco governance structures such as the General Conference and the World Heritage Committee, and has previously served on the executive board.

Since its return to Unesco, South Africa has also ratified a number of Unesco conventions including the Convention Concerning the Protection of the World Cultural and Natural Heritage (July 1997), Convention Against Discrimination in Education (March 2000), the International Convention Against Doping in Sport (November 2006) and the Convention on the Protection and Promotion of the Diversity of Cultural Expressions (December 2006).

South Africa also acceded to the Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict with Regulations for the Execution of the Convention (December 2003). National interaction with Unesco's various areas of work is coordinated through the South African National Commission for Unesco, whose secretariat is hosted by the Department of Basic Education.

UN Human Rights Council

South Africa played a leadership role in several inter-governmental processes at the UN pertaining to human rights and social development issues. It is also the current Chair of the Open-ended Working Group on Private

Military and Security Companies (PMSCs), which objective is to elaborate a legally binding regulatory framework and to ensure that PMSCs are held accountable for their activities.

South Africa is also the current chair of the Adhoc Committee on the Elaboration of Complementary Standards to the International Convention for the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination aimed at combating contemporary forms of racism.

South Africa was one of 14 new Member States elected to serve on the UN Human Rights Council (HRC) from January 2014 until December 2016. The election coincided with the country's celebration of its 20th year of democracy and reaffirmed its commitment to the achievement of human rights for all its citizens, the citizens of Africa, and the citizens of the world.

UN-South Africa Strategic Cooperation Framework (UNSCF)

The UN-South Africa Strategic Cooperation Framework (UNSCF), 2013-17, is the overall framework for the work of the UN system in South Africa. DIRCO and the UN Country Team developed the SCF in 2012 through a participatory and consultative process. The SCF includes the presentation of the situation in South Africa overall, as reflected in the New Growth Path (NGP), Government's National Development Plan (NDP): Vision for 2030, as well as the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) and the 2010 MDGs Country Report. These have informed the identification of four pillars of UN cooperation, which are: inclusive growth and decent work; sustainable development; human capabilities; and governance and participation. In addition, a brief analysis of past cooperation and lessons learned, including those identified in the 2009 Joint Evaluation of the Role and Contribution of the UN System in South Africa, and the planned results to be achieved by all partners in the South African context, with the UN contributions indicated at the outcomes level. The SCF also considers the role of South Africa on the continent and globally.

World Health Organisation (WHO)

South Africa is one of the 194 member states that constitute the WHO. The country takes part in the annual World Health Assembly (WHA), which is the WHO's supreme decision-making body.

South Africa also takes part in the WHO's Regional Committee for Africa, which convenes annually after the WHA to reflect on the decisions taken at the WHA and plan for the following year's WHA.

Through its participation in these structures, South Africa contributes to setting international norms and making decisions on key issues regarding global and public health.

Group of 20 (G20)

The 2014 G20 Brisbane Summit was the ninth meeting of the G20 heads of government. It was held in Queensland, Australia, in November 2014. Up to 4 000 delegates attended with about 2 500 media representatives. The leaders of Mauritania, Myanmar, New Zealand, Senegal, Singapore and Spain were also invited to this summit. European leaders expressed their desire to support the recovery as the global economy moves beyond the global financial crisis. Climate change was not included as a subject for discussion at the summit. G20 finance ministers and central bank governors met several times in 2014. Sydney hosted a meeting in February 2014 followed by a meeting in Cairns, Queensland in September 2014. At the September meeting participating countries agreed to automatically exchange tax information to reduce tax evasion. Canberra hosted a meeting for G20 finance and central bank deputies in 2014. The Youth 20 Summit was the official G20 youth event held in Sydney in July 2014. A meeting of G20 trade ministers took place in Sydney during July, and the annual G20 Labour and Employment Ministerial Meeting was held in Melbourne during September 2014. Officials-levels meetings of public servants took place throughout the year to prepare for the ministerial meetings.

In July 2014, DIRCO hosted Australia's G20 Sherpa, Dr Heather Smith, in Pretoria where she met with her counterpart, South Africa's G20 Sherpa, Ambassador Nozipho Mxakato-Diseko. Dr Smith will also delivered a keynote address on "The G20 and the future of global economic growth" organised by the University of South Africa (UNISA), DIRCO, the Institute for Global Dialogue (IGD) and the Australian High Commission.

Australia held the rotating G20 Presidency for 2014.

Brazil, Russia, India, China, South Africa trade alliance

South Africa's BRICS membership will help the country and the continent to address its socio-economic challenges.

Some of the BRICS achievements include the following:

- BRICS Inter-Bank Cooperation Mechanism to which the Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA)

- Master Agreement on Extending Credit Facility in Local Currency where the DBSA would have to consider providing the other Member Banks,
- Multilateral Letter of Credit Confirmation Facility Agreement, which will require the DBSA to either guarantee performance against the obligations to a South African exporter, or in the event of South African imports
- Multilateral Agreement on Infrastructure Co-Financing for Africa
- Multilateral Agreement on Green Economy Cooperation Co-Financing
- The establishment of the BRICS Business Council and BRICS Think Tanks Council.

The BRICS grouping achieved another strategic milestone in February 2014, when the science, technology and innovation (STI) ministers of the five countries met in South Africa to formalise and institutionalise cooperation in STI under the BRICS framework.

South Africa, as the previous Chair, successfully brought to fruition all the key outcomes adopted at the 5th BRICS Summit in Durban 2014. As such, in Brazil, the Agreement establishing the New Development Bank and the Treaty for the creation of the BRICS Contingent Reserve Arrangement were signed. These agreements signal a historic and seminal moment since the creation of the Bretton Woods international financial architecture. The headquarters of the New Development Bank will be located in Shanghai, China and its Africa Regional Centre will be established in South Africa concurrently. Further significant initiatives in respect of strengthening intra-BRICS economic cooperation, included the signing of the Memorandum of Understanding on Cooperation among BRICS Export Credit and Guarantees Agencies that will improve the support environment for increasing trade opportunities among the BRICS countries. In BRICS, the member states are equal in access, shareholding, and representation in leadership positions.

India, Brazil and South Africa (IBSA) trade alliance

The IBSA Dialogue Forum brings together three large pluralistic, multicultural and multiracial societies from three continents as a purely South-South grouping of like-minded countries, committed to inclusive sustainable development, in pursuit of the well-being for their peoples and those of the developing world. The principles, norms and values underpinning the IBSA Dialogue Forum are participatory democracy, respect for human rights, the Rule of Law and the strengthening of multilateralism.

The intra-IBSA trade is a clear indication of the potential and success of IBSA as the initial trade target of US\$ 25 billion by 2015 is likely to be overshoot given the 2014 intra-IBSA trade figure of US\$23 billion. IBSA has also partnered with developing countries, especially least-developed countries (LDCs) and post-conflict and reconstruction development (PCRD) countries through the IBSA Facility for Hunger and Poverty Alleviation (IBSA Fund) in development projects that will benefit those countries.

IBSA continues to play its unique role as a body bringing together three democracies of the South from three continents.

The realisation of a trilateral alliance between IBSA stems from three commonalities between the three countries, namely: all three countries are vibrant democracies, they share common views on various global issues, and are substantial emerging economies within their subregions.

Apart from promoting South-South dialogue, IBSA also fosters inter-regional cooperation.

The engagement process of the IBSA countries takes place on three levels, namely: heads of state and government, government-to-government and people-to-people cooperation.

Indian Ocean Rim-Association for Regional Cooperation (IOR-ARC)

South Africa is one of the founding member states of the IOR-ARC, which was launched in Mauritius in March 1997. There are 20 Indian IOR member states.

The objectives of IOR include promoting the sustained growth and balanced development of the region and of the member states, and creating common ground for regional economic cooperation. This also includes formulating and implementing projects for economic cooperation relating to trade facilitation and liberation, promotion of foreign investment, academic, scientific and technological exchanges, tourism and the development of infrastructure and human resources.

Commonwealth

The modern Commonwealth is a voluntary association of 54 independent member countries. Membership is diverse and includes developed and developing countries in Africa, Asia, the Americas, the Caribbean, Europe and the South Pacific.

Since rejoining the Commonwealth in 1994, South Africa has interacted closely with the work of the Commonwealth contributing politically, financially and in terms of capacity and expertise to the work of the organisation.

In November 2014, the Commonwealth Science Conference (CSC) was held in Bangalore, in India. This was the first CSC for nearly 50. The goals of the conference were to celebrate excellence in Commonwealth science; to provide opportunities for cooperation between researchers in different Commonwealth countries; to inspire young scientists; and to build scientific capacity in the developing nations within the Commonwealth. The scope of the meeting was broad and included physical sciences, life sciences, mathematics, engineering, and science policy.

The 60th Commonwealth Parliamentary Conference (CPC) was held in Yaoundé, Cameroon, in 2014.

The 2014 Commonwealth Games (officially the 20th Commonwealth Games) were held in Glasgow, Scotland, from 23 July to 3 August 2014.

On 10 March 2014, Commonwealth countries as symbol of their solidarity, celebrated Commonwealth Day under the theme "Team Commonwealth".

Non-Aligned Movement (NAM)

The Islamic Republic of Iran is chairing the NAM from 2012 to 2015. The NAM consists of 120 member states. It is the largest political grouping of countries outside the UN, making it an important lobby group of developing countries in global affairs.

The next NAM Summit is scheduled to be held in Venezuela during 2015.

G77 & China

In June 2014, the Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Mr Luwellyn Landers, led a South African delegation at the two-day summit on the 50th Anniversary of the G77 and China, taking place in Santa Cruz, Bolivia.

In April 2014, the Board of the Turquoise Harmony Institute, awarded its Ubuntu Media Award to the Department of International Relations and Cooperation's (DIRCO) Ubuntu Radio, South Africa's first government-run, 24-hour, online radio station. The Turquoise Harmony Institute is an independent, non-profit non-governmental organisation aimed at promoting inter-cultural and inter-faith dialogue and tolerance among people at grassroots level in South Africa. According to the Institute, Ubuntu Radio is a visionary concept and idea, which has become an important tool of DIRCO's public diplomacy, which is to promote and communicate South Africa's foreign policy and disseminate information about South Africa across the world. In 2014, the station also launched an "Ubuntu Radio Application for mobile devices (Blackberry & Android phones, etc.)" on its website www.ubunturadio.com and receive downloads from countries such as China, USA, UK, France, Lithuania, The Netherlands, Canada, Nigeria, Tanzania and Zimbabwe.

The Group of 77 (G77) was established on 15 June 1964 by 77 developing countries, signatories of the "Joint Declaration of the Seventy-Seven Developing Countries" issued at the end of the first session of the UN Conference on Trade and Development, held in Geneva, Switzerland. Although the members of the G-77 have increased to 133 countries, including China as the associate member, the original name was retained due to its historic significance.

The G77 and China is the largest intergovernmental organisation of developing countries in the UN system, and it provides the means for countries of the South to promote their collective economic interests and enhance their joint negotiating capacity on all major international economic issues within the UN system and promote South-South cooperation.

As a member of the G77 and China, South Africa participates in the work of the Group to ensure its strength, unity and cohesion in pursuance of the vision of a fair and equitable multilateral system.

International relations South Africa and Africa

As South Africa undergoes its second transition, Africa also continues to rise. Africa's renaissance will in years ahead be defined by the Africa Agenda 2063.

In 2014, in the spirit of diversifying South Africa's trade and investment towards Africa, the Department of Trade and Industry created 15 government-to-government platforms; held 19 trade and outward investment missions; facilitated the signing of 11 enabling agreements; addressed market access barriers (NTBs) in Kenya, Nigeria, Egypt and Benin; and provided institutional and human capacity building initiatives with Angola, DRC, Ethiopia and Nigeria in the area of standards and quality assurance.

In April 2014, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation led the South African delegation to the fourth Africa- EU Summit in Brussels, Belgium, under the theme: "Investing in People, Prosperity and Peace." The summit afforded Africa and Europe the opportunity to strengthen political and socio-economic cooperation between the two continents. The thematic areas such as peace and security; trade and investment; human development; and the future institutional and financial arrangements of the Africa-EU Partnership were discussed during the summit deliberations.

The Summit also afforded the leaders from the two continents the opportunity to undertake a stocktaking of concrete deliverables that have

been achieved over the past three years as guided by the Africa-EU Action Plan 2010-2013 that was adopted at the third Africa-EU Summit in Tripoli, Libya, in November 2010. As was the case with the Africa-EU Summits in 2007 and 2010, South Africa played a meaningful role in the negotiations at the Senior Officials Meeting, and was active in the Ministerial Meeting.

Three declarations were adopted at the summit, namely: the Brussels Declaration of the Heads of State and Government, which is the main outcome document for the fourth Africa-EU Summit; the Africa-EU Roadmap; and the Declaration on Migration and Mobility.

In addition, Minister Nkoana-Mashabane held bilateral consultations with her counterparts from Africa and Europe on the sidelines of the summit.

Relations with southern Africa Angola

South Africa and Angola continue to work together in maintaining peace, stability, regional integration and the promotion of the SADC Agenda. Both countries are still part of respectively the SADC Troika and the SADC Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Troika.

Angola is one of South Africa's major trading partners in Africa with almost 90% of Angolan exports to South Africa being petroleum-related products.

In January 2014, President Jacob Zuma returned from a working visit to Luanda, Angola where he attended the Fifth Ordinary Summit of the International Conference of the Great Lakes Region (ICGLR) at the invitation of Angolan President Jose Edouardo dos Santos, who assumed the chair of the ICGLR for a two-year period. The ICGLR Heads of State and Government reviewed, among other things, progress made in the implementation of the "ICGLR Pact on Security, Stability and Development in the Great Lakes Region" and the "UN Framework for Peace, Security and Cooperation for the DRC and the Region." The ICGLR leaders also focused on the current situation in the Central African Republic (CAR) and South Sudan. The ICGLR leaders committed to offering political and other forms of support to the ongoing mediation efforts in South Sudan led by the Inter-Governmental Authority on Development (IGAD). South Africa was requested to assist by intervening in the process of finding an immediate solution and bring about peace in that country due to its experience in conflict resolution and national reconciliation.

Other matters discussed at the ICGLR Summit were on the implementation of the ICGLR Humanitarian Trust Fund; the Lusaka Declaration on the Fight against Illegal Explo-

tation of Natural Resources; the December 2011 Kampala Declaration on the Fight against sexual gender-based violence (SGBV); the Protocol on Prevention and Punishment of Genocide, War Crimes, Crimes against Humanity and other Forms of Discrimination. Socio-economic development and budgetary matters were also discussed.

Botswana

South Africa hosted the inaugural session of the BNC in November 2013. South Africa and Botswana cooperate on a wide range of areas, including transport, trade and investment, health, education, environmental affairs, water, science and technology, agriculture, justice, immigration, energy, finance, culture, security, and sport.

In October 2014, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, on behalf of the Chair of the Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Cooperation, President Jacob Zuma, declared the SADC Electoral Observation Mission to the Republic of Botswana officially launched.

In November 2014, President Zuma, undertook a working visit to the Republic of Botswana. The two delegations took advantage of the Second Session of the South Africa-Botswana Bi-National Commission (BNC) to review the state of cooperation between South Africa and Botswana.

In the same month, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, attended the second Bi-National Commission (BNC) between South Africa Botswana, in Gaborone.

Democratic Republic of Congo

In September 2014, President Jacob Zuma, Chairperson of the SADC Organ on Politics, Security and Defence, called for a sitting of the SADC Double Troika Summit plus the DRC and the United Republic of Tanzania in Pretoria. The purpose of the SADC Double Troika Summit is to consider the latest political developments in the SADC region, particularly the political and security situation in the DRC.

Lesotho

Bilateral cooperation between South Africa and Lesotho includes trade and investment, security, energy, transport, agriculture, tourism and water.

With South Africa being Lesotho's only neighbour, the economies of the two countries are interdependent. South African companies have a significant presence in Lesotho and are involved in various sectors such as housing, food and beverages, construction, retail, hotels and leisure, banking, and medical services.

The Lesotho Highlands Water Project has been in operation for over 20 years and supplies South Africa with about 780 million cubic meters of water a year. When fully operational, Phase 2 of the project will substantially increase the volume of water supplied to South Africa.

In July 2014, President Zuma undertook a working visit to the Kingdom of Lesotho. The visit took place within the context of strengthening bilateral relations between the two neighbouring countries.

In September 2014 President Zuma, undertook another working visit to the Kingdom of Lesotho. The visit follows the Ministerial Committee of the Organ meeting in August 2014 as well as the President's meeting with the coalition leaders in September 2014 in Pretoria. During the visit, the President consulted with His Majesty King Letsie III and also held discussions with the coalition leaders to assess the progress in the implementation of the Windhoek Declaration as well as other SADC Decisions.

President Zuma called for a sitting of the SADC Double Troika Summit plus the DRC and the United Republic of Tanzania, in September 2014 in Pretoria. The purpose of the SADC Double Troika Summit was to consider the political developments in the SADC region, particularly the political and security situation in the Kingdom of Lesotho and the DRC.

In the same month, SADC facilitator, Deputy President Cyril Ramaphosa, concluded his first official visit to the Kingdom of Lesotho as part of regional efforts to assist the people of the country to find a peaceful resolution to their current challenges.

Malawi

South Africa and Malawi share strong historical political, economic and cultural ties and warm relations in the context of regional integration and intra-Africa trade.

In May 2014, President Zuma congratulated Mr Peter Mutharika, President-elect of the Republic of Malawi, on his successful election.

Mozambique

In September 2014, President Jacob Zuma, welcomed the signing of the peace agreement between the President of Mozambique and the leader of RENAMO. President Zuma commended President Guebuza and the RENAMO leader, Mr Afonso Dhlakama, for their commitment to the principles of democracy by signing the agreement, thereby setting aside political differences and ensuring full participation by Mozambicans in the 15 October 2014 presidential, parliamentary and regional assembly elections.

The SADC Electoral Observation Mission (SEOM) to the Republic of Mozambique for the 2014 general elections was launched in October 2014, in Maputo.

Namibia

The economies of South Africa and Namibia are interlinked with South Africa being one of Namibia's major trading partners.

Namibia imports 80% of its consumables from South Africa. South African companies have a large presence in Namibia and are involved in various sectors such as housing, food and beverages, construction, hotels and leisure, banking, and medical services.

South Africa and Namibia enjoy strong and fraternal relations that are characterised by regular and increasing interaction at all levels. In November 2014, following the proclamation of the date for the 2014 Presidential and National Assembly elections and the subsequent invitation by the Electoral Commission of Namibia to President Zuma, the Chairperson of the SADC Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Cooperation, who mandated the SADC Executive Secretary, Dr Stergomena Lawrence Tax, to constitute the SADC Electoral Observer Mission (SEOM) to the Republic of Namibia. To this end, the SEOM arrived in Windhoek, Namibia in line with the provisions of the SADC Principles and Guidelines Governing Democratic Elections. Prior to deployment of the SEOM, a pre-deployment assessment mission was undertaken by the SADC Electoral Advisory Council (SEAC) to ascertain the readiness and preparedness of the country in holding the elections. Based on the assessment, the SEOM was launched on 10 November 2014, by the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation and Head of SEOM to the Republic of Namibia. By November 2104, the SEOM had deployed 95 observers constituted into 23 teams in all the 14 regions of Namibia.

President Jacob Zuma extended his congratulations to Dr Hage Geingob on his election as President of the Republic of Namibia following the country's presidential and legislative elections that were held on 28 November 2014.

Swaziland

The Kingdom of Swaziland and South Africa share common borders and have very strong common cultural links. Since South Africa's re-entry to the Commonwealth, relations have been conducted at high-commissioner level.

Both countries are members of key sub-regional, regional and international organisations, including the Sacu, the SADC, the AU, the Commonwealth and the UN.

A bilateral agreement between Swaziland and South Africa provides a mechanism for the two countries to cooperate in areas of mutual benefit, ensuring that healthy relations are maintained and further developed.

Tanzania

South Africa established formal diplomatic relations with Tanzania in 1994, immediately after attaining its freedom. The bilateral relations have been characterised by high-level interaction between the two countries aimed at consolidating and strengthening political, economic and social cooperation. South Africa is one of the top 10 major investors in Tanzania and accounts for approximately 10% of total investment in Tanzania. South African exports are concentrated predominantly in the areas of manufacturing, including machinery, mechanical appliances, paper, rubber products, vehicles, iron and steel, services and technology.

In October 2014, Deputy President Ramaphosa visited Tanzania for consultation with Tanzanian President Jakaya Kikwete on the South Sudanese peace process.

Zambia

South Africa and Zambia maintain solid economic cooperation as evidenced by the presence of several South African companies in Zambia. Improved cooperation in a variety of areas such as air services and infrastructural development present economic opportunities to the South African private sector and parastatals.

In October 2014, President Zuma, sent a message of condolences to the Government and people of the Republic of Zambia following the passing of President Michael Chilufya Sata. President Sata belongs to the generation of leaders produced by Zambia during the colonial times and gallantly pursued the anti-colonial struggle. His death reminds the people of South Africa of Zambia's immeasurable sacrifice and the sterling leadership role that Zambia played in ridding the African continent of the yoke of colonial domination and apartheid rule.

Zimbabwe

South Africa and Zimbabwe have a common and long history of regional affiliation and cultural ties. Zimbabwe is one of South Africa's main trade partners in Africa and several South African companies operate in Zimbabwe in sectors such as mining, tourism, agriculture, banking, manufacturing and retail.

Uganda

Relations between South Africa and Uganda date back to the time of the struggle against apartheid when Uganda provided support to and solidarity with the South African liberation movement.

Bilateral cooperation between the countries includes trade and investment, defence and security, agriculture, water and environmental affairs, social development, public works and science and technology.

Kenya

South Africa and Kenya occupy key roles in their respective regions on the continent. Relations between the two countries were upgraded to full diplomatic status on 12 April 1994.

The Sixth Ordinary Summit of the ICGLR will take place in the Republic of Kenya on 15 December 2015.

Ethiopia

In October 2014, Deputy President Ramaphosa visited Addis Ababa, where he held talks with major stakeholders to the peace process in South Sudan, including the Chairperson of the AUC, Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma, Ethiopian Prime Minister Hailemariam Desalegn and South Sudanese Vice President Riek Machar.

The visit to Addis Ababa was preceded by another to South Sudan, which saw Deputy President Ramaphosa meeting with South Sudanese President Salva Kiir in Juba.

Bilateral economic relations with Ethiopia were revived in 1995, when South Africa opened an embassy in Addis Ababa. The two countries have a number of bilateral agreements in place that establish a regulatory framework to facilitate political, economic and social interaction such as an agreement on the avoidance of double taxation. The umbrella agreement provides for the establishment of a Joint Ministerial Commission that will meet every two years.

In March 2014, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation lead a delegation to the 2014 Nuclear Security Summit (NSS) in The Hague. Building on the 2010 Washington and 2012 Seoul Summits, the main objective of The Hague Summit was to review progress achieved since the NSS process started in 2010 and to contribute to the strengthening of nuclear security through stronger national measures and improved international cooperation. South Africa's participation in the NSS process is informed by the shared vision of a world free of weapons of mass destruction, and in particular nuclear weapons. The 2014 Nuclear Security Summit took place within this broader framework of South Africa's triple objectives of nuclear disarmament, nuclear non-proliferation, and the peaceful uses of nuclear energy.

Indian Ocean islands

South Africa's political, economic and diplomatic relations with the Comoros, Madagascar, Mauritius and Seychelles remain strong.

In December 2014, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation launched the SADC Election Observer Mission in Port Louis, Republic of Mauritius. Minister Nkoana-Mashabane represented President Zuma, Chairperson of the SADC Organ on Politics, Defence and Security Cooperation.

Relations with central Africa

Gabon

South Africa and Gabon have a legal framework through a cooperation agreement.

Democratic Republic of São Tomé and Príncipe

Diplomatic relations between São Tomé and Príncipe and South Africa were established in May 1994.

Republic of the Congo

In February 2014, the Republic of the Congo bestowed its Order of Merit on Mathews Phisoa at a ceremony in Brazzaville occurring during the 25th anniversary celebrations of the signing of the Brazzaville peace accord, which paved the way for the end of the Angolan civil war and Namibia attaining independence.

In February 2014, President Jacob Zuma, at the invitation of President Denis Sassou-N'guesso, President of the Republic of Congo, undertook a working visit to Brazzaville. President Zuma attended the celebrations of the 25th Anniversary of the Signature of the Brazzaville Accord on Peace in Southern Africa. The occasion marked the end of the Brazzaville negotiations, which ended the Angolan civil war with the signing of the Brazzaville Protocol on 22 December 1988, and prepared the ground for the independence of Namibia and ultimately South Africa. South Africa continues to enjoy cordial bilateral relations with the Republic of Congo. The formal relations between the two countries are structured through the Joint Commission of Cooperation (JCC) as a mechanism to monitor and guide the implementation of agreements.

Equatorial Guinea

In June 2014, President Zuma concluded a working visit to Equatorial Guinea, where he led the South African delegation to the 23rd Ordinary Session of the AU Assembly (AU Summit) under the theme: "2014 Year of Agriculture and Food Security in Africa." An emerging issue identified by the AU leaders was the need for young people

to appreciate the importance of agriculture in the economy of their countries. African leaders also noted with concern that women are still involved in subsistence farming. Women must take the lead in agriculture and contribute to this growing economic activity, which is vital for dealing with food security.

The AU Heads of State and Government also discussed peace and security matters, in particular the mobilisation of resources and operationalisation of the African Capacity for Immediate Crisis (ACIRC). In this regard, countries that have volunteered to contribute resources to the ACIRC met during the summit to discuss the state of readiness of the ACIRC. The AU Summit took decisions on key issues on the agenda pertaining to development, peace and security, climate change and the mobilisation of resources. The finalisation of the Agenda 2063 Continental Framework, as part of the vision of Africa in the next 50 years and the Common African Position on the Post-2015 Development Agenda, were part of the outcomes of the summit.

Cameroon

Cameroon is the economic hub of the Central African Region and exports commodities to most countries of the zone. The seaport of Doulla in Cameroon is used to export goods to landlocked countries in the region such as Chad and the Central Africa Republic (CAR). Many South African companies have already seized business opportunities there. Cameroon is a member of the AU, has adopted Nepad programmes and subscribes to the MDGs. In pursuit of South Africa's regional economic integration and developmental agenda for the continent, Cameroon has been identified as a strategic partner.

Guinea

The Joint Commission for Cooperation (JCC) between the Republic of Guinea and South Africa, took place at the OR Tambo Building, Pretoria, in April 2014. South Africa enjoys a long-standing relationship with the Government and the people of Guinea, solidified by the unconditional support that the people of Guinea extended to the people of South Africa during the time of the struggle against apartheid.

Central African Republic

In April 2014, the AU welcomed the establishment of a UN peacekeeping operation in the CAR.

The UNSC adopted a resolution during the same month authorising the establishment of a nearly 12 000-strong UN peacekeeping

In October 2014, the Ministry of Foreign Affairs of the State of Eritrea and the Embassy of South Africa in Asmara hosted the launch of the Eritrea – South Africa Festival (ERISA) The event took place with the theme “People, Liberation and Development.” This launch event paved the way for a range of activities in Eritrea to celebrate 10 years since the establishment of the Embassy of South Africa in Asmara. The planned range of activities included ERISA films, public lectures, handicraft/design/fashion event, food and music festival, and a mining seminar. Activities were arranged jointly with a number of institutions, such as the Eritrean Institute of Technology, the Marine Sciences College of Massawa, the Eritrean National Mining Corporation, the People's Front for Democracy and Justice's Political, Cultural and Economics departments, EriTV, the National Union of Eritrean Youth and Students, as well as the National Union of Eritrean Women.

operation – the UN Multidimensional Integrated Stabilisation Mission in Central African Republic (MINUSCA) – to protect civilians and facilitate humanitarian access in the war-torn country.

The mission took over the responsibilities of the African-led International Support Mission (MISCA) from September 2014. The establishment of the new UN mission would mark a new step in the international community's efforts to assist the CAR overcome the challenges confronting it.

In particular, MISCA, with the support of the French Operation ‘Sangaris’ and the planned EUFOR-RCA, would continue to lead the ongoing efforts to complete the initial stabilisation phase, building on the significant progress made on the ground, so as to create conditions conducive to the success of MINUSCA.

Burundi

In November 2014, President Jacob Zuma hosted President Pierre Nkurunziza of the Republic of Burundi who undertook a two-day State Visit to South Africa. This was President Nkurunziza's first State Visit to South Africa since his assumption of office in 2005. The visit enhanced existing cordial relations between South Africa and Burundi. South Africa actively supported Burundi's quest for peace and democracy.

President Zuma took over from President Nelson Mandela in 2000 as the mediator in the Burundi peace talks. Then Deputy President Zuma led the protracted but successful mediation process, which led to a resolution of the Burundi conflict and the ushering of a new government in 2005. The highlights of the mediation process led by President Zuma included a key achievement for the African continent, the deployment of South African peacekeeping troops in Burundi for seven years, 2003 to 2009.

This became the first-ever AU peacekeeping force. To turn this historic bond into stronger socio-

economic ties, President Zuma and President Nkurunziza discussed further cooperation in priority areas such as trade, health, arts and culture, mining, agriculture, higher education and defence. Two bilateral agreements were signed during the visit. A South Africa-Burundi Business Forum aimed at increasing trade and investment between the two countries met in Cape Town during the visit.

The two Presidents used the occasion of the State Visit to exchange views in respect of developments at regional level, both with regard to the East African Community and the SADC, as well as discussed broad issues affecting the continent within the context of the AU. They also discussed enhanced cooperation in dealing with multilateral issues such as reform of global institutions of governance such as the UNSC and the Bretton Woods Institutions.

Rwanda

In March 2014, the South African Government expelled four Rwandan diplomats and one from Burundi for violating their status. Investigations revealed direct links between these diplomats and criminal activities. The action targeted only those who violated the Vienna Convention, Article 41 and South Africa's own Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges Act. The Ambassador of Rwanda, the Military Attaché and other functionaries in the Rwanda Diplomatic Mission in Pretoria are in place and functioning normally.

Regrettably, the Rwandan Government reciprocated disproportionately by expelling all South African diplomats except the Ambassador thus making the work of the mission in Rwanda difficult as it cannot discharge its services that South Africans and Rwandans normally receive.

Relations with North and West Africa and the Horn of Africa

Algeria

South Africa and Algeria continue to work hand-in-hand in building a stronger AU and its structures. To this end, regional developments such as the Mali and CAR crises and the general security situation in the Sahel and Maghreb regions also featured prominently in the consultations with President Bouteflika.

In May 2014, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation attended the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) Ministerial Conference, in Algiers, Algeria.

Saharawi

Formal diplomatic relations were established at ambassador level in 2004. South Africa continues to render political support and humanitarian

assistance to the Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic. Under the African Renaissance Fund (ARF) South Africa coordinates several projects that aim to benefit the Saharawi population. These include a contribution to a landmine clearance project in the east of the territory and construction of a sport development complex in the territory.

South Africa's international solidarity and support for the self-determination of Western Sahara is based on the following principles:

- The principles of multilateralism and international legality in seeking a just, lasting and mutually acceptable political solution, which will provide for the self-determination of the people of Western Sahara.
- The centrality of the AU and UN in the resolution of the conflict.
- The Constitutive Act of the AU, in particular the principle of the sanctity of inherited colonial borders in Africa and the right of peoples of former colonial territories to self-determination and independence.
- Respect of international human rights law in the occupied territories, notable the right to freedom of association, assembly, movement and expression.
- Respect of international humanitarian law and support for the provision of humanitarian assistance to the Saharawi refugees in a way that is predictable, sustainable and timely.
- An end to the illegal exploration and exploitation of the natural resources of Western Sahara in the illegally occupied territory and the discouragement of the involvement of foreign companies in such activities.
- Support for the integration and stability of the Maghreb Union as a building block of the AU.

Mauritania

In August 2014, Deputy President Ramaphosa, represented President Jacob Zuma at the inauguration ceremony of the President-Elect, Mahomed Ould Abdel Aziz, of the Islamic Republic of Mauritania, in Nouakchott, Mauritania. The inauguration ceremony was the culmination of the 21 June 2014 elections that saw the incumbent President re-elected for a second term with more than 80% majority vote.

South Africa made a constructive contribution in Mauritania in support of the implementation of the democratic roadmap undertaken by the military transitional government following the coup d'état of August 2005. These efforts contributed to the restoration of constitutional order and stability in Mauritania leading to South Africa's support for the lifting of the AU suspension of the country on 10 April 2007.

In terms of economic relations, progress has been recorded between the two countries in the areas of fisheries and mining. In addition, the Economic Cooperation Agreement that was ready for signature would facilitate the opening of trade and investment opportunities for the two countries.

President Abdel Ould Aziz appointed a special envoy to represent him during the inauguration of President Jacob Zuma on 24 May 2014.

Egypt

South Africa and Egypt have created a political environment that is conducive to business. The visit to Egypt in February 2014, conducted by a South African delegation came to reflect a notable change in South Africa's position on Egypt and its revolution, and to contain the tension in the relations between the two countries. It aims to restore the historic relationship and to develop bilateral relations without excluding the other party.

The major expected change in this regard is South Africa's approval of Egypt's return to its position in the AU to restore its role in the different African organisations.

South Africa's total exports to Egypt by the end of 2014 reached R973 million, whereas imports from Egypt recorded R659 million at the end of 2014. South Africa's exports to and imports from Egypt are mainly mineral products and prepared foodstuffs.

Côte d'Ivoire

South Africa is committed to working with the government of Côte d'Ivoire in its quest for national unity and reconciliation.

South Sudan

South Sudan and South Africa upgraded the missions in their respective capitals to fully fledged embassies. By January 2014, South Africa had trained more than 1 600 government officials from South Sudan as part of a capacity-building programme within the context of the AU PCRD initiative.

Various engagements with senior Sudanese and South Sudanese officials to discuss the negotiation process illustrated South Africa's ongoing support to the AU negotiations between Sudan and South Sudan over post-independence issues.

In January 2014, the South African Government welcomed the signing of Agreements on the Cessation of Hostilities and the Status of Detainees, under the auspices of the Intergovernmental Authority on Development (IGAD), by the Government of the Republic of South Sudan and the Sudan People's Liberation Movement/

In February 2014, the International Solidarity Conference on Cuba, Western Sahara and Palestine, hosted by the Parliament of South Africa, took place at the Good Hope Chamber.

Army. South Africa views the signing of the agreements as key developments in resolving the political differences in South Sudan and crucial moves to bring the country back onto the road to development and stability.

In March 2014, Deputy President Cyril Ramaphosa, the Special Envoy to South Sudan, concluded his visit to South Sudan and some countries that are part of the Inter-Governmental Authority on Development (IGAD) involved in the efforts to find a resolution to the ongoing conflict in South Sudan. The Deputy President undertook this visit to familiarise himself with the unfolding events in South Sudan and to meet with key role-players. To this end, Mr Ramaphosa met with the President of South Sudan, Mr Salva Kiir Mayardit, cabinet ministers, leaders of Sudan People's Liberation Movement (SPLM) and other stake holders.

Mr Ramaphosa also paid courtesy calls on President Yoweri Museveni of Uganda, Prime Minister Hailemariam Desalegn of Ethiopia and Ambassador Seymour who facilitated the South Sudanese talks on behalf of the IGAD.

In December 2014, President Zuma, hosted the President of the Republic of South Sudan, Salva Kiir Mayardit, who undertook a working visit to South Africa within the context of consolidating the African Agenda through the enhancement and deepening of bilateral political, economic and social relations.

The visit was aimed at strengthening the already existing cordial relations between South Africa and South Sudan, which are anchored on the agreement establishing bilateral relations, signed in September 2011.

Since the signing of the Comprehensive Peace Agreement in 2005, South Africa has been actively supportive of AU Post-Conflict Reconstruction and Development (PCRD) projects in both Sudan and South Sudan under the umbrella of the AU Ministerial Committee on PCRD, which South Africa chairs.

By 2014, and as part of a capacity-building programme taking place within the context of the AUPCRD, more than 1 600 officials from the Government of South Sudan have been trained by the Government of South Africa. The training ranges across a spectrum of fields such as policing, justice, communications and foreign services.

With regard to bilateral trade, South Sudan represents a growing export market for South African goods into the Horn of Africa.

The two Presidents used the occasion to exchange views on the latest developments on the continent and globally. President Kiir briefed President Zuma on the ongoing peace process in South Sudan, which is facilitated by the Intergovernmental Authority for Development (IGAD).

Somalia

In January 2013, South Africa pledged its support for Somalia's new government and the country on its road towards a prosperous and stable democracy.

Nigeria

Nigeria is considered one of South Africa's most important partners in pursuing the vision of African renewal. As two of the strongest economies in Africa, cooperation between the two countries is pivotal to the growth of the continent.

The South African Government sympathised with the next of kin, relatives, friends and communities of the deceased South Africans who lost their lives at the Synagogue Church of all Nations in Lagos, Nigeria, on 12 September 2014. DIRCO arranged that the mortal remains were brought to South Africa on a single flight properly equipped for this task. Government identified appropriate facilities where the mortal remains were taken to upon arrival; and it was at these facilities where families received the mortal remains.

Ghana

South Africa participated in a National Pavilion at the Ghana International Trade Fair in 2014.

Burkina Faso

South Africa and Burkina Faso are working on a draft MoU on economic and technical cooperation, and a draft agreement between the Chamber of Commerce and Industry of Burkina Faso and Business Unity South Africa.

In October 2014, the Government of South Africa expressed its concern the ongoing political developments in the Republic of Burkina Faso. South Africa joined the call made by the AU on the Government of Burkina Faso to respect the wishes of the people, as well as the prevailing Constitution of the Republic of Burkina Faso. South Africa reminded all those involved in the developments in Burkina Faso of the AU's position of rejecting unconstitutional changes of government.

Cape Verde

Bilateral discussions on a General Cooperation Agreement, lead to the signing of a Joint

Commission for Cooperation (JCC), early in 2013.

Senegal

South Africa and Senegal continue to play an important role in promoting peace and stability through participating in peacekeeping operations in their regions.

Tunisia

In January 2014, the South African Government congratulated the people of the Republic of Tunisia on the adoption of their new constitution. Three years since the revolution of 14 January 2011, and just over two years since the start of their mandate, the elected representatives of the people of Tunisia have shown the world the value of dialogue, consultation and consensus.

Despite many challenges to the security and stability of the country and the region, the people, elected officials and government of Tunisia have remained steadfast in their determination to reach this significant milestone in their quest for the establishment of a democratic dispensation.

South Africa remains committed to support democratic transition in Africa as well as in the Middle East and North African regions through sharing of its own experiences of its own democratic transition 20 years ago.

Relations with Asia and the Middle East The People's Republic of China

South Africa and China have enjoyed 16 years of formal diplomatic relations.

South Africa is China's largest trading partner in Africa and the bilateral trade volume accounts for more than a quarter of China-Africa trade.

According to the Beijing Declaration, China and South Africa will work together to improve the structure of bilateral trade by encouraging the trade of high value-added manufactured goods and increasing China's investment in South Africa.

The two sides will continue to deepen their cooperation in infrastructure development, including the construction of roads, railways, ports, power plants, airports and housing.

China and African countries have pledged to ensure the full implementation of the proposals enshrined in the Beijing Action Plan 2013 to 2015 of the Forum on China-Africa Cooperation (FOCAC).

South Africa has taken over co-chairmanship of the FOCAC from Egypt, on behalf of Africa, for the next six years. The forum is one of the most strategic partnerships between Africa and its development partners.

The sixth Ministerial Conference of the FOCAC will be held in Johannesburg, South Africa in 2015.

In September 2014, the Minister International Relations and Cooperation, Ms Maite Nkoana-Mashabane, went to Beijing, People's Republic of China, to co-chair the first meeting of the South Africa-China Inter-Ministerial Joint Working Group on Cooperation. During the State visit to South Africa by President Xi Jinping in March 2013, the "Terms of Reference of the South Africa-China Inter-Ministerial Joint Working Group on Cooperation" were signed. The objectives of the Joint Working Group on Cooperation were to monitor the implementation of cooperative projects, manage and solve challenges, which may arise during the implementation of such projects and further elevate bilateral economic relations through the deepening of practical cooperation.

South Africa-China bilateral relations have enjoyed phenomenal progress in the space of 15 years and have grown from a partnership to a strategic partnership and subsequently to a comprehensive strategic partnership. South Africa and China have committed to building, developing and strengthening relations based on shared principles of friendship and mutual trust; equality and mutual benefit; coordination; mutual learning; and working together for development.

The objectives of the Joint Working Group on Cooperation are to:

- achieve a more equitable trade balance
- encourage trade in manufactured value-added products
- increase inward-bound trade and investment missions
- finalise the working group on trade statistics
- increase investment in South Africa's manufacturing industry
- promote value-adding and beneficiation activities in close proximity to the source of raw materials
- cooperate and provide mutually beneficial technical support in the areas of the green economy, skills development and industrial financing
- pursue opportunities to cooperate in infrastructure construction projects such as roads, railways, ports, power generation, airports and housing.

The overall aim of South Africa's approach was to use this mechanism to address inequality, poverty and unemployment, through enhancing bilateral economic relations.

In December 2014, President Jacob Zuma was on a State Visit to the People's Republic of China. President Xi Jinping paid a State Visit to

In December 2014, the Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation of South Africa, Mr. Luwellyn Landers, attended the 100th Session of the African Caribbean and Pacific (ACP) Group Ministerial Council Meeting in Brussels. This historic session of the ACP considered the final report on the future perspectives of the 79-member strong ACP Group. Changing global circumstances have dictated that the group reinvents itself and carve a new, dynamic independent identity. The meeting also served as a platform for an exchange of ideas on poverty eradication and sustainable development within the rubrics of on-going debates for a Post-2015 Development Agenda and a Climate Change compact.

South Africa in March 2013, when the two leaders agreed to designate 2014 as the "Year of South Africa in China" and 2015 as the "Year of China in South Africa." The "Year of South Africa in China" coincided with South Africa's celebration of 20 years of freedom and democracy.

The overall objective of the "Year of South Africa in China" 2014, was to profile South Africa's political, economic, social and cultural achievements since the advent of a first democratic government in South Africa in 1994.

The year also sought to explore more economic opportunities and also showcase South Africa's innovations and best practices in various sectors such as science and technology, mining, arts and culture, tourism and people to people interaction.

South Africa and China share a sound political relationship, which can be used to lay the basis for implementing South Africa's economic objectives. China has become South Africa's single largest trading partner in the world, and South Africa has become China's largest trading partner in Africa.

Some of the objectives of President Zuma's State Visit to China were to:

- review the status of bilateral relations with the People's Republic of China to ensure that the strategic relationship already defined is further strengthened, focussing on the priority issues of development in South Africa and Africa
- adopt the China-South Africa 5-10 Year Framework on Cooperation that will further entrench the implementation of agreements entered into since the conclusion of the Beijing Declaration in 2010 and expand on the Comprehensive Strategic Partnership
- discuss ways of supporting our industrialisation agenda by agreeing to invest in the development of Science and Technology, agro-processing; mining and mineral beneficiation, renewable energy, finance and tourism
- review progress in the locomotive procurement project, particularly cooperation in equipment manufacturing and the localisation of procurement through joint ventures with South African companies

- review progress with cooperation on infrastructure development
- ensure that relations with China remain central to realising South Africa's developmental agenda through its foreign policy
- continue to partner with China in addressing Africa's developmental agenda through co-chairship of FOCAC until 2018.

The establishment of the BRICS Development Bank in 2014 to be headquartered in Shanghai and the decision to locate its African Regional Centre in South Africa not only raised the level of cooperation between China and South Africa in addressing global challenges, but it was another clear indicator of South Africa's growing significance in driving the African Agenda.

China regards South Africa as a key partner in advancing its relations with Africa. While the two countries are strikingly different in their cultural, political and socio-economic orientation, they are very close in the positions they take on key issues affecting mankind. Both appreciate the importance of strengthening cooperation based on respect for each other's core values and interests.

Mongolia

South Africa and Mongolia could work together to meet that country's international commitments on climate change.

Mongolia's vast coal reserves offer an opportunity for collaboration on clean coal technologies. South Africa's coal-to-liquid technology would mitigate and possibly reduce the country's contribution to greenhouse gases.

East Asia

Japan

In 2014, Japan and South Africa celebrated 104 years of official relations. Japan is South Africa's third-largest trading partner with the two countries cooperating in various fields such as training and skills development.

The Tokyo International Conference on African Development (TICAD) is a strategic partnership between Africa and Japan that was launched in 1993, with a view to serve as a consultative forum for development assistance to Africa.

In September 2014, President Zuma conveyed a message of condolence to the Government and people of Japan, following the loss of life of Japanese hikers because of the volcano eruption at Mount Ontake on 27 September 2014.

Republic of Korea (ROK)

Formal diplomatic relations between South Africa and the ROK were established in December 1992. Increasingly the focus of the bilateral

relationship is on economic and business links.

The ROK is South Africa's fourth-largest trading partner in Asia, while South Africa is the ROK's largest trading partner in Africa. Trade between the two countries encompasses a wide variety of products ranging from minerals to sophisticated high-technology electric products.

In October 2014, the Deputy Minister International Relations and Cooperation, Nomandinya Mfeketo, undertook a working visit to the ROK. Deputy Minister Mfeketo co-chair the eighth Policy Consultative Forum together with the Deputy Minister for Political Affairs of the ROK, LEE Kyung-soo, in Seoul, Korea.

Its national interests and priorities, its regional and continental commitments, as well as its aspirations for a prosperous world at peace with itself informed South Africa's participation in the Policy Consultative Forum. During the Policy Consultative Forum, Deputy Minister Mfeketo conveyed the priorities of the Government of South Africa as outlined in the National Development Plan (NDP), South Africa's roadmap to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality by 2030. South Africa and the ROK share similar views on the importance of multilateralism. The ROK provides ongoing support for the continued development of Africa through the Korea-Africa Forum. The next Korea-Africa Forum is scheduled for 2015.

Korea is South Africa's fourth largest trading partner in Asia and South Africa is Korea's largest trading partner in Africa. Korea enjoyed a favourable trade balance with South Africa in 2013 – approximately R6,1 billion. Total trade in 2013 was R30,2 billion, with South African exports to Korea in the region of R12,1, and South African imports from Korea in the region of R18,1 billion.

Democratic People's Republic of Korea (DPRK)

South Africa established diplomatic relations with the DPRK in August 1998. The two countries enjoy cordial relations, which date back due to the historic support that the DPRK provided during the struggle against colonialism and apartheid. The South African ambassador to China is also accredited to the DPRK's capital, Pyongyang.

Economic relations between the two countries remain limited owing to the sanctions imposed by the UNSC because of the DPRK's nuclear programme, which affects the ongoing tension in the Korean Peninsula.

Central Asia

There is no South African representation in Uzbekistan, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan, and

Kyrgyzstan, but the South African ambassador in Turkey is accredited to these countries on a non-resident basis.

Kazakhstan

Kazakhstan and South Africa established diplomatic relations in March 1992. The South African Embassy in Kazakhstan was opened in December 2003 in Almaty, and relocated to Astana in February 2008.

South Africa and Kazakhstan have substantial economic interests, which overlap in several important areas such as trade, the production and collaborative marketing of strategic minerals, technology exchange, machine production, as well as oil procurement for South Africa.

Azerbaijan

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Azerbaijan were established in 1991.

The South African Embassy in Ankara, Turkey, is accredited on a non-residential basis to Azerbaijan. Azerbaijan opened a new embassy in South Africa in January 2012.

In February 2014, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation hosted the Minister of Foreign Affairs of the Republic of Azerbaijan, Mr Elmar Mammadyarov. The objectives of the visit were to strengthen bilateral political and economic relations as well as cooperation in defence, energy, education and skills development. The visit was the first official visit of an Azerbaijan Foreign Minister to South Africa.

Turkey

South Africa's major exports to Turkey comprise mineral products, base metals, machinery and mechanical appliances, electrical equipment, chemical and allied products, vehicles, aircraft, iron and steel, organic chemicals, ores, slag and ash.

In November 2014, Deputy President Ramaphosa attended the second Africa-Turkey Summit in Equatorial Guinea. The summit took place around the theme "New Model of partnership for the strengthening of sustainable development and integration" discussed among other key issues, the matrix of the key projects, an implementation plan as well as summit outcomes declaration. While Africa proposed a number of projects for consideration, the key focus of the Africa-Turkey matrix projects is focused on the following areas:

- peace and security looking into counter-terrorism and the training of national police forces
- trade and investment focussing on capacity building
- culture, tourism and education

- youth empowerment
- technology transfer
- rural economy and agriculture
- infrastructure, energy, ICT and transport

The summit was preceded by a ministerial and senior government officials meetings whose recommendations served as a basis for discussions and decision-making by heads of states and government culminating in the adoption of the summit declaration. Deputy President Ramaphosa also held several bilateral discussions on the margins of the summit.

South Asia

South Africa's economic strategy is strongly focused on deepening trade and investment linkages with the south, particularly with countries that offer potential for future growth and where synergies and complementarities in products and technologies exist.

In South Asia, South Africa enjoys cordial relations with India, Pakistan, Sri Lanka, Bangladesh, Nepal, Afghanistan and the Maldives.

India

South Africa and India enjoy strong historical relations that have been formalized through various bilateral and multilateral mechanisms. The two countries share membership of multilateral groupings such as BRICS, IBSA and the G20.

In May 2014, President Zuma congratulated the Prime Minister-elect of India, Mr Narendra Modi, on his successful election.

Pakistan

Pakistan and South Africa enjoy cordial, bilateral relations.

South Africa views Pakistan as an important role-player in the international arena and South Africa welcomes the strengthening of democracy in Pakistan. South Africa has identified additional avenues of cooperation regarding law enforcement issues, an Extradition Treaty, an Agreement on Mutual Legal Assistance in Criminal Matters, an MoU on Cooperation in Combating the Illicit Trafficking in Narcotics, Drugs, Psychotropic Substances and Precursor Chemicals.

Sri Lanka

Bilateral trade between Sri Lanka and South Africa has seen a steady increase in growth in both exports and imports.

In July 2014, Deputy President Cyril Ramaphosa was in Sri Lanka for an official visit in his capacity as special envoy of President Zuma. The Deputy President's visit to Sri Lanka follows two earlier visits to South Africa by senior delegations from

both the Sri Lankan Government and the Tamil National Alliance respectively in February and April 2014. Both these delegations also met Deputy President Ramaphosa and invited him to visit Sri Lanka.

South-East Asia

Strengthening South-South relations remains an important pillar of South Africa's foreign policy, especially in Asia, a region that has surpassed the EU as the country's biggest trading partner.

Thailand

During the past two decades, Thailand has become South Africa's biggest trading partner in Southeast Asia and South Africa has become Thailand's biggest trading partner on the continent.

Thailand is also the second most important destination for South African tourists.

Malaysia

Malaysia remains the largest investor in South Africa from the Southeast Asian region.

Since 1994, Malaysia has assisted more than 300 South Africans in their studies that range from short courses to full scholarships for degrees in engineering and information technology.

A number of South African universities have signed MoUs with their Malaysian counterparts.

Singapore and Indonesia

In December 2014, the Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Nomandiyi Mfeketo, paid an official visit to Singapore and Indonesia.

In Singapore, Deputy Minister Mfeketo met with her Singaporean counterpart, Deputy Minister Zukifli Bin Masagos, where South Africa and Singapore bilateral relations were discussed. Issues discussed during the meeting, were the upcoming Foreign Office Consultations, scheduled for January 2015, engaging and involving other government departments such as the dti and education.

Collaboration on tourism was identified as area of closer cooperation and Singapore expressed a keen interest in signing the Bilateral Air Services Agreement with South Africa. Singapore also indicated an interest in importing meat and vegetables from South Africa. The two leaders also discussed the impact of the Ebola virus on trade and tourism with African countries. They recognised the need for the two countries to exchange visits of political principals and trade delegations. Collaboration with the Singapore Civil Service College was acknowledged. Deputy Minister Masagos also underscored the

importance of BRICS to Singapore as there are areas that the two countries can collaborate on within the context of BRICS.

The Deputy Minister concluded her visit with a luncheon with the Singapore Business Federation.

In Indonesia, Deputy Minister Mfeketo delivered the inaugural Sheik Yusuf Memorial Lecture at the Sultan Hasanuddin University in Makassar. The aim of the lecture was to celebrate 20 years of freedom in South Africa and the relevance of Sheikh Yusuf to the bilateral relations between South Africa and Indonesia. It is hoped that the lecture will become a key annual event during which South Africa and Indonesia can demonstrate a shared commitment to strengthen and sustain the enduring historical relations that exist between the two countries.

Whilst in Indonesia, the Deputy Minister also held a meeting with the Deputy Governor of South Sulawesi, Mr Arisin Numang. During the meeting, the province of South Sulawesi was congratulated on the re-election of Mr Yusuf Kalla as Vice-President of Indonesia, who is from Makassar. The Deputy Minister used the opportunity to encourage members of the Indonesian private sector to consider South Africa as a destination of choice for investment, trade and tourism.

Deputy Minister Mfeketo also met with the Mayor of Makassar, Mr Ramdhn Pomanto, and the Rector of Sultan Hasanuddin University. Discussions at these meetings touched on trade and investment, tourism and the proposal for a Twinning Agreement between the Western Cape and South Sulawesi Provinces. The Deputy Minister was also updated on the construction of the Nelson Mandela and Sheik Yusuf statues in both Makassar, to honour the legacies of these two icons. During the meeting with the Rector of Sultan Hasanuddin University, Prof Dr Dwia Ariestina Palubulu MA, Deputy Minister called for the strengthening of ties between South African institutions of higher learning and their counterparts in Indonesia.

Vietnam

Over the past 20 years, the relationship between South Africa and Vietnam has grown into a multifaceted relationship with growing cooperation in many fields, rapid growth in people-to-people links and strong state-to-state and government-to-government relations, which includes cooperation at many levels – bilateral, as well as multilateral.

Political relations with Vietnam are strong, with a substantial exchange of high-level visits between the two countries over the past few years.

The protection of South Africa's wildlife, particularly the rhino, has been high on the agenda of discussions with Vietnam.

Regarding cooperation in the field of wildlife protection, the two countries shared concerns about the illegal trade in protected wildlife species and products, especially rhino, and agreed to work together to put an end to this issue.

Brunei-Darussalam, Cambodia, Lao PDR, and Timor-Leste

South Africa's political relations with Brunei-Darussalam, Cambodia, Lao PDR and Timor-Leste are cordial and friendly.

Myanmar

Like the rest of the international community, South Africa has welcomed the political reform process underway in Myanmar and has supported all efforts aimed at opening up the political space for participation by all the people of Myanmar through the political parties of their choice.

Philippines

The South African government established formal diplomatic relations with the Philippines in November 1993. The Philippine Embassy in Pretoria was established in June 1994. South Africa, in turn, established an embassy in Manila in December 2004.

Relations between South Africa and the Philippines are strong both at bilateral and multilateral levels. Both countries are influential in organisations of the south, including the NAM and the G77+China.

On the economic front, both countries have undertaken efforts to enhance bilateral trade and commercial relations.

Australasia and the Pacific islands

Australia

South Africa and Australia have a history of productive cooperation across a range of sectors and issues, including fisheries protection, mining, law enforcement, sport, tourism, education and training in fields such as ICT, public administration, mining and resources management, defence relations and customs cooperation.

Australia is the sixth-largest export destination for South African goods. The majority of exports from South Africa to Australia are finished goods. Exports of high-quality passenger motor vehicles head the list.

With its renewed focus on Africa, Australia has committed to work together with the African continent to address development challenges in

such areas as human resource development, mining and resources management and infrastructure development.

South Africa and Australia work closely together for the benefit of third countries such as Zimbabwe in the areas of sanitation and revenue collection.

South Africa and Australia also work closely together at multilateral level in organisations and institutions such as the Commonwealth, the UN and the Cairns Group particularly on issues that affect African.

In October 2014, the Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Ms Nomaindiya Mfeketo, delivered the opening statement at the 14th Meeting of the Council of Ministers of Indian Ocean Rim Association (IORA), Perth, Australia.

New Zealand

At bilateral level, South Africa and New Zealand enjoy close cooperation in business, tourism, agriculture, disarmament, fisheries, environmental protection, indigenous people and human rights issues.

In sport, South Africa and New Zealand have strong ties – especially in rugby and cricket, but in recent years also soccer.

The two countries enjoy productive cooperation at multilateral level. Both countries are members of the Valdivia Group (Group of Temperate Southern Hemisphere Countries on Environment), which aims to promote the Southern Hemisphere's views in international environmental meetings and enhance scientific cooperation.

The two countries also enjoy a close working relationship within the context of the Antarctic Treaty and Southern Indian Ocean Fisheries Agreement, and interact regularly within the context of the World Trade Organisation and the Cairns Group.

Relations with the Middle East

South Africa's relationship with the Arab States remains cordial, with ongoing engagements at various political and economic levels that are anchored by the strategic objective of strengthening South-South relations.

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

South Africa is committed to maintaining cordial diplomatic and trade relations with the UAE. South African companies have made a major contribution to the development of the UAE economy with over 200 of them having representative offices in the UAE.

The potential for greater interaction between the two countries is enhanced through the 56

weekly flights between South Africa and the UAE. South Africa and the UAE have signed five bilateral agreements, which provide the framework for cooperation.

Iran

South Africa and Iran have established a Joint Bilateral Commission (JBC) to allow for a high-level review of existing bilateral relations and to consider ways in which these could be expanded.

The JBC, chaired by South Africa's Minister of International Relations and Cooperation and Iran's Minister of Economic Affairs and Finance, meets alternatively in South Africa and Iran biannually. The JBC is regarded as one of South Africa's most successful and longest-running bilateral mechanisms. Several South African companies are involved in major projects in Iran.

South Africa maintains a friendly relationship with Iran, even though the international sanctions imposed against the Islamic Republic have made trade increasingly difficult.

In June 2014, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation went to the Islamic Republic of Iran for a two-day working visit in Tehran. The Minister delivered a keynote address at a seminar under the theme: "20 years of South Africa's freedom and relations between South Africa and the Islamic Republic of Iran."

The objective of the seminar was to share with Iranians, South Africa's holistic, political and constitutional experience; to enhance South Africa-Iran trade relations and investment through the promotion of mutually beneficial investment opportunities; and to develop cultural exchange programmes between South Africa and Iran. During her visit, the Minister participated in the 20th anniversary celebrations of South Africa's freedom and democracy, hosted by the South African Embassy in Tehran. While in Tehran, the Minister met with her Iranian counterpart, Dr Mohammad Javad Zarif, Minister of Foreign Affairs, and paid a courtesy call on the President of the Islamic Republic of Iran, Dr Hassan Rouhani.

Saudi Arabia

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Saudi Arabia were formalised during a visit by former President Nelson Mandela in November 1994. Two missions were established in the kingdom during March of 1995: an embassy with a chargé d'affaires in the capital Riyadh and a consulate-general in the commercial capital of Jeddah.

The consulate-general is responsible for looking after the needs of South African pilgrims

In October 2014, The Glasgow City Council unveiled a statue of former President Nelson Mandela in the City Chambers. This follows an announcement made by Lord Provost of Glasgow City Council on Mandela Day in 2014, that the City had commissioned the bust. At the time of making the announcement, Lord Provost pronounced that the bust will "act as a lasting legacy of former President Mandela and as a permanent reminder of Glasgow's long standing support for the people of South Africa". This ceremony marked exactly 21 years since the City Council awarded former President Mandela with the Freedom of the City in October 1993.

The UK High Commissioner, Mr Obed Mlaba, and its Honorary Consul for the Scotland region, Mr Brian Filling represented the South African Government during the ceremony.

performing Hajj and Umrah duties in the holy cities of Makkah al Mukarramah and Medina al Munawarra.

Saudi Arabia is a fellow G20 member and remains South Africa's largest supplier of crude oil.

Qatar

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and the State of Qatar were established in 1994, strengthened by official visits to Qatar by former presidents Nelson Mandela and Thabo Mbeki, as well as by visits of several Cabinet Ministers.

In terms of trade relations, Qatar has traditionally enjoyed a healthy trade surplus, primarily owing to its export of crude oil and petrochemicals to South Africa.

Kuwait

Kuwait has become an increasingly important market for South African exports and several Kuwaiti companies have made major multimillion-rand investments in the construction and development of hotels and real estate in South Africa, as well as investments on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange.

Iraq

Relations between South Africa and Yemen are cordial, and the two countries share membership of the Indian Ocean Rim Association and the NAM.

In January 2014, the then Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Mr Ebrahim Ebrahim, undertook a working visit to Sana'a, Yemen, to take up the case of Mr Pierre Korkie, a South African citizen kidnapped nine months ago in the city of Taiz. Mr Korkie was kidnapped together with his wife, Yolande, while in Yemen in May 2013. The kidnappers released Yolande on 10 January 2014, and Pierre remained in captivity.

While in Yemen, the delegation held a wide range of meetings, including with representatives

of the Yemeni Security Services; the Deputy Foreign Minister, Dr Ali Muthana Hassan; the Foreign Minister, Dr Abu Bakr Al-Qirbi; the Minister of the Interior, Mr Abdul Qader Qahtari; the Prime Minister, Mr Mohammed Basindwah; and held consultations with the President of Yemen, Abdel-Rabbuh Mansour Hadi.

Arab-Israeli peace process

South Africa supports peace between Israel and the Arab world, which must involve an end to the illegal occupation by Israel of Arab land, namely in Palestine, Syria and Lebanon, which has led to conflict and violence between the peoples of the region over the last six decades.

South Africa does not have a policy aimed at boycotting Israel, but discourages people from visiting Israel because of the country's continued occupation of Palestinian land.

South Africa remains committed to the aspirations of the Palestinian people in their struggle to achieve freedom and independence.

As part of South Africa's contribution to international diplomatic efforts towards the resolution of Israeli-Palestine conflict, the special envoys appointed by President Zuma travelled to Israel and Palestine in June 2014. The delegation conveyed South Africa's grave concern over the escalating violence, the civilian displacement and the deterioration of the humanitarian situation in the Gaza Strip in particular and the West Bank in general.

In Palestine, they met with the Prime Minister Dr Rami Hamdallah-Hamdallah, the Foreign Minister Dr Raid Malki, the Secretary of Fatah's International Relations Commission, Dr. Nabil Shaath State of Palestine to work towards an immediate and unconditional ceasefire and ultimately the resumption of comprehensive negotiations to find a peaceful and lasting solution to the Israel-Palestine conflict. The special envoys congratulated them on the formation of the Unity Government of the Palestinian National Authority and asked them to maintain their unity with Hamas despite the current crisis.

In Israel, the special envoys met the Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs, Mr Tzachi Hanegbi. They shared with him President Zuma's concern with the situation in Gaza. The special envoys requested all to apply maximum restraint, work towards a permanent cease-fire and a solution of the conflict with Palestine.

The special envoys also met with the member of civil society Mr Mustafa Barghouti of the Council of the Palestinian National Initiative and encouraged him and the general members of the civil society to continue working towards a two-state solution.

In October 2014, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation concluded her visit to Cairo in the Arab Republic of Egypt, where she represented the South African Government today in the International Donors' Conference on Palestine, entitled "Reconstructing Gaza." The governments of Egypt and Norway, together with Palestinian President Mahmoud Abbas, hosted the conference, which was aimed at securing financial pledges and other contributions required for reconstructing the Gaza Strip, following the Israeli bombardment and ground invasion of Gaza from 8 July to 26 August 2014, which resulted in large-scale human suffering, displacement and unprecedented material destruction in Gaza. Over 60 countries participated in the conference, including a number of regional and international organisations.

Palestine

South Africa and Palestine have enjoyed warm relations since the inception of democracy, and the establishment of official diplomatic relations between a democratic South Africa and Palestine in 1995.

In May 2014, the Minister International Relations and Cooperation hosted her Palestinian counterpart for bilateral consultations. Some of the issues they discussed were the state of South Africa-Palestine relations, the consolidation of Africa-Palestine relations, and the recent reconciliation agreement reached between Fatah and Hamas, as well as the Middle East Peace Process. The meeting between the Ministers is the culmination of a weeklong programme in support of the UN Declaration of 2014 as the 'International Year of Solidarity with the Palestinian People.' In showing South Africa's support for the Palestinian cause, the South African Government played host to the Palestinian Heads of Mission Conference for African Ambassadors, held in Cape Town in April. In addition, DIRCO also hosted a Palestinian Solidarity Seminar in Cape Town, with the involvement of civil society and academia to create awareness of the Palestinian cause.

In November 2014, President Jacob Zuma received President Mahmoud Abbas of the State of Palestine on his State Visit to South Africa. During his visit, President Abbas conducted bilateral discussions with President Zuma on issues of mutual interest and common concern, bilateral relations between South Africa and Palestine, the Middle East Peace Process, as well as other multilateral issues.

Bilateral relations between Palestine and South Africa are facilitated through a Joint Commission of Cooperation (JCC) that was

established in 1995. Progress in establishing bilateral cooperation agreements proceeded apace, resulting in the signing of nine bilateral cooperation agreements and during President Abbas' State Visit, three agreements were signed, namely:

- Agreement for the Establishment of a Joint Commission Of Cooperation
 - Memorandum of Understanding on Political Consultations
 - Agreement on Higher Education and Training
- In addition, South Africa supports international efforts aimed at the establishment of a viable Palestinian State, existing side by side in peace with Israel within internationally recognised borders, based on those existing on 4 June 1967, with East Jerusalem as its capital.

Syria

In January 2014 the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation accepted an invitation from United Nations Secretary-General Ban Ki-Moon to attend the High Level International Meeting on the Conflict in Syria, scheduled to start in Montreux, Switzerland. The meeting formed part of the Geneva II Peace Conference.

The meeting, was chaired by the UN Secretary-General. It brought selected states and international organisations together in an effort to assist the Syrian parties in ending the violence and achieving a comprehensive agreement for a political settlement, implementing fully the Geneva Communiqué, while preserving the sovereignty, independence, unity and territorial integrity of Syria.

The international meeting was followed by negotiations between the two Syrian parties, facilitated by the UN-League of Arab States Joint Special Representative for Syria, Mr. Lakhdar Brahimi.

Relations with the Americas

United States of America

Formal relations between South Africa and the USA go back as far as 1789, when the USA opened a consulate in Cape Town. South Africa continues to place a high premium on high-level political exchanges.

In March 2014, DIRCO hosted the USA Mission in Pretoria for the fifth Annual Bilateral Forum (ABF) under the United States-South Africa Strategic Dialogue. The ABF was co-chaired by USA Ambassador Patrick H. Gaspard and South African DIRCO Chief Director: North America Ambassador John Davies.

The ABF is a key component of the USA-South Africa Strategic Dialogue, which meets annually to review the depth and breadth of cooperation

between the two nations across a range of bilateral working groups. During the ABF, officials from across the South African Government hosted their counterparts from the USA Mission to review bilateral cooperation in 14 separate areas: basic and higher education, agriculture, health, protocol and administration, economic development, trade and investment, energy, water, environment, transportation, science and technology, defence, and safety and security. Separate sessions during 2014 also addressed cooperation through the African and Global Affairs Working Group.

The USA is a major economic partner for South Africa and continues to feature high on the list of trade and investment partners. There are about 600 companies from the USA trading in South Africa, which provide over 120 000 local jobs. These companies contribute about 30% of all corporate social investment for corporate social projects.

The USA is South Africa's third-largest trading partner and 98% of South Africa's exports enter the USA market duty-free and quota-free under the current dispensation of Agoa and the Generalised System of Preferences.

While the USA is a significant market for South Africa, South Africa is the USA's biggest market in Africa. South Africa is also an important investor in the USA, with the announcement of an investment by Sasol in Louisiana, which could prove to be one of the biggest investments in the history of the USA.

The USA is an important supporter of South Africa's domestic priorities and has made an effort to align its assistance programmes and projects with these. The USA is a major source of official development assistance (ODA) to South Africa, contributing approximately US\$541 million in ODA per year. The major area of focus is health and AIDS in particular. Under the USA President's Emergency Plan for AIDS Relief (Pepfar), South Africa is the 15th largest recipient of foreign aid from the USA.

South Africa has been very successful in using Pepfar funding to address HIV and AIDS.

The USA will reduce its annual assistance from US\$484 to US\$250 by year 2017. The transition plan has a five-year timeline.

The USA regards South Africa as a global model because it is the first country to go from a development assistance-led effort to a country-led approach. Both countries committed that there would be no interruption of treatment and care services during the transition of direct service provision to the South African Government. The USA understands the importance of the African Agenda to South Africa, particularly regional

economic integration, which is the cornerstone of continental integration. Initiatives such as USA trilateral cooperation between the USA and the SADC region and the rest of the continent in the area of food security have been pivotal to this relationship.

In August 2014, President Jacob Zuma addressed the National Press Club, Washington DC, USA on the 20 years of democracy in South Africa.

Canada

Canada has a long-standing and wide-ranging track record of constructive engagement, at bilateral and multilateral levels, in Africa, ranging from peacekeeping and development aid to foreign direct investment (FDI).

About two thirds of South African exports to Canada relate to minerals and mining equipment, with agricultural and chemical products making up the rest. Canada views South Africa as a gateway into the SADC and the rest of Africa.

Canada's involvement in South Africa focuses on strengthening service delivery, HIV and AIDS and rural development.

In June 2014, Canada's minister of international trade, Ed Fast, announced that the Canadian trade finance agency Export Development Canada would open its first African office in Johannesburg in 2015.

Canada chose Johannesburg as the location for its first Export Development Canada (ECD) office because of the city's economic position as the financial gateway to southern Africa. The ECD, through its Johannesburg-based team, would focus on connecting more Canadian businesses, particularly small and medium-sized enterprises (SMEs), to the growing supply chains within intra-African trade. South Africa is Canada's most important commercial and political partner in Africa and is the only country in Africa – and one of only 20 around the world – to be identified by our government's recent Global Markets Action Plan as an 'emerging market with broad Canadian interests.' On-the-ground support in southern Africa would help Canadian SMEs to boost their exports and create jobs and opportunities at home.

The South Africa-Canada Chamber of Commerce would be revitalised to provide a forum for Canadian companies and investors in the country.

There were several areas in which South Africa and Canada could co-operate, including mining, infrastructure, agriculture and education, he said, adding that the success of Africa was critical to the success of the world.

Mexico

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Mexico are good and the two countries work closely together in multilateral forums on issues such as South-South cooperation and nuclear disarmament. South Africa is Mexico's biggest trading partner in Africa.

In October 2014, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation received the Minister of Foreign Affairs of Mexico, Dr José Antonio Meade Kuribreña, for bilateral consultations. The Ministers signed three agreements covering various areas of cooperation between the two countries.

Latin America and the Caribbean

Latin America

The developing countries in Latin America continue to play an important role in international political bodies and formations such as the NAM, the G20 (Brazil and Mexico), BRICS (Brazil), IBSA (Brazil) and the UN. South Africa's business sector has extensive interests in the region, including SAB Miller, AngloGold Ashanti, Naspers, Denel, Sasol, PetroSA.

These relate to exports of capital equipment, intermediary goods and investments as well as a growing presence of South African companies in the service sector.

South Africa's bilateral relations with Latin America and the Caribbean continue to advance the development agenda of the South, and strengthen cooperation among developing countries through active participation in groupings of the south at regional, inter-regional and multilateral levels. In this regard, the need to build stronger and balanced relationships with Latin American and Caribbean countries is of particular importance. South Africa has observer status in Caribbean Community and Common Market (Caricom) and acts as the region's voice in the G20.

Brazil

The presidents of South Africa and Brazil meet regularly to discuss issues of mutual interest. South Africa maintains the view that the Rio+20 Conference, which took place in Brazil, helped to ensure the issue of sustainable development remained a top priority on the agenda of the UN and the international community.

Argentina

Argentina is South Africa's third largest trading partner in the Latin American and Caribbean region after Brazil and Mexico.

Regular Ministerial meetings ensure continuous improvement in bilateral ties.

Chile

Political relations between South Africa and Chile remain sound. The Joint Consultative Mechanism (JCM) continues to serve a constructive purpose in the ongoing political dialogue between the two countries at bilateral, regional and multilateral levels.

From South Africa's perspective, Chile is seen as a "like-minded" country in terms of multilateral relations, North-South and South-South relations.

In August 2014, President Jacob Zuma hosted the President of the Republic of Chile, Dr Michelle Bachelet Jeria, for a State visit to South Africa. This was President Bachelet's first visit to South Africa. The purpose of visit was to strengthen bilateral relations between the two countries.

The Caribbean

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with the countries of the Caribbean. The majority of inhabitants of the Caribbean are of African descent and have strong historical and cultural links to the continent.

South Africa's endeavour in conjunction with the AU and Caricom to strengthen cooperation between Africa and the African Diaspora in the Caribbean has given added impetus to bilateral and multilateral relations.

South Africa attaches importance to strengthening its relations with the Caribbean and developing common positions on global issues such as access to the markets of the industrial north, reform of international institutions and promoting the development agenda and protection of small island states.

Colombia and Ecuador

Colombia and Ecuador are experiencing growing interest from South African companies primarily in the mineral resources sector.

Peru

South Africa is one of the largest investors in Peru, with SABMiller and Anglo American operating in that country.

The main South African exports to Peru are mining equipment, paper and carton, metal sheeting and specialised structural steel.

Venezuela

The two countries have a MoU regarding bilateral consultations. Three MoUs were also signed by PetroSA and Petróleos de Venezuela, which granted PetroSA a block to explore Venezuela's oil reserves.

South African exports to Venezuela consist mainly of ferro-vanadium and related products,

followed by liqueurs. South African imports from Venezuela consist mainly of oil.

Cuba

Cuba remains a strategic partner of South Africa and the region.

South Africa continues to be a beneficiary of Cuba's ongoing assistance in support of the five priorities of the South African Government, through joint programmes in health, labour, social development, housing and infrastructure. One of the success stories is the extensive cooperation between South Africa and Cuba regarding skills development and training.

During 2014, more than 1 828 South African students received medical training in Cuba. So far, more than 420 South Africans from disadvantaged backgrounds have graduated in Cuba as medical doctors, providing much needed primary healthcare services to their local communities. Another 73 final year medical students are doing their final year at South African universities and graduated in 2014. Similarly, 11 South African students have graduated from the International Sport School in Havana and a number of teachers in South Africa have benefitted from the Mathematics and Science skills development programme.

The deployment of Cuban doctors, engineers and technical experts across South African provinces is a demonstration of Cuba's commitment, as is the training on Cuban scholarships, of South African medical students under the auspices of the Health Agreement, and of over 1 000 students, under the Extended Health Agreement. Following the success of cooperation in the sphere of health, various projects are being pursued in areas as diverse as arts and culture, sports, trade, agriculture, education, housing and water affairs.

Cuba's commitment to Africa is evidenced by the presence of Cuban medical brigades in 28 African countries, comprised of more than 1 800 doctors and other health personnel, and close to 2 300 young people from 48 African countries studying in Cuba. A number of trilateral projects involving South Africa and Cuba in Africa have borne fruit in Sierra Leone, Mali and Rwanda.

The Cuban Government's plans to open their economy to foreign investments, emphasises the scope for doing business with Cuba and could form part of the Parliamentary Plan of Action to grow trade with Cuba. South Africa implemented the Economic Assistance Package Agreement in favour of Cuba in 2014. The agreement, signed in 2012 became fully operational before the end of 2013 and approval has been granted by the South African Reserve

Bank for the package to be delivered through the conduct of a series of international payments.

United Kingdom (UK) and Ireland **United Kingdom**

Bilateral relations between South Africa and the UK cover a wide spectrum and have a far-reaching impact.

Cooperation between the two countries is broad and includes health, education, science and technology, energy, the environment, defence, police, arts and culture, and sports and recreation.

There is a healthy flow of investment in both directions.

The UK is recognised as the foremost source of FDI into South Africa, while South African companies equally have made large investments in the UK.

South Africa and the UK have important trade and economic relations, which continue to strengthen, although the global economic crisis has had a significant impact on bilateral trade.

The UK is by far South Africa's most significant source of long-haul tourists, a position it has not relinquished for the past 15 years.

In March 2014, the then Deputy President Kgalema Motlanthe undertook a working visit to the United Kingdom (UK). The visit to the UK was in honour of an invitation extended by the British Government to the South African Government to attend "A Service of Thanksgiving to Celebrate the Life and Work of Nelson Mandela." The Service was held at Westminster Abbey on 3 March 2014.

Ireland

The Republic of Ireland was the only EU member country that did not have full diplomatic relations with South Africa until the dawn of democratic South Africa.

Ireland continues to be a valued source of FDI in the following sectors: business services, alternative/renewable energy, software and IT services, and plastics.

Through the previous and current Irish aid programmes, the Irish Government has been providing development assistance to South Africa, focusing on education and skills development thereby contributing to the promotion of South Africa's national priorities. The current programme has a budget of R39 million per year.

Relations with Europe **European Union (EU)**

Since 1994, building on shared values and mutual interests, South Africa and the EU have

developed a comprehensive partnership based on the Trade, Development and Cooperation Agreement (TDCA).

The SA-EU relationship is guided by the principle that the EU should support South Africa's national, regional and African priorities and programmes to eradicate poverty and underdevelopment.

The EU is South Africa's main development assistance partner.

Benelux countries

The Benelux countries (Belgium, the Netherlands and Luxembourg) remain important trade and investment partners of South Africa, and major providers of tourism. The Netherlands is the second-most important source of FDI into South Africa.

There has been important trilateral cooperation with the Netherlands and Belgium in the past in support of peace and security in Africa, inter alia on capacity building in the Great Lakes Region. Such trilateral cooperation can be further expanded in the future.

There is a regular exchange of views between South Africa and Belgium, as well as with the Netherlands, on the issues and complicated processes necessary to find durable solutions to the conflicts in the region.

Belgium

Relations between South Africa and Belgium are strong and dynamic, covering a number of areas that are important to South Africa's national development objectives. Belgium is South Africa's 12th largest export destination globally and ranks sixth in the world in terms of FDI in South Africa, among other things focusing on mining, green energy, ports, logistics and agriculture.

Belgium has allocated substantial resources to South Africa in the form of ODA since 1994. This support has covered such areas as health, ports management and logistics, education, rural development and further education and training. The budget of the development cooperation programme, which will run up to 2016, is R66 million a year. The Belgian region of Flanders also has a long-standing development programme in South Africa, also with a budget of R66 million per year up to 2016.

The Netherlands

Apart from being the second-most important source of FDI into South Africa, the Netherlands is South Africa's seventh-largest trading partner in the world. The Dutch Government has consistently supported South Africa in terms of bilateral and multilateral relations. A large number

of bilateral agreements have been signed and high-level bilateral Ministerial meetings are held regularly.

In March 2014, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation concluded her working visit to the Kingdom of the Netherlands, where she led a South African Government delegation to the Nuclear Security Summit (NSS), which took place on 24-25 March 2014 in The Hague. Building on the 2010 Washington and 2012 Seoul Summits, the main objective of The Hague Summit was to review progress achieved since the NSS process started in 2010 and to contribute to the strengthening of nuclear security through stronger national measures and improved international cooperation. South Africa has participated in all the Summits. Fifty-three States were represented at the Summit in The Hague. South Africa's participation in the NSS process is informed by the shared vision of a world free of weapons of mass destruction, particularly nuclear weapons, as well as its triple objectives of nuclear disarmament, nuclear non-proliferation and the peaceful uses of nuclear energy. The South African Government remains committed to maintaining effective nuclear security of all nuclear and other radioactive material within South Africa consistent with its national and international obligations.

Luxembourg

Bilateral and economic relations, especially in the financial services and funds sectors, remain strong between Luxembourg and South Africa.

German-speaking countries

Bilateral relations between South Africa and the German-speaking countries cover various issues, including investment and trade, science and technology, defence, culture, the environment, tourism, sport, development cooperation and energy, but also entail multilateral and trilateral engagements.

Germany

In July 2014, DIRCO presented a discussion forum with Mr Markus Meckel, former Foreign Minister of the German Democratic Republic and Member of Parliament after German unification, to discuss the "The Fall of the Berlin Wall and its impact on current events in Europe, Eastern Europe and Germany's role globally."

In November 2014, The Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, hosted and co-chaired together with the German Federal Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Frank-Walter Steinmeier, the eighth session of the South Africa-Germany Bi-National Commission (BNC)

in Pretoria. The BNC consists of nine working committees that report to it and continue meeting between sessions under supervision of lead departments in implementing outcomes of earlier BNCs:

- Foreign and Security Policy Committee
- Culture Committee
- Defence Committee
- Development Cooperation Committee
- Economic Committee
- Environment Committee
- Labour and Social Affairs Committee
- Science and Technology Committee
- Vocational Education and Training Committee

During the BNC, the Ministers reflected on developments in Africa, Europe and the Middle East, where South Africa and Germany have common interest.

Germany is a good partner in terms of offering South Africa technical assistance in agriculture.

Switzerland

Relations between South Africa and Switzerland are based on equal partnership. There are some 200 Swiss companies in South Africa, employing around 36 000 South Africans.

Consultations at the level of deputy ministers of international relations and a Joint Economic Commission at the level of Ministers of trade occur annually.

Switzerland has granted South Africa special status on the Swiss foreign-policy agenda as one of the focus areas for Swiss interests outside Europe.

Switzerland actively contributes to numerous development assistance programmes in South Africa and elsewhere in Africa.

Switzerland remains South Africa's major trading and investment partner in the European Free Trade Association.

Austria

South Africa continues to enjoy cordial bilateral relations with Austria, focused primarily on economic exchanges. South Africa ranks sixth among Austria's overseas trading partners, and is by far Austria's major trading partner in Africa. Some 400 Austrian companies are engaged in trade relations with South African companies. More than 50 Austrian companies have direct investments in South Africa.

Nordic countries

South Africa enjoys good relations with all the Nordic countries – Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway and Sweden. Flowing from the strong grassroots support in these countries for democratisation in South Africa, relations have

been established in virtually every field at both public and official levels. The scope of Nordic development cooperation is broad and has benefited civil society and government.

Relations in the international arena have seen close cooperation on multilateral issues. The Nordic countries are strong supporters of Nepal and are directly involved in conflict resolution and reconstruction projects in Africa. This was reinforced by the signing of the Declaration of Intent on Partnerships in Africa in June 2008, which laid a framework for future trilateral cooperation.

Denmark

Denmark was a very strong supporter of the anti-apartheid struggle and a major force in sanctions and disinvestment. The Danish Government is focusing on renewable energy development in South Africa. This programme has been developed in response to the commitments made in the MoU of October 2011 between Denmark and South Africa and to the Declaration of Intent on the South African Renewable Initiative (SARI) to which Denmark is a co-signatory.

The programme has been designed with the intention of assisting South Africa in implementing its policy of developing a low-carbon economy with special focus on electricity supply.

Norway

In December 2014, the Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Mr Luwellyn Landers co-chaired with his Norwegian counterpart Mr Hans Brattskar, the second South Africa-Norway High Level Consultations (HLC). The South Africa-Norway HLC was established in 2013, to expand relations and stimulate bilateral trade and investment between the two countries at the Deputy Minister level.

The second session of the HLC took place within the context of solid structured bilateral relations between the two countries and the commitment to enhance the North-South dialogue. South Africa and Norway share deep historical relations because of Norway's support for the anti-apartheid struggle. In recognition of this relationship Norway has decided to jointly celebrate the 200 years of their Constitution together with South Africa's 20 years of freedom under the theme: "200 + 20".

Finland

South Africa attaches great importance to its Nordic partners, and this visit provided a platform to further consolidate and strengthen the already cordial relations between South

Africa and Finland. The meeting also served to deepen Africa-Nordic cooperation.

Sweden

In May 2014, DIRCO hosted South African students who received scholarships from Sweden. The students travelled to Sweden to commence their studies in August 2014. The students from across South Africa will pursue their masters studies in a wide range of fields, including sustainable energy, entrepreneurship, global health, international human rights law, child and gender studies and sustainable development. The Swedish Institute funds the programme that offers 10 scholarships a year over a period of three years.

The scholarship programme for 30 students to pursue post-graduate studies in Sweden was agreed to at the Eighth Session of the South Africa-Sweden Bi-national Commission (BNC), which took place in October 2013 in Pretoria. The BNC is co-chaired by South Africa's Deputy President and Sweden's Deputy Prime Minister and takes place on a biennial basis. Bilateral relations between South Africa and Sweden are excellent and have a strong historical basis with Sweden supporting South Africa's struggle for freedom and democracy.

Mediterranean Europe

France

France is a significant trade, investment, tourism and development cooperation partner for South Africa. About 250 French companies have invested in South Africa and employ around 300 000 people.

South Africa will count on France's support in ensuring the effective implementation of the United Nations Resolution 2033, which provides for closer coordination between the Security Council and the AUPSC.

The Kingdom of Spain remains South Africa's strategic partner by continuing cooperation to promote trade and investment, and preserve peace and prosperity in Africa and the world.

In June 2014, President Jacob Zuma congratulated His Majesty, King Felipe VI, on His Majesty's investiture as King of Spain.

President Zuma also expressed his gratitude to His Majesty, King Carlos I, for steering Spain from military dictatorship to democracy and for his personal contribution and mutual support to the further advancement of South Africa-Spain bilateral relations during his reign as King of Spain.

Italy

South Africa's relations with Italy are cordial.

Spain

The Kingdom of Spain remains South Africa's strategic partner by continuing cooperation to promote trade and investment, and preserve peace and prosperity in Africa and the world.

In June 2014, President Jacob Zuma congratulated His Majesty, King Felipe VI, on His Majesty's investiture as King of Spain.

President Zuma also expressed his gratitude to His Majesty, King Carlos I, for steering Spain from military dictatorship to democracy and for his personal contribution and mutual support to the further advancement of South Africa-Spain bilateral relations during his reign as King of Spain.

Greece

South Africa and Greece enjoy traditional and close ties of friendship and cooperation as well as a convergence of views and cooperation on various regional and international issues in general.

Bilateral relations between the two countries continue to grow in a number of strategic and mutually beneficial areas.

Cyprus

South Africa has excellent and long-standing bilateral relations with Cyprus. It has maintained strong ties with Cyprus, partly because of the large and influential Cypriot community in South Africa, of about 60 000 people.

Portugal

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Portugal are cordial and cover many areas, underpinned by the High-level Political Consultative Forum, which provides a platform for the two countries to explore the deepening of relations across the spectrum of South Africa's national priorities, political cooperation, the strengthening of trade and investment and development cooperation.

Bilateral relations between both countries have not reached their full potential especially considering the historical and current political and cultural links between the two countries.

Eastern Europe

The Eastern Europe region is of crucial importance to South Africa's strategic objectives, straddling a wide spectrum of political and economic interests.

The region is well endowed with strategic commodities and minerals that are of vital significance to South Africa's economy.

Cooperation in gas and oil and the peaceful use of nuclear energy can go a long way towards alleviating South Africa's energy needs.

Poland

Polish-South African relations entered a new phase after the fall of apartheid. Poland is regarded as one of the countries in central Europe with great strategic importance to South Africa.

Poland is not only one of the strongest role players in the political and economic arenas in central Europe, but also an emerging power in the EU.

In May 2014, DIRCO, in collaboration with the South African Institute of International Relations (SAIIA), the Embassy of the Republic of Poland to South Africa and the Polish Institute of International Affairs (PISM), hosted a discussion forum entitled "Poland and South Africa towards 2030."

The 20th anniversary of democracy in South Africa and the 25th anniversary of democracy in Poland were both celebrated in 2014. The discussion forum reflected on mutual interest, which will enhance cooperation between South Africa and Poland for a better future within a regional and global framework.

Russian Federation

South Africa regards the Russian Federation as an important strategic partner and close bilateral and multilateral ties exist between the two countries.

With the dissolution of the USSR, South Africa became the first African state to recognise the independence of the Russian Federation. Full diplomatic relations were established between South Africa and the Russian Federation in February 1992.

In August 2014, President Jacob Zuma undertook a working visit to the Russian Federation. The visit came after the successful working visit of President Putin to Durban, South Africa, and President Zuma's working visit to Sochi, Russian Federation, in March and May 2013 respectively, as well as Minister Maite Nkoana-Mashabane's successful working visit to the Russian Federation in September 2013, and the 2014 meeting on the margins of the BRICS Summit in Brazil.

During the bilateral talks, the two Presidents assessed the state of bilateral cooperation, the status and implementation of Intergovernmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation (ITEC) agreements, key trade and investment issues, and the 12th ITEC Session hosted by South Africa during the course of 2014. The visit further strengthened the bilateral relations with a view to consolidating and opening new avenues towards job creation, skills development, exchange and transfer of technology and trade and investment.

The two Presidents focused on developments on international issues of mutual concern, including, the situation in Syria, and the Israel-Palestine matter, as well as developments in Ukraine, which is Russia's neighbour.

In November 2014, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, hosted the Minister of Natural Resources and Environment of the Russian Federation, Mr Sergey Donskoy, in Pretoria. The two Ministers co-chaired the 12th Session of the Joint Intergovernmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation (ITEC) between South Africa and the Russian Federation. The ITEC is a structured mechanism aimed at improving trade and economic relations between South Africa and the Russian Federation, as well as investment, critical skills development and technology exchanges.

Belarus

In September 2014, the Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, Maite Nkoana-Mashabane, received the Minister of Foreign Affairs of the Republic of Belarus, Vladimir Makei, for bilateral consultations in Pretoria.

South Africa and Belarus marked the beginning of an important relationship when the two countries established a working group to facilitate bilateral cooperation in agriculture.





Justice and Correctional Services

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development (DoJ&CD) derives its legislative mandate from a number of different Acts, which cover all the categories of the department's functions. These include:

the establishment and functioning of the Superior Courts, Magistrates' Courts and Specialised Courts; the appointment of judges and other judicial officers, their conditions of service, discipline and training; the establishment and functioning of the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA), the Special Investigating Unit (SIU) and the Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU), the conduct of criminal proceedings, the investigation of organised crime and corruption, and the forfeiture of assets obtained through illicit means; the establishment and functioning of bodies responsible for legal aid, law reform and rule making; the appointment of masters of the high courts and the administration of the Guardian's Fund and deceased and insolvent estates; the regulation and provisioning of legal advisory services to government departments; the promotion, protection and enforcement of certain human rights; the protection of vulnerable groups; and support to Chapter 9 institutions.

The strategic goals of the department relate to ensuring safer communities, fighting corruption and enhancing accountability for all people in South Africa to feel and be safe (Outcome 3).

The department aims to strengthen its leadership role and ensure the effective coordination of the justice, crime prevention and security (JCPS) cluster in the delivery of this outcome.

The department facilitates the effective and efficient resolution of disputes by providing accessible, efficient and quality administrative support, thereby improving the finalisation rates of cases; helping to clear the backlogs of criminal, civil and family matters by the courts and justice service points; providing access to quality guardian and probate services for citizens; and giving the state better access to legal

The DoJ&CD directs its attention to the provision of effective and cost efficient State legal services that anticipate, meet and exceed stakeholder needs and expectations, thereby reducing the exposure of government to legal risk.

The developmental function of the department is to promote the ability of citizens to exercise their constitutional rights by assisting other departments to comply with the Promotion of Administrative Justice Act 3 of 2000.

The strategic goal of the NPA is to improve the delivery of justice for victims of crime.

Department of Justice and Constitutional Development

The DoJ&CD's mandate from the Constitution provides a framework for the effective and efficient administration of justice and to promote constitutional development through the development and implementation of legislation and programmes to advance and sustain constitutionalism and the rule of law. At the same time, the department also provides an enabling environment for the judiciary and constitutional institutions to exercise their constitutional powers and functions freely and independently.

Legislation and policies

In January 2015, the Minister of Justice and Correctional Services introduced the Judicial Matters Amendment Bill in Parliament which intends to enhance organisational efficiency and improve the application of different Acts of Parliament that fall within the justice portfolio.

The amendments contained in the Bill are mostly technical in nature and their impact collectively will contribute to an improved administration of justice.

Some amendments will also bring about cost savings. Others will eliminate prevailing uncertainties that have been identified in practice, while others will give impetus to the independence of the Office of the Chief Justice.

The department administers the Constitution and over 160 principal Acts.

The categories of functions emanating from different legislative instruments relevant to the department are:

- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of the Superior courts, Magistrates' courts and Special courts: the Constitutional Court Complementary Act, 1995 (Act 13 of 1995), the Supreme Court Act, 1959 (Act 59 of 1959), the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1944 (Act 32 of 1944), and the Small Claims Court Act, 1984 (Act 61 of 1984).
- Legislation providing for the appointment of judges and other judicial officers, the conditions of service, discipline and training: the Judges Remuneration and Conditions of Employment Act, 2001 (Act 47 of 2001), the Judicial Service Commission Act, 1994 (Act 9 of 1994) as amended, the South African Judicial Education Institute (SAJEI) Act, 2008 (Act 14 of 2008), and the Magistrates' Act, 1993 (Act 90 of 1993).
- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of the National Prosecuting Authority, the Special Investigating Unit and the Asset Forfeiture Unit; the conduct of criminal proceedings; the investigation of organised crime and corruption; and the forfeiture of assets obtained through illicit means: the NPA Act, 1998 (Act 32 of 1998), the Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act 51 of 1977), the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998 (Act 121 of 1998), the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996 (Act 74 of 1996), and the Witness Protection Act, 1998 (Act 112 of 1998).
- Legislation providing for the establishment and functioning of bodies responsible for legal aid, law reform and rule-making: the Legal Aid Act, 1969 (Act 22 of 1969), the South African Law Reform Commission (SALRC) Act, 1973 (Act 19 of 1973), and the Rules Board for Courts of Law Act, 1985 (Act 107 of 1985).
- Legislation providing for the appointment of Masters of the High courts and the administration of the GF and deceased and insolvent estates: the Administration of Estates Act, 1965 (Act 66 of 1965), and the Insolvency Act, 1936 (Act 24 of 1936).
- Legislation regulating the provisioning of legal advisory services to government departments: the State Attorney Act, 1957 (Act 56 of 1957).
- Legislation relating to the promotion, protection and enforcement of certain human rights: the Promotion of Administrative Justice Act, 2000 (Act 3 of 2000), the Promotion of Access to Information Act (Paia), 2000 (Act 2 of 2000), and the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000 (Act 4 of 2000), better known as the Equality Act of 2000.
- Legislation pertaining to the protection of vulnerable groups: the Child Justice Act, 2008 (Act 75 of 2008), the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 32 of 2007), the Maintenance Act, 1998 (Act 99 of 1998), and the Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act 116 of 1998).
- Legislation providing support to Chapter 9 institutions: the Human Rights Commission Act, 1994 (Act 54 of 1994), and the Public Protector Act, 1994 (Act 23 of 1994).
- Legislation regulating the management and control of public expenditure: the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999).
- Legislation regulating operations in the public service: the Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994), as amended.
- Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 6 of 2012).
- Criminal Procedure Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 9 of 2012).
- Judicial Matters Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 11 of 2012).
- Repeal of Black Administration Act and Amendment of Certain Laws Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 20 of 2012).

- Sheriffs Amendment Act, 2012 (Act 14 of 2012).
- The Criminal Law (Forensic Procedures) Amendment Bill 2013 paves the way to regulate and promote the use of DNA in combating crime, taking into account constitutional requirements. The use of DNA evidence holds the potential to alleviate bottlenecks in the Criminal Justice System (CJS). Maximising the use of DNA evidence promotes fairness, confidence, and certainty in the administration of South Africa's laws.
- The Constitution 17th Amendment Act of 2013 is implemented with the Superior Courts Act, which repeals the Supreme Court Act of 1959.
- The Legal Practice Bill will bring an end to the long tradition of self-regulation by the legal fraternity. It will replace bar associations with a single council, which the Minister of Justice can dissolve if he loses confidence in it. The Bill also allows the Minister to designate three of the 22 members of the council. The 120-clause Bill transforms the legal profession and improves access to justice.

Human rights

The Bill of Rights is the cornerstone of South Africa's democracy. It enshrines the rights of all people in South Africa and affirms the democratic values of human dignity, equality and freedom. While every person is entitled to these rights, they also have a responsibility to respect them.

The Bill of Rights binds the legislature, the executive, judiciary and all organs of State.

The rights contained in the Bill of Rights are subject to the limitations contained in or referred to in Section 36 of the Constitution, or elsewhere in the Bill of Rights.

They apply to all laws, administrative decisions taken and acts performed during the period in which the Constitution is in force. In terms of the Constitution, every person has basic human rights such as:

- equality before the law and equal protection and benefit of the law
- freedom from unfair discrimination
- the right to life
- the right to human dignity
- the right to freedom and security.

Budget and funding

A total budget of R17,9 billion was allocated to the DoJ&CD for the 2014/15 financial year. Of this budget allocation R6,1 billion was allocated to the Court Services programme, R3,2 billion is for the NPA and R2,1 billion for Public Entities and Chapter 9 Institutions.

The increase in the budget baseline amounts to R101,6 million for 2014/15, R102,7 million for 2015/16 and R413,9 million for 2016/17.

Role players

Legal Aid South Africa

Legal Aid SA provides legal aid or makes legal aid available to indigent people within the budget allocated to it by the State. For 2013/14, 447 301 new legal matters were undertaken by Legal Aid SA, of which 390 121 were criminal matters and 57,183 were civil matters, representing a 3,4% growth in civil matters.

Special Investigating Unit

The SIU is an independent statutory body that is accountable to Parliament and the President. The SIU, the Anti-Corruption Task Team (ACTT), the AFU and the Hawks have made notable progress in the quest to combat corruption in the public sector. The work of these agencies complements efforts of the Department of Public Administration and other entities outside the public sector such as Corruption Watch, which aim to rid the country of corruption. Not only does corruption erode the fruits of South Africa's hard-earned democracy, but it also tarnishes the country's good name locally and internationally and discourages foreign investment.

The SIU was created in terms of the SIU Act of 1996. The SIU functions in a manner similar to a commission of inquiry in that the President refers cases to it by issuing a proclamation. It may investigate any matter set out in Section 2 of the SIU Act of 1996, including:

- serious maladministration in connection with the affairs of any State institution
- improper or unlawful conduct by employees of any State institution
- unlawful appropriation or expenditure of public money or property
- any unlawful, irregular or unapproved acquisitive act, transaction, measure or practice that has a bearing on State property
- intentional or negligent loss of public money or damage to public property
- corruption in connection with the affairs of any State institution
- unlawful or improper conduct by any person who has cause or may cause serious harm to the interest of the public or any category thereof.

The SIU can also take civil action to correct any wrongdoing it discovers during an investigation. For example, it can obtain a court order to:

- compel a person to pay back any wrongful benefit received
- cancel contracts when the proper procedures were not followed

- stop transactions or other actions that were not properly authorised.

The SIU litigates its cases in the Special Tribunal, a specialised court that deals specifically with its cases. This avoids some of the delays usually associated with civil litigation.

The focus of the SIU is the public sector, but it also deals with private-sector accomplices.

It can investigate private-sector matters that cause substantial harm to the interest of the public.

As the focus of the SIU is on civil litigation, it does not have the power to arrest or prosecute suspects. When it uncovers evidence of criminal activity, it hands a court-ready docket to the South African Police Service (SAPS) and/or the Hawks.

The SIU works closely with the NPA to ensure that prosecutions take place as soon as possible.

It also works with the AFU in cases where the powers of this unit are more suitable for recovering the proceeds of crime.

South African Law Reform Commission

The SALRC is a statutory body established in terms of the South African Law Reform Commission Act, 1973 (Act 19 of 1973).

The mission of the SALRC is the continuous reform of the law of South Africa in accordance with the principles and values of the Constitution to meet the needs of a changing society operating under the rule of law.

The objectives of the commission are to do research with reference to all branches of the law of the country and to study and investigate all such branches to make recommendations for the development, improvement, modernisation or reform thereof, including the repeal of obsolete or unnecessary provisions; removal of anomalies; bringing about of uniformity in the law in force in the various parts of the country; consolidation or codification of any branch of the law; and steps aimed at making the common law more readily available.

The SALRC is chaired by a judge and consists of members from the judiciary, legal professions and academic institutions. It conducts research with reference to all branches of South African law to make recommendations to government for the development, improvement, modernisation or reform of the law. This includes the following functions:

- repealing obsolete or unnecessary provisions
- removing anomalies
- bringing about uniformity in the law
- consolidating or codifying any branch of the law
- making common law more readily available.

To achieve its objectives, the SALRC is drawing up a programme in which matters requiring consideration are included and submitted to the Minister for approval. Recent SALRC programmes included:

- statute law: establishing a simplified, coherent and accessible statute book
- statutory law revision: redundancy, obsolescence and constitutionality of legislation
- reviewing the Interpretation Act, 1957 (Act 33 of 1957)
- arbitration
- family mediation
- family law and the law of persons
- custody of and access to minor children
- review of aspects of matrimonial property law
- Hindu marriages
- sexual offences: adult prostitution
- assisted decision-making for adults with impaired decision-making capacity
- prescription periods
- review of the law of evidence
- hearsay and relevance
- electronic evidence
- review of administration orders
- specific civil action in respect of consequential damages arising from hoaxes
- administration of estates
- review of witchcraft legislation
- multidisciplinary legal practices
- expungement of certain criminal records
- the practice of ukuthwala (child abduction and forced child marriages).

National Prosecuting Authority of South Africa

In a Constitutional state such as South Africa, all citizens have a right to enjoy a better quality of life – free from fear and free from crime. As a key partner in the criminal justice system, the NPA plays a critical role in ensuring that perpetrators of crime are charged and held responsible for their criminal actions. While the core work of the NPA will remain prosecutions and being a lawyer of the people, our strategy seeks to ensure that the organization becomes more pro-active so as to:

- contribute to growth of the South African economy
- contribute to freedom from crime
- contribute to social development
- promote a culture of civic morality
- reduce crime
- ensure public confidence in the CJS.

The Office of the National Director of Public Prosecutions was established on 1 August 1998, in terms of section 179 (1) of the Constitution. The NPA comprises the National Director, directors of public prosecutions; investigating directors

and special directors; other members of the prosecuting authority appointed at or assigned to the NPA; and members of the administrative staff. The NPA has the power to:

- institute and conduct criminal proceedings on behalf of the State
- carry out any necessary functions incidental to instituting and conducting such criminal proceedings (this includes investigation)
- discontinue criminal proceedings.

Also vital within the CJS was the formation of the Office of the National Director of Public Prosecutions, established in 1998. The Office of the National Director of Public Prosecutions consists of deputy national directors and special directors of public prosecution who head the following specialised units:

- Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit (Soca)
- Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU)
- Priority Crimes Litigation Unit (PCLU)
- Office for Witness Protection (OWP)
- Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU)
- National Prosecuting Service (NPS).

National Prosecuting Service (NPS)

The NPS is a division of the NPA managing the performance of Directors of Public Prosecutions (DPPs) and Lower Courts countrywide.

All the public prosecutors and State advocates manning the district, regional and high courts report to the directors of public prosecutions in their respective areas of jurisdiction.

Office for Witness Protection

The OWP provides specialised services to all Law Enforcement Agencies in South Africa, NPA and any judicial proceedings. The OWP provides

- assistance and cooperation to other countries, tribunals and Special Courts in the field of witness protection
- support services to vulnerable and intimidated witnesses and related persons in any judicial proceedings and in the CJS.

All OWP functions and duties are classified secret in terms of the Witness Protection Act.

Asset Forfeiture Unit

The AFU was established in May 1999 in the Office of the National Director of Public Prosecutions to focus on the implementation of Chapters 5 and 6 of the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998 (Act 121 of 1998). The AFU was created to ensure that the powers in the Act to seize criminal assets would be used to their maximum effect in the fight against crime, and particularly, organised crime.

The AFU has set itself a number of key strategic objectives, namely to:

- develop the law by taking test cases to court and creating the legal precedents that are necessary to allow the effective use of the law
- build the capacity to ensure that asset forfeiture is used as widely as possible to make a real impact in the fight against crime
- make an impact on selected categories of priority crimes
- establish a national presence
- establish excellent relationships with its key partners, especially the South African Police Service (SAPS), and the South African Revenue Service (SARS)
- build the AFU into a professional and representative organisation.

Specialised Commercial Crime Unit

The SCCU's mandate is to prosecute complex commercial crime cases emanating from the commercial branches of the SAPS. The client base of the unit comprises a broad spectrum of complainants in commercial cases, ranging from private individuals and corporate bodies to State departments.

Priority Crimes Litigation Unit

The PCLU is mandated to tackle cases that threaten national security. It was created by presidential proclamation and is allocated categories of cases either by the President or by the National Director of Public Prosecutions.

The primary function of the PCLU is to manage and direct investigations and prosecutions in respect of the following areas:

- the non-proliferation of weapons of mass destruction (nuclear, chemical and biological)
- the regulation of conventional military arms
- the regulation of mercenary and related activities
- the International Court created by the Statute of Rome
- national and international terrorism
- prosecution of persons who were refused or failed to apply for amnesty in terms of the Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC) processes.

Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit

Soca acts against the victimisation of vulnerable groups, mainly women and children. The unit develops strategy and policy, and oversees the management of cases relating to sexual offences, domestic violence, human trafficking, maintenance offences and children in conflict with the law. Soca aims to:

- improve the conviction rate in gender-based

crimes and crimes against children

- protect vulnerable groups from abuse and violence
- ensure access to maintenance support
- reduce secondary victimisation.

One of the Soca's key achievements in ensuring government's commitment to the fight against sexual offences and gender-based violence is the establishment of Thuthuzela care centres (TCCs).

TCCs are one-stop facilities located in public hospitals in communities where the incidence of rape is particularly high. These one-stop facilities are aimed at reducing secondary victimisation, improving conviction rates and reducing the cycle time for the finalisation of rape cases.

The Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences (FCS) units

The FCS unit, which was re-launched in 2010 after being absorbed into the greater SAPS in 2006, has since doubled its resources and now has 176 units and close on 2 500 members nationwide. The FCS employs a network of highly skilled forensic social workers to assist with assessment of abused children and the compilation of court reports, as well as for providing an expert testimony in court.

The FCS is involved in the policing of sexual offences against children, person-directed crimes, illegal removal of children under 12 and electronic media facilitated crime. Two areas of particular concern for the FCS are child pornography and Sexual Offences.

Crime against children has decreased year on year from 48 718 reported cases for 2012/13 to 45 230 for 2013/14. The conviction rate is up to 75%, and since the re-establishment of the FCS in 2010, the unit has secured over 1 832 life sentences for heinous crimes against women and children.

In addition to an ongoing drive to raise awareness in schools, churches and other institutions around the country, the SAPS is involved in several community programmes including the nationwide Adopt-a-School project – where at least four SAPS members are assigned to a school and are charged with raising awareness among the teachers and learners on issues like child abuse, exploitation and the crime in general.

The SAPS is also leading an outreach programme in Diepsloot, Gauteng, where young parents are being educated on how to be good parents. In addition, the FCS is working with the department of social development and justice to create child protection awareness around the country.

Rules Board for Courts of Law

The Rules Board for the Courts of Law may review existing rules of Court to efficient, expeditious and uniform administration of justice in the Supreme Court of Appeal, High Courts and Magistrates' Courts.

Subject to the approval of the Minister, it may enact, amend or repeal rules for the above courts.

The board is headed by a Constitutional Court judge and includes experts in procedural law drawn from the judiciary, legal profession and academic institutions.

Its mandate includes:

- improving and modernising the rules of Courts in accordance with technological changes and constitutional imperatives
- addressing challenges to the constitutionality of specific rules and effecting amendments precipitated by such challenges
- simplifying the Courts' rules to promote access to justice
- harmonising rules of superior and Lower Courts
- reviewing the civil justice system to address inadequacies
- conducting legal and comparative research to determine viable solutions
- stimulating discussion with role players and interested and/or affected parties in the process of amending rules
- unifying and harmonising rules, regulations and procedures to transform the Courts and to make justice accessible to all.

Judicial Service Commission (JSC)

The JSC selects fit and proper people for appointment as judges and investigates complaints about judicial officers. It also advises government on any matters relating to the judiciary or to the administration of justice.

When appointments have to be made, the JSC publishes a notice giving details of the vacancies that exist and calls for nominations. It shortlists suitable candidates and invites them for interviews.

Professional bodies and members of the public have the opportunity to comment prior to the interviews or to make representations concerning the candidates to the commission.

The interviews are conducted in public, after which the commission deliberates and makes its decisions in private. Its recommendations are communicated to the President, who then makes the appointments.

In terms of the Constitution, the President, in consultation with the commission, appoints the chief justice and the deputy chief justice, and the president and deputy president of the Supreme Court of Appeal.

The President appoints other judges on the advice of the commission.

In the case of the chief justice and the deputy chief justice, the leaders of parties represented in the National Assembly are also consulted.

Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities (CRL Commission)

The CRL Commission's role of fostering social cohesion remains relevant as democracy continues to grow in South Africa. It is incumbent upon the CRL Commission to develop peace, friendship, humanity, tolerance and national unity among cultural, religious and linguistic communities. Its mandate is to make sure that democracy manifests itself in all aspects of the lives of South Africans.

There are still communities that feel marginalised because they are not part of mainstream religions. However, most South Africans have gained awareness of their language rights and are beginning to make demands for better recognition.

Magistrates' Commission

The Magistrates' Commission ensures that the appointment, promotion, transfer or discharge of, or disciplinary steps against, judicial officers in the Lower Courts take place without favour or prejudice, and that the applicable laws and administrative directions in connection with such actions are applied uniformly and correctly.

In terms of the Magistrates' Act of 1993, the Minister appoints a magistrate after consultation with the Magistrates' Commission. The commission also investigates grievances and complaints about magistrates and submits reports and recommendations to the Minister, who in turn tables them in Parliament.

The commission has established committees to deal with appointments, misconduct, disciplinary inquiries and incapacity, grievances, salary and service conditions, and the training of magistrates.

South African Board for Sheriffs

Significant strides have been made in transforming the sheriff's profession in the country. Sheriffs have an important role in the CJS, as they act as a third party to serve court process and execute the warrants and orders of the court, which are issued in terms of the regulations of the different courts.

South African Human Rights Commission

As the independent national human rights institution, the SAHRC was created to support consti-

tutional democracy by promoting, protecting and monitoring the attainment of everyone's human rights in South Africa without fear, favour or prejudice.

The values of the SAHRC are integrity, honesty, respect, objectivity, the Batho Pele principles, and equality.

Each year, the SAHRC requires relevant organs of State to provide it with information on the measures taken towards the realisation of the rights contained in the Bill of Rights concerning housing, healthcare, food, water, social security, education and the environment.

The SAHRC has additional powers and functions prescribed by specific legislative obligations in terms of the Human Rights Commission Act of 1994; the Paia of 2000, and the Equality Act of 2000.

The commission has to:

- promote awareness of the statutes
- monitor compliance with the statutes
- report to Parliament in relation to these statutes
- develop recommendations on persisting challenges related to these statutes and any necessary reform.

The SAHRC is actively involved in ensuring the ratification of international and regional human-rights instruments by advocating for the domestication of human-rights instruments.

At international level, the SAHRC is recognised by the UN Office of the High Commissioner for Human Rights as an A-status national human rights institution. As an A-status institution, the SAHRC has adhered to the Paris Principles, which are the guiding principles that set out the nature and functioning of a national human rights institution.

The SAHRC deals with a wide range of human rights complaints.

Public Protector

The President appoints the Public Protector on recommendation of the National Assembly and in terms of the Constitution, for a non-renewable period of seven years.

The Public Protector is subject only to the Constitution and the law, and functions independently from government and any political party. No person or organ of State may interfere with the functioning of the Public Protector.

The Public Protector has the power to report a matter to Parliament, which will debate it and ensure that the Public Protector's recommendations are followed.

Section 182 of the Constitution mandates the Public Protector to:

- investigate any conduct in State affairs, or

in the public administration in any sphere of government, that is alleged or suspected to be improper or to result in any impropriety or prejudice

- report on that conduct
- take appropriate remedial action
- be accessible to all people and communities.

The Public Protector has additional legislative powers contained in about 16 statutes. It must resolve disputes or grievances involving the State through mediation, consultation, negotiation and any other remedies. It also has a mandate to enforce executive ethics, the Paia of 2000, the Protected Disclosures Act, 2000 (Act 26 of 2000), and the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004 (Act 12 of 2004).

The only matters excluded from the mandate of the Public Protector are court decisions, judicial functions and matters outside the public sector.

South African Judicial Education Institute

The SAJEI Act of 2008, established the institute to provide independent judicial education for judicial officers.

The SAJEI is responsible for the formal training of magistrates and legal practitioners in this legislation and other areas of judicial work.

Its purpose is to promote the independence, impartiality, dignity, accessibility and effectiveness of the courts by providing judicial education for judicial officers. In carrying out this function, the SAJEI is primarily directed and controlled by the judiciary. The institute provides education and training for aspirant and newly appointed judicial officers and ongoing legal education and training for experienced judicial officers.

Court services

Legal practitioners

The legal profession is divided into two branches – advocates and attorneys – that are subject to strict ethical codes.

Advocates are organised into bar associations or societies, one each at the seat of the various divisions of the High Court.

There are voluntary associations of advocates such as the General Council of the Bar and other formations of Independent Bars. There are four regional societies for attorneys, each made up of a number of provinces. A practising attorney is by the operation of the law a member of at least one of these societies, which promote the interests of the profession. The Law Society of South Africa is a voluntary association established to coordinate the various regional societies.

In terms of the Right of Appearance in Courts Act, 1995 (Act 62 of 1995), advocates can

appear in any Court, while attorneys may be heard in all of the country's Lower Courts and can also acquire the right of appearance in the Superior Courts. The Attorneys Amendment Act, 1993 (Act 115 of 1993), provides for alternative routes for admission as an attorney.

All attorneys who hold an LLB or equivalent degree, or who have at least three years' experience, may acquire the right of audience in the High Court.

State law advisers give legal advice to ministers, government departments, provincial administrations and a number of statutory bodies. In addition, they draft Bills and assist the Minister concerned with the passage of Bills through Parliament. They also assist in criminal and constitutional matters.

Judicial system

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, is the supreme law of the country and binds all legislative, executive and judicial organs of State at all levels of government.

The judicial authority in South Africa is vested in the courts, which are independent and subject only to the Constitution and the law. No person or organ of State may interfere with the functioning of the courts, and an order or decision of a court binds all organs of State and people to whom it applies.

The Constitution provides for the following Courts:

- Constitutional Court
- Supreme Court of Appeal
- High Courts, including any High Court of Appeal that may be established by an Act of Parliament to hear appeals from high courts
- Magistrates' courts
- any other court established or recognised in terms of an Act of Parliament, including any court of a status similar to either high courts or magistrates' courts.

Other courts include: Income tax Courts, the Labour Court and the Labour Appeal Court, the Land Claims Court, the Competition Appeal Court, the Electoral Court, divorce courts, small claims courts, Military courts and equality courts.

Decisions of the Constitutional Court, the Supreme Court of Appeal and the high courts are an important source of law. These courts uphold and enforce the Constitution, which has an extensive Bill of Rights binding all State organs and all people.

The courts are also required to declare any law or conduct that is inconsistent with the Constitution to be invalid, and develop Common Law that is consistent with the values of the Constitution, and the spirit and purpose of the Bill of

Rights.

Constitutional Court

The Constitutional Court is the highest court in all constitutional matters. It is the only court that may adjudicate disputes between organs of State in the national or provincial sphere concerning the constitutional status, powers or functions of any of those organs of State, or that may decide on the constitutionality of any amendment to the Constitution or any parliamentary or provincial Bill.

The Constitutional Court makes the final decision on whether an Act of Parliament, a provincial Act or the conduct of the President is constitutional. It consists of the Chief Justice of South Africa, the Deputy Chief Justice and nine Constitutional Court judges.

Supreme Court of Appeal

The Supreme Court of Appeal, situated in Bloemfontein in the Free State, is the highest court in respect of all matters other than constitutional ones. It consists of the President and Deputy President of the Supreme Court of Appeal, and 23 other judges of appeal. The Supreme Court of Appeal has jurisdiction to hear and determine an appeal against any decision of a High Court. Justice Lex Mpati is the President of the Supreme Court of Appeal.

Decisions of the Supreme Court of Appeal are binding on all courts of a lower order, and the decisions of high courts are binding on magistrates' courts within the respective areas of jurisdiction of the divisions.

In June 2015, President Zuma appointed Justices Nambitha Dambuza and Rammaka Mathopo to the Supreme Court of Appeal in Bloemfontein.

High courts

A High Court has jurisdiction in its own area over all persons residing or present in that area. These courts hear matters that are of such a serious nature that the lower courts would not be competent to make an appropriate judgment or to impose a penalty.

Except where a minimum or maximum sentence is prescribed by law, their penal jurisdiction is unlimited and includes handing down a sentence of life imprisonment in certain specified cases.

There are 13 high courts:

- the Eastern Cape High Court has four branches, located in Grahamstown, Port Elizabeth, Mthatha and Bisho
- the Free State High Court in Bloemfontein
- Gauteng has two high courts, one in Pretoria

(North Gauteng) and one in Johannesburg (South Gauteng)

- KwaZulu-Natal also has two High Courts, in Pietermaritzburg and in Durban
- the Limpopo High Court in Thohoyandou
- the Northern Cape High Court in Kimberley
- the North West High Court in Mafikeng
- the Western Cape High Court in Cape Town.

In June 2015, the President appointed Justice Achmat Jappie as the new Judge President of the KwaZulu-Natal Division of the High Court in Pietermaritzburg. Justice Ephraim Makgoba was appointed the next Judge President of the Limpopo division of the High Court in Polokwane. Advocate Gerald Bloem also started his job as a judge of the Eastern Cape Division of the High Court in Grahamstown. Advocate Selby Mbenenge was appointed as a judge of the Eastern Cape division of the High Court in Bisho.

Specialist high courts

The following specialist high courts exercise national jurisdiction:

- The Labour Court and Labour Appeal Court in Braamfontein, Gauteng, which adjudicate over labour disputes and hear labour appeals, respectively.
- The Land Claims Court, in Randburg, Gauteng, which hears matters on the restitution of land rights that people lost after 1913 as a result of racially discriminatory land laws.
- The Competition Appeal Court, situated in Cape Town, which deals with appeals from the Competition Tribunal.
- The Electoral Court, situated in Bloemfontein, which sits mainly during elections to deal with associated disputes.
- The Tax Court, situated in Pretoria, which deals with tax-related matters, including non-compliance with tax obligations.

Circuit local divisions

These itinerant Courts, each preside over by a judge of the provincial division, periodically conduct hearings at remote areas outside the seat of the High Court designated by the Judge President of the provincial division concerned. This is with a view to enhancing access to justice.

Regional courts

Regional courts are established largely in accordance with provincial boundaries with a Regional Court division for each province to hear matters within their jurisdiction. There are nine Regional Court presidents and 351 Regional Court magistrates.

The regional courts by virtue of the Jurisdiction

of Regional Courts Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 31 of 2008), adjudicate civil disputes.

The divorce courts were subsumed under the Regional Court divisions. The Divorce Court rules made under Section 10(4) of the Administration Amendment Act, 1929 (Act 9 of 1929), were repealed from 15 October 2010. The regional courts therefore started adjudicating divorce matters from 15 October 2010. This has addressed the jurisdictional challenges in terms of which litigants have to travel to remote courts to get legal redress.

In the medium to long term, the Jurisdiction of Regional Courts Amendment Act of 2008, will reduce the workload in the high courts. In this way, divorce and other family-law matters and civil disputes of an amount determined from time to time is within the jurisdiction of regional courts. This means that attorneys have the opportunity to represent their clients in matters where they ordinarily brief counsel, thus reducing the cost of litigation and increasing access to justice.

Magistrates' Courts

Magistrates' courts form an important part of the judicial system as it is where ordinary people come into contact with the justice system daily.

For this reason, that the bulk of the department's budget and resources are concentrated here. Jointly with the Chief Justice, the department implements programmes aimed at supporting these courts. One such intervention is backlog courts. In the DoJ&CD's Strategic Plan 2013 – 2018, 24 of the 90 Branch Courts were identified for rehabilitation into full-service courts by 2014.

The department increased the civil jurisdiction of magistrates' courts and regional courts beyond their R100 000 and R300 000 thresholds, respectively.

This is with a view to widening access to justice as more people will be able to access the magistrate's courts where it is cheaper and faster to obtain a legal recourse compared to the high courts.

In terms of the Magistrates' Act of 1993, all magistrates in South Africa fall outside the ambit of the Public Service. The aim is to strengthen the independence of the judiciary.

Full jurisdiction was conferred to courts in rural areas and former black townships that exercise limited jurisdiction and depend entirely on the main courts in urban areas to deliver essential justice services.

New equipment included the digital court system for recording of proceedings in active court rooms and an audio visual remand system, which links to the DCS for facilitation

of postponements and other matters via video conference.

The Regional and High Court rooms are fitted with CCTV equipment, two-way facilities and waiting rooms for facilitation of sexual offences cases involving minors.

The new court building will bring dignity to the manner in which justice services are administered in the communities of Inanda, Phoenix, KwaMashu, Ntuzuma and surrounding areas, especially since services at the old Court site were limited.

Through the construction of courts, the right of everyone to have any dispute resolved by the application of the law in a fair public hearing before a Court is guaranteed.

Small claims courts

Small claims courts were established to adjudicate small civil claims. They were created to eliminate the time-consuming adversary procedures before and during the trial of these claims.

The limit of cases involving civil claims in these courts is R15 000.

By August 2015, there were 345 small claims courts.

The vast majority of the new courts and places of sitting are in rural areas and former black group areas.

The goal of having a Small Claims Court in every magisterial district is in sight. Gauteng and Mpumalanga have already achieved this.

The number of people enjoying the benefits of access to justice through small claims courts has increased steadily.

Establishing these courts depends partly on the number of dedicated women and men who volunteer their services as commissioners or as Advisory Board members.

The Small Claims Court Model is an effective dispute resolution mechanism, which contributes towards the realisation of the department's mandate to ensure access to justice for all.

Labour courts and labour appeal courts

The labour courts have the same status as high courts. The labour courts adjudicate matters relating to labour disputes between employers and employees. Labour courts are mainly guided by the Labour Relations Act, which deals with matters such as unfair labour practices; for example: dismissing an employee without giving notice.

Labour courts can order an employer or employee or union to stop committing an unfair labour practice. Labour courts are empowered to give jobs back to employees who have lost their

jobs unfairly. Labour appeal courts hear appeals against decisions in labour courts and they are the highest courts for labour appeals.

Equality courts

The right to equality is protected by law in the Equality Act of 2000 and the Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998). The two Acts work in synergy. The Equality Act of 2000 aims to:

- prevent and prohibit unfair discrimination and harassment
- promote equality
- eliminate unfair discrimination
- prevent and prohibit hate speech.

The Act also provides for:

- remedies for victims of any of the above
- compliance with international law obligations, including treaty obligations
- measures to educate the public and raise public awareness about equality.

The department is engaged in the Access to Justice and Promotion of Constitutional Rights Programme.

This programme was developed under the framework of the *European Union (EU)/South Africa Country Strategy Paper and National Indicative Plan*, which set out South Africa's development strategy between 2007 and 2013 and identifies the areas to be funded by the EU.

The aim of the programme is to contribute to the promotion, protection and realisation of rights established in the Constitution through the following three key performance areas:

- improving access to justice
- raising awareness of rights
- strengthening participatory democracy.

Traditional courts

There are Traditional Courts (formerly chiefs' courts) in traditional community areas in rural villages. The judicial functions of traditional leaders are regulated in terms of the Repeal of the Black Administration Act and Amendment of Certain Laws Act, 2005 (Act 28 of 2005).

Land claims courts

It specialises in dealing with disputes that arise out of laws that underpin South Africa's land reform initiative.

These are the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act 22 of 1994) the Land Reform (Labour Tenants) Act, 1996 (Act 486 of 1994) and the Extension of Security of Tenure Act, 1997 (Act 62 of 1997).

The Land Claims Court has the same status as the high courts. Any appeal against a decision of the Land Claims Court can be lodged with the Supreme Court of Appeal, and if applicable, the

Constitutional Court.

The Land Claims Court can hold hearings in any part of the country if it believes this will make it more accessible and it can conduct its proceedings in an informal manner if this is appropriate, although its main office is in Randburg.

Community courts

South Africa has established community courts on a pilot basis to provide speedy resolution of certain types of community offences. These courts focus on restorative justice processes, such as diverting young offenders into suitable programmes.

These courts seek to assist the country's court case backlog. Community courts are normal district magistrates' courts that assist in dealing with matters in partnership with the local community and businesses.

The business community and other civil-society formations have contributed significantly to the establishment and sustainability of these courts.

Thirteen community courts have been established. Four are fully operational and were formally launched in Hatfield, Gauteng; and Fezeka (Gugulethu), Mitchells Plain and Cape Town in the Western Cape.

Another nine pilot sites commenced in Durban (Point) and KwaMashu in KwaZulu-Natal; Mthatha, Eastern Cape; Bloemfontein and Phuthaditjhaba in the Free State; Thohoyandou in Limpopo; Kimberley in the Northern Cape; and Hillbrow and Protea (Lenasia) in Gauteng.

Lessons from the pilot sites will assist in finalising the policy and legislative framework that will institutionalise Community Courts as a permanent feature of the judicial system.

Courts for income-tax offenders

In October 1999, Sars opened a criminal courtroom at the Johannesburg Magistrate's Office, dedicated to the prosecution of tax offenders.

The court deals only with cases concerning failure to submit tax returns or to provide information requested by Sars officials.

It does not deal with bigger cases such as tax fraud. Another Sars Court operates twice a week at the Roodepoort Magistrate's Office.

Criminal jurisdiction of the respective courts

Apart from specific provisions of the Magistrates' Courts Act of 1944 or any other Act, jurisdiction regarding sentences imposed by District Courts is limited to imprisonment of not more than three years or a fine not exceeding R60 000.

A Regional Court can impose a sentence of

not more than 15 years' imprisonment or a fine not exceeding R300 000.

A Magistrate's Court has jurisdiction over all offences except treason, murder and rape. A Regional Court has jurisdiction over all offences except treason. However, the High Court may try all offences.

Depending on the gravity of the offence and the circumstances pertaining to the offender, the Directorate of Public Prosecutions decides in which court a matter will be heard and may even decide on a summary trial in the High Court.

The sentencing of "petty" offenders to do community service as a condition of suspension, correctional supervision or postponement in appropriate circumstances, has become part of an alternative sentence to imprisonment.

Sexual offences courts

In responding to the problem of sexual offences, special sexual offences courts were set up across the country. They are built in a way that children and victims get the necessary care, respect and support at the court.

There is a waiting room to make sure that the woman or child, who is a victim of rape, does not come in contact with the accused. Toys are also available to make sure a relaxed atmosphere is created for a child. In some cases television is used to make sure that evidence by the victim is given in a comfortable way.

Areas of legislation

Sexual offences

The Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act of 2007, provides a legal framework to support an integrated approach to the management of sexual offences, thereby aiming to reduce secondary trauma to victims of such crimes.

National Register for Sexual Offenders (NRSO)

The department has developed the National Register for Sexual Offenders (NRSO), which was deployed in 195 courts. The NRSO was established by an Act of Parliament in 2007.

It is a record of names of those found guilty of sexual offences against children and mentally disabled people.

The NRSO gives employers in the public or private sectors such as schools, crèches and hospitals the right to check that the person being hired is fit to work with children or mentally disabled people. The NRSO is not open to the public and is kept confidential. Anyone found guilty of sexual offences against children and mentally disabled people is put on the NRSO.

Maintenance

The main objective of the Maintenance Act of 1998 is to facilitate the securing of maintenance money from parents and/or other persons able to maintain maintenance beneficiaries, mainly children, who have a right to maintenance.

Parents and/or guardians must maintain children in the proportion in which they can afford. Therefore, both parents and/or sets of families need to take responsibility for the maintenance of the child or children concerned.

From the 369 maintenance courts nationwide, the department registers about 200 000 new maintenance complaints a year. To reduce the maintenance queues at courts, the department installed technology to process payments through electronic financial transfers to replace the card-based manual system. The courts are also increasingly making orders for payments to be deposited directly into the accounts of beneficiaries.

Through the Guardian's Fund, the department contributes substantially to poverty alleviation.

Maintenance Turnaround Strategy: Project Kha Ri Unde

Project Kha Ri Unde is one of the subprojects of the Maintenance Turnaround Strategy. This is a three-year project aimed at reducing the turn-around times in service delivery from the entry point into the maintenance system up to the issuing of a maintenance order.

Socio-economic Justice programme

The department, in partnership with the EU, launched the Socio-Economic Justice programme in December 2014.

The programme's focus is on the socio-economic rights as set out in the Bill of Rights. Known as "Amarightza", the programme ensures that citizens know their rights, how to access them and where to go when their rights are violated. The programme targets the marginalised and vulnerable groups.

The new programme draws on the NDP – Vision 2030 goals which include: Promoting a Constitutional Democracy built on the values of human dignity, equality and fundamental freedoms.

The launch unveiled ways in which government intends to realise its mandate as outlined in section 7.2 of the Constitution.

Domestic violence

The rigorous steps the JCPS cluster is taking to root out gender-based violence is the adoption of zero-tolerance towards rape, violation of the rights of lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender and intersex

people and other forms of violence towards women and children. The department has, after engaging with Regional Court presidents, identified 57 Regional Courts across the country for use as dedicated Sexual Offences Courts.

The Ndabezitha Project with the NPA trains traditional leaders and clerks of the Court in domestic-violence matters in rural areas. This includes the development of a safety tool and intersectoral statistical tool by the NPA and the DoJ&CD.

The department engaged in research methodology called the 10-Year Review of Implementation of the Domestic Violence Act of 1998 aimed at taking stock of all initiatives and projects in courts and the CJS to address the reduction and prevention of domestic violence.

The Protection from Harassment Act, 2011 (Act 17 of 2011), is the first specific legislation to address sexual harassment in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region. The essence of the Act is to provide a quick, easy and affordable civil remedy in the form of a protection order for incidences of stalking. The legislation arose out of a SALRC investigation into the legal framework governing stalking and domestic violence.

A key component of the Act is that it seeks to cover all forms of stalking, not just that involving people engaged in a relationship.

A protection order can be issued instructing the harasser to cease harassment.

The Act sets out how a complainant is to apply for a protection order and the procedure to be followed in granting one. The legislation also provides for the issuing of an interim protection order without the knowledge of the respondent, given certain conditions. A victim of cyberstalking can apply to a Court for an interim protection order even when the identity of the alleged stalker is unknown. The law will also empower the police to investigate a stalker to identify the perpetrator even before a victim launches an application for a protection order.

Human trafficking

Human trafficking has become a focus of attention in the country following the introduction of the new visa requirements for children travelling through South Africa's ports of entry in June 2015. A new Act aimed at preventing trafficking defines trafficking to include the recruitment, transportation, sale or harbour of people by means of force, deceit, the abuse of vulnerability and the abuse of power for exploitation.

South Africa has for the first time a single statute, which addresses the scourge of trafficking in persons holistically and comprehensively.

Besides creating the main offence of trafficking in persons, the legislation creates offences such as debt bondage; the possession, destruction and tampering with travel documents and using the services of victims of trafficking all of which facilitate innocent persons becoming victims of this modern day form of slavery.

The legislation gives effect to South Africa's international obligations in terms of a UN Protocol.

Transforming the judiciary

The department has made significant strides in its quest to transform the judiciary.

By 2014, of the 243 judges in South Africa, 79 are females. There are 35 African females, 25 white females, 12 Indian females, and eight coloured females.

It is anticipated that the Legal Practice Bill will overhaul the current structure of the legal profession, which is inherently prejudicial to any woman who wishes to pursue a career as lawyer.

State Legal Services

The purpose of this programme is to provide legal and legislative services to government, supervise the administration of deceased and insolvent estates and the Guardian's Fund, prepare and promote legislation and undertake research in support of this.

This programme is mainly aimed at transforming justice, the State and society. It deals with the following functions:

- constitutional development
 - legislative development (including conducting legal research)
 - the provision of legal advisory services to other organs of State (including Parliament)
 - providing litigation services to protect the organs of State
 - the provision of probate services
 - administration of the Guardian's Fund
 - regulation of insolvency and liquidation systems.
- The State Legal Services Programme's objectives include:
- improving service delivery at the Master's Office service points
 - increasing efficiency in the provision of services to beneficiaries of the Guardian's Fund, trusts, and insolvent and deceased estates
 - promoting constitutional development and the strengthening of participatory democracy to ensure respect for fundamental human rights
 - improving the provision of legal services to State organs
 - improving the policy and legislative framework for the effective and efficient delivery of justice services.

The State Legal Services Programme is divided

into the following subprogrammes:

- Legislative Development, the Law Reform Commission and the Rules Boards for Courts of Law, prepare and promote legislation, conduct research and administer the Constitution.
- The Master of the High Court funds the Masters' Offices, which supervise the administration of deceased and insolvent estates, trusts, curatorships and the Guardian's Fund.
- Litigation and Legal Services provides attorney, conveyance and notary public services to the executive, all State departments, parastatals and other government bodies through the Office of the State Attorney, and provides legal support to the department and the ministry.
- State Law Advisers provides legal advisory services to the executive, all State departments, parastatals and autonomous government bodies.

Master of the High Court

The Master of the High Court serves the public in respect of:

- deceased estates
- liquidations (insolvent estates)
- registration of trust's, tutor's and curator's administration of the Guardian's Fund (minors and mentally challenged persons).

The Master's Office has five main divisions, which are all aimed at protecting the financial interests of people whose assets or interests are, for various reasons, managed by others.

As part of the Turnaround Strategy in the Master's Office, there has been a special focus on training frontline officials. The Master's Office is also investigating methods to deliver a more efficient and effective service to the public through the Internet.

Office of the Family Advocate

The role of the Family Advocate is to promote and protect the best interests of the children in civil disputes over parental rights and responsibilities.

This is achieved by monitoring pleadings filed at court, conducting enquiries, filing reports, appearing in court during the hearing of the application or trial, and providing mediation services in respect of disputes over the parental rights and responsibilities of fathers of children born out of wedlock.

In certain instances, the Family Advocate also assists the courts in matters involving domestic violence and maintenance. The sections of the Children's Act of 2005 that came into operation on 1 July 2007 have expanded the Family Advocate's responsibilities and scope of duties, as the Act makes the Family Advocate central to all family-law civil

litigation. Furthermore, litigants are obliged to mediate their disputes before resorting to litigation. Unmarried fathers can approach the Family Advocate directly for assistance without instituting any litigation. Children's rights to participate in, and consult on, decisions affecting them have been entrenched, and the Family Advocate is the mechanism whereby the voice of the child is heard.

Truth and Reconciliation Commission

The TRC was dissolved in March 2002 by way of proclamation in the *Government Gazette*. The TRC made recommendations to government regarding reparations to victims and measures to prevent the future violation of human rights and abuses experienced during the apartheid years.

Government approved four categories of recommendations in June 2003 for implementation, namely:

- final reparations
- TRC-identified victims
- symbols and monuments
- medical benefits and other forms of social assistance
- community rehabilitation.

Child justice

Children's Act of 2005

The Department of Social Development (DSD) is the lead department for the implementation of the Children's Act of 2005. The DoJ&CD's main responsibility is towards Children's Court operations relating to the Act.

The department developed a child-friendly Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ) link on its website. In addition, the department created an email address, children@justice.gov.za, which the public may use to contact the department on issues relating to children.

The Children's Court is the DoJ&CD's principal legal mechanism to intervene and assist children who are in need of care and protection. To gather statistics from the children's courts, the department developed the Children's Court Monitoring Tool. Data about matters coming to court relating to children in need of care is gathered monthly.

Section 14 of the Children's Act of 2005 states that every child has the right to bring a matter to the Children's Court.

This means that every Children's Court can serve as a direct entry point for a child to seek help and protection. Children's courts have been rendered highly accessible through the Act.

Child Justice Act of 2008

The Child Justice Act of 2008, promotes and protects the constitutional rights of children in conflict with the law. The Act provides special measures, designed to break the cycle of crime and restore in these children a lifestyle that is law-abiding and productive.

The department established governance structures to ensure the effective intersectoral implementation of the Act. Nine provincial child justice forums are coordinating and monitoring the implementation of the Act at provincial level.

Restorative justice

Restorative justice is a response to crime that focuses on the losses suffered by victims, holding offenders accountable for the harm they have caused, and building peace in communities.

Restorative justice strategies, programmes and processes in the CJS are in place to try and heal the harm caused by the crime or offence, from a holistic point of view, for the victim, the offender and the community concerned, which will lead towards rebuilding broken relationships and encouraging social justice and social dialogue.

Any restorative justice option is always voluntary for the victim involved. Therefore, such programmes and/or strategies will not be forced upon the victim of any crime or offence.

Alternative dispute resolution is defined as the disposal of disputes outside formal court proceedings. The processes and mechanisms may or may not include the restorative-justice approach.

Court performance

This sub-branch of the DoJ&CD is responsible for:

- developing and monitoring processes and systems
- introducing case-flow management that facilitates efficient and effective court and case management
- developing and facilitating the implementation of a court-management policy framework
- evaluating the quality of services and performance within the courts
- facilitating the development of uniform performance standards to enhance institutional performance.

The Directorate: Court Efficiency's key priorities include:

- facilitating integrated case-flow management with stakeholders
- supporting the implementation of the *Re Aga Boswa* (meaning "We are renewing") and Court Capacitation projects

- facilitating the implementation of multilingualism in courts and developing indigenous languages in line with constitutional imperatives
- facilitating the securing of standardised transcription services for courts across all regions, rendering case-management business intelligence support to information system management in the development of information technology (IT) tools and systems, and supporting initiatives for the effective management of court records.

The directorate assists in Court capacitation initiatives, namely:

- the UN Office on Drugs and Crime Court Integrity Project
- upgrading five Pilot Courts, namely Pretoria, Tembisa, Nelspruit, Mkobola and Kimberley with notice boards, flat-screen television sets and DVD players
- providing integrity training to 120 departmental, 15 NPA and 15 judicial officers
- conducting audits on the management of court records
- facilitating activities on the Court Capacitation National Centre for State Courts Project in consultation with all other stakeholders such as chief directors and regional heads
- engaging human resources and the Safety and Security Sector Education and Training Authority and securing learnership programmes for court interpreters
- engaging in legislation development and finalising the legislative and operational framework for implementing and institutionalising the lay assessor system.

Integrated Case-Flow Management Framework

The DoJ&CD and participants from other partner organisations is developing an enhanced version of case-flow management in the court environment.

To eradicate case-flow blockages workable solutions were adopted. These include:

- continuous cooperation of stakeholders to implement and maintain case-flow management at all courts
- establishing judicial leadership and case-flow management buy-in processes in the lower and higher courts in the form of case-flow management forums
- facilitating and monitoring the creation of case-flow management governance structures to sustain productivity in the courts' environment
- maintaining case-flow management.

Systems that support case-flow management in the courts include the Integrated Case Management System (ICMS). This system spans all disciplines of cases administered in the

justice environment.

The ICMS draws on several core modules to perform basic functions such as information warehousing, case numbering and document scanning. The specific functionality for each court and office are then built on these foundations. The following offices have started experiencing the benefits of the ICMS:

- ICMS Civil is deployed in all lower courts and 13 high courts
- ICMS Criminal is deployed in all lower courts
- ICMS Small Claims is used in all small claims courts and designated lower courts
- ICMS Masters has been introduced in all 14 Masters' Offices and all 402 service points.

The further development of the ICMS Masters System is in progress. This creates a Paperless Estate Administration System for the Master's Office. This system will computerise the administration process in deceased estates, as all documentation will be scanned and stored electronically.

Audio-Visual Remand System

The Video Remand Solution has been implemented at 47 courts and 22 correctional facilities. The development in this area of support to case-flow management for the courts has brought about a significant improvement in the movement of cases through the use of technology.

Case-Reduction Backlog Project

The JCPS cluster departments have introduced the case backlog reduction intervention, which reducing the number of backlog cases in the Regional and District Courts, providing additional capacity to the backlog priority sites. The backlog intervention ensures that the inflow of the number of new cases is balanced by the number of matters concluded. The project deliverables have been integrated into the outputs of the JCPS Cluster Delivery Agreement.

The department provided resources in the form of infrastructure, court personnel, the judiciary, magistrates and budget in support of the prosecution and judiciary to remove these cases from the backlog roll.

Integrated Justice System

The Integrated Justice System aims to increase the efficiency and effectiveness of the entire criminal justice process by increasing the probability of successful investigation, prosecution, punishment for priority crimes and, ultimately, rehabilitation of offenders. Further issues receiving specific attention include overcrowding in prisons and awaiting-trial prisoner problems, as well as bail, sentencing and plea-bargaining.

Government wants to eliminate duplication of services and programmes at all levels.

The benefits of proper alignment include:

- less duplication of services
- the effective use of scarce and limited resources and skills
- joint strategic planning and a planned approach instead of simply reacting to problems.

The JCPS cluster has structured itself to focus on two main areas of responsibility, namely operational and developmental issues relating to the justice system, and improving the safety and security of citizens.

International legal relations

The main functions of the Chief Directorate: International Legal Relations in the DoJ&CD is to identify and research legal questions that relate to matters pertaining to the administration of justice between South Africa and other countries/bodies/institutions.

The chief directorate is involved in direct liaison and negotiations at administrative and technical level with foreign countries to promote international legal cooperation, and for the possible conclusion of extradition and mutual legal assistance agreements. The chief directorate also aims to establish greater uniformity between the legal systems of southern African countries, especially within the SADC.

The chief directorate coordinates human rights issues at international level under the auspices of the UN and the AU.

The functions of the chief directorate are divided into eight broad categories:

- regular liaison on international legal matters with SADC countries
- coordinating all Commonwealth matters pertaining to the administration of justice
- interacting with the UN, the Hague Conference and the International Institute for the Unification of Private Law
- interacting with foreign countries outside the SADC region
- preparing Cabinet and Parliament documentation for the ratification of human rights treaties, including report writing
- processing requests for extradition, mutual legal assistance in criminal matters, interrogatory commissions and service of process processing requests for maintenance in terms of the Reciprocal Enforcement of Maintenance Orders Act, 1963 (Act 80 of 1963).

Owing to the number of departments and/or institutions involved in the execution of extradition and mutual legal assistance requests, and taking into consideration that diplomatic channels are followed to transmit documents,

delays are experienced from time-to-time.

Provisions are included in extradition and mutual legal assistance agreements to provide for direct communication between central authorities.

The drastic reduction in the turnaround time for the processing of these requests should be a clear indication to the rest of the world that South Africa will neither be a safe haven for fugitives nor a breeding ground for transnational organised crime.

International Criminal Court (ICC)

South Africa remains committed to the global promotion of the rule of law, and will continue cooperating with the UN system to ensure the success of the international human rights architecture.

South Africa views the ICC as an important element in a new system of international law and governance.

Department of Correctional Services

The strategic goals of the department are to ensure that:

- the efficiency of the justice system is improved through the effective management of remand processes
- society is protected through incarcerated offenders being secured and rehabilitated
- society is protected by offenders being reintegrated into the community as law-abiding citizens.

In this way, the department contributes to ensuring that all people in South Africa are and feel safe.

The Service Charter for Victims of Crime consolidates the present legal framework in South Africa relating to the rights of and services provided to victims of crime, and to eliminate secondary victimisation in the criminal justice process.

The ultimate goal is victim empowerment by meeting victims' material or emotional needs.

This department has been in existence for 102 years. DCS marks the end of a life of crime, and the beginning of restoration. The department must deliver justice for victims and ensure that offenders make restitution both to society for their crimes, and leave correctional centres with better skills and prospects.

The DCS remains committed to placing humane and safe detention and rehabilitation at the centre of service delivery. In doing so, the department promotes corrections as a societal responsibility, contributing to enhanced public safety and reducing reoffending.

In this regard there is a close link with govern-

ment's Outcome 3, namely that all people in South Africa should be and feel safe. The strategic focus of the department is situated in four key deliverables, namely:

- reducing the average length of time in remand detention
- increasing the number of offenders in rehabilitation programmes
- increasing the number of victims who participate in parole hearings
- increasing the number of parolees without parole violations.

The department is committed to contributing to reducing reoffending through offender management and rehabilitation intervention and adding to the social reintegration of offenders through management of non-custodial sentences and parole.

The DCS has various offender rehabilitation programmes, which focus on restorative justice, skilling, training, reading and offender reintegration. The department has also adopted various orphanages and old age homes, and continues to donate excess products to disadvantaged communities.

Legislation and policies

The DCS derives its mandate from the Correctional Services Act, 1998 (Act 111 of 1998), as amended, the Criminal Procedure Act, 1977 (Act 51 of 1977) and the 2005 White Paper on Corrections. The legislation requires the department to contribute to maintaining and promoting a just, peaceful and safe society by correcting offending behaviour in a safe, secure and humane environment, thus facilitating optimal rehabilitation and reduced repeat offending.

The department is compelled by the Constitution to comply with the following rights in terms of the treatment of offenders:

- equality
- human dignity
- freedom and security of the person
- right to healthcare services
- children's rights
- right to education
- freedom of religion
- rights to humane treatment and to communicate

The Equal Access to Justice for Persons with Disabilities Conference was held in November 2014. The main objective of the conference was to give stakeholders a platform to deliberate on and find possible solutions to the barriers and challenges that prevent persons with disabilities from accessing justice services. The conference also provided the opportunity for stakeholders to understand the challenges that people with disabilities face in accessing services.

with and be visited by family and next of kin. The department is mandated by the following legislation: Correctional Services Act, 1998 (Act 111 of 1998); Correctional Services Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 25 of 2008); and Criminal Procedure Act (CPA), 1977 (Act 51 of 1977).

Section 63A, Chapter 28 and Section 299A of the CPA of 1977 are of particular importance to the department. It provides for a procedure in terms of which the court may, on application by a head of a correctional centre and if not opposed by the Director of Public Prosecutions concerned, order the release of certain accused on warning in lieu of bail or order the amendment of the bail conditions imposed by that court on the accused.

Section 63A also forms the basis of a protocol between JCPS cluster departments to encourage the use of this provision to assist accused who do not pose a danger to society to be released from detention in circumstances where the bail set by the court cannot be afforded by the accused or his or her family.

Chapter 28 of the CPA of 1977 deals with sentencing and the entire chapter applies to the department's mandate. Offenders must be detained in accordance with the sentences handed down under this chapter.

The granting of parole and the conversion of sentences to correctional supervision is also done in accordance with this chapter, read together with the Correctional Services Act of 1998.

Section 299A of the CPA of 1977 regulates victim involvement in the decisions of parole boards.

The *White Paper on Corrections in South Africa* ushered in a start where prisons become correctional centres of rehabilitation and offenders are given new hope and encouragement to adopt a lifestyle that will result in a second chance towards becoming the ideal South African citizen.

The Second Chance Act repudiates the notion that recidivism reduction is best achieved through deterrent threats alone, and calls for the delivery of services to former prisoners not in a minimal or grudging way but in a systematic, progressive fashion.

It is a re-entry movement that could be classified as therapeutic jurisprudence, restorative justice and to some extent victims' rights.

The Act provides programmes and services that will aid rehabilitation efforts and encourage positive participation in society upon release.

It eliminates "invisible punishment" by excluding access to public benefits such as social

grants, general assistance, housing and jobs. The Act counters the effects of policies, which have made it extremely difficult for ex-offenders to re-enter the normative non-criminal community, and could explain why there are so many recidivists.

Budget

The overall budget for 2014/15 for the DCS was R19,721 billion.

Role players

Portfolio Committee on Corrections

The DCS has a similar body to the Parliamentary Portfolio committees and it keeps the department in check with regard to the humane treatment of offenders and fair labour practice for its workforce, among other pressing matters.

National Council for Correctional Services (NCCS)

The NCCS is a statutory body to guide the Minister of Correctional Services in developing policy relating to the correctional system and the sentence-management process.

Judicial Inspectorate of Correctional Services

The Judicial Inspectorate of Correctional Services was established in 1998 with the statutory objective to facilitate the inspection of correctional centres so that the inspecting judge may report on the treatment of inmates and on conditions in correctional centres. The Judicial Inspectorate of Correctional Services is an independent office.

Medical Parole Advisory Board

The Correctional Matters Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 5 of 2011) provides for a new medical parole policy and correctional supervision. A Medical Parole Advisory Board was appointed in February 2012 to look into all seriously and terminally ill inmates who have submitted reports requesting to be released on medical grounds.

Correctional Supervision and Parole Board

Correctional Supervision and Parole boards are responsible for dealing with parole matters and matters of correctional supervision. The Correctional Supervision and Parole boards have decision-making competency except:

- decisions regarding the granting of parole to people who are declared dangerous criminals in terms of Section 286A of
- the converting of sentences of imprisonment imposed in terms of Section 276 (A) (3) of the CPA of 1998 into correctional supervision

- decisions with regard to those sentenced to life imprisonment.

In such cases, recommendations are submitted to the courts that in turn will make decision in respect of conditional placement.

There are 52 Correctional Supervision and Parole Boards countrywide. These boards are chaired by community members who are regarded as suitable and capable of carrying out the responsibilities. The DCS provides the members with intensive training in respect of the processes, legislative implications and relative policies.

In addition, two members of the community are appointed as members of the board. Trained staff members of the DCS fill the positions of vice-chairperson and secretary. The board can also co-opt a representative of the SAPS and a representative of the DoJ&CD. However, if the representatives of SAPS and of DoJ&CD are not co-opted to participate in a board hearing, the chairperson of the board may request such departments to provide written inputs in respect of specific serious crimes.

Programmes and projects

Service Delivery Improvement Plan (SDIP)

Four key services form the basis of the SDIP. These are integrated into the department's strategic and operational plans. Regions report quarterly on:

- improving access of service providers and other stakeholders to correctional centres
- improving telephone and switchboard etiquette at all service points
- managing the payment of bail and fines at correctional centres
- improving the scheduling of visits to offenders to support family ties between offenders and their families.

Each year the department honours officials who excel in their tasks and go beyond the call of duty to ensure that quality service is delivered through the annual National Corrections Excellence Awards.

The DCS was also part of the development of the *Training Manual on Innovation* at the Public Administration Leadership and Management Academy, in collaboration with the Centre for Public Service Innovation.

The Gallows Memorial

The Gallows Memorialisation Project at the Pretoria Central Prison was initiated to honour those political prisoners who were hanged and serve as a reminder to future generations not to take their freedom for granted.

It comprises a memorial and a museum, which

includes the death row block housing the gallows where an estimated 130 political prisoners were hanged between 1961 and 1989.

As part of the museum, the chapel at the gallows was renamed the Steve Biko chapel, in memory of all those who died in detention.

There is also a garden of remembrance.

A roll of honour with the names of all the political prisoners can be seen at the entrance to the gallows.

Operation Vala

Operation Vala (meaning "close") is a 50-day special festive-season security plan, which includes:

- tightening security
- limiting offenders' externally focused activities to essential services
- curtailing goods and products brought to facilities by families and friends
- conducting impromptu searches to eliminate illegal substances
- maintaining appropriate staffing levels as informed by local threat assessments by heads of correctional centres and area commissioners.

Without security, no rehabilitation can take place. The department adopted a minimum security standards policy with six key pillars, namely personnel, technology, information, operational, physical and management supervision of security.

Operation Funda

Operation Funda (meaning "learn") is one of the DCS's flagship projects to enhance offenders' access to education and training to equip them for effective and sustainable social reintegration.

Young people between the ages of 18 and 25 constitute 69% of the offender population. There are 13 dedicated youth facilities nationally.

The purpose of the correctional system is not punishment, but protection of the public, promotion of social responsibility and enhancing human development to prevent repeat offending or the return to crime. The department insists that people who leave correctional centres must have appropriate attitudes, and competencies for them to successfully integrate back into society as law-abiding and productive citizens.

From April 2013, it was compulsory for every inmate to complete Adult Basic Education and Training levels 1 to 4.

Mother and baby units

The mother and baby units are separate cells built for mothers incarcerated with babies in correctional centres. This is to allow children as

close to normal an existence as possible even if this is under the conditions of incarceration of the mother, while at the same time providing rehabilitation programmes in a centre that enhances their capacity to care for their children.

These facilities were launched in response to the Child Justice Act of 2008. The Act created an imperative for the department to treat children incarcerated with their mothers in a humane manner.

The facilities cater for children up to two years, after which they are released to a legal guardian chosen or recommended by the mother.

Imbeleko Project

The department, through its Imbeleko Project, facilitates a soft landing for children older than two years whose mothers do not have proper family structures. It also has accredited childcare facilities to which some of these children are released.

The objectives of the project are aligned with those of the UN Convention on the Rights of the Child and the Child Justice Act of 2008.

The implementation of the first phase focused on what happens to a child released from a child-friendly mother and baby unit after reaching the limited two years.

It creates a harmonious environment between social workers from the DSD and those from the DCS to track the progress of the child who has to maintain contact with the mother through the foster parents. It calls for continuous interaction between the baby, mother and the foster parent before the child is given away.

Halfway House Pilot Project

The halfway houses offer an opportunity to offenders who meet all the requirements to be placed on parole but do not have fixed addresses that can be monitored to which they can return to in communities.

Halfway houses reduce such offenders' potential to reoffend because they are given a second chance to experience a home-like environment. A halfway house is considered the final part of an offender's rehabilitation process.

Victim-offender dialogue (VOD)

VODs are based on a theory of justice that considers crime, and wrongdoing, to be an offence against an individual or community, rather than the State. Restorative justice, that fosters dialogue between victim and offender, shows the highest rates of victim satisfaction and offender accountability.

Ultimately, every correctional centre will have a VOD Representative Forum.

The VODs provide an opportunity for offenders to meet with victims and account for their crimes, thereby rebuilding the nation. Through the VODs, parole boards and other structures, the department is working towards democratisation and creating more opportunities for people to join the fight against crime.

Correctional Services Learnership Programme

In August 2014, 446 learners of the 999 learners completed the Correctional Services Learnership and received Corrections Services certificates NQF level 4 at Zonderwater Training College.

The Further Education and Training Learnership in Corrections is one of the department's flagship skills development programmes.

The department's learnership is a prime example of work-integrated learning, encouraged by the Department of Higher Education and Training, where learners get an opportunity to engage in both theoretical (three months), and practical (nine months), learning.

As part of government's programme of action to address unemployment, and expand opportunities for greater employment and empowerment of youth in the country, the learnership is a successful partnership between the DCS and the Safety and Security Sector Education and Training Authority (Seta) to train young people as correctional officials.

Offender labour

Offenders across the country are giving back to communities and demonstrating remorse for the crimes they committed against them.

Empowering offenders with skills to function effectively in society upon their release is essential to rehabilitation.

It is equally important to ensure that offenders are actively involved in productive activity while they serve their sentences.

A trading entity will have a positive effect on the use of offender labour.

By means of the trading entity the DCS will offer their customer base consisting of government, the private sector and non-governmental organisations a wide variety of products and services, such as furniture, clothing, steel works, to food products and agriculture.

The department will continue donating products to disadvantaged communities from time to time to help alleviate poverty.

In line with the National Framework on Offender Labour, the department is increasing the number of offenders who participate in offender labour and skills development, programmes.

Ten DCS workshops will manufacture school

furniture.

The obligations of the DCS include:

- manufacture and delivery of school furniture
- rehabilitation of school furniture
- construction of school infrastructure
- maintenance, and refurbishment, of schools
- establishment of school gardens.

Electronic monitoring

The DCS launched a GPS electronic monitoring device for awaiting-trial detainees in November 2013, a move that enhances public safety through electronic monitoring.

The GPS electronic monitoring device could help to prevent potentially volatile situations involving offenders.

The watch-like gadget is strapped to the leg of the offender.

Once the bracelet is fitted, and activated, it cannot be removed without breaking the transmitter, strap or connecting clips. The device keeps Correctional Services officials aware of offenders' movements 24 hours a day, and triggers an alarm at a control room once an offender enters a restricted zone.

By monitoring offenders in this way the department wants to protect victims of domestic violence. Such victims can be given a receiver that alerts them when the perpetrator comes within a certain distance of them.

Automated Fingerprint and Identity System (Afis)

The department initiated the roll-out of Afis in correctional centres around the country. The department's Automated Personal Identity System, which was developed through the Inmate Tracking Project, was implemented at 32 correctional centres and 99 community corrections offices.

This interfaces with the Department of Home Affairs' database to verify the identity of offenders.

Operational structure of correctional facilities

Inmates statistics

The *White Paper on Remand Detention* was signed into policy in March 2014.

In 2014, there was a prison population of more than 150 000, which included pre-trial detainees and remand prisoners.

Pre-trial detainees and remand prisoners made up 26,9% of the inmates. Female inmates were 2,5% of the total prison population, juveniles 0,2%, foreign prisoners 6,3%. There are 242 correctional centres in the country.

Parole boards

The interim case management committee structures were established in all centres in accordance with Section 42 of the Correctional Services Act of 1998.

The parole system is based on international best practices.

It allows for independent decision-making by correctional supervision and parole boards and it allows for the participation of victims as well as other role players such as representatives from the SAPS and DoJ&CD.

Review of the CJS

The three main streams of core business of the department are vested in the budget programmes:

- remand detention
- incarceration and corrections
- social reintegration.

Remand detention

The White Paper on Remand Detention, in conjunction with the Correctional Matters Amendment Act of 2011, seeks to improve the management of remand detainees in DCS facilities. The constitutional right of 'innocent until proven guilty' underpins the White Paper.

Remand Detention Facilities must, therefore, allow for the minimal limitation of an individual's rights, while ensuring secure, and safe, custody.

The White Paper is also a response to the challenges posed by a dramatic increase in remand detainees over the past years. The White Paper recognises the challenges associated with persons in remand detention, although they have not been found guilty of any crime.

The DCS established a Remand Detention Branch, which became operational in April 2012. Together with the Criminal Justice Review Committee, DCS has embarked on a process of tracking those remand detainees who have been detained the longest in correctional facilities. The process assisted in determining the factors, which delay the finalisation of such cases, to ensure that these issues are addressed accordingly.

Social reintegration

The community forms an integral part of the rehabilitation of offenders on parole to reintegrate them as law-abiding citizens. Parole is used internationally to place offenders under supervision within the community.

The parole policy provides for credible members of communities to chair the Correctional Supervision and Parole Boards which have been allocated decision-making authority.

The department wants to return rehabilitated offenders to society as healthy, and responsible, community members.

Parolees who obtained skills in correctional centres, are being provided with work tools, and start-up kits, to start their own businesses.

These include welding machines, sewing machines, car-wash machines and vacuum cleaners to create entrepreneurs and employment for parolees.

Through the Working on Fire project, female parolees are being trained and graduate to structural fire fighting. The training is not only confined to fire fighting, but includes administration and carpentry.

The department has also engaged the National House of Traditional Leaders in the rehabilitation, and reintegration, of offenders. This project is aimed at going back to the basics of rehabilitation and reintegration.

Other initiatives include parolees employed by the City of Johannesburg in the Gateway Project, the Clean Sweep Jo'burg Project, painting the Glenanda Clinic as well as a garden project at Helen Joseph Hospital, which supplies the hospital with fresh vegetables. Similar projects are being undertaken in other provinces.



Mineral Resources

The Department of Mineral Resources (DMR) assumes the custodianship of all mineral resources in South Africa on behalf of its citizens. To this end, the DMR promotes and regulates the Minerals and Mining Sector for transformation, growth and development as well as ensures that all South Africans derive sustainable benefit from the country's mineral wealth.

Various specialised divisions of the DMR and associated institutions are responsible for the administration of the mining and regulations and for promoting the development of the industry. Mining is regulated by three branches, namely the Mineral Policy and Promotion Branch, Mineral Regulation Branch and the Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate.

The Mineral Policy and Promotion Branch is responsible for formulating mineral related policies and helps promote the mining and minerals industry of South Africa to make it attractive to investors. The branch consists of four Chief Directorates:

- Mineral Policy, which develops new policies, reviews existing policies and amends legislation to promote investment growth and achieve transformation in the minerals and mining industry
- Economic Advisory Services that undertakes macroeconomic research and analysis, to inform Executive Management and the department in their engagements with industry stakeholders
- Mineral Promotion promotes mineral development and advises on trends in the mining industry to attract additional investment
- Mine Environmental Management that provides strategic guidance to mine environmental management and mine closure issues, including the management of derelict and ownerless mines.

The South African mining and minerals industry has played a key role in the country's economic development, which has transformed South Africa into the most industrialised country in Africa. It has also been the principal driver of the current infrastructure network, which now underpins jobs in many other sectors. The South African government's development policies, the National Development Plan (NDP) and the New Growth Path (NGP), both recognise the critical role that mining contributes in growing investments, exports, gross domestic product (GDP) and job creation. In this respect government, organised labour and industry have, through the Mining Industry Growth, Development and Employment Task Team (MIGDETT) undertaken several initiatives aimed at resolving the challenges facing the industry.

Other policy interventions aimed at addressing structural imbalances and tackle high levels of unemployment, poverty and inequality have either been developed or are currently being developed. Principal among these are the National Development Plan (NDP), Developmental Growth Path (DGP), Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP), the Ten Year Innovation Strategy as well as the Beneficiation Strategy. The IPAP identifies areas where employment could be leveraged and Key Action Plans (KAPs) to achieve the employment growth.

The mining industry is a well-established and resourceful sector of South Africa's economy and has a high degree of technical expertise as well as the ability to mobilize capital for new development. It has provided the impetus for the development of an extensive and efficient physical infrastructure and has contributed greatly to the establishment of the country's secondary industries. With the diversity and abundance of its natural resources, South Africa is a leading producer and supplier of a range of minerals and produced approximately 53 different minerals from 1 712 mines and quarries in 2013. Gold was produced from 53 mines, platinum-group metals (PGMs) from 43 mines, coal from 143 mines and diamonds from 388 mines, all as primary commodities.

The mining industry remains one of the biggest contributors to the country's gross domestic product; however, unrest in the industry has led to stoppages in mining production that have hampered growth, according to figures released by Statistics South Africa and the South African Reserve Bank in July 2014.

Government's industrialisation policy calls for a paradigm shift in mineral development, strategic investment in assets to maximise long-term growth beneficiation projects, enhanced value of exports, increased sources for consumption of local content, and creation of opportunities for sustainable jobs.

In 2014, the Mineral Beneficiation Action Plan was being developed to advance local value-addition across five mineral value-chains, namely iron-ore and steel, platinum group metals, polymers, titanium and mining inputs. The Department of Trade and Industry (dti) also worked on a plan which will be a component of the Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP).

The platinum and gold sectors had been negatively affected by the persistent global economic market environment, which had an adverse bearing on their long-term viability.

The rescue plan is expected to enable the department to find appropriate government-wide measures for appropriate sector-wide responses,

with particular focus on supply and demand side interventions to position them along a recovery path and a trajectory of long-term sustainability through the well-established tripartite structure of Mining Growth, Development and Employment Task Team.

Platinum and gold were among the largest sectors of South Africa's mining industry in terms of employment, investment and revenue generation.

The strategic goals for the Department of Mineral Resources (DMR) are to:

- promote and facilitate an increase in mining activity and in value added to mineral resources extracted in South Africa
- implement transformation policies that redress past imbalances through broader participation in the mineral sector
- provide a framework for managing health and safety risks, enforce compliance and promote best practice in the mineral sector
- promote sustainable resource management, contribute to skills development and the creation of sustainable jobs in the mining sector
- contribute to a reduction of the adverse impacts of mining on the environment
- attract, develop and retain appropriate skills and ensure the optimal utilisation of resources
- implement risk management strategies and promote corporate governance.

Legislation and policies

Some key legislation and policies relating to the DMR are the:

- Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (MPRDA), 2002 (Act 28 of 2002). The promulgation of the MPRDA of 2002 in 2004 introduced a policy of equal access to South Africa's mineral resources. This democratic mineral dispensation introduced the policy of socio-economic responsibility, which was to be achieved through the application of Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) Policy by ensuring that historically disadvantaged South Africans are brought into the mainstream of mining. However, challenges experienced in implementing these policies resulted in the need to review the MPRDA of 2002. The objectives of the review are to:
 - provide for a detailed consultation process
 - support the beneficiation strategy
 - streamline the licensing process to avoid delays and inefficiencies
 - provide for enhanced punitive measures
 - improve the current construct of the Act and remove ambiguities, and provide clarity on the mining of associated minerals.

- Mineral Health and Safety Inspectorate of the DMR, established in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996) as amended, which is responsible for protecting the health and safety of mine workers and people affected by mining activities.
 - The Council for Geoscience (CGS) was established in 1993 under the Geoscience Act, 1993 (Act 100 of 1993).
 - Geoscience Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 16 of 2010), expands the functions of the CGS by:
 - mandating the CGS to be the custodian and curator of geotechnical information; to be a national mandatory advisory authority in respect of geohazards related to infrastructure development; to undertake exploration and prospecting research in the mineral and petroleum sectors; and to add to the functions of the council
 - putting mechanisms in place to address problems associated with infrastructure development on dolomitic land
 - empowering the CGS to be the custodian of all geotechnical data to compile a complete geotechnical risk profile of the country
 - enabling the CGS to become the custodian of technical information relating to exploration and mining
 - Refocusing the objectives of the CGS to promote the search for and exploitation of any mineral in the country and to act as a national advisory authority in the areas of geohazards and geo-environmental pollution.
 - During 2010, the DMR unveiled the revised Mining Charter 2010, which updates and expands upon a set of empowerment targets with emphasis on a target of 26% black ownership of the country's mining assets by 2014.
 - The Beneficiation Strategy was approved by Cabinet in June 2011. To ensure its efficacy, certain amendments to all relevant legislation will be effected. These include the Precious Metals Act, 2005 (Act 37 of 2005), the Diamond Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 29 of 2005), and Section 26 of the MPRDA of 2002. Five value chains were prioritised from the selected commodities in the strategy, namely:
 - iron and steel: beneficiating iron ore, chrome, manganese, nickel and vanadium
 - energy commodities: focusing on coal and uranium
 - auto catalytic converters and diesel particulate filters: beneficiating PGM
 - pigment and titanium metal production
 - jewellery manufacturing: to increase the beneficiation of platinum group metals, diamonds and gold.
 - The draft Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Amendment Bill, which was introduced to Parliament in May 2013. The draft Bill aims to enhance provision for the beneficiation of minerals to promote industrialisation and contribute to the nation's objectives of job creation and economic growth as envisaged in the National Development Plan (NDP).
- African Exploration Mining and Finance Corporation Bill 2015 (AEMFC Bill): The department is in the process of developing a draft Bill referred to as the African Exploration Mining and Finance Corporation Bill, 2015. The draft Bill has been forwarded to the Office of the Chief State Law Adviser (OCSLA) for pre-certification. The OCSLA has certified that the draft Bill conforms to the requirements of the Constitution. The draft Bill will be published for public comments upon Cabinet approval. The purpose of the AEMFC Bill is to provide for:
- establishment of African Exploration Mining and Finance Corporation as a creature of statute
 - consolidation of the directly held State interest in mining assets
 - objects and functions of the African Exploration Mining and Finance Corporation
 - constitution of its Board and the management of the African Exploration Mining and Finance Corporation by the Board
 - finances of the African Exploration Mining and Finance Corporation
 - Chief Executive Officer and the staff of the African Exploration Mining and Finance Corporation.
- Other mining policy and legislative amendments
- Chapter XVI of the Mining Rights Act, (Act 20 of 1967) in the form of the Precious Metals Act, 2005 (Act 37 of 2005)
- The Diamonds Act, 1986 (Act 56 of 1986) in the form of the Diamonds Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 29 of 2005), and the Diamonds Second Amendment Act, 2005 (Act No 30 of 2005)
- Geosciences Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 16 of 2010) and The Geoscience Amendment Act of 2010) Draft Regulations
- The Housing and Living Conditions Standards for the Mining and Mineral Industry, 2009
- The Codes of Good Practice for the Mining and Mineral Industry, 2009
- Section 22 (5) Guidelines
- the 1998 White Paper on the Minerals and Mining Policy for South Africa, which provides the framework for the transparent and efficient regulation of the mineral resources and mineral industry.

Beneficiation strategy

The National Jewellery Forum brings together mining and jewellery manufacturing associations and government, with the view to creating entrepreneurs with the requisite skills to enable South Africa to become a global jewellery hub.

Jewellery manufacturing is one of the five key value chains identified in the Beneficiation Strategy.

Budget and funding

The budget allocation of R1,394 billion for the 2014/15 financial year.

Role players

Mining Qualifications Authority (MQA)

The State's influence within the mineral industry is not only confined to orderly regulation and the promotion of equal opportunity for all its citizens and investors, but also participates in mining operations through state-owned companies (SOCs) such as Alexkor, African Exploration Mining and Finance Corporation (Pty) Ltd (AEMFC) and the Industrial Development Corporation (IDC).

All stakeholders in the industry need to intensify skills-development efforts, to make certain that the mining industry operates in a sustainable and competitive environment.

The future of mining in the country largely depends on the successful implementation of skills development initiatives.

Particular focus is placed on artisan and artisan aid as well as other technical skills. Capacity building within the department and associated institutions has also been prioritised in respect of identified critical areas of skills shortage and necessary interventions have been introduced, which include learnership programmes and bursary schemes.

The MQA was established as a sector education and training authority and facilitates the development of appropriate knowledge and skills in the mining, minerals and jewellery sectors to:

- enable the development and transformation of the sector
- contribute to the health, safety and competitiveness of the sector
- improve access to quality education and training for all
- redress past inequalities in education and training.

The MQA is responsible for:

- developing and implementing a sector skills plan
- developing unit standards and qualifications for the sector

- establishing, registering, administering and promoting learnerships and apprenticeships
- maintaining the quality of standards, qualifications and learning
- disbursing grants from the skills-development levy.

Chamber of Mines

Corporate restructuring of the South African mining industry remains an ongoing exercise. The introduction of the Mining Charter in South Africa was aimed at transforming the mining industry to redress historical imbalances, so that the industry is aligned with the changes in the country's overall transformation of its social, political and economic landscape. The transformation of the mining industry has included the consolidation of ownership through minority buy-outs, separation of large diversified companies into two or more specialised companies as well as the purchase of South African mining assets by foreign companies.

The Chamber of Mines of South Africa is a voluntary, private sector employers' organisation founded in 1889, three years after gold was discovered on the Witwatersrand. The Chamber is an association of mining companies and mines operating in the gold, coal, diamond, platinum and other mineral commodity sectors. Today, the organisation acts as the principal advocate of the major policy positions endorsed by mining employers. The Chamber represents the formalised views of its membership to various organs and spheres of government, and to other relevant policy-making and opinion-forming entities, both within and outside the country.

South African Mining Development Association (SAMDA)

SAMDA, which was formed in 2000 as a junior mining initiative by a group of people associated with various South African junior and BEE mining companies, aims to create an enabling environment for raising finance, developing technical and other skills, practising responsible environmental management and sustainable development as well as the maintenance of standards of good practice in the junior mining sector.

Voluntary Associations

- The Southern African Institute of Mining and Metallurgy (SAIMM), was founded 115 years ago in 1894. The SAIMM is a professional institute with local and international links aimed at assisting member's source news and views about technological developments in the mining, metallurgical and related sectors

as well as embracing a professional code of ethics

- South African Colliery Managers Association (SACMA)
- Association of Mine Managers South Africa (AMMSA)
- Geological Society of South Africa (GSSA)
- Engineering Council of South Africa (ECSA)
- South African for Natural Scientific Professions (SACNASP).

South African Diamond and Precious Metals Regulator (SADPMR)

The SADPMR regulates the diamond, platinum and gold industries and accelerates beneficiation in the jewellery industry. The SADPMR's objectives are to:

- ensure that precious metal and diamond resources are exploited and developed in the best interests of all South Africans
- promote equitable access to and local beneficiation of precious metals and diamonds
- promote the development of precious metal and diamond enterprises
- advance broad-based socio-economic empowerment
- ensure compliance with the Kimberley Process Certification Scheme (KPCS).

Its functions regarding diamonds include:

- implementing, administering and controlling all matters relating to the purchase, sale, beneficiation, import and export of diamonds
- establishing diamond exchange and export centres to facilitate the buying, selling, export and import of diamonds.

While the South African Diamond Board has an essentially regulatory role, the SADPMR has a promotional role as well.

By administering licences and export approvals, the SADPMR ensures that local demand for diamonds and precious metals is catered for, and that there is growth in local beneficiation of diamonds and precious metals.

Council for Mineral Technology and Research (Mintek)

The Council for Mineral Technology (Mintek) assists the minerals industry to operate more effectively by developing and making available the most appropriate and cost-effective mineral recovery and mineral beneficiation technologies.

It is engaged in the full spectrum of minerals research: from the mineralogical examination of ores to the development of processing, extraction and refining technologies and also conducts research into: the production of added value products and feasibility and economic studies. Much of this work is carried out in close liaison

Southern African leaders have made renewed calls for regional economic integration and cross-border infrastructure development as the Southern African Development Community (SADC) Summit got underway here in August 2014. SADC Heads of State met for their two-day summit in the resort town of Victoria Falls as slow economic growth and high rates of unemployment continue to torment the region. The beneficiation of minerals coming out of SADC took centre stage. The goal for SADC to drive short and long-term economic growth could be realised if only the region could beneficiate its minerals.

with the local and international minerals and metallurgical industries.

Mintek is involved in research into the use of nanotechnology for medical applications of gold as well as giving effect to the Hydrogen Strategy, in partnership with the departments of Mineral Resources, Science and Technology and Trade and Industry.

This is intended to create future demand for gold and platinum, in keeping with the national objective of achieving 20% global market share of platinum catalysis by 2020.

Mine Health and Safety Council (MHSC)

The Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate (MHSI) is responsible for implementing mine health and safety legislation. The Inspectorate ensures the safe mining of minerals under healthy working conditions and is represented in the various provinces by principal inspectors.

The branch is comprised of two subprogrammes which are: Mine Health and Safety (Regions) responsible for audits, inspections, investigations, enquiries, enforcing the Mine Health and Safety Act and its provisions, examination services and providing professional advice; and Governance Policy and provide technical support to regional offices, chair tripartite structures and facilitate HIV and AIDS work in the sector.

Through the Mine Health and Safety Council (MHSC), the inspectorate provides leadership and participates in initiatives and activities of tripartite institutions to respond to current health and safety challenges. The MHSC is a national public entity (schedule 3A) established in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act, No 29 of 1996 as amended. The main task of the Council is to advise the Minister of Mineral Resources on occupational health and safety legislation and research outcomes focused on improving and promoting health and safety in South African mines. The MHSC continues to respond to health and safety challenges through implementation of focused programmes addressing milestones agreed upon by stakeholders (labour, State and employers) during their health and safety summit in 2003. Resolutions made included that the

mining sector will achieve a 20 percent decline in fatality and injury rates per year and eliminate Silicosis and Noise Induced Hearing Loss by 2013.

By 2014, the Mine Health and Safety Act was being reviewed comprehensively to:

- strengthen enforcement provisions; to simplify the administrative system for the issuing of fines
- reinforce offences and penalties; to substitute and remove ambiguities in certain definitions and expressions
- effect certain amendments necessary to ensure consistency with other laws, particularly the
- Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (MPRDA)

Council for Geoscience

The Council for Geoscience (CGS) undertakes geological mapping and carries out studies pertaining to the identification, nature, extent and genesis of ore deposits and also maintains national databases of the country's geoscientific data and information.

The CGS is also able to provide commercial geoscientific services.

The CGS participates in various Southern African Development Community (SADC) projects aimed at promoting the economic development of the Southern African sub-continent.

International cooperative projects that have been carried out, or are in progress, include geological mapping, geochemical and geophysical surveys, and the production of maps in many countries, either on a bilateral basis or collaboratively in the SADC region.

State Diamond Trader

The (SDT) main business is to buy and sell rough diamonds to promote equitable access to and beneficiation of diamond resources. The main aim of the SDT is to address distortions in the diamond industry and correct historical market failures to develop and grow South Africa's diamond cutting and polishing industry.

The SDT is a state owned-entity established in terms of Section 14 of the Diamonds Amendment Act 2005, Act(29 of 2005). The company is classified as a Schedule 3b entity of the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA).

The SDT sells to approved customers through the SDT's application and approval process. The entity is eligible by law and proclamation to purchase up to 10% of the run of mine from all diamond producers in South Africa.

The SDT is permitted to purchase up to 10% of South African diamond production by carats and value. during 2013 – 14 it was able to purchase

only 3% by carats and 4% by value of the rough diamonds it inspected.

Petroleum Agency South Africa (PASA)

PASA promotes exploration for onshore and offshore oil and gas resources and their optimal development on behalf of government, as designated in terms of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (MPRDA). The Agency regulates exploration and production activities, and acts as the custodian of the national petroleum exploration and production database.

African Mining Partnership (AMP)

The AMP, whose main function is to drive the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) mining initiatives, was established during the African Mining Minister's meeting in Cape Town in February 2004. South Africa, as a major role player in this body, has played an important role as the Secretariat, in hosting as well as coordinating the affairs of the AMP. The AMP merged with the African Union Conference of Ministers Responsible for Mineral Resources Development.

International Organisations/Associations Association of African Diamond Producing Countries (ADPA)

ADPA is an association of diamond producing African countries, 11 of which have full membership while seven only enjoy observer status. The Association is chaired on a rotational basis and in July 2012, Ghana took over chairpersonship from the Democratic Republic of Congo during the annual Council of Ministers' meeting held in Accra, Ghana. The ADPA Secretariat was in consultation with the Council of Mining Ministers to host the meeting later in 2014, following postponement of the 2013 meeting which was supposed to be held in Guinea Conakry. However, the 2014 Council of Mining Minister's meeting could not be held due elections and the Ebola outbreak in 2013 and 2014 respectively.

The main focus of ADPA revolves around the implementation of aligned policies and strategies intended to maximize the benefits derived from revenues of diamonds across the African continent. In so doing ADPA explores the development of a best practice document that will promote the realisation of harmonised policies across Africa with a goal to increase foreign investments into the diamond sector for the benefit of all member States.

The Kimberley Process (KP)

South Africa is one of the founding members of the Kimberley Process (KP), which brought into

existence the Kimberley Process Certification Scheme (KPCS). The KP was established when diamond producing countries convened in Kimberley, South Africa in May 2000, to discuss ways to stem the trade in “conflict diamonds” and ensure that the diamond trade was not fuelling armed conflicts. In December 2000, the United Nations General Assembly adopted a landmark Resolution 55/56 of 2000, which supported the establishment of an international certification scheme for rough diamonds.

By November 2002, negotiations between governments, the international diamond industry and civil society organisations resulted in the creation of the KPCS, which was launched in Kimberley, South Africa in 2003. As one of the founding members of the KPCS, South Africa played a pivotal role in the establishment of the KPCS as well as the harmonisation of the regulatory framework relating to the sale and export of diamonds. The KPCS has 54 participants representing 81 countries that counts for 99,8% of the global production of rough diamonds. The KPCS core document (statutes) governs the global production of rough diamonds and stipulate the objectives, definitions, internal controls and, most importantly, minimum requirements that each participant must comply with.

The People Republic of China hosted KPCS Intercessional and Plenary meetings in June and November 2014, respectively. The Republic of Angola assumed KPCS Chairpersonship from 1 January 2015 for the next 12 months.

Projects and initiatives

With significant resources of gold, uranium, chrome, manganese, PGM, titanium minerals, vanadium, coal, limestone, vermiculite and zirconium, South African mining real estate remains attractive for development.

South Africa has significant known reserves and resources of mineral commodities, with almost 60 minerals being actively mined and prospects for exploitation of an additional two new minerals in the short to medium term. A large number of these known reserves were discovered using conventional exploration methodologies. For this reason, there still lies considerable residual potential for discovery of world-class deposits using modern exploration technology.

This is further supported by existing mining infra-structure, which enables investors to leverage maximum value from their investment while simultaneously contributing to socio-political improvement.

Shale-gas exploration

The potential of shale-gas exploration and exploitation provides an opportunity for South Africa to begin exploring the production of its own fuel and marks the beginning of the reindustrialisation of the economy.

The proposed regulations on petroleum exploration and exploitation prescribe good international petroleum industry practices and standards, which enhance safe exploration and production of all petroleum and will further ensure that petroleum exploration is conducted in a socially and environmentally balanced manner.

The technical regulations provide for the assessment of the potential impact of the proposed activities on the environment; the protection of fresh water resources and mechanisms for the co-existence of shale gas exploitation and the Square Kilometre Array project.

The South African Government would have a free-carried shareholding of 20% in entities producing shale gas in the Karoo in the future.

Stability in the mining sector

In June 2014, the Minister of Mineral Resources, Adv Ngoako Ramatlhodi, welcomed the signing of a settlement reached between labour and business, following a protracted strike in the North West platinum belt. The parties signed the settlement agreement after months of negotiations.

In his first few days in office, the Minister brought the parties together to resolve the impasse in the negotiations. He further established an interdepartmental technical team to propose solutions to the stalemate. Earlier in June, the Minister announced that he would formally be withdrawing from the process, as enough progress had been made for the parties to continue engaging and reach a settlement. The end of the strike meant the DMR could focus on other matters affecting the mining sector.

Mine health and safety

In November 2014, the Mine Health and Safety Council summit under the theme “Every mine

In August 2014, the Minister in The Presidency, Jeff Radebe, announced that government and the mining sector planned to partner with municipalities to make the family units of mineworkers more liveable and have the feel of home. The Minister commended the mining sector for collaborating with government to convert single-sex hostels into family units. The move forms part of the objectives set out in the Mining Charter, which seeks to transform the industry. One of the prominent requirements in the charter is for mining companies to improve housing and the living conditions of mineworkers.

worker returning home unharmed every day, striving for zero harm” was held in South Africa. The social impact of mining incidents permeates through to society.

Injuries and diseases contracted at work have the potential to exacerbate the problem of unemployment, poverty and overburdens the social security and primary health care systems.

The notion of every mine worker returning home unharmed every day, requires a holistic overhaul and redefining of the industry and its role in society.

Illegal mining

In June 2014, an illegal mining incident in Benoni led to the loss of life. Illegal mining is not only dangerous, but can lead to incidents such as this one. Through the Illegal Mining Stakeholder Forums established, the DMR will continue implementing measures to eradicate these illicit activities. The measures include the sealing off of access holes, and working with law enforcement agencies to apprehend criminals. The Minister of Mineral Resources commended the active role played by the police to date, including in the recent arrest of members of a syndicate who were involved in multi-million rand illegal gold mining activities in the Carletonville area.

The illegal activity is not only a threat to the health of the illegal miners, but also affected the economy negatively.

An estimated that R6 billion was being lost to illegal mining annually.

Integrated licencing

The construct of the Mining Regulatory Framework is fragmented and has been identified as one of the binding constraints to the growth and competitiveness of the South African mining sector. The departments of mineral resources, water affairs and environmental affairs have agreed on the modalities of integrating the time frames and processes of environmental authorisation and water-use licensing for prospecting and mining operations.

The modalities include the departments implementing the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act 107 of 1998) for the industry to be regulated by a single environmental piece of legislation.

Processes of environmental authorisation will be contained within the same time frames that apply to prospecting and mining authorisations, and the process of approving water use licences will also be finalised within the same time frames.

This represents a significant improvement in service delivery, both in terms of certainty regarding security of tenure when mining or prospecting

In August 2014, the Mining Legotla, a platform which brings together key stakeholders in the South African mining industry and other role players, got underway in Midrand. Since its launch in 2012, the Iekgotla has become the premier mining think-tank in the sector, and serves to explore key trends and policy shifts in the mining environment. The summit comes against a backdrop of unprecedented labour unrest, changing legislation and rising costs. The Iekgotla took place under the theme, “Building on the Contribution of Mining since the Advent of Democracy: The Past We Acknowledge and the Future We Build Together.” Mining is a key job driver and foreign exchange earner for the country and has been the backbone of the economy for decades. The event was a collaboration between the Chamber of Mines of South Africa, the Department of Mineral Resources and the National Union of Mineworkers.

rights are issued and in terms of improved turnaround times resulting from the processes being finalised in parallel rather than sequentially as was previously the case.

Job creation and sustainable development

Economic distress in the industry resulted in large scale retrenchments. As a result job creation targets were not achieved.

Following the review of the 2004 Mining Charter, which is subject to a 10-year review time frame, the DMR embarked on a process of reviewing and amending the 2004 Mining Charter to strengthen and sharpen its efficacy in driving transformation and competitiveness in the mining sector.

The implementation of the mining charter has been given 10 years to effect transformation. In view of this window the department conducted a baseline assessment of compliance by the mining industry with the Mining Charter and produced a preliminary report in 2009.

A second assessment report, in 2014 was produced as a continuation of the initial assessment to ensure that the department quantifies the compliance levels over the 10-year window.

The socio-economic challenges brought about by communities living close to mining operations has necessitated departmental review of levels of compliance with the Mining Charter.

Rehabilitation of mines

The mine rehabilitation programme has had a positive effect on communities where the projects are including economic growth owing to sourcing labour and material locally. The programme also results in improved health and well-being of communities. The rehabilitation programme reduces the risk of asbestos fibres from historical asbestos mine sites that human and animal being exposed to.

A total of 284 jobs were created as part of the programme, which was 24 jobs more than initially

projected for the year. The job creation element of the rehabilitation programme is one of the key requirements for all the rehabilitation projects. This contributes to some of the priorities of the NDP.

A report by actuarial scientists on the estimated State liability for the rehabilitation of derelict and ownerless mines commissioned by the department is under consideration.

The recommendations will assist the department in planning the rehabilitation programme, with a lucid indication of the resource requirements.

An annual review of the liability has also been completed. Both the initial report and the review report confirm the need for fiscal support to the department for rehabilitation work.

Acid mine drainage (AMD)

Land owners are responsible for acid mine drainage (AMD) after the land has been sold. The Constitutional Court made the ruling in February 2014, after it dismissed an application by Harmony Gold. The application was for leave to appeal against the Supreme Court of Appeal's judgement that the company remained liable for the cost of pumping and treating AMD despite the fact that it no longer owns or mines the land. The Supreme Court of Appeal held that a directive issued under the National Water Act regarding the pumping and treatment of AMD remained binding on the owner of land after it had sold the land, notwithstanding the fact that a new entity now mines that area but does not contribute to the costs of pumping and treating. The gold producer argued that the plain text of the National Water Act does not permit that interpretation.

In March 2014, regulatory and other measures were put in place to address the serious environmental consequences of AMD. To complement efforts and ensure that the mining sector makes its fair contribution towards continuing AMD expenses, consultations were initiated on an appropriate funding mechanism, such as an environmental levy or equivalent instrument. According to the National Budget Review, the benefit in addressing this harmful negative environmental consequence will accrue to society at large and mining companies operating in affected regions.

AMD pumps have been installed in the Witwatersrand area in March 2014. These pumps would ensure the area's AMD remains below the Environmental Critical Level (ECL). The pumps were installed at the newly built Central Basin Pump Station in Witwatersrand. The pumps were operational at the end of April, ensuring that the Central Basin remained below the ECL,

protecting the environment the country's water courses. Along with the pumps, the construction of High Density Sludge treatment plants will neutralise the AMD before it was discharged into the environment. The installation and construction of the pumps, treatment plant and monitoring shafts commenced in January 2013 and is valued at R319 million. Once the treatment plant is operational, an average of 57 million litres of AMD per day will be treated and discharged into the Klipriver.

In May 2014, the pumping, treatment and release of treated AMD for the testing of the Central Basin AMD treatment plant commenced. The treatment plant was launched by the Inter-Ministerial Committee (IMC) on AMD and aimed at implementing the short-term action plan in the Western, Central and Eastern Basins of the Witwatersrand Goldfields.

By November 2014, emergency work was completed in the Western, Central and Eastern Basins. An immediate solution was proposed for the Western Basin, which included upgrading the Rand Uranium (Gold 1) (Randfontein) AMD/mine water plant. The plant treated 30 MI of AMD a day. There have been reports of improvements in surface and groundwater quality however additional refurbishment is urgently required to eradicate decant.

A short-term solution was proposed for the Central Basin, and a new AMD pump station, neutralisation and waste disposal facility was constructed at the south-west vertical shaft in Germiston. The project was commissioned in April 2014 and facilities were pumping, treating and discharging 56 MI of AMD daily by November 2014.

A solution similar to that of the Central Basin was proposed for Grootvlei Mine No. 3 Shaft, in Springs, which falls under the Eastern Basin. The project commenced in June 2014 and the projected commissioning date is for December 2015. The DMR set an operational target to neutralise 84 MI of AMD daily for this facility.

Resources

South Africa's mineral wealth is typically found in the following well-known geological formations and settings:

In July 2014, the Minister of Mineral Resources officially launched the drill operation for the first deep-water well, south of Mossel Bay. The well, operated by petroleum company Total, adds to South Africa's oil and gas industry profile, which has the potential to contribute to economic growth and jobs. Drilling in deep-water is novel to South Africa and would bring with it avenues for skills transfer in the deep-water exploration space for South Africa. Deep-water drilling is a process of oil and gas exploration.

- the Witwatersrand Basin yields some 93% of South Africa's gold output and contains considerable uranium, silver, pyrite and osmiridium resources
- the Bushveld Complex is known for PGMs (with associated copper, nickel and cobalt mineralisation), chromium and vanadium-bearing titanium-iron ore formations as well as large deposits of industrial minerals, including fluorspar and andalusite
- the Transvaal Supergroup contains enormous resources of manganese and iron ore
- the Karoo Basin extends through Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State as well as Limpopo, hosting considerable bituminous coal and anthracite resources
- the Phalaborwa Igneous Complex hosts extensive deposits of copper, phosphate, titanium, vermiculite, feldspar and zirconium ores
- kimberlite pipes host diamonds that also occur in alluvial, fluvial and marine settings
- heavy mineral sands contain ilmenite, rutile and zircon
- significant deposits of lead-zinc ores associated with copper and silver are found in the Northern Cape near Aggeneys.

Gold

South Africa dominated global gold production in the 20th century. There are 35 large-scale gold mines operating in South Africa, including the record setting TauTona mine, which extends 3,9 km underground. TauTona means "great lion" in Setswana. South Africa accounts for 11% of the world's gold reserves.

Cape Town hosts the annual Indaba Mining Conference, one of the largest gatherings of mining stakeholders, which attracts nearly 10 000 people representing more than 1 000 companies.

Coal

The coal sector is important for the South African economy. The accelerated demand for coal, accompanied by an increase in international coal prices, has invariably changed the buying patterns and structure of the local coal export industry. The emergence of the export market for lower-grade coal has presented government with a challenge in that it has constrained the availability of coal that was historically sold to Eskom.

In the national energy plan, coal remains an important component of the country's future energy mix and requirements. Government resolved that certain minerals such as coal should be declared strategic national resources, based

on the balance of evidence. The findings of the coal resources and reserves report concluded by the CGS were released in mid-2013.

Platinum group metals (PGM)

Platinum, palladium, rhodium, osmium, ruthenium and iridium occur together in nature alongside nickel and copper. Platinum, palladium and rhodium, the most economically significant of the PGMs, are found in the largest quantities.

The remaining PGMs are produced as co-products. South Africa is the world's leading platinum and rhodium producer, and the second-largest palladium producer after Russia. South Africa's production is sourced entirely from the Bushveld Complex, the largest known PGM-resource in the world.

Platinum

South Africa accounts for 96% of known global reserves of the platinum group metals (PGMs).

The Merensky Reef, stretching from southern Zimbabwe through to the Rustenburg and Pretoria regions, is the centre of platinum mining in South Africa, playing host to companies such as Rustenburg Platinum Mines and Bafokeng Rasimone Platinum Mines.

Amplats is the industry leader in the mining, marketing, and distribution of platinum. Amplats produces 40% of the world's total platinum group metals.

Other key platinum mining companies in South Africa include BHP Billiton and Impala Platinum.

Platinum mining in South Africa is growing. The establishment of projects such as the R7,1billion Twickenham Expansion Project, 100 km south-east of Polokwane, will see the production of 250 000 t/m pure platinum.

The well-underway Impala Platinum No. 20 Shaft Project, which is geared to produce 185 000 ounces of platinum a year on the Bushveld Complex.

Palladium

South Africa is the world's second-largest palladium producer. All of South Africa's production is sourced from the Bushveld Igneous Complex, which hosts the world's largest resource of PGMs.

Palladium and platinum is more abundant than any of the other PGMs.

Ferrous minerals

South Africa is the largest producer of chromium and vanadium ores and a leading supplier of their alloys. It is also a significant producer of iron and manganese ores, and a minor producer of ferrosilicon and silicon metal. Ferrous

minerals are produced from some 32 mines and 23 ferroalloys smelters.

Copper

Palabora, a large copper mine, smelter and refinery complex managed by the Palabora Mining Company at the town of Phalaborwa in Limpopo is South Africa's only producer of refined copper. Producing about 80 000 t per year, it supplies most of South Africa's copper needs and exports the balance.

Useful byproduct metals and minerals include zirconium chemicals, magnetite and nickel sulphate as well as small quantities of gold, silver and platinum. Palabora's large block cave copper mine and smelter complex employs approximately 2 200 people. Palabora also owns a nearby vermiculite deposit, which is mined and processed for sale worldwide. Vermiculite is a versatile industrial mineral.

Chrome

South Africa accounts for 74% of chrome reserves globally.

Manganese

South Africa accounts for 26% of manganese reserves, but exploitation of the mineral has not reflected its development potential.

Diamonds

South Africa, the site of the biggest diamond discovery, plans to process a greater proportion of its gems locally to keep more profit in the country.

Government wants to cut and refine 70% of the diamonds mined in South Africa by 2023. Only 4% were processed locally.

Industrial minerals

There are some 680 producers of industrial minerals in South Africa, of which almost half are in the sand and aggregate sector.

There are some 153 producers of clays (brick-making and special), 40 limestone and dolomite, 79 dimension stone, 28 salt and 20 silica producers. Bulk consumption of industrial minerals is realised in the domestic market, as most are low-priced commodities and sold in bulk, making their economic exploitation highly dependent on transport costs and distance to markets.

Mineral Regulation

The Mineral Regulation Branch was created following the promulgation of the MPRDA Act of 2002. Chief directorates have been created under the Mineral Regulation Branch for the

following regions:

- northern
- central
- western
- coastal.

Each chief directorate is responsible for overseeing the activities performed by the Directorate Licensing and Legal Compliance in the three regional offices or directorates.

The functions of the Mineral Regulation branch are to:

- administer the MPRDA of 2002 and other applicable legislation to ensure the granting of prospecting and mining rights in terms of the Act
- promote mineral development including urban renewal, rural development and BEE
- address past legacies with regard to derelict and ownerless mines and enforce legislation regarding mine rehabilitation by means of regulated environmental management plans
- coordinate and liaise with national, provincial and local government structures for efficient governance.

Geology

South Africa has a long and complex geological history dating back more than 3 700 billion years. Significant fragments of this geology have been preserved, and along with them mineral deposits.

The preservation of so much Archaean geology, dating back more than 2 500 million years, has resulted in the Archaean Witwatersrand Basin, as well as several greenstone belts, being preserved.

Barberton mountain land

This beautiful and rugged tract of country with some of the oldest rocks on Earth is found south of Nelspruit, Mpumalanga.

The greenstone formations represent the remains of some of the earliest clearly decipherable geological events on the Earth's surface.

Silica-rich layers within the greenstone have revealed traces of a very early life form – minute blue-green algae.

Granites surround the formations and gneisses that are more than 3 000 million years old. Gold, iron ore, magnesite, talc, barite and verdite are mined in the area.

Witwatersrand

The geology and gold mines of the Witwatersrand (Ridge of White Waters) are world famous.

More than 50 055 t of gold have been produced from seven major goldfields distributed in a crescent-like shape along the 350-km long

basin, from Welkom in the Free State in the south-west, to Evander in the east.

The geology of the region can be seen at many outcrops in the suburbs of Johannesburg. The sequence is divided into a lower shale-rich group and an upper sandstone-rich group. The latter contains the important gold-bearing quartz-pebble conglomerates.

Bushveld Complex and escarpment

The Bushveld Complex extends over an area of 65 000 km² and reaches up to 8 km in thickness. It is by far the largest known layered igneous intrusion in the world and contains most of the world's resources of chromium, PMGs and vanadium.

The impressive igneous geology of the Bushveld Complex can best be viewed in Mpumalanga, in the mountainous terrain around the Steelpoort Valley. The imposing Dwars River chromitite layers, platinum-bearing dunite pipes, the discovery site of the platinum-rich Merensky Reef, and extensive magnetite-ilmenite layers and pipes near Magnet Heights and Kennedy's Vale are in this area.

The Great Escarpment of Mpumalanga is one of South Africa's most scenic landscapes. This area features the Bourke's Luck Potholes, which have become a major tourist attraction.

Drakensberg Escarpment and Golden Gate Highlands National Park

The main ramparts of the Drakensberg range, reaching heights of more than 3 000 m, lie in KwaZulu-Natal and on the Lesotho border. These precipitous mountains are the highest in southern Africa and provide the most dramatic scenery.

They were formed by the partial erosion of a high plateau of basaltic lava, which is more than 1 500 m thick, and covers the Clarens sandstones. Prior to its erosion, the continental basalt field covered significantly more of the continent.

The uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park, which covers 243 000 ha, has been declared a world heritage site. More than 40% of all known San cave paintings in southern Africa are found here.

The scenic Golden Gate Highlands National Park in the Free State features spectacular sandstone bluffs and cliffs. The sandstone reflects a sandy desert environment that existed around 200 million years ago. Dinosaur fossils are still found in the area.

Karoo

Rocks of the Karoo Supergroup cover about two-thirds of South Africa and reach a thickness

of several thousand metres. The sedimentary portion of this rock sequence reveals an almost continuous record of deposition and life, from the end of the Carboniferous into the mid-Jurassic periods, between 300 million and 180 million years ago.

Karoo rocks are internationally renowned for their wealth of continental fossils, and particularly for the fossils of mammal-like reptiles that show the transition from reptiles to early mammals, and for their early dinosaur evolution. During this long period of the Earth's history, southern Africa was a lowland area in the centre of the Gondwana supercontinent.

Initially, the prehistoric Karoo was a place of vast glaciation. It then became a shallow inland sea, before this was replaced by huge rivers, with lush flood plains and swampy deltas, which dried out to form a sandy desert. Finally, vast outpourings of continental basaltic lava accompanied by the break-up of Gondwana occurred.

Diamond fields

Kimberlite is the primary host-rock of diamonds and was first mined as weathered "yellow ground" from the Kimberley mines, starting in 1871 at Colesberg koppie, now the site of the Big Hole of Kimberley. At increasing depths, less-weathered "blue ground" that continued to yield diamonds was encountered.

The discovery of kimberlite-hosted diamonds was a key event in South Africa's economic and social development, and paved the way for the later development of the Witwatersrand goldfields.

The Orange and Vaal rivers' alluvial diamond fields and the rich West Coast marine diamond deposits all originated by erosion from primary kimberlite pipes.

Meteorite impact sites

Impacts by large meteoritic projectiles played a major role in shaping the surface of the Earth. The Vredefort Dome is the oldest and largest visible impact structure known on Earth and is a World Heritage Site. It lies some 110 km south-west of Johannesburg, in the vicinity of Parys and Vredefort in the Free State and North West.

About 40 km north of Pretoria is the small bowl-shaped Tswaing meteorite-impact crater. Just one km in diameter, this is one of the best-preserved and accessible impact craters of its kind on Earth. It was created about 220 000 years ago when a meteorite of about 50 m wide slammed into the Earth, and is one of the few impact craters containing a crater lake.

Pilanesberg

The Pilanesberg Complex and National Park in North West is a major scientific attraction which includes a number of unique geological sites.

The complex consists of an almost perfectly circular, dissected mountain massif some 25 km in diameter, making it the third-largest alkaline ring complex in the world. The geology reflects the roots of an ancient volcano that erupted some 1,5 billion years ago. The remains of ancient lava flows and volcanic breccias can be seen.

The dominant feature of the complex is the concentric cone sheets formed by resurgent magma that intruded ring fractures created during the collapse of the volcano. There are old mining sites for fluorite and dimension stone, and a non-diamond-bearing kimberlite pipe in the region.

Cradle of Humankind

This World Heritage Site extends from the Witwatersrand in the south to the Magaliesberg in the north, and is considered to be of universal value because of the outstanding richness of its fossil hominid cave sites.

The Sterkfontein area near Krugersdorp is the most prolific and accessible fossil hominid site on Earth. It comprises several scientifically important cave locations, including Sterkfontein, Swartkrans, Drimolen, Kromdraai, Gladysvale and Plover's Lake, all of which have produced a wealth of material crucial to palaeoanthropological research.

Table Mountain and the Cape Peninsula

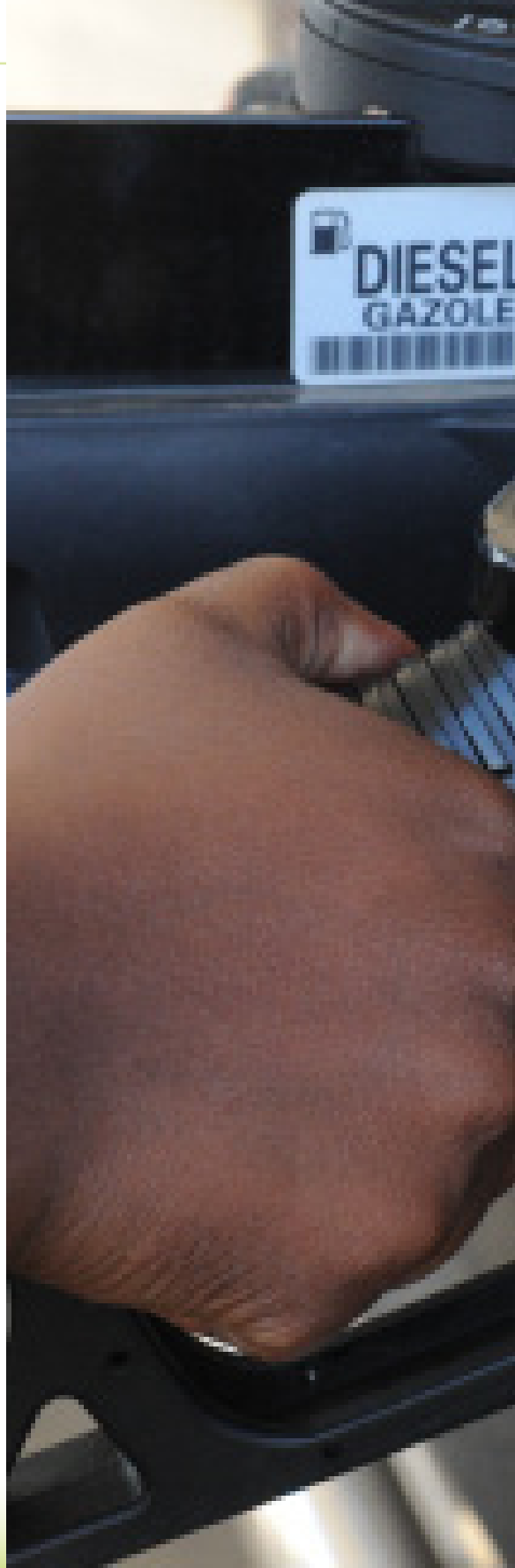
Table Mountain is South Africa's best known and most spectacular geological feature, comprising a number of major rock formations.

The earliest of these are the deformed slates of the Malmesbury Group, which formed between 560 million and 700 million years ago.

Coarse-grained Cape granite intruded about 540 million years ago. The Table Mountain Group, which started forming about 450 million years ago, consists of basalt, reddish mudstone and sandstone that is well exposed along Chapman's Peak.

Overlying this is the light-coloured sandstone that makes up the higher mountains and major cliff faces of the Cape Peninsula, as far south as Cape Point.

Much younger sandy formations make up the Cape Flats and other low-lying areas adjacent to Table Mountain. The Table Mountain Group continues further inland across False Bay in the strongly deformed Cape Fold Belt.





NO
BIO-
DIESEL



Police, Defence and Intelligence

Department of Police

The task of maintaining the safety and security of society is critical to the success of all government's programmes.

Law-enforcement services in South Africa fall under the Department of Police, which is responsible for policy determination, direction and overall execution of the department's mandate in relation to relevant legislation.

The National Police Commissioner answers directly to the Minister of Police.

Entities reporting to the Minister of Police are the:

- Civilian Secretariat for Police
- Independent Police Investigative Directorate (IPID)
- South African Police Service (SAPS)
- Private Security Industry Regulatory Authority.

South African Police Service

The SAPS is South Africa's principal law enforcement body and its policing objectives in accordance with the provisions of Section 205 of the Constitution are:

- preventing, combating and investigating crime
- maintaining public order
- protecting and securing the inhabitants of South Africa and their property
- upholding and enforcing the law.

The vision of the SAPS is to create a safe and secure environment for all people in South Africa.

The mission of the SAPS is to:

- prevent and combat anything that may threaten the safety and security of any community
- investigate any crimes that threaten the safety and security of any community
- ensure offenders are brought to justice
- participate in efforts to address the root causes of crime.

The National Commissioner heads the SAPS. Deputy national commissioners (under whom the divisions and components of the SAPS fall) provincial commissioners (under whom the cluster stations fall) and cluster commanders (under whom the police stations fall) report to the National Commissioner. At the end of March 2014, there were 1 137 police stations countrywide.

The SAPS' personnel complement stood at 194 852 by March 2014 including 153 116 SA Police Service Act employees. The police/population ratio at the end of March 2014, was at 1:346. A decision was taken in 2013/14 to fill vacant posts on higher levels rather than entry levels and subsequently SAPS had to downscale on the entry level enlistments, which resulted in the establishment target being reduced.

Operational training in 2013/14 focused on:

- the development of station management
- victims, women and children
- detective training
- crime intelligence development
- enhancement of skills through learnerships e.g. public administration, artisanship
- K53 driver education.

The SAPS awarded bursaries to develop employees through institutions of higher learning for policing-related and scarce skills-related studies.

Strategic outcome-oriented goals

Ensuring that all South Africans are and feel safe (Outcome 3) is the broad outcome for the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Cluster, and also underpins the work of the SAPS.

- Other strategic outcomes addressed were: “Creating a better South Africa, contributing to a better Africa in a better world” (Outcome 11) and “An efficient, effective and development-oriented public service” (Outcome 12).
- To deliver on these outcomes, the department’s 2010 – 2014 Strategic Plan focused on the following areas:
 - reducing the number of all serious, contact and trio crimes
 - increasing activities to prevent and combat border crime
 - increasing the detection rate, the trial-ready case docket rate and the conviction rate for all serious, contact and trio crimes including crimes against women and children
 - addressing organised crime
 - external deployments in support of the African agenda for development and continued partnerships
 - ensuring adequate availability of and access to police service points by bringing them closer to communities in rural areas.

Mandate

The SAPS derives its powers and functions from section 205 of the Constitution and from the SAPS Act, 1995 (Act 68 of 1995).

This legislation regulates the police service in terms of its core function, which is to prevent, investigate and combat crime.

Key policy development and legislative changes

- The *White Paper on Policing* was published as a Green Paper and public consultation meetings were held in all nine provinces. Based on the comments received, the White Paper was finalised and presented to Parliament.

- The Dangerous Weapons Act of 2013 was approved by Parliament and implemented by SAPS during 2013/14. The Dangerous Weapons Act of 2013 takes into account constitutional principles and present policing needs on the possession and carrying of dangerous weapons.
- The following legislation was approved by Parliament but will be enacted only in 2014/15:
 - The Criminal (Forensic) Procedure Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 37 of 2013): This Act establishes a DNA database in SAPS for analysis of DNA samples and recording of results for crime detection and investigation of cases.

Visible policing

Visible policing is regarded as a line-function division of the SAPS, specifically responsible for:

- combating crime through crime operations
- providing for the activities at police stations
- combating crimes in the railway environment
- dealing with crimes affecting the social fabric of society, including crimes against women and children and community-based crime prevention
- providing a rapid-response service in respect of crimes in progress
- eradicating the proliferation of illegal firearms available for use in crime and violence
- ensuring effective compliance and enforcement of liquor control and second-hand goods legislation to address serious crime in South Africa.

Crime in South Africa

Seventeen categories of crime are grouped together as serious crime, and include contact crime (violent crimes against persons) and trio crimes (house robbery, business robbery and carjacking). The consequences of serious crime, in particular contact crime, and the fact that South Africa experiences exceptionally high levels of these crimes are generally acknowledged.

Overall serious crime decreased by 0,4% from 1 833 775 reported crimes in 2012/13 to 1 826 967 reported crimes in 2013/14. Overall contact crime increased with 0,5% from 617 239 reported crimes in 2012/13 to 620 366 reported crimes in 2013/14 and trio crime with 10.8% (from 44 317 in 2012/13 to 49 120 reported crimes) in 2013/14.

Police reaction time

The SAPS measures its reaction times to complaints, from the time the specific complaint is registered on the Crime Administration System

or the Global Emergency Mobile Communication system until the time the response vehicle physically stands off at the complaint.

Drug eradication

The SAPS makes an effective contribution to the implementation of the National Drug Master Plan through its activities for supply and demand.

It serves as the country's blueprint for preventing and reducing alcohol and substance abuse and its associated social and economic consequences for South African society, and builds on the foundation laid down by government's programme of action on Alcohol and Substance Abuse.

The Directorate of Priority Crime Investigation (DPCI) conducts intensive intelligence and court directed undercover operations to identify, profile, infiltrate, investigate and neutralise drug groups, syndicates, and high-flyers by means of various projects.

Firearms, Liquor Control and Second-hand Goods

The initiative addresses the abundance of firearms used in crime and violence in South Africa.

It also ensures compliance with and effective enforcement of legalisation concerning firearms, liquor and second-hand goods control.

The SAPS issue competency certificates, individual and business firearm licenses, renewals of existing firearm licenses permits and authorisations to declare persons fit and proper to possess firearms. From 1 April 2013 to 31 March 2014, the SAPS received 254 664 new firearm-related applications and finalised 96% or 244 550 including 49 276 applications received prior to 2013/14.

The accreditation of businesses, associations and organisations is integral to the implementation of firearms control legislation in South Africa. During 2013/14, 72 institutions were accredited which brings the total number of accredited institutions to 2 249.

In 2013/14, more than 11 000 arrests were made for illegal possession of firearms and ammunition during law-enforcement operations. 7 589 firearms were circulated as stolen/lost and 10 113 firearms were found. Of the 10 113 a total number of 5 520 were forfeited to the state.

During 2013/14, 4 332 legal firearms and 81 520 legal rounds of ammunition were voluntarily surrendered to the SAPS. This procedure assists persons to comply with firearm control legislation. During the same period the SAPS destroyed 42 729 firearms.

The SAPS confiscated 1 792 469,768 l of liquor (including 82 938,087 of home-brewed beer) in 2013/14. During the same period 548 562 inspections were conducted to ensure compliance with liquor legislation. As a result 76 947 identified illegal liquor traders were closed down.

Since the implementation of the Second-Hand Goods Act, 2009 (Act 6 of 2009), 11 771 applications for the registration of second-hand goods dealers and recyclers were finalised and 45 689 compliance inspections were conducted.

Victims, women and children

The main responsibility of the SAPS towards empowering victims is to render a victim-friendly service to all victims of crime. It includes:

- developing, monitoring and implementing policies, directives and instructions aimed at improving services to victims of crime
- sensitising and training SAPS members to render a professional, victim-friendly service
- ensuring that SAPS facilities are victim-friendly.

By March 2014, 947 victim-friendly rooms (VFRs) had been established across the country to assist victims of crimes, especially crimes against women, children and the elderly. To support victims, 30 816 SAPS members were trained and found competent in interventions of domestic violence, victim empowerment, the Child Justice Act, 2008 (Act 75 of 2008), human rights, children and youth at risk, and first responder to sexual offences.

The SAPS conducted various public education and awareness events at provinces and stations, particularly in support of Youth Month, Women's Month, 16 Days of Activism of No Violence Against Women and Children, as well as 19 ministerial izimbizo where the Minister and/or Deputy Minister and the National Commissioner or a senior officer were involved.

Community partnership programmes

Community Policing Forums (CPFs) at police stations serve as the instrument for ensuring that the SAPS engages and cooperates with communities.

By the end of March 2014, 1 123 functional CPFs had been established at police stations. Sector policing, that provides for practical policing approaches to complement community participation in accordance with policing needs and community requirements, was implemented at 1 078 police stations by 31 March 2014.

In March 2014, the Department of Social Development (DSD) in partnership with Vodacom and other government departments launched

the Gender Based Violence Command Centre, a 24-hour call centre dedicated to providing support and counseling to victims. The toll free number is 0800 428 428 (0800 GBV GBV).

A partnership was established between the SAPS, the Department of Traditional Affairs and the National House of Traditional Leaders to enhance the involvement of traditional leaders in safety and security at all levels.

In February 2014, a partnership agreement was signed with the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR) to focus on research and technology support for the Public Order Police environment.

Reservists

Reservists support the SAPS as a force multiplier, and as part of the police and community's cooperation in combating crime.

Regulations for the South African Reserve Police Service were promulgated in October 2013. These regulations are aligned with the South African Reserve Police Service Policy Framework and Guidelines that was approved by the Minister in 2012/13. By the end of March 2014, there were 18 631 active reservists.

Rural Safety

In total, 881 of the 1 137 police stations are categorised as rural or rural-urban mix police stations.

The Rural Safety Strategy, aimed at enhancing safety and security levels, accessibility to policing and service delivery to the rural community, is based on four pillars:

- enhanced service delivery
- integrated approach
- community safety awareness
- rural development.

In 2014, the Rural Safety Strategy had been fully implemented at 515 of these police stations.

Emergency response services

In 2013/14, the SAPS responded to 7 648 975 calls to the 10111 call centres. By the end of March 2014 there were 475 police stations linked to 10111 call centres. The SAPS has 29 Flying Squad units to serve as a force multiplier to respond to serious and violent crimes in progress that require immediate police action and response.

In 2013/14, the Inland Water Policing arm, responsible for diving-related support, attended to 1 937 diving operations/call-outs. The SAPS' Mounted Service with its 24 mounted units spent 179 521 hours on horseback in 2013/14.

The 101 K9 units conducted 328 617 searches with its working dogs. The 361 active

trained hostage negotiators attended to 1 911 hostage-and suicide-related incidents. Five Accident Combating units and 10 Accident Response Teams attended to 10 152 accident scenes in 2013/14.

The SAPS veterinary hospitals situated in Pretoria, Durban and Potchefstroom conducted 4 261 consultations and 1 404 surgeries to ensure the physical and psychological well-being of dogs and horses.

Railway Police

The Railway Police cover about 33 000 km of rail lines and serve an estimated 538 791 702 million passengers annually.

A total of 3 735 members are deployed in the railway environment (2 967 at Metro Rail and 768 at national mobile train units).

The functions of the Railway Police include:

- providing a visible policing service to address the safety of commuters on trains
- conducting crime prevention and combating crime operations within the rail environment
- providing a rapid rail-policing service.

Railway Police are operational in the Western Cape (Cape Town, Retreat, Philippi and Bellville), Gauteng (Pretoria, Belle Ombre, Mabopane, Saulsville, Denneboom, Johannesburg, Krugersdorp, New Canada, Stretfort, Germiston, Springs and Kempton Park), Eastern Cape (East London, Mount Ruth and Swartzkop) and KwaZulu-Natal (Durban, Kwa-Mashu, Cavendish, Re-Union and Escombe).

The five national mobile train units involved in policing long distance passenger trains, Blue Train and freight rail are strategically placed in Gauteng (Wits, Pretoria), KwaZulu-Natal (Durban), Eastern Cape (Port Elizabeth) and Western Cape (Pinelands). They are also involved in cross-border operations, disruptive operations and provide a rapid response service to the rail environment.

The SAPS also provides a reactive policing service at all Gautrain rail stations and carriages.

During 2013/14, Railway Police arrested 37 744 within and outside the rail environment during daily deployments and operations. Some 31 975 crimes were reported in the railway environment. Overall crime reported decreased by 15,1% compared to 2012/13.

A survey in the Western Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Gauteng and the Eastern Cape which involved 5 625 commuters indicated that safety increased on trains, but that more police/security visibility is needed.

Operational Response Services

Operational response services provide for specialised interventions and policing South Africa's borders.

- This division is specifically responsible for:
- ports of entry and exit
- air support
- responding to medium-to-high risk incidents
- external deployments
- national operational coordination
- the safeguarding of valuable and/or dangerous government cargo.

Specialised interventions

The responsibility to respond to and stabilise medium-to-high-risk incidents falls within the broader tactical environment. This tactical capability comprises:

The Special Task Force deals with hostage situations; acts of terror; organised crime; serious and violent crime incidents, VIP assistance; and search-and-rescue operations. In 2013/14, the task force with its 119 operational members, intervened in 226 extreme situations.

National Intervention Units deal with serious and violent crime incidents; escort dangerous criminals; safeguard VIPs and big events; and provide specialised operational support to stations and other government departments. In 2013/14 these units with its 370 operational members, conducted 2 306 interventions.

Public Order Police deal primarily with public order through crowd management. There are 28 Public Order Policing units countrywide with a staff complement of 4 563 members, including 4 314 operational members. In 2013/14, violence erupted in 1 907 unrest-related incidents such as labour disputes and dissatisfaction with service delivery, leading to 2 522 arrests, and 11 668 peaceful incidents such as assemblies, gatherings and meetings were also policed.

In view of continued violent protest action the JCPS cluster was tasked to put measures in place at both national and provincial level to deal with such incidents effectively.

The National Joint Operational and Intelligence Structure (Natjoins), as the operational arm of the JCPS cluster, was tasked to coordinate and monitor the management and investigation of these incidents countrywide 24 hours a day, seven days a week, in an effort to expedite the

processing of these perpetrators through the CJS.

Dedicated personnel were allocated to investigate public order-related incidents, to gather information and to ensure strict compliance of all laws and regulations.

SAPS Air Wing

The SAPS has 50 aircraft, which include 37 helicopters, 12 fixed-wing aeroplanes and one micro light. By the end of March 2014, the SAPS had 51 pilots including 31 helicopter pilots, six fixed-wing pilots, and 11 pilots flying both helicopters and fixed-wings and three student pilots. The pilots flew 4 069.2 hours for crime-related matters such as call-outs, crime prevention, planned operations and assistance to specialised forces in 2013/14.

Tracking and tactical response teams

The tracking teams apprehend wanted suspects positively linked to crimes not detected by investigating officers.

During 2013/14, 2 785 suspects, wanted for serious and violent crimes, were traced and arrested.

Tactical response teams (TRTs) provide immediate tactical response capacity, to such things as trio crimes; farm attacks; ATM bombings; cash-in-transit heists; taxi violence and serious gang-related crimes; planned operations or specific requests; providing assistance in crowd management; and escorting dangerous prisoners and valuable and or dangerous cargo.

There are 42 TRT units countrywide. In 2013/14, TRT units provided protection to 1 296 cargos, escorted 1 388 dangerous prisoners, and assisted during 654 crowd management-related incidents, resulting in 6 225 arrests.

Mobile operations

Mobile operations safeguard valuable and/or dangerous government cargo, including material of monetary value or with considerable importance or quality such as cash currency printing material, and potentially dangerous cargo such as explosives and ammunition, nuclear material, firearms and drugs.

During 2013/14, 189 valuable and/or dangerous cargos were safely delivered without security breaches.

International assistance

The SAPS renders other specialised policing services to the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region and the African continent by means of deployment of members

In May 2015, the SAPS and the South African Human Rights Commission signed a memorandum of understanding on public demonstrations. The aim is to promote the observance of, respect for and the protection of fundamental human rights among the population to dissuade the public from instigating and resorting to violence during protest demonstrations.

on peacekeeping missions and cross-border operations. 334 members are trained to be deployed on the Generic Peacekeeping course. During 2013/14:

- 47 members were deployed to the United Nations/African Union Mission in Darfur, Sudan and 33 to the United Nations Mission of the Republic of South Sudan
- 30 members participated in the SADC Electoral Observer Mission in Zimbabwe and the Republic of Madagascar.

Border security

The unit provides policing and security at ports of entry.

Based on screening hits generated by the Movement Control System/Enhanced Movement Control System at the 72 ports the SAPS reacted to 3 159 wanted persons and 3 926 circulated stolen or robbed vehicles.

Between April 2013 and March 2014, 3 856 planned crime prevention and combating actions were conducted to enhance national security and territorial integrity. Additionally, 1 481 roadblocks, 66 601 vehicle patrols, 74 496 foot patrols, 3 122 borderline patrols, 2 119 vessel patrols and 14 217 perimeter inspections were also conducted.

Some 102 firearms and 405 stolen/robbed vehicles were confiscated and 18 406 arrests were made at ports of entry in 2013/14.

The port of entry environment profile selected vehicles, containers and cargos that are high-risk. From 1 April 2013 to 31 March 2014 a total number of 356 984 vehicles, 23 040 containers and 7 747 cargos were searched.

Detective services

Detective Services investigates crimes and gathers all related evidence required by the prosecuting authority to redress crime.

Crime investigation includes the components General Investigations, Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences (FCS) and Specific Crime Investigation.

As a means to evaluate the performance of the SAPS in solving crime, three criteria are used, namely:

- detection rate (the ability to solve cases from the time the SAPS becomes aware of a crime and where a case docket is opened for investigation until such time as a suspect has been arrested and charged or the case docket has been closed off as unfounded or as withdrawn before court)
- trail-ready docket rate (a fully investigated case docket)
- conviction rate (where the accused was found guilty on one or more charges).

In 2013/14, 1 180 838 charges for serious crime were detected, 398 938 case dockets were trail-ready and convictions for 333 656 charges were achieved.

Some 147 394 charges reported for crimes against women above 18 years were detected and 42 810 case dockets were trail-ready, while 40 047 reported charges for crimes against children under 18 years were detected, and 21 202 case dockets were court-ready.

Convictions were secured for 27 486 charges against women and 9 054 for charges against children.

The Technological Investigation Support Centre provides support to detectives by analysing technological systems and evidence. In 2013/14 the centre assisted with 6 556 profiles relating to cellular phone devices and 2 009 applications were obtained from court to access to the detail billing of suspects.

Specific crime investigation

The investigation of stock theft remains a priority due to its economic impact. Stock theft operations held in 2013/14 resulted in the recovery of 22 070 cattle, 16 663 sheep, 10 600 goats and 532 horses.

There are 51 Vehicle Identification Sections countrywide investigating vehicle-related crime, including vehicle crime syndicates and the identification, investigation and recovery of vehicles.

Their functions include:

- conducting investigations into cross-border vehicle crimes
- returning of SA stolen and recovered vehicles in the SADC/SARPCCO region and internationally
- investigating vehicle crime-related enquiries from SARPCCO and Interpol member states participating in SARPCCO and Interpol cross-border operations
- activities relating to the registration of vehicle manufacturers, importers and builders
- concluding investigations into vehicles forfeited to the State

In 2013/14, 66 790 vehicles were stolen and robbed and 45 055 vehicles were recovered, including 16 163 vehicles that could not be identified by means of vehicle identifiers.

The National Investigation Unit investigates priority case dockets that are referred for investigation by the Minister of Police, the National Commissioner and Deputy National Commissioners. In 2013/14 the National Investigation Unit investigated 468 priority case dockets.

Crime Stop and Primedia Crime Line

The partnership between the Primedia Group, SAPS and the Crime Stop Call Centre creates a platform to provide anonymous information/intelligence on criminal activity from the public. Between April 2013 and March 2014, the call centre received 169 343 calls and 3 368 SMSs.

These led to 307 positive cases, 453 arrests and the confiscation of goods to the value of R187 158 841.28. Crime Stoppers International is an organisation with 22 member countries, including South Africa. In 2013, Crime Line and their partners won the bid to host the 2014 Annual Crime Stoppers International Conference.

Bureau for missing persons

The Bureau for Missing Persons provides support in tracing missing/wanted/unidentified persons. In 2013/14, the Bureau circulated the details of 1 472 missing/unidentified persons, placed the information of 55 missing and 13 wanted persons on the Internet and facilitated the broadcasting of 1 521 and 283 wanted persons in the printed media.

Directorate for Priority Crime Investigations (DPCI)

Specialised investigations

The DPCI, known as the Hawks, investigates cases relating to:

- organised crime
- serious and violent crime
- commercial crime
- fraud and corruption.

Serious commercial crime

This refers to:

- serious and priority fraud
- serious commerce-related theft (including theft of trust funds by persons who are obliged by law to keep a trust account)
- complex commercial crimes where the services of a chartered accountant or forensic auditor is required during investigation
- contraventions of commerce-related statutes such as statutes relating to companies, close corporations, cooperatives, trusts, financial advisory and intermediary services
- insurance
- counterfeiting of currency
- counterfeiting of goods and intellectual property rights crimes
- banking-related crime
- exchange control
- estate agents
- deceased and insolvent estates
- serious corruption
- computer-related/cybercrime.

In 2013/14, 87 615 new charges of serious crime related to commerce were reported and a total of 89 913 charges were referred to court.

In July 2010 the President mandated the JCPS Cluster to fast track the investigation and prosecution of cases of corruption. By 31 December 2013 a total number of 435 individuals within the JCPS Cluster have been processed through criminal investigations whilst a total of 254 individuals have been convicted.

Cyber-related crime in South Africa reflects elements of transnational organised crime. These organised crime syndicates use the proceeds of their activities to finance other organised crime operations.

It includes anything from online downloading illegal music files, stealing from online bank accounts, and card "skimming" to non-monetary offences such as creating and distributing viruses on other computers. The most prominent form of cybercrime is identity theft whereby criminals use the Internet to steal personal information through phishing and pharming. Both these methods lure users to fake websites (which appear to be legitimate) where personal information is required. During 2013/14 more than 180 individuals, including 30 foreign nationals were arrested for cybercrime. Eighteen foreign nationals were also convicted for high technology card "skimming".

In May 2014, an international cyber crime syndicate with 12 people arrested in Pretoria. The arrests came after a joint operation between the Hawks, Crime Intelligence, SA Tactical Response Team and the Department of Home Affairs and Interpol, the US Immigration and Customs Enforcement and Homeland Security Investigations. The fraud included romance scams, reshipping scams, fraudulent check scams, work-at-home scams, along with bank, financial and credit card account takeovers. During investigations, it was found that the merchandise was purchased using stolen personal identity information and fraudulent credit card information of persons in the United States. The syndicate operated for some years purchasing shipping labels from the US Postal Service, Federal Express, United Parcel Service and DHL with fraudulent credit card information or stolen identities. Once the merchandise reached South Africa, the group advertised it for sale on the internet.

Serious organised crime

The organised crime investigation units within the DPCI are responsible for:

- prevention of a cross-sector of organised crime-related activities including illegal drugs

- plundering precious metals and diamonds
- smuggling firearms and weapons
- human trafficking
- money laundering
- specific violent crime
- smuggling or stealing non-ferrous metals
- vehicle-related crime
- endangered species
- crimes against the State.

These units arrested 254 persons for narcotic-related crime, 169 individuals for the illegal purchase, theft and possession of uncut diamonds and unwrought precious metals, 927 for illicit mining, 5 for rhino poaching, and 21 persons associated with human trafficking-related crimes. A total number of 828 convictions were secured.

Criminal records and forensic sciences

The Forensic Services Division plays a crucial role towards the realisation of the SAPS strategic objectives by contributing to the successful prosecution of crime. Impartial data provided by crime scene investigators and forensic analysis is required to build cases based on physical evidence.

Forensic Services forms an integral part of criminal investigations from the crime scene to the courtroom. Its service delivery is structured into three main operational environments namely the:

- criminal record and crime scene management focusing on crime scene management with emphasis on crime scene processing, forensic evidence collection, as well as the storage and maintenance of criminal records
- forensic laboratory focusing on processing and analysing forensic exhibits
- quality management that focuses on quality assurance and improving business performance.

In 2013/14, 2 208 304 fingerprint searches were performed to identify individuals involved in crime, and to determine whether an individual has a criminal record. Of these, 1 240 314 (56,17%) were criminal searches of which 658 030 (54,17%) resulted in previous convictions being identified and verified and 581 736 were first offenders. 967 990 (43,83%) were non-criminal searches such as applications for firearm licenses, professional driver's permits and pre-employment. Forensic science laboratories received 308 424 case exhibits/entries for forensic analysis in 2013/14.

Crime intelligence

This division is responsible for centralised intelligence and for managing, coordinating and

analysing information gathering.

It also provides technical intelligence support to the operational components of crime intelligence and, where necessary, to other operational divisions of the SAPS.

Through its various national and provincial components, Crime Intelligence has established coverage throughout the country, extending to station level.

Cooperation with foreign law-enforcement agencies uses platforms such as Interpol and the South African Regional Police Chiefs Cooperation Organisation, extending the range of crime intelligence beyond the national borders.

Network operations refer to planned and purposeful processes of obtaining, assembling and organising information through exploitation of all types of source on a target (organisation, group or individual) for further intelligence processing and/or use as evidence.

Crime Intelligence conducted 34 534 network operations in 2013/14, and produced 309 165 operational analysis reports including 162 131 profiles, 92 987 intelligence analysis reports, 7 743 communication analysis reports, 4 541 communication interception analysis reports and 41 763 station and cluster crime threat analysis reports.

Protection and security services and Presidential Protection Services

VIP protection services delivered by Protection and Security Services and Presidential Protection Services provide protection for the President, the Deputy President, former presidents, former deputy presidents, heads of State, their spouses and other identified VIPs while in transit.

In 2013/14, VIP Protection Services provided protection to 218 presidential, national and provincial dignitaries and to 289 foreign dignitaries, including heads of State, visiting South Africa.

Protection was also provided during 178 presidential visits outside the borders of South Africa and at 44 national and provincial major special events, including the Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa Climate Change Committee, Southern African Developing Countries (SADC), Department of International Relations and Cooperation, World Anti-Doping Association, World Economic Forum, and the State funeral of former President Mandela.

Static Protection at the Protection and Security Services protected 42 installations/government buildings, 105 identified VIP residences and three offices.

In 2013/14 a total of 127 national and provincial government departments were audited in terms of the Minimum Physical Security Standards

guidelines to manage security for all authorities in government, parastatals, national key points and other government installations.

To manage security for all national key points by means of the National Key Points Act, 1980 (Act 102 of 1980), directives and regulations, 199 national key points were evaluated.

Department of Defence

The primary role of the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) is to defend South Africa against external military aggression.

In this regard deployment in an internal policing capacity is limited to exceptional circumstances and subject to parliamentary approval and safeguards.

Defence objectives as outlined by the department's Strategic Plan include the defence mandate as per section 200 (2) of the Constitution, that of protecting South Africa, its sovereignty, its territorial integrity, its interests and its people in accordance with the Constitution and principles of international law.

The SANDF's main objectives are:

- the defence and protection of South Africa, its people and important national interests
- the safeguarding of South Africa and its people through aspects such as border safeguarding, supporting the SAPS and fulfilling South Africa's treaty obligations
- the defence contribution to South Africa's international agenda and the promotion of regional and continental peace and stability
- supporting civil authority in times of crisis, need or turmoil, and the defence contribution to South Africa's developmental priorities
- the civil control over defence and the accountable use of defence resources.

The SANDF has a defensive orientation and a non-threatening posture in accordance with the White Paper on National Defence of the Republic of South Africa.

The Defence Review 2014 embarked on a diagnostic of the defence function and analysed the strategic role that the SANDF should play.

While a number of the principles established during the 1998 Defence Review process remain relevant, strategic circumstances called for a far greater DoD contribution towards the continuance of South Africa's national security, the strengthening of democracy in Africa and meeting South Africa's international responsibilities. The Defence Review 2014 defines and expands on the guiding principles that will steer the SANDF through the next 20 to 30 years.

The Defence Review 2014 indicates the broader role of the SANDF within a developmental State. It does not focus purely on what

In August and September 2014, South Africa's special forces took part in a joint multi-national training exercise in Angola with the Southern African Development Community (SADC) special forces. The aim was to conduct a special forces multinational exercise with SADC. It was conducted with limited satellite support by the air force, health service, and army. The exercise built capacity and tested inter-operability in mountainous, jungle, and waterborne environments. This was the fifth time that the South African special forces participated in a similar exercise with other SADC special forces.

the SANDF is against but additionally provides the framework for the what the SANDF is for and what the nation expects the SANDF to do. This includes the positive role it should play in support of nation building, as an adjunct to its traditional roles and functions.

Legislation, policies and strategies

The Department of Defence (DoD) derives its mandate primarily from Section 200(2) of the Constitution.

The mandate is given substance by the:

- Defence Act, 2002 (Act 42 of 2002), as amended
- the General Regulations; the *White Paper on Defence (1996)*
- *Defence Review (2014)* and delegated legislation
- The National Conventional Arms Control Committee (NCACC) was established by the National Conventional Arms Control Act, 2002 (Act 41 of 2002) to ensure compliance with government policies in respect of arms control and to provide guidelines and criteria to be used when assessing applications for permits
- The Military Veterans Affairs Act, 1999 (Act 17 of 1999), came into effect in February 2001.
- The Military Veterans Act, 2011 (Act 18 of 2011), enjoins the Department of Military Veterans (DMV) as part of its legislative mandate, restores the dignity and memorialises those who sacrificed their lives for the benefit of democracy and freedom in South Africa.

Military strategy

The Military Strategy was revised and amended to ensure that it is aligned with the National Security Strategy and the Defence Review 2014.

The Military Strategy of South Africa is derived from the Constitution, the White Paper on Defence (1996), the Defence Review (2014) and the National Security Strategy. The purpose of military strategic objectives is to defend South Africa in accordance with the UN Charter, which allows for any country to defend itself. This self-defence aims at protecting the country and

its territorial integrity.

The SANDF uses a mission-based approach to achieve the military strategic objectives of the DoD and DMV. This approach allows for wartime and peacetime missions to direct the Peacetime Strategy for Force Preparation, and to guide joint, interdepartmental, inter-agency and multinational force preparation as well as force employment during times of conflict.

Force preparation

The chiefs of the South African Army (SA Army), South African Air Force (SAAF), South African Navy (SAN) and the South African Military Health Service (SAMHS) are responsible for providing combat-ready defence capabilities in accordance with the military strategic objectives and operational requirements.

Each division must structure, position and maintain itself to provide forces able to participate successfully, as part of a joint, interdepartmental and multinational grouping, in the execution of all missions.

Some group system/formations established by the different services include:

- SA Army – infantry, artillery or armour formations
- SAAF – air capabilities within the air command
- SAN – fleet command
- SAMHS – military-health formations.

Budget and funding

The total budget for the DoD for the 2014/15 financial year, was R42 831,2 million.

Organisational structure

The DoD and DMV adhere to the principles of civil control and oversight through the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans, various parliamentary committees such as the Joint Standing Committee on Defence and the Defence Secretariat.

While the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is responsible for providing political direction to the department, the Joint Standing Committee on Defence ensures that the Minister remains accountable to Parliament.

However, for day-to-day administration and the coordination of strategic processes, the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans relies on the Defence Secretariat, which is the civilian component of the department.

Secretary for Defence

The Secretary for Defence manages the Defence Secretariat and is the accounting officer of the DoD and DMV.

As head of the department, the Secretary for Defence is responsible for advising the Minister

regarding defence policy by:

- enhancing civil control through briefings to the parliamentary committees having oversight over the department and the Minister over the department
- providing the Chief of the Defence Force with comprehensive instructions
- monitoring compliance with policies and directions issued by the Minister to the Chief of the Defence Force

Chief of the SANDF

The Chief of the SANDF is appointed by the President.

These duties include:

- advising the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans on any military, operational and administrative matters
- complying with directions issued by the Minister.
- formulating and issuing policies and doctrines.
- exercising command by issuing orders, directives and instructions
- directing, managing and administering
- executing approved programmes of the defence budget
- employing the armed forces in accordance with legislation
- training the armed forces
- maintaining defence capabilities
- planning contingencies
- managing the defence force as a disciplined military force.

Force Employment

The Force Employment Programme provides and employs defence capabilities, including an operational capability, to conduct all operations as well as joint, interdepartmental and multinational military exercises.

This programme ensures successful joint force employment by:

- providing and employing a special operations capability in accordance with national requirements
- ensuring full participation in the number of peace missions as instructed by the President
- conducting joint, interdepartmental, inter-agency and multinational military force preparation exercises (excluding Special Forces and multinational air transport exercises)
- conducting operations to protect the territorial integrity and sovereignty of South Africa, to support other government departments, and to comply with its international obligations.

In the pursuance of the national safety and security objectives of government, the Force Employment Programme ensured the

safeguarding of South Africa and its people against a wide range of threats, many of which were non-military in nature.

The joint military capabilities were employed in an interdepartmental, interagency and/or multinational regional manner that maintained and ensured a condition of peace, safety, security and stability in a continuous and non-interruptive manner.

Landward Defence Programme

The Landward Defence Programme provides prepared and supported landward defence capabilities for the defence and protection of South Africa.

It contributes to defence and protection of South Africa and its territory by:

- providing an infantry capability for external deployment, and a Chief SANDF reaction force for internal safety and security, including border safeguarding
- exercising a tank and armoured car capability, and providing a multi-rolled squadron for internal deployment
- exercising a composite artillery and a light (airborne) artillery capability, and providing a multi-rolled battery for internal deployment
- exercising an air defence artillery and a light (airborne) air defence artillery capability, and providing a multi-rolled battery for internal deployment
- providing a sustained composite engineer capability for external deployment as well as for internal safety and security, and exercising a light (airborne) engineer squadron and a field engineer capability
- providing a signal capability for external deployment and internal signal support, and exercising a composite signal capability.

The SA Army soldiers and equipment were made available to comply with Joint Force Employment requirements to support the operations Africa in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC) and Sudan in support of the UN missions.

Air Defence

The Air Defence Programme provides prepared and supported air defence capabilities for the defence and protection of South Africa.

It contributes to the defence and protection of South Africa and its airspace by providing:

- helicopter capability consisting of transport and combat support
- air transport, including VIP and maritime capabilities
- fighter capability
- air command and control capability.

The African Capacity for Immediate Response to Crises (ACIRC), a temporary standby force capable of responding quickly to crisis situations in Africa, was operational by October 2014.

The ACIRC will serve as an interim measure ahead of the establishment of a permanent African Standby Force, which was originally expected to be operational by 2015. The AU envisions the ACIRC as an efficient, robust and credible force that can be deployed rapidly, either conducting operations of limited duration and aims, or paving the way for the deployment of larger AU and/or United Nations peace operations.

Following a meeting in Addis Ababa in January, the AU decided that the force would comprise a pool of 5 000 troops made up of operational modules in the form of 1 500-strong battle groups. Command will rest with the AU Peace and Security Council, which will assess all requests for intervention by member states.

On a voluntary basis, member states of the AU will contribute troops and finance for the ACIRC to enable it to act independently.

In the external domain, the SAAF provided air capabilities for search and rescue operations, assistance to the Mozambican Defence Force with counter-piracy operations in the Mozambique Channel, border-safeguarding operations, VIP flights, the SANDF contingent in support of the UN Stabilisation Mission in the DRC and anti-rhino poaching operations in the Kruger National Park.

Maritime Defence

The Maritime Defence Programme provides prepared and supported maritime defence capabilities for the defence and protection of South Africa.

It contributes to the defence and protection of South Africa and its maritime zones by providing:

- surface combat and patrol capability
- sub-surface combat capability
- mine warfare capability to ensure safe access to South African harbours, and where mine clearance may be required
- maritime reaction squadron capability comprising an operational boat division, an operational diving division and a naval reaction division
- hydrographic survey capability to ensure safe navigation in accordance with its international obligations.

The SA Navy continued to engage in international maritime cooperation, specifically in combating maritime piracy and crime in the Mozambique Channel. This ensured the enhancement of regional defence cooperation to comply with the national political direction and foreign policy.

Military Health Support

The Military Health Support Programme provides prepared and supported health capabilities and services for the defence and protection of South Africa.

This consists of:

- health support capability for deployed and contingency forces
- comprehensive multidisciplinary military health service for SANDF members and their dependents.

The South African Military Health Service has the dual mission of providing health support during internal and external operations and force health sustainment (i.e health care services at static healthcare facilities to eligible clients). It also provides healthcare for the President, the Deputy President and other VIPs as authorised.

Other Divisions

Various divisions within the SANDF have specific responsibilities and capabilities including:

- Defence Intelligence Division: provides a defence intelligence, counter-intelligence and defence foreign relations capability
- Joint Logistic Services, a subprogramme of the General Support Programme: provides logistic services.
- Command and Management Information Systems Division (a subprogramme of the General Support Programme): provides command and management information systems and related services
- Military Police Division (a subprogramme of General Support that provides military policing capabilities and services.

Defence Reserve Force

As part of the one-force concept, the Reserves will continue to be transformed and revitalised to fulfil their primary role of providing a large component of the conventional landward capability of the SANDF whilst at the same time supplementing peace support missions conducted by the Regular.

The DoD will continue to focus on the recruitment and training of university students through the University Reserve Training Programme.

The reduction of the financial resource allocation for the Military Skills Development System, as a feeder system for the Reserves may have a negative impact on the numbers of available Reserves and the ability of the SANDF to rejuvenate forces.

The Reserves have contributed significantly to all SANDF deployments externally and internally. For the first time in the history of

SANDF Reserves, a full battalion with troops and leader group was deployed on border safeguarding.

Defence Diplomacy

The department contributes to South Africa's international diplomacy by:

- placing and managing defence attachés
- establishing and maintaining bilateral and multilateral agreements
- participating in the activities of the defence structures of multinational organisations such as the UN, the African Union (AU) and SADC (especially in the Interstate Defence and Security Committee)
- meeting the international obligations of the DoD in line with international agreements, which may include search-and-rescue and hydrography.

Peace-Support Operations (PSOs)

The role of the SANDF in promoting peace and security in the region and African under the auspices of the UN, AU and hybrid Peace-Support Operations (PSOs), necessitates the enhancement of the SANDF's peacekeeping capability that will include the SANDF's Forward Deployment Capability. The development of an appropriate concept on forward basing to ensure the deployability of the SANDF for peace missions in Africa has received impetus after the death of soldiers in the Central African Republic (CAR).

The requirement for the stabilisation of the region and the continent necessitated the SANDF's participation in a wide range of prominent and internationally recognised PSOs.

These include the UN PSO in the DRC that was upscaled to a Force Intervention Brigade and the AU/UN Hybrid Mission in Sudan. Due to the increased rate of piracy off the East Coast of Africa, a SADC Maritime Security Strategy aimed at dealing with the scourge of piracy was developed and approved. Consequently the SANDF was deployed in the Mozambique Channel to counter acts of piracy and related maritime crime.

Border safeguarding

In compliance with Cabinet's decision of 2009 that required the SANDF to return to the border safeguarding function, the DoD ensured the preparedness of the SANDF to effectively undertake such function with effect from 2010/11.

The SANDF adopted a phased approach to ensure that capabilities were gradually developed to take over the function.

By 2013/14, the SANDF had an effective

presence in the border areas ensuring protection of South Africa's economic wealth and sovereignty against cross-border crime, which can cause great harm to the country's economy.

The deployment of the SANDF back to borderline resulted in noticeable numbers of interceptions on various illegal activities and great improvement of security of the country's borders.

Military Skills Development System

The Military Skills Development System will, through professional education and training, result in all young officers being in possession of a bachelor's degree by the time they are promoted to the rank and level of major by 2020.

Joint Senior Command and Staff Programme graduates will attain a postgraduate diploma or honours degree that paves the way for Executive National Security Programme graduates to obtain master's degrees. These degrees will be awarded through institutions of higher education accredited by the Council of Higher Education.

National Youth Service (NYS)

During 2014/15, the DoD continued to support the SANDF in its mandate to deal with the NYS Programme by ensuring that policies are implemented and to make required funding and further developments available. The NYS Conceptual Framework was developed to set standards for the NYS within the DoD. The NYS Policy is being developed.

Through the NYS Programme, the DoD will continue to provide initial training to selected young people for the purpose of creating a pool from which the DoD and other government institutions are able to recruit skilled and empowered young personnel. The success relating to this programme can be linked to excellent liaison with the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform and the Presidency.

The NYS Policy was developed in the 2014/15 to set standards for the NYS Programme. Through this programme, the DoD has provided initial training for selected young people for the purpose of creating a pool of young and ready citizens from which the DoD and government are able to recruit personnel.

Role players

National Conventional Arms Control Committee

The NCACC is a committee of ministers, of which the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans is a member. The NCACC oversees policy and sets control mechanisms for the South African arms

The African Capacity for Immediate Response to Crises (ACIRC), a temporary standby force capable of responding quickly to crisis situations in Africa, was operational by October 2014. The ACIRC will serve as an interim measure ahead of the establishment of a permanent African Standby Force, which was originally expected to be operational by 2015. The AU envisions the ACIRC as an efficient, robust and credible force that can be deployed rapidly, either conducting operations of limited duration and aims, or paving the way for the deployment of larger AU and/or United Nations peace operations. Following a meeting in Addis Ababa in January, the AU decided that the force would comprise a pool of 5 000 troops made up of operational modules in the form of 1 500-strong battle groups. Command will rest with the AU Peace and Security Council, which will assess all requests for intervention by member states. On a voluntary basis, member states of the AU will contribute troops and finance for the ACIRC to enable it to act independently.

trade.

It also ensures that arms-trade policies conform to internationally accepted practices.

Companies interested in exporting arms have to apply for export permits, whereafter the Ministry of Defence and Military Veterans processes the applications. Each application is also sent for scrutiny to the relevant government departments, such as international relations and cooperation or trade and industry.

The application is then referred to the various directors-general for their recommendations, whereafter the NCACC makes the final decision.

An independent inspectorate ensures that all levels of the process are subject to independent scrutiny and supervision, and are conducted in accordance with the policies and guidelines of the NCACC.

The inspectorate submits periodic reports to the Joint Standing Committee on Defence.

Defence Force Service Commission

The Defence Force Service Commission was established in terms of the Defence Amendment Act of 2010.

Its functions include making recommendations to the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans concerning improvements to salaries and service benefits of members of the SANDF.

South African Aerospace, Maritime and Defence Industries Association (AMD)

The AMD's primary objective is to represent the South African industry in matters of mutual interest in pursuit of profitability, sustainability and responsible corporate citizenship.

The association is acknowledged as the only trade association of South Africa's Defence Industry (Sadi), and is mandated by its members

to promote and champion the collective interests of the industry.

It comprises a cluster of leading companies in the South African private and public sector that supply defence materiel, products and services.

AMD member companies supply products and services to the Department of Defence, government organisations and other contractors, locally and internationally, in the defence and security marketplace.

As Sadi is one of the cornerstones of a stable and growing South African economy, the AMD is responsible for ensuring that a world-class, indigenous defence industry capability is maintained in a sustainable manner.

The AMD's involvement in international marketing includes:

- co-hosting Africa Aerospace and Defence
- co-publishing the *Sadi Directory*
- negotiating the structuring of export incentives and the sponsorship of international trade show pavilions.

Within an emerging Defence Industry Support Framework, the DoD, in collaboration with the Armaments Corporation of South Africa (Armscor) and the AMD, will continue providing effective support to enable Sadi to exploit export opportunities within the South African political and legal context.

The services range from information sharing on possible opportunities to facilitating the provision of defence personnel, facilities and equipment for use by Sadi in demonstrations for export purposes.

The AMD, through its membership, is strategically well positioned and capable of supporting the government in achieving its AU and New Partnership for Africa's Development objectives.

Castle Control Board

According to its Annual Performance Plan, the mission of the Castle Control Board is to be a service-oriented public entity, striving to optimise its tourism potential and accessibility to the public and to preserve and protect its cultural and military heritage. Among its values are the restoration and preservation of the dignity of the military in society, and national unity.

The main objectives of the board are to preserve and protect the military and cultural heritage of the Castle of Good Hope, to optimise its tourism potential and public access to it. The board needs to practise sound corporate governance characterised by such things as accountability and responsibility as espoused by the *King III Report* on corporate governance.

Armaments Corporation of South Africa

According to its Corporate Plan 2012/13 – 2014/15 Armscor intends being the premier technology

In August 2014, the Department of Human Settlements committed to oversee the building of 1,5 million homes and informal housing upgrades for military veterans.

and acquisition agency for the South African Government and governments of the SADC region. It aims to meet the defence materiel, defence technology, research, development, analysis, tests and evaluation requirements of the department or any other organ of state on request or any sovereign state on agreement, effectively, efficiently and economically.

Armscor may, with the approval of the Minister of Defence and Military Veterans, exploit such commercial opportunities as may arise out of its duty to acquire defence materiel or to manage technology projects. It may also procure commercial materiel on behalf of any organ of state at the request of the organ of State in question.

Denel Group of South Africa

Government wants Denel to grow into a preferred global supplier in the defence industry.

To achieve this the state-owned company would have to aggressively invest in research and development to help secure long-term sustainability.

In support of the collaborative initiatives between the departments of public enterprises and defence the SANDF is expected to become the platform for showcasing Denel's capabilities.

In August 2014, Denel, reported revenue of R4,58 billion in its 2013/14 financial results. The arms company has seen group revenue grow by 17% most of which can be attributed to a 28% increase in exports. These exports account for 50% of total revenue, including participation in Middle East, Asian and South American countries for the development and production of missiles and turrets for infantry combat vehicles.

The group's net profit has improved by R123 million to R194 million and its order book for projects to be executed in the next 10 years has grown to R32 billion. The company has diversified into the space domain, with the company this year having set up the Spaceteq business unit in the Western Cape. In the short to medium term, Denel will further diversify into the civil security arena and the command and control environment.

The company was in the process of acquiring the BAE Systems Land Systems South Africa (LSSSA) after the UK-based global defence group announced that it was selling its South African armoured and mine-protected vehicle and related system.

Discussions were underway with the

departments of public enterprises and trade and industry to secure National Industrial Participation work packages for the local aerospace industry when South African Airways and SA Express proceeded with the procurement of new aircraft fleets.

Department of Military Veterans

The DMV's aim is to formulate policies and standards aimed at providing a comprehensive delivery system to military veterans and their dependants in recognition of their role in the democratisation of South Africa.

The department's strategic goals over the medium term are to:

- coordinate and facilitate the provision of socio-economic support services to military veterans
- manage and coordinate military veterans' empowerment and stakeholder relations services
- ensure that the needs of military veterans and their dependants are addressed.

The objectives of the DMV are to:

- Provide socio-economic support services to military veterans over the medium term by:
 - establishing and maintaining the credibility and security of the national military veterans' database through consolidating data, updating software and updating personal files of military veterans on an ongoing basis
 - facilitating access to benefits espoused in section 5 of the Military Veterans Act of 2011 for eligible military veterans by 2016/17.
- Developing strategic partnerships with other organs of the State and in broader society to advance delivery on social services to military veterans and their dependants, where this is applicable, to ensure that:
 - 6 000 military veterans have decent housing over the medium term
 - 29 000 military veterans have access to health care services by 2016/17
 - 1 800 eligible military veterans and dependents across the country are provided with ongoing education support by 2016/17
 - targets agreed with service delivery agencies are achieved and the benefits accessed by military veterans as espoused in section 5 of the Military Veterans Act of 2011, are reported on comprehensively by 2016/17.
- Provide strategic leadership to the socio-economic sector by conducting ongoing research on pertinent issues affecting military veterans and by developing requisite policies; implementation norms and standards, strategies, guidelines and frameworks by 2016/17.

Legislation

The DMV derives its mandate from the Military Veterans Act 2011, (Act 18 of 2011), which requires it to provide national policy and standards on socioeconomic support to military veterans and to their dependants, including benefits and entitlements to help realise a dignified, unified, empowered and self-sufficient military veterans' community.

Programmes and projects

Military Veterans Management

The Military Veterans Management received a Cabinet approved additional allocation of R2,1 billion between 2013/14 and 2016/17 to provide for military veterans' benefits. This is also the reason for the projected increase in spending on transfers and subsidies between 2013/14 and 2016/17.

The NDP calls for the reduction in unemployment and expansion in enrolments in further education and training.

The DMV provides socio-economic services to facilitate employment opportunities for military veterans with the support of line function departments, private companies and State agencies. By 2014, 1 176 job opportunities had been created for military veterans. It was envisaged that by the end of 2014/15, a further 1 000 job opportunities will have been created. In 2013/14, 100 dependants of military veterans were provided with bursaries and 1 800 bursaries will have been provided to dependants of military veterans through the National Student Financial Aid Scheme by 2016/17.

Database and Benefits Management establishes systems for the seamless transition of service men and women from active service to civilian life. The subprogramme also consolidates and ensures the credibility and security of the national military veterans' database and exercises oversight on governance obligations and resources allocated to this unit for delivery on the relevant provisions of the Military Veterans Act of 2011.

Healthcare and Wellbeing Support facilitates the provision of healthcare services and wellbeing support to military veterans, including disease prevention initiatives. The projected expenditure increase over the medium term under the Healthcare and Wellbeing Support subprogramme is focused on funding health care services for military veterans where R94 million will be spent over the next three years on health care.

Socio-Economic Support Management develops norms and standards for the provision of education, public transport, pension, housing and social relief of distress for military veterans

eligible for such support; establishes strategic partnerships to advance service delivery; tracks delivery by service providers on agreed targets; ensures continuous improvement; and reports on service delivery. This entails ensuring that legal instruments for the provision of socio-economic support services to military veterans, such as housing, pensions and transport, are put in place. Expenditure in the Socio Economic Support Management subprogramme is therefore expected to increase over the medium term, mainly to fund the provision of 6 000 houses to deserving military veterans and award bursaries to deserving military veterans and their dependents.

Empowerment and Stakeholder Management objectives are to ensure the empowerment of deserving military veterans by:

- establishing a fully functional special purpose vehicle that will facilitate business opportunities for development by 2014/15
- forming partnerships with 30 private sector companies and other organs of state and entering into service level agreements and memorandums of understanding over the medium term
- monitoring and evaluating the implementation of the agreements and memorandums of understanding to ensure that support is provided on an annual basis
- concluding 12 formal agreements with institutions of higher learning for the provision of skills development over the medium term
- facilitating the association of military veterans with the international community through the establishment of relevant exchange programmes
- ensuring that 10 strategic initiatives are established at national, continental and international levels by 2014/15
- providing 9 000 deserving military veterans with access to relevant training and skills development over the medium term
- facilitating the integration of military veterans into the national workforce on an ongoing basis.

Subprogrammes:

- Provincial Offices and Stakeholder Relations facilitates and coordinates military veteran stakeholder institutions and provides administrative support to secure stakeholders from both public and private institutions willing to contribute towards the wellbeing of military veterans. In 2012/13, 4 partnerships were formed with other government departments, including the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform. In 2013/14, the focus was on

establishing and capacitating provincial offices by completing the staff employment processes and negotiating adequate office space in provinces with the relevant authorities. In addition, the South African National Military Veterans Association was supported in enhancing the strengthening of relations with key stakeholders. The association will be assisted in developing its programme of action and financial management systems and the provision of funds for effective governance will be facilitated. The department will ensure that all requisite institutions assist in putting in place structures regulating the treatment of military veterans, including the appeals board and the advisory council, as per the Military Veterans Act of 2011.

- Empowerment and Skills Development provides reskilling programmes and related activities to ensure that military veterans contribute positively to mainstream economic activities. In 2012/13, memorandums of agreements were reached with the Departments of Water Affairs and Environmental Affairs for the provision of jobs for military veterans in selected work areas. In 2013/14, 1 176 military veterans were employed or provided with work opportunities through other government departments and the private sector
- Heritage, Memorials, Burials and Honours provides services to honour the contributions made by military veterans; and ensures that their memorials are adequately secured, articulated in a dignified manner and captured in historical texts. In 2012/13, 3 events took place to acknowledge the contribution that military veterans made in the struggle for democracy. In 2013/14, the focus was on preparatory work on the establishment of a Tomb of the Unknown Soldier; memorial sites and military veterans' graves. 65 military veterans were provided with burial support. There are plans to erect eight memorial sites to facilitate the establishment of heroes' acres and monuments in every province, and to host one honouring function for military veterans in 2014/15.

Department of State Security

The mandate of the State Security Agency (SSA) is to provide government with intelligence on domestic, foreign or potential threats to national stability, the constitutional order, and the safety and well-being of its people.

This enables government to implement and improve policies to deal with potential threats and to better understand existing threats.

The SSA comprises:

- The Domestic Branch.
 - The Foreign Branch.
 - The Intelligence Academy.
 - National Communications.
- The SSA focuses on matters of national interest including terrorism, sabotage, subversion, espionage and organised crime.

Legislation and policies

The SSA is governed by the following legislation and policies:

- Constitution of South Africa, 1996
- Proclamation: *Government Gazette 32566*
- Intelligence Services Act, 2002 (Act 65 of 2002)
- *Ministerial Notices No 32576*
- *Government Gazette No 25592*: Intelligence Services Regulations 2003
- National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994 (Act 39 of 1994)
- Intelligence Services Oversight Act, 1994 (Act 40 of 1994)
- Intelligence Services Act, 2005 (Act 65 of 2005)
- *White Paper on Intelligence* (1994)
- Protection of State Information Bill, November 2011
- Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges Act, 2001 (Act 37 of 2001)
- Regulation of Foreign Military Assistance Act, 1998 (Act 15 of 1998)
- Defence Act, 2002 (Act 42 of 2002)
- SAPS Act, 1995
- Financial Intelligence Centre Act, 2001 (Act 38 of 2001)
- Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communication-related Information Act, 2002 (RICA) (Act 70 of 2002)
- Auditor-General Act, 1995 (Act 12 of 1995).

Functions

Domestic branch

The National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994 (Act 39 of 1994), defined the primary functions of the Domestic Branch as gathering, correlating, evaluating and analysing domestic intelligence to:

- identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people
- supply intelligence regarding any such threat to the National Intelligence Coordinating Committee (NICOC)
- gather departmental intelligence at the request of any interested national department and without delay to transmit such intelligence that constitutes departmental intelligence to the relevant department
- fulfil the national counter-intelligence respon-

sibility and for this purpose to conduct and coordinate counter-intelligence to gather, correlate, evaluate, analyse and interpret information regarding counter-intelligence to identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people

- inform the President of any such threat
- supply (where necessary) intelligence relating to any such threat to the SAPS for the purposes of investigating any offence or alleged offence.

In view of these functions, the Domestic Branch's responsibilities include:

- fulfilling a proactive, anticipatory or early warning role of scanning and assessing the total (economic, social, political and environmental) domestic security situation to identify and report to the policy maker or executive departments any signs or warning signals of threats or potential threats to the constitutional order and the safety of the people
- performing a reactive monitoring role in tracking events when a threat/crime has been identified or a crisis has already arisen, without duplicating the role of the other executive departments; the purpose of this monitoring role is mainly to enhance investigation and prosecution by providing tactical information and intelligence to enforcement and prosecution institutions and to decide the extent and the implications of threats or potential threats to national security and safety
- providing an integrated multi-analytical strategic projective assessment of patterns, trends and of security relevant issues, to provide strategic early warning and to enhance the Domestic Branch's support and involvement in policy formulation.

Foreign Branch

The Foreign Branch is a national intelligence structure. The National Strategic Intelligence Act of 1994, defines the functions of the Foreign Branch as:

- gathering, correlating, evaluating and analysing foreign intelligence, excluding foreign military intelligence, to identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people and to supply intelligence relating to any such threat to the NICOC
- instituting counter-intelligence measures within the service and, in consultation with the service, counter-intelligence measures outside South Africa
- gathering departmental intelligence at the request of any interested national department, and without delay to evaluate and transmit such intelligence and any other intelligence

at the disposal of the service and which constitutes departmental intelligence to the department concerned and to the NICOC.

In view of these functions, the Foreign Branch is responsible for:

- fulfilling a proactive, anticipatory or early warning role of scanning and assessing the total (economic, social, political and environmental) foreign environment to identify and report to the policy maker any signs or warning signals of threats or potential threats to the constitutional order and the safety of the people
- providing the Government with developments in the foreign environment that are likely to have an effect on the image, territorial integrity as well as the security of South Africa and its citizens
- advising on the opportunities that exist in the external environment that should be exploited to enhance South Africa's national interest, be it in the political, economic, social or international relations sphere
- advising on security threats against personnel, interests, strategic installations and assets of South Africa abroad
- conducting security screening investigations into its personnel as well as those of other departments identified for posting abroad.

Intelligence Academy

The Intelligence Academy under the SSA has a mandate to provide quality intelligence training to members of the Intelligence Community.

National Communications

The National Communications Branch of the SSA comprises Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Ltd (Comsec), the National Communications Centre and the Office for Interception Centre (OIC). Comsec and the OIC are externally focused as they render services to the organs of State.

Comsec

Comsec was established in 2002 as a private company – Civilian Intelligence Community – with the primary purpose of ensuring that critical electronic communications of the state are secure and protected. Through presidential proclamation in 2009, Comsec was pronounced a government component, effectively transferring its ICT functions to the SSA. Its functions include:

- protecting and securing electronic communications of national importance against security threats
- conducting periodic analysis of the state of ICT security and advising the Minister of such

analysis

- identifying and providing security to the critical electronic communications infrastructure of organs of state.

Comsec offers the following ICT security services:

- managed security services
- secure communications
- risk management and assurance services.

Office for Interception Centre

The OIC was established in terms of the Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communication-related Act, 2002 (Act 70 of 2002.)

The OIC provides a centralised interception service to law enforcement agencies involved in combating threats to national security.

Interception was previously conducted independently by the Law Enforcement Agency, which may have resulted in duplication of work and resources.

The formation of the OIC centralises interception activities and paves the way for better management of interception in an effort to increase efficiency, minimise duplication of resources and costs, and regulate and control the interception environment.

Vetting

Part of the SSA's objective is to be able to conduct vetting for all government departments in a user-friendly and speedy manner, in line with its counter-intelligence mandate that ensures that the department creates conditions of security, which enable government and key state entities to do their work.



Rural Development

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform (DRDLR) is mandated to initiate, facilitate, coordinate, catalyse and implement an integrated rural development programme, which is linked to the need to create vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities.

The department's strategic goals are to:

- foster effective land reform and land restitution programmes
- implement sustainable agrarian reform through increased access to and productive use of land
- ensure spatial equity through effective land planning and administration
- reform the policy, legislative and institutional environment
- improve food production and access to affordable and diverse food
- improve rural services to support sustainable rural livelihoods
- improve access to sustainable employment and skills development
- improve institutional arrangements for effective cooperative governance, stakeholder participation and service excellence.

The DRDLR is committed to ensuring that South Africans in rural areas enjoy the same benefits as those in urban areas regarding the human rights and basic dignity guaranteed by the Constitution.

The DRDLR deals with land reform; access to land use; management and transformation of land relations; and all other matters related to the hopes and lifestyles of those who live on the land and who depend on the land for their livelihoods.

The department's key priorities are to:

- roll out the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP) to all rural municipalities
- improve productivity in land reform projects through effective implementation of the Recapitalisation and Development Programme
- expedite the finalisation of land claims
- improve corporate governance and ensure enhanced service delivery
- implement proper change management and innovation strategies
- enhance the efficiency of information management systems.

The CRDP is aimed specifically at reducing poverty by creating vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities.

To achieve this vision, the department defined its role and mission as being that of facilitating

integrated development and social cohesion through partnerships with all sectors of society.

One of the department's most important strategic objectives is agrarian transformation.

The agrarian transformation strategy is aimed at:

- social mobilisation to enable rural communities to take initiative
- sustainable settlements with access to basic services and economic opportunity; the meeting of basic human needs; and infrastructure development
- the establishment of cooperatives and enterprises for economic activities; wealth creation; and productive use of assets
- non-farming activities for strengthening rural livelihoods
- leadership training, social facilitation and familiarity with CRDP objectives; and socio-economic independence
- skills development and employment creation for youth, women and people with disabilities
- the democratisation of rural development, and participation in and ownership of all processes, projects and programmes by rural communities
- coordination, alignment and cooperative governance by local municipalities, traditional councils, provincial government and rural communities
- participation of non-governmental organisations including faith-based organisations, community-based organisations and other organs of civil society
- social cohesion and access to human and social capital.

Legislation and policies

The DRDLR executes its legislative mandate around the following Acts:

- The Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act 22 of 1994) provides for the restitution of rights in land to persons or communities dispossessed of such rights after 19 June 1913. The Act makes provision for the establishment of the Commission on Restitution of Land Rights and the Land Claims Court. The Minister is authorised to purchase, acquire and expropriate land or rights in land for the purpose of restitution awards.
- The Provision of Land and Assistance Act, 1993 (Act 126 of 1993) provides for the

designation of certain land, the regulation of the subdivision of such land and the settlement of persons thereon. It also provides for the acquisition, maintenance, planning, development, improvement and disposal of property and the provision of financial assistance for land reform purposes.

- The Communal Property Associations Act, 1996 (Act 28 of 1996) enables communities to form juristic persons, to be known as communal property associations, to acquire, hold and manage property on basis agreed to by members of a community in terms of a written constitution.
- The Transformation of Certain Rural Areas Act, 1998 (Act 94 of 1998) provides for the transfer of certain land to municipalities and certain other legal entities, as well as for the removal of restrictions on the alienation of land.
- The Physical Planning Act, 1991 (Act 125 of 1991) promotes the orderly physical development of South Africa, and for that purpose, makes provisions for the division of the country into regions, and for the preparation of national development plans, regional development plans, regional structure plans and urban structure plans.
- The Deeds Registries Act, 1937 (Act 47 of 1937) provides for the administration of the land registration system and the registration of land rights.
 - The Restitution of Land Rights Amendment Act of 2014 extends the deadline for land claims to June 2019. The amendment also criminalises false and fraudulent claims that have been deemed a waste of taxpayers' money, where people submit land claims, knowing that they do not have a valid historic claim to a piece of land. The Act reopens the window for persons or communities dispossessed of their land due to past discriminatory laws and policies to lodge claims. Extending the deadline for the lodging of claims was in line with the proposals of the National Development Plan (NDP), the CRDP and other growth strategies intended to promote national reconciliation and social cohesion. Cabinet also approved the submission of the report on the Audit of Registered State Land and a desktop analysis of private land ownership in South Africa for submission to Parliament. The audit aims to determine the quantity of state-owned land and what it was used for.

The land audit will be used to enhance the integrity of the land register, which will serve as the basis for enhanced land planning and administration, including other functions relating to property portfolio management and improved service delivery. About 1,15 million land parcels have been surveyed. The State owns 14% of land in South Africa, 79% is privately owned and 7% has not been registered.

About four million ha of unregistered land in the former Transkei are occupied by citizens and will be transferred either by the State or private owners once the verification process has been concluded.

- The Spatial and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (Act 16 of 2013) seeks to bridge the racial divide in spatial terms and transform the settlement patterns that put a considerable burden on public resources. The Act will also ensure that the restructuring of South African cities, towns and settlements is in line with the priorities and principles of the democratic government.

The objectives of the Act are to:

- provide for a uniform, effective and comprehensive system of spatial planning and land-use management
- ensure that the system of spatial planning and land-use management promotes social and economic inclusion
- provide for development principles, norms and standards
- provide for the sustainable and efficient use of land
- provide for the cooperative government and intergovernmental relations among the national, provincial and local spheres of government
- redress the imbalances of the past and ensure that there is equity in the application of spatial development planning and land-use management.
- The Cooperatives Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 6 of 2013).

This is an amendment to the Cooperatives Act, 2005 (Act 14 of 2005), which came into effect on 2 May 2007.

This Act provides for the establishment, functions and powers of the Cooperatives Development Agency. Among other things, the amendment provides for associate membership of cooperatives, the annual submission of information to the Companies and Intellectual

Property Commission (CIPC), categories of primary cooperative and the national apex cooperatives.

Besides providing for the establishment, composition and functions of the Cooperative Tribunal, the Act provides for a cooperative to apply for a declaratory order in respect of the liquidation process, and for the registrar of the tribunal to order the winding-up of a cooperative.

The legislation amends the accounting practices by providing for the audit and independent review of cooperatives, the payment of fees by the cooperative for the amalgamation, division and conservation, including the transfer of cooperatives.

- The Cooperatives Amendment Act of 2013 states that the provincial departments of economic development, under which cooperatives in South Africa fall, will be responsible for coordinating and reporting all cooperative activities in the provinces involving other departments and stakeholders, while the municipalities will be responsible for coordinating activities within their area of jurisdiction.

Budget and funding

Over the medium term, R2,6 billion was transferred to the Rural Development Programme to provide funds for basic services infrastructure to households. In addition, R2,4 billion and R2,1 billion were reprioritised from the restitution and land reform programmes to be used as transfers to households in the Rural Development Programme.

This shift decreased spending on consultants and travel and subsistence, and increased spending on transfers to households. Of the funds transferred from the Restitution and Land Reform programmes, R870 million was allocated to drive electronic mapping, cadastral and spatial planning and land-use management in the Geospatial and Cadastral Services Programme and R1 billion was allocated to the Administration Programme to allow the department to employ more staff in regional offices to improve service delivery.

As part of Cabinet-approved reductions, expenditure in the Rural Development Programme

The Department of Rural Development and Land Reform announced that 5 600 claims have been received at lodgment sites across the country. The majority of these have been lodged in the Western Cape with 1 363 claims, followed by Gauteng with 956 claims, since the land claims process was reopened in July 2014.

Creating jobs through cooperatives will lead to thousands of job opportunities for people and the development of rural communities. This would ease pressures associated with rapid urbanisation, where people leave rural areas to go to urban areas to seek economic opportunities. Urbanisation is an international phenomenon and is not something that can be easily stopped.

South Africa has a good relationship with China and both countries have a programme called Township and Village Enterprises, where they actually create industries [in rural areas].

In April 2014, the DRDLR sent 40 young people on a learning mission in China so that they can implement their ideas on return.

The DRDLR intends to create mega cooperatives of young people from rural areas to do construction and transform them into a class of black industrialists to create more jobs and build social infrastructure.

over the medium term will be reduced by R400 million from the economic competitiveness support package for the implementation of the National Youth Services Corps (NYSC) while the land claims grant in the Restitution Programme is reduced by R710 million. The department will reprioritise funds from non-core services to compensate for any shortfalls.

Role players

National Reference Group

The National Reference Group is an inclusive structure that represents varied interest groups ranging from beneficiaries, organised agriculture and civil society to academics and experts on land and agrarian issues. National reference groups constitute five working groups in respect of policy proposals made by the department in the Green Paper, namely the Land Management Commission; Land Rights Management Board and committees; Office of the Land Valuer-General; Three-Tier Tenure System; and Legislative Amendments and communal tenure.

Geospatial and cadastral services

The national geospatial information component is responsible for the national control survey network, the national mapping and aerial imagery programmes and the provision of geospatial information services.

This component will continue its map literacy and map awareness training for adults, and support to educators and learners to promote the use of geospatial information. Priority will be given to rural communities.

Aerial imagery is a significant source of

geospatial information and a record of the land at a given time. National geospatial information acquires aerial imagery annually. The CRDP sites have been prioritised. The branch will also assist in creating orderly and sustainable rural settlements by ensuring alignment and harmonisation of rural development plans with existing planning frameworks, including provincial growth and development strategies and integrated development plans.

The department has considered the adverse affect that disasters have on rural areas and the lives of rural people, and included in its strategy a disaster management component, which, together with other sector departments, will coordinate responses to rural disasters.

The Braille atlas for the visually impaired who can read Braille is a first in South Africa and is primarily intended to give visually impaired people access to geospatial information (maps).

Cadastral surveys management

Cadastral surveying is the survey and demarcation of land for the purpose of defining parcels of land for registration in a land registry.

Cadastral surveying in South Africa is undertaken exclusively by or under the control of professional land surveyors.

South Africa not only allows the private ownership of property but also, in the case of land, actively encourages it. Initially, all land derives from the State but, should the State wish to give or lend a piece of land to one or more of its citizens for that person to develop and to enjoy its use, cadastral surveying becomes necessary.

Later, should the owner wish to sell off part of that land, the cadastral surveyor is again called in to partition the land to be sold. The services of the cadastral surveyor are required whenever a boundary beacon must be found or replaced.

Once the positions of the boundaries have been marked and recorded, the cadastral surveyor and the conveyancer work together to record ownership in a public register. This action ensures that the rights of the owner can be upheld against false claims and that all persons may know who owns what.

Deeds registration

There are 10 deeds registries in South Africa whose core responsibility is to:

- register real rights in land
- maintain a public land register

- provide registration information
- maintain an archive of registration records.

The deeds registries are in Pretoria, Cape Town, Johannesburg, Bloemfontein, Nelspruit, Pietermaritzburg, Kimberley, Vryburg, Mthatha and King William's Town.

These offices register deeds and documents relating to real rights in more than eight million registered land parcels consisting of township erven, farms, agricultural holdings, sectional title units and sectional title exclusive-use areas in terms of the Deeds Registries Act, 1937 (Act 47 of 1937), and the Sectional Titles Act, 1986 (Act 95 of 1986).

To take deeds-registry services to the people, the department aims to establish a deeds registry in every province. The deeds registry is open to any member of the public for them to access information regarding:

- the registered owner of a property
- the conditions affecting such property
- interdicts and contracts in respect of the property
- the purchase price of the property
- rules of a sectional title scheme
- a copy of an antenuptial contract, deeds of servitude and mortgage bonds
- a copy of a sectional title plan
- township-establishment conditions
- information relating to a property or deed.

Deeds registration has progressively introduced e-Cadastre, which is aimed at improving cadastral surveys management and deeds registration as well as the consolidation of data stores.

As far as the e-Cadastre Project is concerned, the enterprise architecture investigation, which is aimed at consolidating cadastral surveys and deeds registration data stores, has been concluded. Digital scanning of the microfilm records is ongoing.

Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights (CRLR)

The Restitution Act created a CRLR under a chief land claims commissioner and seven regional commissioners. In addition, the Act established the Land Claims Court to address land claims and other land-related though later amendments

The Best Female Entrepreneur Award is an annual competition which recognises, celebrates, honours and rewards the continuous contributions made by women in the fight against hunger, poverty and unemployment among rural communities.

enabled an administrative process of settling claims with court referrals only in cases of dispute.

The DRDLR is authorised to administer the Act, including by negotiating on behalf of the State, acting as a respondent before the Court, and managing the implementation and finances of the restitution process. Legally, all land claims are against the State and not against past or current landowners.

Claimants file their claims with the relevant Regional Land Claims Commissioner (RLCC), whose office undertakes a validation process to ensure the claim meets the criteria of the Restitution Act. Once a claim has been validated, the RLCC investigates the evidence presented in the claim and verifies the rights of the claimants and their relation to those dispossessed, in the case of intergenerational claims.

The CRLR and the Court have accepted a wide variety of evidence to establish land claims, including oral testimony, sworn affidavits, and official records of removals maintained by the apartheid State.

The CRLR is responsible for investigating and processing restitution claims. The CRLR also develops and coordinates restitution policies and oversees restitution court cases. The restitution programme is aimed at removing the settlement of land restitution claims under the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act 22 of 1994).

The strategic objective of the CRLR is the restitution of rights in land or awards of alternative forms of equitable redress to claimants, within Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) budgetary allocation.

The CRLR seeks to provide equitable redress to victims of racially motivated land dispossession, in line with the provisions of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act 22 of 1994). The Restitution of Land Rights Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 15 of 2014) extends (reopens) the lodgement of land claims for a period of five years, calculated from 1 July 2014 to 30 June 2019.

New claims were being lodged through an electronic system in 14 lodgement sites, and in mobile lodgement offices. Information provided by a claimant was captured, and supporting documentation was scanned and filed in the

In August 2014, the Minister of Rural Development and Land Reform met with District Six claimants where it was agreed that a governance structure should be established. The meeting, attended by over 700 claimants, was held at the Cape Peninsula University of Technology.

system. A printout of the completed electronic form was signed by the claimant and filed in a hard copy file. An automated acknowledgement of receipt of the claim is generated by the system with a unique reference number. A text message is forwarded to the claimant, acknowledging receipt of a claim. The lodgement system automatically creates the National Land Restitution Register as required by the Act, and generates reports.

There were 14 operational lodgement sites located in Pretoria, Mbombela, eMalahleni, Polokwane, Bloemfontein, Kimberley, East London, Queenstown, Cape Town, George, Pietermaritzburg, Vryheid, Mmabatho, and Vryburg. Plans were in place to increase the number of lodgement sites to 23 by 2015/16, and 52 by 2019. There were four mobile lodgement offices that had been procured and would be deployed to all parts of the country, especially rural areas. The deployment of the lodgement offices would be supported by mobile communication units.

The Act requires that the CRLR ensure that priority is given to claims lodged not later than 31 December 1998. The outstanding claims should be settled simultaneously with the new claims, but the new claims should be prioritised for financial payment.

Programmes and projects Animal and Veld Management Programme (AVMP)

The AVMP is aimed at providing relief for farmers in rural areas operating under challenging circumstances made worse by spatial congestion and environmental degradation owing to overgrazing.

The programme will also help with soil rehabilitation, spatial decongestion and greening of the environment. It is part of government's intervention towards reversing the legacy of the 1913 Natives' Land Act, which led to the majority of black people being confined to 13% of the land, resulting in challenges of overcrowding and overgrazing in communal areas.

The department will identify farmers in communal areas who have showed potential for successful farming. Based on their track record, such farmers will be moved into some of the state-owned farms to enable them to expand their farming operations.

The AVMP is expected to reach the country's 24 poorest district municipality areas.

Comprehensive Rural Development Programme

The CRDP is focused on enabling rural people to take control of their lives, with support from government. The programme aims to deal with rural poverty effectively through the optimal use and management of natural resources through an integrated broad-based agrarian transformation and the strategic investment in economic and social infrastructure that will benefit rural communities.

In five years, the Ministry of Rural Development and Land Reform had succeeded in helping to create a better life for millions of residents in villages throughout South Africa by providing food for the hungry, stimulating local economies, establishing jobs and reducing poverty.

In an effort to improve the economy, the DRDLR acquired and distributed 834 134 ha of land throughout the country. To ensure sustained production on land provided by government, 712 067 smallholder producers, including those under the recapitalisation and development programme, were supported through various initiatives including access to information.

Another 10 271 resources-poor historically disadvantaged producers were given support that enabled them to access water and 2 073 water-use licences were finalised, thus enabling the farmers to irrigate their land.

A total of 33 341 smallholder producers were assisted to access markets and 1 284 producer cooperatives and marketing depots were established to increase their competitiveness and take advantage of market opportunities.

More than one million household and institutional and community gardens were established. Food was distributed to 2,8 million people through the Food for All Programme including community nutrition development centres. About nine million learners gained access to nutritious food through the School Nutrition Programme.

Infrastructure development has contributed to 503 365 households gaining access to clean running water; about one million gaining access to sanitation and just above 11 million gaining access to electricity.

Rural Enterprise Infrastructure Development (REID)

REID aims to create an enabling institutional environment for vibrant and sustainable rural communities.

The Social Organisation and Mobilisation Unit is primarily responsible for the promotion of a participatory approach to rural development to ensure that rural communities are able to take full charge of their collective destinies.

The approach is predicated on social mobilisation of rural communities, so that there can be ownership of rural development projects and programmes.

The participatory approach is used to assess the needs of the rural areas through the profiling of households and communities.

The needs assessments are conducted through participatory rural appraisal methods, which also offers communities the opportunity to prioritise their needs.

The Technical Support, Skills Development and Nurturing Unit provides technical support to the institutions and structures established in rural communities, through skills development and capacity building. The unit determines skills levels of rural communities through household profiles, and develops training programmes aligned to interventions and economic opportunities. It is also responsible for the implementation of the job creation model, which is aimed at improving households' basic needs, as well as promoting economic livelihoods.

The job-creation model further entails the empowerment of rural communities through skills transfer, developing artisans and enabling communities to start their own enterprises.

The Rural Livelihoods and Food Security Unit forms strategic partnerships that are important to the improvement of rural livelihoods, by promoting both economic development and the development of rural enterprises.

These strategic partnerships also facilitate value added services such as agriprocessing and the establishment of village industries and enterprises.

The strategic partners involved are from the private sector, state-owned enterprises and international organisations.

The Institutional Building and Mentoring unit is responsible for facilitating, building and mentoring institutions in rural communities.

This function involves the identification of existing institutions and the assessment of needs, including building new institutions to ensure sustainable development.

The unit is responsible for the establishment and facilitation of community structures such as

the Council of Stakeholders. It is also responsible for establishing and building the capacities of cooperatives.

Communal Property Association (CPA)

The CPA Act 28 of 1996 is aimed at enabling communities "to form juristic persons, to be known as CPAs, to acquire, hold and manage property on a basis agreed upon by members of a community in terms of a written constitution; and to provide for matters connected therewith."

In November 2012, government held a two-day CPA workshop to discuss the Act and explore ways in which communal land located in rural areas could benefit those who live on it by unlocking the underlying mineral wealth. The workshop formed part of the department's ongoing consultation process with all its stakeholders to create a deeper understanding of one of government's key priority areas – rural development. The department used the platform to establish various national reference groups, with the first meeting held early in January 2013.

National Rural Youth Service Corps (Narysec)

In April 2014, 6 000 young people graduated from the four-year Narysec programme at Thaba Nchu College of Education in the Free State. South Africa launched Narysec in 2010. The programme was established by the DRDLR and is designed to complement the government's job creation model.

Narysec aims to help transform young people in the rural areas from being job seekers to being job creators in their own right, as well as reducing their dependency on social grants.

The long-term programme, which also aims to uplift rural areas with services and infrastructure, started out with 7 900 participants. There were eventually about 14 000 people enrolled in the programme.

In 2012, the recruitment drive for the programme was increased from four to six people per rural ward and include residents aged between 18 and 35 who have completed Grade 10. They are trained in technical, artisan and social-work skills.

The graduation ceremony was preceded by the handing over of Thaba Nchu College of Education to the DRDLR by Free State Premier.

The college is now the headquarters of Narysec. It will also be used as the permanent exhibition centre of the 1913 Land Act Exhibition.

Land Reform Programme

The principles which underpin the new approach to sustainable land reform are:

- deracialisation of the rural economy
- democratic and equitable land allocation and use across gender, race and class
- strict production discipline for guaranteed national food security.

In June 2014, the Minister of Rural Development and Land Reform tabled land reform proposals which, if enacted, would see farmers giving half their land to their workers. The Minister's policy paper on land reform and restitution, finalised in February 2014, is titled "Strengthening the Relative Rights of People Working the Land."

According to the proposals – with a deadline for feedback of April 2015 – government will pay for the 50% to be shared by the labourers. This money would not be paid to the farm owner, but go into an investment and development fund (IDF), to be jointly owned by the parties constituting the new ownership regime. The government will deposit its contribution into the IDF, not to the farmer, for that would be double compensation. The farmer will benefit, like all others, from dividends allocated by the IDF. With that contribution, the government earns the status of ex-officio member of the management of the fund, and should be entitled to a single representative on it.

The fund would be used to develop the managerial and production capacity of the new entrants to land ownership, to further invest in the farm, and to pay out people who wish to opt out of the new regime.

The proposals apply to workers who have worked and lived on a farm for 10 years or longer.

Four years ago, 95% of the land restored to black farmers was unproductive. By 2014, 27% of that land was productive. In fact, over the past three years, the DRDLR produced at least three millionaires. The DRDLR was rekindling the class of black commercial farmers that was destroyed by the 1913 Natives Land Act.

Smallholder support programmes are being reviewed and a smallholder plan is being developed. These plans are supported by some agro-processing programmes, including soya bean processing, canning, biofuels, furniture and food processing industries, as well as small-scale maize milling in rural areas.

Other developments include the launch of the Zero Hunger Programme and the Aquaculture Programme. Zero Hunger creates opportunities

for the smallholder sector to grow by opening up institutional markets for their benefit, such as the School Nutrition Programme, hospitals and clinics.

As part of the implementation of the National Climate Change Response Policy, long-term adaptation scenarios are developed to determine sectors that may be climate sensitive and to develop response strategies.

Recapitalisation and development

During the past four years, another 7 000 jobs have been created during the department's implementation of the Recapitalisation and Development Programme, which saw 1 269 farms that had been lying fallow being converted into 100% productive farms.

The department's service-delivery programmes have created over 40 000 jobs. Various rural development jobs have come about because of such initiatives as constructing bridges, schools, health facilities, roads and other infrastructure-related activities.

Infrastructure jobs were created during the first phase of rural development at identified rural development pilot sites and the CRDP sites in all nine provinces.

During the implementation of these infrastructure and enterprise projects several rural villagers, especially youths and women, benefited from the accompanying skills development. This initiative culminated in 17 279 people gaining skills in various trades such brick-making, road paving, and the construction of houses and bridges.

Though the effect of the international economic downturn has depressed the property market, activities related to registering deeds are buoyant and continue to play a major role in the economy, as evidenced by the monetary value of transactions amounting to trillions of rand each year.





The Department of Science and Technology (DST) executes its mandate through the implementation of the 1996 White Paper on Science and Technology, the national research and development strategy and the Ten-Year Innovation Plan (TYIP). The plan aims to make science and technology a driving force in enhancing productivity, economic growth and socio-economic development.

The department's strategic goals are to:

- develop the innovation capacity of the national system of innovation to contribute to socio-economic development
- enhance South Africa's capacity for generating knowledge to produce world class research outputs and turn some advanced findings into innovation products and processes
- develop appropriate human capital in the science, technology and innovation sector to meet the needs of society
- build world class infrastructure in the science, technology and innovation sector to extend the frontiers of knowledge, train the next generation of researchers, and enable technology development and transfer as well as knowledge exchange
- position South Africa as a strategic international research and development and innovation partner and destination through the exchange of knowledge, capacity and resources between South Africa and its regional and other international partners, thus strengthening the national system of innovation.

To attract young people to science, the DST invested R497 million to implement a coordinated approach to science education, science awareness and science communication. The programmes – run through the South African Agency for Science and Technology Advancement (Saasta) – are expected to reach about 350 000 learners and about 12 500 to 13 000 teachers per annum.

Legislation

The DST is governed by the following legislation:

- Intellectual Property Rights from Publicly Financed Research and Development (IPR) Act, 2008 (Act 51 of 2008): Provides for the more effective use of intellectual property emanating from publicly financed research and development, through the establishment of the National Intellectual Property Management Office (Nipmo), the Intellectual Property Fund, and offices of technology transfer at institutions.
- Technology Innovation Act, 2008 (Act 26 of 2008): Intended to promote the development and exploitation in the public interest of

Science and technology

discoveries, inventions, innovations and improvements, and for that purpose establishes the Technology Innovation Agency (TIA).

- South African National Space Agency (Sansa) Act, 2008 (Act 36 of 2008): Establishes the Sansa to promote space science research, cooperation in space-related activities, and the creation of an environment conducive to the development of space technologies by industry.
- Natural Scientific Professions Act, 2003 (Act 27 of 2003): Establishes the South African Council for Natural Scientific Professions, and legislates the registration of professional natural scientists, natural scientists-in-training, natural science technologists and natural science technologists-in-training.
- National Research Foundation (NRF) Act, 1998 (Act 23 of 1998): Establishes the NRF to promote basic and applied research, as well as the extension and transfer of knowledge in the various fields of science and technology.
- National Advisory Council on Innovation (Naci) Act, 1997 (Act 55 of 1997): Establishes the Naci to advise the Minister of Science and Technology on the role and contribution of science, mathematics, innovation and technology in promoting and achieving national objectives.
- Africa Institute of South Africa (Aisa) Act, 2001 (Act 68 of 2001): Establishes the Aisa to promote knowledge and understanding of African affairs by encouraging leading social scientists.
- Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Act, 2008 (Act 17 of 2008): Provides for the HSRC, which carries out research that generates critical and independent knowledge relative to all aspects of human and social development.
- The Scientific Research Council Act, 1988 (Act 46 of 1988): Refers to the activities of the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), one of the leading scientific and technological research, development and implementation organisations in Africa, which undertakes directed research and development for socio-economic growth in areas including the built environment, defence, the environmental sciences, and biological, chemical and laser technologies.
- Astronomy Geographic Advantage Act, 2007 (Act 21 of 2007): Provides for the preservation and protection of areas in South Africa that are uniquely suited to optical and radio astronomy, and for intergovernmental cooperation and public consultation on matters concerning nationally significant astronomy advantage areas.

In August 2014, the 19th World Congress of the International Federation of Automatic Control (IFAC) took place in Cape Town under the theme: "Promoting automatic control for the benefit of humankind." IFAC aims to promote the S&T of automatic controls in theory and application. It provides a platform for collaboration between individuals, organisations and institutions concerned with automatic control systems, by allowing experts in related fields to exchange ideas. Since 1960, the congress has been held every three years and attracts academia, industry professionals, students and organisations involved in automation.

- The Science and Technology Laws, Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 7 of 2014) seeks to, among other things, streamline the process for the nomination and appointment of members of the boards or councils of such entities as well as the filling of vacancies on the boards.
- The Geoscience Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 12 of 2010), amends the Geoscience Act, 1993 (Act 100 of 1993), to mandate the Council for Geoscience (CGS) to be the custodians of geotechnical information; to act as a national advisory authority in respect of geohazards related to infrastructure and development; and to undertake exploration and prospecting research in the mineral and petroleum sectors.
- Sanren, which is responsible for the roll-out of a high-speed broadband network to all academic and research institutions in the country, was awarded a private electronic communications network licence exemption under the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005).
- New science and technology legislation that was adopted in 2014 included:
- Science and Technology Laws Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 7 of 2014).

Policy mandate and strategies

The DST's major policy documents are the White Paper on Science and Technology of 1996, the 2002 National Development Research Strategy (NRDS), the New Strategic Management Model for South Africa's Science and Technology System (2004) – with its Policy on Governance Standards for Science, Engineering and Technology Institutions and Framework for the Development of a National Science and Technology Expenditure Plan – and the 2007 TYIP.

The DST is the custodial coordinator for the development of the national System of Innovation (NSI) and influences this system through key strategies such as the NRDS and the TYIP. The latter, particularly, seeks to contribute to the transformation of the South African economy into a knowledge-based economy, in which the

production and dissemination of knowledge will lead to socio-economic benefits and enrich all fields of human endeavour.

National Research and Development Strategy

The NRDS as the basis for the NSI and requires performance and responses in three key areas, enhanced innovation; providing science, engineering and technology human resources (HR) and transformation; and creating an effective government science and technology system.

A prime objective of the NSI was to enhance the rate and quality of technology transfer from the science, engineering and technology sector by providing quality HR, effective hard technology transfer mechanisms, and creating more effective and efficient users of technology in the business and government sectors.

The White Paper also set out the institutions to be established to promote the development of a well-functioning NSI. These were to be the national Ministry and DST, the National Advisory Council on Innovation, the NRF, the Innovation Fund, and national research facilities managed by government.

The NRDS is aimed at being a key enabler of economic growth alongside other strategies, such as the HR Development Strategy, the Integrated Manufacturing Strategy and the Strategic Plan for South African Agriculture.

Ten-Year Innovation Plan

The TYIP is aimed at assisting to establish a knowledge-based economy for South Africa, in which the production and dissemination of knowledge lead to economic benefits and enrich all fields of human endeavour.

The missions and platforms under the NRDS were expanded under the TYIP to include grand challenges in space science and technology, energy security, human and social dynamics in development, global change, and the bio-economy.

The responsibility for addressing the grand challenges is spread across many government departments.

The TYIP also set long-term goals based on the grand challenges it identified. They included:

- becoming one of the top three emerging economies in the global pharmaceutical industry, based on innovative use of South Africa's indigenous knowledge and rich biodiversity
- deploying satellites that provide a range of scientific, security and specialised services for all spheres of government, the public and the private sector.
- achieving a 25% share of the global hydrogen and fuel cell market with novel platinum group metal catalysts.
- becoming a world leader in climate science and responding effectively to the multiple challenges associated with global and climate change.
- meeting the 2014 millennium development goal to halve poverty.

The department has set indicators for each of these goals.

National Nanotechnology Strategy

Nanoscience and nanotechnology are the study and application of extremely small things and can be used across all the other science fields, such as chemistry, biology, physics, materials science, and engineering.

Microscopy – the technical field of using microscopes to view samples and objects that cannot be seen with the unaided eye – was a boon to emerging research areas such as nanotechnology. This was aligned with the objectives of the National Nanotechnology Strategy. The growth of microscopy is essential to help government expand its research capabilities in important health- and economy related fields. The NRF has been supporting the microscopy community.

In November 2014, the Minister of Science and Technology officially opened the Centre for Nanotechnology Innovation at Rhodes University in Grahamstown placing the institution at the forefront of international nanotechnology research.

The centre will house new nanotechnology equipment called time of flight-secondary-ion-mass-spectrometer (TOF-SIMS) bought through a R17-million investment from the DST and the NRF.

The centre would become one of the most advanced facilities of its kind in a university environment in South Africa.

The TOF-SIMS is used to examine thin films and provide surface composition of these films. It is also used for the study of surface characteristics of nanoparticles.

The equipment could be used in the fields of pollution treatment, green chemistry, forensic sciences and biotechnology, and could be geared

The Minister of Science and Technology unveiled a R30 million "cleanroom" facility at Mintek's Nanotechnology Innovation Centre in Johannesburg in April 2015. The facility allows for the manufacture of devices that permit the rapid diagnosis of illnesses such as malaria. The department said early diagnosis and treatment of such diseases can help save lives and having the "cleanroom" is a major step towards disease control in South Africa.

The Chinese automotive manufacturer First Automotive Works (FAW), launched its R600-million assembly plant in Zone 2 of the Coega Development Corporation's (CDC) Industrial Development Zone (IDZ) in July 2014, and the plant was opened by President Jacob Zuma. FAW's decision to build the plant in South Africa is significant as it is one of the biggest manufacturing investments by a Chinese entity in the country. It created Chinese investor confidence in South Africa, inspiring further Chinese investments in the country. Chinese manufacturers Powerway Engineering (R127-million) and Powerway Photo Voltaic (R666,6 million) have confirmed their investments in the IDZ, bringing the total sum of Chinese investment in the IDZ to R1,394 billion.

towards energy and sustainable development.

TOF-SIMS could benefit industries such as aerospace, automotive, biomedical, biotechnology, telecommunications, pharmaceuticals, data storage and defence.

The centre is a national facility that would be used by Eastern Cape universities, the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (NMMU); Walter Sisulu University; the University of Fort Hare; the University of KwaZulu-Natal; the University of the Western Cape; the University of Johannesburg; the North West University; as well as other South African institutions, such as the CSIR; Mintek.

It would also aid international researchers from countries such as China, Kuwait and Turkey.

A second major investment in nanoscience in the Eastern Cape would see the NMMU receive an ultra high-resolution transmission electron microscopy facility, making the Eastern Cape a significant nanotechnology hub.

TshepisoSat, South Africa's first nano-satellite, coincidentally took a photograph of Earth, from 600 km in space. It also took a photo of the sun. In November 2013, TshepisoSat (Code name ZA-CUBE1) was successfully launched. TshepisoSat was designed and built by Cape Peninsula University of Technology postgraduate students to monitor space weather. The tiny 1,2 kg cube will travel 6-billion kilometres in space before re-entry into the Earth's atmosphere. The 10-m long antenna deployed in February 2014 and sent radio signals, which assisted research on the ionosphere. Ionosphere density and composition is important for high frequency communications.

National biotechnology Strategy

In January 2014, the DST launched the South African Bio-economy Strategy, positioning bio-innovation as essential to the achievement of government's industrial and social development goals.

This science-based Bio-economy Strategy, which had been approved by Cabinet in November 2013, would replace the National Biotechnology Strategy, which had been in place since 2001. The strategy would create an enabling environment that would allow government departments, industry, venture capital firms and other stakeholders to move forward with initiatives to meet the challenges and embrace the opportunities of the future.

The bio-economy concept is much broader [than that of the biotechnology strategy], looking at the entire value chain in a range of areas of possibility and opportunity, in response to South Africa's priority areas of need.

Through the Bio-economy Strategy, bio-innovation would be used to generate sustainable economic, social and environmental development. The DST was aiming to have biotechnology make up 5% of the country's gross domestic product by 2050.

The strategy focused on three sectors namely agriculture, health and industrial applications and is also closely linked to other policies such as the Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP), the National Development Plan (NDP) and the New Growth Path (NGP).

A draft implementation plan for the strategy was completed by August 2014, after which it was passed through the DST and National Treasury's processes.

There were some regulations that did not support the Bio-economy Strategy that had to be dealt with in such a way that the people of the country were still protected, but without hampering development.

Budget and funding

The DST's budget allocation for 2014/15 was R6,47 billion. The largest portion of the budget, R3,5 billion, was allocated to research and development (RTD). Of this, R1,7 billion is to be spent on research grants and bursaries.

The primary allocations of the R&D infrastructure budget are: R159 million for the scientific equipment category implemented by the NRF through the national equipment and nanotechnology equipment programmes, R105 million towards specialised facilities and R91 million to the national facilities of the NRF. A further R24 million has been made available in the high end infrastructure category for lithium battery development and titanium additive manufacturing laboratories, and a primary titanium pilot plant.

Role players

Academy of Science of South Africa (ASSAf)

ASSAf was inaugurated in May 1996 by the former President of South Africa and patron of the academy, Nelson Mandela. It was formed in response to the need for an academy of science congruent with the dawn of democracy in South Africa – activist in its mission of using science for the benefit of society.

The mandate of the ASSAf encompasses all fields of scientific enquiry and it includes the full diversity of South Africa's scientists. The Parliament of South Africa passed the Academy of Science of South Africa Act, (Act 67 of 2001), which came into operation in May 2002.

ASSAf represents the country in the international community of science academies.

Since its inception, ASSAf has grown from a small, emergent organisation to a well-established academy.

In January 2015, ASSAf launched a consensus study, the State of Green Technologies in South Africa. The overall aim of the study, which was commissioned by the DST, is to document green technologies being used in South Africa; to identify gaps in and opportunities for the use of these technologies; and to make recommendations to promote the growth of green technologies.

Transitioning to a green economy is one of the key imperatives of government, as highlighted in the NDP. The use of green technologies is an integral part of the green economy, making this study both timely and important.

Africa Institute of South Africa

Aisa was first established in 1960 as a non-profit organisation. It is a statutory body following the Africa Institute of South Africa Act, 2001 (Act 68 of 2001).

South Africa and Africa have undergone fundamental changes in the past decade and Aisa has been at the forefront of research and training on African affairs. Through the Aisa campus, an annual training programme that educates students from universities in research methodologies, Aisa has contributed to fostering a new generation of research specialists. Aisa has also been able to produce some of the finest research on contemporary African affairs by having its dedicated and highly qualified researchers conduct field research every year throughout Africa.

This means that all research output is based on first hand empirical evidence.

Aisa has also become involved in community outreach programmes by doing all it can to

In 2014, 25-year-old Mandla Maseko from the district of Mabopane, near Pretoria, became the first black African in space. Maseko spent a week at the Kennedy Space Academy in Florida where he skydived and undertook air combat and G-force training. While there he met and posed for pictures with astronaut Buzz Aldrin, who was the second man ever to set foot on the moon after Neil Armstrong as part of the 1969 Apollo 11 space mission.

provide maps and other resources to underprivileged schools in rural South Africa. Aisa has undertaken to promote knowledge creation as a fundamental part of development and growth for Africa and as such aims to encourage research as a career choice for young people as they leave school.

As Africa changes and development becomes ever more important, especially in the globalised world economy, Aisa will continue to produce research of the highest standard.

By working with the best researchers and guided by the highest standards, Aisa will contribute to development and knowledge creation for all Africa.

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research

The CSIR is one of the leading science and technology research, development and implementation organisations in Africa. The CSIR's main site is in Pretoria, Gauteng, and it is represented in other provinces of South Africa through regional offices. In 2015, the CSIR will be 70 years old.

The generation and application of knowledge reside at the core of the CSIR. This takes place in domains such as biosciences; the built environment; defence, peace, safety and security; materials science and manufacturing; and natural resources and the environment.

Emerging areas of research include science, explored by the CSIR, that could be unique to local circumstances or successful internationally and need to be established for local competitiveness. Examples include nanotechnology, synthetic biology and mobile autonomous intelligent systems.

The CSIR houses specialist research facilities of strategic importance for African science. These include information and communications technology (ICTs); laser technology, and space-related technology.

Research and development activities include intellectual property (IP) management, technology transfer (for commercial gain as well as for social good), knowledge dissemination and impact assessment.

Consulting and analytical services include forensic fire investigations, food and beverage

analysis, environmental testing, engineering forensics, wire rope testing, mechanical testing, fire and explosion tests, sports technology and analysis, and project management.

Human Sciences Research Council

The HSRC was established in 1968 as South Africa's statutory research agency and has grown to become the largest dedicated research institute in the social sciences and humanities in Africa, doing cutting-edge research in areas that are crucial to development.

The council conducts large-scale, policy-relevant, social-scientific research for public sector users, non-governmental organisations and international development agencies.

Research activities and structures are closely aligned with South Africa's national development priorities. The HSRC's integrated research programmes provide single points of entry – complete with a critical mass of researchers – for interdisciplinary and problem-orientated research in the following areas:

- democracy, governance and service delivery
- economic performance and development
- education and skills development
- social aspects of HIV/AIDS, STIs and TB
- human and social development
- population health, health systems and innovation.

The HSRC's mandate is to inform the effective formulation and monitoring of government policy; to evaluate policy implementation; to stimulate public debate through the effective dissemination of research based data and fact-based research results; to foster research collaboration; and to help build research capacity and infrastructure for the human sciences.

National Advisory Council on Innovation

The National Advisory Council on Innovation Act, 1997 (Act 55 of 1997) mandates Naci to advise the Minister of Science and Technology and, through the Minister, the Cabinet, on the role and contribution of innovation (including science and technology (S&T)) in promoting and achieving national objectives. These national objectives include the improvement of the quality of life of South Africans, the promotion of sustainable economic growth and international competitiveness. The advice should be directed at, among other things:

- coordination and stimulation of the NSI
- promotion of cooperation within the NSI
- structuring, governance and coordination of the S&T system
- revision of the innovation policy

- strategies for the promotion of all aspects of technological innovation
- identification of R&D priorities
- funding of the S&T system.

National Research Foundation

As an independent government agency, the NRF promotes and supports research in all fields of knowledge. It also conducts research and provides access to national research facilities. The NRF provides services to the research community, especially at higher education institutions and science councils, with a view to promoting high-level human capital development. The NRF aims to uphold excellence in all its investments in knowledge, people and infrastructure.

The NRF consists of three divisions namely: Research and Innovation Support and Advancement Agency (Risa), which constitutes the research support and promotion agency of the NRF; Saasta, which provides and manages cross-cutting activities that advance science and technology in various communities in South Africa; and the national research facilities that undertake research in specific research fields.

Through Risa, the NRF:

- invests in knowledge, people and infrastructure
- develops the workforce, particularly previously disadvantaged men and women, to help all researchers unlock their full creative potential
- facilitates partnerships and knowledge networks
- supports and provides science and technology information to guide and steer strategic decisions.

Through Saasta, the NRF:

- steers young minds towards careers in science and technology
- interacts with the public on science, engineering and technology issues
- communicates the advances of science and technology to the public.

Through the national research facilities, the NRF:

- provides access to unique technologies, research methods and information

The Department of Science and Technology initiated the Innovation Bridge Technology Showcase and Matchmaking event. Technology-based companies, industry and funding partners, showcased their expertise under one roof. The event was held in Pretoria February 2015, to allow local and international technology-based companies, entrepreneurs and financiers to scout for technology solutions and investment opportunities. The inaugural event included policy dialogues, plenary discussions, technology exhibitions and demonstrations with up to 75 technologies from more than 30 publicly funded organisations.

- provides state-of-the-art research platforms
- offers access to networking opportunities and international collaboration.

The NRF aims to contribute to the knowledge economy in South Africa by attaining at least 1% of global R&D output by 2015.

In April 2015, the NRF and the South African Environmental Observation Network (Saeon) launched the Agulhas System Climate Array, an international oceanographic project, at the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University.

The project was launched in partnership with the (DEA) Department of Environmental Affairs Ocean and Coasts. The aim of the launch was to showcase the benefits of this large monitoring array in terms of climate research and long-term monitoring, and also the value of scientific collaboration at the intergovernmental department level, between universities and science groups and at the international marine science community level.

South African National Space Agency

Sansa was created to promote the use of space and cooperation in space-related activities while fostering research in space science, advancing scientific engineering through the development of South Africa's human capital and providing support to industrial development in space technologies.

The objectives of Sansa are to:

- promote the peaceful use of space
- support the creation of an environment conducive to industrial development in space technology
- foster research in space science, communications, navigation and space physics
- advance scientific, engineering and technological competencies and capabilities through human capital development outreach programmes and infrastructure development
- foster international cooperation in space-related activities.

Sansa continues to provide state-of-the-art ground-station services to many globally recognised space missions, such as the Nasa and Indian Space Research Organisation Mars missions, and Nasa's Orbiting Carbon Observatory-2, which is giving scientists a better idea of how carbon is contributing to climate change, answering important questions about where carbon comes from and where it is stored.

Technology Innovation Agency

The TIA was established with the objective of stimulating and intensifying technological innovation to improve economic growth and the quality of life of all South Africans by developing

In January 2014, Seemahale Telecoms announced that it was ready to start manufacturing its Android smartphones and tablets in South Africa. With the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa and Vodacom's testing under its belt, Seemahale was ready to take orders for its devices and begin manufacturing. Seemahale plans to start out with a five-inch smartphone and 10.1-inch tablet at price points of R2 500 and R3 500 (including VAT) respectively. Once their first two devices were launched, they aim to launch a low-cost four-inch smartphone and a 7.86-inch tablet with a dual-SIM model. The four-inch Android smartphone will cost less than R1 200, but the 7.86-inch tablet's price was unconfirmed at less than R3 000.

and exploiting technological innovations.

Its core business objective is to support the development and commercialisation of competitive technology-based services and products. The agency primarily uses South Africa's S&T base to develop new industries, create sustainable jobs and help diversify the economy. It invests in the following technology sectors: advanced manufacturing, agriculture, industrial biotechnology, health, mining, energy and ICT.

The agency seeks to achieve its mandate by providing financial and non-financial support to its stakeholders, namely science councils, public entities, higher education institutions, private research institutions and entrepreneurs.

Since 2010 TIA has disbursed a total of R1,2 billion on project contracts and grants. The agency has supported close to 6 838 small and medium enterprises in accelerating technical innovation through technology development at a cost of R286 million. The services provided by TIA have enabled the enterprises to be more competitive and productive. The agency has also funded the placement of 501 interns in various sectors, including at offices of technology transfer and in venture capital companies.

National Intellectual Property Management Office

Nipmo aims to ensure that recipients of funding from a government funding agency assess, record and report on the benefit to society of IP emanating from publicly financed research and development. Recipients must protect IP emanating from publicly financed research and development from appropriation and ensure that it is available to the people of South Africa.

A recipient must identify commercialisation opportunities for IP emanating from publicly financed research and development.

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The ARC is the principal agricultural research

institution in South Africa. It conducts fundamental and applied research with partners to generate knowledge, develop human capital, and foster innovation in agriculture by developing technology and disseminating information. It also commercialises research results.

The ARC's functions are carried out through 11 research institutes whose activities are grouped under five divisions:

- field crops (grain and industrial crops)
- horticulture
- animal production and health
- natural resources and engineering
- technology transfer.

The ARC is also responsible for maintaining national assets and undertaking programmes or rendering services that are required from time to time by the department and other stakeholders.

Mintek

Mintek, South Africa's national mineral research organisation, is one of the world's leading technology organisations specialising in mineral processing, extractive metallurgy and related areas. Working closely with industry and other research and development institutions, Mintek provides service testwork, process development and optimisation, consulting and innovative products to clients worldwide.

Mintek is an autonomous statutory organisation, which reports to the Minister of Mineral Resources. About 35% of the annual budget is funded by the State Science Vote, with the balance provided by contract R&D, sales of products and services, technology licensing agreements, and joint-venture private-sector companies. Mintek has about 780 permanent staff members, more than half of whom are scientists, engineers and other technical research and development specialists.

Medical Research Council (MRC)

The MRC is an independent statutory body that coordinates health and medical research activities throughout South Africa. The MRC's objectives are:

- promoting the health and quality of life of the population of South Africa
- performing such functions as may be assigned to the MRC by or under the MRC Act, 1991 (Act 58 of 1991).

The MRC is a science council and therefore also a science, engineering and technology institution.

Council for Geoscience

The CGS is the legal successor of the Geological Survey of South Africa, which was formed in

1912 by the amalgamation of three former surveys, the oldest of which – the Geological Commission of the Cape of Good Hope – was founded in 1895.

South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)

The SABS is a statutory body that operates as the national institution for the promotion and maintenance of standardisation and quality in connection with commodities and the rendering of services. The SABS:

- publishes national standards, which it prepares through a consensus process in technical committees
- provides information on national standards of all countries as well as international standards
- tests and certifies products and services to standards
- develops technical regulations (compulsory specifications) based on national standards, and monitors and enforces compliance with such technical regulations
- monitors and enforces legal metrology legislation
- promotes design excellence
- provides training on aspects of standardisation.

To maximise its service delivery to the industries it serves, the SABS aligned its activities with seven different industry sectors, each housing the whole range of the SABS services pertinent to a particular industry.

This change ensures easy access to products, faster reaction and turnaround times, and the creation of centres of knowledge excellence that will be easily available to clients.

The seven industry sectors are:

- chemicals
- electrotechnical
- food and health
- mechanical and materials
- mining and minerals
- services
- transportation.

Eskom

Eskom's Technology Services International group is a multidisciplinary industrial laboratory and consulting organisation. It undertakes testing,

In January 2015, South Africa hosted a capacity-building programme on minerals processing and beneficiation that will benefit countries belonging to the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM). The DST, in collaboration with the NAM Science and Technology Centre, initiated a training programme to address the skills gap in the minerals beneficiation value chain in the NAM member countries.

investigation studies, project management, engineering services and applied research for Eskom and other customers.

Sasol

Sasol's culture of innovation began in the 1950s when it developed its unique blend of coal gasification and Fischer-Tröpsch (FT) technology for its original coal-to-liquids operations at Sasolburg. It has since evolved these operations into fully fledged R&D facilities that form the heart of the Sasol technology R&D group.

Focused FT R&D in the 1980s and 1990s led to the development of the low temperature FT Sasol Slurry Phase process used at Sasolburg, and the high-temperature Sasol Advanced Synthol™ process used at Secunda.

Sasol Technology's Fuels Technology Division carries out work concerning fuels, lubricants, heating-fuel and road-binding material, research and development, and new product formulation and testing.

In addition, Sasol opened the Sasol Fuels Application Centre (SFAC), a state-of-the-art engine and exhaust emission testing and research facility in Cape Town. The SFAC enables Sasol to conduct sea-level engine and emission tests in line with international standards.

ArcelorMittal

ArcelorMittal is a global steel-maker, with an industrial presence in 27 countries. It is the leader in all major global markets, including automotive, construction, household appliances and packaging. The group is a leader in research and development, and technology, holds sizeable captive supplies of raw material, and operates extensive distribution networks.

National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)

The NHLS has 265 laboratories and employs about 6 500 people. Their activities comprise diagnostic laboratory services; research, teaching and training; and producing sera for anti venom, reagents and media. All laboratories provide laboratory diagnostic services to the Department of Health, provincial hospitals, local authorities and medical practitioners.

Research conducted by the NHLS covers a wide spectrum of activities in all pathology disciplines. Grants in support of research are made by the MRC, the Cancer Association of South Africa, the South African Sugar Association, Poliomyelitis Research Foundation, pharmaceutical companies, private donors and

Preliminary estimates for the the first phase of the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) radio telescope in the Karoo put the potential net foreign inflow into South Africa, for SKA phase one only, at close to R18 billion over the lifetime of the project. Construction is expected to begin in 2017 and conclude in 2024, at an estimated cost to the 10 SKA member countries of €1.5-billion. South Africa, meanwhile, has begun erecting the 64 antennas that will make up the MeerKAT radio telescope, the country's precursor to the SKA, at the SKA South Africa site outside Carnarvon in the Northern Cape.

a number of overseas institutions.

A large part of the research programme is financed by the NHLS itself from the earnings of its laboratory services.

Bureau for Economic Research (BER)

The BER at the University of Stellenbosch, in the Western Cape, is an independent economic research organisation. It renders a service to organisations ranging from small one-person businesses to policy makers at the highest level of government.

National Institute for Tropical Diseases

The National Institute for Tropical Diseases in Tzaneen, Limpopo, is responsible for the ongoing assessment of malaria-control programmes carried out by various authorities in South Africa.

Control methods are assessed and recommendations are made to the appropriate authorities regarding equipment, insecticide usage and application. A malaria-reference service is also provided. Malaria tests are carried out by the institute, and statistical analysis of data pertaining to the programme is undertaken.

Institute for Economic Research on Innovation (Ieri)

Ieri was established as a public-good research organisation with a core competence in the analysis of systems of innovation. Its mandate is to provide research, capacity-building and

community engagement in this field of study. Its tasks involve:

- conducting research into the political economy and policy dimensions of innovation and development
- contributing thought-leadership on the relationship between knowledge and development across economic, social and political domains
- building capabilities and competencies in the understanding of the political economy and policy dimensions of innovation and development
- focusing across local, provincial, national, regional and international geographies.

Institute for Security Studies (ISS)

The ISS works towards a stable and peaceful Africa characterised by sustainable development, human rights, the rule of law, democracy, collaborative security and gender mainstreaming.

The ISS realises this vision by:

- undertaking applied research, training and capacity-building
- working collaboratively with others
- facilitating and supporting policy formulation
- monitoring trends and policy implementation
- collecting, interpreting and disseminating information
- networking at national, regional and international levels.

South Africa's National Energy Development Institute (Sanedi)

The DST and the Department of Energy are joint custodians of Sanedi and assist in providing political and strategic focus for the company.

The institute is entrusted with the coordination and undertaking of public interest energy research, development and demonstration.

As such, it is responsible for enabling and implementing the energy technology roadmaps, which support long-term energy policies developed by the Department of Energy.

Safety in Mines Research Advisory Committee

The activities of the Safety in Mines Research Advisory Committee are aimed at advancing the safety of workers employed in South African mines.

The committee is a statutory tripartite subcommittee of the Mine Health and Safety Council.

It has a permanent research-management office managing the rock engineering, engineering and mine occupational health fields of research.

National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF)

The NARF coordinates agricultural research and development in the national agricultural research system.

Efforts are made to ensure that the bulk of research serves the needs of small-scale producers.

Research initiatives have been integrated into the various industries in line with the overall objectives of each agricultural sector.

Water Research Commission (WRC)

The WRC was established in 1971 following a period of water shortages. The WRC is responsible for:

- promoting coordination, cooperation and communication in the area of water research and development

In June 2014, a Cape Town astronomer, Roger Deane, and a team of South African-funded researchers have discovered a trio of closely orbiting supermassive black holes in a galaxy more than 4-billion light years away - confirmation of the country's fast-growing expertise in the field of radio astronomy. Square Kilometre Array. South Africa funded the research leading to the discovery, which has been published in the scientific journal *Nature*.

- establishing water-research needs and priorities
- stimulating and funding water research according to priority
- promoting the effective transfer of IT
- enhancing knowledge and capacity-building within the water sector.

The WRC focuses on five key strategic areas:

- water-resource management
- water-linked ecosystems
- water-use and waste management
- water use in agriculture
- water-centred knowledge.

The main areas of research are surface hydrology, groundwater, hydrometeorology, agricultural water use, water pollution, municipal effluents, industrial water and effluents, drinking water, membrane technology, water ecosystems, hydraulics, mine-water management, water policy, developing communities and the transfer of technology.

Institute for Water Research

The Institute for Water Research is a multidisciplinary research department of Rhodes University in the Eastern Cape. Its main objective is to contribute to sustainable water-resource management in southern Africa.

This is achieved through scientific research into the structure and function of aquatic ecosystems; the application of research through specialist consultancy services; tertiary-level teaching and training; capacity-building for community development; and service on national and international management and policy-making committees.

South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi)

The Sanbi's biodiversity research comprises collaborative programmes set up to promote and catalyse knowledge about biodiversity.

The broad scope of research includes the origins, composition and functioning of biodiversity, its conservation and sustainable use, ecosystem services, and biodiversity responses to major drivers such as climate change. The research is organised into three divisions:

- Applied Biodiversity Research
- Biosystematics Research and Biodiversity Collections
- Climate Change and Bio-Adaptation.

Coastal and marine research

The NRF supports marine and coastal research in partnership with the DEA and the South African Network for Coastal and Oceanic Research.

The Chief Directorate: Marine and Coastal Management advises on the use of marine living resources and the conservation of marine ecosystems, by conducting and supporting relevant multidisciplinary scientific research and by monitoring the marine environment.

Sustainable use and the need to preserve future options in using marine ecosystems and their resources are guiding objectives in the research and advice provided by the chief directorate.

National research facilities

The seven national research facilities managed by the NRF are clustered on the basis of their areas of specialisation aligned to the science missions of the NRDS.

South African Astronomical Observatory (SAAO)

SAAO is the national centre for optical and infrared astronomy in South Africa. Its prime function is to conduct fundamental research in astronomy and astrophysics by providing a world-class facility and by promoting astronomy and astrophysics in southern Africa.

The SAAO contributes to South Africa's future development by creating and disseminating scientific knowledge; providing research infrastructure; and providing an interface between science and society. It is also responsible for managing the operations of the South African Large Telescope (Salt).

Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory (HartRAO)

The HartRAO is a radio astronomy observatory located in a natural bowl of hills at Hartebeesthoek just south of the Magaliesberg mountain range, Gauteng. It is the only major radio astronomy observatory in Africa.

HartRAO is mainly used for continuum radiometry, spectroscopy, pulsar timing and interferometry but also works together with radio telescopes on other continents as well as the orbiting Highly Advanced Laboratory for Communications and Astronomy radio telescope to perform very long baseline interferometry.

South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (Saiab)

Situated in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape, Saiab is an internationally recognised centre for the study of aquatic biodiversity.

Saiab runs a number of large, interdisciplinary and multi-institutional programmes.

The research facility is directed at fish taxonomy, systematics, genetics, phylogeography, biology, ecology, ethology, conservation, and fisheries management.

South African Environmental Observation Network

Saeon maintains environmental observatories, field stations or sites linked by an information management network to serve as research and education platforms for long-term studies of ecosystems that will provide for incremental advances in our understanding of ecosystems and our ability to detect, predict and react to environmental change.

The core research programme distinguishes between anthropogenic and natural change as well as unravels the relations between social and ecosystem change.

National Zoological Gardens (NZG)

Inspired conservation of wildlife through understanding, knowledge and connection, as the vision and mission statements, reflect a commitment by the NZG to bridge the gap between nature and humanity.

This is done by providing a platform on which humanity can gain knowledge about, cultivate a better understanding of and connect with nature in general, but wildlife in particular.

iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences

iThemba LABS is a multidisciplinary facility aiming to become the leading African organisation for research, training and expertise in accelerator-based science and technologies.

The infrastructure is based at two sites, namely in the Western Cape, on Old Faure Road, and in Gauteng, on the campus of the University of the Witwatersrand.

iThemba LABS is the only facility in Africa that provides accelerator-based radio isotopes for nuclear medicine, and also the only facility in Africa for specialist cancer treatment using protons and neutrons. This treatment is offered to those who have cancer that do not respond to traditional treatments like chemotherapy and radiotherapy. Patients referred by State hospitals are treated free of charge, and over the past 25 years, 1 800 patients have been treated.

Programmes and projects Alternative energy solution

In November 2014, the DST officially launched

the innovative 2,5 kW hydrogen fuel cell power generator prototype unit at the University of the Western Cape (UWC).

The generator demonstrates South Africa's innovative capabilities in the emerging hydrogen and fuel cell technologies space.

The prototype was developed by the HySA Systems Integration and Technology Validation Centre of Competence (HySA Systems) in collaboration with Hot Platinum (Pty Ltd), a local company involved in power management and control electronics.

The partners have been testing the unit at the Cape Flats Nature Reserve, on the UWC campus in Bellville.

All electrical power used in the reserve is generated from a bank of hydrogen cylinders, instead of from the national grid. The cylinders release hydrogen in the presence of a platinum catalyst (mined in North West) and a series of proton exchange membranes.

The hydrogen fuel cell power generator unit uses hydrogen to generate electrical power, with water vapour the only by-product. In this way electricity is produced in an environmentally friendly way without pollution or noise.

Furthermore, hydrogen can be used to produce electricity in remote areas that do not have access to the national grid. The decentralisation of energy generation by using hydrogen fuel cell systems is one of the few possibilities for providing efficient and cost-effective access to electricity.

The South African Government has rolled out several energy and energy-efficiency programmes and initiatives, such as HySA, with an emphasis on alternative energy opportunities and off-grid renewable energy solutions.

South Africa is one of the primary suppliers of platinum group metals to the world, but not much beneficiation is being done in the country.

The rise of hydrogen fuel cell technologies in various markets is about to change the global platinum landscape with the anticipated increase in platinum usage in this emerging market. There were significant opportunities for South Africa to partner with international fuel cell producers. These partnerships have the potential to make the country an established hub for the production of fuel cell components.

Research, Development and Innovation (RDI)

This is at the heart of the department's efforts to drive innovation in scientifically strategic areas. The programme has five subprogrammes:

- space science and technology
- hydrogen and energy
- biotechnology and health innovation

- innovation planning and instruments
- radio astronomy advances.

Space science and technology Square Kilometre Array

The SKA Project could act as a catalyst for science, technology and engineering business opportunities, jobs and innovation, and has the potential to put Africa on the map as a world Big Data and Analytics Hub.

The multi-billion rand SKA, to be hosted in South Africa and Australia, will extend into eight African countries and will be the world's biggest telescope. It is also one of the biggest-ever scientific projects and multinational collaborations in the name of science.

The radio telescope should be operationally mature by 2020.

With thousands of linked radio wave receptors in Australia and in southern Africa, the SKA radio telescope will constantly scan space and feed the data to astronomers around the world.

The amounts of data being collected and transmitted by the SKA in a single day would take nearly two million years to play back on an iPod. This means the project requires supercomputing power and Big Data Management and Analytics capabilities on an unprecedented scale. The SKA is working with the world's most significant ICT powerhouses on the project.

One aspect of the project will see the Netherlands Institute for Radio Astronomy and IBM collaborating to research extremely fast, but low-power exascale computer systems, data transport and storage processes, and streaming analytics that will be required to read, store and analyse all the raw data that will be collected daily.

The SKA project will also have unprecedented data connectivity needs. Meeting the advanced technological and engineering needs of this project will result in significant local skills development, revolutionise science and technology research and enable innovative new businesses and employment in the science, technology and engineering fields.

Aside from the benefits to African science, Big Data capabilities could be the biggest spin-off from the SKA project.

The innovations, skills development and commercial potential emerging as a result of the project are huge. The potential is not just academic – the taxpayer-funded IP is developed to a point where it is ready to become commercialised and benefit the economy.

Human capital development is already taking place as a result of the SKA project, with bursaries and scholarships being granted to allow students to learn the necessary cutting-edge

science, technology, maths and engineering skills to support the project. Because the SKA is a long-term project over decades, its effect will increase.

Going forward, there will be a strong drive to leverage the SKA as a spearhead for other programmes – including next generation high performance computing challenges and Big Data challenges.

Since 2005, the African SKA Human Capital Development Programme has awarded close to 400 grants for studies in astronomy and engineering from undergraduate to post-doctoral level, while also investing in training programmes for technicians.

Astronomy courses are also being implemented in other African countries, including Kenya, Mozambique, Madagascar and Mauritius. Career opportunities will increase substantially and new business opportunities will emerge.

The project has already changed the world's view of South Africa's scientific capability.

This project is a once-in-a-lifetime combination of science and engineering in South Africa.

In 2014, R647 million was allocated for the SKA Project. Preparing for the huge amounts of data produced by the MeerKAT, the SKA is also preparing South Africa to play a leading role in Big Data.

Many students have been awarded grants by the SKA Project. The success rate of the programme has been very high, with 36 doctoral degrees, 95 master's degrees, 59 honours degrees, 58 BSc and BEng degrees and 16 national diplomas awarded. The SKA is also supporting the training of artisans, and has awarded 42 bursaries to students from the Karoo, 16 of whom are already employed by SKA South Africa.

Space science

Through Sansa, the country's capacity to design, build, maintain and possibly even launch satellites is being developed. As part of the four-country African Resource Management Constellation, South Africa has begun work on the ZA-ARMC1 satellite; R232 million has been budgeted over the next three years for this project. This satellite will enhance Africa's ability to monitor and manage its precious natural resources.

In January 2014, the DST paid the second tranche of the purchase price for satellite company Sunspace, bringing to an end the embattled company's ordeal to pay creditors. The department offered to buy Sunspace for R55 million, and paid the first R27,5 million instalment in August 2013. The department's purchase of the satellite manufacturing company

was the only viable solution after it hit a difficult period due to a lack of government support. Sunspace is involved in low-earth orbit satellite development, design, building, integration, testing and commissioning.

Sunspace's employees moved to Denel, which has created a unit to host the intellectual property and capabilities, based in Stellenbosch.

Denel has since created Spaceteq, incorporating Sunspace, which aims to develop a multispectral, high-resolution Earth-observation satellite called EO-Sat1, for operation by 2017.

The DST's bid for Sunspace was agreed to by the majority of stakeholders who voted on the business rescue proposal, a situation the satellite maker found itself in as it was unable to pay creditors, and has not paid staff for more than two years.

Information and communications technology

The DST is leading the implementation of the national ICT RDI Strategy. Its main purpose is to create an enabling environment for the advancement of ICT RDI in South Africa.

South Africa's research capacity in the ICT field has become a strong competitive advantage.

The ICT RDI Strategy aims to achieve a marked increase in advanced human resource capacity, promote world-class research and build robust innovation chains for the creation of new high-tech ICT small enterprises. Implementing the strategy demands partnership involving government, the private sector, higher education institutions and science councils.

The Meraka Institute of the CSIR manages and coordinates the implementation of the strategy. An important envisaged outcome is a vibrant, sustainable and innovative indigenous ICT industry that addresses a significant portion of the country's ICT needs and attracts investments by overseas-based multinational ICT corporations in RDI and manufacturing facilities and resources in South Africa.

The Centre for High-Performance Computing (CHPC), Sanren and the Very Large Databases are the three pillars of cyber-infrastructure that the DST supports. Hosted by the University of Cape Town and managed by the CSIR's Meraka Institute, the CHPC was the first of its kind in South Africa and is making scientific supercomputing a reality for South Africa.

A major project for Sanren is the national backbone network, which aims to connect all major metros in the country with a 10 gigabyte per second link. On completion, the network will reach about 200 sites. The overall network architecture will consist of a national backbone

connecting Durban, Pretoria, Johannesburg, Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Port Elizabeth and East London; with metro rings in Johannesburg, Tshwane, eThekweni and Cape Town.

Indigenous knowledge systems (IKS)

The Indigenous Knowledge System Policy serves as a guide for the recognition, understanding, integration and promotion of South Africa's wealth of indigenous knowledge resources.

One of the areas of action identified by the policy is the protection of indigenous knowledge and the holders of such knowledge against exploitation.

This includes ensuring that communities receive fair and sustained recognition and, where appropriate, financial remuneration for the use of this knowledge

The indigenous knowledge of many communities embodies a deeply spiritualised and ancient relationship with the Earth's systems and cycles.

Traditional songs and languages, clothing, architecture, foods, motifs, daily rituals and mythological epics contain local survival information.

Moreover, the diversity of indigenous cultures provides unique insights into how to live harmoniously within nature.

By sharing indigenous stories of vulnerability and adaptation, people learn how communities share ideas on how ancestral wisdom is being incorporated into climatic adaptation strategies.

By cherishing the value of indigenous knowledge, people can discover how best to adapt to a changing climate.

The DST has three IKS priorities:

- The development of a regulatory environment for the protection of IKS.
- The development of the National Recordal System for the collection, recording, documenting, storage and management and dissemination of IKS in communities in the nine provinces of the country. Until orally transmitted and rapidly disappearing indigenous knowledge is recorded, it will be difficult to protect. The National Recordal System is the largest fingerprint initiative of the region to document and record indigenous knowledge.
- Applied research, specifically bio-prospecting activities. An example would be how, with funding from the NRF, the MRC is developing the Moritela Tshwane Tea Project near Zeerust in North West, with the aim of producing a nutritional herbal tea for the commercial market.

The DST has put in place validation systems within its science system to ensure that indigenous knowledge products are safe and backed by the best science in the world.

To give further impetus to these critical initiatives, the department has set aside a dedicated fund to support research into indigenous knowledge.

Two indigenous knowledge research chairs have been awarded as part of the country's Research Chairs Initiative (SARChI).

The DST also established indigenous knowledge studies CoEs at the universities. The CoEs will play a defining role in generating highly qualified HR capacity in IKS.

Private-sector involvement

South Africa's gold-mining industry works at deeper levels and under more difficult conditions than any other mining industry in the world.

The research into gold mining conducted by the CSIR's Mining Technology Group is concerned primarily with ensuring the health and safety of the workforce.

It includes those working in the areas of rock engineering and the underground environment.

Mining Technology's coal-mining research takes place on a smaller scale than that of gold mining, because the coal-mining industry is able to make use of various developments overseas.

Areas in which research is undertaken include strata control, mining, maximising the extraction of coal, and the underground environment.

Research is also carried out by a large number of industrial companies with facilities to meet their specific needs.

The more important ones are the:

- Anglo American Corporation of South Africa (applied metallurgy, processing of precious metals, base metals and coal)
- Agricura (synthesis and testing of veterinary remedies, insecticides, herbicides and entomology)
- Cullinan Holdings (refractories and electrical porcelain)
- De Beers Industrial Diamond Division (manufacturing and application of synthetic diamonds and other super-hard material)
- Johannesburg Consolidated Investment Company (metallurgy, mineralogy, chemistry and chemical engineering)
- National Chemical Products (chemistry, microbiology and animal nutrition)
- Metal Box Company of South Africa (corrosion mechanisms and microbiology)
- Tellumat (develops electronic instruments)
- Rembrandt Group (develops and improves tobacco and liquor products)
- South African Pulp and Paper Industries (wood technology, paper manufacturing and water treatment)
- Standard Telephones and Cables South Africa (long-distance transmission of information and lightning protection).

Natural-resource development

South Africa's fluorspar chemicals sector has enormous economic potential. The DST has implemented a fluoro-chemicals development programme targeting human-capital development, new business formation and novel processes and products. The department secured a commitment of R60 million for the period 2013 to 2015 from the competitiveness fund. By 2014, additional 100 companies were processing products.

Over the next three years, the department will allocate more than R100 million to the titanium initiative, R50 million of which will come from the economic competitiveness fund.

Human-capital development

The DST's Human-Capital and Science Platforms Subprogramme conceptualises, formulates and implements programmes aimed at developing and renewing science, engineering and technology human capital to promote knowledge generation, protection and exploitation.

South African universities train more and more scientists each year, with whose help the country will be able to spend R45 billion on research and development by 2014, thus reaching its target for gross expenditure on research and development of 1,5% of GDP.

Food security and access to clean water remain among government's top priorities – the department is therefore also focusing on using science and technology to ensure that existing water supplies are clean and is playing an active role in ensuring food security into the future.

To this end, seven of the 60 new research chairs initiated by the department will serve the areas of rural development, food security and land reform, bringing the total of such chairs to 10.

International cooperation

The DST is not only entrusted with the overall coordination of national research and innovation initiatives in South Africa, but is also responsible for overseeing and facilitating South Africa's international scientific and technological cooperation.

The International Cooperation and Resources Programme of the department is tasked with facilitating and nurturing bilateral scientific cooperation with countries in Africa, Europe, the Americas and Asia.

The same programme nurtures multilateral scientific cooperation with the African Union, the UN system, donor agencies and foundations, global research infra-structure projects, and

multinational companies, as well as focused strategic partnerships, such as with the European Union (EU).

The department has three international offices, located at South Africa's diplomatic missions in Tokyo, Moscow and Brussels, dedicated to promoting cooperation with Japan, the Russian Federation and the EU.

The DST has also seconded an official to the secretariat of the SADC in Gaborone, Botswana.

Many of South Africa's national science councils or other public-funded research and technology organisations also have dedicated teams working on international cooperation. These include the NRF, which is responsible for the implementation of international science and technology cooperation agreements.

In February 2014, the DST hosted the first Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS) science, technology and innovation (STI) Ministerial meeting, in Kleinmond, in the Western Cape.

During the BRICS STI meeting the Ministers identified and discussed mutual interests and future directions of cooperation in STI within the framework of BRICS. This was aimed at enhancing the ability of each country to address the challenges of global competitiveness and leadership in frontier sciences and new technologies. It also promotes equitable growth and sustainable development through strategic cooperation.

The BRICS Ministers tabled a memorandum of understanding (MoU). The MoU strengthened cooperation between the five countries in STI. The MoU also addressed common global and regional socio-economic challenges through appropriate funding and investment instruments, using shared experiences and complementarities; the co-generation of new knowledge and innovative products; services and processes; and promoting joint BRICS partnerships with other strategic actors in the developing world.

A visit to the SKA site in Carnarvon, where the 64-dish MeerKAT radio telescope – the precursor to the SKA – was being constructed, was also included in the agenda for the Ministerial meeting.

African Network on Drugs and Diagnostics Innovation (Andi)

Andi is based in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia, at the UN offices of the Economic Commission for Africa. Its board agreed that five regional hubs were to be created to support regional research initiatives, with South Africa offering to host the southern hub.

Andi evaluated African research initiatives on

drugs and diagnostics, and identified 35 CoEs throughout Africa that were to receive priority attention. Fifteen of these are in South Africa.

All the centres are tasked with researching responses to the most intractable health burdens of the continent, from malaria and tuberculosis to river blindness. Many of these are diseases of the poor and invisible. Their researchers do not receive funding or intellectual support from established agencies – Andi's aim is to reverse this.

It provides support to innovation in quality water provision that is community-led and -based through various agencies. It supported the development and use of new energy-efficient and attractive construction materials through the CSIR-led infrastructure innovation programme – 410 houses were built in Kleinmond, creating an integrated suburb.

It supports rural-based poverty alleviation initiatives in Limpopo, the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal. Another facet of Andi is the Ketlaphela/Lonza initiative that built a plant to manufacture active pharmaceutical ingredients for antiretroviral (ARV) production.

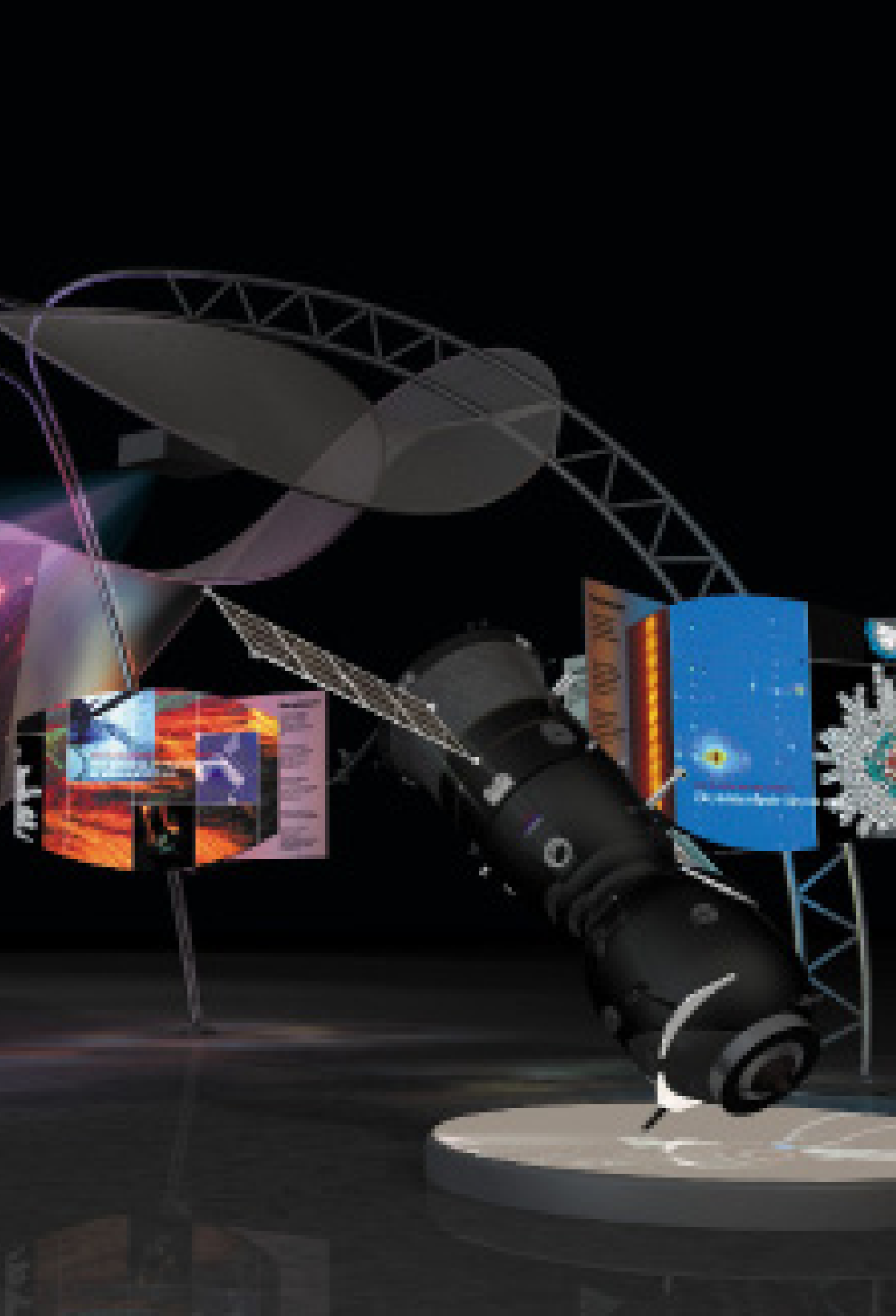
The departments of science and technology, trade and industry, economic development and health collaborated on this initiative to secure a significant proportion of the ARV market for local producers.

Women in Science Awards

Top South African women scientists were honoured at the Women in Science Awards ceremony in Johannesburg in August 2014. The DST hosts these awards annually to reward outstanding female scientists and researchers, and encourage younger women to follow their example. The top awards went to:

- Prof. Priscilla Baker – Winner in the Distinguished Women Scientists Category in Physical and Engineering Sciences.
- Prof. Marina Rautenbach Baker – Winner in the Distinguished Women Scientists Category in Physical and Engineering Sciences.
- Prof. Jeanet Conradie Baker – Runner-up in the Distinguished Women Scientists Category in Physical and Engineering Sciences.
- Professor Leila Patel – Winner in the Humanities and Social Sciences category.
- Professor Marie Poggenpoel – Winner in the Humanities and Social Sciences category.
- Professor Naydene de Lange – Runner-up in the Humanities and Social Sciences category.
- Ms Thompho Gaoshebe awarded Fellowship in the Master's Degree Category.
- Ms Caroline Pule awarded a Fellowship in the Doctoral Degree Category.

- Ms Mpho Ivy Raborife awarded a Fellowship in the Doctoral Degree Category.
- Ms Kwezikazi Mkentane awarded a Fellowship in the Doctoral Degree Category.
- Ms Cynthia Joan Henley-Smith awarded a Fellowship in the Doctoral Degree Category Indigenous Knowledge Systems.
- Theresa Beelders awarded a Fellowship in the Doctoral Degree Category Indigenous Knowledge Systems.
- Dr Puleng Segalo – Winner in the Distinguished Young Women Scientists Category in Human and Social Sciences.
- Professor Matseliso Mokhele – First runner-up in the Distinguished Young Women Scientists Category in Human and Social Sciences.
- Professor Petro du Preez – Second runner-up in the Distinguished Young Women Scientists Category in Human and Social Sciences.
- Dr Nosipho Moloto – Winner in the Distinguished Young Women Scientists Category in Physical and Engineering Sciences.
- Ms Lungile Sitole awarded a Fellowship in the Doctoral Degree Category.
- Ms Kgothatso Nhlengetwa awarded a Fellowship in the Master's Degree Category.
- Ms Nosipho Dlamini awarded a Fellowship in the Master's Degree Category Indigenous Knowledge Systems.
- Ms Jinal Nomathemba Bhiman, awarded Fellowship in the Doctoral Degree Category.
- Ms Faatimah Mansoor awarded Tata Scholarships in the category Master's Degree.
- Ms Anna Hlabe awarded Tata Scholarships in the category Master's Degree.
- Ms Maletsabisa Tšabi Molapo Mampholo awarded Tata Scholarships in the category Doctoral Degree.
- Fortunate Nonhlanhla Yende-Zuma awarded Tata Scholarships in the category Doctoral Degree.
- Ms Beverly Mmakatane Mampholo awarded Tata Scholarships in the category Doctoral Degree.
- Ms Grace Ngubeni awarded Tata Scholarships in the category Masters Degree.
- Prof. Genevieve Langdon – First runner-up in the Distinguished Young Women Scientist





The strategic goals for the Department of Social Development (DSD) are to:

- review and reform social welfare services and financing
- improve and expand early childhood development provision
- deepen social assistance and extend the scope of the contributory social security system
- enhance the capabilities of communities to achieve sustainable livelihoods and household food security
- strengthen coordination, integration, planning, monitoring and evaluation of services. South Africa has made good progress in building social cohesion and promoting a new single national identity. The biggest barrier to increasing social cohesion is the remaining inequality in society, which needs to be attended to.

More than half of all households in South Africa benefit from government's social assistance programme.

Comprehensive social security alleviates and reduces poverty, vulnerability, social exclusion and inequality through a comprehensive social protection system.

Empowering young and old people, those with disabilities as well as women in particular, helps rebuild families and communities.

Welfare services create and provide social protection to the most vulnerable of society through the delivery of social welfare services via provincial government and non-profit organisation (NPO) structures.

Budget

A total of R113 billion (93%) of the DSD R120 billion budget went towards the payment of social grants.

The social assistance budget has increased by an average of 11% a year since 2008/09, in part due to the extension of the child support grant to the age of 18.

Legislation and frameworks

The department derives its mandate from the following legislation:

- Advisory Board on Social Development Act, 2001 (Act 3 of 2001)
- Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005)
- Children's Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 41 of 2007)
- Fund-Raising Act, 1978 (Act 107 of 1978)
- Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002)
- National Welfare Act, 1978 (Act 100 of 1978)
- National Development Agency (NDA) Act, 1998 (Act 108 of 1998)

Social Development

- NPO Act, 1997 (Act 71 of 1997)
- Older Persons Act, 2006 (Act 13 of 2006)
- Prevention and Treatment of Drug Dependency Act, 1992 (Act 20 of 1992)
- Prevention of and Treatment for Substance Abuse Act, 2008 (Act 70 of 2008)
- Probation Services Act, 1991 (Act 116 of 1991)
- South African Social Security Agency (Sassa) Act, 2004 (Act 9 of 2004)
- Social Assistance Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 6 of 2008)
- Social Service Professions Act, 1978 (Act 110 of 1978). The Act also provides for the appointment of the Independent Tribunal in a way to be prescribed by regulation, and contains a number of technical amendments and corrections.

• In terms of the Social Assistance Amendment Act, 2010 (Act 5 of 2010), beneficiaries and other applicants may now ask Sassa to reconsider the relevant decision before appealing to the tribunal. All applications for appeal must now show that they have gone through the reconsideration process at Sassa.

In March 2014, the Women Empowerment and Gender Equality Bill was passed in the National Assembly. The Bill calls for the progressive realisation of at least 50% representation of women in decision-making structures. It also aims at improving access to education, training and skills development. The Bill promotes and protects women's reproductive health, and eliminates discrimination and harmful practices, including gender-based violence..

National Family Policy

The DSD is tasked with implementing the National Family Policy and provides training in family-preservation services, marriage preparation and enrichment, parenting/primary care-giving and families in crisis to service providers in the area of family services.

The *Green Paper on Families* emphasises the need for all to build strong families that protect the most vulnerable members of society.

The purpose of the Green Paper is to provide a platform for all South Africans to engage and exchange views on how to build stable families.

It also addresses some of the challenges faced by individuals in families, including the abuse of women and children, the elderly as well as people with disabilities.

Child care legislation

The Children's Act of 2005 sets out principles relating to the care and protection of children; defines parental responsibilities and rights;

and provides for matters such as children's courts, adoption, child abduction and surrogate motherhood.

The Act also:

- gives effect to certain rights of children as contained in the Constitution
- provides for the issuing of contribution orders
- provides for intercountry adoption
- gives effect to the Hague Convention on Intercountry Adoption
- prohibits child abduction and gives effect to the Hague Convention on International Child Abduction
- recognises new offences relating to children
- provides for matters relating to the trafficking of children and the implementation of the relevant protocol.

The Children's Act of 2005 provides for the establishment of the National Child Protection Register that records all people found unsuitable to work with children.

In terms of this law, child-care facilities, including welfare organisations offering foster care and adoption, are able to check prospective employees, foster parents and adoptive parents against the register.

The register is not open to the public and all requests for information must be directed to the DSD.

The Children's Amendment Act of 2007 provides for:

- the partial care of children
- early childhood development (ECD)
- protection of children
- prevention and early-intervention services
- children in alternative care
- foster care
- child and youth care centres, shelters and drop-in centres
- new offences relating to children
- the plight of child-headed households
- respect for parental rights by providing that no person may take or send a South African child out of the country without the consent of the parents or guardian
- the discipline of children.

The national guidelines to protect and care for children include the Constitution, the Child Care Act, 1983 (Act 74 of 1983), as amended, the *White Paper for Social Welfare (1997)* and the Children's Act of 2005, as amended.

Section 137 of the Children's Act of 2005, proposes new protection measures for child-headed households.

This section defines children from child-headed households, provides for appointing an adult to supervise a child-headed household and allows children in child-headed households

to access social grants and other material assistance.

Role players

Ministry of Women

The Ministry of Women is situated in The Presidency. Its mandate is to lead, coordinate and oversee the transformation agenda on women's socio-economic empowerment, rights and equality.

National Development Agency

The NDA is a public entity, listed under Schedule 3A of the Public Finance Management Act, (PFMA) 1999 (Act 1 of 1999). Its mandates are to:

- contribute towards the eradication of poverty and its causes by granting funds to civil-society organisations (CSOs)
- implement development projects in poor communities
- strengthen the institutional capacity of CSOs that provide services to poor communities
- promote consultation, dialogue and sharing of development experience between CSOs and relevant organs of State
- debate development policy
- undertake research and publication aimed at providing the basis for development policy.

The NDA supports the work of civil society in key areas of concern.

It is an important partner in the department's efforts to promote ECD by using its grants to strengthen the capacities of ECD community-service organisations, which support the department's efforts to reduce violence against women and children by providing key support to the gender-based violence sector.

NDA programmes include grant funding, capacity-building and research, policy dialogue and impact assessment.

Capacity-building interventions are geared towards ensuring that recipients of grant funding are not only given money to start and run their projects, but that they are empowered with the necessary skills to ensure sustainability.

The NDA has established the Programme Management Unit, which is responsible for offering project management services to private and public-sector stakeholders who wish to fund poverty-eradication projects.

Particular emphasis is placed on those in the NDA's primary areas of focus, namely food security, ECD, enterprise development and income generation programmes.

South African Social Security Agency

Sassa's core business is to administer,

finance and pay social security transfers. The agency is required to:

- develop and implement policies, programmes, standard operating procedures and systems for an efficient and effective social assistance benefits administration system
- deliver innovative and cost-effective services to beneficiaries and potential beneficiaries through multiple access channels
- pay the right grant to the right person at the right time and place.

Sassa ensures the provision of comprehensive social security services against vulnerability and poverty within the constitutional and legislative framework.

The agency's key functions include the effective management, administration and payment of social assistance, as well as:

- the processing of applications for social assistance, such as social grants, grant-in-aid and social relief of distress
- the verification and timely approval of grant applications
- the management and reconciliation of grant payments to eligible beneficiaries by contractors
- the marketing of social assistance
- quality service assurance by ensuring compliance with norms and standards, and fraud prevention and detection.

From January 2014, social grant beneficiaries, who use PIN codes to access their social grants at ATMs or till points had to verify each month that they were still alive through recording their voices as part of a voice activation system and then phone in once a month so that their voices can be verified, thereby proving they are still alive.

The voice activation process was done in two phases.

The first phase targeted 378 815 beneficiaries in Mpumalanga who were each sent an SMS in January 2014.

Phase 2 started in March 2014, and involved all other beneficiaries who were not sent an SMS in January, but are using a PIN to access their grants.

Efforts by Sassa to clamp down on social grant fraud are yielding positive results, with the agency saving R150 million a year.

Since the implementation of the project to re-register listed beneficiaries, Sassa received requests for voluntary cancellation of over 150 000 social grants, which had increased to 299 837 by February 2014.

A total of 18,9 million people were successfully re-registered onto the new system by

the end of March 2014 and had increased to 20,7 million. The re-registration resulted in life certification of all beneficiaries, children and procurators.

Through the Integrated Community Registration Outreach Programme (ICROP), 61 110 beneficiaries in 430 poverty wards had access to social assistance during 2014. The ICROP was established to improve access to and equity in services to beneficiaries in rural and semi-rural areas.

In 2014/15, Sassa paid 16 million social grant benefits monthly to about 9,5 million recipients.

Advisory Board on Social Development

The Advisory Board on Social Development's key functions include:

- advising the Minister on all matters related to social development
- identifying, promoting, monitoring and evaluating policy, legislation and programmes regarding social development
- facilitating dialogue with and the participation of civil society.

South African Council of Social Service Professionals (SACSSP)

The SACSSP is a statutory body with the primary focus of developing and protecting the integrity of the social service professions and the interest of the public at large.

The SACSSP is established in terms of section 2 of the Social Service Professions Act, 1978 (Act 110 of 1978).

The Council guides and regulates social workers and social auxiliary workers and other professionals for who a Professional Board has been established in aspects pertaining to registration, education and training, professional conduct and ethical behaviour, ensuring continuing professional development, and fostering compliance with healthcare standards.

The council has two professional boards under its auspices:

- The Professional Board for Social Workers.
- The Professional Board for Child and Youth Care

National Action Committee for Children Affected by HIV and AIDS

The National Committee for Children Affected by HIV and AIDS is a multisectoral structure made up of government departments, CSOs, development agencies and donor organisations.

It is a formal structure used for collaborative

planning and decision-making concerning issues pertaining to orphans and other children made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS.

It has a steering committee initiated through consultations between government departments, civil society and non-governmental organisations (NGOs), and is currently composed of representatives of government and civil society.

The committee is chaired by the DSD, and co-chaired by a nominated member from civil society.

Relief boards

Four relief fund boards were established in terms of Section 16 of the Fund-Raising Act of 1978.

- Board of the Disaster Relief Fund: The key functions of the board are to assist people, organisations and bodies that suffer damage or loss as a result of a disaster.
- Board of the Refugee Relief Fund: The key functions are to assist refugees as the board may deem fair and reasonable.
- Board of the State President's Fund: This board's functions are to assist victims of any act of terrorism in respect of their medical treatment and rehabilitation, and assist such victims and their dependants during any financial hardship or financial distress caused directly or indirectly by any act of terrorism.
- Board of the Social Relief Fund: The key functions of the board are to make funds available to organisations capable of assisting people with psychosocial challenges, and rendering such social distress relief to victims of violence.

Non-profit organisations

The NPO Directorate of the DSD administers the Register of NPOs in South Africa.

It is a voluntary registration facility that enhances the credibility of the registered NPO as it reports to a public office.

Registration promotes effective, efficient and accountable management within the sector.

To strengthen the capacity of NPOs, the department will continue to build their capacity and monitor their compliance to legislation.

One of the functions of the department is to monitor all registered NPOs in terms of their compliance with the NPO Act of 1997.

The compliance rate has improved by 26%.

Training was provided to 1 200 NPOs and community-based organisations (CBOs).

Plans to strengthen the sector include:

- increasing the number of staff in the department who deal with registrations
- increasing the number of road shows to

provide information and listen to challenges faced by the sector.

Programmes and projects

16 Days of Activism of No Violence Against Women and Children

The 16 Days of Activism of No Violence Against Women and Children is an annual awareness campaign observed globally.

It addresses policy and legal issues and calls for the elimination of all forms of gender-based violence.

In 2014, government launched the 16 Days of Activism for No Violence against Women and Children campaign in Reiger Park, Gauteng.

The 2014 campaign coincided with the commemoration of 60 years since the signing of the Women's Charter on 17 April 1954 in Johannesburg, the 20 years of freedom and democracy in South Africa and 16 years of the 16 Days of Activism Campaign.

The 2014 campaign was held under the theme "Count Me In. Together moving a non-violent South Africa forward."

The campaign runs from 25 November, which was officially recognised by the UN in 1999 as the International Day for the Elimination of Violence against Women.

South Africa has added children to the campaign, as there is growing concern about the increasing violence against children.

The campaign ends on 10 December – International Human Rights Day.

Other important days commemorated annually during this 16-day period include World AIDS Day on 1 December and the International Day for Persons with Disabilities on 3 December.

Project Mikondzo

Project Mikondzo (which means "footprint" in Xitsonga) compels office-bound officials from the department, the NDA and the Sassa to join frontline officials to interact with communities in a bid to tackle social problems such as poverty, malnutrition, violence against women and child-headed households.

The 1 300 wards form part of 23 district municipalities from seven provinces, which Cabinet has prioritised for additional support.

The project includes an audit of ECD centres and the setting up of a command centre with a toll-free hotline open 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

It also includes a substance abuse awareness campaign targeting sports and music events, the targeting of gender-based violence and the strengthening of NPOs.

The project helps government reach the

about two million children who qualify for CSGs but who have not registered with Sassa to receive grants.

The project is funded by Sassa and the DSD.

The audit of ECD centres, which covered 19 971 registered and unregistered centres, establishes the kind of services these centres offer and the quality of infrastructure and resources available to them.

About 1 000 unemployed youths had been recruited and trained to carry out the audit.

The department began training caregivers to improve assistance to child and youth-headed households.

The department audited 92 000 child-headed households that are in the Statistics South Africa database to ensure compliance with the Children's Act of 2005 definition of a child-headed household.

Anti-Substance Abuse Programme of Action

Alcohol advertising is regulated by the Liquor Act, 2003 (Act 59 of 2003) which outlines the guidelines for liquor advertising. The alcohol industry is self-regulated by the Code of Commercial Communication of Alcohol Beverages, something to which most companies and advertisers adhere.

In August 2014, due to strong disagreements on the adverse economic impact of the Control of Marketing of Alcohol Beverages Bill, it was decided that, before it was published in the local journal for public comment, an Independent Regulatory Impact Assessment was conducted to investigate the economic and societal impact of the Bill.

The Central Drug Authority Board developed regulations for the Prevention of and Treatment for Substance Abuse Act of 2008.

The Act complements both the National Drug Master Plan (2013 – 2017) and the Anti-Substance Abuse Programme.

The Act provides for a comprehensive national response for combating substance abuse in South Africa through:

- mechanisms aimed at reducing demand and harm in relation to substance abuse through prevention, early intervention, treatment and re-integration programmes
- registration and establishment of treatment centres and halfway houses
- the committal of persons to and from treatment centres and for their treatment.

Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)

The EPWP is a nationwide programme under the auspices of government and state-owned enterprises.

The programme provides an important avenue for labour absorption and income transfers to poor households in the short to medium term. It is also a deliberate attempt by public sector bodies to use expenditure on goods and services to create job opportunities for the unemployed.

EPWP projects employ workers on a temporary or ongoing basis either by government, by contractors, or by NGOs under the Ministerial Conditions of Employment for the EPWP or learnership employment conditions.

Early Childhood Development

Government has identified ECD as a key focus area in its effort to improve the quality of basic education and care for children.

The department recognises that one of the ways of breaking the cycle of inter-generational poverty is investment in children to aid their development, especially from the ages of 0 – 4.

There are plans in place to ensure that all ECD centres are registered and early childhood practitioners appropriately trained. Programmes for parental training are also in the pipeline.

War on Poverty Campaign

The Cooperative Shop Project is aimed at combating poverty by linking social grant beneficiaries (particularly the caregivers of children receiving CSGs and other vulnerable groups to meaningful socio-economic opportunities. The department and its entities will identify cooperatives that need support, with the intention of developing the skills of the cooperative members to ensure they are able to produce goods of quality.

The project is in line with the developmental agenda of government and could be seen as an addition to the grants that are provided. The primary intention is not to take people out of the grant system but to provide opportunities for grant beneficiaries to supplement their income.

Child poverty in South Africa has declined but more still needs to be done, according to a report released by the South African Human Rights Commission (SAHRC) in June 2014. The SAHRC and the UN Children's Fund SA based the report, "Poverty traps and social exclusion among children in South Africa", on a study. It said according to three income and expenditure surveys, the estimated poverty rate decreased from 65% in 2000 to just below 40% in 2010. The child poverty rate dropped from 76% in 2000 to just below 50% in 2010.

Education, health, assets, social networks, family, and geography are highlighted as areas that

require intervention to escape poverty. According to the report, poverty-stricken households are at greater risk of contracting disease. Often, health problems lower productivity. Ill health can induce perpetual poverty from nutrition deficiencies and undernourishment can affect behaviour. Child hunger affected the ability to learn and function. Policy interventions that improve children's health can dramatically increase their chances of escaping poverty.

Food for All Programme

The department is tasked with facilitating and monitoring the implementation of the Food for All Programme.

To this end, distressed households were being provided with food through the department and Food Bank South Africa programme.

While social relief of distress provides short-term relief for poor households, government recognises that longer-term solutions are needed.

Government is committed to improving its efforts at ensuring food security for all in the country, starting with vulnerable households and communities.

To this end, households have been assisted in establishing food gardens to produce their own food, thus participating in their own development.

Social security and assistance

From April 2014, the old age and disability grants increased from R1 270 to R1 350; the foster care grant to R830; while child support grants increased to R310 a month in April and R320 in October.

The number of people eligible for grants was expected to increase to 16,5 million in the next three years.

South Africa's social assistance system is one of the largest in Africa and is government's most direct means of combatting poverty. Spending on the social grant system accounts for 3% of the gross domestic product and is projected to rise from R118 billion in 2013/14 to R145 billion by 2016.

The child support and old age grants are the two largest grant programmes, constituting about 75% of total grant spending.

Over the past decade, the number of social grant beneficiaries has doubled from 7,9 million in 2003 to 15,8 million in 2014 largely due to an expansion of the child support grant.

Other initiatives include making it compulsory for retirement funds to identify appropriate preservation funds for exiting members when changing jobs.

Retirement funds are required to guide their members through the process of converting

savings into a regular income after retirement and to choose annuity products that meet appropriate principles and standards.

The tax treatments of pension, provident and retirement annuity funds will also be simplified and harmonised.

Governance reforms of retirement funds were implemented and measures put in place to ensure that trustees of retirement funds were trained once they have been appointed.

Tax deductions of pension and retirement annuity funds, as well as contributions to provident funds and employer contributions that constitute fringe benefits, were increased to 27,5% of remuneration or taxable income – whichever the greater may be.

This simplifies the way deductions for retirement annuities, fringe benefits and pension funds are calculated. An annual cap on deductible contributions of R350 000 is applied.

Job creation and alleviating poverty **National Youth Development Agency (NYDA)**

In November 2014, the DSD published the 2014 State of the World Population Report, revealing that countries must invest more in the youth.

The theme of the 2014 State of the World Population Report was “The power of 1,8 billion: adolescence, youth and the transformation of the future.”

The report provides the latest trends and statistics on adolescent and youth populations worldwide, which gives the department an opportunity to reflect on South Africa and how it is doing (compared to the rest of the globe) concerning the issues contained in this report regarding young people.

The Mid-year Population Estimates by Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) show that South Africa still has a relatively young population. Two thirds of the population is younger than 35 years old. Those aged 15 to 35 years, which are defined as youth, comprise almost 40% of the total population. The youth are also the fastest growing age group in the country.

This trend creates the prospect for a so-called “Demographic Dividend”, in which resources are invested into activities that promote social and economic development and growth.

South Africa, like most countries, is grappling with the challenge of youth unemployment. Youth unemployment in South Africa is estimated to be 36,1%, which is significantly higher than adult unemployment at 15,6%.

Government has recognised the problem of poor economic participation of young people and has put in place numerous policy interventions geared towards bringing youth into the

mainstream of the economy to enhance social inclusion and cohesion.

Through the National Treasury and Department of Labour, DSD introduced youth unemployment policy options for South Africa with the aim of incentivising entities to employ young people.

The NYDA has provided the Integrated Youth Development Strategy (IYDS) with the key mandate of implementing interventions geared towards the economic participation of young people, namely, youth work, national youth services, and education and skills relevant to economic empowerment.

Government strives to provide an opportunity to raise the share of youth-owned businesses and to support youth to engage in cooperatives in the country.

Social entrepreneurship is being explored.

The NDP is clear about the need for skills development in promoting economic growth and reaching related goals and the country has done well in the past 20 years of democracy to ensure that practically all children who should be in primary school are there.

Food banks

FoodBank South Africa, aimed at strengthening the Food for All Programme, is meant to feed three million people by 2015/16.

The Food Banks Programme, which is part of the Zero Hunger Strategy, is an important channel through which vulnerable people access food.

The department also developed a training and mentoring programme for CBOs.

HIV and AIDS support

The National Strategic Plan on HIV, AIDS, Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) and Tuberculosis (TB) 2012 – 2016, which addresses the social drivers and social impact of HIV and AIDS, is a key component of the department’s fight against the spread of HIV and AIDS.

HIV and AIDS Youth Programme

Most funds continued to be disbursed to loveLife, enabling it to increase and extend its HIV and AIDS awareness programmes, and scholarships for social work students.

By 2015/16, the number of students benefiting from these scholarships is expected to be 4 248.

Youth-care workers from local communities are recruited and trained for the Isibindi Model at 260 sites throughout the country.

The aim is to recruit 10 000 child and youth-care workers over the next five years. It is expected that the recruitment and deployment of this cadre of social service professionals

will go a long way towards upholding government's constitutional obligation to protect and provide care and support for orphans, vulnerable children and youths affected by HIV and AIDS in South Africa.

HIV and AIDS advocacy, awareness and outreach programme

Achieving a meaningful and clear understanding of the scientific facts about HIV and AIDS will lead to individual self-management regarding the risk of HIV infection.

The awareness programme has the following main pillars:

- disclosure
- communication
- rights
- facilitation.

The programme also deals with the physical and emotional consequences of HIV and AIDS.

It addresses the following challenges:

- the lack of accurate and current information on HIV and AIDS
- the lack of access to care, support, treatment and new healthcare developments
- discrimination against the infected and affected.

The programme aims to involve people living with HIV and AIDS in initiatives that directly help affected and infected people to alleviate stigmatisation.

Care and support partnerships

The DSD developed a new National Action Plan for orphans, vulnerable children and youth affected by HIV and AIDS (2012 – 2016), which is aligned with the National Strategic Plan on HIV, STIs and TB (2012 – 2016).

The action plan calls for meaningful involvement and participation by all stakeholders in the national response to orphans, vulnerable children and youths affected by HIV and AIDS.

Victim Empowerment Programme (VEP)

South Africa's Victim Empowerment Policy is based upon the concept of restorative justice.

Victim empowerment is a means of facilitating access to a range of services for all people who have individually or collectively suffered harm, trauma and/or material loss through violence, crime, natural disaster, human accident and/or through socio-economic conditions.

It is the process of promoting the resourcefulness of victims of crime and violence by providing opportunities to access services available to them, as well as to use and build their own capacity and support networks and to act on their own choices.

National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime

The National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime is updated annually in collaboration with the provincial VEP managers or coordinators and their provincial counterparts.

Prevention and treatment of substance and drug abuse

Sobriety Week, is a national campaign aimed at creating awareness among the general South African public, particularly the youth, women and pregnant women about the adverse effects of liquor abuse.

Sobriety Week incorporates the International Foetal Alcohol Syndrome (FAS) Day, which is observed internationally on 9 September every year to highlight the irreversible damage caused to unborn babies when their mothers consume alcohol during pregnancy.

Government recognises challenges such as unemployment, which result in people using and abusing liquor.

Children and youth

The Home Community-Based Care (HCBC) programme is the centrepiece of government's interventions to build a protective and caring environment for vulnerable children.

Most services to orphans and vulnerable children are rendered through the HCBC programme and include early identification of vulnerable children and their families, referrals, training of community caregivers and psycho-social support and material assistance.

This approach is geared towards keeping children within their families and communities. It is aimed at providing comprehensive care and support, which is complemented by proactive action at community level.

This includes linking families with poverty alleviation projects and other services in the community, such as food security initiatives and ECD services.

Child Labour Programme of Action (CLPA) Report

The CLPA is South Africa's roadmap to the prevention, reduction and eventual elimination of child labour, which affects an estimated one million children in the country.

It serves to focus and guide the efforts of an array of government departments and civil society groups, including business organisations, labour federations and organisations serving the interests of children.

The key elements of the CLPA include targeting the implementation of government and

other stakeholders' programmes and policies on poverty, employment, labour and social matters more effectively in areas where the work children do has serious negative effects on them.

The CLPA promotes new legislative measures against the worst forms of child labour and strengthen national capacity to enforce legislative measures.

It is aimed at increasing public awareness and social mobilisation.

Childline South Africa

Childline offers a 24-hour toll-free crisis line (08000 55 555) to children and families across South Africa. It provides immediate assistance to children and families in crisis who need counselling and information.

Childline is an NPO that works to protect children from all forms of violence and create a culture of respect for children's rights.

Programmes delivered through the provincial offices include:

- a crisis line
- child rights and education
- training and education of volunteers
- training of other professionals who work with child protection and children
- therapy for abused and traumatised children and their families
- court preparation of child witnesses
- networking and coordination
- lobbying and advocacy
- analysis of law and policy.

People with disabilities

In November 2014, the DSD finalised the National Disability Rights Policy.

The policy includes a monitoring and evaluation framework that will allow the department to track progress made in eradicating inequalities and reducing poverty among people with disabilities and their families.

Through the policy, South Africa ensures to honour its obligations under the International Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities, to which it is a signatory.

The policy is also a means to promote the active participation of people with disabilities in the country's economy.

Government remained committed to ensuring that people with disabilities were not left out of the Post 2015 Development Agenda and that the Africa 2063 Agenda took everyone on board.

South Africa had to collectively contribute to the empowerment of people with disabilities through accessible disability information services, inclusive ECD opportunities and accessible rehabilitation services.

This would enable persons with disabilities to take up the opportunities created in much larger numbers, improving performance in achieving equity targets.

In 2014, there were 11 members of Parliament and 72 local councillors with disabilities.

Persons with disabilities represent the voice of the sector in institutions such as the South African Human Rights Commission, the Commission on Gender Equality, the Board of the South African Broadcasting Corporation, National Youth Development Agency and many transformation and developmental entities.

The South African experience has also helped to shape the UN Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities and the Continental Plan for the African Decade of Persons with Disabilities.

In November 2014, South Africa hosted an international conference to tackle the challenges experienced by deaf and blind people.

South Africa has been celebrating the International Day for Persons with Disabilities annually since 1997.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation for the blind, and is governed by the blind. Situated in Johannesburg, it is aligned with other member organisations throughout South Africa.

Blind SA's main focus is to improve the quality of life of all South Africa's visually impaired people by empowering them through education.

Its objectives are to protect and promote the interests of people with visual impairment and enable all visually impaired people to achieve their optimal potential through independence; and by providing development care for and protecting the rights of those who, owing to circumstances beyond their control, are unable to do so themselves.

Orientation, mobility and skills development to blind and newly blinded people is an important aspect of the work undertaken by Blind SA.

The organisation provides, among other things, study bursaries for visually impaired students for further education, Braille publications in all of South Africa's official languages, Braille training that entails writing and reading, and orientation and mobility training.

South African Braille Authority (Saba)

Saba's purpose is to set and maintain standards for Braille in all 11 official languages of South Africa.

These standards relate to the development and maintenance of Braille codes; production

of quality Braille; the teaching of, access to and promotion of Braille; Braille examinations; and many other Braille-related matters.

Through Saba, South Africa is a member country of the International Council on English Braille (ICEB).

ICEB membership enables South Africa to stay abreast of and participate in international Braille-related matters.

South African National Council for the Blind (SANCB)

The SANCB is the coordinating body for over 100 member organisations that span the full spectrum of services offered for and to blind and partially sighted people throughout the country.

The SANCB comprises four core business areas, namely Social Development, the Bureau for the Prevention of Blindness, Education and lastly fund-raising and public relations.

To combat as much as 80% of avoidable blindness, the council regularly undertakes tours with its mobile eye care clinics to rural areas for eye screening, referrals and to perform cataract removal operations.

The SANCB provides entrepreneurial training, adult basic education and training, and facilitates skills training such as computer literacy and call centre programmes through its Optima College.

Support for the deaf

South Africa's national organisation for the deaf is the Deaf Federation of South Africa (DeafSA).

DeafSA has nine provincial chapters throughout South Africa.

Two other national organisations for the deaf are Deafblind South Africa and SHHH South Africa, the South African organisation for the hard of hearing.

An estimated 500 000 to 600 000 South Africans use South African Sign Language. As sign language has grown in South Africa – particularly baby sign language – an NPO, Sign Language Education and Development, has been formed to promote sign language.

Signing with hearing babies and children is being promoted through the Signsational Kids website.

South Africa has a long-established deaf education system.

Statistics indicate that there are more than 40 schools for the deaf in South Africa. They include:

- De la Bat School (run by the Institute for the Deaf)
- Fulton School for the Deaf
- Kutlwanong School for the Deaf (Rustenburg)
- Kwa Thintwa School for Hearing Impaired

- St Vincent's School for the Deaf (Johannesburg)
- Vuleka School for the Blind and Deaf

The Institute for the Deaf in Worcester operates Deaf College South Africa, which trains deaf people for jobs.

In addition, the Bible College for the Deaf in Gauteng trains people to work in deaf ministry.

The University of the Witwatersrand in Johannesburg has a Centre for Deaf Studies.

The centre offers programmes in deaf education and focuses on teaching, research and community service.

Among other services, the National Institute for the Deaf provides services for multiple disabled deaf, runs two deaf churches and provides audiological and mental health services.

A Deaf Child Centre at the Department of Paediatrics and Child Health at the University of Cape Town, provides pre-school education and community services. This centre also focuses on deafness research.

The Carel du Toit Centre, based in Cape Town, provides early childhood auditory-oral education.

In addition, the centre engages in community outreaches, helping families with hearing-related needs and more practical needs such as food.

A similar centre is the Eduplex in Pretoria. It provides auditory-oral pre-school and primary school educational services, teaching hearing and deaf children together and provides training to prospective teachers, audiologists and therapists.

Older people

The DSD promotes a holistic approach to active ageing and well-being among the country's senior citizens. A number of initiatives have been rolled out by the departments of social development, health, tourism, sport and recreation South Africa and other stakeholders to promote general health among older persons, especially through sports to promote general well-being.

In October 2014, the Minister of Social Development opened the National Older Persons Golden Games at the Mbombela Stadium in Mpumalanga.

The games, hosted in partnership with Sports and Recreation South Africa, saw older persons participating in sport and recreation activities such as the duck walk, dress-up race, football, athletics and others.

In June 2014, Cape Town allocated R16 million for the construction of more early childhood development (ECD) centres across the city in 2014/15. The city wants to build more ECD centres in Delft, Mitchells Plain, Dunoon, Ocean View, Heideveld and Lotus River. In 2013/14, the city spent over R7 million on building ECD centres in Leonsdale, Scorpio, Elsies River and Ocean View, and Strandfontein.

Since 2008, the Government implemented a national active ageing programme in line with the Madrid International Plan of Action on Ageing of 2002.

The Madrid Plan of Action offers a bold new agenda for handling the issue of ageing in the 21st century. It focuses on three priority areas: older persons and development, advancing health and well-being into old age and ensuring enabling and supportive environments.

The Older Persons Act of 2006 aims to enhance the quality of life and improve the health of older persons by engaging them in programmes that promote social, physical, mental and emotional well-being to prevent or delay the onset of ageing challenges and keep old age related illness at bay. [SAnews.gov.za]

The old-age grant means test would be phased out by 2016, accompanied by offsetting revisions to the secondary and tertiary rebates.

All citizens over a designated age will be eligible for the grant, which will simplify its administration and address the disincentive to save that arises from the present means test.

The Older Persons' Parliament takes place annually in October. It gives elders the opportunity to engage with the executive on critical issues affecting their lives.

Training and skills development Recruitment and Retention Strategy for Social Workers

There are 9 456 social workers in the employ of government.

The Unemployed Social Workers Database informs the department about the number of unemployed social workers who have studied outside the DSD scholarship programme.

This is in response to the issue raised by communities and the media that there are qualified social workers who are unemployed.

The Draft Scarce Skills and Policy Framework of 2003 recognised social work as a scarce skill.

Government mandated the development of strategies to facilitate the recruitment and retention of such scarce skills.

The DSD has been the main driver in the implementation of this social policy.

In addition, the NDP indicates that 60 000 social workers will be needed by 2030 to serve the population.

Professionalising community development

The Council for Social Service Professions was established in terms of the Social Service Professions Act of 1978.

The key functions are:

- protecting and promoting the interests of the professions, in respect of which professional boards have been or are to be established and to deal with any matter relating to such interests
- advising the Minister on matters affecting the professions in respect of which professional boards have been established
- controlling and exercising authority regarding all financial matters relating to the council and the professional boards
- assisting in the promotion of social services.

Social work scholarships

As part of its efforts to develop skills and empower the youth, the DSD invited Grade 12 learners to apply for scholarships.

While recruiting, preference is given to deserving learners in rural areas, including those from child-headed households, those living in places of safety, dependants of war veterans and learners in no-fee schools.



Sport and Recreation

The Department of Sport and Recreation (SRSA) derives its mandate from the National Sport and Recreation Act, 1998 (Act 110 of 1998), which requires it to oversee the development and management of sport and recreation in South Africa. The Act also provides the framework for relationships between SRSA and its external clients. This includes the department's partnership with the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee (Sascoc), which is key to improving South Africa's international ranking in selected sports. The Act also ensures that South Africa contributes to sport, physical education and social cohesion by legislating on sports participation as well as on sports infrastructure.

The SRSA strategic goals are to:

- increase citizens' access to sport and recreation activities
- oversee the transformation of the sport and recreation sector
- ensure that more athletes achieve international success
- develop enabling mechanisms to support sport and recreation
- ensure that sport and recreation are used as tools to support social cohesion and nation building.

Sport and Recreation South Africa

The SRSA is the national department responsible for sport in the country. Aligned with its vision of an active and winning nation, it primarily focuses on providing opportunities for all South Africans to participate in sport; manages the regulatory framework; and provides funding for different sporting codes.

The right to play and to participate in sport has been embodied in United Nations (UN) instruments such as the Convention on the Rights of the Child and the Convention on the Elimination of all forms of Discrimination Against Women. It is recognised as a right, which all governments should make available to their people.

In line with the constitutional imperatives, the SRSA has been assigned the powers and functions to develop and implement national policies and programmes regarding sport and recreation in the country.

The SRSA aims to maximise access, development and excellence at all levels of participation in sport and recreation to improve social cohesion, nation-building and the quality of life of all South Africans.

The SRSA's goals include:

- leading the process of sport transformation, asset development and equity in sport and recreation

- ensuring that school sport is offered in all schools in South Africa
- ensuring that institutional mechanisms that provide equal access at all levels of participation in sport and recreation are in place
- contributing to social cohesion and employment opportunities through mass mobilisation in sport and recreation
- contributing to a healthy lifestyle through the provision of recreation programmes
- instituting a funding model to enable the effective implementation of sport and recreation programmes
- ensuring the availability of high-performance systems that will enable more athletes, coaches, technical officials and administrators to reach national and international standards that will contribute to an improvement in South Africa's international rankings
- improving governance and the delivery of sport and recreation through effective and efficient administrative support systems; and adequate resources
- supporting a well-governed sports community through the development of national policies and guidelines for sport and recreation in the country
- using the potential of sport and recreation to achieve government priorities through cooperation with identified international, national, provincial; and local government departments.

Legislation and policies

The National Sport and Recreation Act, 1998 (Act 110 of 1998) was amended extensively and promulgated in 2014.

In terms of the National Sport and Recreation Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 18 of 2007), the Minister of Sport and Recreation has the legislative powers to oversee the development and management of sport and recreation in South Africa. The key implementers of national policies for sport in the country are provinces and municipalities; as well as Sascoc, sports federations and other agencies.

The Safety at Sports and Recreational Events Act of 2010 (Act 2 of 2010) was drafted as a result of the Ellis Park soccer tragedy and the subsequent findings of the Ngoepe Commission of Enquiry. *The White Paper on Sport and Recreation* was amended in 2011.

The department administers and controls the two public entities:

- Boxing South Africa, which was established in terms of the South African Boxing Act, 2001 (Act 11 of 2001).
- The South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport

(SAIDS), which was established in terms of the SAIDS Act 1997 (Act 14 of 1997) as amended. The Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 29 of 1999) guides all financial activities of the SRSA. The Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994) regulates the conduct of business in the Public Service.

Budget and funding

The total allocation for the SRSA stands at R988,5 million, having gone up by R18,1 million from the previous year's allocation of R970,4 million. This constitutes a 1,87% budget growth from the previous year.

The budget allocation per programme is as follows:

- R628,6 million to support the provision of mass participation opportunities in sport and recreation
- R133, 2 million to develop and maintain an integrated support system to enhance the delivery of sport and recreation
- R124,8 million for the provision of strategic leadership, management and support service to the department and the sector
- R92, 2 million to support the development of elite athletes
- R9,7 million towards the regulation and management of the provision of sport and recreation facilities.

Transformation in sport

The meeting of the Minister and Members of the Provincial Executive Councils (Minmec) took place on 28 March 2014, to consider among other things the report of the pilot study on the status of transformation in sport in South Africa.

The study focused on the top five national federations, namely rugby, cricket, football, athletics and netball, and will be expanded to include the 11 additional codes in 2014. The numbers will grow over the next few years until all provinces are covered.

The findings of the pilot project showed that little has been done in transforming sport especially the national and provincial teams. Grassroots structures are non-existent at school and club levels.

The report also revealed that the participation of black people in general and Africans in particular is declining tremendously. Sport in rural areas and townships are in a parlous state due to lack of facilities, poorly maintained sport infrastructure, and uneven access of facilities for all South Africans.

The report further revealed that there is a lack of willingness in implementing transformation, especially the enforcement of quotas and other

dimensions despite an agreement before and after the National Sport and Recreation Indaba. Minmec therefore resolved to:

- adopt the Eminent Person Commission (EPG) Report on Transformation in Sport
- use the report to draft a roadmap to aggressively implement the recommendations of the report and the resolutions of Minmec March 2014.

Minmec further resolved with immediate effect to:

- vigorously implement the quota system as instructed by the National Sports and Recreation Plan held in November 2011
- embark on a roadshow in all nine provinces and the piloted five federations to give instructions on the implementation of quotas and recommendations of the *EPG Report*
- increase the quota system from 50/50 to 40/60% representation and give effect to 60% black representation to both provincial and national teams
- demand development plans from Saru, Safa, CSA, ASA and Netball SA
- mandate all MECs of Sport and Recreation to meet with provincial teams and confederations to communicate the decisions of the Minmec and its impact on provinces
- mandate EPG and SRSA to enforce and monitor the implementation of the decisions.

In the interim, SRSA was instructed to develop guidelines on the distinction of roles and responsibilities of the sport stakeholders in the implementation of the recommendations of the pilot study on the status of transformation in sport in South Africa together with the resolutions of the Minister's meeting with the Minmec.

If there is resistance or any form of hostility to implement these resolutions and recommendations, government will have no option but to:

- withdraw any form of funding and support to federations and sport bodies that do not comply with transformation requirements
- withdraw the national colours to any federation(s) who are set on maintaining the status quo
- use bidding and hosting regulations to be illegal to bid without government approval
- bar sponsorship against any federation that does not and/or is hostile to transformation.

Role players

South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee

Sascoc is the controlling body for all high-performance sport in South Africa.

The SRSA and Sascoc cooperate closely on issues of mutual importance, and the SRSA

provides funding to Sascoc, for instance in the preparation of elite athletes for international events.

It is the national coordinating macro body for the promotion and development of high-performance sport in South Africa, including team presentation, and must consult with relevant sports bodies in this regard.

Sascoc represents South Africa for all multicoded sport participating in international games, such as the Olympic Games, Paralympic Games, Commonwealth Games and All-Africa Games.

South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport

The SAIDS is the national anti-doping organisation, funded by the SRSA. Its mandate is to promote participation in sport, free from the use of prohibited substances or methods intended to artificially enhance performance, in the interest of the health and well-being of sports people.

The SAIDS is responsible for developing anti-doping policy and implementing a national antidoping programme across all sporting codes in South Africa.

The SAIDS is certified in terms of the International Organisation for Standardisation 9001: 2000 standards in compliance with the International Standard for Testing. This is the internationally recognised benchmark for quality assurance and excellence, and represents world best-practice in doping control in sport.

The SAIDS's key focus areas are:

- Doping control: The institute conducts a comprehensive, independent and effective national doping-control programme on South African athletes competing at regional, national and international levels. The SAIDS also conducts in- and out-of-competition doping controls on international athletes on behalf of international sports federations and other international anti-doping organisations.
- Education: The SAIDS provides education, information and awareness for athletes; coaches; parents; sports organisation; members of the medical, pharmaceutical and sports-science professions; tertiary-education institutions; and the public. Information on national and international antidoping issues can be accessed at www.drugfreesport.org.za.
- Research: The SAIDS conducts sociological research into the knowledge, attitude and use of performance-enhancing drugs among South African sportspeople, for the purpose of planning and implementing effective doping-control and education programmes.
- International collaboration: South Africa is

an active participant in the global effort to combat drugs in sport. The SAIDS collaborates closely with counterparts worldwide to achieve international harmonisation and the improvement of standards and practices in doping control. South Africa is a member of the International AntiDoping Arrangement and of the Executive Committee of the Association of National Anti-Doping Organisations.

Boxing South Africa

Boxing South Africa's intention is to ensure effective and efficient administration of professional boxing in South Africa; to create synergy between professional and amateur boxing and to promote interaction between associations of boxers, managers, promoters, trainers and officials, and Boxing South Africa.

It also considers applications for licences from all stakeholders in professional boxing. It sanctions fights; implements the relevant regulations; and trains boxers, promoters, ring officials, managers and trainers.

In July 2014, Andy Birkett managed to hold off Western Cape ace Graeme Solomon to claim his maiden Berg River Canoe Marathon title, while Abby Adie stormed to a convincing win in the ladies' race.

With the intention of bettering his eighth place in the 2013 Berg River Canoe Marathon, 62-year-old grandmaster Lee McGregor had to settle for eighth place overall at the 2014 event.

Luke Stowman produced a fine display on the last day to not only claim the top spot in the under-23 category but ninth place overall too.

There was a strong performance from Thulani Mbanjwa, who powered his way to 10th place.

World Anti-Doping Agency (WADA)

The Africa Regional Office of the WADA was established in Cape Town in 2004 to coordinate the anti-doping activities of the agency throughout Africa.

This includes promoting and maintaining effective lines of communication between the WADA and all relevant stakeholders, governments and public authorities, the broad sports movement, national anti-doping agencies and laboratories.

South Africa continues to serve as the African representative on the Executive Committee of WADA.

National sport federations

The various sporting codes in South Africa are governed by their own federations and associations. These include:

- Aero Club of South Africa

- AFL South Africa
- Amateur Fencing Association of Southern Africa
- Anglers and Casting Federation of Southern Africa
- Archery South Africa
- Athletics South Africa
- Badminton South Africa
- Baseball Union of Southern Africa
- Basketball South Africa
- Bowls South Africa
- Boxing South Africa
- Bridge Federation of Southern Africa
- Canoeing South Africa
- Chess South Africa
- Clay Target Shooting Association of South Africa
- Confederation of Cue Sport South Africa
- Cricket South Africa
- Cycling South Africa
- Dance Sport Federation of Sport South Africa
- Darts South Africa
- Deaf Sports Federation of Southern Africa
- Federation Bocce
- Fitness Sport Aerobics Federation of Southern Africa
- Handball Federation of Southern Africa
- Judo South Africa
- Jukskei South Africa
- Karate South Africa
- Korfball Federation of South Africa
- Lifesaving South Africa
- Majorette and Cheerleading Association South Africa
- Martial Arts and Games Committee of South Africa
- Masters Sports Association of Southern Africa
- Mind Sports South Africa
- Modern Pentathlon Association of South Africa
- Motorsport South Africa

In October 2014, the breeding, trading and racing of pigeons became illegal in South Africa. Activities including the importing, breeding, trading in and translocation of pigeons are listed as prohibited activities in terms of the Invasive and Alien Species List as published by the departments of water and environmental affairs. The prohibition included releasing of any specimen of a listed invasive species, which effectively meant that releasing pigeons to race or as homing pigeons was illegal. The NSPCA said the new legislation was published in the Government Gazette on 1 August. The National Pigeon Organisation of Southern Africa sought a meeting with the environmental affairs minister to discuss the implications. The new law, which had been in the pipeline since 2004, would do away with the 100-year-old sport of pigeon racing. Pigeon racing is a professional sport and an expensive sport. The National Pigeon Organisation of Southern Africa is a member of the South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee and has 5 000 members.

- National Amateur Bodybuilding Association of South Africa
- National Horseracing Authority
- National Pigeon Organisation of Southern Africa
- National Boxing Organisation of Southern Africa
- Netball South Africa
- Orienteering Federation of Southern Africa
- Parachute Association of South Africa
- Physically Disabled Association
- Powerlifting Federation of South Africa
- Powerboat South Africa
- Ringball South Africa
- Roller Sport South Africa
- Rowing South Africa
- Sascoc
- Scrabble South Africa
- Sheep Shearing Federation of Southern Africa
- Shooting Sport Federation of South Africa
- Snooker and Billiards South Africa
- Snow Sports South Africa
- Squash South Africa
- Soaring Society of South Africa
- Softball South Africa
- South African Amateur Fencing Association
- South African Bodyboarding Association
- South African Deep Sea Angling Association
- South African Figure Skating Association
- South African Fly Fishing Association
- South African Football Association
- South African Gold Panning Association
- South African Golf Association
- South African Gymnastics Federation
- South African Hang Gliding and Paragliding Association
- South African Hockey
- South African Ice Hockey Association
- South African National Archery Association
- South African National Equestrian Federation
- South African Polo Association
- South African Practical Shooting Association
- South African Rugby Union
- South African Sailing
- South African Shore Angling Association
- South African Sports Association for the Intellectually Impaired
- South African Tennis Association
- South African Underwater Sports Federation
- Surfing South Africa
- Swimming South Africa
- Table Tennis Board of Southern Africa
- Taekwondo Federation of South Africa
- Tenniquois Board of South Africa
- Tenpin Bowling Association of South Africa
- Transplant Sports Association of South Africa
- Triathlon South Africa
- Tug of War Federation of South Africa

- University Sport South Africa
- Volleyball South Africa
- Water Ski Federation of Southern Africa
- Weightlifting Federation of Southern Africa
- Wrestling South Africa
- Wushu Federation of Southern Africa.

Programmes and projects

National Sport and Recreation Plan (NSRP)

The five transversal issues which permeate every building block of the NSRP and that are considered non-negotiable imperatives are reflected in five strategic objectives, namely transformation, priority codes, ethical environment, geopolitical sports boundaries and amateur versus professional sport. These issues are pertinent as they traverse the entire NSRP.

While it is envisaged that the White Paper on Sport and Recreation will remain relevant until 2019, the NSRP will be closely monitored annually to identify any hindrances that may affect on implementation and will be reviewed in its totality in 2020.

A school sports bursary, which offers R100 000 towards covering the costs of education and support required by pupils; opened many opportunities for sports veterans and legends, and attracted retired sports people who had registered with the department to offer help as coaches, officials and sports administrators.

To implement the NSRP in full, an estimated budget of R10 billion a year is required over the next three years. Due to other competing priorities and pressures on National Treasury there was no space for additional funding in 2014. In line with the NSRP, a pilot transformation audit was conducted on the big five national federations, namely rugby, cricket, football, netball and athletics, and the results were published in 2014. Following this successful pilot, many national federations were subjected to a transformation review to monitor progress and another transformation barometer was published in March 2015, detailing the findings of this review. The federations that were assessed include all those that are identified as the school sport priority federations. This, to ensure that as financial assistance is directed at them, they also reciprocate with a transformed participation environment and governance.

School Sport Programme

The SA Schools League Programme is the main programme and culminates in the annual SA Schools National Championships.

The league programme starts in February and runs until June, with schools competing in intra-

school and interschool league competitions.

As this is the core of the programme, other deliverables support it with:

- the capacity development programme, which involves the training of educators and sport volunteers in sport-specific programmes.
- providing sport equipment and sport attire support to poor schools.
- the provision of cluster coordinators to aid the delivery and support of sport.
- the identification of sport focus schools where athletes are placed to further their sport development.
- the support to school sport structures at local, district, provincial and national levels.

There are about 24 000 schools in South Africa, with a combined number of about 12,2 million learners. Of these schools, 18 786 are registered to participate in the league system. The SRSA set aside 25% of its budget, which is approximately R400 million, for schools sport development.

For 2014/15, new sporting codes were included. Swimming and Goalball were added to the championships and a further addition has been on two new codes for indigenous games (Kho Kho and Kgati).

The SA Schools National Championships was held in December 2014, in Pretoria.

I Play Fair – Say NO! to Doping Campaign

The aim of this campaign is to show International Floorball Federation's (IFF) commitment to promoting education and awareness as a cornerstone in the fight against doping in sport. The goal is also to increase the awareness of floorball players in the world of the importance of playing clean, respecting the spirit of true sport and fair play. The campaign was launched in partnership with the World Anti-Doping Agency (WADA). The campaign was first launched during the 8th Men's World Floorball Championships 2010 in Finland when also the Finnish Anti-Doping Agency joined the campaign. The IFF is the fourth International Federation, along with the International Ice Hockey Federation (IIHF), FIFA and the International Archery Federation (FITA), to join WADA's Say NO! to Doping Campaign. [www.floorball.org]

In November 2014, president of Sascoc, Gideon Sam, led the I Play Fair team for the 2014 Momentum 94.7 Cycle Challenge in Fourways, Johannesburg. Sam's debut for the I Play Fair, Say NO! To Doping campaign was at the 2014 Two Oceans half-marathon in Cape Town, where the 60-year-old completed his first half marathon.

Team I Play Fair cycled in the 2014 Momentum 94.7 Cycle Challenge and Mr Gideon Sam will be joined by, among others, SAIDS board members, Dr. Mzwake Qobose and Paralympian Natalie Du Toit.

The I Play Fair team also joined the Minister of Sport in Pretoria when he led a team cycling on behalf of Unite 4 Mandela Campaign in November 2014.

The SAIDS is encouraging all South African sportsmen and women, coaches and fans to take the 'I Play Fair – Say NO! To Doping' pledge by visiting www.drugfreesport.org.za, the mobi-site: m.drugfreesport.org.za, on the Facebook Page ([iplayfairZA](https://www.facebook.com/iplayfairZA)) or via Twitter (@iplayfairZA).

International Rugby Board (IRB) Keep Rugby Clean Campaign

The IRB JWC plays a leading role in preparing the future stars of the game for the rigours of test rugby and anti-doping education is an essential element in that process. The IRB operates a zero-tolerance policy to drug cheats in sport, in partnership with the WADA.

ThinkSport Journal Project

The ThinkSport Journal, a publication focusing on and encouraging high-quality discussions among various stakeholders in society, serves as a forum for constructive debates on issues affecting sport in South Africa and also contribute meaningfully towards the development of sport at all levels of participation and all spheres of government and society. The ThinkSport Journal also serves as a high quality reference centre for sport practitioners, students, academics, researchers and stakeholders for further education and training as well as for academic and research purposes. The theme for the 2014 edition was: "20 Years After Democracy"

Little Green Book Project

The *Little Green Book* profiles exceptional athletes, coaches, administrators and technical officials while they are still alive.

Qhubeka: bicycles for rural development

Through its partnership with South African non-profit organisation Qhubeka, Team MTN-Qhubeka helps rural African communities by giving bicycles to children in return for work done to improve their environment and their community: for every 100 trees grown to at least 30 cm, or for every tonne of waste collected, Qhubeka donates a bicycle.

Not an ordinary bicycle but a Qhubeka Buffalo Bicycle, engineered specifically for African terrain and load requirements, designed by

World Bicycle Relief in Chicago, United States of America (USA) and assembled and tested in South Africa.

Children in rural schools are particularly badly affected by a lack of mobility. In South Africa, of the 16 million school children, 12 million walk to school. Of these, 500 000 walk more than two hours each way, spending four hours getting to and from school each day.

Major events

Nelson Mandela Sports Day

On 22 November 2014, South Africans united and took to the streets of Tshwane in honour of the much-loved global icon, the late Nelson Mandela.

Spearheaded by the SRSA and the Department of Arts and Culture, the 2014 Nelson Mandela Sport and Culture Day was held to demonstrate the depth of South Africans' commitment to the late Nelson Mandela's vision of sports and culture as a nation builder and a unifying force for a cohesive society.

With its aim to mobilise the youth, the event called for all South African youth, as the generation charged with living the Mandela legacy, to unite in building a brighter future for all.

In partnership with Cycling SA and Athletics SA, two new sporting codes were announced as a focus for the 2014 Nelson Mandela Sport and Culture Day. The day's sporting events featured a cycling race, a road-running race, a run/walk race, and a fun walk.

The Nelson Mandela Sport and Culture Day was designed to bring together South Africans from all walks of life as the country celebrated 20 Years of Freedom and Democracy.

The 2014 Nelson Mandela Sport and Culture Day aimed to break records by combining two major sports on the streets of Tshwane: cycling and running.

In remembrance of the 67 years Mandela devoted to social activism, the 67 km cycling race started and finished at the Union Buildings, with the route passing by many historical landmarks and monuments.

The winners of the 67 km cycling road race as well as the 27 km road-running challenge received R100 000, while the charity of their choice received R50 000.

The distance of this race was in commemoration of the 27 years Mandela spent in prison.

The 9,4 km road running/walking events were in remembrance of the 95 years of Madiba's life. Winners from the running competition received R25 000, while the charity of their choice received R15 000. The 9,4 km walking event

winner received R15 000, with R7 000 going to charity of their choice.

Fina World Cup

At the Fina World Cup in Doha in December 2014, Chad Le Clos received swimming's highest honour after he was crowned the world's best for 2014 by the International Swimming Federation. Le Clos also became the first ever swimmer to go unbeaten throughout a World Cup series.

He made history on the final night of the Fina World Short-Course Championships when he became the first swimmer to win the 50 m, 100 m and 200 m butterfly.

Cameron van der Burgh won a silver medal in the men's 50 m breaststroke.

Commonwealth Games

At the Commonwealth Games in Glasgow in 2014, South African athletes managed to claim a total of 40 medals across all sporting codes, 13 of those were gold, 10 silver and 17 bronze, placing the country seventh on the medal table. This was an improvement on the country's 2010 performance in Delhi, where athletes claimed 33 medals.

The track and field athletes finished with nine medals, three of which were gold. Khotso Mokoena took gold in the men's triple jump with a distance of 17,2 m; Cornel Fredericks shone in the 400 m hurdles, winning gold with a time of 48,5 ; and Fanie van der Merwe clocked 11,65 in a first place finish in the men's 100 m T37 final.

National 400 m sprint record holder, Wayde van Niekerk, and long jumpers, Zarck Visser and Ruswahl Samaai, impressed in their first Commonwealth Games appearances. Visser and Samaai won silver and bronze respectively, while Van Niekerk claimed silver for his efforts on the track. Sunette Viljoen won silver in the women's javelin.

The men's open triples lawn bowls team claimed top honours in a closely contested final against New Zealand, winning 13 – 11, while the women's fours downed Malaysia in the final, adding yet another gold to the tally.

South Africa's swimmers also impressed, with Chad le Clos bagging seven medals: two gold medals, one silver and four bronze. Cameron van der Burgh won gold in the 50 m breaststroke, silver in the 100m breaststroke and bronze in the 4x100 m medley relay, while veteran Roland Schoeman won silver in the 50 m butterfly and the 4x100 m freestyle relay.

The Cape Epic Mountain Bike Race covers 718 km in a week. It has 14 850 m of climbs and draws bikers from around the world.

On the rugby field, the Blitzbokke stunned a strong New Zealand team in a 17–12 victory to claim gold in the Rugby Sevens final.

South African Sports Awards

The South African Sports Awards were presented at a ceremony in November 2014 where the Minister of Sport and Recreation honoured the sporting heroes who had excelled in the last 12 months.

Portia Modise was the 2014 SA Sport Star of the Year.

Ashleigh Moolman Pasio was the Sportswoman of the Year.

Chad Le Clos was the Sportsman of the Year.

Sportswoman with Disability and Sportsman with Disability awards went to Justine Usher and Ernst Francois Van Dyk respectively.

The under 19 cricket team were named the Team of the Year.

Other winners included:

- Administrator of the Year – Nokuzola Patience Thamae
- Newcomer of the Year – Gezelle Magermann
- Coach of the Year – Ephraim Shakes Mashaba
- Volunteer of the Year – Sandile Mqadi
- Indigenous Games of the Year – Ncuva, Limpopo
- Recreation Body of the Year – Sport for Social Change Network
- Photographer of the Year – Reg Caldecott
- Journalist of the Year – Mathews Mpete
- School Team of the Year – Vorentoe High School
- Developing School Team of the Year – Oudtshoorn School of Skills
- Federation of the Year – Triathlon South Africa
- Lifetime Achievement Award – Andrew Mlangeni
- Lifetime Achievement Award – Senzo Meyiwa
- Lifetime Achievement Award – Marthinus Linee
- Lifetime Achievement Award – Mbulaeni Mulaudzi
- Lifetime Achievement Award – Phindile Mwelase

National indigenous games

The 2014 National Indigenous Games Festival, which is organised annually by the SRSA, took place at the Tshwane Events Centre in Pretoria from 21 to 24 September. Similar to other sport and recreation codes, indigenous games impact positively on socio-economic issues such as African identity; cultural diversity; education and training; accessibility of resources; international relations; and economic growth. The games played included Ncuva, Jukskei, Dibeke, Diketo,

Intonga, Morabaraba, Kho-kho, Drie Stokkies and Kgati.

The indigenous games serve as a vehicle to afford all South Africans an opportunity to be athletes, regardless of race, age or cultural background. The event also showcased unity through sport, as well as community participation. Students from tertiary institutions and school children from the surrounding areas participated in the event, including the street carnival.

Transnet Rural and Farm Schools Tournament

Established in QwaQwa in 2002, the Transnet Rural and Farm Schools programme is one of the flagship projects within the Transnet Foundation's sports portfolio.

The tournament was held in October 2014, at the Germiston Stadium in Gauteng. This sporting event begins every year with over 22 000 learners across the country competing in inter-house challenges, leaving just 2 000 of the best sporting champions to battle it out at this three-day-long national tournament.

The programme is about recognising and acknowledging achievement and celebrating success by all sportsmen and women. It is also concerned with shaping South Africa's youth, making dreams come true and initiating social change.

Over the past two days, tournaments for netball, football, athletics and chess took place. These games were played by girls and boys between the ages of 13 and 19, all of them coached by trained staff.

KwaZulu-Natal showed that they know what it takes to win by achieving best province overall, and winning the overall girls and overall soccer categories. Mpumalanga and North West tied for overall boys category.

National Sports Volunteer Corps (NSVC)

South Africa has produced an array of great players, athletes, coaches and administrators across different sporting codes, all of whom have contributed immensely towards South Africa being recognised as one of the best in the field of sport across the world. The South African past with all its contradictions and divisions has however not optimally tapped on these great players, athletes, coaches and administrators in addressing challenges of capacity and role modelling for young people.

Athletics

In 2014, Anaso Jobodwana broke South Africa's 200 m record, Steven Mokoka broke the 5 000

m record, and Annemie Smith improved her own South African record in the women's hammer throw. The athletes are testimony to the fact that preparations for Rio 2016 Olympics are well on track.

Biking, mountain biking, cycling

The year 2014 will be remembered as a year where local cyclists were finally given the recognition they deserved after Ashleigh Moolman Pasio, Ernst van Dyk and Justine Asher were among the big winners at the South African Sports Awards.

Pasio won a bronze medal in the women's road race, in her first appearance at the Commonwealth Games in Glasgow, Scotland. She then headed the South African elite women's team at the UCI Road World Championships, where she finished in the top 20 of the women's road race. She also rode to a second place finish at the Le Samyn des Dames – a women's race in Belgium – and finished in the top 15 of the Giro d'Italia Internazionale Femminile (Giro Rosa), the toughest stage race in women's road cycling. She ended her season ranked among the world's top 30 in her category. Back on home soil, she finished second behind UCI World champion Marianne Vos at the Momentum 94.7 Cycle Challenge road race.

Ernst van Dyk was crowned the 2014 UCI World Champion in the road race.

Justine Asher was crowned UCI World Champion in the time trial and road race, also winning the UCI Para-cycling Road World Cup.

Daryl Impey was another top achiever this season, flying the South African flag while riding for UCI ProTeam Orica-GreenEDGE. Impey maintained his fine form by winning Canada's Tour of Alberta, a road race that features a prologue and five stages. He also won the third stage of the Bayern-Rundfahrt (Tour of Bavaria) in Germany. He was also crowned the national Time Trial champion ahead of Jay Thomson and Jaco Venter, who finished second and third respectively.

Nolan Hoffman continued to be the undisputed king of the local road race classics, winning his third Amashova Durban Classic title and his maiden Cape Argus Cycle Tour victory after 10 attempts. He also grabbed wins at the GoWest criterium series and the Herald Cycle Tour in Port Elizabeth. On the track, Hoffman was crowned the South African Omnium Champion, while Maroesjka Matthee took the women's title.

The Bonitas Pro Cycling team reigned supreme in the 2014 Engen cycle in the city series, winning all the men's races in the challenge. HB Kruger gave the team its win

in Pretoria, while Dylan Girdlestone took the honours in Cape Town and Durban.

The women's event was won by Lise Olivier, who won the Pretoria and Durban events, while Matthee won in Cape Town.

Herman Fouche bagged victories in the Campus2Campus Classique in Potchefstroom and claimed overall victory at the Badplaas Tour in Mpumalanga and an elusive victory at the Dis-Chem Ride for Sight.

Westvaal-BMC rider JC Nel claimed his maiden classic victory in the Jock Cycle Classique after securing the overall win in the 151 km race in three hours, 58 minutes and 41 seconds.

Nic Dougall claimed his second successive victory in the four-day Tour de Boland. He also claimed the overall honours in 9:53:03. Reynard Butler and Olivier were crowned new champions of the Tour Durban cycle race, while MTN Qhubeka's Jacques Janse van Rensburg was the overall winner of the Mzansi Tour.

On the mountain bike, Kevin Evans and Max Knox picked up the Sani2c mountain bike race title, while Johann Rabie and Gawie Combrinck claimed their maiden win in the nine-day JoBerg2c mountain bike race.

The Team Bulls pair of Simon Stiebajhn and Tim Bohme secured the overall title in the UCI ranked Cape Pioneer Trek international mountain bike stage race in October. The women's overall title went to Catherine Williamson and Alice Pirard.

Robyn de Groot won the Nissan Trailseeker mountain bike series title after winning all races in the five-event series.

When it came to national titles, MTN-Qhubeka rider Louis Meintjes claimed top honours in the elite men's race at the South African Road Cycling Championships. James Reid and De Groot claimed the elite men and women's national titles at the South African National MTB Marathon Championships.

Tiaan Odendaal claimed his third consecutive men's national title at the Downhill Championships held at the Thaba Trails in Gauteng.

Mariske Strauss and Rourke Croeser were crowned cross country champions, while Kyle Dodd and Maia Rawlins were crowned BMX national champions.

Strauss was also crowned African champ in the cross-country event at the African Continental championships, while Philip Buys claimed the men's title.

Andrew Neethling and Hayley-Ann Adamson came out tops at the African downhill championships.

South African Masters mountain biker Nedene Cahill took first prize at the UCI Mountain Bike

Masters World Championships in the Women's cross-country 30 – 34 age category in Norway.

Boxing

The SRSA wants boxing to be turned into a leading sporting code in South Africa by 2017.

Vision 2017 is a strategy to resuscitate and promote boxing in all the provinces. The plan will improve the administration and safeguard the health and general wellbeing of professional boxers. Authorities have also pledged to promote, market, and sanction quality boxing events and tournaments.

To achieve these objectives, BSA has to ensure that there is strong leadership, accountability and diversity across all business units and governing spheres.

The parties further agreed that BSA would introduce guiding principles for improved revenue streams and revenue collection.

Revenues would be generated from government grants, bequests, site fees, ticket sales, registration fees, tournament licensing fees, penalties, incomes from invested surplus, sponsorship and fund-raising, broadcast and advertising income.

Chris van Heerden captured the vacant IBF international Welterweight title by outpointing Cecil McCulla.

Xolani Ndongeni, the South African National and IBO International Lightweight champion outpointed Vusumzi Tyatyeka to win the overall PBL competition.

In Heavyweight: Ruan Visser moved into the third position after knocking out Quincy Taylor in the third round in a fight that took place in Houston.

In Featherweight: Aphiwe Mboyiya outpointed Lwando Molwana in the PBL event, which saw him exchanging positions with Paul Magxialani.

Former rated boxers, Lwando Molwana (Feather) and Cletus Mbele (Bantamweight) were added to Watchlist section.

Cricket

In 2014, SRSA recognised the outstanding achievement of the Proteas' cricket captain and the world's best batsman AB de Villiers.

In August 2014, the Proteas completed a comprehensive 3 – 0 series whitewash of Zimbabwe, winning by seven wickets with 136 balls to spare in the third one-day international in Bulawayo.

In February 2014, Cricket South Africa (CSA) announced an innovative ticketing system for cricket fans in the country. CSA was the first national sports federation in South Africa to introduce the new near-field communication

(NFC) technology already in use by various sporting codes in Europe and the USA. The technology allows supporters to buy match tickets, parking, food and beverages on their smart phone or PC, enhancing the stadium experience for fans so that they can enjoy convenience and actively support the Proteas and the franchise teams live at stadiums. CSA issued Love Cricket NFC cards, which brings numerous benefits to fans. [<http://businessstech.co.za>]

In April 2014, the men's and ladies' T20 cricket teams played in the semi-finals World Cup games in Bangladesh.

Canoeing, rowing

In 2014, South African rowers performed exceptionally well when John Smith and James Thompson were crowned world champions after setting a world-best time of 6:05.36 in Amsterdam.

Their victory came only months after making the transition from sweep-oar rowing to sculling and two years after tasting Olympic success.

Adding to the team's accomplishments at the World Rowing Championships in the Netherlands, Shaun Keeling and Vincent Breet claimed a bronze medal in their men's pair boat class.

The women's lightweight doubles sculls crew of Kirsten McCann and Ursula Grobler finished in fourth place.

The women's pair of Lee-Ann Persse and Naydene Smith finished sixth in their final, while the men's coxed pair of Lawrence Brittain and David Hunt, with Willie Morgan as coxswain, were fifth.

These successes came on the back of injuries which had denied the team continuity and depth and resulted in Olympic gold medallist Sizwe Ndlovu missing the world champs.

Ndlovu, however, added another accolade to the South African rowing community by being named as a representative for lightweight male rowers serving on the Athletes' Commission of the World Rowing Federation.

The World Rowing Federation (WRF) nominated Barrow as a finalist for the 2014 World Rowing Coach-of-the-Year award South African canoeing also experienced a stellar year on the water with Olympic bronze medallist Bridgitte Hartley and stalwart Hank McGregor flying the flag. Hartley made history when she won South Africa's first medal in an Olympic event at the Canoe World Sprint Championships in Moscow. She repeated her performance at the London Olympics by winning the bronze medal in the K1 500 m, finishing third at the world championships. McGregor cemented his status as a legend of South African canoe marathons, claiming his

fourth K1 gold medal at the ICF Canoe Marathon World Championships. He then teamed up with Jasper Mocke to clinch the K2 gold medal and became the first South African to win double gold at a world championship event.

Jenna Ward earned a bronze medal in the women's under-23 race McGregor narrowly edged out Andy Birkett to win the Fish River Canoe Marathon while Abby Adie took the women's title.

Birkett won his fourth Dusi canoe marathon trophy, paired with Sbonela Zondi, in the K2 race. Robyn Kime lifted her fifth consecutive Dusi trophy in 2014. She successfully partnered with Abbey Ulansky for a second time, while it was Ulansky's (nee Miedema) record ninth women's Dusi title.

In July 2014, Andy Birkett managed to hold off Western Cape ace Graeme Solomon to claim his maiden Berg River Canoe Marathon title, while Abby Adie stormed to a convincing win in the ladies' race.

With the intention of bettering his eighth place in the 2013 Berg River Canoe Marathon, 62-year-old grandmaster Lee McGregor had to settle for eighth place overall at the 2014 event.

Luke Stowman produced a fine display on the last day to not only claim the top spot in the under-23 category but ninth place overall too.

There was a strong performance from Thulani Mbanjwa, who powered his way to 10th place.

Golf

The 2014 Sunshine Tour was the 15th season of professional golf tournament. The tour is based predominantly in South Africa with other events being held in neighbouring countries, including Zimbabwe, Swaziland, Zambia and Namibia. In February 2014, George Coetzee won the Joburg Open in Johannesburg, Gauteng and Thomas Aiken won the Africa Open in East London in the Eastern Cape. In March 2014, Trevor Fisher Jnr won the Investec Cup in Rustenburg, North West. In April 2014, Titch Moore won the Telkom Business PGA Championship in Johannesburg, Gauteng, Jbe' Kruger won the Golden Pilsener Zimbabwe Open in Zimbabwe. In May 2014, Danie van Tonder won the Investec Royal Swazi Open in Swaziland, Wallie Coetzee won the Mopani Copper Mines Zambia open in Zambia and Christiaan Basson won the Lombard Insurance Classic in Swaziland. In June 2014, Lyle Rowe won the Zambia Sugar Open in Zambia and Danie van Tonder won the Vodacom Origin of Golf in Limpopo. In July 2014, Dean Burmester won the Sun City Challenge in Sun City, North West, Jean Hugo won the Vodacom Origins of Golf (Arabella) in the Western Cape

and Keith Horne won the Vodacom Origins of Golf (St Francis) in the Eastern Cape. Colin Nel won the Wild Waves Golf Challenge held in KwaZulu-Natal, in August 2014. In September 2014, Louis de Jager won the Vodacom Origins of Golf (Wild Coast). In October 2014, PH McIntyre won the Vodacom Origins of Golf (Vaal de Grace) in Parys, Titch Moore won the Sun Boardwalk Golf Challenge in Port Elizabeth, Merrick Bremner won the BMG Classic in Johannesburg and Keith Horne won the Vodacom Origins of Golf Final in the Western Cape. In November 2014, Louis de Jager won the Nedbank Affinity Cup in North West and Jaco Ahlers won the Lion of Africa Cape Town Open. In December 2014, Branden Grace won the Alfred Dunhill Championship in Limpopo.

Justin Walters celebrated becoming the inaugural Challenge Tour graduate of the Year at Wentworth Club with a five under par 67 to take his place on the BMW PGA Championship leaderboard. The 33-year-old South African, holed a 50 foot putt on the final green.

Hockey

The South Africa teams finished in their best final positions since the inception of the Indoor Hockey World Cup (IHCW) at Indoor Hockey World Cup 2015 in Leipzig Arena, Germany.

The world number 18 Spar SA women's team beat Canada 4 – 2 after the score was 2 – 2 at half-time to end ninth in the IHCW women's event. The South African men, under captain Dale Isaac and head coach Ryan Hack of Durban were the mainstays in their team's success.

They beat Canada 2 – 1 to end 11th.

Ice hockey

The South African women's national ice hockey team has participated in International Ice Hockey Federation events since the 1999 International Ice Hockey Federation (IIHF) Women's World Championship.

Cape Town was selected as the host city for the 2015 Men's Division II Group B World Championships. South Africa played against the following national teams: China, Bulgaria, Mexico, New Zealand and Israel.

The tournament took place from 13 to 19 April 2015 at the Grand West Ice Station located at the Old Goodwood Showgrounds.

Motorsport

Mark Cronje and Robin Houghton dominated the Tour Natal Rally, the inaugural round of the 2015 South African Rally National Championship, and scored seven stage wins on their way to overall victory.

Cronje and Houghton came home in two hours

six minutes and one second – beating defending champions Leeroy Poulter/Elvéne Coetzee by 44,6 seconds.

Dakar hero, Giniel de Villiers and Carolyn Swan in the second Castrol Toyota Yaris did not take any risks to secure fourth place, while Japie van Niekerk and Gordon Noble had to work hard to regain fifth after they suffered a puncture in stage eight, costing them valuable seconds. In the end they beat Gugu Zulu and Pierre Arries, in his first outing in top-tier rallying for over a year, by only nine seconds – displacing them with one special stage still to run. [www.motorsport.co.za]

In May 2014, Sheldon van der Linde became the youngest driver to win an SA Saloon Car race at the VW Cup round in Port Elizabeth.

In July 2014, Kelvin van der Linde was awarded the Driver of the Year award for the 2014 International Automobile Federation's (FIA) Young Driver Excellence Academy at a graduation ceremony at the Paul Ricard circuit in France. The Young Driver Excellence Academy is an initiative of the FIA Institute for Motor Sport Safety and Sustainability. Van der Linde is the youngest to have won either of these titles. The Academy programme, which is aimed at developing and improving motor sport safety and sustainability and promotes excellence and achievement in all areas of motor sport.

Netball

Netball South Africa underlined its reputation as one of the fastest growing sports in the country as it scooped two categories at the 2014 SPAR Sport Awards.

SPAR Proteas netball star Lenize Potgieter, won the Up and Coming Athlete of the Year and Zanele Mdoana won the 2014 Style Star Award.

Rugby

Springbok flyhalf, Pat Lambie, landed a 52-metre penalty with a minute to go as South Africa ended New Zealand's 22-game unbeaten run with a 27 – 25 victory in their final Rugby Championship clash at Ellis Park in October 2014. South Africa became the first team to defeat the world champion All Blacks since England in late 2012.

The Blitzbokke won the Dubai edition of the IRB World Sevens series courtesy of a 33 – 7 victory over Australia in the cup final. Kwagga Smith enjoyed a day to remember, including a standout performances in both the semi-final victory over New Zealand as well as the final where he was first to cross the whitewash with a strong bust down the right.

At the Commonwealth Games in Glasgow in 2014, the Springbok Sevens defeated four times champions New Zealand 17 – 12 in front of a

capacity crowd at Ibrox Stadium, to win a historic gold medal.

South Africa wrestled the title away from New Zealand in a memorable final and in the process handed the Kiwis their first ever defeat at the Commonwealth Games. The Springbok Sevens' previous best attempts were two bronze medals.

Running

Endurance running is a popular sport in South Africa and is widely supported. It is highlighted by two ultra-marathons, namely the Comrades Marathon and the Two Oceans Marathon. Both events are world-renowned and attract large numbers of participants from across the globe.

The Comrades Marathon takes place in KwaZulu-Natal and the Two Oceans in the Western Cape. The 2014 Comrades Marathon was won by Bongmusa Mthembu, followed by Ludwick Mamabolo and Gift Kelehe – all of them South Africans.

Three-time Comrades winner, Zimbabwean Stephen Muzhingi, was fourth.

Eight of the top 10 runners in the 2014 Comrades Marathon men's race were South African.

In the women's race, Eleanor Greenwood from the United Kingdom took first place, with the Nurgalieva twins, Elena and Olesya, second and third respectively. Fourth was Irina Antropova. South African Olympic icon Zola Budd was number seven.

Soccer

The Durban Under-19 International Football Tournament, backed and jointly organised by KwaZulu-Natal, the City of Durban and the South African Football Association, will take place annually in Durban for at least the next three years. Durban hosted the first of these tournaments in June 2014. Youth development was the cornerstone of every successful footballing nation. The 2014 Durban Under-19 International Football Tournament could be a stepping-stone in the careers of players hoping to represent South Africa at the FIFA World Cup in Russia in 2018.

Surfing, surfski, sailing

An ecstatic Eastern Province team won the President's Cup at the 49th South African Surfing Championships for the second time in the history of the event, in September 2014.

The Association of Surfing Professionals announced the return of South Africa's Jeffreys Bay to the elite Samsung Galaxy ASP World Championship Tour (WCT) schedule for the 2014 season. Taking place from 10 to 20 July

2014, the J-Bay Open served as the sixth of 11 stops on the 2014 Samsung Galaxy ASP WCT schedule and signed a three-year agreement to host the world's best surfers from 2014 to 2016.

Durban's reputation as a global surfski mecca was strengthened in June 2014 as the nation's best ocean paddlers battled for national titles in the newly launched FNB Mazars Durban Downwind surfski race. The brand new event will not only become the permanent home of both the KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng Surfski champions annually, but the 2014 opening edition also doubled as the 2014 South African Surfski Championships. Starting at Marine Surf Lifesaving Club at Durban's Addington Beach, paddlers headed 26 km either north to La Mercy or south to Amanzimtoti – depending on the wind direction. The race seeks to become KwaZulu-Natal's premier downwind surfski event.

In June 2014, Fish Hoek's renowned Mocké clan capped off a sublime family weekend's effort in KwaZulu-Natal by winning three of the four SA S2 Surfski Championship titles up for grabs at Sunday's second day of the inaugural FNB Mazars Durban Downwind surfski race. With the national singles title already in his possession after a memorable paddle, Jasper Mocké teamed up with his older brother Dawid and the pair clinched their fourth national title together before Dawid's wife, evergreen competitor Nikki Mocké, and Olympic bronze medallist Bridgitte Hartley won the women's race.

Fresh from their promising performances on the 2014 ISAF World Cup circuit and the European Cup circuit, South African Olympians Roger Hudson and Asenathi Jim once again packed their bags, this time for Abu Dhabi, after receiving an invitation to the first ever ISAF World Cup final. Just 20 boats raced in each of the 10 Olympic classes in Abu Dhabi, meaning only the finest sailors in the world were competing there in November 2014. The top Asian and the top non-Asian teams at the last qualifying event of the 2014 season, raced in China later in November, together with the 18 already invited, made up the 20-team World Cup final in the men's 470 event. The South Africans' qualification for the World Cup final was based on their ISAF world rankings, which have ranged between 19 and 22. This ranking reflected a number of outstanding performances in major Olympic Class events in Europe. These included their historic gold medal at the 2014 European Cup event in Holland, the gold medal in the inaugural European Sailing Federation Cup raced over three events in Italy, Holland and Germany, and second place in the medal races of four of the events on the 2014 World Cup and

European Cup circuits.

South Africa's 49er sailors Graeme Willcox and Andrew Tarboton were thrilled with a breakthrough first-place finish in one of their races at the ISAF World Championships in Santander, Spain but recognised they had a way to go to achieve their dream of competing in the Rio Olympics in 2016.

Swimming

In March 2014, Dylan Bosch, broke the American 200 m butterfly record at a University of Michigan championship.

In August 2014, South Africa's endurance swimmer, Lewis Pugh, completed the fourth leg of his Seven Swims in the Seven Seas Campaign to highlight the need for, and importance of marine protected areas. He swam 10 km off the coast of Sile, a town outside Istanbul in Turkey. The Cape Long Distance Swimming Association is dedicated to offering information and news on open-water swimming around Cape Town, with particular focus on solo swims in the sea. Their aims are to:

- promote long distance open water swimming in general
- help coordinate, officiate and record all long distance open water solo swims in Cape waters
- promote Cape Town as an open water swimming destination
- assist those travelling to Cape Town for swims, by offering open water swimming information and advice, as well as travelling advice to optimise your Cape Town experience.

Long distance swimming, which is defined as any distance over 7 km, has a long history in South Africa. The first recorded swim was in 1909 when Henry Charteris Hooper swam from Robben Island to the old Cape Town harbour. Since then, more than 400 individuals have done the crossing from or to Robben Island as well as various other distance swims in South Africa.

Tennis

Kevin Anderson, South Africa's leading tennis player, started 2014 by reaching the fourth round of the Australian Open, before being knocked out in straight sets by Tomáš Berdych. He then reached the final at Delray Beach, before losing to Marin Čilić. At the Mexican Open held in Acapulco, he again reached the final, losing to Grigor Dimitrov in three sets. In the Indian Wells Masters, Anderson reached the quarterfinals, but lost to Roger Federer. At the 2014 Madrid Open, he beat Radek Štěpánek, before losing to Tomáš Berdych. He reached the fourth round in the French Open, before losing to fifth seed

David Ferrer. He then reached the quarterfinals of the AEGON Championships held at the Queen's Club, London, before losing to Radek Štěpánek. At the Wimbledon Championships he defeated Fabio Fognini to reach the fourth round, where he lost to Andy Murray. Anderson made it to the quarterfinals of the Masters 1000 event in Toronto after defeating Fognini and Stanislas Wawrinka. At the Cincinnati Masters, he had a disappointing first-round, straight-set exit at the hands of John Isner. He made it to the third round of the US Open, where he lost to eventual champion Marin Čilić. At the Paris Masters he again defeated Wawrinka to reach the quarterfinals, after which Tomas Berdych beat him. The South African ended the year at 16th place in the ATP year-end rankings.

Wheelchair Tennis is one of the fastest growing wheelchair sports in the world. The ITF considers South Africa one of the global success stories in introducing the sport, making Wheelchair Tennis South Africa (WTSA) one of the top wheelchair tennis structures and nations in the world. WTSA has sustainable sports programmes running in each of South Africa's nine provinces to introduce and offer wheelchair tennis to as many physically disabled individuals and communities as possible. Through these programmes, people with disabilities are given the opportunity to learn a new skill and excel at a sport. Players are continuously developed and discovered through these programmes from introduction to the game, to ultimately, representing South Africa internationally.

Chess

The Department of Basic Education encourages chess as a serious sport in schools.

South Africa intends to use chess as an educational tool, to enhance logic and lateral thinking for mathematics and sciences, which many people find difficult.

South Africa will count on the Local Organising Committee's commitment to supporting chess development programmes in underprivileged communities.

Speed skating

The South African Speed Skating Championships was held at the Mandela Village in Hammanskraal in March 2014. Roller Sport SA governs speed skating in South Africa. The organisation has 22 clubs that trained skaters and administrators to run clubs. Interest in speed skating had grown over the years, especially in areas such as Hammanskraal.

Dance World Cup 2014

In July 2014, South Africa scooped 14 medals and finished sixth overall, with some standout individual performances, at the Dance World Cup 2014 World Finals held in Portugal over the past week.

More than 3 000 competitors from 28 countries performed in over 1 400 routines in the weeklong competition in Algarve.

South Africans scooped a total of four gold, seven silver and three bronze medals at the global showpiece, which offers competition in eight different dance genres for children and young adults.



Tourism is a national priority and contributes significantly to economic development. The national tourism sector strategy provides a blueprint for the sector to meet the growth targets contained in the new growth path. The National Department of Tourism's (NDT) strategic goals over the medium term are to:

- maximise domestic tourism and foreign tourist arrivals in South Africa
- expand domestic and foreign investment in the South African tourism industry
- expand tourist infrastructure
- improve the range and quality of tourist services
- improve the tourist experience and value for money
- improve research and knowledge management
- contribute to growth and development and expand the tourism share of gross domestic product (GDP)
- improve competitiveness and sustainability in the tourism sector
- strengthen collaboration with tourist organisations.

The inflow of tourists to South Africa is the result of the success of policies aimed at entrenching South Africa's status as a major international tourism and business events destination.

The Tourism Business Index's quarterly index produced by the Tourism Business Council of South Africa indicated that revenue per available room in the hotel sector increased by 7,9% during the first 10 months of 2014. A Statistics South Africa (StatsSA) report has found that the total income for the South Africa tourist accommodation industry, which includes restaurant and bar sales, grew by 7%.

In May 2015, there were 1 202 795 foreign arrivals to South Africa. The arrivals were made up of 89 257 non-visitors and 1 113 538 visitors. The visitors consisted of 428 131 same-day visitors and 685 407 overnight visitors. The breakdown of the tourists by region was as follows: 138 258 from overseas; 533 361 from the Southern African Development Community (SADC) countries; 12 594 from other African countries and the country of residence of 1 194 tourists was classified as unspecified.

Legislation and policies

The NDT operates under the following legislation and policies:

The Tourism Act, 2014 (Act 3 of 2014) provides for the development and promotion of sustainable tourism for the benefit of South Africa, its residents and its visitors. It also provides for the continued existence of the South African Tourism Board, the establishment of the Tourism Grading Council, and the regulation of

Tourism

the tourist guide profession.

The Act aims to:

- promote the practising of responsible tourism for the benefit of South Africa and for the enjoyment of all its residents and foreign visitors
- provide for the effective domestic and international marketing of South Africa as a tourist destination
- promote quality tourism products and services
- promote growth in and development of the tourism sector
- enhance cooperation and coordination between all spheres of government in developing and managing tourism.

In terms of the Act, responsible tourism is tourism which:

- seeks to avoid negative economic, environmental and social impacts
- generates greater economic benefits for local people, enhances the well-being of host communities and improves working conditions and access to the tourism sector
- involves local people in decisions that affect their lives
- makes positive contributions to the conservation of natural and cultural heritage and to the maintenance of the world's diversity
- provides enjoyable experiences for tourists through meaningful connections with local people and a greater understanding of local cultural, social and environmental issues
- provides access for physically challenged people
- is culturally sensitive, engenders respect between tourists and hosts and builds local pride and confidence.
- The mandate of the NDT, as outlined in the Tourism Act, 1993 (Act 72 of 1993), is to promote sustainable growth and development in the tourism sector. The 1996 White Paper on the Development and Promotion of Tourism in South Africa provides for the promotion of domestic and international tourism
- The Tourism Act of 1993 provides for:
 - promoting tourism to and in South Africa
 - regulating and rationalising the tourism industry
 - implementing measures aimed at the maintenance and enhancement of the standards of facilities and services hired out or made available to tourists
 - coordinating and rationalising the activities of people who are active in the tourism industry
 - establishing a board with legal powers
 - authorising the Minister of Tourism to establish a grading and classification scheme in

respect of accommodation establishments

- authorising the Minister to establish schemes for prescribed sectors of the tourism industry
- registering tourist guides
- prohibiting any person to act for gain as a tourist guide unless he or she has been registered as a tourist guide in terms of the Act.

Budget and funding

The NTSS seeks to increase tourism's total direct and indirect contribution to the economy from R189,4 billion in 2009 to R318,2 billion in 2015 and R499 billion in 2020.

The department received a budget allocation of R1,6 billion in the 2014/15 financial year.

A few years ago, the NDT made the strategic decision to invest in the emerging markets in Africa, South America and in Asia, with good results. In light of this, the department will invest R218 million over three years to grow South Africa's share of this market. It also opened offices in Angola, Kenya and Nigeria, and will expand its footprint to Ghana, Tanzania and Uganda through a hub strategy.

Role players South African Tourism (SAT)

In terms of the Tourism Act of 1993, SAT is mandated to market South Africa internationally and domestically as a preferred tourism destination, to ensure that tourist facilities and services are of the highest standard, and to monitor and evaluate the performance of the tourism sector.

The organisation's main strategic goal over the medium term is to ensure that the tourism sector makes an increasing contribution to economic growth. Other goals include increasing the annual volume of international tourists visiting the country, growing tourists' contribution to the economy through their spending, increasing international brand awareness of South Africa as a travel and business destination, and increasing the number of graded accommodation establishments.

Given the strong growth potential in Africa, SAT was allocated R300 million to expand its marketing presence on the continent, which will include the opening of another four offices in the next few years.

SAT's Sho't Left marketing campaign for domestic tourists is already delivering results and will be bolstered by another R100 million in secured ring-fenced investment in 2015/16.

The "It's Here, Vaya Mzansi" campaign is an industry-wide project that relies on collaboration and partnership from the wider industry for success and to grow domestic leisure travel

to meet targets. SAT partnered with more than 50 tourism companies in South Africa to create discount vouchers ranging from tour-operator services, accommodation and experiences including wine tastings, canopy tours and hiking.

In 2014, SAT introduced a global hub strategy created to effectively deliver the destination marketing message with a wider reach than ever before.

Tourism Enterprise Partnership (TEP)

TEP is a non-profit company that facilitates the growth, development and sustainability of small tourism businesses. This is achieved through a number of products and services that provide hands-on, step-by-step support and guidance, ultimately leading to improved product quality, operational efficiency and market reach.

Funding for TEP's small tourism business development interventions is provided by the NDT as well as the Business Trust, the Tourism Micro-enterprises Support Fund (a sister company that provides funding specifically for the support of micro enterprises), global financial services company Credit Suisse, and the Eastern Cape Development Corporation.

Tourism Indaba

The Tourism Indaba, held from 10 to 12 May, provided an opportunity to showcase South Africa and its people.

The Tourism Indaba that takes place in Durban annually is one of the largest tourism marketing events in Africa and one of the top three events of its kind in the world. For two years in a row, INDABA has won the award for Africa's best travel and tourism show. This award was presented by the Association of World Travel Awards.

It showcases a wide variety of southern Africa's best tourism products and attracts international visitors and media from across the world.

To bolster growth, government has identified core markets, investment markets and tactical markets across regional Africa, the Americas, Asia and Australasia, as well as in Europe.

A meeting of minds redefining tourism in Africa. Introducing Two Shows One Africa, as Indaba and We Are Africa change the face of travel trade shows on the continent.

SAT welcomed and endorsed the travel trade show, We Are Africa in a unique and exciting collaboration set to bring business benefits to exhibitors, buyers, and the greater African tourism sector. Where Indaba represented the fabric of the Southern African travel trade and the breadth of the tourism sector for nearly 30 years, We Are Africa is a tight, exclusive community for

niche, high-end luxury products who exhibit by invitation-only.

To illustrate the extent of the strategic alliance of Two Shows One Africa, SAT was the title sponsor of We Are Africa that took place in Cape Town from 5 to 8 May 2014, just before Indaba 2014. Moreover, We Are Africa and Indaba collaborated to offer mutual exhibitors the best possible exposure to the best quality hosted buyer pool. Indaba has earned its place as a Southern African institution in the industry, and one of the world's iconic travel trade shows. With the Two Shows One Africa collaboration, Indaba has a We Are Africa senior representative on its advisory board, and reciprocally for a SAT representative on the We Are Africa advisory board. Both parties are eager to navigate a more formal, long-term association; to capitalise on the opportunity of escalating the trade shows into the future together.

The Two Shows One Africa collaboration is but one of the many profound changes – albeit it a significant one – that was introduced at Indaba 2014. Each upgrade to the show was carefully considered against a deliberate roadmap to take Indaba to the next level. The announcement that INDABA would be a three-day trade show brought it in line with global trends and best practice, respecting the busy schedules of buyers and exhibitors. The inclusion of two exciting new meeting zones at Indaba; new Two Shows One Africa combined digital platforms to facilitate seamless meetings; the addition of a premium exhibitor lounge; and a compelling invitation to all African destinations to exhibit at Indaba, Two Shows One Africa is entrenched as the continent's premier tourism week invitation to the world.

Meetings Africa

Attendance figures at Meetings Africa 2014 were up by 15% compared to 2013, with a total of 3 295 delegates attending Africa's premier business events trade show.

Meetings Africa offers the continent a platform to do business, representing the best of the whole continent in one venue, and gives the African business events sector easy access to the best regional and international buyers.

Among the attendees at Meetings Africa 2014 were 169 international qualified hosted buyers, 31 African association hosted buyers, 238 local corporate buyers, 839 visitor delegates, 263 exhibitors and 162 journalists.

In keeping with its theme, "Advancing Africa Together", Meetings Africa took a decisive step in 2014 in its aim of becoming a truly pan-African business events trade show. There were 13 African destinations exhibiting at the 2014 show,



South Africa was home to a record number of 82 Blue Flag beaches, marinas and whale watching boats for the 2014/15 summer season, according to the Wildlife and Environment Society of South Africa. The 82 Blue Flag sites in South Africa consist of 45 beaches, six marinas and six whale-watching boats that have been awarded Full Status as well as 25 sites that have been awarded Pilot Status. The latter is an important developmental stage acting as an incubation period for potential Blue Flag sites. Blue Flag is a prestigious, voluntary eco-label for beaches, marinas and boats that is recognised as a trusted symbol of quality and regarded by the World Tourism Organisation as the most well-known eco-label globally.

Eastern Cape

Boknes Beach, Boknesstrand, Ndlambe
Dolphin Beach, Jeffreys Bay
Hamburg
Humewood Beach, Port Elizabeth
Kariega
Kelly's Beach, Port Alfred
Kenton-on-Sea
King's Beach, Port Elizabeth
Kleinmond, West Beach, Ndlambe
Middle Beach, Port Alfred

KwaZulu-Natal

Alkanstrand Beach,
Richards Bay
Blythedale
Dokodweni South
Lucien Beach, Margate
Marina Beach
Pennington
Ramsgate Beach
Southport Beach
Trafalgar
Umzumbe Beach

Marinas

False Bay Yacht Club, Cape Town
Granger Bay Water Club, Cape Town
Harbour Island
Royal Alfred Marina, Port Elizabeth
Thesen Island, Knysna
Yachtport, Saldanha Bay

Northern Cape

MacDougall's Bay, Port Nolloth

Pilot Status

Ansteys
Dokodweni Main
Dokodweni North
Mpenjati
Park Rynie
Scottburgh Main
Tugela
Twinstreams
Umdloti Main

Umdloti Tidal
Umgababa
Umhlanga Main
Umlazi
Ushaka
Westbrook
Willard

Pilot Status

Jongensfontein
Melkbosstrand
Stilbaai Wes
Struisbaai
Swartvlei

Pilot Status

Pilot Status
Cape St Francis
Hobie
Mtentu
Mzamba

Western Cape

Bikini Beach, Gordon's Bay
Brenton-on-Sea, Knysna
Buffalo Bay, Knysna
Camps Bay, Cape Town
Clifton IV, Cape Town
De Bakke, Mossel Bay
Gouritsmond, Hessequa
Grotto Beach, Hermanus
Hartenbos, Mossel Bay
Hawston Beach, Hermanus
Keurboomstrand, Plettenberg Bay
Kleinbrak, Mossel Bay
Kleinmond
Lappiesbaai, Stilbaai
Llandudno, Cape Town
Lookout
Mnandi Beach, False Bay
Muizenberg Beach, Cape Town
Nature's Valley, Garden Route National Park
Preekstoel, Stilbaai
Robberg V, Plettenberg Bay
Santos, Mossel Bay
Silverstroomstrand, Atlantis
Strandfontein Beach, Cape Town
Strandfontein Beach, Vredendal
Wilderness, Garden Route National Park
Witsand, Hessequa

Whale Watching Boats

Fling
Gaia
Ocean Odyssey
Robberg
Samara
Whale Whisperer

including South Africa. The others were Botswana, Ethiopia, Kenya, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, Swaziland, Tanzania, Uganda, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

Meeting Africa's Business Opportunity Networking Day was well supported and gave delegates the opportunity to meet and discuss strategies to advance Africa and build the global competi-

tiveness of the continent. The day included workshops and seminars; the IMEX-MPI-MCI Future Leaders Forum; an Event Greening Forum; an Association Day; the International Congress and Convention Association, Africa Chapter supplier/client workshop conference; and a gala dinner that gave delegates an opportunity to network with the continent's public- and private-sector captains of the business events industry.

Tourism, Hospitality and Sport Education and Training Authority (Theta)

Theta is the sector education and training authority (Seta) established under the Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998), for the tourism, hospitality and sport economic sector. Theta comprises the following chambers:

- hospitality
- conservation and tourist guiding
- sport, recreation and fitness
- tourism and travel services
- gaming and lotteries.

Every chamber has its own committee that helps Theta to identify industry needs.

Theta's main function is to contribute to raising skills or bringing skills to the employed or those wanting to be employed in their sector. This is done by ensuring people learn skills needed by employers and communities.

Tourism Grading Council of South Africa (TGCSA)

The TGCSA's grading system is South Africa's only officially recognised system for the star grading of accommodation establishments.

Establishments are assessed according to the type of accommodation they provide. There are nine types of establishments:

- formal service accommodation (hotels, lodges)
- self-catering
- backpacker
- hostelling
- caravans
- camping
- meetings
- exhibitions
- special events.

Tourism Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Charter Council

The Tourism BBBEE Charter Council's roles include:

- providing guidance on sector-specific matters effecting BBBEE in entities within the sector
- compiling reports on the status of BBBEE within the sector for the Minister and the BEE Advisory Council

- sharing information with sector members, approved accreditation agencies and the Minister pertaining to BBBEE in the sector.

Programmes and projects

National Tourism Sector Strategy (NTSS)

The vision of the NTSS is to position South Africa as one of the top 20 tourism destinations global by 2020.

The overall goal of the strategy is to drive the tourism economy, enhance visitor experiences, position South Africa as a destination of choice and sustain good governance in the industry.

The key focus areas of the NTSS are arrivals, GDP and job creation. The tourism sector is working towards creating 225 000 jobs by 2020.

To achieve all of its objectives, the NTSS focuses on domestic tourism with the intention to increase the number of domestic trips from 30,9 million in 2009 to 54 million by 2020.

Regional tourism is also being targeted with South Africa looking to take advantage of hitherto untapped markets such as outbound tourists.

This strategy represents the department's commitment to intelligent planning and policy formulation. It was developed over two years in close collaboration with local and provincial government, an advisory panel of top industry minds, representatives of various professional bodies, academia, tourism marketing agencies, civil society and the broader public.

The NTSS is a document that the entire sector is committed to and includes coordinated and credible targets. The strategy rests on three pillars, namely:

- driving the tourism economy
- enhancing visitor experiences
- ensuring sustainability and good governance in the industry.

Tourism Support Programme (TSP)

The TSP is a reimbursable cash grant designed to support the setting up tourism-related businesses. A key objective is to spread tourism investment across South Africa, while job creation is also a priority. It was introduced in 2008 and ended in 2014. A grant of between 15% and 30% of the investment costs for start-up and expansion was offered. Some 545 applications had been approved with an incentive value of R1,1 billion.

Originally managed by the Department of Trade and Industry, the TSP was transferred to the NDT in April 2013 in line with the Industrial Policy Action Plan 2011/12 – 2013/14.

This means that the department will in future also develop and implement an incentive that is better aligned with the current strategic priorities of the tourism sector.

Hospitality Youth Initiative (HYI)

The HYI is aimed at helping unemployed youth to find meaningful employment in the hospitality industry at entry level.

The programme targets unemployed youths between the ages of 18 and 35 with Grade 12 senior certificates.

The programme provides one month's theoretical training for entry into the hospitality industry.

Training focuses on communication, life skills, customer care, leadership and HIV and Aids management.

On completing the first phase, trainees are placed in tourism establishments where they receive on-the-job training with internationally accepted standards as laid down by the hospitality industry.

At the end of the training, beneficiaries receive certificates of competence and can be absorbed by hospitality establishments.

National Tourism Service Excellence Requirements

The National Tourism Service Excellence Requirements are aimed at improving and maintaining service levels at all service touch points in the tourism value chain as well as guiding the sector to achieve the NTSS objective of positioning South Africa as one of the top 20 global tourism destinations.

Previously the tourism value chain in South Africa did not have integrated standards and norms, and this contributed to inconsistencies in service levels.

The Service Excellence Requirements provides a yardstick to be used by all tourism service providers in the value chain to deliver quality service and experiences that equal or surpass world standards.

The South African Bureau of Standards developed the standards on behalf of the tourism sector and benchmarked them against international requirements. The requirements have four key focus areas, namely marketing, products, delivery of service, and monitoring and evaluation.

The department also introduced a National Service Excellence campaign under the theme "Excellent Service Starts with Me". The campaign is aimed at creating awareness and educating consumers and tourism product owners about the requirements.

National Minimum Standard for Responsible Tourism (NMSRT)

Responsible tourism is a tourism management strategy in which the tourism sector and tourists take responsibility protecting and conserving the

natural environment, respecting and conserving, for local cultures and ways of life, and contribute to stronger local economies and a better quality of life for local people.

It includes providing better holiday experiences for guests and good business opportunities for tourism enterprises. The concept of responsible tourism is gaining ground as a newly emerging trend worldwide.

The NDT in partnership with tourism stakeholders and the private sector, particularly accreditation agencies, developed the NMSRT.

South Africa has taken the lead on the continent by publishing a set of national minimum standards that are aligned with international standard ISO/IEC 17011.

The NMSRT comprises 41 criteria divided into four categories, namely:

- sustainable operations and management
- economic criteria
- social and cultural criteria
- environmental criteria.

Lilizela Tourism Awards

The 2014 Lilizela Awards recognised industry players within four focus areas reflecting eight categories, with the ninth category being the Minister's Award.

The awards acknowledge and applaud the efforts of people whose work sets global benchmarks in excellence. They will be rewarded across a number of broad categories: Service Excellence, Emerging Entrepreneur, Tourism

As part of its Mandela legacy project, the City of Tshwane has launched a tour called Relive the memory of President Nelson Mandela, aimed at mapping Madiba's footsteps in the city. The tour begins at Fort Klapperkop, which, although there is no direct association with Mandela, offers a view of the city. The second stop is Unisa, the world's largest distance learning institution, through which Mandela obtained his law degree. Next, visitors are taken to the Voortrekker Monument. From there the tour moves on to Reconciliation Road – the road between the Voortrekker Monument and Freedom Park. The road will lead visitors to Freedom Park, considered to be a new symbol to resolve past conflicts. The next stop is the Gallows at the Kgosi Mampuru II Prison. The seventh stop on the tour is the Palace of Justice on Church Square where the famous Rivonia Trial took place in 1964. Next visitors will visit the Old Synagogue in Paul Kruger Street where Mandela and his co-accused appeared on charges of treason between 1958 and 1961. The final stop on the tour is the Union Buildings where Mandela was inaugurated as the country's first democratically elected president in 1994. An optional additional stop on the tour takes visitors to the National Archives which houses the transcripts of the Rivonia Trial as well as the original manuscript of Mandela's autobiography *The Long Walk to Freedom*.

Responsibility and Sustainability, Universal Accessibility and the Minister's Award.

The award categories are:

- Minister's Award: Recognises outstanding, unique, impactful people, events or organisations that have performed in a manner that urges the industry closer to tourism's 2020 vision (to grow arrivals to 15 million and create 225 000 new jobs and increase the direct and indirect contribution to the GDP from R189,4 billion 2009 to R499 billion. Mavuso Msimang, the Chairperson of Tourism Business Council scooped the Award.
- In the Emerging Entrepreneurship category, Limpopo Guesthouse was the overall winner.
- In the B-BBEE Sustainable Development category, Ubuhle be Naga in Mpumalanga and City Lodge in Gauteng were the winners. The national finalists were selected from more than 1 200 entries.

International tourism South African Tourism

SAT's five-year plan contains five different programmes aimed at:

- increasing international arrivals, focusing on regional Africa
- promoting global visibility of the South African brand
- ensuring delivery of quality experiences using global best-practice grading systems
- ensuring quality execution of approved business plans and budgets
- providing the human resources, systems and structures to support the execution of SAT's business plans and budgets.

In an effort to make South Africa a most preferred tourism brand by 2014 and obtaining brand awareness of at least 79% in target markets SAT looked at three criteria: brand knowledge, brand journey and the conversion of positive brand awareness to sales. SAT aims to grade 9 000 properties by 2016/17.

Guidelines for international tourists

Every international traveller to South Africa must have a valid passport and, where necessary, a visa.

The Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), stipulates that all visitors to South Africa are required to have at least one blank page (both back and front) in their passport to enable the entry visa to be issued.

If there is insufficient space in the passport, entry will be denied.

Enquiries may be directed to South African

On 10 June 2014, the legacies of former President Nelson Mandela and late ANC leader Albert Luthuli lived on after their faces were engraved on medallion coins. The set is called the Liliesleaf Farm Memory and Legacy set. The medallion coins were launched by the South African Gold Exchange and the Scoin Shop in partnership with the Liliesleaf Trust at Liliesleaf Museum in Johannesburg. The event was to mark the 50th anniversary of 11 July 1963 when apartheid police swooped on the farm, where political activists had gone underground planning to topple the racist regime.

diplomatic representatives abroad or to the Department of Home Affairs in Pretoria. Visas are issued free of charge.

Visitors who intend travelling between South Africa and neighbouring countries are advised to apply for multiple-entry visas.

Passport holders of certain countries are exempt from visa requirements.

Tourists must satisfy immigration officers that they have the means to support themselves during their stay and that they have return or onward tickets. They must also have valid international health certificates.

Visitors from the yellow-fever belt in Africa and the USA, and those who travel through or disembark in these areas, have to be inoculated against the disease.

Malaria is endemic to parts of KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. It is essential to take anti-malaria precautions when visiting these areas.

Foreign tourists visiting South Africa can have their value-added tax (VAT) refunded, provided the value of the items purchased exceeds R20. VAT is refunded on departure at the point of exit.

South Africa's means of transport infrastructure – airlines, railroads, luxury touring buses (coaches) and motor cars – is such that tourists can travel comfortably and quickly from their port of entry to any part of the country.

South African Airways, as well as a number of international airlines, operate regular scheduled flights to and from South Africa.

Several domestic airlines operate in the country. There are also mainline trains to all parts of the country.

The tourist-accommodation industry in South Africa provides a wide spectrum of accommodation, from formal hotels to informal holiday flats and cottages, game lodges and reserves, guest houses, youth hostels and bed-and-breakfast establishments.

Tourist guiding

The NDT entered into an agreement with the Culture, Arts, Tourism and Hospitality Sports Seta (Cathssseta) which seeks to prioritise tourist-guide training and development throughout South Africa.

In 2014, government spent R100 million to market South Africa's tourism industry. These marketing efforts included the continued rollout of the Nothing's More Fun than a Sho't Left campaign. The country has initiatives in place to develop domestic tourism. A campaign about the benefits of tourism will be created by South African Tourism. The campaign is aimed at educating people about the accessibility of tourism and it will try to dispel the myth that tourism is for the elite.

The memorandum of understanding with Cathsseta also addresses areas of transformation within the tourist guiding sector, as well as the maintenance of standards through quality training and effective skills development programmes aimed at existing tourist guides.

The department engaged the Road Traffic Management Corporation to educate traffic officials throughout South Africa on how to enforce the legislation pertaining to tourist guides.

The NDT works closely with the Department of Transport with a view to ensuring enforcement of tourist-guiding issues relating to tour operators and related regulations in the National Land Transport Act, 2009 (Act 5 of 2009).

The department wants industry bodies that are committed to growing the tourist-guiding sector and elevating the profession to enter into formal agreements with stakeholder bodies that share department's vision.

The department undertook a process to review the *Regulations in Respect of Tourist Guiding*. This included wide consultations with tourist guides and key stakeholders throughout the country to improve processes and systems to register tourist guides and ensure compliance within the sector.

The department is working with the provinces to establish a centralised database of tourist guides.

Once a viable database is in place, the NDT will be able to engage the departments of home affairs and justice, and other relevant authorities to ensure that the information received from the provinces is subjected to a vetting process as prescribed in the Tourism Act of 2014.

The training programmes for tourist guides taking place in provinces focus on skills development for existing tourist guides to make them more marketable and employable within the sector.

Tourism niche markets

Domestic tourism (*Vaya Mzansi*)

To increase domestic tourism, the NDT announced the new initiatives for 2013:

- Investing in new partnerships and relationships, including between provincial tourism marketers and SAT.

- Investing in a new marketing campaign for domestic tourists. This was launched during Tourism Month in September 2014 and targeted a broad cross-section of the South African population.

Adventure tourism

The country's diverse terrain, together with an ideal climate for outdoor activities, makes it perfect for the adventure tourism niche market. Activities such as climbing, surfing, diving, hiking, horseback safaris, mountain-biking, river-rafting – and just about any other extreme activity are supported by dedicated operators.

South Africa offers some of the best rock climbing and abseiling opportunities in the world. Those who prefer rivers have a choice of trips ranging from mostly scenic to Grade 5 white-water rafting. Opportunities for escorted or self-guided trips are also available.

For those who want to take to the skies, there are more than 100 listed paragliding or hang-gliding launch sites as well as numerous less known sites. There are also many opportunities for helicopter rides balloon and microlight flights, aerobatics and skydiving.

Thousands of kilometres of hiking trails wind through the country in desert, forest, mountain or coastal terrains, many with adjacent mountain-bike trails.

In addition, South Africa offers a wide variety of horse trails through vineyards, on beaches and in the mountains. For the more adventurous there are also horseback safaris in game reserves. The 216-metre Bloukrans Bridge on the border of the Eastern and Western Cape offers the highest commercial bungee jump in the world.

Business tourism

South Africa remains one of the top 15 long-haul business-events destinations in the world and is the premier business-events destination in Africa.

The business-events industry was identified as an important contributor towards the NTSS's target of 15 million international arrivals by 2020.

Government recognises business-events tourism as an area with significant growth potential and has therefore established the first South African National Convention Bureau (SANCB) to further promote growth in the conferencing industry. The SANCB is tasked with coordinating national bidding, undertaking research and collaborating with city and provincial convention bureaus and the business-events industry to present a united front for destination South Africa.

Over the next five years, South Africa will host

200 international conferences that will attract an estimated 300 000 delegates and an additional R1,6 billion to the economy.

Cruise tourism

The department works closely with the cruise line industry to ensure that packages and excursions are developed and that passengers are encouraged to visit the country's shores, enjoy what it has to offer and inspire other travellers to visit South Africa.

Cultural tourism

Heritage and cultural tourism is the fastest-emerging competitive niche within domestic and international tourism markets. This category accounts for 40% of international tourism.

The National Heritage and Cultural Strategy is aimed at guiding the integration of heritage and cultural resources with mainstream tourism. It is set to stimulate sustainable livelihoods through heritage and cultural tourism products and to diversify the sector and raise awareness of heritage and cultural resources.

South Africa's diversity is reflected in its cultural tourism with many destinations commemorating the past. These range from the ancient nomadic San culture to European settlement, apartheid rule and the struggle for political freedom.

Cultural tourist destinations include the:

- Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park in KwaZulu-Natal, which is home to the ancient rock art of the San
- Cradle of Humankind near Johannesburg, which is the richest hominid fossil site in the world
- Mapungubwe in Limpopo, one of the richest archaeological sites in Africa where an advanced South African culture prospered between 1 200 AD and 1 270 AD
- Soweto's Heritage Trail, a reminder of the events that characterised South Africa's liberation struggle, such as the student uprising on 16 June 1976. Many cultural villages have been established throughout South Africa to reflect the different cultures and traditions of the country's people.

Medical tourism

South Africa has emerged as a medical tourism destination of choice for travellers from other African countries as well as further afield; and the industry is proving to have extensive growth potential.

Most medical tourists come to South Africa for cosmetic surgery, but the country's skilled surgeons can also perform organ transplants, cardiac, orthopaedic and obesity surgery, and dentistry.

Nature-based tourism

South Africa's fauna and flora and varied landscapes have enormous recreational value and attract several million tourists each year.

Protected natural areas serve not only to maintain biodiversity, but sustainable visitor access to these areas adds economic, recreational and aesthetic value to that which is being conserved within their borders. It also helps to preserve a wealth of traditional indigenous knowledge related to biodiversity, which is in itself a tourism resource.

South Africa has 19 national parks as well as numerous private game farms and nature reserves. Three of the country's eight UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco) world heritage sites are natural sites, while one is a mixed cultural/natural site. These are the Cape Floral Region, the iSimangaliso Wetland Park, the Vredefort Dome, and the uKhahlamba Drakensberg Park.

South Africa's popularity as an avi-tourism destination is due to the large number of birds, endemic species and major bird habitats. Birdlife South Africa, South Africa's national birding organisation has more than 8 000 members and 40 branches nationwide.

Rural tourism

The NDT's National Rural Strategy is aimed at creating community-driven bed-and-breakfast operations, catering for international and domestic tourists.

In supporting the geographic spread of tourism and in particular tourism growth in rural areas and enhancing the supply of rural tourism products, the department is focusing on rural communities.

Culture and heritage products are the fastest emerging competitive niche offerings in the domestic and international markets.

Sustainable development will be achieved if the people, whose land, culture and natural resources are used for tourism, benefit from such use in a meaningful way.

Sports tourism

It is estimated that sports tourism contributes more than R6 billion to the South African tourism industry.

More than 10% of foreign tourists come to South Africa to watch or participate in sports events, with spectators accounting for 60% to 80% of these arrivals.

The world-class sporting events on South Africa's annual calendar include the:

- annual Cape Argus Cycle Race, which caters for 35 000 people riding and pushing their bikes over a 10km course

- Midmar Mile in KwaZulu-Natal, which attracts 18 000 openwater swimmers annually
- Comrades Marathon.

In October 2014, the forth annual Sports Events and Tourism Exchange (SETE) took place in Durban.

SETE 2014 provided businesses from sports and tourism industries with an opportunity to collaborate during the two-day conference, exhibition and networking events. SETE attracts over 1 000 visitors who are decision-makers in the sports and events tourism industry, including pre-selected international hosted buyers.

Township tourism

Township tours have the potential to present South Africa's culture and heritage and the NDT wants packages to be developed to achieve that goal.

Government wants to capitalise on job-creation opportunities in this sector.

Wine tourism

Wine tourism is growing fast worldwide and play, an especially important role in South Africa with its centuries-old reputation for making high-quality wine. *International Wine Review*, one of the world's most influential opinion formers on wine, has rated South Africa's wine tourism the best developed in the world.

The country's vineyards are mostly situated in the Western Cape near the coast.

All South African wine routes fall under the auspices of the Wine of Origin Scheme.

Stylistically, South African wines fit somewhere between Old World and New World.

Regional tourism Western Cape

The Western Cape lies at the southern tip of Africa. The province's unmatched natural beauty, famous hospitality, cultural diversity, excellent wine and rich cuisine make it one of the world's greatest tourist attractions.

The tourism industry in the province has grown faster and created more jobs than any other. One in 10 employees in the Western Cape earns a living in the tourism industry, which contributes more than R25 billion to the provincial economy.

Cape Metropole

Tourism in the city of Cape Town, which lies at the foot of the magnificent Table Mountain, centres on the Victoria and Alfred (V&A) Waterfront. A working harbour, the V&A offers everything from upmarket shopping malls, arts and craft markets, and a variety of restaurants, to theatres, live music and museums.

South African hotels and lodges have made a strong showing in the 2014 Travel + Leisure Top hotels in Africa and the Middle East, with a few even making it into the top 10 of the overall 100 World's Best list. Travel + Leisure announced the awards on 2 July and an official awards ceremony will be held in New York. South African hotels and lodges in the top 100 Hotels Travel + Leisure list: 7 Singita Sabi Sand; 8 Londolozi Game Reserve; 59 Mala Mala Game Reserve; 63 Cape Grace, Cape Town.

Table Mountain, which forms part of the Table Mountain National Park, is one of the New Seven Wonders of Nature. A modern cableway takes visitors to the top of the mountain, providing spectacular views.

Other major attractions in the city include the Bo-Kaap Museum, the Castle of Good Hope, the Company's Garden, the District Six Museum, flea markets, the Grand Parade, the Houses of Parliament, the South African Cultural History Museum and the South African National Gallery.

The Gold of Africa Museum, established by Anglo Gold, houses a celebrated collection of more than 350 gold artefacts.

Air flips and trips are available, as are many boat and yacht trips from Table Bay Harbour.

There are also trips to Robben Island (proclaimed a world heritage site and also the place where former President Nelson Mandela was imprisoned for 18 of his 27 years in prison).

The Nelson Mandela Gateway to Robben Island is in the Clock Tower Precinct at the V&A Waterfront. The gateway houses interactive multimedia exhibitions, an auditorium, boardrooms, the Robben Island Museum and a restaurant.

Jazz is big in Cape Town. From traditional blues through progressive jazz to African-influenced jazz, every taste is catered for at a number of restaurants, jazz cafés, cigar bars, pubs and wine farms. The top jazz event in the Western Cape is the annual Cape Town International Jazz Festival.

The South African Rugby Museum in Newlands reflects the history of the sport as far back as 1891.

The Rhodes Memorial in Rondebosch on the slopes of Table Mountain was built from granite from the mountain as a tribute to the memory of Cecil John Rhodes, Prime Minister of the Cape from 1890 to 1896.

The University of Cape Town is worth a visit for its historic Middle Campus and many buildings designed by Sir Herbert Baker.

Cape Point, part of the Table Mountain National Park, offers many drives, walks, picnic spots and a licensed restaurant. Care has been taken to protect the environmental integrity of this 22 100 ha reserve of indigenous flora and fauna.

Simon's Town's naval atmosphere and Historic Mile are major attractions in the area. A statue of the famous dog and sailors' friend Able Seaman Just Nuisance stands at Jubilee Square.

Hout Bay is renowned for its colourful working harbour. Seafood outlets, round-the-bay trips to the nearby seal colony, shell and gift shops, and a famous harbour-front emporium attract many visitors.

Duiker Island is a seal and sea-bird sanctuary.

The World of Birds Wildlife Sanctuary is one of the largest bird parks in the world and houses some 3 000 birds.

Big Bay in Bloubergstrand is a surfers' paradise and hosts an international windsurfing event.

Rietvlei Nature Reserve is a unique wetland area with over 110 bird species, including pelicans and flamingos.

Canal Walk, Century City, is one of the largest shopping centres in Africa, with close to 400 shops, and is home to the largest cinema complex in South Africa.

New Year in Cape Town is a festive affair, when the Cape minstrels take to the streets with their upbeat music and fancy costumes.

The Monkey Town Primate Centre is home to over 200 individual primates and is located east of Somerset West on the N2.

Strawberry-picking in Cape Town on the Mooi-berge Strawberry Farm is available in season, which begins in November.

Cape winelands

The Cape winelands feature dramatic mountains, rolling farmlands and peaceful vineyards. They are home to Route 62, the world's longest wine route.

The Stellenbosch Wine Route comprises over 100 wine estates, most of which offer cellar tours.

Stellenbosch is the oldest town in South Africa. The town is a gracious blend of old Cape Dutch, Georgian and Victorian architecture. Dorp Street consists of one of the longest rows of old buildings in the country.

The Stellenbosch Village Museum consists of four homesteads and gardens ranging from the late-17th to the mid-19th centuries.

The Stellenbosch Toy and Miniature Museum houses a collection of 1:12 scale miniatures such as room boxes, miniature houses, antique dolls, cars and cuddly toys.

The Spier Summer Arts Festival livens up

The Penny Ferry from Cape Town's Waterfront to the clock tower was relaunched in October 2014 after an absence of 17 years and now charges R5 a trip.

summer nights from November to March at the Spier Wine Estate near Stellenbosch. Supervised pony and cart rides for children are available on the lawns of the Spier Estate. There is also a horse-carriage tour and equestrian centre for older children.

The Freedom Monument at Pniel commemorates the freed slaves who were the first settlers at the mission station, established in 1843.

Franschhoek has become known as the "Gourmet Capital" of the Cape. The Huguenot Monument was built in 1944 to commemorate the arrival in 1688 of the Huguenots who were predominantly French. In April each year, the region hosts the South African Cheese Festival.

Visitors can also enjoy various hiking trails and historical walks, as well as the Vignerons de Franschhoek Wine Route. There is also an annual book/literary festival in Franschhoek.

Butterfly World, one of the more unique attractions of the Western Cape winelands, consists of a tropical garden in a 1 000 m² greenhouse.

The Giraffe House Wildlife Awareness Centre is on 15 ha focuses mainly on African wildlife, Giraffe House provides a place for people to enjoy a picnic in the fresh air, while experiencing and learning about animals and conservation.

Drakenstein Lion Park was established as a sanctuary for lions born in captivity. Jonkershoek Nature Reserve, which includes the smaller Assegaibosch Nature Reserve, is near Stellenbosch, comprising the Jonkershoek Mountains and portions of the upper Jonkershoek Valley. The reserve stretches over 9 800 ha and its rugged terrain is ideal for hiking. Assegaibosch is much smaller and is suitable for shorter walks and picnics.

On Le Bonheur Estate visitors can experience guided croc-pond tours, which lead across open dams via ramp-ways. Over 1 000 crocodiles are housed in these dams. Visitors can touch a baby crocodile, and during summer months, witness them being fed.

Paarl is famous for its Cape Dutch and Victorian architectural treasures found along a 1-km stretch of the main street. The area's fynbos supports many south-western Cape endemics, such as the Cape sugarbird and orange-breasted sunbird. The Afrikaans Language Monument is on the slopes of Paarl Mountain, while the Afrikaanse Taalmuseum (Language Museum) is in the centre of the town.

The town of Wellington lies in a picturesque

In October 2014, the users of TripAdvisor website voted The Akademie Street Boutique Hotel and Guest House in Franschhoek in the Western Cape as the best small hotel in the world.

valley, with the majestic Hawequa Mountains on its eastern border. Wellington is also the home of South Africa's dried-fruit industry.

Experience life as the pioneers did in years gone by at the Kleinplasia Living Museum. The KWV Brandy Cellar, the largest of its kind in the world, offers cellar tours and brandy tastings.

The Hex River Valley is the largest producer of table grapes in southern Africa. Visitors can pick their own grapes at harvest time and sample the variety of export-quality produce.

The well-known Hex River 4x4 trail and the ochre sand rock art trail is a must for nature lovers. De Doorns lies in the heart of the Hex River Valley. Bonnievale on the Breede River, features several cheese factories. For the adventurous outdoor enthusiast there are canoe trips, as well as bird watching and river boating.

Surrounded by vineyards, orchards, and roses, Robertson is known as "The Valley of Wine and Roses." It is known for its connoisseur-quality wines and its thoroughbred horses. Renowned for its muscadine wines, Montagu is the gateway to the Little Karoo. Relax in the healing waters of the Avalon Springs or visit the Montagu Museum, which houses, among other things, original cartoons and books by well-known cartoonist TO Honiball.

The picturesque village of Gouda is known for the Parrots Den pub, a living museum in the Gouda Hotel.

McGregor has a variety of charming thatched cottages and well-preserved Victorian houses, making it one of the best-preserved examples of mid-19th-century architecture in the Western Cape.

Prince Alfred Hamlet is the gateway to the Gyd Pass, known for its scenic views. This quaint village lies in an important deciduous-fruit farming area. Hidden amid vineyards and wine estates lies Rawsonville, known for its award-winning wines.

Tourists can enjoy an afternoon drive along the beautiful Slanghoek Valley with its lush vineyards and panoramic views or relax in the mineral springs at Goudini Spa.

Garden Route

The Garden Route spans roughly 200 km of the southern coast, incorporating the stretch of coastline which includes Mossel Bay, George, Wilderness, Sedgefield, Knysna, Plettenberg Bay and Nature's Valley – each with its own charm and attractions. Famed for its lush greenery and the vast Tsitsikamma Forest, the Garden Route is the most biodiverse region in the world.

The Garden Route features the pont at Malgas, which is one of the two remaining ponts in the

country, ferrying vehicles and livestock across the Breede River. The Grootvadersbosch Nature Reserve outside Heidelberg comprises the popular Bushbuck Trail, a wilderness trail and two mountain-bike trails. Riversdale is one of South Africa's most important fynbos export areas. Other attractions include the Julius Gordon Africana Museum.

At the historical Strandveld Architectural Heritage Site at Still Bay, visitors can watch tame eels being fed. Ancient fish-traps can be seen at Morris Point and the harbour.

At the aloe factories at Albertinia, aloe juice is extracted for medicine and high-quality skin-care products. Nearby, bungee-jumping at the Gouritz River Gorge, hiking, mountain-biking and angling are popular pastimes.

The Point in Mossel Bay is not only popular among surfers, but its natural pool formed by rock is also a favourite swimming spot at low tide. The St Blaize trail starts here and is the ideal place from which to watch the whales and dolphins at play in season. The harbour at Mossel Bay is one of the most modern commercial and recreational harbours on the southern Cape coastline. Other attractions include the Attequas Kloof Pass, Anglo-Boer/South African War block-houses and the Bartolomeu Dias complex. Great Brak River offers a historic village with many opportunities for whale- and dolphin-watching along the extensive coast.

The Slave Tree in George, located just outside the Old Library, was planted in 1811, when George was laid out. It is known to be the biggest English oak in the Southern Hemisphere. George is popular among golfers and is home to the renowned Fancourt Country Club and Golf Estate, as well as various other acclaimed golf courses. Visitors can board the Power Van at the Outeniqua Transport Museum, and enjoy a glimpse of the Garden Route Botanical Garden from this rail bus. The Big Tree at Woodville, an Outeniqua yellowwood, is estimated to be around 850 years old. It is located about 40 km outside of George in the direction of Knysna.

The George Airport, Outeniqua Pass, railway line and the N2 offer convenient access to this region, making George the ideal hub from which to explore the Garden Route and Little Karoo.

Victoria Bay and Wilderness are popular for their unspoilt beaches. Wilderness is the western gateway to the southern Cape lakes area. It is a nature lover's paradise, best known for its beaches, lakes, placid lagoon and lush indigenous forests.

The Langvlei and Rondevlei bird sanctuaries in the Wilderness National Park, which hosts over 230 different bird species, is popular among

bird watchers. Sedgefield borders Swartvlei Lagoon, the largest natural inland saltwater lake in South Africa. Activities include beach horse-riding, hiking, angling and bird watching.

Knysna nestles on the banks of an estuary, guarded by The Heads (two huge sandstone cliffs) and surrounded by indigenous forests, tranquil lakes and golden beaches.

This natural wonderland is home to the largest and smallest of creatures, from the Knysna seahorse to the Knysna elephants, rare delicate butterflies and the endemic Knysna loerie, a colourful forest bird. The abundant fynbos and forest settings host over 200 species. Knysna is also famous for its delectable home-grown oysters, enjoyed with locally brewed beer in quaint pubs and restaurants. The Knysna Oyster Festival, a celebration of the good life, has established itself as one of the most popular annual events in the Western Cape.

An eclectic mix of art galleries presents the diversity of talent in the area. There are also lagoon cruises, forest hikes, golf and adventure sports on offer.

Plettenberg Bay is adventure country, offering boat-based whale watching, black-water tubing, hiking, and forest and cycling trails. The Keurbooms River Nature Reserve at Plettenberg Bay offers a canoeing trail, while the Robberg Nature Reserve is a treasure trove of land, marine, geological and archaeological wealth.

Little Karoo

The Little Karoo's fascinating landscape is fashioned almost entirely by water. Its vegetation ranges from lush greenery in the fertile river valleys to short, rugged Karoo plants in the veld. Gorges feature rivers that cut through towering mountains, while breathtakingly steep passes cross imposing terrain. The region is also home to the world's largest bird – the ostrich. The Little Karoo is rich in culture and history. Oudtshoorn, the world's ostrich-feather capital, is the region's main town.

The Klein-Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees (National Arts Festival) is held in the town annually. Some 29 km from Oudtshoorn lie the Cango Caves, a series of subterranean limestone caverns. Bearing evidence of early San habitation, the cave features magnificent dripstone formations.

Amalienstein and Zoar are historic mission stations midway between Ladismith and Calitzdorp. Visitors can go on donkey-cart and hiking trails through orchards and vineyards, while the Seweweekspoort is ideal for mountain-biking, hiking, and protea and fynbos admirers. Calitzdorp has four wine estates, three of which are open to the public.

In February 2015, the Minister of Tourism announced the appointment of a Ministerial Review Committee to conduct an extensive review of South Africa Tourism, the entity responsible for marketing South Africa as a domestic and international destination.

The spring water of the Calitzdorp Spa is rich in minerals and reputed to have medicinal properties. The Gamka Mountain Reserve is home to the rare and endangered Cape mountain zebra.

Excellent wines and port are produced in the Calitzdorp and De Rust areas. The Swartberg Nature Reserve and Pass with their gravel roads are also worth a visit. De Rust lies at the southern entrance to Meiringspoort. The Meiringspoort Gorge extends 20 km through the Swartberg Mountain Range. Halfway through is a beautiful 69-m waterfall. Wine farms in the area are open to the public.

Ladismith is home to the Towerkop Cheese Factory. There are various hiking, mountain-biking and 4x4 trails in the area, as well as the Anysberg, Little Karoo and Towerkop nature reserves.

Uniondale, on the main route between George and Graaff-Reinet, features the largest water-wheel in the country, the Old Watermill. Uniondale Poort is a scenic drive linking Uniondale with Avontuur in the Langkloof Valley.

At Vanwyksdorp, visitors can see how fynbos is dried and packed for the export market. Donkey-cart rides take visitors to Anglo-Boer/ South African War grave sites.

Central Karoo

The Central Karoo, a fascinating semi-desert area, lies in the heart of one of the world's most unique and interesting arid zones. This ancient, fossil-rich land is five times the size of Great Britain. Here, visitors will find the Earth's largest variety of succulents. Beaufort West, the oldest town in the Central Karoo, is often referred to as the "Oasis of the Karoo." The local museum displays awards presented to heart-transplant pioneer, Prof. Chris Barnard, a son of this town.

A township route introduces visitors to the Xhosa culture in the area. The Karoo National Park, on the town's doorstep, is home to a variety of game, as well as the highly endangered riverine rabbit.

Matjiesfontein, a national monument, offers tourists a peek into yesteryear and the opportunity to overnight in Victorian splendour. The village houses a transport museum and the Marie Rawdon Museum.

Experience the vastness of the Great Karoo in Murraysburg, an ecotourist and hunter's paradise.

Laingsburg, a tiny village that was devastated by floods about a century after it was established, was rebuilt afterwards. It is the best place to study the geology of the region.

Prince Albert is a well-preserved town at the foot of the Swartberg Mountains. It is the ideal place to sample Karoo cuisine, see examples of local architecture dating back to the early 1800s and enjoy several scenic drives.

The Fransie Pienaar Museum introduces visitors to the cultural history of the area. It has a fossil room and an exhibit covering the gold rush in this area in the 19th century. The museum has a licence to distil and sell "witblits" (white lightning). Prince Albert is the closest town by road to Gamkaskloof.

The Hell, a little valley in the heart of the Swartberg Mountains, was the home of one of the world's most isolated communities for almost 150 years. Gamkaskloof is a nature reserve and national monument managed by Cape Nature Conservation. It has overnight facilities and can be accessed by a 57-km long (but two-hour drive) winding road which starts at the peak of the Swartberg Pass.

West Coast

The West Coast is a region of outstanding beauty and contrast. The coast's scenic beauty is challenged only by culinary experiences of mussels, oysters, calamari, crayfish and abalone in season, or linefish pulled from the Benguela Current's cold waters.

During April every year, Lambert's Bay has the Crayfish and Cultural Festival. The area is not only a birder's paradise, but every year migrating whales visit the coastal waters from July.

Vredenburg, the business centre of the area, has a popular golf course with a bird hide. Lambert's Bay is a traditional fishing village, with Bird Island as a popular tourist attraction. It is a breeding ground for African penguins, the Cape cormorant and other sea birds.

Within two months of the first good winter rains, wild flowers on the West Coast explode in a brilliant display of colour.

The Swartland region is known for its wheat fields, vineyards, wineries and outdoor activities.

Further north, visitors encounter the Olifants River Valley and the vast plains of the Knersvlakte with its wealth of indigenous succulent plants.

The citrus area in the Olifants River Valley is the third-largest in South Africa.

The town of Darling draws visitors to its country museum and art gallery, annual wild flower and orchid shows, basket factory and wine cellars.

The entertainment venue "Evita se Perron" is situated at the old Darling Railway Station

and offers top performances by South African entertainers.

Malmesbury is the biggest town in the Swartland. Major attractions include the Malmesbury Museum and the historical walk-about.

The Riebeeck Valley is known for its scenic beauty. The area has become a popular haven for well-known artists of various disciplines. Wines and olives can be tasted at various cellars.

Elands Bay is a popular holiday resort and surfer's paradise. Khoi and San rock art can be viewed at the Elands Bay caves.

Moorreesburg and Koringberg are major wheat-distributing towns. Tourists can visit the Wheat Industry Museum, one of only three in the world. Bird watching, hiking, 4x4 routes, clay-pigeon shooting, mountain-bike trails, canoeing and waterskiing at Misverstand are popular activities.

Yzerfontein is famous for its unspoilt beaches, fynbos, beautiful views and whale watching. Another major attraction is the historical lime furnaces.

Langebaan, a popular holiday destination, is home to the West Coast National Park. An internationally renowned wetland that houses about 60 000 waterbirds and waders, the park attracts thousands of visitors each year. The oldest anatomically modern fossilised human footprints were also discovered here.

The Langebaan Lagoon forms part of the park and is zoned for specific activities. The Postberg section of the park, across the lagoon, is famous for its wild flowers that bloom mainly during August and September.

Cape Columbine at Paternoster is the last manned lighthouse build on the South African coast. The Columbine Nature Reserve is home to a variety of seabird species.

Saldanha is a water sport enthusiast's paradise. Its attractions include Doc's Cave, a landmark on the scenic breakwater drive, and the Hoedjieskoppie Nature Reserve. There are various hiking trails in the SAS Saldanha Nature Reserve.

St Helena Bay is best known for the Vasco Da Gama Monument and Museum. Visitors can enjoy fishing (snoek in season), hiking and whale and bird watching.

Piketberg offers arts and crafts, fauna and flora, wine culture and recreation.

The Goedverwacht and Wittewacht Moravian mission stations are close to the town. Porterville is famous for its Disa Route (best in January and February).

The Groot Winterhoek Mountain Peak in the Groot Winterhoek Wilderness Area is the second-highest in the Western Cape.

The Dasklip Pass is popular with hang-gliders. At Velddrif/Laaiplek visitors can indulge in *bo-kkems* (a West Coast salted-fish delicacy) at factories along the Berg River. Tourists can also visit the salt-processing factory and the West Coast Art Gallery in town.

The wine route from Citrusdal to Lutzville produces a selection of internationally acclaimed wines. Citrusdal is famous for its citrus products and wines. The Citrusdal Museum depicts the pioneering days of the early colonists. The Goede Hoop Citrus Co-Op is the largest single packing facility in South Africa. World-renowned rooibos tea is also produced here.

The annual Citrusdal Outdoor Calabash features 4x4 outings, lectures and visits to rock-art sites and an arts and crafts market. Annually, scores of sky-diving enthusiasts visit Citrusdal for a skydiving “boogie” that lasts several days. The oldest orange tree in the country, calculated to be more than 250 years old, grows in the Citrusdal Valley. The Sandveld-huisie is an example of a typical Sandveld dwelling.

The Cederberg Wilderness Area features the elephant’s foot plant, the rare snow protea and some of the best examples of San rock art in the Western Cape.

Visitors to Clanwilliam can visit the rooibos and velskoen factories and the grave of the well-known South African poet Louis Leipoldt.

Various historical buildings can also be viewed. The Clanwilliam and Bulshoek dams are popular among watersport enthusiasts.

Wuppertal, at the foot of the Cederberg mountains, features the oldest Rhenish Mission Station. Proceeds from 4x4 trails in the area fund the creation of new hiking trails and the building of more overnight huts and guest houses.

Wuppertal, which is well-known for its rooibos and buchu production, has added one more attraction to its tourism offerings – the Cederberg Donkey Cart Route. The project entails a three-day tour through the Cederberg Mountain area and Heuningvlei with accommodation facilities for overnight visitors.

Vredendal is the centre of the Lower Olifants River Valley. Major attractions include marble-processing and manufacturing, industrial mines (dolomite and limestone), the KWV Grape Juice Concentrate Plant and Distillery and the South African Dried Fruit Co-Operative. The town is also home to the Vredendal Wine Cellar, the largest cooperative wine cellar under one roof in the Southern Hemisphere.

The picturesque town of Doringbaai with its attractive lighthouse is well known for its seafood.

Strandfontein, about eight km north of Doringbaai, is essentially a holiday and retirement resort with a panoramic view of the ocean. Klaver was named after the wild clover that grows in the area. During the flower season, the area is a riot of colour. The Doring River features hiking trails and opportunities for river-rafting. Lutzville and Koekenaap are synonymous with wine and flowers in season.

Visitors can also view the Sishen-Saldanha Railway Bridge. Where the railway line spans the Olifants River, it is divided into 23 sections, each 45 m long. The 14 100-tonne deck was pushed into position over teflon sheets with hydraulic jacks from the bridgehead. It is the longest bridge in the world built using this method.

Vanrhynsdorp houses the largest succulent nursery in South Africa. The Latsky Radio Museum houses a collection of old valve radios, some dating back to 1924. The Troe-Troe and Rietpoort mission stations are a must-see for history enthusiasts.

Overberg

In the most southerly region of Africa east of Cape Town, lies the Overberg.

The Hangklip-Kleinmond area comprises Kleinmond, Betty’s Bay, Pringle Bay and Rooi Els. It is a popular holiday region, ideal for whale watching, and includes the Kleinmond Coastal Nature Reserve and the Harold Porter Botanical Garden.

The Penguin Reserve at Stoney Point, Betty’s Bay, is one of two breeding colonies of the jackass penguin off Africa.

South Africa’s first international biosphere reserve, the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve, was proclaimed by Unesco in 1999. It runs along the coast from Gordon’s Bay to the Bot River Vlei, stretching two km out to sea, and inland to the Groenlandberg Mountains near Grabouw.

Hermanus is a popular holiday resort and famous for the best land-based whale watching in the world.

Stanford is one of the few villages in South Africa where the market square has been retained. The central core of the village has been proclaimed a national conservation area. Award-winning wines are produced in the area.

Gansbaai is known for its excellent rock and boat angling, diving, shark-cage diving and whale watching.

The Danger Point Lighthouse, named as such because of the ships that have been wrecked and lives lost on this dangerous coast, is open to the public.

De Kelders is the only freshwater cave on the

African coast. Spectacular views of southern right whales can be enjoyed from the cliffs at De Kelders and along the coast to Pearly Beach.

Also popular are white-shark tours, diving safaris and fishing trips.

Elim was founded by German missionaries in 1824, with its only inhabitants being members of the Moravian Church. Visitors are welcome to attend services.

The Old Watermill (1833) has been restored and declared a national monument.

Popular sites in Napier include the Militaria Museum and Rose Boats and Toy Museum.

The Shipwreck Museum in Bredasdorp, founded in 1975, specialises in shipwrecks found along the South African coastline. The town also has the Audrey Blignault Museum.

De Mond Nature Reserve is home to some rare bird species, including the damara tern and giant tern.

The Geelkop Nature Reserve derives its name from the mass of yellow flowering plants that cover the hill during spring.

The lighthouse at L'Agulhas, which forms part of the Agulhas National Park, is the country's second-oldest working lighthouse. It celebrated its 150th anniversary in 1999. The Agulhas National Park is a ruggedly beautiful coastal plain of 20 959 ha.

At Cape Agulhas, the southernmost tip of the continent, the waters cleave into the Indian and Atlantic oceans.

The wrecks of some 130 seafaring craft – yachts, Spanish galleons, Dutch East Indiamen, the legendary Birkenhead, and even modern-day fishing trawlers – have found a watery grave around the notorious Cape of Storms.

Struisbaai has the longest white coastline in the Southern Hemisphere. Arniston was named Waenhuiskrans (coach-house cliff) by the local fishers in honour of the huge sea cave capable of housing several oxwagons. For outsiders, it was named after the Arniston, a ship wrecked there in 1815. The Waenhuiskrans Cave can be explored at low tide.

The De Hoop Nature Reserve on the way to Swellendam includes an internationally renowned wetland and bird sanctuary. It is a winter retreat for the southern right whale and the Western Cape's only Cape griffen vulture colony. The red Bredasdorp lily and many species of protea and erica are found in the Heuningberg Nature Reserve.

Swellendam is well-known for its young-berries and eclectic architecture. The Drostdy Museum consists of a group of buildings containing a huge selection of period furniture.

The Bontebok National Park, about seven km

from Swellendam, provides sanctuary to the threatened bontebok and other species.

Known for its world-class wine, Barrydale offers the visitor fruit and fresh air in abundance. Situated on the N2, about 160 km from Cape Town, Riviersonderend offers beautiful mountain and river scenery, a nine-hole golf course and sightings of the blue crane.

Caledon is famous for its natural mineral waters, hot springs and wild-flower shows. Southern Associated Maltsters is the only malt producer for the South African lager beer industry and the largest in the Southern Hemisphere.

Genadendal is the oldest Moravian village in Africa, with church buildings and a school dating back to 1738. The Genadendal Mission and Museum complex documents the first mission station in South Africa.

Villiersdorp houses the Dagbreek Museum that dates back to 1845 and was declared a monument in 1994. The historical home, Oude Radyn, is possibly the only building in the Western Cape to have Batavian wooden gutters and down pipes.

The Theewaterskloof Dam outside Villiersdorp is the seventh-largest dam in the country. The Villiersdorp Wild Flower Garden and Nature Reserve has an indigenous herb garden and a reference library.

The Grabouw/Elgin district produces about 60% of South Africa's total apple exports and fine wines. The valley is also renowned for cultivating fresh chrysanthemums, roses and proteas.

The Elgin Apple Museum is one of only two in the world. Sir Lowry's Pass offers spectacular views of False Bay from Gordon's Bay to Cape Point.

Northern Cape

Characterised by its vast expanses of space and silence, warm sunny climate, friendly people and hospitality, the Northern Cape is a province with a rich culture heritage.

Diamond fields

The Big Hole in Kimberley is the largest hand-dug excavation in the world. In 1871, diamonds were discovered at the site and mined manually by prospectors.

The Kimberley Tram Service dates back to the beginning of the 20th century and still transports passengers from the City Hall to the Mine Museum.

Underground mine tours are a big attraction, as are the famous ghost tours, during which many historical buildings are seen from a different perspective.

Hand and mechanical diamond-digging by

private diggers can be viewed by appointment.

The McGregor Museum houses invaluable collections of the archaeological finds in the area, as well as San art works.

The house where Sol Plaatje (African National Congress founding member and human-rights activist) lived in Kimberley, has a library of Plaatje's and other black South African writers' works, and several displays, including a portrayal of black involvement in the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

The Paterson Museum near Kimberley Airport houses a replica of a Paterson biplane, which was used for pilot training by the flying school operated by the Paterson Aviation Syndicate at Alexandersfontein.

A township tour of Galeshewe provides a fresh perspective on South Africa's socio-historical realities. Pan African Congress founder Robert Sobukwe's house is there.

The Magersfontein Battlefield outside Kimberley, with its original trenches and other defences intact, is the site of the Boers' crushing defeat of the British during the Siege of Kimberley.

A cultural centre at Wildebeestkuil outside Kimberley features !Xun and Khwe artwork for sale and a tour of rock engravings by these indigenous people.

Barkley West attracts many water-sports enthusiasts and anglers. Tucked along the Vaal River near Barkley West lies the Vaalbos National Park.

The park is not only home to large raptors, but also a breeding centre for endangered African herbivores such as rhino, roan and sable antelope and disease-free buffalo.

Kalahari

At Black Rock, visitors can view a worked-out manganese mine.

Danielskuil lies at the foot of the Kuruman hills. The Tswana people occupied the area before it became home to the Griquas. Boesmangat, on the farm Mount Carmel outside Danielskuil, is a unique natural sinkhole – the second-deepest and largest of its kind in the world.

Known as the "Oasis of the Kalahari," Kuruman is blessed with a permanent and abundant source of water that flows from Gasegonyana (Setswana for "the little water calabash") – commonly called the "Eye of Kuruman" – which yields 20 million litres of water per day.

Moffat's Mission in Kuruman features the house of missionary Robert Moffat, the church he built, and several other historic buildings. Moffat translated the Bible into Setswana – the first African language in which the Bible was made accessible. The printing press on which he

printed the first 2 000 copies can still be viewed. The church he built seats 800 people and is still in use. Explorer David Livingstone married Moffat's daughter and started many famous travels from this mission station.

The Wonderwerk Cave at Kuruman features extensive San paintings that may be viewed by appointment. The Kalahari Raptor Centre cares for injured birds. Many of these majestic creatures can be seen at close quarters.

The Witsand Nature Reserve, situated about 80 km south-west of Postmasburg, features a 100-m high dune of brilliant white sand. It stretches for about nine km and is about two km wide.

Green Kalahari

The Roaring Sands site on the farm Doornaar near Groblershoop is a popular tourist attraction. Its high sand dunes, surrounded by typically red Kalahari dunes, are said to "roar" when the wind blows.

Along the hand-built irrigation canals at Kakamas 11 waterwheels are still used. Kanoneiland is a settlement on the biggest island in the Orange River. At Keimoes, the Orange River flows at its widest.

The Tierberg Nature Reserve offers spectacular views of the Keimoes Valley and the many islands in the Orange River. The original irrigation canal system is still in use. The Orange River Wine Cellar's largest cellar is situated here.

Kenhardt is the oldest town in the Lower Orange River area. The Quiver Tree Forest and Kokerboom Hiking Trail, consisting of between 4 000 and 5 000 quiver trees, are within easy driving distance of the town.

Uptington is the commercial, educational and social centre of the Green Kalahari, owing its prosperity to agriculture and its irrigated lands along the Orange River. A camel-and-rider statue in front of the town's police station pays tribute to the "mounties," who patrolled the harsh desert territory on camels.

Kalahari Desert Speedweek, in its third year at the beginning of October 2014, is an annual eight-day speed festival held in a far north-western corner of South Africa where tumbleweeds can roam for days nonstop and the dried-up lake beds are tailor-made for top-speed exploration. It is a proper run-what-you-brung motorsport event where anybody is welcome to enter, and anything with an engine is eligible. Over the years, the event has also become a meeting place for all sorts of eccentric machinery and people. Expect anything from 1940s-vintage Nash sedans limping along in period-correct warbird liveries to finely tuned Italian exotics

humming at breakneck speeds, billowing dust clouds in tow.

The Orange River displays its impressive power at the Augrabies Falls in the Augrabies Falls National Park. Visitors can hire canoes to ensure closer contact with the natural heritage surrounding the world's sixth-largest waterfall.

The Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park comprises 38 000 m² of land, making it one of the largest conservation areas in the world. Straddling the Green Kalahari and Botswana, the park is a two-million-hectare sanctuary for various raptors, antelope, gemsbok, springbok, blue wildebeest, red hartebeest, eland, Kalahari lion, black-maned lion, brown and spotted hyena, leopard, cheetah, and smaller game, including mongoose, porcupine and the endangered honey badger.

Namaqualand

The Namas are the indigenous people of Namaqualand. Their traditional Nama reed huts still abound in Leliefontein, Nourivier and Steinkopf. Namaqualand is famous for a spectacular annual show in spring when an abundance of wild flowers covers vast tracts of desert. The flowers sprout and survive for a brief period before they wilt and disappear in the blistering heat and dry conditions just as suddenly as they appeared. The small town of Garies is the centre for those setting out to enjoy this show of exuberance in the Kamiesberg.

After diamonds were discovered along the West Coast in 1925, Alexander Bay has become known for its mining activities. The town is no longer a high-security area and no permits are needed to enter. The Alexkor Museum paints a picture of the history of the area. The town also features the world's largest desert lichenfield, which has some 26 species.

At Hondeklip Bay, visitors can dive for crayfish and watch the local fisherfolk conduct their trade. Port Nolloth is a centre for the small-scale diamond-recovery and crayfish industries. It is the only holiday resort on the Diamond Coast. The local factory sells fish and crayfish in season.

Set in a narrow valley bisecting the granite domes of the Klein Koperberge lies Springbok.

South of Springbok, near Kamieskroon, lies the Skilpad Wild Flower Reserve, part of the Namaqua National Park, which captures the full grandeur of the flower season. The 1 000 ha reserve is open only during the flower season.

The Goegap Nature Reserve comprises 15 004 ha of typically granite, rocky hills and sandy flats. The reserve also offers a 4x4 trail, as well as several hiking and mountain-biking trails.

Namaqualand is also home to the Ais-Ais/Richtersveld National Park. It is managed jointly

by the local Nama people and South African National Parks.

Upper Karoo (Bo-Karoo)

Flanked by the Towerberg, Colesberg is one of the Northern Cape's most beautiful towns. The town features one of the country's last working horse mills. An Anglo-Boer/South African War tour is also on offer. A weekend tour includes a visit to the Norvals-pont prisoner-of-war camp and cemetery.

Colesberg has bred many of the country's top Merino sheep. It is also renowned for producing high-quality racehorses.

De Aar is the most important railway junction in South Africa. The author Olive Schreiner lived in the town for many years. Visitors can dine in her former house, which has been converted into a restaurant.

Hanover is known for its handmade shoes and articles made mostly from sheepskin and leather.

The "Star of South Africa" diamond was discovered at Hopetown. The town also features an old toll house and a block house dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

At Wonderdraai near Prieska, visitors can see the horseshoe-shaped island formed by the flow of the Orange River. It seems as if the river turns to flow uphill.

Vanderkloof, built to house the people building the Vanderkloof Dam, was turned into a flourishing holiday resort. Visitors can enjoy water-skiing, boardsailing, boating and swimming, or visit the Eskom Hydro-electric Power Station within the dam's wall. The rare riverine rabbit is found in the Victoria West Nature Reserve.

Hantam Karoo

Near Brandvlei lies Verneukpan where Sir Malcolm Campbell unsuccessfully attempted to break the world land-speed record in 1929.

Carnarvon is well known for its corbelled dome-roofed houses built of flat stones because of a lack of wood.

The floors of these interesting houses were smeared and coloured with a rich red mixture of fat and oxblood and polished with smooth stone. A few kilometres outside Fraserburg lies the Gansfontein Palaeosurface. Discovered in 1968, it comprises several trackways of large, four-footed and five-toed mammalian reptiles. The prints are estimated to be some 190 million years old.

Sutherland, birthplace of NP van Wyk Louw, well-known Afrikaans author and poet, is also known for its brilliant night skies and cold, biting winters.

The South African Astronomical Observatory's

observation telescopes, including the Southern African Large Telescope (Salt), are in Sutherland. The sterboom (star tree), which blossoms in September, is found only in Sutherland.

The Tankwa Karoo National Park, on the southern border of the Northern Cape, 70 km west of Sutherland, encompasses the Succulent Karoo Biome, the world's only arid hotspot, stretches 116 000 km² from the southwestern Cape into southern Namibia.

The landscape offers seasonal contrasts of coloured wild flowers and stark desert, set against the backdrop of the Roggeveld Escarpment to the east, Klein Roggeveld to the south and the Cederberg to the west. Its extensive desert plateaus are ideal for viewing game such as gemsbok, Cape mountain zebra, springbuck and bustards.

Free State

The Free State lies in the heart of South Africa, with the Kingdom of Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape.

Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

This central region is characterised by rolling fields of wheat, sunflowers and maize, and forms the principal bread basket of South Africa.

Motho

With its King's Park Rose Garden containing more than 4 000 rose bushes, the Free State's major city, Bloemfontein, has rightfully earned the nickname "City of Roses." The city also hosts an annual rose festival.

The Eerste Raadsaal (First Parliament Building), built in 1849 as a school, is Bloemfontein's oldest surviving building. Still in its original condition, this historical building is used as the seat of the Provincial Legislature.

The National Afrikaans Literary Museum and Research Centre has works by prominent Afrikaans authors. Exhibits in the Afrikaans Music Museum and Theatre Museum (part of the centre) include old musical instruments, sheet music, costumes, photographs and furniture.

The museum is notable for its wide collection of fossils, cultural-historical exhibits and archaeological displays, including the Florisbad Skull, which was discovered in the 1930s at the Florisbad Spring.

The National Women's Memorial is a sandstone obelisk, 36,5 m high, which commemorates the women and children who died in concentration camps during the Anglo-Boer/South African War. Visitors get a glimpse of life in the concentration and prisoner-of-war camps.

The research library contains an extensive collection of Africana.

The Old Presidency dates back to 1885 and was the official residence of three presidents of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. It houses a museum depicting their respective terms of office, and is a cultural centre for art exhibitions, theatrical productions and musical events.

The Observatory Theatre in Bloemfontein's Game Reserve is a unique attraction. Naval Hill is the biggest game reserve completely surrounded by a city. Bloemfontein hosts the Mangaung African Cultural Festival, popularly known as the Macufe Arts Festival, in September every year. The Sand du Plessis Theatre and Art Gallery at Oliewenhuis are also worth visiting.

Botshabelo (Place of Refuge), 45 km from Bloemfontein on the N8 road to Lesotho, is believed to be the largest township settlement in the Free State – and the second-largest in South Africa after Soweto.

Nearby, the town of Thaba Nchu features luxury hotels and a casino, with the Maria Moroka Nature Reserve surrounding Thaba Nchu Sun and the Setlogelo Dam.

Xhariep

Bethulie used to be a London Missionary Society station. The original mission buildings still stand.

The Pellissier House Museum depicts the history of the area. There is an Anglo-Boer/South African War concentration camp cemetery in Bethulie.

The Gariep Dam, more than 100-km long and 15 km wide, is part of the Orange River Water Scheme, the largest inland expanse of water in South Africa. Between the dam and Bethulie is the Gariep Dam Nature Reserve. On the southern side of the dam lies the Oviston Nature Reserve.

Philippolis, the oldest town in the Free State, was founded as a London Missionary Society station in 1824. It was the first mission station in the province.

Trompsburg is the hub of the Free State Merino sheep-farming industry. The Tussen-die-Riviere Nature Reserve reputedly supports more game than any other sanctuary in the Free State.

A fountain near Koffiefontein was a favourite resting place for transport riders in the 19th century. In June 1870, one of these transport riders picked up a diamond near the fountain. This prompted a rush, and by 1882 Koffiefontein was a booming town with four mining companies.

Thabo Mofutsanyana

Snow-capped mountains and beautiful scenery provide a backdrop to this pristine area.

Clocolan is known for the beauty of its cherry trees when they are in full bloom in spring. San rock paintings and engravings are also found in the area.

Clarens is often described as the “Jewel of the Free State,” owing to its exceptionally beautiful scenery. San paintings are found on farms in the area.

Close by, the Highlands Route meanders along the foothills of the Maluti Mountains and follows the Lesotho border via Ladybrand and ends at Zastron in the south.

The town is known for the many arts and crafts shops, which offer the visitor a wide range of curios and original artwork.

Ficksburg is known for its asparagus and cherry farms. Every November, a cherry festival is held there. The town is a gateway to the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho.

Rosendal, surrounded by the Witte Mountains, celebrated its centenary in 2011.

The Golden Gate Highlands National Park, known for its impressive sandstone cliffs and rock formations, is a popular holiday destination.

The bird watching mecca of Seekoeivlei Nature Reserve near Memel constitutes a wetland with Ramsar status, and is surrounded by private game and holiday farms.

Lejweleputswa region

Bethlehem, which lies on the banks of the Jordaan River, was founded by the Voortrekkers in the 1840s. The banks of the Jordaan River form part of the Pretoriuskloof Nature Reserve – a sanctuary for birds and small game. The museum in Miller Street depicts the history of the area.

Van Reenen's Pass winds through the Drakensberg, and was originally used by migrating herds of zebra, hartebeest, blesbok and wildebeest. The Llandaff Oratory in the nearby village of Van Reenen is believed to be the smallest Roman Catholic church in the world.

At Harrismith, there are various memorials in honour of those who fought in the Anglo-Boer/South African War and World War I. Of particular interest is a memorial for the Scots Guards and Grenadier Guards.

Platberg, the 2 394-m “flat mountain,” is the town's landmark. A well-known race, claimed by some to be the toughest in the country, is run annually up, along and back down the mountain.

Sterkfontein Dam is ideal for water sports and fishing. An open-water swimming race takes place there annually.

The Riemland Museum in Heilbron depicts the

heritage and agricultural activities of the region.

The QwaQwa district is a traditional home to the Basotho people. The Basotho Cultural Village in the QwaQwa Nature Reserve is a living museum where visitors can witness the Sotho traditions and lifestyle in the chief's kraal.

Karakul carpets, mohair, wall hangings, copper, glassware and brass are made and sold at Phuthaditjhaba. The nearby Metsi Matsho and Fika Patso dams are renowned for trout fishing.

Welkom is known for its gold mines. It is also the only city in the country where traffic circles are used instead of traffic lights.

The world's deepest wine cellar is at the St Helena Mine, which is 857 m below the Earth's surface.

Bothaville is regarded as the centre of the Free State Maize Route. The Nampo Harvest Farm and Festival attracts more than 20 000 visitors each year and is the second-largest private agricultural show in the world. Bothaville also hosts the annual Food and “Witblits” festival, drawing visitors from all over South Africa.

The sandstone church in Kestell is possibly the most impressive of all the Eastern Free State's sandstone buildings. Winburg is the oldest town and first capital of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. The Voortrekker Museum depicts the daily routine of the trekkers. A concentration camp cemetery is situated close by.

Sasolburg originated in 1954 with the establishment of Sasol, the synthetic fuel producer. Parys, situated on the banks of the Vaal River, offers tourists a tranquil river retreat.

The nearby Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site was caused by the collision of a meteorite with the Earth many years ago. It is the only world heritage site in the Free State. It features unique fauna and flora, including 100 different plant species, more than 300 bird types and a variety of small mammals.

Jukskei is the first indigenous game that has developed to international participation. The Jukskei Museum in Kroonstad has over 3 500 objects that depict the development of the game.

Jagersfontein has the deepest man-made hole in the world. The Excelsior diamond of 971 carats was found in this open-cast mine in 1893. Eagles nest against the cliffs of the mine.

Eastern Cape

The main feature of the Eastern Cape is its magnificent coastline. With its wide open sandy beaches, secluded lagoons and towering cliffs.

Added to the diverse coastal experiences are more than 60 state-owned game reserves and over 30 private game farms, which collectively cover an area greater than the Kruger National Park.

Amatola Mountain Region

The Amatola Mountains are famous for their scenery and history, and stretch from Adelaide in the east to Stutterheim in the west. With its lush forests and ancient battlefields, it is an area steeped in Xhosa culture and early settler history.

The dense forests of the Amatolas are a haven for the endangered Cape parrot, and were also home to the first dinosaur to be identified in South Africa, the Blinkwater Monster, a large fossilised reptile discovered near Fort Beaufort.

Outdoor enthusiasts enjoy Cathcart where troutfishing, hiking, riding and bird watching are among the attractions. The Amatoles Hiking Trail is a well-known scenic, but strenuous, trail.

The coastal city of Port Elizabeth is a superb holiday destination offering a diverse mix of eco-attractions. It also hosts the annual Buoy openwater swim and the Isuzu National Sailing Week held annually in April in Algoa Bay.

The Red Location Museum of the People's Struggle in New Brighton – winner of three international awards – was designed to be a monument to South Africa's struggle against apartheid and an integral part of community life in a township that acted as a crucible for the struggle.

Bay World has an oceanarium and snake park, and many splendid museums. Within the city there are some beautiful parks with well-landscaped gardens. These include: St George's Park, which covers 73 ha and houses the famous Port Elizabeth Cricket Club, the oldest bowling green in South Africa; Prince Alfred's Guard Memorial; the 1882 Victorian Pearson Conservatory; and the 54-ha Settlers' Park.

Tourists can also explore the Donkin Heritage Trail, take a ride on the famous Apple Express, and hike along the site of ancient shipwrecks on the Sacramento Trail. At King William's Town, tourists can visit the Amathole Missionary Museum. The grave of the Black Consciousness activist, Steve Biko, is also in the town.

Other attractions include the Greater Addo Elephant National Park and game reserves; the traditional healing village, Kaya Lendaba; bird watching; air tours; canoeing; various mountain-bike and horse-riding trails; and organised outdoor excursions.

Wild Coast

Since Portuguese mariners first pioneered the sea route around the Cape to India, this notorious coast has claimed countless ships.

Southern right and humpback whales and their calves are regularly spotted from the high dunes, usually between May and November, while common and bottlenose dolphins are often seen close to shore.

The entire region is the home of a major section of the isiXhosa-speaking southern Nguni (or Pondo) tribes. Brightly coloured examples of their beadwork, together with traditional pottery and basketry, can be bought from roadside vendors and at some trading posts.

Visitors to the rural village of Qunu can view the childhood home of Mandela. In Mthatha, the Nelson Mandela Museum tells the story of this great figure through a display reflecting the life and times of Mandela.

Mandela received thousands of gifts from presidents, groups and ordinary people. Accepted on behalf of the people of South Africa, they are in safekeeping at the museum for the benefit and appreciation of the nation. Artefacts range from children's letters to bejewelled camel covers.

Coffee Bay is popular among surfers, anglers and shell collectors. To the south is the prominent rock formation, the Hole in the Wall. The local Xhosa people call this place Izi Kheleni ("Place of Thunder"). During high tide, the waves break through the hole in such a way that the concussion can be heard throughout the valley.

East Griqualand

East Griqualand is an area of great beauty, featuring colourful, living history. Kokstad lies in the Umzimhlava River basin between Mount Currie and the Ngele Mountains.

The original town hall – built in 1910 – is a national monument, now serving as the local library. The former library – built in 1907 – is also a national monument and houses the Kokstad Museum.

The Weza State Forest runs through indigenous forests and commercial plantations. The forest is home to several antelope species and a huge variety of birds. The southernmost portion of the Ukhahlamba Drakensberg World Heritage Site, the impressive Swartberg, Bokkiesberg, Cedarberg and Ngele mountain ranges lie in East Griqualand.

Between Kokstad and Matatiele, the hamlet of Cedarville provides tranquil canoe-borne excursions into its surrounding, water-filled hollows. Steam-train journeys can be undertaken between Swartberg and Creighton.

Karoo

The vast plains of the Karoo have an air of grandeur, and its many picturesque towns are steeped in history.

The Owl House in Nieu-Bethesda displays the creative talent of the late Helen Martins. Statues of mermaids, wise men, camels, owls

and churches create a wonderland in the garden. All the artworks were created with broken bottles, bits of mirror and cement.

More than 200 houses in Graaff-Reinet have been restored to their original Victorian appearance, and proclaimed national monuments. The Old Library Museum houses the Lex Bremner Fossil Collection of Karoo reptile fossils and a collection of Khoi and San art reproductions. Urquhart House has a popular genealogical research centre.

Almost 50 km south-west of Graaff-Reinet is the Kalkkop Crater, which is of major scientific importance.

To the north-west of Graaff-Reinet lies the Valley of Desolation. A steep and narrow road leads into the mountains that surround the valley.

The Valley of Desolation is a national monument within the Karoo Nature Reserve, and was formed millions of years ago by weathering erosion.

The first evidence of the presence of dinosaurs in South Africa can be viewed at Maclear.

The Mountain Zebra National Park is a haven for the Cape mountain zebra species, which at one time inhabited most of the Cape. The park saved these animals from extinction and their population stands at about 300.

Other species found in the park include various antelope such as eland, the African wildcat, bat-eared fox, and more than 200 bird species, including the pale-winged starling, the booted eagle and the blue crane.

N6 Route

This route runs from Bloemfontein to East London. Popular attractions include the slopes of the Tiffindell Ski Resort and the trout-filled streams, as well as the many caves adorned with ancient rock art. Several historic towns can be found in the region, including Smithfield, Barkly East, Lady Grey, Elliot, Aliwal North, Burgersdorp, Queens-town and Rhodes where a high-altitude cold swim was held in 2013 and 2014.

Sunshine Coast

The Sunshine Coast comprises miles of unspoilt, sun-drenched beaches. Port Alfred lies at the mouth of the Kowie River. Coastal hills are home to the oribi – a small territorial buck that was recently near extinction.

Inland, Grahamstown is sometimes referred to as the “City of Saints,” because of the more than 40 churches in the town. It is also known for the National Arts Festival, which is held annually. During the festival, Grahamstown is transformed into a dedicated arts venue where performers, visual artists, audiences, writers and

crafts people fuse in a celebration of creative energy. Other attractions include various museums and historical buildings, the oldest post box in South Africa, botanical gardens, the cathedrals of St Michael and St George, nature reserves and hiking trails. Situated north-east of Grahamstown, the Great Fish River Reserve consists primarily of valley bushveld habitat and is surrounded by tribal land and commercial game reserves and farms.

The reserve has abundant wildlife such as white rhino, giraffe, waterbuck, Cape buffalo, hippo, kudu, springbok and eland.

There are several historic forts and remains from the frontier wars located in the area.

East London, which forms part of the Nelson Mandela Bay Metropolitan Municipality, is South Africa’s only river port city. It was originally established as a supply port to serve the colonial British military headquarters at King William’s Town. The East London Aquarium houses approximately 400 different marine and freshwater species. The museum depicts the natural environment and rich heritage of the region. Best known for the prehistoric coelacanth, the museum also displays reconstructions of the extinct dodo of Mauritius, along with the only extant dodo egg in the world.

The Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area is the largest of the inland protected areas and provides opportunities to visit fynbos-covered mountains on foot or in off-road vehicles. There is a fascinating shell collection at the Shell Museum at Kei Mouth.

Tsitsikamma

This region, stretching from Plettenberg Bay to Jeffreys Bay, is renowned for its dense forests, majestic mountains and deep river gorges. It forms the eastern end of the Garden Route.

The word *tsitsikamma* is derived from the Khoekhoen words *tse-tsesa* meaning “clear,” and *gami* meaning “water.” South Africa’s first marine park, the Tsitsikamma National Park, extends along a rocky coastline of 50 km, and three km out to sea.

Inland, adventure-seekers will find deep gorges and temperate evergreen forests criss-crossed by six hiking trails, including the five-day Otter Trail. The varied wildlife includes dolphins and whales, caracal, genet, chacma baboon, dassie and mongoose. Prominent bird species in the area are the African black oystercatcher, the orange-breasted sunbird, the Nerina trogon and the colourful Knysna loerie. A lucky few may catch a glimpse of the rare Cape clawless otter, after which the Otter Trail is named. Another popular adventure is a black-water tubing experience on the Storms River.

Limpopo

The Limpopo landscape is made up of dramatic contrasts characterised by hot savanna plains and mist-clad mountains, age-old indigenous forests and cycads alongside modern plantations, ancient mountain fortresses and the luxury of contemporary infrastructure and modern-day facilities.

Steeped in history, Limpopo celebrates a rich cultural heritage, and at many archaeological sites the mysteries of the past and ancient peoples are still being unearthed.

Much of the land, particularly in the Kruger National Park and other game and nature reserves, is unspoilt, and provides sanctuary to large numbers of game.

Waterberg

The Nylsvley Nature Reserve has one of the greatest concentrations of waterfowl and bushveld birds in South Africa. More than 400 species frequent the area. The Mokopane vicinity has several nature reserves.

The Arend Dieperink Museum features a fine cultural-historical collection.

The Makapansgat Caves are notable for their fossils and the caves are being developed into an archaeological site. Makapan Valley is an extension of the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site.

The Thabazimbi district has a large concentration of private game reserves and is one of the fastest-growing eco-tourism areas in the country.

The Marakele National Park is home to some rare yellowwood and cedar trees and the world's largest colony of Cape vultures.

Bela Bela is known for its hot springs. There are also a number of game reserves and leisure resorts in the area.

The Waterberg range is rich in indigenous trees, streams, springs, wetlands and birdlife. Cliffs known as the "Palace of the Vultures" harbour a large breeding colony of Cape vultures.

Modimolle is the region's main town.

Capricorn district

The Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum outside Polokwane is a traditional Northern Sotho kraal. Men and women practise traditional skills such as making baskets, clay pots, furniture and utensils, and preparing hides.

Polokwane is considered the premier game-hunting destination in South Africa. Polokwane offers a variety of museums and art galleries, including the Bakone Malapa Museum, the Polokwane Museum and the Hugh Exton Photographic Museum. Zion City at Moria, near Polokwane, is the headquarters of the Zion Christian Church, which attracts more than a million pilgrims every Easter.

Vhembe district

The Mapungubwe archaeological site, 80 km west of Musina, lies within the boundaries of the Mapungubwe National Park. It is one of the richest of its kind in Africa and a World Heritage Site.

Excavations in the 1930s uncovered a royal graveyard, which included a number of golden artefacts, including the famous gold-foil rhinoceros.

The Schoemansdal Voortrekker Town and Museum, west of Makhado, is built on the site of an original Voortrekker village and depicts their lifestyle between 1848 and 1852.

Also worth visiting is the Big Tree in the Mutale Municipality, the Tshatshingo potholes, the mystical lake of Dzivhafundudzi and the holy forest and waterfalls at Phiphidi.

Mopani district

The Lekgameetse Nature Reserve in the northern foothills of the Drakensberg is part of the Cloud Mountain Biosphere. This 18 000 ha nature reserve is well known for its abundant butterflies.

The Modjadji Nature Reserve, north of Tzaneen, is named after the legendary Rain Queen, Modjadji, who is believed to have settled in the area early in the 16th century. The reserve encompasses the world's largest concentration of the cycad species *Encephalartos transvenosus*, also known as the Modjadji cycad.

The Hans Merensky Nature Reserve and Mineral Spa on the southern banks of the Great Letaba River supports a large variety of game. At the adjoining Tsonga Kraal Open-Air Museum, arts, crafts and traditional huts reflect the Tsonga lifestyle of 100 years ago.

The Kruger National Park (northern section) is home to a large number and wide variety of amphibians, reptiles and birds, as well as 147 mammal species, including the Big Five.

Thulamela, in the northern part of the Kruger National Park, yielded the skeletons of two ancient royals and a multitude of artefacts, including gold bangles, beads and a double gong.

Bohlabela district

On the way to the Kruger National Park, visitors can enjoy wildlife experiences at Manyeleti, home to the Big Five. Adventurers can attempt mountain climbing at the Mangwazi Nature Reserve, enjoy the Mapulaneng Trail at Zoeknag and the Injaka Dam at Bushbuckridge.

North West

North West has several cultural villages that entertain and enrich visitors. A number of game reserves have been established, including the Pilanesberg National Park, situated in the transition

zone between the Kalahari and the Lowveld.

Home to the Big Five, the park offers a wide variety of accommodation, is close to popular attractions such as Sun City and only a two/three-hour drive from Johannesburg.

The park has an area of approximately 550 km², making it the fourth largest park in South Africa supporting more than 7 000 head of game and 350 bird species.

Central district

The historic route of Mahikeng includes an Anglo-Boer/South African War siege site, the Molema House where Sol Plaatje lived while writing his *Mafikeng Diary*, and the Mahikeng Museum.

The Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre and the Botsalano Game Reserve are well worth a visit.

The Groot Marico region is known as mampoor country and visitors can explore the Mampoor Route. The Kortkloof Cultural Village is dedicated to the Tswana people.

Other attractions include the Wondergat; the Bosbult Monument, which commemorates a battle fought during the Anglo-Boer/South African War; the Kaditshwene Iron Age Village Ruins; and various hiking trails.

Ottosdal is in the centre of North West and was established as a Dutch Reformed Church parish on the farm Korannafontein in 1913 and named after its owner, GP Otto. It is the only place in South Africa where the unique “wonderstone,” or pyrophyllite, is found and mined. The annual agricultural show in Ottosdal is one of the oldest in the province.

Trenches and cemeteries dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War can be found on the farms Gestoptefontein and Driekuul. In the Garden of Remembrance are graves of soldiers killed during the war. The Old Farmhouse built in 1910 houses a unique African collection. The Old Water Mill built around 1860 is a national monument.

The Ottosdal Night Race is organised in conjunction with the Diamond Marathon Club. The event consists of 42,2km, 21,1km, 10km races and a 5-km fun run.

San rock engravings, Stone Age implements and structures are found on farms such as Witpoort, Gestoptefontein, Driekuul and Korannafontein.

Eastern district

Hartbeespoort Dam is a popular spot for weekend outings, breakfast runs and yachting.

The Hartbeespoort Reptile and Animal Park is on the banks of the dam.

Cultural experiences in the area include the popular Mapoch and Gaabo Motho cultural villages as well as the Ring Wagon Inn.

The Ann van Dyk Cheetah Centre (formerly the De Wildt Cheetah Breeding and Research Centre) specialises in breeding cheetah and other endangered wildlife species.

Other places of interest include the Borakalalo Game Reserve, the Margaret Roberts Herb Farm and the Phaladingwe Nature Trail.

Bophirima district

The Taung Skull Fossil Site and Blue Pools are renowned for the Taung skull found in the Buxton quarries. The Taung Skull Fossil Site is an extension of the Sterkfontein Fossil Hominid Site.

This region is popular with adventure seekers – especially those who enjoy 4x4 routes and hunting farms.

Rustenburg district

The 60 000 ha Madikwe Game Reserve is home to 66 large mammal species. Over 10 000 animals of 27 major species have been reintroduced under Operation Phoenix. Hot-air balloon trips, day and night game drives and bushwalks are available.

The reserve has the second-largest elephant population in South Africa and guests are assured of sighting not only the Big Five but also the elusive cheetah and endangered wild dog.

Sun City and the Palace of the Lost City are very popular tourist attractions, offering gambling, golf, extravaganza shows, watersport and an artificial beach. There are various hiking trails in the region. The Heritage Route starts at the Sterkfontein Caves World Heritage Site and ends at Pilanesberg.

Southern district

The OPM Prozesky Bird Sanctuary in Potchefstroom has over 200 bird species and is situated adjacent to the Mooi River.

The Oudorp Hiking Trail takes visitors through the old part of Klerksdorp where 12 Voortrekker families settled.

Other attractions in the region include the Potchefstroom Lakeside Resort, the Faan Meintjies Nature Reserve in Klerksdorp, mine tours at Orkney, the Diggers Route at Wolmaransstad and the Bloemhof Dam Nature Reserve.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga – “The Place Where the Sun Rises” – epitomises every traveller’s dream of the true African experience. Located in the north-eastern part of South Africa, the province is bordered

by Mozambique to the east and the Kingdom of Swaziland to the south and east.

The climate and topography vary from cool highland grasslands at 1 600 m above sea level, through the Middleveld and escarpment, to the subtropical Lowveld towards the Kruger National Park and many private game reserves.

Scenic beauty, climate and wildlife, voted the most attractive features of South Africa, are found in abundance in this province. Attractions range from game viewing and bird watching to scenic drives across the valleys and peaks of the vast Drakensberg escarpment, and include agritourism, industrial and adventure tourism and cultural experiences.

Historical sites and cultural villages, old wagon routes and monuments mark events and characters who passed this way in search of adventure and wealth.

Ndebele bead work and wall-painting in the north-west, the arts and crafts of the Lowveld. The different traditional villages throughout the province offer a unique insight into the people's history and cultures.

Mbombela

Mbombela is the capital of Mpumalanga and the commercial and administrative hub of the Lowveld.

The Mbombela Historical Trail is an hour-long walking route stretching from the Promenade Centre to the Civic Centre.

The Blue Train runs between Pretoria and Mbombela on a chartered route called the Valley of the Olifants Route. Rovos Rail trains also travel to Mbombela.

The Green Heritage Hiking Trail in the Mbombela Nature Reserve is one of several walks in the reserve and one of many in the region.

Not to be missed is the Lowveld Botanical Garden, as well as the Reptile Park, the Sudwala Caves and the PR Owen Dinosaur Park.

The tranquil town of White River to the north of Mbombela is well known as an artist's haven and a gateway to the Kruger National Park. Rottcher Wineries have taken advantage of the area's prime production of oranges to make a truly unique wine, which has been a hallmark of the area for over 50 years.

Panorama

Barberton features many reminders of the early gold-rush era. Museums include Belhaven, Fernlea House and Stopforth House. The only known verdite deposits in the world are found in the rocks of the Barberton district. The annual Diggers Festival is held in September.

The Blyderivierspoort Nature Reserve near

Graskop is characterised by striking rock formations and a rich diversity of plants. Within the reserve, the Bourke's Luck potholes were formed by river erosion and the action of flood water.

The Blyde River Canyon is a 26-km-long gorge carved out of the face of the escarpment, and is one of the natural wonders of Africa. The canyon is the third-largest in the world, the only green canyon, and hosts three rivers that feed the Blydepoort Dam at Swadini. God's Window provides a magnificent panoramic view across miles of densely forested mountains, the green Lowveld and the canyon.

The Blyderivierspoort Hiking Trail is one of the most popular in the country. The southern section of the Kruger National Park, which is a major tourist attraction, falls within this region.

Kaapsehoop is a historical village known for the wild horses that frequent the district. Blue swallows are regular visitors from September to April.

The Lydenburg Museum is in the Gustav Klingbiel Reserve, which is the site of archaeological ruins from the Later Iron Age.

The Lydenburg Heads, human-like masks dating back to 500 AD, were discovered in this area.

Sabie is the centre of the largest man-made forest in South Africa and a popular destination among mountain bikers.

The Cultural Historical Forestry Museum depicts various aspects of the country's forestry industry. The Bridal Veil, Horseshoe and Lone Creek waterfalls, and Mac Mac pools and falls just outside Sabie are well worth a visit.

The 69-km Prospector's Trail starts at the Mac Mac Forest Station and leads to the Bourke's Luck potholes.

At the Montrose Falls in Schoemanskloof, the Crocodile River cascades 12 m into a series of rock pools. It is also the starting point of the annual Lowveld Crocodile Canoe Marathon, held in February.

Pilgrim's Rest is a living museum and a replica of the early gold-mining town. The Alanglade House Museum offers guided tours of the former mine manager's house, while the Diggings Museum just outside the town arranges guided tours of gold-panning activities.

This area was the setting for *Jock of the Bushveld*, the novel by Sir Percy Fitzpatrick about the experiences of a man and his dog as they shared adventures in the world of African gold mining. The Dredzen Shop Museum features a range of items in use nearly a century ago.

Mount Sheba Nature Reserve, south of Pilgrim's Rest, is best known for its indigenous forest – one of few left in the region.

Highlands Meander

The Highlands Meander is a mecca for fly-fishers. It is in the placid and pristine waters of this region that one finds various stocks of fish, with trout as the major draw card.

At the Verloren Vlei and Steenkampsberg nature reserves at Dullstroom one can get a rare glimpse of the endangered blue, wattled and crowned cranes.

The Loskop Dam Nature Reserve offers game watching, boating and fishing. Many hiking trails are available, such as the Elandskrans Trail, which includes a 30-minute train ride between Waterval-Boven and Waterval-Onder.

Cultural Heartland

Visitors to the Cultural Heartland can immerse themselves in the true cultural heritage of Mpumalanga. Here, one can learn about the proud and welcoming Ndebele people, revered for the striking and colourful geometric patterns on their houses, clothing and beadwork.

This region also has illuminating historical sites such as the Botshabelo Historical Village, near Middelburg.

Cosmos Country

Cosmos Country covers parts of what is known as the energy belt of Mpumalanga, which is home to a number of power stations. This region also has the world's largest underground coal-mining complex and the Sasol plant that is renowned for its oil-from-coal technology. The carpet of cosmos flowers that blossom in late summer lures visitors to this region.

Wild Frontier

Various archaeological discoveries dating back almost three billion years were made in the imposing mountains of this region. Visitors can enjoy a rare glimpse of the San paintings embossed in some rocks. The region also holds rich historical sentiments centred on the monument of the late Mozambican President Samora Machel, constructed in the village of Mbuzini.

Grass and wetlands

Grass and wetlands are a paradise with their variety of bird species. This region stretches across the deep valleys and mountains of the east where thermal springs bubble to the surface. There are 270 pans and lakes within a 20km radius of Lake Chrissie. In this region, visitors can take part in the unusual "frogging expedition" or simply gaze at the stars during "star-gazing weekends."

Gauteng

Gauteng, the "Place of Gold," is the commercial powerhouse of the country, but its offerings are not limited to commerce and industry. Anchored by the cities of Johannesburg and Pretoria, Gauteng provides plenty in the way of entertainment through its network of upmarket shopping malls, casinos, street markets, theatres, restaurants, museums and parks.

Gauteng is characterised by a cosmopolitan mix of people from all walks of life. The province's unique cultural and social legacy is evident from the many excellent museums, theatres, cultural precincts and craft markets.

Although Gauteng is the most populated, built-up and industrialised province, it still has natural areas offering a variety of leisure activities such as day hikes, picnic spots and sports activities.

The Vaal Dam, which supplies water to most of Gauteng's residents, covers some 300 km² and is a popular venue for watersports. Numerous resorts line the shore. The dam also attracts diverse bird species.

Tourism attractions in and around the Cradle of Humankind have grown to more than 380, with over half of these offering graded accommodation.

The broader 47 000 ha Cradle of Humankind site has many caves, the most famous of which are the Sterkfontein caves.

In 1999, Sterkfontein and its environs were declared a World Heritage Site. About 40% of all the world's human ancestor fossils have been found here, including several of the world's most famous and important fossils. A further 500 hominid fossils and more than 9 000 stone tools have been excavated in the area during ongoing work. The famous skull of Mrs Ples, an estimated 2,5-million-year-old hominid fossil, and Little Foot, an almost complete hominid skeleton some 3,3 million years old, were discovered at the Sterkfontein Caves near Krugersdorp.

The Krugersdorp Game Reserve provides sanctuary for several game species, including four of the Big Five. The African Fauna and Bird Park houses various species of wildlife and birds.

A team of Lippizaner stallions performs every Sunday at the South African National Horsemanship Centre in Kyalami.

The Walter Sisulu National Botanical Garden has a 70 m-high waterfall and a breeding pair of black eagles.

Forty kilometres north of Pretoria is a ring of hills a kilometre in diameter and 100 m high. These are the walls of the Tswaing Meteorite Crater left by an asteroid that hit the area some 200 000 years ago. There is a museum adjacent to this

site. The crater is covered with indigenous trees and bushes, which attract a variety of bird life.

The old mining town of Cullinan has developed around the Premier Diamond Mine. The mine has produced some of the world's most famous diamonds, including the Cullinan Diamond, the world's largest at 3 106 carats.

Johannesburg

The Adler Museum of the History of Medicine depicts the history of medicine, dentistry and pharmacy in South Africa. The Pharmacy Museum in Melrose houses a large variety of medicines, including more than 670 traditional medicines that have been collected throughout southern Africa.

Newtown is at the heart of initiatives to revitalise the inner city of Johannesburg. Here, visitors will find the renowned Market Theatre, jazz bars, dance studios and artists' communes among museums, libraries and other places of historic interest.

The Absa Money Museum lies in downtown Johannesburg. Historical records stretch all the way back to the beginnings of Johannesburg, and displays ranges from fairly early money forms, like cowrie shells and Venetian glass beads, through to gold coins recovered from sunken ships. The scientific study of money and its history, or Numismatics, is the essence of the museum's displays.

The Nelson Mandela Bridge is a landmark gateway into Newtown. It is the largest cable-stayed bridge in southern Africa.

Museum Africa in Newtown tells the story of life in South Africa from the Stone Age to the Nuclear Age and beyond.

The Market Theatre complex comprises three theatres, an art gallery, restaurants and pubs. A bronze statue of the champion of passive resistance, Mahatma Gandhi, can be seen in the city centre.

Gold Reef City is a theme park based on Johannesburg during the gold-rush era.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg is a state-of-the-art tribute to the rise and fall of apartheid, with 22 exhibition areas that take the visitor on an emotional journey through the state-sanctioned system of apartheid.

Constitution Hill features the impressive building housing South Africa's Constitutional Court, which offers visitors the chance to view the fort, the so-called native gaol, the women's gaol and the awaiting-trial block.

A large, well-established park surrounds Zoo Lake, which breeding bird colonies frequent. Other attractions include jazz concerts, rowing boats for hire, a tea garden and a restaurant.

The James Hall Museum of Transport was

founded in 1964 and houses an historical collection of various modes of land transport used in South Africa, dating back 400 years.

The South African Museum of Military History holds an impressive collection of weaponry and uniforms from the two world wars.

The two-bedroom house where Mandela lived before his incarceration has been declared a national monument and converted into a museum.

The Walter Sisulu Square in Kliptown, Soweto, is the place where the Freedom Charter was signed in 1955. The Kliptown Project comprises a hotel, the Kliptown Museum, retail outlets, restaurants and offices.

Soweto is a popular tourist destination. No tour of Soweto would be complete without a visit to the Hector Petersen Museum, which commemorates the people who died during the Student Uprising of 16 June 1976.

The Nelson Mandela Foundation's Centre of Memory is open to the public as a place of memory-sharing and reflection on the life and times of Nelson Mandela.

At the Lesedi Cultural Village in the Swartkops hills north of Johannesburg visitors can families of different cultural groupings. It features four traditional homesteads where visitors can spend the night with a family of their choice. The Phumangena Zulu Kraal is home to traditional Zulu people living and working there.

The Melville Koppies in Johannesburg was once the site of a Stone Age African village and iron-smelting works. Flora include 80% of the species recorded on the Witwatersrand. It is open to the public from September to April.

Pretoria

A variety of historical buildings is found in the city, such as the Union Buildings, which celebrated its centenary in 2013. Designed by Sir Herbert Baker, construction started in 1910 and was completed in 1913. It has since been the setting for the presidential inauguration of former President Nelson Mandela in 1994, as well as those of Thabo Mbeki on 16 June 1999, and 27 April 2004, and of Jacob Zuma on 9 May 2009, and 24 May 2014. It is also the setting of many national celebrations, including Women's Day, and Freedom Day. In December 2013 a bronze statue of former President Mandela was unveiled at the Union Buildings.

Church Square is built around a statue of the former President of the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek, Paul Kruger, and includes buildings such as the Old Raadsaal and the Palace of Justice.

Ten minutes' drive from Church Square is Freedom Park, which commemorates the

country's political history. Once completed, the 35 ha site will comprise a garden of remembrance, a museum, and statues and sculptures to honour South Africans who contributed to the country's freedom and development.

The Kruger House Museum contains the personal belongings of President Kruger.

Melrose House is a beautiful example of Victorian architecture. The Peace Treaty of Vereeniging, which ended the Anglo-Boer War/South African War, was signed there in 1902.

Demonstrations at the Pioneer Open-Air Museum include milking, butter- and candle-making, bread baking and coffee-bean grinding.

Other museums include the South African Air Force Museum, Police Museum, Coert Steynberg Museum and the Transvaal Museum of Natural History.

The Voortrekker Monument commemorates the Great Trek. Some 260 steps lead to the dome, where spectacular views of the city can be enjoyed.

Fort Schanskop has been refurbished and has a 375-seat amphitheatre.

The Sammy Marks Museum near Pretoria dates from 1885. Rooms in the house are filled with Victorian paintings, furniture, silverware and porcelain.

Visitors can relax at the tea garden and restaurant on the premises.

The General Smuts House Museum in Irene, south-east of Pretoria, contains the original furnishings of the Smuts family home. A popular arts and crafts market is held there on every second Saturday of the month.

The Rietvlei Nature Reserve is notable for its grass types, herbs, large number of game including rhino, hippo and many bird species.

The Mapoch Ndebele Village, north of Pretoria, is the first living cultural village in South Africa owned and managed by its residents.

Mamelodi is about 20 km from the city centre and features Solomon Mahlangu Square, which is dedicated to this freedom fighter.

The Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum outside Pretoria features a farmstead dating from 1880. Traditional farming activities are demonstrated, and annual events include a prickly-pear festival, a mampoer festival and the Agricultural Museum Show.

The Pretoria National Botanical Garden houses the National Herbarium of South Africa, which is the largest in the Southern Hemisphere.

KwaZulu-Natal

The garden province of South Africa, KwaZulu-Natal, is a subtropical region of lush and

well-watered valleys, washed by the warm Indian Ocean. One of the country's most popular tourist destinations, the province stretches from Port Edward in the south to the borders of Swaziland and Mozambique to the north.

History-filled towns lead to adventure sports and game viewing, along with outlets for unique arts and crafts.

Durban and surroundings

The city of Durban, overlooking Africa's busiest seaport, is warm and inviting. It is not only South Africa's domestic tourism leader, but is also popular among visitors from throughout Africa and the rest of the world who seek a unique blend of vibrance, sophistication, cultural diversity and excitement in a beautiful setting.

The Golden Mile skirts the main beaches of the Indian Ocean. Attractions include an amusement centre, paddling pools, paved walkways and fountains.

The uShaka Marine World has a theme park, oceanarium, dolphinarium and oceanographic research institute. It is home to a wide variety of sea life, including sharks, dolphins and seals. One of its main attractions is the long lane of shops and the multitude of restaurants, especially those in the old wreck (a replica of a ship wreck in the centre of the park), and a tourism information office at its entrance.

The Durban area has more than 50 reserves, developed parks and specialised gardens, the most renowned being the Municipal Botanical Garden. Besides the botanical gardens, Mitchell Park is one of the most popular green spaces and includes an outdoor restaurant and a zoo, plus a sizeable playground for children.

MiniTown is a model city depicting Durban's best-known buildings.

Museums include the Natural History Museum, the Natural Science Museum, the Old House Museum and the Old Fort. One of the most intriguing museums is the Maritime Museum, complete with two floating ships in the harbour.

The Shree Ambalavaanar Alayam Temple (the Second River Temple) in Cato Manor was the first Hindu temple in Africa. It is a national monument.

The Juma Masjid Mosque is the largest mosque in the Southern Hemisphere.

Annual events in and around the city include the popular Comrades Marathon between Durban and Pietermaritzburg, an international surfing competition, the Duzi canoe marathon, the Midmar Mile and Dolphin Mile open-water swimming events, the July Handicap horse-race and the Amashova-shova cycle tour, as well as the largest road race in the country – the Spar Mercury Ladies 10-km Challenge.

Umhlanga Rocks, just north of Durban, is notable for its ski-boating facilities and the Ski-Boat Festival held every April. The KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board offers shark dissections and interesting displays. Guided tours of the Hawaan Forest are also on offer. Hawaan is the last relic of coastal forest in the region and has rare indigenous trees.

The Umgeni River Bird Park overlooks the Umgeni River and ranks among the world's best bird sanctuaries. Walk-in aviaries hold many varieties of indigenous and exotic birds.

The maritime offices, which control the entry of ships into and out of the busiest port in Africa, are in the Millennium Town at the end of the Bluff.

North Coast

Year-round frolicking dolphins and impressive seasonal whale migrations make the coastline between the Umdloti and the Thukela rivers aptly called the "Dolphin Coast." The rarely seen larger humpback dolphins are also found here.

Many of the first Indian immigrants settled here, and the area's markets, mosques and temples give it an authentic Eastern flavour.

Tonga is an area where sugar was first planted in 1854. The town's Indian ambience is accentuated by two prominent Hindu temples – the Juggernath Puri and Vishwaroop temples.

Other towns along the Dolphin Coast include Shaka's Rock, Salt Rock, Ballito, Verulam, KwaDukuza, Darnall and Umdloti.

Zululand and the Elephant Coast

Zululand's north-east quadrant – between Mozambique, Swaziland and the warm Indian Ocean – has its own unique tale to tell. This is the Elephant Coast or Maputaland, named after the mid-17th-century king who established dominion here some 200 years before King Shaka consolidated his Zulu empire to the south.

The Tembe Elephant Park in the far north is home to herds of the massive African elephant.

The Hluhluwe-Imfolozi Park is one of South Africa's largest game parks. Visitors should look out for the Big Five as well as the elusive cheetah and wild dog.

The eMakhosini Valley, birthplace of King Shaka, is known as "The Valley of Zulu Kings." A joint public-private sector project aims to preserve the culture and history of the Zulu people. This heritage park is near a nature reserve that supports the Big Five of the animal kingdom. At the eMakhosini Memorial Site, seven Zulu kings are buried.

Umgungundlovu was once the royal capital of King Dingaan and was reconstructed. The

beehive huts and the layout of the original Zulu village have been reproduced.

Authentic Zulu villages such as Shakaland, Kwabhekithunga Kraal, Damazulu and Stewart's Farm offer accommodation and the opportunity to experience traditional Zulu culture.

The iSimangaliso (isiZulu word meaning "miracle") Wetland Park is one of the jewels of South Africa's coastline, with a unique mosaic of ecosystems – swamps, lakes, beaches, coral reefs, wetlands, woodlands, coastal forests and grasslands – supporting diverse animal, bird and marine life.

It is South Africa's third-largest park, spanning 280 km of coastline, from the Mozambican border in the north to Mapelane, south of the St Lucia estuary, and made up of around 328 000 ha of pristine natural ecosystems – including swamps, lake systems, beaches, coral reefs, wetlands, woodlands and coastal forests.

St Lucia and its surroundings comprise a globally important wetland and have five separate ecosystems. It is a fishing and bird watching paradise, and boat trips on the lake offer opportunities for crocodile and hippo sightings. St Lucia is the only town in the world that is surrounded by a natural world heritage area.

The Kosi Bay Nature Reserve is part of the Coastal Forest Reserve between Mozambique and Sodwana Bay. The adjacent Indian Ocean provides exciting snorkelling and fishing opportunities. On offer is a four-day guided walking trail around the estuarine system.

uMkhuze is a small trade and transport centre. The Mkuze River cuts through the Ubombo Mountains before serving as a natural boundary for Zululand's popular Mkuzi Game Reserve.

The Border Cave, a site of immense archaeological interest on the border of Swaziland, now also has an interpretation centre.

Lake Sibaya is South Africa's largest natural freshwater lake, covering some 77 km². Sibaya Lake Lodge is the first South African ecotourism development jointly owned by private enterprise and the local community.

The coral reef in the Sodwana Bay National Park attracts hundreds of scuba-divers throughout the year, and in summer, power boaters arrive for some of the best marlin fishing in the world.

South Coast

Amanzimtoti is popular for its safe swimming beaches and a variety of fun activities and attractions for the whole family.

The Hibiscus Coast stretches between Umkomaas and the Wild Coast. Margate is the largest resort town along this coast, and is very popular during the holidays. The Hibiscus Festival is held there in July.

The Oribi Gorge Nature Reserve encompasses forest, rivers, rapids and ravines. Birdlife, including five kingfisher species and seven eagle species, is prolific. There is also a variety of mammals and a 140-m abseil and gorge swing for adrenalin junkies.

Port Edward offers safe swimming and good fishing opportunities. Nearby, the Umthamvuna Nature Reserve is noted for its beautiful scenery, birdlife and many rare plant species.

The Shell Museum at Shelly Beach is well worth a visit. Other popular coastal towns include Port Shepstone, Ramsgate, St Michael's-on-Sea, Uvongo and Scottburgh. Nature's annual extravaganza – the unforgettable Sardine Run – strikes the South Coast around the end of June every year, when people flock to the beaches and anglers await the arrival of the game fish following the sardines.

Pietermaritzburg and the Midlands

Pietermaritzburg has various museums, including the Msunduzi Museum that depicts the heritage of different cultural groups of KwaZulu-Natal, a replica Hindu Shiva temple and a beautiful herb garden, the Natal Museum and the Natal Steam Railway Museum, which offers steam-train rides on the second Sunday of every month. The Tatham Art Gallery is also extremely popular.

The Albert Falls Public Resort Nature Reserve and the Albert Falls Dam provide opportunities for sailing, canoeing and fishing. Bird watching, horse riding and hiking are also popular activities.

The Howick Falls are in the Nature Valley Reserve, where the river tumbles 100 m in a single fall. There are several climbing routes.

The Midlands Meander is a scenic drive between Hilton and Mooi River, with some 430 points of call en route, ranging from art studios, potters and painters, to herb gardens and cheese makers.

Midmar Dam is zoned for yachting and power-boating. The 1 000 ha Midmar Game Park is inhabited by rhino, zebra, a wide variety of antelope species and waterfowl. The popular yearly Midmar Mile attracted 18 000 swimmers in 2013.

Drakensberg

The mountainous "Barrier of Spears" uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park World Heritage Site, adorned with Stone Age cave paintings, forms the north-western border of KwaZulu-Natal. The entire area is a bird sanctuary, featuring, among other species, the endangered bearded vulture. The highest concentration of walks and trails in South Africa is found here. The uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park consists of almost the entire

Drakensberg mountain range from Bushman's Neck in the south to the Royal KwaZulu-Natal National Park in the north. Peaks soar to over 3 000 m and are often snow-covered in winter. There are trout hatcheries in the Kamberg Reserve area and at Cathedral Peak.

Lotheni Nature Reserve is notable for its trout fishing facilities (angling permits are required). Relics of the area's history have been preserved in the Settler Museum.

The Himeville Nature Reserve has two lakes stocked with trout. The nearby Swamp Nature Reserve attracts a variety of waterfowl, including the rare wattled crane.

The Ndedema Gorge in the Mdedelelo Wilderness Area near Cathedral Peak has examples of Khoi and San art.

Sani Pass is the only road across the high escarpment between KwaZulu-Natal and the Kingdom of Lesotho. The top section is only passable in 4x4 vehicles. The Giant's Cup Hiking Trail, starting at the foot of the pass, is described as one of South Africa's finest.

Giant's Castle Game Reserve is especially known for its more than 5 000 San paintings. The Bushman Site Museum is worth a visit.

Royal Natal National Park offers many scenic highlights, including the Amphitheatre, Mont-aux-Sources and the Thukela Falls.

Battlefields

The KwaZulu-Natal Battlefields Route has the highest concentration of battlefields and related military sites in South Africa.

The Battlefields Route starts at Estcourt, winding north through Colenso and Ladysmith to Newcastle and Volksrust, and eastwards to Utrecht, Glencoe, Dundee, Nqutu, Paulpietersburg, Vryheid, Babanango and Ulundi.

All the towns along the route have their own unique charm and range of attractions: arts and crafts, scenic hiking trails, farm resorts, Zulu culture and roadside stalls. Game viewing, natural hot springs, horse trails and watersports can also be enjoyed. The Chelmsford Nature Reserve near Newcastle is a birdwatcher's paradise. Power-boating and carp fishing are added attractions. Game includes springbok, zebra, rhino and blesbok. Majuba Hill and O'Neill's Cottage are other interesting places to visit.

The Ladysmith Siege Museum provides insight into the battles of Colenso, Spioenkop, Vaalkrans and Tugela Heights. Museum staff arrange guided tours to nearby battlefields such as Wagon Hill. Other attractions include the statue of Gandhi, the All Saints Church, the Soofi Mosque and the Spioenkop Dam and Nature Reserve.

Near Dundee, tourists can visit various battlefields, including Ncome-Blood River, Isandlwana,

Rorke's Drift and Talana. The Talana Museum depicts various facets of the coal industry, and local Zulu, Boer and British history.

Rorke's Drift was the setting for one of the most famous battles of the war. The main attraction is the Rorke's Drift Battle Museum.



Water and Sanitation

The Department of Water and Sanitation's (DWS) legislative mandate seeks to ensure that the country's water resources are protected, managed, used, developed, conserved and controlled by regulating and supporting the delivery of effective water supply and sanitation. This entails adhering to the requirements of water-related policies and legislation, including constitutional requirements, that are critical in delivering on the right of access to sufficient food and water, transforming the economy and eradicating poverty.

The DWS's strategic goals are to:

- be an efficient, effective and development-oriented sector leader by increasing the skills pool by implementing commitments contained in the sector skills plan of capacity building
- improve water-resources management by finalising the institutional framework and formalising regional entities to provide regional bulk-water infrastructure and support municipalities.
- improve the internal control environment, thus improving water resources and services information and implementing programmes that support job creation.
- provide equitable and sustainable raw water by finalising and implementing strategies that guide future priorities for water management in the country
- implement programmes to improve the efficiency of water use and oversee water infrastructure programmes that would benefit other sectors
- ensure the provision of equitable and sustainable water services of acceptable quantity and quality by regulating the quality and quantity of water services, and ensuring interim water supply in the 24 priority district municipalities.

The DWS set aside R352,4 million to help alleviate the situation in 10 drought-stricken areas of KwaZulu-Natal. Poor rainfall in most parts of the province caused river and dam levels in the region to drop. Subsequently, the KwaZulu-Natal Provincial Government declared the province a disaster area.

The DWS formed a partnership with the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (CoGTA) in an effort to minimise the impact of the drought. The two departments have, together with water boards in the province, established a disaster management committee to coordinate their relief efforts.

The allocated money would be used to:

- implement water restrictions that have been imposed by some municipalities
- provide water tankers at Hazelmere

- procure generators
- fast-tracking Weza Water System water-use licence
- refurbishing ailing boreholes at UMzinyathi.

Long-term measures includes the augmentation of the South Coast Pipeline in the UGu District, the fast-tracking of the upgrading of Kwabani Dam, and the improvement of the Lower Thukela weir-extraction capacity. Also, feasibility studies will be done with a view to building a desalination plant north of Durban.

In February 2015, 35 Cuban water specialists arrived in the country to work in various fields of water, following an agreement between South African and Cuban governments.

This followed an agreement on cooperation in the fields of water resources management and water supply that was signed in Johannesburg by the two governments in September 2013.

In October 2014, the Deputy Minister of the DWS went to Cuba to ratify the agreement and to appoint the 35 incumbents. The specialists have been contracted to work in South Africa for two years, with the possibility of extending their stay by another year.

Among the recruits were:

- civil engineers
- electrical engineers
- mechanical engineers
- irrigation and drainage specialists
- hydraulic engineers.

The recruitment of the engineers was an elaborate process, which also involved the participation of a South African organisation of engineers that helped the department in the selection. The specialists work from the department's head office in Pretoria and in rural areas of South Africa where there are skills shortages. The experts were recruited at a middle management level. In terms of the remuneration levels of government, this would cost the Government less than half a million rand per person a year. Part of the recruitment programme involves capacity building and the experts will train and develop young engineers and technicians, which the DWS already produces through two learning academies at the department and Rand Water. The DWS diverse interventions to augment the skills gap in the water sector. In terms of the agreement, the specialists would work in the following areas:

- geo-hydrology and engineering services in rural areas and other disadvantaged areas where such services are inadequate
- exploitation of available water resources
- infrastructure for water supply capacity building through training and support of local staff

- water management and its supply.

The DWS made good progress with the preparatory work of the Lesotho Highlands Water Project Phase-2, that includes the advance infrastructure in preparation for the construction of the Polihali Dam. Water delivery from the scheme is planned to commence by 2022. The cost to implement this project is estimated at R11,2 billion.

There is also progress in the Mokolo and Crocodile River pipeline project, which will transfer water through a 46-km pipeline and pump station from the Mokolo Dam to the Lephalale area.

The raising of the Hazelmere Dam wall will incorporate a Piano Key Weir, which is cutting-edge technology in dam building. The additional water that will become available from this project is aimed at ensuring the supply of water and also support the development of human settlements, the King Shaka Airport and the Dube Trade Port.

The raising of the Clanwilliam Dam will commence in October 2015 at an estimated cost of R2,5 billion. The raising of the dam will also include dam safety measures to ensure the stability of the embankment. The construction of the N7 re-alignment started in August 2014 and is scheduled for completion in March 2017. Three quarters of the extra water that will be available from this project will be reserved to resource poor farmers.

The DWS is proceeding with the planning of the Mzimvubu Water Project, which entails the development of a multipurpose dam, (the Ntabelanga Dam) to supply new irrigation development, and the Laleni Dam for hydropower generation, the project will also provide domestic and industrial water requirements in the Eastern Cape.

The department has initiated the raising of the Tzaneen Dam and construction of new N'wamitwa Dam for the Groot Letaba River Water Development Project in Limpopo. The

The Lesotho Highlands Water Project is a win-win situation as it provides much needed water to South Africa and creates infrastructure development and energy generation in Lesotho. In operation for over 20 years, the Lesotho Highlands Water Project supplies South Africa with about 780 million m3 of water a year. Phase one of the project, which was funded by the World Bank, was completed in 2004. It has provided Lesotho with a number of benefits, including that the country will obtain guaranteed royalties revenues.

When fully operational, phase two of the project will substantially increase the volume of water supplied to South Africa. The agreement on phase two of the project between the two countries was signed in August 2011 and South Africa ratified it in 2012 while Lesotho finalised its ratification process in 2013.

total estimated cost of the project is R4,2 billion with a projected completion date of 2019.

Legislation

The DWS published the draft regulations requiring that the abstraction of water for irrigation purposes be limited, monitored, measured and recorded for public comment.

In terms of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998), the Minister of Water and Sanitation must publish regulations in terms of Section 26 of the Act, which requires that the abstraction of water for irrigation of crops should be limited, monitored, measured and recorded.

The regulations will limit the abstraction rate, prescribe procedures, give powers to authorities and define offences. These regulations are necessary for effective monitoring and enforcement of compliance to the limits and conditions of water use authorisation.

The Minister drafted and published a notice in terms of Section 69 of the Act on 12 December 2014, after consultations with various stakeholders in the water sector.

South Africa's Constitution and Bill of Rights enshrine the basic human right to have access to sufficient water and a safe and healthy environment.

Government fulfils these rights through the DWS, assisted by specific legislation:

- The National Water Act of 1998 ensures that South Africa's water resources are protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable and equitable manner, for the benefit of all people.
- The Water Services Act, 1997 (Act 108 of 1997), prescribes the legislative duty of municipalities as water-service authorities to provide water supply and sanitation according to national standards and norms. It also regulates water boards as important water service providers and gives the executive authority and responsibility to the Minister of Water and Sanitation to support and strengthen the capacity of municipalities to manage their own affairs, exercise their powers and perform their functions.
- The Water Services Act of 1997 places an obligation on the Minister to maintain a National Water Services Information System and to monitor the performance of all water services institutions.
- The Water Research Act, 1971 (Act 34 of 1971), provides for the promotion of water-related research through a Water Research Commission (WRC) and a Water Research Fund.
- The National Environmental Management Act (Nema), 1998 (Act 107 of 1998), makes provision

Benefits from the Lesotho Highlands Water Project are:

- 102 km of paved roads
- 265 km of gravel roads
- 1 133 km of roads rehabilitated to grade 1 standard
- 11 bridges built including three bridges between Lesotho and South Africa in Maseru, Maputsoe and Caledonspoor
- 299 km of power lines
- staff housing for an estimated 300 workers
- hydro-electricity generation estimated at 72 MW
- the Metolong Dam, to which South Africa contributed R50 million, also meets the water needs of the Kingdom of Lesotho and Lesotho gained a village and an information centre at Metolong
- high-quality water transfers and job opportunities
- improved infrastructure in Clarens, Fouriesburg, Ficksburg and Ladybrand in the form of new border crossings and improved amenities, community halls, clinics, houses and improved rail facilities such as in Ficksburg
- the project provides Lesotho with a source of income in exchange for the provision of water to Gauteng where the majority of industrial and mining activity occurs in South Africa, as well as to generate hydro-electric power for Lesotho
- South African companies have a significant presence in Lesotho and are involved in various sectors such as housing, food and beverages, construction, retail, hotels and leisure, banking, and medical services.

for cooperative environmental governance by establishing principles for decision-making on matters affecting the environment, institutions that promote cooperative governance and procedures for coordinating environmental functions exercised by organs of state.

- The National Water Policy is underpinned by three fundamental principles for managing water resources: equity, (environmental) sustainability and efficiency.

The department is responsible for policy development, regulation and oversight of sanitation provision.

Sanitation provision is governed by the Strategic Framework on Water Services (2003) and the Water Services Act of 1997.

All water users who do not receive their water from a service provider, local authority, water board, irrigation board, government water scheme or other bulk supplier, and who use water for irrigation, mining purposes, industrial use, feedlots or in terms of general authorisation, have a statutory obligation to register. This includes the use of surface and groundwater. Other uses that must be registered include:

- diversion of rivers and streams
- discharge of waste or water containing waste
- storage, which includes any person or body storing water for any purpose from surface run-off, groundwater or fountain flow in excess of 10 000 m³ or where the water area at full supply level exceeds one hectare (ha) in total

on land owned or occupied by that person or body, and who is not in possession of a permit or permission

- local authorities and other bulk suppliers with their own water sources and purification works
- controlled activities such as irrigating with waste, power generation with water, atmospheric modification or recharging of aquifers.

An assessment of the environmental requirements of the rivers and streams concerned is conducted before a licence can be issued.

To promote sustainable and equitable water resources management, the department has developed and continues to update a range of strategies for water management.

Policies and strategies National Water Resource Strategy (NWRS)

The NWRS2 sets out the vision and strategic actions for effective water management

These included the security of water supply, environmental degradation, and pollution of resources.

The NWRS2 outlines the key challenges, constraints and opportunities in water resource management and proposes new approaches that ensure a collective and adequate response for the benefit of all people in South Africa.

This strategy moves towards the achievement and attainment of an inclusive sustainable and equitable economy.

The NWRS2 ensures that the management of national water resources contributes towards achieving South Africa's growth, development and socio-economic priorities in an equitable and sustainable manner over the next five to 10 years.

The strategy also responds to the priorities set by government in the National Development Plan (NDP) and National Water Act imperatives that support sustainable development. It is centred on three key objectives:

- Water supports development and the elimination of poverty and inequality. The strategy recognises that the manner in which water was allocated in the past was unequal and favoured certain sections of the population. The intention, therefore, is to redress past imbalances in the manner in which water was allocated.
- Water contributes to the economy and job creation.
- Water is protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable and equitable manner.

The NWRS2 also focuses on water conservation and the management of water demand as key priorities.

In June 2014, the Lesotho Highlands Development Authority announced the expected completion of phase two of the Lesotho Highlands Project to be by mid-2023. The second phase of the major infrastructure project is expected to cost around R11,2 billion and will see the construction of Polihali Dam, a tunnel and several developments around it.

The project is a joint-programme between South Africa and Lesotho. Components such as the environmental studies, mitigation plans, resettlements and compensations were completed by the end of 2014. Some 2 500 workers were expected in the area at the height of the project. A township will be established and an existing lodge will be developed to meet the accommodation demand.

According to research published by the WRC, non-revenue water for urban supply systems was at 36,8% over the past six years, equal to 1 580 M³ a year.

Water for Growth and Development (WfGD)

The WfGD Framework points to the relationship between the availability of water and the many forms of economic activity that depend on the available supply of water of specific levels of quality.

The department's position is that the country's economic growth target cannot be achieved at the expense of the ecological sustainability of water resources or meeting people's needs.

It wishes to respond to the needs of the different economic sectors and this is best achieved when water supply and the impact of use are factored in during planning.

Rather than being an add-on or afterthought, the department's position is that the need for water has to be mainstreamed and placed at the nucleus of all planning decisions in the public and private sector.

For water to support economic growth without compromising primary needs or ecological sustainability requires adequate integrated strategic planning.

Although the WfGD framework was approved by Cabinet, it was never gazetted.

The revised NWRS-2, however, has incorporated aspects of the WfGD that pertain to water resource management as key core strategies.

Raw Water Pricing Strategy

Since 1994, there have been continued efforts to reform and realign the water value chain so that it can achieve government's objectives.

These include ensuring equitable access to water and sanitation, the sustainable use of water for social and economic benefit, and ensuring the sustainability of water resources and water-services delivery.

As part of this process, the DWS is looking at pricing, financing and economic regulation reforms in the water sector.

This project will review the raw water pricing strategy, develop infrastructure funding models and recommend an appropriate model and institutional arrangements for an economic regulator for water.

It is generally agreed that pricing and economic regulation play a key role in the provisioning of infrastructure by assuring necessary investments to support socio-economic growth and ensuring that services are widely available and accessible and priced at levels that support current and future needs.

The project will contribute to the following:

- The revision of the Raw Water Pricing Strategy to ensure equitable and appropriate raw water tariffs that will enable sustainable operation and management of raw water infrastructure and will fund catchment management.
- Funding/financing models for water resources infrastructure.
- The establishment of an economic regulator for the entire water value chain.

The project is strategic in nature and will enable the DWS to have sound water-pricing policies, cost-reflective tariffs for the entire water value chain in South Africa and a good funding framework for infrastructure.

The project is divided into three work-streams, each to be led by the DWS together with different institutions to provide support.

National Groundwater Strategy

Groundwater is a strategic resource in many parts of South Africa, especially in rural areas.

It also plays an important role in the supply of water to small towns and villages in the drier parts of the country.

There is considerable potential for additional development of groundwater resources to augment existing resources.

The need for improved groundwater management to ensure sustainable and efficient use of the resource was recognised in NWRS-1 and led to the formulation of a National Groundwater Strategy through which strategic actions were undertaken.

Reuse Strategy

The DWS has developed a water reuse strategy to encourage informed decisions relating to water reuse.

Reuse could be increased significantly with return flows in coastal cities, where it would otherwise drain into the sea.

In coastal cities, water reuse and desalination compete as two options for water conservation.

Reuse is becoming increasingly acceptable and feasible owing to increasing shortages, improved purification technology and decreasing treatment costs. Membrane technologies, also used for desalination of seawater, have become more affordable and have improved.

The reuse of treated waste water would be managed to ensure public health safety.

Water Bilateral Agreement

In December 2014, the Minister of Water and Sanitation went to Zimbabwe to attend the signing ceremony of the Certified Agreement on the Cooperation on Water Resources Management and the Establishment and Functioning of The Joint Water Commission between South Africa and Zimbabwe.

A joint agreement was reached to undertake a technical study to evaluate the possible water resource developments and transfer options of water from Zimbabwe to South Africa.

The two countries agreed to construct a pipeline that will draw water from Zambezi River to Cowdray Park in Bulawayo, then to South Africa.

This process saw the two countries enter into an agreement of cooperation on water resources management and the establishment of the Joint Water Commission (JWC).

The function of the established Joint Study Management Committee (JSMC) is to coordinate the implementation of the project.

The objective of the JSMC is to act on behalf of the parties in all matters relating to the oversight and management of the study, submit a report with recommendations to the parties upon finalisation of each phase of the study, and develop the terms of reference for each phase of the study.

Rainwater harvesting

The DWS supports a national rainwater harvesting programme, which has a narrow but important focus on the construction of above and below-ground rainwater storage tanks by rural households for food gardens and other productive water uses.

Several municipalities now use roof rainwater tanks for domestic purposes. These have been found to be particularly effective when used in conjunction with other water supply options.

Though there are no hard figures yet on how many cubic millimetres per year rainwater harvesting can contribute, it is an option that can be implemented in a short timeframe.

Desalination strategy

The department has developed a supporting desalination strategy, which also includes desalination as a technology for treating water other than seawater for water reuse. Desalination of seawater could potentially provide an unlimited resource of fresh water. However, the rising cost of energy may be a deterrent.

As with other infrastructure projects with potential environmental impacts, the planning for a desalination plant will have to undergo an environmental impact assessment in compliance with Nema of 1998.

The DWS will ensure that desalination is considered as an option for meeting future water requirements, in particular in coastal cities where there is sufficient electricity for desalination.

The target is not only to implement desalination in several locations in South Africa, but also to become an international knowledge centre in this particular field.

Budget and funding

The total budget for the DWS for the 2014/15 financial year was R12, 480 billion.

The department's spending focus was on providing regional bulk infrastructure for water and wastewater treatment works, which link water sources to local government infrastructure.

In addition, the department will also transfer R2,6 billion in 2014/15, R3,7 billion in 2015/16 and R4 billion in 2016/17 to the Water Trading Entity through the Water Infrastructure Management programmes.

The budget was allocated as follows:

- R1, 026 billion to administration.
- R597,8 million to water sector management
- R2, 919 billion to water resource infrastructure
- R121,5 million to water sector regulation
- R7, 782 billion to the regional implementation programme
- R32, 5 million was allocated to international water cooperation.

The department is also developing a strategic sourcing and localisation strategy to focus on local content and is collaborated with the Department of Trade and Industry, National Treasury and the Economic Development Department.

Role players

Water boards

The primary activity of water boards is to provide water services (bulk potable and bulk waste water) to other water services institutions within their respective service areas. They may perform other activities under conditions set out in the

Water Services Act of 1997. In certain situations, the Minister of Water Affairs may direct water boards to amend their business plans to meet all the requirements of the Water Services Act of 1997. There are nine water boards in South Africa.

Catchment management agencies (CMAs)

The main responsibilities of CMAs are to manage water resources at catchment level in collaboration with local stakeholders, with specific focus on involving local communities in the decision-making processes, in terms of meeting basic human needs, promoting equitable access to water, and facilitating social and economic development.

In essence, CMAs are service-delivery agencies and are listed in the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999). There are nine CMAs in South Africa.

Water-user associations (WUAs)

WUAs are cooperative associations of individual water users who wish to undertake water-related activities at local level for their mutual benefit. They operate in terms of a formal constitution as set out in Schedule 5 of the National Water Act of 1998.

Water Research Commission

The WRC has a vital role in water research by establishing needs and priorities, stimulating and funding research, promoting the transfer of information and technology, and enhancing knowledge and capacity building in the water sector.

The commission provides support to the water sector and all its relevant institutions and partners.

Over the medium term, it will focus on water resources management, water-linked ecosystems, water use and waste management, and water use in agriculture.

Water is core to achieving the Department of Science and Technology's (DST) Global Change Grand Challenge, as well as broader national targets relating to the green economy.

The DST and the WRC are to develop the roadmap, to provide a 10-year platform for research, development and innovation in the water and wastewater sectors of South Africa.

This includes providing a platform for the country to compete with leading countries in water technology, increase the numbers of technology-based small and medium-sized enterprises operating in the water sector and increase access to water and sanitation in rural communities.

Water Trading Entity (WTE)

The DWS is responsible for the regulation of water use in South Africa by ensuring that water is allocated equitably and used beneficially in the public interest, and is also required to create a register of all water users in the country.

The National Water Act of 1998 makes provision for cost recovery on services rendered by the department to water users. It is against this background that the department created the WTE within its administration.

The main function of the WTE is development, operation and maintenance of specific water resources infrastructure and managing water resources in specific water management areas.

Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority (TCTA)

The TCTA is a State-owned entity (SOE) specialising in project financing, implementation and liability management.

It is responsible for the development of bulk raw-water infrastructure. It also provides an integrated treasury management and financial advisory service to the DWS, water boards, municipalities and other entities that are linked to bulk raw-water infrastructure. The TCTA is primarily responsible for off-budget projects.

Komati River Basin Water Authority

The Komati Basin Water Authority was established in terms of a treaty between South Africa and Swaziland. The aim of the authority is to manage the water resources of the Komati River basin sustainably. The authority is responsible for financing, developing, operating and maintaining the water resources infrastructure in the basin, comprising the Driekoppies Dam in South Africa and the Maguga Dam in Swaziland.

Water Tribunal

The Water Tribunal was established in 1998 to hear appeals against directives and decisions made by responsible authorities, CMAs or water management agencies about matters covered by the National Water Act of 1998, such as the issuing of licences to use water. It is an independent body and can hold hearings anywhere in the country.

The WRC and the Judicial Services Commission recommend people to be included as members of the Water Tribunal, and the Minister of Water Affairs appoints them. The members have to be familiar with water management, engineering, law and other related matters, and they are given administrative support by the DWS.

Strategic Water Partners Network – South Africa (SWPN-SA)

SWPN-SA is one of South Africa's most innovative public-private civil-society sector partner-

In February 2014, a new research chair, sponsored by the East Rand Water Care Company (ERWAT), will focus on new innovations in water research, as well as improving the skills of researchers, engineers and technical personnel in water treatment and management. The ERWAT chair in Wastewater Management will be hosted by Stellenbosch University's Water Institute (SUWI). Professor Gideon Wolfaardt, who returned from Canada where he held a Canada Research Chair in Environmental Interfaces and Biofilms since 2004, is the first research professor to hold the chair. The focus of the new ERWAT chair will be on scientific and technical advances in wastewater management, water quality, water use and demand, as well as fostering partnerships to improve the water research and management skills of scientists, engineers and technical personnel.

ships, making progress that would not have been possible.

The efforts of the SWPN-SA are integral to the NWRS, which the DWS released in 2012.

A cornerstone of the SWPN-SA is developing innovation that leverages the strength and expertise of the DWS, the South African private sector, civil society, and expert organisations.

Resources

South Africa's water resources are, in global terms, scarce and extremely limited. The total flow of all the rivers in the country is about 49 200 million m³ a year. Groundwater plays a pivotal role, especially in rural water supplies.

The country's climate varies from desert and semi-desert in the west to sub-humid along the eastern coastal area, with an average rainfall of about 450 mm per year. This is well below the world average of about 860 mm per year, while evaporation is comparatively high.

Water resources are unevenly spread across South Africa. The variable rainfall distribution and characteristics give rise to an uneven run-off and distribution of water resources, with more than 60% of the river flow arising from only 20% of the land area.

To compensate for the uneven spread of water resources and to manage floods and droughts, more than two-thirds of the country's mean annual run-off are stored in dams. Most of the economically available yield from surface water resources has been fully developed and used, and opportunities for developing new and economic dams are few.

South Africa's inland water resources include 22 major rivers, 165 large dams, more than 4 000 medium and small dams on public and private land, and hundreds of small rivers.

However, owing to the predominantly hard-rock nature of South Africa's geology, there are few major groundwater aquifers that can be used on a large scale.

The poor spatial distribution of rainfall means that the natural availability of water is also highly uneven. This is compounded by the strong seasonality of rainfall over virtually the entire country, and the high within-season variability of rainfall, and consequently, of run-off.

As a result, stream flow in South Africa's rivers is at relatively low levels most of the time, with sporadic high flows occurring – characteristics that limit the proportion of stream flow, which can be relied upon to be available for use, and which also have implications for water-related disasters such as floods and droughts.

To aggravate the situation, most urban and industrial development, as well as some dense rural settlements, have been established in remote locations away from large watercourses.

As a result, the requirements for water already far exceed its natural availability in several river basins. Widespread and often large-scale transfers of water across catchment areas have, therefore, been implemented.

Provided that South Africa's water resources are judiciously managed and wisely allocated and used, sufficient water of appropriate quality will be available to sustain a strong economy, high social standards and healthy aquatic ecosystems for many generations.

South Africa depends mainly on surface-water resources for urban, industrial and irrigation water supplies in the country. In general, surface-water resources are highly developed in many parts of South Africa.

Groundwater is also extensively used, particularly in the rural and more arid areas, contributing to some 60% of newly serviced households since 1994.

In the northern parts of the country, both surface and groundwater resources are nearly fully developed and used. Some overexploitation occurs in localised areas, with little undeveloped resource potential remaining. The reverse applies to the well-watered south-eastern region of the country, which still has significant undeveloped and under-used resources.

The total mean annual run-off of water in South Africa under natural (undeveloped) conditions is estimated at a little over 49 200 million m³ per year, including about 4 800 million m³ per year of water originating in Lesotho, and about 700 million m³ a year originating in Swaziland, which naturally drain into South Africa.

Agricultural irrigation represents close to 60% of the country's total water requirements, while urban requirements constitute about 25% as the second-largest user sector. The remaining 15% is shared by the other sectors (all standardised to 98% assurance of supply).

The total nett abstraction of water from surface water resources amounts to about 10 200 million m³ per year for the whole of South Africa, after allowing for the reuse of return flows.

A further 8% is estimated to be lost through evaporation from storage and conveyance along rivers, and 6% through land-use activities. As a national average, about 66% of the natural river flow (mean annual run-off) therefore still remains in the country's rivers.

Southern Africa also has large hidden underground water reserves, with 12 to 15 aquifer systems, of which three are considered very important for the future.

In South Africa, a substantial resource lies in a massive dolomite aquifer system that covers a vast area, extending from Springs and Brakpan, east of Johannesburg; to Lenasia, south of the city; Zuurbeekom, Carltonville and Magaliesberg on the West Rand; Kuruman in the Northern Cape and even as far as parts of Botswana.

The Witwatersrand mining basin's aquifer storage capacity is about the size of Lake Kariba.

Dams and water schemes

In an attempt to respond adequately to demand and anticipate future demand, South Africa has built numerous large and medium-sized dams, and developed sophisticated inter-basin transfer schemes. The country now has more than 500 government-owned dams countrywide. They range in storage capacity from a volume of 5 500 million m³ of water down to 0,2 million m³ of water.

South Africa uses about 10 200 million m³ of water per year from its major dams. Most water consumption can be attributed to drinking, irrigation, electricity, mining processes and industrial processes.

The DWS follows an integrated approach to managing South Africa's water resources. Proposed new water schemes have to comply with the NWRS, requiring that water-demand management programmes be implemented before embarking on new infrastructure development.

Strict environmental impact assessments must also be performed in accordance with laws and regulations administered by the Department of Environmental Affairs, while the guidelines issued by the World Commission on Dams must also be followed.

Bulk infrastructure is a critical element of water-services infrastructure and an integrated part of water-services management.

Government has implemented key projects to augment South Africa's water resources, such as:

- The TCTA has procured funding to implement the Mokolo and Crocodile River West Water Augmentation Project's first two phases at a cost of about R2 billion, to deliver water to Eskom's new Medupi power station and other industries in the area, as well as domestic water to the Lephalale Local Municipality. The first water delivery was in 2014.
- The Bloemendal Bulk Water Project helps to address issues of water-borne diseases and water shortages in Delmas, in the Victor Khanye Local Municipality. The bulk-water project is part of the government's drive to bring services to the people of the country. The project is designed to supply 25 M/d (potable water) and is sufficient to meet water demand in the service area up to 2026. The new project incorporates a 10 M reservoir located at mid-point of the new pipeline and is designed to improve system operation as well.
- The Spring Grove Dam in Mooi River, KwaZulu-Natal supplies water to the eThekweni Metropolitan Municipality and the uMgungundlovu District, Msunduzi Local, Ugu Local, Sisonke and iLembe local municipalities.
- In March 2014, the completed phases of the Inyaka Integrated Water Supply Scheme in Bushbuckridge, aimed at supplying water to 15 additional villages in the Bushbuckridge local municipality in Mpumalanga, was unveiled. These 15 villages are additional to the 58 that were supplied from the treatment works prior to the completion of phases three and four of the project. It will serve a population of around 850 000 people. A total of 423 jobs were created of who 76 were women and 270 people were trained in the process. The Thulamahashe line, which has a demand for 32M/d, would receive supply from the Inyaka Water Treatment Works. The Thulamahashe Bulk Pipeline will eventually supply 44 villages from the area of Dwarsloep to Hlalakahle around Gottenburg. The reticulation work was completed by the end of May 2014 to service the remaining villages.
- In April 2014, President Zuma turned the first sod of the R12,45-billion Mzimvubu Water Project in Tsolo Junction. The Mzimvubu project will include the construction of two dams: one in Ntabelanga on the Tsitsa River, which will be used for domestic and agricultural water supply requirements. The Ntabelanga dam will store about 490 million m³ of water. Once completed, it will become the 10th largest dam in South Africa. The other dam to be built is the Laleni dam, which will be used for hydro power generation. The dam

has the potential to generate 35 MW of base power, or up to 180 MW of peaking power when operated jointly with Ntabelanga dam. About 18,5 km of power lines will be erected to feed the power onto the national power grid.

- The Pilanesberg Bulk Water Supply Scheme, which will benefit 57 villages in the Moses Kotane and Rustenburg Local Municipalities was launched in April 2014. The multimillion rand project is good news for job creation, as it will also support the local mining industry.

Groundwater resources

Groundwater, despite its relatively small contribution to bulk-water supply (13%), represents an important and strategic water resource in South Africa, since it services between 52% and 82% of community water-supply schemes in the Eastern Cape, Limpopo, Northern Cape, North West and KwaZulu-Natal.

Owing to the lack of perennial streams in the semi-desert to desert parts, two-thirds of South Africa's surface area depend largely on groundwater.

Although irrigation is the largest user, the supply to more than 300 towns and smaller settlements is very important.

Through government's commitment towards meeting the basic water needs of communities, groundwater has become a strategic resource for village water supply in the wetter parts of the country, because of its cost-effectiveness in a widely scattered small-scale user situation.

Groundwater also contributes considerably to river flow. This requires reserving a significant share of groundwater resources to protect aquatic ecosystems in terms of the National Water Act of 1998. The maximum quantity of groundwater that can be developed economically is estimated at about 6 000 million m³ a year, while some 4 000 million m³ of groundwater (mainly in the dry season) contributes to surface-water flow annually.

Managing and developing water resources

To facilitate the management of water resources, the country has been divided into 19 catchment-based water management areas, of which 11 share international rivers.

Sufficient water resources have been developed and are available to ensure that all requirements for water can reasonably be met, without impairing the socio-economic development of the country.

Where feasible, special management techniques may be applied to improve water quality to appropriate standards for particular uses.

The quality of groundwater varies according to hydrogeological conditions and anthropogenic impact. However, most major aquifer systems contain potable-quality water.

To underscore its commitment to the pursuit of universal access to water, the DWS is investing in new infrastructure and maintaining and rehabilitating dysfunctional systems to ensure operational efficiency.

This is particularly relevant to developing water infrastructure to meet the specific needs of different rural communities. Closely related to rural development is the need for mainstream support to local government to sustain the infrastructure underpinning efficient service delivery to communities.

Managing water quality and wastewater

To ensure compliance with minimum water quality norms and standards, the DWS started the annual Blue Drop and Green Drop assessments to guarantee that water and wastewater systems are managed according to set norms and standards.

The department has set a target of 99% compliance with drinking-water quality standards and 80% compliance with wastewater effluent standards.

This incentive-based regulation system aims to improve the quality of municipal drinking water quality and management of waste water.

Because of the scale and magnitude of resources needed for the national certification programme, the Green Drop and Blue Drop programmes take place every second year, alternating with each other. In a programme's "gap" year, progress in the wastewater sector is tracked and reported via the assessment of the cumulative risk status of treatment systems.

The department was honoured to receive international recognition in terms of Environmental Engineering Excellence for the Blue Drop and Green Drop Certification programmes from the American Academy for Environmental Engineers. This academy is affiliated to the International Water Association.

Blue Drop Programme

South Africa's drinking-water quality matches best international practice and follows the guidelines set out by the World Health Organisation. As it involves a benchmark score of 95%, the Blue Drop certification is the recognition of exceptional performance, and should not be equated to a pass mark. It credits exceptional drinking-water quality.

Green Drop Programme

The Green Drop certification measures the performance of waste-water treatment works.

The 2013 Green Drop Report indicated that 41% of the 914 water supply systems assessed require attention. Similarly, 55% (or 821) wastewater treatment works require serious, critical and urgent refurbishment.

On-site sanitation systems provided in mostly rural areas have been found to be relatively robust, with inadequate provision for pit emptying.

Programmes and initiatives "No Drop" assessments

To reduce leakages from the water supply networks and boost the efficiency of water use the DWS implemented "No Drop" assessments across all municipalities in South Africa.

The report assessment programme would be rolled out to municipalities from October to March 2014, with the results of the first assessments to be published in the *Blue Drop/No Drop Report* in 2014.

Thereafter, the results, which would provide the public and the water sector with audited and verified information on water use, water loss and efficiency of water used and managed within a municipality, would be released every two years.

The supply-demand curve shows that South Africa will face a supply-demand deficit of around 17% representing 3,8 billion kilolitres of water by 2030.

Ageing infrastructure, inadequate maintenance and repairs to existing infrastructure, slow responses to water leaks and bursts, shortcomings in technical competency in municipalities and a culture of water wastage challenge the water sector.

Data from 132 municipalities – 75% of the total volume of municipal water supply – revealed that the level of nonrevenue water reached 36,7%, of which 25,4% was considered to be losses via physical leakages.

The War on Leaks campaign has the express aim of putting a stop to water leaks in households, schools, clinics and other public buildings. From March 2014, different municipalities across the country implemented the project, a move that will go a long way to help government save money, as water leaks amount to R7 billion a year. Apart saving water by eliminating unnecessary wastage, a big spin off of the project was job creation. The project saw about 200 youths trained in basic plumbing, which in return created job opportunities for them. The youth fixed leaking pipes in households, schools and public buildings.

Integrated Water Resources

Management (IWRM)

The DWS, with the assistance of the Royal Danish Government, initiated a programme in 2000 to pilot IWRM approaches in three water management areas of South Africa: Crocodile West – Marico (mainly in North West), Mvoti to uMzimkulu (KwaZulu-Natal) and Olifants-Doorn (mainly in the Western Cape).

These water management areas were selected as they represent a cross-section of water resources conditions as well as water-use conditions and user interests.

The IWRM requires intensive planning to ensure efficient, equitable and sustainable management of water resources and for coping with conflicting demands.

Brits Water Treatment Works

The DWS, working together with the Madibeng Local Municipality, set aside R381 million to address water challenges in Majakaneng through the upgrade of the Brits Water Treatment Works (BWTW) which also supplies the Majakaneng area.

The upgrade of the BWTW includes the replacement of sand filters, which was completed in July 2014 by Magalies Water. The works will ensure that the BWTW has an additional production capacity of 20ML/d. Work is underway at the BWTW with civil works (Phase 1), which will be implemented by DWS Construction Unit as contractors and two professional service providers have been appointed for electrical and mechanical works.

The Phase 1 of the BWTW is expected to be completed by August 2015 and Phase 2, which includes mechanical and electrical, will follow thereafter, while the entire upgrade of the BWTW is expected to be completed by 2017/18.

In the short-term, DWS allocated R1,1 million to the Madibeng local municipality to address the water challenges in Majakaneng, which are mainly attributed to vandalism and leakages in the water supply system.

The Madibeng Local Municipality embarked on leak detection exercises and filling the reservoirs. The municipality commenced with distribution of water to identify and repair visible leaks. This required isolation of certain sections of Majakaneng and it was expected not all sections to have water.

DWS and Madibeng Local Municipality will continue to work together to deal with the water leakages, which cause low water pressure in Majakaneng and as a result some areas experienced water shortages.

In August 2014, the Colesberg Waste Water Treatment Works in the Umsobomvu Local

Municipality was launched. The plant, which was completed last year, was built at a cost of R23 million to purify sewage from the local communities. The communities of Colesberg in the Northern Cape, welcomed the announcement that water shortages and lack of proper sanitation will soon be a thing of the past, as the Minister of Water and Sanitation announced multimillion rand water projects for the region. The water projects will include upgrading the old water infrastructure, which was initially designed to supply water to small communities. Colesberg is known for the low levels of rain it experiences, thus its dependence primarily on the flow of the Orange River that runs through it.

National Water Resources Infrastructure (NWRI) Programme

The NWRI ensures reliable supply of water from bulk raw-water resources infrastructure. The programme solicits and sources funding to implement, operate and maintain bulk raw-water resources infrastructure efficiently and effectively by strategically managing risks and assets.

Some augmentation projects were identified and prioritised for implementation by 2014. These includes:

- emergency works in Mopani
- construction of the Nwamitwa Dam in the Groot Letaba Water Augmentation Project
- raising the Tzaneen Dam in the Groot Letaba Water Augmentation Project
- the Mdloti River Development and raising of Hazelmere Dam
- the Mokolo from Crocodile River (West) Water Augmentation Project Phase 1
- the Nandoni Pipeline Project
- raising the Clanwilliam Dam in the Olifants-Doorn River Water Resources Project
- phase two of the Olifants River Water Resources Development Project
- the Komati Water Augmentation Project
- phase two of the Mooi-Mgeni Transfer Scheme
- the Vaal River Eastern Sub-System Augmentation Project.

The NWRI Maintenance Programme ensures the availability of water for domestic use.

The following progress was made:

- nine out of 25 national dams were rehabilitated
- seven of 28 water conveyance projects were completed, measures were put in place to expedite the process to meet the 2014 targets
- following the process of verification to determine safety, health and environment, about 91 dams with a safety risk were classified
- a total of 195 dams were identified for safety risks.

Regional Bulk Infrastructure Grant Programme

Regional bulk infrastructure is defined as the infrastructure required to connect water on a macro or sub-regional scale, over vast distances, with internal bulk and reticulation systems or any bulk infrastructure that may have an impact on water resources in terms of quality and quantity. The department is responsible and accountable for the management of funding, which is administered by the National Treasury.

Over 16 000 households will benefit from the R52 million Makapanstad and Mathibestad Bulk Water Project, which aims to address water shortages in villages in the Moretele Local Municipality in North West.

Upon completion, the project will address water shortages in the villages of Kwa-Mmatlwaela, Tladistad, Leeukraal, Kgomo-Kgomo, Kontante, Moretele, Makapanstad, Phomolong, Potoane, Prieska, Mathibestad, Thulwe and Opperman.

The Mathibestad and Makapanstad Bulk Water Project is funded through the Provincial Infrastructure Grant and Municipal Infrastructure Grant.

Strategic integrated projects (SIPs)

SIP 18 aims to address water supply and sanitation backlogs to millions of households.

SIP 18 was approved by the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC).

The PICC's 18 SIPs, which are divided into geographic, energy, spatial and social infrastructure development projects. These projects – headed by different departments – cover more than 150 specific infrastructure interventions in rail, road and ports, dams, irrigation systems, sanitation and electricity.

This programme is a 10-year plan that will address the estimated backlog of adequate water to 1,4 million households and that of basic sanitation to 2,1 million households.

SIP 18 is expected to fast-track the issuing of water licences, expand the capacity of the water system, speed up build programmes, address backlog projects and rehabilitate and upgrade existing water and sanitation infrastructure.

The project, which will also focus on priority small towns and rural areas where water service delivery is a problem, is also expected to create jobs, raise the quality of service delivery of water around the country and extend water supply to areas that are either underserved or unserved.

The department identified several projects that will be used to drive SIP 18, including the Sedibeng Regional Sewer Scheme, a R5-billion project to be implemented in the area.

Rand Water's BG3 pipeline, which is

sub-Saharan Africa's largest water pipeline, running from the Vaal Dam to its Zoekfontein Plant, which is 8,6 km away, was launched in June 2013.

The pipeline will increase water distribution in this district and surrounding areas.

The BG3 pipeline runs adjacent to Rand Water's existing BG1 and BG2 pipelines that supply water to Gauteng and parts of the neighbouring Free State, Mpumalanga and North West.

Once in commission, the BG3 pipeline will allow for Rand Water's two pipelines (BG1 and BG2) to be shut down for refurbishment and maintenance. The BG3 pipeline will augment raw-water capacity to Zuikerbosch by up to 2100 Ml/d, which will accommodate the region's projected growth in water demand to 2030.

The Komati Water Scheme Augmentation Project (KWSAP) was designed to resolve the water supply problems to Eskom's Duvha and Matla power stations in Mpumalanga.

The KWSAP augments the Komati Water Scheme from the Vaal Eastern Subsystem to help Eskom overcome its water supply challenges. The Matla power station reservoir will in turn also provide water to Kusile power station, which is under construction.

The interaction of the water resources of the Komati, Usutu and Vaal River systems provides a higher assurance of water supply to all Eskom's thermal power stations and other water users in Mpumalanga. The KWSAP will be able to deliver an additional 57 million m³ of water a year to the Komati Water Scheme. On the department's instruction, the TCTA is financing and implementing the project. The project is part of SIP 18.

Dam Safety Rehabilitation Programme

The Dam Safety Rehabilitation Programme ensures the continued structural and operational safety of the dams owned by the DWS.

The municipalities of Mohokare, Letsemeng, Tokologo, Dihlabeng, Phumelela and the Sterkfontein Dam Water Scheme are included in Strategic Infrastructure Project 18 of the PICC.

Various strategic projects of the DWS include:

- The Bulk Water Schemes in the Xhariep District, namely Phase 2 of the Jagersfontein/Fauresmith and Rouxville/Smithfield/Zastron projects. Regional Bulk Water Schemes in the Masilonyana and Tokologo local municipalities

In December 2014, the Department of Water and Sanitation implemented a refurbishment project at the Standerton Water Treatment Works to improve the water quality and quantity of the plant, to improve service to the Lekwa Local Municipality.

in the Lejweleputswa district and the Mqohaka Local Municipality in the Fezile Dabi district.

- Regional Bulk Water Schemes in the Setsoto, Dihlabeng and Phumelela local municipalities, the Sterkfontein Dam Scheme and the Nketoana Regional Water Scheme Augmentation in the Thabo Mofutsanyana district.
- Significant progress with the refurbishment of water and wastewater treatment works, including those at Bethlehem and Saulspoort, Ficksburg, Vredefort, Heilbron, the Matjhabeng and Mqohaka local municipalities.
- the upgrade of the Jacobsdal raw-water pipeline
- refurbishment at the Clocolan pump station
- upgrade of Ficksburg sewerage network
- refurbishment of the waste-water treatment works of Wepener.

The Mangaung Metropolitan Municipality embarked on an extensive programme aimed at eradicating ventilated improved pit toilets (VIP) and pit latrines, specifically in Botshabelo and Thaba Nchu. In addition, an extensive programme aimed at extending the bulk water and sewer purification plants will be implemented.

The De Hoop Dam in Limpopo was officially opened in March 2014; the Komati Water Augment Project, which provides Eskom's Duva and Matla power stations Spring Grove Dam in KwaZulu-Natal was completed in 2014.

In North West, the first phase of the R1,2 billion Pilanesberg scheme was implemented in May 2013, in partnership with the mines to provide a further 100 Mℓ of water for the benefit of local municipalities and mines. About 700 direct jobs were created, while new mining developments will open up 6 000 indirect permanent jobs.

In the Free State, R156 million was spent on two new pipeline projects that will supply additional water to the Botshabelo and Thaba Nchu municipalities as well as Mangaung Metropolitan Municipality during 2014.

The department was processing draft reforms to the National Water Act of 1998 while a review of the NWRS had been successful.

Support for resource-poor farmers

In accordance with the National Water Act of 1998, and regulations on financial assistance to resource-poor farmers, the Minister of Water and sanitation may allocate assistance to those farmers who fulfil requirements as per regulations.

To ensure that water resources are protected, the regulations explicitly state that financial assistance may be granted and used only for activities that ensure water is protected, used,

developed, conserved and managed in a sustainable and equitable manner.

Rainwater harvesting

Rainwater harvesting enables people who live in areas where reticulation has not as yet been implemented to have access to water. The programme targets rural communities through the installation of tanks and awareness creation sessions.

Water Allocation Reform

The Water Allocation Reform Programme's objectives are to ensure equitable access to water, eradicate poverty and promote social and economical development. The programme's priorities are to meet the water needs of historically disadvantaged people, ensure their participation in water resources management and promote the beneficial and efficient use of water in the public interest.

Licences are required for storage and use of water, among other things. To facilitate the availability of water for historically disadvantaged people, attention is also given to the allocation of water following principles of equity and sustainability.

Youth water Summit

The department hosted its sixth annual Youth Water Summit in 2014. The purpose of the summit was to motivate youth to study maths, science, and technology.

More than 600 delegates from all nine provinces attended, including children, educators, sponsors, and partners.

At the end of the summit, an awards ceremony was held where bursaries, laptops and prize money were given away fully equipped media classroom worth R2 million was won by Qumbu Junior Secondary School in the Eastern Cape.

Since the inception of this programme, 46 media classrooms have been won and this has made a big difference in rural communities where the gap between the poor and the rich is being bridged.

The winners of the South African Youth Water Prize went on to represent the country during the World Water Week event in Stockholm, Sweden between 31 August and 5 September 2014.

Women in Water

The Women in Water Project aims to strengthen the active participation of rural women in water resource management. Women identify water-related challenges in their communities and conceptualise ideas to address them. They are registered for Women in Water awards. The

national winners receive cash prizes which are used for further project development and implementation.

Learning Academy

The DWS was swamped by requests from ambitious, determined and young qualified engineers who wanted to work for the water sector and be part of efforts to enhance the quality of the resource delivered to the needy citizens.

One of the main areas in DWS that experiences a dire shortage of skills and expertise is the engineering function. The academy has made huge strides in attracting young engineers to the department.

By 2014, 57 engineers have been offered an opportunity to participate in the Professional Development Programme. Three of these engineers have managed to register as professional Engineers, while others are on various levels to meet the required 11 outcomes of the Engineering Council of South Africa (ECSA).

To boost the programme, 20 newly qualified engineers joined the Learning Academy (LA) in January 2015. They completed the Department of Public Service and Administration's compulsory induction programme. They received training at the DWS Roodeplaat Training Centre, and reported for duty at their various base stations from 2 February 2015.

The function of DWS is of great strategic importance to the South African society. The level of productivity within DWS and the water sector as a whole has a direct effect on the South African economy.

The LA is an internal structure, which was initiated in 2007 as a response to a shortage of specific skills needed to boost the production of the department (and that of the water sector in general) through its technical and scarce-skills development programme. This technical structure represents an investment for sustaining the quality of DWS human resources, raising the level of technical and scarce skills and thereby ensuring that, in the long term, the department remains competitive as it delivers on its mandate.

The LA is designed to meet specific organisational requirements and lead a sustained campaign to secure a steady supply of high-level skills in water-related science, engineering, and various technical disciplines.

The LA supports the academic development component through bursaries and experiential training. The professional development component forms part of DWS social responsibility in that it incubates young and inexperienced graduates – offering them an opportunity to receive on-the-job training and exposure in

their areas of study, while introducing them to the DWS core business.

The purpose of the LA can be summarised as follows:

- investigate technical and scarce skills development needs within the department
- address technical and scarce skills gaps in the overall water supply value chain
- address scarce skills gaps in specific technical areas of the department
- plan and build capacity for medium and long-term needs of the department and the water and sanitation sector
- develop and implement structured training for engineering and scientific graduate trainees
- develop and propose interventions (regarding mentoring, skills and knowledge transfer, and professional registration processes) with the ECSA, the South African Council for Natural and Scientific Professions and the Surveying Council of South Africa in line with the Occupations Specific Dispensation.

Management of water conservation and demand

Although South Africa has been classified as a water-scarce country, water from the source to the consumer is often lost as a result of inappropriate and inadequate asset management.

Lack of education on the part of the consumer also leads to inefficiency in the day-to-day use of water. The loss of water depletes the country's resources and reduces revenue to water services authorities.

The municipalities' revenue is lost due to leaking pipes, illegal connections and poor billing systems.

In terms of the water-use efficiency programme, 68 municipalities were supported in implementing water conservation and water demand measures to reduce water loss by 519 million m³. Measures to improve efficient water use in the catchment areas were also undertaken and the volume of water loss was reduced to 32 million m³.

Enhanced Local Government Support Approach

A rapid response unit in the department addresses poor performance of water and waste-water systems, which has resulted in community protests in some cases.

The unit deals with proactive and reactive non-compliance cases of municipal service delivery. The specialists within the unit enable the department to intervene directly in high-risk operational situations, where the lives of

citizens and the environment are under threat because of water and wastewater treatments failures.

Freshwater Programme

Recognising the value and threatened status of South Africa's freshwater biodiversity, and the need to build competence and leadership in this area, the South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi) has established a programme focusing on freshwater biodiversity.

The Freshwater Programme aims to grow and consolidate freshwater activities within Sanbi.

The Freshwater Programme focuses on supporting collaborative freshwater initiatives. These include Working for Wetlands, the National Wetland Inventory, National Freshwater Ecosystems Priority Areas Project, a wetlands mitigation banking scheme with the Grasslands Programme and coal-mining industry, and water-related payments for ecosystem services pilot projects.

Key to the programme's operation will be the further development of strategic relationships with other organisations with shared objectives.

This includes managing the Working for Wetlands Programme on behalf of the departments of water and sanitation, environmental affairs and agriculture, forestry and fisheries. Working for Wetlands champions the protection, rehabilitation and sustainable use of South Africa's wetlands through cooperative governance and partnerships.

Monitoring programmes

River flow is monitored at 1 200 flow-gauging stations and some 260 major reservoirs. The evaporation and rainfall station network has 360 stations.

The oldest flow-gauging station still operating in South Africa is on the Mooi River near Potchefstroom in North West.

There are 21 operational rainfall stations in the mountains of the Western Cape and five in the Mpumalanga escarpment. Observations are relayed through the cellular short-message system. The data is updated daily on the department's website at www.dws.gov.za.

Water levels are monitored at some 1 000 observation boreholes across South Africa. Particular attention is given to monitoring in dolomitic areas. In addition, a small network of rain gauges monitors rainwater quality.

The importance of qualitative information on South Africa's water resources has led to an increasing drive towards creating a national water-quality monitoring network.

The formal protection, restoration and rehabilitation of wetlands is strengthened through improved land-use planning, land and development management policies, as well as operational and regulatory means at national, provincial and local level.

Adopting of ecosystem-based approaches and implementing the open-space planning and management programmes adds impetus to the protection of these systems and associated services, especially at local government level.

It requires integrated approaches and the involvement of multiple sectors, particularly those dealing with human settlements, development and planning.

The DWS is also designing programmes to assess and report on the radiological (radioactivity) and toxicological quality status of the country's water resources.

River Health Programme (RHP)

The *River Health Report* will be used for assessing the pattern of water quality. Generally, water quality is good in the upland regions and deteriorates downstream, particularly in areas affected by mining and urban development. Because of the longitudinal nature of rivers, poor water quality may extend far downstream of the source of pollutants.

The RHP was implemented in all nine regions, comprising 48 projects.

Products of the RHP have attracted wide attention and recognition, and provide strategic water-resource management information and training material for use in schools and universities, as well as in awareness creation.

The implementation of resource-directed measures, such as ecological water requirements/ reserve, the classification of water resources and setting resource quality objectives as part of water-use authorisations, also indicated a need for the massification of natural-resource management programmes.

These include Working for Water, Working for Wetlands, Working on Fire, Working for Woodlands and Working for Energy, which are key components of the management of water quantity and quality in South Africa.

The RHP is part of the National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme initiated in 1994.

Based on the information obtained from the RHP, four compared to the planned two major rivers were rehabilitated namely the:

- Buffalo River in the Eastern Cape
- Luvuvhu River in Limpopo
- Hart River in the Northern Cape
- Berg River in the Western Cape.

Two more rivers, in the Eastern Cape and Limpopo, were identified as flagship projects.

National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme (NAEHMP)

The NAEHMP is responsible for managing aquatic ecosystems. It focuses on the biological attributes of a river that serve as indicators of its ecological health. The rationale for initiating a biomonitoring programme is that the classic approach of monitoring only physical and chemical water-quality attributes was inadequate for generating information on the overall health of an aquatic ecosystem. Monitoring chemical attributes alone was found to be insufficient to detect, for example, the cumulative effects on aquatic ecosystems of extended exposure to multiple stressors.

Such stressors include habitat alteration, barriers that alter stream flow, water abstraction and alien species being introduced. Aquatic communities (for example, fish, riparian vegetation and aquatic invertebrate fauna), however, are adapted to live within a certain range of environmental conditions.

If healthy and diverse biological communities inhabit it, the watercourse as a whole is considered to be ecologically resilient and healthy. However, from an RHP point of view, a healthy water resource does not guarantee the fitness of that resource for domestic, recreational, industrial and agricultural use.

The NAEHMP's main objectives are to:

- generate a national perspective of the health of aquatic ecosystems in South Africa
- develop the capacity and information base required to enable the department and other role players to report on the status of and trends in the ecological health of South Africa's river systems, in an objective and scientifically sound manner
- generate information products and audit-management strategies that could assist in distinguishing between aquatic ecosystems exposed to sustainable use and those experiencing ecological deterioration.

National Chemical Monitoring Programme

The National Chemical Monitoring Programme assesses and reports on the chemical status of water resources in South Africa. The main water-quality challenges for domestic water users are high levels of dissolved salts and, in some places, high fluoride concentration. The other challenges facing irrigated agriculture are the high sodium-absorption ratio, high electrical conductivity, high pH and high levels of chloride.

Another global challenge affecting South Africa is eutrophication or excessive plant (including algae) growth in dams. This is because of high levels of nutrient input from point sources of pollution and diffuse sources of pollution from catchments. Annual reports indicate that 50% of dams in South Africa are seriously affected (hypertrophic), while the rest range in quality from good (oligotrophic) to poor (mesotrophic).

Another problem is the sporadic outbreak of cholera and other water-borne diseases, mainly because of poor sanitation and hygiene at household level. The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are prone to cholera outbreaks.

National Toxicity Monitoring Programme

The National Toxicity Monitoring Programme reports on the status of dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane and other persistent organic pollutants. This information is reported internationally to the Stockholm Convention through the Department of Environmental Affairs.

Education and awareness

Youth development and National Water Week

National Water Week is an awareness campaign by the DWS to highlight the value of water, the need for sustainable management of this scarce resource and the role water plays in eradicating poverty and under-development in South Africa.

The campaign continues building on ongoing awareness creation within the broader South African community.

In 2014, Water Week was observed from 17 to 23 March under the theme *Water is Life – 20 Years of Water Delivering for Social and Economic Development*.

National Water Week celebrations raises awareness of the potential for increased cooperation and the challenges facing water management in view of the increase in demand for water access, allocation and services.

The aim is to highlight water cooperation initiatives, and identify crucial issues concerning water education, water diplomacy, transboundary water management, financing cooperation, national/international legal frameworks, and the linkages with the millennium development goals.

Regional and international cooperation and initiatives

South Africa has signed cooperative agreements with a number of countries in the southern African region with which it shares water resources, such as:

- Mozambique and Swaziland on the Inkomati and Maputo rivers

- Botswana, Lesotho and Namibia on the establishment of the Orange Senqu River Commission
- Botswana, Zimbabwe and Mozambique on the establishment of the Limpopo Watercourse Commission
- Lesotho on the Lesotho Highlands Water Project
- Swaziland on the Komati River Development Project.

These agreements improve South Africa's bilateral and multilateral relations in the African Union. All the countries involved benefit, while sharing development costs.

South Africa shares four of its major river systems with six immediate neighbouring countries, namely Botswana, Lesotho, Mozambique, Namibia, Swaziland and Zimbabwe.

In the area of shared river basins, South Africa continued participating in joint water commissions to form part of Africa bilaterals with Botswana on Joint Permanent Cooperation and with Mozambique regarding the breach of the Usuthu River, where a feasibility study was completed.

As President of the African Ministers Council on Water (AMCOW), South Africa made significant contributions towards the council's work through its strong leadership in financial and staff regulations. South Africa provided leadership in the preparation of a triennial workplan, which has instilled donor confidence in AMCOW's programmes.

The DWS facilitated a workshop on water between South Africa and Japan, to share and exchange technical information and opportunities. This has led to the signing of a joint resolution between South Africa and the Japan Ministry of Land, Infrastructure, Transport and Tourism to encourage and strengthen mutual cooperation in water management.

South Africa has entered into a partnership with the World Economic Forum. The Strategic Water Partners Network was established, focusing on the water efficiency supply chain, with a focus on agriculture and water quality.

The Inga Hydro-Electric Project could become the largest hydro-electric project in the world, and is expected to generate a massive 40 000 MW of electricity – more than the current electricity generation in South Africa.



